

# THE WORD UNCHAINED: AUTHORIZED KING JAMES BIBLE

In commemoration of the 400<sup>th</sup> Anniversary  
of the first printing of the King James Version  
1611-2011

## BOOK 1

Presented in free-flowing text without titles or chapter & verse numbers  
as originally written by the prophets and apostles,  
Set with modern English punctuations,  
Capitalized personal pronouns of God,  
Modern English sentence and paragraph structure,  
Single column layout,  
Old English word definitions and helps.

Containing the text  
as translated by command of King James I from  
The Hebrew Ben Chayyim Masoretic Old Testament manuscripts  
and  
The Greek Textus Receptus Majority Text New Testament manuscripts

**The Holy Scriptures are © The Lord God יהוה of Heaven and Earth  
The text of the Authorized Version being under the protection of the British Crown  
And Public Domain in the United States of America**

**Presented by ReadTheGreekBible.com © 2011 for format**

***Wordclay Printers  
1663 Liberty Drive, Suite 200  
Bloomington, IN 47403  
www.wordclay.com***

**Printed in the United States of America.  
This book is printed on acid-free paper**

# In the beginning

# GOD

## created the heaven and the earth.

And the earth was without form, and void; and darkness was upon the face of the deep. And the Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters.

And God said, "Let there be light." And there was light. And God saw the light, that it was good; and God divided the light from the darkness. And God called the light *Day*, and the darkness He called *Night*. And <sup>1</sup>the evening and the morning were the first day. *1this indicates a literal day, as verified in the 4<sup>th</sup> Commandment*

And God said, "Let there be a firmament in the midst of the waters, and let it divide the waters from the waters." And God made the firmament, and divided the waters which were under the firmament from the waters which were above the firmament - and it was so. And God called the firmament *Heaven*. And the evening and the morning were the second day.

And God said, "Let the waters under the heaven be gathered together unto one place, and let the dry land appear" - and it was so. And God called the dry land *Earth*, and the gathering together of the waters called He *Seas*; and God saw that it was good. And God said, "Let the earth bring forth grass, the herb yielding seed, and the fruit tree yielding fruit after his kind, whose seed is in itself, upon the earth" - and it was so. And the earth brought forth grass and herb yielding seed after his kind and the tree yielding fruit whose seed was in itself after his kind; and God saw that it was good. And the evening and the morning were the third day.

And God said, "Let there be lights in the firmament of the heaven to divide the day from the night; and let them be for signs, and for seasons, and for days, and years; and let them be for lights in the firmament of the heaven to give light upon the earth" - and it was so.

And God made two great lights - the greater light to rule the day, and the lesser light to rule the night. He made the stars also. And God set them in the firmament of the heaven to give light upon the earth, and to rule over the day and over the night, and to divide the light from the darkness; and God saw that it was good. And the evening and the morning were the fourth day.

And God said, "Let the waters bring forth abundantly the moving creature that hath life, and fowl that may fly above the earth in the open firmament of heaven." And God created great whales, and every living creature that moveth (which the waters brought forth abundantly) after their kind, and every winged fowl after his kind; and God saw that it was good. And God blessed them, saying, "Be fruitful, and multiply, and fill the waters in the seas, and let fowl multiply in the earth." And the evening and the morning were the fifth day.

And God said, "Let the earth bring forth the living creature after his kind, cattle and creeping thing and beast of the earth after his kind" - and it was so. And God made the beast of the earth after his kind, and cattle after their kind, and every thing that creepeth upon the earth after his kind; and God saw that it was good.

And God said, "Let Us make man in Our image, after Our likeness. And let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth." So God created man in His Own image, in the image of God created He him - male and female created He them.

And God blessed them, and God said unto them, "Be fruitful, and multiply, and <sup>1</sup>replenish the earth, and subdue it; and have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over every living thing that moveth upon the earth." <sup>1</sup>fill up

And God said, "Behold, I have given you every herb bearing seed which is upon the face of all the earth, and every tree in the which is the fruit of a tree yielding seed; to you it shall be for meat. And to every beast of the earth, and to every fowl of the air, and to every thing that creepeth upon the earth, wherein there is life, I have given every green herb for meat" - and it was so. And God saw every thing that He had made, and, behold, it was very good. And the evening and the morning were the sixth day.

Thus the heavens and the earth were finished, and all the <sup>1</sup>host of them. And on the Seventh Day God ended His work which He had made; and He <sup>2</sup>rested on the Seventh Day from all His work which He had made. And God blessed the Seventh Day and sanctified it, because that in it He had <sup>2</sup>rested from all His work which God created and made. <sup>1</sup>great number of [things] that exists in them <sup>2</sup>ceased (from working)

These are the generations of the heavens and of the earth when they were created in the day that <sup>1</sup>THE LORD God made the earth and the heavens, and every plant of the field before it was in the earth, and every herb of the field before it grew. For THE LORD God had not caused it to rain upon the earth, and there was not a man to till the ground; but, there went up a mist from the earth, and watered the whole face of the ground. <sup>1</sup>Yahweh/ יהוה (also pronounced Jehovah)

*NOTE: Up to this point a general introductory overview of creation was given. Now the narrative backtracks to the sixth day and gives greater detail of the creation of Man (Adam and Eve).*

And THE LORD God <sup>1</sup>formed man of the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life, and man became a living soul. <sup>1</sup>Man is a tri-part being consisting of body and spirit and soul, confirmed by <sup>1</sup>st Thess. 5:23

And THE LORD God planted a garden <sup>1</sup>eastward in Eden; and there He put the man whom He had formed. And out of the ground made THE LORD God to grow every tree that is pleasant to the sight and good for food. The *Tree of Life* also, in the midst of the garden, and the *Tree of Knowledge of Good and Evil*. <sup>2</sup>And a river went out of Eden to water the garden; and from thence it was parted and became into four heads:

- The name of the first is *Pison* - that is it which compasseth the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold (and the gold of that land is good); there is bdellium and the onyx stone.
- And the name of the second river is *Gihon* - the same is it that compasseth the whole land of Ethiopia.
- And the name of the third river is *Hiddekel* - that is it which goeth toward the east of Assyria.
- And the fourth river is *Euphrates*.

*<sup>1</sup>NOTE: It is unknown if "eastward in Eden" means that Eden is in the East or if the garden was planted on the east side of Eden; though we do see here that the main river flowed **out** of Eden to water the garden. Either way, since the author (Moses) wrote this from the perspective of being in or near the Holy Land, we know that Eden (which means "pleasure/delight") and its garden must have been somewhere to the east of the nation of Israel. No one knows the exact location of Eden and Havilah, but it is possible that they were lost in the Flood of Noah and may be submerged in the Persian Gulf, Caspian Sea, or even the Mediterranean Sea, thus eliminating the main source river from which the four rivers diverged. We do not know what the earth looked like before the Flood; the land may have been all one continent (the "Pangea" concept) which separated during the planetary upheaval of the Flood, creating and eliminating bodies of water and landscapes. God alone knows.*

*<sup>2</sup>NOTE: Hiddekel is believed to be Tigris which runs parallel to Euphrates. The identity of Gihon and Pison, however, is debated. Over the centuries Gihon has been equated with the Nile and the Abay Blue Nile (near modern Ethiopia, though ancient Ethiopia crossed over the Red Sea into southwest Arabia), the Karkheh, the Mediterranean, and even the Atlantic; and the only natural spring in or near Jerusalem is known as the Gihon Spring which supplies water to the Pool of Siloam. As for Pison, it has been equated with the Ganges in India, the Nile in Egypt, the Araxes (Aras) between the Black and Caspian Seas near Mt. Ararat, the Wadi Bisha which stretches from Kuwait to western Arabia near Mt. Sinai, or the Uizhun (or "Golden River") in northern Mesopotamia.*

And THE LORD God took the man and put him into the garden of Eden to dress it and to keep it.

And THE LORD God commanded the man, saying, "Of every tree of the garden thou mayest freely eat; but, of *The Tree of the Knowledge of Good and Evil*, thou shalt not eat of it – for, in the day that thou eatest thereof, thou shalt surely die."

And THE LORD God said, "It is not good that the man should be alone. I will make him <sup>1</sup>an help meet for him." And out of the ground THE LORD God formed every beast of the field and every fowl of the air and brought them unto Adam to see what he would call them; and whatsoever Adam called every living creature, that was the name thereof. And Adam gave names to all cattle and to the fowl of the air and to every beast of the field - but for *Adam* there was not found an <sup>1</sup>help meet for him. *<sup>1</sup>a suitable helper/assistant*

And THE LORD God caused a deep sleep to fall upon Adam, and he slept. And He took one of his ribs, and closed up the flesh instead thereof. And the rib, which THE LORD God had taken from man, made He a woman, and brought her unto the man.

And Adam said, "<sup>1</sup>This is now bone of my bones and flesh of my flesh! She shall be called *woman*, because she was 'taken out of Man'." Therefore shall a man leave his father and his mother and shall cleave unto his wife; and they shall be one flesh.

*<sup>1</sup>NOTE: Only that which is of Adam's flesh and bones (that is, only another human like himself) qualified as a mate for him; unlike the animals, which are not of his flesh and bones. He is not evolved from them, nor are they evolved from him, but are separate creations.*

And they were both naked, the man and his wife, and were not ashamed.

Now, the serpent was more subtil than any beast of the field which THE LORD God had made. And he said unto the woman, "Yea, hath God said, '*Ye shall not eat of every tree of the garden*'?"

And the woman said unto the serpent, "We may eat of the fruit of the trees of the garden; but of the fruit of the Tree which is in the *midst* of the garden, God hath said, '*Ye shall not eat of it, neither shall ye touch it, lest ye die.*'"

And the serpent said unto the woman, "Ye shall *not* surely die! For God doth know that in the day ye eat thereof, then your eyes shall be opened, and ye shall be as gods, knowing good and evil."

And when the woman saw that the Tree was good for food, and that it was pleasant to the eyes, and a Tree to be desired to make one wise, she took of the fruit thereof and did eat, and gave also unto her husband with her; and he did eat. And the eyes of them both were opened, and they knew that they were naked; and they sewed fig leaves together and made themselves aprons.

And they heard the Voice of THE LORD God walking in the garden in the cool of the day. And Adam and his wife hid themselves from the presence of THE LORD God amongst the trees of the garden.

And THE LORD God called unto Adam and said unto him, "Where art thou?"

And he said, "I heard Thy Voice in the garden and I was afraid because I was naked; and I hid myself."

And He said, "Who told thee that thou wast naked? Hast thou eaten of the Tree whereof I commanded thee that thou shouldest not eat?"

And the man said, "The woman whom Thou gavest to be with me, she gave me of the Tree, and I did eat."

And THE LORD God said unto the woman, "What is this that thou hast done?!"

And the woman said, "The serpent <sup>1</sup>beguiled me, and I did eat."

*<sup>1</sup>deceived/deluded/seduced*

And THE LORD God said unto the serpent, "Because thou hast done this, thou art cursed above all cattle and above every beast of the field! Upon thy belly shalt thou go, and dust shalt thou eat all the days of thy life! And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her <sup>1</sup>Seed - It shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise His heel."

*<sup>1</sup>this is the first prophecy of Messiah*

Unto the woman He said, "I will greatly multiply thy sorrow and thy conception. In sorrow thou shalt bring forth children; and thy desire shall be to thy husband, and he shall rule over thee."

And unto Adam He said, "Because thou hast hearkened unto the voice of thy wife and hast eaten of the Tree of which I commanded thee, saying, 'Thou shalt not eat of it' - cursed is the ground for thy sake! In sorrow shalt thou eat of it all the days of thy life. Thorns, also, and thistles shall it bring forth to thee; and thou shalt eat the herb of the field. In the sweat of thy face shalt thou eat bread till thou return unto the ground; for out of it wast thou taken - for dust thou art, and unto dust shalt thou return!"

And Adam called his wife's name *Eve* because she was the mother of all living. Unto Adam also, and to his wife, did THE LORD God make coats of skins and clothed them.

And THE LORD God said, "Behold, the man is become as One of Us, to know good and evil. And now, lest he put forth his hand and take also of the *Tree of Life* and eat and live for ever...", therefore THE LORD God sent him forth from the garden of Eden, to till the ground from whence he was taken.

So He drove out the man. And He placed, at the east of the garden of Eden, Cherubims and a flaming sword which turned every way, to <sup>1</sup>keep the way of the *Tree of Life*.

*<sup>1</sup>guard the path to/prevent access to*

And Adam <sup>1</sup>knew Eve his wife; and she conceived and bare Cain, and said, "I have gotten a man from THE LORD."

*<sup>1</sup>a term believed to mean "to make love with"*

And she again bare - his brother, Abel.

And Abel was a keeper of sheep, but Cain was a tiller of the ground.

And in process of time it came to pass that Cain brought of the fruit of the ground an offering unto THE LORD. And Abel, he also brought of the firstlings of his flock and of the fat thereof. And THE LORD had respect unto Abel and to his offering, but unto Cain and to his offering He had not respect. And Cain was very <sup>1</sup>wroth, and his countenance fell.

*<sup>1</sup>furious*

And THE LORD said unto Cain, "Why art thou wroth? And why is thy countenance fallen? If thou doest well, shalt thou not be accepted? And if thou doest not well, sin lieth at the door. And unto thee shall be his desire, and thou shalt rule over him."

And Cain talked with Abel his brother. And it came to pass, when they were in the field, that Cain rose up against Abel his brother and slew him.

And THE LORD said unto Cain, "Where is Abel thy brother?"

And he said, "I know not. Am I my brother's keeper?"

And He said, "What hast thou done?! The voice of thy brother's blood crieth unto Me from the ground! And now art thou cursed from the earth, which hath opened her mouth to receive thy brother's blood from thy hand! When thou tillest the ground, it shall not henceforth yield unto thee her strength. A fugitive and a vagabond shalt thou be in the earth."

And Cain said unto THE LORD, "My punishment is greater than I can bear! Behold, Thou hast driven me out this day from the face of the earth; and from Thy face shall I be hid. And I shall be a fugitive and a vagabond in the earth; and it shall come to pass that <sup>1</sup>every one that findeth me shall slay me!" <sup>1</sup>anyone

And THE LORD said unto him, "Therefore whosoever slayeth Cain, vengeance shall be taken on him sevenfold." And THE LORD set a mark upon Cain, lest any finding him should kill him.

And Cain went out from the presence of THE LORD and dwelt in the <sup>1</sup>land of Nod on the east of Eden. And Cain knew his wife; and she conceived, and bare Enoch. And he builded a city and called the name of the city after the name of his son - Enoch. <sup>1</sup>literally, "land of vagrant wandering"

And unto Enoch was born Irad:

- and Irad begat Mehujael,
- and Mehujael begat Methusael,
- and Methusael begat Lamech.

And Lamech took unto him two wives.

- The name of the one was Adah,
- and the name of the other Zillah.

And Adah <sup>1</sup>bare:

- Jabal - he was the father of such as dwell in tents and of such as have cattle.
- And his brother's name was Jubal - he was the father of all such as handle the harp and organ.

And Zillah, she also bare:

- Tubalcain - an instructor of every artificer in brass and iron.
- And the sister of Tubalcain was Naamah.

<sup>1</sup>gave birth to

And Lamech said unto his wives, Adah and Zillah, "Hear my voice; ye wives of Lamech, hearken unto my speech. For I have slain a man to my wounding, and a young man to my hurt. If Cain shall be avenged sevenfold, truly Lamech seventy and sevenfold!"

And Adam knew his wife again; and she bare a son and called his name

- Seth ("For God," said she, "hath appointed me another seed instead of Abel, whom Cain slew").

And to Seth, to him also there was born a son; and he called his name

- Enos.

Then began men to call upon the Name of THE LORD.

This is the book of the generations of Adam. In the day that God created man, in the likeness of God made He him - male and female created He them - and blessed them and called their name <sup>1</sup>Adam in the day when they were created.

*<sup>1</sup>meaning "Man/Mankind/Human", which is from the Hebrew for "ruddy/reddish", as in "made of red earth/clay" and "showing blood in the face"; for example, "Edom" (the nickname given to Israel's brother Esau because of his reddish skin and hair), and "odem" (a ruby or red topaz), and "adom pahrah" (the "red" heifer) are variants of "Adam". The word "human" is a combination of Latin 'humus' (earth/soil), Greek 'homos' ("same"), and Hebrew 'man/adam' (red earth), meaning "sentient/knowing/reasoning man".*

And Adam lived an hundred and thirty years, and begat a son in his own likeness and after his image, and called his name Seth. And the days of Adam after he had begotten Seth were eight hundred years, and he begat sons and daughters. And all the days that Adam lived were nine hundred and thirty years, and he died.

And Seth lived an hundred and five years, and begat Enos. And Seth lived after he begat Enos eight hundred and seven years, and begat sons and daughters. And all the days of Seth were nine hundred and twelve years, and he died.

And Enos lived ninety years, and begat Cainan. And Enos lived after he begat Cainan eight hundred and fifteen years, and begat sons and daughters. And all the days of Enos were nine hundred and five years, and he died.

And Cainan lived seventy years, and begat Mahalaleel. And Cainan lived after he begat Mahalaleel eight hundred and forty years, and begat sons and daughters. And all the days of Cainan were nine hundred and ten years, and he died.

And Mahalaleel lived sixty and five years, and begat Jared. And Mahalaleel lived after he begat Jared eight hundred and thirty years, and begat sons and daughters. And all the days of Mahalaleel were eight hundred ninety and five years, and he died.

And Jared lived an hundred sixty and two years, and he begat Enoch. And Jared lived after he begat Enoch eight hundred years, and begat sons and daughters. And all the days of Jared were nine hundred sixty and two years, and he died.

And Enoch lived sixty and five years, and begat Methuselah. And Enoch walked with God after he begat Methuselah three hundred years, and begat sons and daughters. And all the days of Enoch were three hundred sixty and five years. And Enoch walked with God; and he was not, for God took him.

And Methuselah lived an hundred eighty and seven years, and begat Lamech. And Methuselah lived after he begat Lamech seven hundred eighty and two years, and begat sons and daughters. And all the days of Methuselah were nine hundred sixty and nine years; and he died.

And Lamech lived an hundred eighty and two years, and begat a son. And he called his name Noah, saying, "This same shall comfort us concerning our work and toil of our hands, because of the ground which THE LORD hath cursed."

And Lamech lived after he begat Noah five hundred ninety and five years, and begat sons and daughters. And all the days of Lamech were seven hundred seventy and seven years, and he died.

And Noah was five hundred years old, and Noah begat:

- Shem,
- Ham,
- and Japheth.

And it came to pass, when men began to multiply on the face of the earth and daughters were born unto them, that the <sup>1</sup>sons of God saw the daughters of men that they were fair; and they took them wives of all which they chose. And THE LORD said, "My spirit shall not always strive with man, for that he also is flesh. Yet his days shall be an hundred and twenty years."

*'this is generally believed to mean angelic beings (the term "sons of God" for angels is also used in Job). Paul also makes mention of these angels [see 1<sup>st</sup> Corinthians 11, especially verse 10].*

There were <sup>1</sup>giants in the earth in those days; and also after that, when the sons of God came in unto the daughters of men, and they bare children to them, the same became <sup>2</sup>mighty men which were of old, men of renown. And God saw that the wickedness of man was great in the earth, and that every imagination of the thoughts of his heart was only evil continually. And it repented THE LORD that He had made man on the earth, and it grieved Him at His heart. And THE LORD said, "I will destroy man whom I have created from the face of the earth - both man, and beast, and the creeping thing, and the fowls of the air - for it repenteth Me that I have made them!" But Noah found grace in the eyes of THE LORD.

<sup>1</sup>nephilim/tyrannical fallen ones <sup>2</sup>it has been speculated that these perverted half human/half angelic 'mighty men of old, men of renown' may have later been idolized and became the basis for some of mythology's gods and demi gods

These are the generations of Noah. Noah was a just man and perfect in his generations, and Noah walked with God. And Noah begat three sons:

- Shem,
- Ham,
- and Japheth.

The earth also was corrupt before God, and the earth was filled with violence. And God looked upon the earth, and, behold, it was corrupt; for all flesh had corrupted his way upon the earth. And God said unto Noah, "The end of all flesh is come before Me, for the earth is filled with violence through them; and, behold, I will destroy them with the earth. Make thee an <sup>1</sup>Ark of gopher wood. Rooms shalt thou make in the Ark, and shalt pitch it within and without with pitch. And this is the fashion which thou shalt make it of:

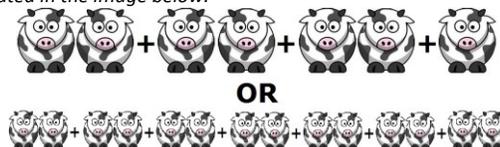
- the length of the Ark shall be <sup>2</sup>three hundred cubits,
- the breadth of it <sup>3</sup>fifty cubits,
- and the height of it <sup>4</sup>thirty cubits.

A window shalt thou make to the Ark, and in a cubit shalt thou finish it above. And the door of the Ark shalt thou set in the side thereof. With lower, second, and third stories shalt thou make it. And, behold, I, even I, do bring a flood of waters upon the earth to destroy all flesh (wherein is the breath of life) from under heaven; and every thing that is in the earth shall die. But with thee will I establish My covenant; and thou shalt come into the Ark - thou, and thy sons, and thy wife, and thy sons' wives with thee. And of every living thing of all flesh, two of every sort shalt thou bring into the Ark to keep them alive with thee; they shall be male and female. Of fowls after their kind, and of cattle after their kind, of every creeping thing of the earth after his kind - two of every sort shall come unto thee to keep them alive. And take thou unto thee of all food that is eaten, and thou shalt gather it to thee; and it shall be for food for thee and for them."

<sup>1</sup>coffin/box <sup>2</sup>450 feet long <sup>3</sup>75 feet wide <sup>4</sup>45 feet high – based on the common 18inch cubit

Thus did Noah. According to all that God commanded him, so did he. And THE LORD said unto Noah, "Come thou and all thy House into the Ark; for thee have I seen righteous before Me in this generation. Of every clean beast thou shalt take to thee <sup>1</sup>by sevens, the male and his female; and of beasts that are not clean by two, the male and his female. Of fowls also of the air by sevens, the male and the female, to keep seed alive upon the face of all the earth. For yet seven days and I will cause it to rain upon the earth forty days and forty nights; and every living substance that I have made will I destroy from off the face of the earth."

<sup>1</sup>NOTE: as we can see here, it took Noah and his sons 100 years to construct the Ark. When God first commanded him to build the Ark He mentioned in general that he would bring in pairs of animals; there was no need for details then. But now that the Ark is complete, God clarified the specifics of the amount He wanted: two of each unclean animal, but for clean animals either seven pairs of each were required, or, seven individual animals - that is, three mated pairs and one unmated (the seventh unmated clean animals being left for sacrifice after the flood), as demonstrated in the image below.



And Noah did according unto all that THE LORD commanded him. And Noah was six hundred years old when the flood of waters was upon the earth. And Noah went in, and his sons, and his wife, and his sons' wives with him, into the Ark, because of the waters of the flood.

Of clean beasts, and of beasts that are not clean, and of fowls, and of every thing that creepeth upon the earth, there went in two and two unto Noah into the Ark, the male and the female, as God had commanded Noah.

And it came to pass after seven days that the waters of the flood were upon the earth. In the six hundredth year of Noah's life, in the second month, the seventeenth day of the month, the same day were all the fountains of the great deep broken up, and the windows of heaven were opened. And the rain was upon the earth forty days and forty nights.

In the selfsame day entered Noah, and Shem and Ham and Japheth (the sons of Noah), and Noah's wife, and the three wives of his sons with them, into the Ark - they, and every beast after his kind, and all the cattle after their kind, and every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth after his kind, and every fowl after his kind, every bird of every sort. And they went in unto Noah into the Ark, two and two of all flesh, wherein is the breath of life. And they that went in, went in male and female of all flesh, as God had commanded him. And THE LORD shut him in.

And the flood was forty days upon the earth; and the waters increased and bare up the Ark, and it was lift up above the earth. And the waters prevailed and were increased greatly upon the earth; and the Ark went upon the face of the waters. And the waters prevailed exceedingly upon the earth; and all the high hills that were <sup>1</sup>under the whole heaven were covered. Fifteen cubits upward did the waters prevail and the mountains were covered.

*<sup>1</sup>this indicates that the flood was global, not local*

And all flesh died that moved upon the earth, both of fowl, and of cattle, and of beast, and of every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth, and every man - all in whose nostrils was the breath of life of all that was in the dry land died. And every living substance was destroyed which was upon the face of the ground, both man, and cattle, and the creeping things, and the fowl of the heaven; and they were destroyed from the earth. And Noah only remained alive, and they that were with him in the Ark. And the waters prevailed upon the earth an hundred and fifty days.

And God remembered Noah and every living thing and all the cattle that was with him in the Ark. And God made a wind to pass over the earth, and the waters <sup>1</sup>assuaged; the fountains also of the deep and the windows of heaven were stopped, and the rain from heaven was restrained, and the waters returned from off the earth continually. And after the end of the hundred and fifty days the waters were abated.

*<sup>1</sup>withdrew/decreased/lessened*

And the Ark rested in the seventh month, on the seventeenth day of the month, upon the <sup>1</sup>mountains of Ararat. And the waters decreased continually until the tenth month; in the tenth month, on the first day of the month, were the tops of the mountains seen.

*<sup>1</sup>a mountain range in what today is eastern Turkey*

And it came to pass at the end of forty days that Noah opened the window of the Ark which he had made; and he sent forth a raven, which went forth to and fro until the waters were dried up from off the earth.

Also he sent forth a dove from him, to see if the waters were abated from off the face of the ground; but the dove found no rest for the sole of her foot and she returned unto him into the Ark, for the waters were on the face of the whole earth. Then he put forth his hand and took her and pulled her in unto him into the Ark.

And he stayed yet other seven days; and again he sent forth the dove out of the Ark. And the dove came in to him in the evening; and, lo, in her mouth was an olive leaf plucked off. So Noah knew that the waters were abated from off the earth. And he stayed yet other seven days and sent forth the dove, which returned not again unto him any more.

And it came to pass in the six hundredth and first year, in the first month, the first day of the month, the waters were dried up from off the earth. And Noah removed the covering of the Ark and looked, and, behold, the face of the ground was dry. And in the second month, on the seven and twentieth day of the month, was the earth dried.

And God spake unto Noah, saying, "Go forth of the Ark - thou, and thy wife, and thy sons, and thy sons' wives with thee. Bring forth with thee every living thing that is with thee, of all flesh, both of fowl, and of cattle, and of every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth, that they may breed abundantly in the earth, and be fruitful, and multiply upon the earth."

And Noah went forth; and his sons, and his wife, and his sons' wives with him, every beast, every creeping thing, and every fowl, and whatsoever creepeth upon the earth, after their kinds, went forth out of the Ark.

And Noah builded an altar unto THE LORD and took of every clean beast, and of every clean fowl, and offered burnt offerings on the altar.

And THE LORD smelled a sweet savor; and THE LORD said in His heart, "I will not again curse the ground any more for man's sake; for the imagination of man's heart is evil from his youth. Neither will I again smite any more every thing living, as I have done. While the earth remaineth, seedtime and harvest, and cold and heat, and summer and winter, and day and night shall not cease."

And God blessed Noah and his sons and said unto them, "Be fruitful, and multiply, and replenish the earth. And the fear of you and the dread of you shall be upon every beast of the earth, and upon every fowl of the air, upon all that moveth upon the earth, and upon all the fishes of the sea; into your hand are they delivered. Every moving thing that liveth shall be meat for you; even as the green herb have I given you all things. But flesh with the life thereof (which is the blood thereof) shall ye not eat. And surely your blood of your lives will I require; at the hand of every beast will I require it, and at the hand of man; at the hand of every man's brother will I require the life of man. Whoso sheddeth man's blood, by man shall his blood be shed - for, in the image of God made He man. And you, be ye fruitful and multiply; bring forth abundantly in the earth, and multiply therein."

And God spake unto Noah and to his sons with him, saying, "And I, behold, I establish My covenant with you, and with your seed after you, and with every living creature that is with you, of the fowl, of the cattle, and of every beast of the earth with you, from all that go out of the Ark to every beast of the earth. And I will establish My covenant with you, neither shall all flesh be cut off any more by the waters of a flood; neither shall there any more be a flood to destroy the earth."

And God said, "This is the token of the covenant which I make between Me and you and every living creature that is with you for perpetual generations: I do set My bow in the cloud, and it shall be for a token of a covenant between Me and the earth. And it shall come to pass, when I bring a cloud over the earth, that the bow shall be seen in the cloud; and I will remember My covenant which is between Me and you and every living creature of all flesh, and the waters shall no more become a flood to destroy all flesh. And the bow shall be in the cloud; and I will look upon it, that I may remember the everlasting covenant between God and every living creature of all flesh that is upon the earth."

And God said unto Noah, "This is the token of the covenant which I have established between Me and all flesh that is upon the earth."

And the sons of Noah that went forth of the Ark were Shem, and Ham, and Japheth. And Ham is the father of Canaan. These are the three sons of Noah, and of them was the whole earth overspread.

And Noah began to be an husbandman, and he planted a vineyard. And he drank of the wine and was drunken, and he was uncovered within his tent. And Ham, the father of Canaan, saw the nakedness of his father and told his two brethren without. And Shem and Japheth took a garment and laid it upon both their shoulders and went backward, and covered the nakedness of their father; and their faces were backward and they saw not their father's nakedness. And Noah awoke from his wine, and knew what his younger son had done unto him.

And he said, "Cursed be Canaan! A servant of servants shall he be unto his brethren!"

And he said, "Blessed be THE LORD God of Shem; and Canaan shall be his servant. God shall enlarge Japheth, and he shall dwell in the tents of Shem; and Canaan shall be his servant."

And Noah lived after the flood three hundred and fifty years. And all the days of Noah were nine hundred and fifty years, and he died.

Now these are the generations of the sons of Noah - Shem, Ham, and Japheth:  
and unto them were sons born after the flood.

The sons of Japheth:

- Gomer,
- and Magog,
- and Madai,
- and Javan,
- and Tubal,
- and Meshech,
- and Tiras.

And the sons of Gomer:

- Ashkenaz,
- and Riphath,
- and Togarmah.

And the sons of Javan:

- Elishah,
- and Tarshish,
- Kittim,
- and Dodanim.

By these were the isles of the Gentiles divided in their lands; every one after his <sup>1</sup>tongue, after their families, in their nations.

*<sup>1</sup>language or dialect*

And the sons of Ham:

- Cush,
- and Mizraim,
- and Phut,
- and Canaan.

And the sons of Cush:

- Seba,
- and Havilah,
- and Sabtah,
- and Raamah,
- and Sabtechah.

And the sons of Raamah:

- Sheba,
- and Dedan.

And Cush begat <sup>1</sup>Nimrod. He began to be a mighty one in the earth. He was a mighty hunter before THE LORD; wherefore it is said, "Even as Nimrod, the mighty hunter before THE LORD." And the beginning of his kingdom was Babel, and Erech, and Accad, and Calneh, in the land of Shinar. *<sup>1</sup>also called Ninus*

Out of that land went forth Asshur and builded Nineveh, and the city Rehoboth, and Calah, and Resen between Nineveh and Calah (the same is a great city).

And Mizraim begat

- Ludim,
- and Anamim,
- and Lehabim,
- and Naphtuhim,
- and Pathrusim,
- and Casluhim (out of whom came Philistim),
- and Caphtorim.

And Canaan begat

- Sidon his first born,
- and Heth,
- and the Jebusite,
- and the Amorite,
- and the Girgasite,
- and the Hivite,
- and the Arkite,
- and the Sinite,
- and the Arvadite,
- and the Zemarite,
- and the Hamathite.

And afterward were the families of the Canaanites spread abroad. And the border of the Canaanites was from Sidon as thou comest to Gerar, unto Gaza as thou goest unto Sodom and Gomorrah and Admah and Zeboim, even unto Lasha. These are the sons of Ham, after their families, after their tongues, in their countries, and in their nations.

Unto Shem also, the <sup>1</sup>father of all the children of Eber, the brother of Japheth the elder, even to him were children born. *<sup>1</sup>fore-father/ancestor*

The children of Shem:

- Elam,
- and Asshur,
- and Arphaxad,
- and Lud,
- and Aram.

And the children of Aram:

- Uz,
- and Hul,
- and Gether,
- and Mash.

And Arphaxad begat

- Salah;

and Salah begat

- <sup>1</sup>Eber.

*<sup>1</sup>fore-father of the Hebrew line*

And unto Eber were born two sons:

- the name of one was <sup>1</sup>Peleg (for in his days was the earth divided); *<sup>1</sup>meaning 'earthquake'*
- and his brother's name was Joktan.

And Joktan begat

- Almodad,
- and Sheleph,
- and Hazarmaveth,
- and Jerah,
- and Hadoram,
- and Uzal,
- and Diklah,
- and Obal,
- and Abimael,
- and Sheba,
- and Ophir,
- and Havilah,
- and Jobab.

All these were the sons of Joktan. And their dwelling was from Mesha as thou goest unto Sephar, a mount of the east. These are the sons of Shem, after their families, after their tongues, in their lands, after their nations.

These are the families of the sons of Noah, after their generations, in their nations; and by these were the nations divided in the earth after the flood. And the whole earth was of one language, and of one speech. And it came to pass, as they journeyed from the east, that they found a plain in the land of Shinar and they dwelt there.

And they said one to another, "Go to, let us make brick, and burn them thoroughly." And they had brick for stone, and slime had they for mortar. And they said, "Go to, let us build us a city, and a tower whose top may reach unto heaven; and let us make us a name, lest we be scattered abroad upon the face of the whole earth."

And THE LORD came down to see the city and the tower which the children of men builded. And THE LORD said, "Behold, the people is one, and they have all one language; and *this* they begin to do! And now nothing will be restrained from them which they have imagined to do! Go to, let Us go down and there confound their language, that they may not understand one another's speech."

So THE LORD scattered them abroad from thence upon the face of all the earth, and they left off to build the city. Therefore is the name of it called *Babel*, because THE LORD did there confound the language of all the earth, and from thence did THE LORD scatter them abroad upon the face of all the earth.

These are the generations of Shem. Shem was an hundred years old and begat Arphaxad two years after the flood. And Shem lived after he begat Arphaxad five hundred years, and begat sons and daughters.

And Arphaxad lived five and thirty years and begat Salah. And Arphaxad lived after he begat Salah four hundred and three years, and begat sons and daughters.

And Salah lived thirty years and begat Eber. And Salah lived after he begat Eber four hundred and three years, and begat sons and daughters.

And Eber lived four and thirty years and begat Peleg. And Eber lived after he begat Peleg four hundred and thirty years, and begat sons and daughters.

And Peleg lived thirty years and begat Reu. And Peleg lived after he begat Reu two hundred and nine years, and begat sons and daughters.

And Reu lived two and thirty years and begat Serug. And Reu lived after he begat Serug two hundred and seven years, and begat sons and daughters.

And Serug lived thirty years and begat Nahor. And Serug lived after he begat Nahor two hundred years, and begat sons and daughters.

And Nahor lived nine and twenty years and begat Terah. And Nahor lived after he begat Terah an hundred and nineteen years, and begat sons and daughters.

And Terah lived seventy years and begat:

- Abram,
- Nahor,
- and Haran.

Now these are the generations of Terah.

Terah begat

- Abram,
- Nahor,
- and Haran;

and Haran begat

- Lot.

And Haran died before his father Terah in the land of his nativity, in Ur of the Chaldees.

And Abram and Nahor took them wives:

- the name of Abram's wife was Sarai;
- and the name of Nahor's wife, Milcah (the daughter of Haran, the father of Milcah and the father of Iscah).

But Sarai was barren; she had no child.

And Terah took Abram (his son),

and Lot the son of Haran (his son's son),

and Sarai his daughter-in-law (his son Abram's wife);

and they went forth with them from Ur of the Chaldees, to go into the land of Canaan; and they came unto Haran, and dwelt there. And the days of Terah were two hundred and five years, and Terah died in Haran.

Now THE LORD had said unto Abram, "Get thee out of thy country, and from thy kindred, and from thy father's House, unto a land that I will show thee. And I will make of thee a great nation, and I will bless thee, and make thy name great; and thou shalt be a blessing. And I will bless them that bless thee, and curse him that curseth thee; and in thee shall all families of the earth be blessed."

So Abram departed as THE LORD had spoken unto him; and Lot went with him. And Abram was seventy and five years old when he departed out of Haran.

And Abram took Sarai his wife, and Lot his brother's son, and all their substance that they had gathered, and the souls that they had gotten in Haran; and they went forth to go into the land of Canaan, and into the land of Canaan they came.

And Abram passed through the land unto the place of Sichem, unto the plain of Moreh. And the Canaanite was then in the land.

And THE LORD appeared unto Abram, and said, "Unto thy seed will I give this land." And there builded he an altar unto THE LORD who appeared unto him.

And he removed from thence unto a mountain on the east of Bethel and pitched his tent, having Bethel on the west and Hai on the east. And there he builded an altar unto THE LORD and called upon the name of THE LORD. And Abram journeyed, going on still toward the south.

And there was a famine in the land. And Abram went down into Egypt to sojourn there, for the famine was grievous in the land.

And it came to pass, when he was come near to enter into Egypt, that he said unto Sarai his wife, "Behold now, I know that thou art a fair woman to look upon. Therefore it shall come to pass, when the Egyptians shall see thee, that they shall say, '*This is his wife*', and they will kill me, but they will save thee alive. Say, I pray thee, thou art my sister, that it may be well with me for thy sake; and my soul shall live because of thee."

And it came to pass, that, when Abram was come into Egypt, the Egyptians beheld the woman that she was very fair. The princes, also, of Pharaoh saw her and commended her before Pharaoh. And the woman was taken into Pharaoh's house. And he entreated Abram well for her sake. And he had sheep, and oxen, and he asses, and menservants, and maidservants, and she asses, and camels.

And THE LORD plagued Pharaoh and his house with great plagues because of Sarai, Abram's wife.

And Pharaoh called Abram and said, "What is this that thou hast done unto me?! Why didst thou not tell me that she was thy wife?! Why saidst thou, '*She is my sister*', so I might have taken her to me to wife?! Now therefore, behold thy wife, take her, and go thy way!"

And Pharaoh commanded his men concerning him. And they sent him away, and his wife, and all that he had.

And Abram went up out of Egypt - he and his wife and all that he had, and Lot with him - into the south. And Abram was very rich in cattle, in silver, and in gold. And he went on his journeys from the south even to Bethel, unto the place where his tent had been at the beginning between Bethel and Hai, unto the place of the altar which he had made there at the first. And there Abram called on the Name of THE LORD.

And Lot also, which went with Abram, had flocks, and herds, and tents. And the land was not able to bear them that they might dwell together (for their substance was great so that they could not dwell together).

And there was a strife between the herdmen of Abram's cattle and the herdmen of Lot's cattle; and the Canaanite and the Perizzite dwelled then in the land.

And Abram said unto Lot, "Let there be no strife, I pray thee, between me and thee, and between my herdmen and thy herdmen; for we be brethren. Is not the whole land before thee? Separate thyself, I pray thee, from me. If thou wilt take the left hand, then I will go to the right; or if thou depart to the right hand, then I will go to the left."

And Lot lifted up his eyes and beheld all the plain of Jordan, that it was well watered every where (before THE LORD destroyed Sodom and Gomorrah), even as the Garden of THE LORD, <sup>1</sup>like the land of Egypt, as thou comest unto Zoar.

<sup>1</sup>NOTE: This indicates that Egypt was a lush tropical land before God reduced it to a vast desert wasteland by the plagues at the time of Moses; therefore film depictions of the life of Moses are incorrect to show Egypt as a desert before the Exodus. Otherwise, one would rightly question why anyone would build a massive empire in the middle of a barren desert.

Then Lot chose him all the plain of Jordan; and Lot journeyed east. And they separated themselves the one from the other. Abram dwelled in the land of Canaan, and Lot dwelled in the cities of the plain, and pitched his tent toward Sodom. But the men of Sodom were wicked and sinners before THE LORD exceedingly.

And THE LORD said unto Abram (after that Lot was separated from him), "Lift up now thine eyes and look from the place where thou art northward, and southward, and eastward, and westward. For all the land which thou seest, to thee will I give it, and to thy seed for ever. And I will make thy seed as the dust of the earth so that, if a man can number the dust of the earth, then shall thy seed also be numbered. Arise, walk through the land in the length of it and in the breadth of it; for I will give it unto thee."

Then Abram removed his tent, and came and dwelt in the plain of Mamre which is in Hebron, and built there an altar unto THE LORD.

And it came to pass in the days of Amraphel king of Shinar, Arioch king of Ellasar, Chedorlaomer king of Elam, and Tidal king of nations, that these made war with Bera king of Sodom, and with Birsha king of Gomorrah, Shinab king of Admah, and Shemeber king of Zeboiim, and the king of Bela (which is Zoar). All these were joined together in the <sup>1</sup>vale of Siddim, which is the <sup>2</sup>salt sea. <sup>1</sup>valley <sup>2</sup>Dead Sea

Twelve years they served Chedorlaomer, and in the thirteenth year they rebelled. And in the fourteenth year came Chedorlaomer, and the kings that were with him, and smote the Rephaim in Ashteroth Karnaim, and the Zuzims in Ham, and the Emims in Shaveh Kiriathaim, and the Horites in their Mount Seir, unto Elparan, which is by the wilderness. And they returned and came to Enmishpat (which is Kadesh), and smote all the country of the Amalekites, and also the Amorites, that dwelt in Hazezontamar.

And there went out the king of Sodom, and the king of Gomorrah, and the king of Admah, and the king of Zeboiim, and the king of Bela (the same is Zoar); and they joined battle with them in the vale of Siddim - with Chedorlaomer the king of Elam, and with Tidal king of nations, and Amraphel king of Shinar, and Arioch king of Ellasar; four kings with five.

And the vale of Siddim was full of slime pits. And the kings of Sodom and Gomorrah fled and fell there; and they that remained fled to the mountain.

And they took all the goods of Sodom and Gomorrah, and all their victuals, and went their way. And they took Lot (Abram's brother's son) who dwelt in Sodom, and his goods, and departed. And there came one that had escaped and told Abram the Hebrew; for he dwelt in the plain of Mamre the Amorite, brother of Eshcol, and brother of Aner. And these were confederate with Abram. And when Abram heard that his <sup>1</sup>brother was taken captive, he armed his trained servants born in his own house (three hundred and eighteen) and pursued them unto Dan. And he divided himself against them, he and his servants, by night, and smote them, and pursued them unto Hobah, which is on the left hand of Damascus.

<sup>1</sup>relative (his nephew)

And he brought back all the goods, and also brought again his brother Lot, and his goods, and the women also, and the people.

And the king of Sodom went out to meet him after his return from the slaughter of Chedorlaomer and of the kings that were with him, at the Valley of Shaveh, which is the king's dale.

And Melchizedek King of Salem brought forth bread and wine; and he was the priest of the Most High God. And he blessed him, and said, "Blessed be Abram of the Most High God, Possessor of heaven and earth! And blessed be the Most High God which hath delivered thine enemies into thy hand!" And <sup>1</sup>he gave <sup>2</sup>him <sup>3</sup>tithes of all. *<sup>1</sup>Abram <sup>2</sup>Melchizedek <sup>3</sup>10% of all that he had*

And the king of Sodom said unto Abram, "Give me the persons, and take the goods to thyself."

And Abram said to the king of Sodom, "I have lift up mine hand unto THE LORD, the Most High God, the Possessor of heaven and earth, that I will not take from a thread even to a shoe-latchet, and that I will not take any thing that is thine, lest thou shouldest say, *'I have made Abram rich'*. <sup>1</sup>Save only that which the young men have eaten, and the portion of the men which went with me, Aner, Eshcol, and Mamre; let them take their portion." *<sup>1</sup>except for*

After these things the Word of THE LORD came unto Abram in a vision, saying, "Fear not, Abram! I am thy Shield and thy Exceeding Great Reward!"

And Abram said, "LORD God, what wilt Thou give me, seeing I go childless, and the steward of my house is this Eliezer of Damascus? And," Abram said, "behold, to me Thou hast given no seed; and, lo, one born in my house is mine heir."

And, behold, the Word of THE LORD came unto him, saying, "This shall *not* be thine heir; but he that shall come forth out of thine *own* bowels shall be thine heir." *<sup>1</sup>he*

And He brought him forth abroad and said, "Look now toward heaven and <sup>1</sup>tell the stars, if thou be able to number them." And He said unto him, "So shall thy seed be!" *<sup>1</sup>count/tell how many*

And he believed in THE LORD, and He counted it to him for righteousness. And He said unto him, "I am THE LORD that brought thee out of Ur of the Chaldees, to give thee this land to inherit it."

And he said, "LORD God, whereby shall I know that I shall inherit it?"

And He said unto him, "Take Me an heifer of three years old, and a she-goat of three years old, and a ram of three years old, and a turtledove, and a young pigeon."

And he took unto Him all these, and divided them in the midst, and laid each piece one against another; but the birds divided he not. And when the fowls came down upon the carcasses, Abram drove them away. And when the sun was going down, a deep sleep fell upon Abram; and, lo, an horror of great darkness fell upon him.

And He said unto Abram, "Know of a surety that thy seed shall be a stranger in a land that is not theirs, and shall serve them; and they shall afflict them four hundred years. And also that nation, whom they shall serve, will I judge. And afterward shall they come out with great substance. And thou shalt go to thy fathers in peace; thou shalt be buried in a good old age. But in the fourth generation they shall come hither again - for the iniquity of the Amorites is not yet full."

And it came to pass that, when the sun went down and it was dark, behold a smoking furnace and a burning lamp that passed between those pieces.

In the same day THE LORD made a covenant with Abram, saying, “Unto thy seed have I given this land, from the river of Egypt unto the great river, the River Euphrates - <sup>1</sup>the Kenites, and the Kenizzites, and the Kadmonites, and the Hittites, and the Perizzites, and the Rephaim, and the Amorites, and the Canaanites, and the Girgashites, and the Jebusites.” <sup>1</sup>*the land of*

Now Sarai, Abram's wife, bare him no children; and she had an handmaid, an Egyptian, whose name was Hagar.

And Sarai said unto Abram, “Behold now, THE LORD hath restrained me from bearing. I pray thee, go in unto my maid; it may be that I may obtain children by her.”

And Abram hearkened to the voice of Sarai. And Sarai, Abram's wife, took Hagar her maid the Egyptian after Abram had dwelt ten years in the land of Canaan, and gave her to her husband Abram to be his wife. And he went in unto Hagar, and she conceived; and when she saw that she had conceived, her mistress was despised in her eyes.

And Sarai said unto Abram, “My wrong be upon thee. I have given my maid into thy bosom; and when she saw that she had conceived, I was despised in her eyes. THE LORD judge between me and thee.”

But Abram said unto Sarai, “Behold, thy maid is in thine hand; do to her as it pleaseth thee.” And when Sarai dealt <sup>1</sup>hardly with her, she fled from her face. <sup>1</sup>*harshly*

And the angel of THE LORD found her by a fountain of water in the wilderness, by the fountain in the way to Shur. And he said, “Hagar, Sarai's maid, whence camest thou? And whither wilt thou go?”

And she said, “I flee from the face of my mistress, Sarai.”

And the angel of THE LORD said unto her, “Return to thy mistress, and submit thyself under her hands.”

And the angel of THE LORD said unto her, “I will multiply thy seed exceedingly, that it shall not be numbered for multitude.”

And the angel of THE LORD said unto her, “Behold, thou art with child and shalt bear a son and shalt call his name *Ishmael*, because THE LORD hath heard thy affliction. And he will be a wild man; his hand will be against every man, and every man's hand against him, and he shall dwell in the presence of all his brethren.”

And she called the name of THE LORD that spake unto her, “Thou God seest me”; for she said, “Have I also here looked after Him that seeth me?” Wherefore the well was called <sup>1</sup>*Beerlahairoi*; behold, it is between Kadesh and Bered. <sup>1</sup>*The Well of He Who Sees Me*

And Hagar bare Abram a son. And Abram called his son's name, which Hagar bare, *Ishmael*. And Abram was <sup>1</sup>fourscore and six years old when Hagar bare Ishmael to Abram. <sup>1</sup>86

And when Abram was ninety years old and nine, THE LORD appeared to Abram and said unto him, “I am the Almighty God! Walk before Me, and be thou perfect. And I will make My covenant between Me and thee, and will multiply thee exceedingly.”

And Abram fell on his face, and God talked with him, saying, "As for Me, behold, My covenant is with thee, and thou shalt be a father of many nations. Neither shall thy name any more be called *Abram*, but thy name shall be *Abraham*; for "a father of many nations" have I made thee. And I will make thee exceeding fruitful, and I will make nations of thee, and kings shall come out of thee.

"And I will establish My covenant between Me and thee and thy seed after thee in their generations for an everlasting covenant, to be a God unto thee and to thy seed after thee. And I will give unto thee and to thy seed after thee the land wherein thou art a stranger - all the land of Canaan - for an everlasting possession; and I will be their God."

And God said unto Abraham, "Thou shalt keep My covenant therefore - thou, and thy seed after thee in their generations. This is My covenant which ye shall keep between Me and you and thy seed after thee: Every man child among you shall be circumcised. And ye shall circumcise the flesh of your foreskin; and it shall be a token of the covenant betwixt Me and you. And he that is eight days old shall be circumcised among you, every man child in your generations, he that is born in the house, or bought with money of any stranger, which is not of thy seed. He that is born in thy house, and he that is bought with thy money, must needs be circumcised; and My covenant shall be in your flesh for an everlasting covenant. And the uncircumcised man child whose flesh of his foreskin is not circumcised, that soul shall be cut off from his people; he hath broken My covenant."

And God said unto Abraham, "As for Sarai thy wife, thou shalt not call her name *Sarai*, but *Sarah* shall her name be. And I will bless her, and give thee a son also of her. Yea, I will bless her, and she shall be a mother of nations; kings of people shall be of her."

Then Abraham fell upon his face and laughed and said in his heart, "Shall a child be born unto him that is an hundred years old? And shall Sarah, that is ninety years old, bear?"

And Abraham said unto God, "O that Ishmael might live before Thee!"

And God said, "Sarah thy wife *shall* bear thee a son indeed! And thou shalt call his name *Isaac*, and I will establish My covenant with him for an everlasting covenant, and with his seed after him.

"And as for Ishmael, I have heard thee. Behold, I have blessed him and will make him fruitful and will multiply him exceedingly. Twelve princes shall he beget, and I will make him a great nation. But My covenant will I establish with *Isaac*, which Sarah shall bear unto thee at this set time in the next year." And He left off talking with him, and God went up from Abraham.

And Abraham took Ishmael his son and all that were born in his house and all that were bought with his money - every male among the men of Abraham's house - and circumcised the flesh of their foreskin in the selfsame day, as God had said unto him. And Abraham was ninety years old and nine when he was circumcised in the flesh of his foreskin. And Ishmael his son was thirteen years old when he was circumcised in the flesh of his foreskin. In the selfsame day was Abraham circumcised, and Ishmael his son. And all the men of his house (born in the house and bought with money of the stranger) were circumcised with him.

And THE LORD appeared unto him in the plains of Mamre. And he sat in the tent door in the heat of the day; and he lift up his eyes and looked, and, lo, three Men stood by him. And when he saw Them he ran to meet Them from the tent door, and bowed himself toward the ground, and said, "My LORD, if now I have found favor in Thy sight, pass not away, I pray Thee, from Thy servant. Let a little water, I pray You, be fetched, and wash Your feet, and rest Yourselves under the tree; and I will fetch a morsel of bread, and comfort Ye your hearts. After that Ye shall pass on; for therefore are Ye come to your servant."

And They said, "So do as thou hast said."

And Abraham hastened into the tent unto Sarah, and said, "Make ready quickly three measures of fine meal, knead it, and make cakes upon the hearth."

And Abraham ran unto the herd and fetched a calf tender and good and gave it unto a young man; and he hastened to dress it. And he took butter and milk and the calf which he had dressed and set it before Them; and he stood by Them under the tree, and They did eat.

And They said unto him, "Where is Sarah thy wife?"

And he said, "Behold, in the tent."

And He said, "I will certainly return unto thee according to the time of life; and, lo, Sarah thy wife shall have a son."

And Sarah heard it in the tent door which was behind Him. Now, Abraham and Sarah were old and well stricken in age; and it ceased to be with Sarah after the manner of women. Therefore Sarah laughed within herself, saying, "After I am waxed old shall I have pleasure, my lord being old also?"

And THE LORD said unto Abraham, "Wherefore did Sarah laugh, saying, 'Shall I of a surety bear a child, which am old'? Is any thing too hard for THE LORD? At the time appointed I will return unto thee, according to the time of life, and Sarah *shall* have a son."

Then Sarah denied, saying, "I laughed not!" (for she was afraid).

And He said, "Nay; but thou *didst* laugh!"

And the Men rose up from thence, and looked toward Sodom; and Abraham went with Them to bring them on the way.

And THE LORD said, "Shall I hide from Abraham that thing which I do, seeing that Abraham shall surely become a great and mighty nation, and all the nations of the earth shall be blessed in him? For I know him, that he will command his children and his household after him, and they shall keep the Way of THE LORD, to do justice and judgment, that THE LORD may bring upon Abraham that which He hath spoken of him."

And THE LORD said, "Because the cry of Sodom and Gomorrah is great, and because their sin is very grievous, I will go down now and see whether they have done altogether according to the cry of it which is come unto Me; and if not, I will know."

And the Men turned their faces from thence and went toward Sodom. But Abraham stood yet before THE LORD. And Abraham drew near and said, "Wilt thou also destroy the righteous with the wicked? <sup>1</sup>Peradventure there be fifty righteous within the city; wilt Thou also destroy and not spare the place for the fifty righteous that are therein? That be far from Thee to do after this manner, to slay the righteous with the wicked, and that the righteous should be as the wicked! That be far from Thee! Shall not the Judge of all the earth do right?"

*'but what if*

And THE LORD said, "If I find in Sodom fifty righteous within the city, then I will spare all the place for their sakes."

And Abraham answered and said, "Behold now, I have taken upon me to speak unto THE LORD, which am but dust and ashes... Peradventure there shall lack five of the fifty righteous. Wilt Thou destroy all the city for lack of five?"

And He said, "If I find there forty and five, I will not destroy it."

And he spake unto Him yet again, and said, "Peradventure there shall be forty found there...?"

And He said, "I will not do it for forty's sake."

And he said unto Him, "Oh let not THE LORD be angry, and I will speak. Peradventure there shall *thirty* be found there...?"

And He said, "I will not do it if I find thirty there."

And he said, "Behold now, I have taken upon me to speak unto THE LORD. Peradventure there shall be twenty found there...?"

And He said, "I will not destroy it for twenty's sake."

And he said, "Oh let not THE LORD be angry, and I will speak yet but this once. Peradventure *ten* shall be found there...?"

And He said, "I will not destroy it for ten's sake."

And THE LORD went His way as soon as He had left communing with Abraham; and Abraham returned unto his place.

And there came two angels to Sodom at even; and Lot sat in the gate of Sodom. And Lot, seeing them, rose up to meet them; and he bowed himself with his face toward the ground. And he said, "Behold now, my lords, turn in, I pray you, into your servant's house and tarry all night, and wash your feet, and ye shall rise up early, and go on your ways."

And they said, "Nay; but we will abide in the street all night."

And he <sup>1</sup>pressed upon them greatly; and they turned in unto him, and entered into his house. And he made them a feast, and did bake unleavened bread, and they did eat. <sup>1</sup>pressured/insisted/urged

But before they lay down, the men of the city, even the men of Sodom, compassed the house round, both old and young, all the people from every quarter. And they called unto Lot and said unto him, "Where are the men which came in to thee this night? Bring them out unto us, that we may know them."

And Lot went out at the door unto them, and shut the door after him, and said, "I pray you, brethren, do not so wickedly! Behold now, I have two daughters which have not known man; let me, I pray you, bring them out unto you, and do ye to them as is good in your eyes. Only, unto these men do nothing; for therefore came they under the shadow of my roof!"

And they said, "Stand back!" And they said again, "This one fellow came in to sojourn, and he will needs be a judge! Now will we deal worse with thee than with them!"

And they pressed sore upon the man, even Lot, and came near to break the door. But the <sup>1</sup>men put forth their hand and pulled Lot into the house to them and shut to the door. And they smote the men that were at the door of the house with blindness, both small and great, so that they wearied themselves to find the door. <sup>1</sup>angels

And the <sup>1</sup>men said unto Lot, "Hast thou here any besides? Son-in-law, and thy sons, and thy daughters, and whatsoever thou hast in the city, bring them out of this place. For we will destroy this place, because the cry of them is waxen great before the face of THE LORD; and THE LORD hath sent us to destroy it." <sup>1</sup>angels

And Lot went out and spake unto his sons-in-law, which married his daughters, and said, "Up! Get you out of this place; for THE LORD will destroy this city!" But he seemed as one <sup>1</sup>that mocked unto his sons-in-law. <sup>1</sup>joked

And when the morning arose, then the angels hastened Lot, saying, "Arise, take thy wife and thy two daughters which are here, lest thou be consumed in the iniquity of the city!"

And while he <sup>1</sup>lingered, the <sup>2</sup>men laid hold upon his hand and upon the hand of his wife and upon the hand of his two daughters (THE LORD being merciful unto him), and they brought him forth and set him without the city. <sup>1</sup>procrastinated/lollygagged <sup>2</sup>angels

And it came to pass, when they had brought them forth abroad, that <sup>1</sup>he said, "Escape for thy life! Look not behind thee, neither stay thou in all the plain; escape to the mountain, lest thou be consumed!" <sup>1</sup>the angel

And Lot said unto them, "Oh, not so, my lord! Behold now, thy servant hath found grace in thy sight and thou hast magnified thy mercy which thou hast showed unto me in saving my life, and I cannot escape to the mountain, lest some evil take me, and I die! Behold now, this city is near to flee unto, and it is a little one; oh, let me escape thither (is it not a little one?) and my soul shall live."

And he said unto him, "See, I have accepted thee concerning this thing also, that I will not overthrow this city for the which thou hast spoken. Haste thee, escape thither; for I cannot do anything till thou be come thither."

Therefore the name of the city was <sup>1</sup>called Zoar. The sun was risen upon the earth when Lot entered into Zoar. <sup>1</sup>renamed Zoar (meaning "Little One"), formerly called Bela

Then THE LORD rained upon Sodom and upon Gomorrah brimstone and fire from THE LORD out of heaven; and He overthrew those cities, and all the plain, and all the inhabitants of the cities, and that which grew upon the ground.

But his wife looked back from behind him, and she became a pillar of salt.

And Abraham gat up early in the morning to the place where he stood before THE LORD, and he looked toward Sodom and Gomorrah and toward all the land of the plain and beheld, and, lo, the smoke of the country went up as the smoke of a furnace.

And it came to pass, when God destroyed the cities of the plain, that God remembered Abraham and sent Lot out of the midst of the overthrow when He overthrew the cities in the which Lot dwelt.

And Lot went up out of Zoar and dwelt in the mountain, and his two daughters with him (for he feared to dwell in Zoar); and he dwelt in a cave, he and his two daughters.

And the firstborn said unto the younger, "Our father is old, and there is not a man in the earth <sup>1</sup>to come in unto us after the manner of all the earth. Come, let us make our father drink wine, and we will lie with him, that we may preserve seed of our father." <sup>1</sup>to marry/have children with

And they made their father drink wine that night. And the firstborn went in and lay with her father; and he perceived not when she lay down, nor when she arose.

And it came to pass on the morrow that the firstborn said unto the younger, "Behold, I lay yesternight with my father. Let us make him drink wine this night also; and go thou in and lie with him, that we may preserve seed of our father."

And they made their father drink wine that night also. And the younger arose and lay with him; and he perceived not when she lay down, nor when she arose.

Thus were both the daughters of Lot with child by their father. And the first born bare a son and called his name *Moab*; the same is the father of the Moabites unto this day. And the younger, she also bare a son and called his name *Benammi*; the same is the father of the children of Ammon unto this day.

And Abraham journeyed from thence toward the south country and dwelled between Kadesh and Shur, and sojourned in Gerar. And Abraham said of Sarah his wife, "She is my sister"; and Abimelech king of Gerar sent and took Sarah.

But God came to Abimelech in a dream by night and said to him, "Behold, thou art but a dead man for the woman which thou hast taken! For she is a man's wife!"

But Abimelech had not come near her; and he said, "LORD, wilt Thou slay also a righteous nation? Said he not unto me, '*She is my sister*'? And she, even she herself said, '*He is my brother*'. In the integrity of my heart and innocency of my hands have I done this."

And God said unto him in a dream, "Yea, I *know* that thou didst this in the integrity of thy heart; for I also withheld thee from sinning against Me. Therefore suffered I thee not to touch her. Now, therefore, restore the man his wife; for he is a prophet, and he shall pray for thee, and thou shalt live. And if thou restore her not, know thou that thou shalt surely die - thou, and all that are thine."

Therefore Abimelech rose early in the morning, and called all his servants, and told all these things in their ears; and the men were sore afraid.

Then Abimelech called Abraham and said unto him, "What hast thou done unto us?! And what have I offended thee that thou hast brought on me and on my kingdom a great sin?! Thou hast done deeds unto me that ought not to be done!" And Abimelech said unto Abraham, "What sawest thou, that thou hast done this thing?!"

And Abraham said, "Because I thought, '*Surely the fear of God is not in this place; and they will slay me for my wife's sake*'. And yet indeed she *is* my sister - she is the daughter of my father but not the daughter of my mother; and she became my wife. And it came to pass, when God caused me to wander from my father's house, that I said unto her, '*This is thy kindness which thou shalt show unto me: at every place whither we shall come, say of me, 'He is my brother*'.'"

And Abimelech took sheep, and oxen, and menservants, and womenservants, and gave them unto Abraham, and restored him Sarah his wife.

And Abimelech said, "Behold, my land is before thee. Dwell where it pleaseth thee."

And unto Sarah he said, "Behold, I have given thy brother a thousand pieces of silver. Behold, he is to thee a covering of the eyes unto all that are with thee, and with all other!" Thus she was <sup>1</sup>reproved.

<sup>1</sup>*repremanded/chastised*

So Abraham prayed unto God. And God healed Abimelech and his wife and his maidservants, and they bare children (for THE LORD had fast closed up all the wombs of the House of Abimelech because of Sarah, Abraham's wife).

And THE LORD visited Sarah as He had said, and THE LORD did unto Sarah as He had spoken - for Sarah conceived and bare Abraham a son in his old age at the set time of which God had spoken to him.

And Abraham called the name of his son that was born unto him, whom Sarah bare to him, *Isaac*. And Abraham circumcised his son Isaac being eight days old, as God had commanded him. And Abraham was an hundred years old when his son Isaac was born unto him.

And Sarah said, "God hath made me to laugh, so that all that hear will laugh with me." And she said, "Who would have said unto Abraham that Sarah should have given children suck? For I have born him a son in his old age!"

And the child grew and was weaned; and Abraham made a great feast the same day that Isaac was weaned.

And Sarah saw the son of Hagar the Egyptian, which she had born unto Abraham, mocking. Wherefore she said unto Abraham, "Cast out this <sup>1</sup>bondwoman and her son! For the son of this bondwoman shall not be heir with my son, even with Isaac!"

*<sup>1</sup>a servant bound by law to her mistress (a female slave, whether under voluntary, indentured or involuntary servitude). Egyptian families often found it a great honor to offer their children freely to the service of Pharaoh; and since the Pharaoh's word was obeyed unconditionally, these servants willingly served those to whom the Pharaoh gave them - in this case, Hagar was given to Sarah by Pharaoh, and the law would require Hagar to serve and obey Sarah as absolutely as she would the Pharaoh himself.*

And the thing was very grievous in Abraham's sight because of his son. And God said unto Abraham, "Let it not be grievous in thy sight because of the lad and because of thy bondwoman; in all that Sarah hath said unto thee, hearken unto her voice. For in *Isaac* shall thy seed be called. And also of the son of the bondwoman will I make a nation because he is thy seed."

And Abraham rose up early in the morning and took bread and a bottle of water and gave it unto Hagar, putting it on her shoulder, and the child, and sent her away; and she departed and wandered in the wilderness of Beersheba.

And the water was spent in the bottle, and she cast the child under one of the shrubs. And she went and sat her down <sup>1</sup>over against him a good way off, as it were a bow shot (for she said, "*Let me not <sup>2</sup>see the death of the child!*"). And she sat over against him and lift up her voice and wept. *<sup>1</sup>across [the way] from <sup>2</sup>witness*

And God heard the voice of the lad; and the angel of God called to Hagar out of heaven, and said unto her, "What <sup>1</sup>aileth thee, Hagar? Fear not; for God hath heard the voice of the lad where he is. Arise, lift up the lad, and hold him in thine hand; for I will make him a great nation." *<sup>1</sup>makes you ill at ease/worried*

And God opened her eyes, and she saw a well of water; and she went, and filled the bottle with water and gave the lad drink. And God was with the lad; and he grew, and dwelt in the wilderness, and became <sup>1</sup>an archer. And he dwelt in the wilderness of Paran; and his mother took him a wife out of the land of Egypt.

*<sup>1</sup>a figurative term; but literally "to bring in abundance", to become great, excel*

And it came to pass at that time that Abimelech, and Phichol the chief captain of his host, spake unto Abraham, saying, "God is with thee in all that thou doest. Now, therefore, swear unto me here by God that thou wilt not deal falsely with me, nor with my son, nor with my son's son; but according to the kindness that I have done unto *thee* thou shalt do unto me and to the land wherein thou hast sojourned."

And Abraham said, "I will swear."

And Abraham reproved Abimelech because of a well of water, which Abimelech's servants had violently taken away.

And Abimelech said, "I wot not who hath done this thing; neither didst thou tell me, neither yet heard I of it but to day." *'know not/I have no knowledge of*

And Abraham took sheep and oxen and gave them unto Abimelech; and both of them made a covenant. And Abraham set seven ewe lambs of the flock by themselves.

And Abimelech said unto Abraham, "What mean these seven ewe lambs which thou hast set by themselves?"

And he said, "For these seven ewe lambs shalt thou take of my hand, that they may be a witness unto me that I have digged this well."

Wherefore he called that place *Beersheba*, because there they sware both of them. Thus they made a covenant at Beersheba. Then Abimelech rose up, and Phichol the chief captain of his host, and they returned into the land of the Philistines.

And Abraham planted a <sup>1</sup>grove in Beersheba and called there on the Name of THE LORD, the Everlasting God. And Abraham sojourned in the Philistines' land many days.

*'A scared garden or sacred grouping of trees used as a place of worship. The Garden of Eden was the first such grove, which Scripture indicates is an earthly representation of the Paradise of heaven in which God Himself dwells. Man was placed in the garden from the beginning as a lovely place to worship the Lord. Here Abraham makes a grove in which to call on the Lord. In time, Abraham's descendants will turn from God and set up idols "in every grove and under every tree" to worship false gods, which will result in the obliteration of Jerusalem and the captivity of the Hebrews by the king of Babylon.*

And it came to pass after these things that God did <sup>1</sup>tempt Abraham and said unto him, "Abraham!"

*'NOTE: It has been said that either God is a liar or that the Scriptures contradict themselves, because here God is tempting Abraham, yet James 1:13 says "Let no man say when he is tempted, 'I am tempted of God'; for God cannot be tempted with evil, neither tempteth He any man." However, the word "tempt" in these two verses do not have the same meaning. One means "to try out" (as when a coach allows a person to "try out" for the football team by putting the player through a battery of qualifying tests). The other means "to seduce" (as when trying to lure someone to do evil). God most certainly tries out His people to see if they will really put their money where their mouth is when they say they love Him, BUT, God will NEVER tempt a person to do evil. Here, God is simply asking Abraham to do something that He knows will be difficult for Abraham, to see if he will be obedient; God isn't trying to seduce him into evil! There's a very big difference between the two biblical uses of the word "Tempt".*

And he said, "Behold, here I am."

And He said, "Take now thy son, thine only son Isaac, whom thou lovest, and get thee into the land of Moriah; and offer him there for a burnt offering upon one of the mountains which I will tell thee of."

And Abraham rose up early in the morning, and saddled his ass, and took two of his young men with him, and Isaac his son, and clave the wood for the burnt offering, and rose up, and went unto the place of which God had told him.

Then on the third day Abraham lifted up his eyes, and saw the place afar off.

And Abraham said unto his young men, "Abide ye here with the ass; and I and the lad will go yonder and worship, and come again to you."

And Abraham took the wood of the burnt offering, and <sup>1</sup>laid it upon Isaac his son; and he took the fire in his hand, and a knife; and they went both of them together." *'placed it on his back, like a backpack, to carry it*

And Isaac spake unto Abraham his father, and said, “My father...”.

And he said, “Here am I, my son.”

And he said, “Behold the fire and the wood – but, where is the lamb for a burnt offering?”

And Abraham said, “My son, God will provide *Himself* a Lamb for a burnt offering.” So they went both of them together.”

*NOTE: This is the first prophetic reference to God coming to be the sacrificial Lamb*

And they came to the place which God had told him of; and Abraham built an altar there, and laid the wood in order, and bound Isaac his son, and laid him on the altar upon the wood. And Abraham stretched forth his hand, and took the knife to slay his son.

And the angel of THE LORD called unto him out of heaven, and said, “Abraham! *Abraham!!*”

And he said, “Here am I!”

And he said, “Lay not thine hand upon the lad, neither do thou any thing unto him!! For now I know that thou fearest God, seeing thou hast not withheld thy son, thine only son from <sup>1</sup>Me!”

*NOTE: It is important to understand that the word “angel” literally means “messenger”. We get the word “evangelist” from this, which is someone who brings God’s Gospel message. The angels of heaven are God’s messengers (evangelists) to mankind. They often act as an oracle, speaking the words that God speaks through them. This is why, throughout Scripture, when an angel speaks it often appears that they are referring to themselves as God, when in fact they are speaking as a mouthpiece for God. For example, here in this verse the angel is speaking on behalf of God, therefore the angel says that Abraham has not withheld his son Isaac from “Me” – that is, Abraham did not withhold Isaac from God - whom the angel represents. When an angel from God appears or speaks, it is all the same as if God Himself appeared or spoke, since God is specifically interacting with man through that angel. Because of the seriousness of an angelic appearance, the apostle Paul warns us to beware of the devil who can appear as “an angel of light”.*

And Abraham lifted up his eyes, and looked, and behold behind him a <sup>1</sup>ram caught in a thicket by his horns; and Abraham went and took the ram, and offered him up for a burnt offering in the stead of his son.

*note that this is a ram – not a lamb – verifying that Abraham was not speaking of a simple lamb to replace Isaac on the altar when he prophesied that God would provide Himself a lamb... God Himself will be the Lamb in due time.*

And Abraham called the name of that place <sup>1</sup>JEHOVAH-JIREH (as it is said to this day, “*In the Mount of THE LORD it shall be seen*”).

*’Jehovah Will See To It’*

And the angel of THE LORD called unto Abraham out of heaven the second time, and said, “By *Myself* have I sworn, saith THE LORD, for because thou hast done this thing and hast not withheld thy son - thine only son - that in blessing I will bless thee, and in multiplying I will multiply thy seed as the stars of the heaven and as the sand which is upon the sea shore, and thy Seed shall possess the gate of His enemies, and in thy Seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed - because thou hast obeyed My voice!”

So Abraham returned unto his young men, and they rose up and went together to Beersheba; and Abraham dwelt at Beersheba.

And it came to pass after these things, that it was told Abraham, saying, “Behold, Milcah, she hath also born children unto thy brother Nahor”:

- Huz his firstborn,
- and Buz his brother,
- and Kemuel (the father of Aram),
- and Chesed,
- and Hazo,
- and Pildash,

- and Jidlaph,
- and Bethuel.

And Bethuel begat:

- Rebekah.

These eight Milcah did bear to Nahor, Abraham's brother. And his <sup>1</sup>concubine, whose name was Reumah, she bare also:

- Tebah,
- and Gaham,
- and Thahash,
- and Maachah.

*<sup>1</sup>NOTE: A concubine is generally a woman in a permanent, marriage-like relationship with a man whom she cannot marry for a specific reason. It may be because she is of lower social rank than the man (including slave status) or because the man is already married. Generally, only men of high economic and social status have concubines. Historically, concubinage was frequently voluntary (by the woman and/or her family's arrangement), as it provided a measure of economic security for the woman involved. When having no legal status but being recognized, or defined in law, concubinage was akin, although inferior, to marriage. The children of a concubine were recognized as legal offspring of the father; their inheritance rights may have been inferior to younger children of a marriage, or they may have received a smaller inheritance. Men frequently used concubines to bear heirs when a wife was not successful in having sons. [Wikipedia]. Curiously enough, there is no known biblical law which prohibits polygamy or concubinage, with the only exception being prohibition to the high priests (in the Old Testament) and the senior church leaders such as bishops (in the New Testament).*

And Sarah was an hundred and seven and twenty years old. These were the years of the life of Sarah. And Sarah died in Kirjatharba (the same is Hebron in the land of Canaan); and Abraham came to mourn for Sarah and to weep for her.

And Abraham stood up from before his dead, and spake unto the sons of Heth, saying, "I am a stranger and a sojourner with you. Give me a possession of a buryingplace with you, that I may bury my dead out of my sight."

And the children of Heth answered Abraham, saying unto him, "Hear us, my lord. Thou art a mighty prince among us. In the <sup>1</sup>choice of our sepulchres bury thy dead; none of us shall withhold from thee his sepulchre, but that thou mayest bury thy dead."

*<sup>1</sup>choicest/best*

And Abraham stood up and bowed himself to the people of the land, even to the children of Heth. And he communed with them, saying, "If it be your mind that I should bury my dead out of my sight, hear me and entreat for me to Ephron the son of Zohar, that he may give me the cave of Machpelah which he hath, which is in the end of his field; for as much money as it is worth he shall give it me for a possession of a buryingplace amongst you."

And Ephron dwelt among the children of Heth. And Ephron the Hittite answered Abraham in the audience of the children of Heth, even of all that went in at the gate of his city, saying, "Nay, my lord, hear me. The field *give* I thee. And the cave that is therein, I *give* it thee - in the presence of the sons of my People give I it thee. Bury thy dead."

And Abraham bowed down himself before the people of the land. And he spake unto Ephron in the audience of the people of the land, saying, "But, if thou wilt *give* it, I pray thee, hear me. I will give thee money for the field; take it of me, and I will bury my dead there."

And Ephron answered Abraham, saying unto him, "My lord, hearken unto me. The land is worth four hundred shekels of silver. What is that betwixt me and thee? Bury therefore thy dead."

And Abraham hearkened unto Ephron; and Abraham weighed to Ephron the silver which he had named in the audience of the sons of Heth - four hundred shekels of silver, <sup>1</sup>current money with the merchant.

*<sup>1</sup>the monetary value of the day*

And the field of Ephron which was in Machpelah (which was before Mamre), the field and the cave which was therein and all the trees that were in the field that were in all the borders round about, were made sure unto Abraham for a possession in the presence of the children of Heth, before all that went in at the gate of his city.

And after this, Abraham buried Sarah his wife in the cave of the field of Machpelah before Mamre (the same is Hebron in the land of Canaan). And the field and the cave that is therein were made sure unto Abraham for a possession of a buryingplace by the sons of Heth.

And Abraham was old and well stricken in age. And THE LORD had blessed Abraham in all things. And Abraham said unto his eldest servant of his house that ruled over all that he had, "Put, I pray thee, thy hand under my thigh and I will make thee swear by THE LORD - the God of heaven and the God of the earth - that thou shalt not take a wife unto my son of the daughters of the Canaanites, among whom I dwell; but thou shalt go unto my country and to my kindred and take a wife unto my son Isaac."

And the servant said unto him, "<sup>1</sup>Peradventure the woman will not be willing to follow me unto this land? Must I needs bring thy son <sup>2</sup>again unto the land from whence thou camest?" <sup>1</sup>but what if <sup>2</sup>back to

And Abraham said unto him, "Beware thou that thou *bring not* my son thither again! THE LORD God of heaven, which took me from my father's house and from the land of my kindred and which spake unto me and that <sup>1</sup>sware unto me, saying, '*Unto thy seed will I give this land*' - He shall send His angel before thee, and thou *shalt* take a wife unto my son from thence. And if the woman will not be willing to follow thee, then thou shalt be clear from this my oath. Only, bring not my son thither again." <sup>1</sup>promised with an oath

And the servant put his hand under the thigh of Abraham his master and sware to him concerning that matter. And the servant took ten camels of the camels of his master and departed (for all the goods of his master were <sup>1</sup>in his hand). And he arose and went to Mesopotamia, unto the city of Nahor. And he made his camels to kneel down without the city by a well of water at the time of the evening, even the time that women go out to draw water. <sup>1</sup>under his control/authority

And he said, "O LORD God of my master Abraham, I pray Thee, send me good speed this day and show kindness unto my master Abraham. Behold, I stand here by the well of water, and the daughters of the men of the city come out to draw water. And let it come to pass that the damsel to whom I shall say, "*Let down thy pitcher, I pray thee, that I may drink*", and she shall say, "*Drink, and I will give thy camels drink also*" - let the same be she that Thou hast appointed for Thy servant Isaac; and thereby shall I know that Thou hast showed kindness unto my master."

And it came to pass, before he had done speaking, that, behold, Rebekah came out (who was born to Bethuel, son of Milcah the wife of Nahor, Abraham's brother) with her pitcher upon her shoulder. And the damsel was very fair to look upon, a virgin, neither had any man known her. And she went down to the well, and filled her pitcher, and came up.

And the servant ran to meet her, and said, "Let me, I pray thee, drink a little water of thy pitcher."

And she said, "Drink, my lord." And she <sup>1</sup>hasted, and let down her pitcher upon her hand, and gave him drink. And when she had done giving him drink, she said, "I will draw water for thy camels also, until they have done drinking." <sup>1</sup>hurried

And she hasted, and emptied her pitcher into the trough, and ran again unto the well to draw water, and drew for all his camels.

And the man, wondering at her, held his peace to <sup>1</sup>wit whether THE LORD had made his journey prosperous or not.

*<sup>1</sup>see/know/learn/discover*

And it came to pass, as the camels had done drinking, that the man took a golden earring of half a shekel weight and two bracelets for her hands of ten shekels weight of gold and said, "Whose daughter art thou? Tell me, I pray thee, is there room in thy father's house for us to lodge in?"

And she said unto him, "I am the daughter of Bethuel, the son of Milcah which she bare unto Nahor." She said moreover unto him, "We have both straw and provender enough, and room to lodge in."

And the man bowed down his head and worshipped THE LORD. And he said, "Blessed be THE LORD God of my master Abraham who hath not left destitute my master of His mercy and His Truth! I being <sup>1</sup>in the way, THE LORD led me to the house of my master's brethren!"

*<sup>1</sup>on the path/road*

And the damsel ran and told them of her mother's house these things. And Rebekah had a brother, and his name was Laban. And Laban ran out unto the man, unto the well.

And it came to pass, when he saw the earring and bracelets upon his sister's hands, and when he heard the words of Rebekah his sister, saying, "...Thus spake the man unto me...", that he came unto the man; and, behold, he stood by the camels at the well.

And he said, "Come in, thou blessed of THE LORD! Wherefore standest thou without? For I have prepared the house, and room for the camels."

And the man came into the house; and he ungirded his camels, and gave straw and provender for the camels, and water to wash his feet and the men's feet that were with him. And there was set meat before him to eat, but he said, "I will not eat until I have told mine errand."

And he said, "Speak on."

And he said, "I am Abraham's servant. And THE LORD hath blessed my master greatly; and he is become great. And He hath given him flocks, and herds, and silver, and gold, and menservants, and maidservants, and camels, and asses. And Sarah (my master's wife) bare a son to my master when she was old, and unto him hath he given all that he hath. And my master made me swear, saying, 'Thou shalt not take a wife to my son of the daughters of the Canaanites, in whose land I dwell; but thou shalt go unto my father's house, and to my kindred, and take a wife unto my son.' And I said unto my master, 'Peradventure the woman will not follow me?' And he said unto me, 'THE LORD, before whom I walk, will send His angel with thee and prosper thy way; and thou shalt take a wife for my son of my kindred, and of my father's house. Then shalt thou be clear from this my oath when thou comest to my kindred; and if they give not thee one, thou shalt be clear from my oath.'

"And I came this day unto the well and said, 'O LORD God of my master Abraham, if now Thou do prosper my way which I go, behold, I stand by the well of water; and it shall come to pass that when the virgin cometh forth to draw water and I say to her, 'Give me, I pray thee, a little water of thy pitcher to drink', and she say to me, 'Both drink thou, and I will also draw for thy camels,' let the same be the woman whom THE LORD hath appointed out for my master's son'.

"And before I had done speaking in mine heart, behold, Rebekah came forth with her pitcher on her shoulder; and she went down unto the well and drew water. And I said unto her, 'Let me drink, I pray thee.' And she made haste and let down her pitcher from her shoulder and said, 'Drink, and I will give thy camels drink also'. So I drank, and she made the camels drink also. And I asked her and said, 'Whose daughter art thou?' And she said, 'The daughter of Bethuel, Nahor's son, whom Milcah bare unto him'. And I put the earring upon her face, and the bracelets upon her hands. And I bowed down my head and worshipped THE LORD and blessed THE LORD God of my master Abraham which had led me in the right way

to take my master's brother's daughter unto his son. And now, if ye will deal kindly and truly with my master, tell me; and if not, tell me; that I may turn to the right hand, or to the left.”

Then Laban and Bethuel answered and said, “The thing proceedeth from THE LORD; we cannot speak unto thee bad or good. Behold, Rebekah is before thee; take her and go, and let her be thy master's son's wife, as THE LORD hath spoken.”

And it came to pass that, when Abraham's servant heard their words, he worshipped THE LORD, bowing himself to the earth. And the servant brought forth jewels of silver, and jewels of gold, and raiment, and gave them to Rebekah. He gave also to her brother and to her mother precious things.

And they did eat and drink, he and the men that were with him, and tarried all night; and they rose up in the morning, and he said, “Send me away unto my master.”

And her brother and her mother said, “Let the damsel abide with us a few days, at the least ten; after that she shall go.”

And he said unto them, “Hinder me not, seeing THE LORD hath prospered my way; send me away that I may go to my master.”

And they said, “We will call the damsel and inquire at her mouth.”

And they called Rebekah and said unto her, “Wilt thou go with this man?”

And she said, “I will go.”

And they sent away Rebekah their sister, and her nurse, and Abraham's servant and his men.

And they blessed Rebekah and said unto her, “Thou art our sister. Be thou the mother of thousands of millions, and let thy seed possess the gate of those which hate them!”

And Rebekah arose, and her damsels, and they rode upon the camels and followed the man; and the servant took Rebekah and went his way.

And Isaac came from the way of the well Lahairoi (for he dwelt in the south country); and Isaac went out to meditate in the field at the eventide. And he lifted up his eyes and saw, and, behold, the camels were coming. And Rebekah lifted up her eyes; and, when she saw Isaac, she lighted off the camel (for she had said unto the servant, “What man is this that walketh in the field to meet us?” And the servant had said, “It is my master”). Therefore she took a vail and covered herself).

And the servant told Isaac all things that he had done. And Isaac brought her into his mother Sarah's tent, and took Rebekah, and she became his wife; and he loved her. And Isaac was comforted after his mother's death.

Then again Abraham took a wife, and her name was Keturah. And she bare him:

- Zimran,
- and Jokshan,
- and Medan,
- Midian,
- and Ishbak,
- and Shuah.

And Jokshan begat:

- Sheba,
- and Dedan.

And the sons of Dedan were:

- Asshurim,
- and Letushim,
- and Leummim.

And the sons of Midian:

- Ephah,
- and Epher,
- and Hanoch,
- and Abidah,
- and Eldaah.

All these were the children of Keturah.

And Abraham gave all that he had unto Isaac. But unto the sons of the concubines which Abraham had, Abraham gave gifts and sent them away from Isaac his son while he yet lived, eastward, unto the east country. And these are the days of the years of Abraham's life which he lived: an hundred threescore and fifteen years. Then Abraham gave up the <sup>1</sup>ghost and died in a good old age, an old man and full of years, and was gathered to his people. And his sons Isaac and Ishmael buried him in the cave of Machpelah in the field of Ephron the son of Zohar the Hittite which is before Mamre - the field which Abraham purchased of the sons of Heth. There was Abraham buried, and Sarah his wife.

*<sup>1</sup>the breath of life/spirit ("ghost" is a term for the spirit after death of the body)*

And it came to pass after the death of Abraham that God blessed his son Isaac; and Isaac dwelt by the well Lahairoi.

Now these are the generations of Ishmael, Abraham's son,  
whom Hagar the Egyptian, Sarah's handmaid, bare unto Abraham.

And these are the names of the sons of Ishmael, by their names, according to their generations:

- the firstborn of Ishmael, Nebajoth,
- and Kedar,
- and Adbeel,
- and Mibsam,
- and Mishma,
- and Dumah,
- and Massa,
- Hadar,
- and Tema,
- Jetur,
- Naphish,
- and Kedemah.

These are the sons of Ishmael, and these are their names, by their towns, and by their castles; twelve princes according to their nations.

And these are the years of the life of Ishmael: an hundred and thirty and seven years. And he gave up the ghost and died and was gathered unto his people. And they dwelt from Havilah unto Shur that is before Egypt as thou goest toward Assyria. And he died in the presence of all his brethren.

And these are the generations of Isaac, Abraham's son.

Abraham begat Isaac; and Isaac was forty years old when he took Rebekah to wife - the daughter of Bethuel the Syrian of Padanaram, the sister to Laban the Syrian.

And Isaac entreated THE LORD for his wife, because she was barren; and THE LORD was entreated of him, and Rebekah his wife conceived. And the children struggled together within her; and she said, "If it be so, why am I thus?"

And she went to inquire of THE LORD. And THE LORD said unto her, "Two nations are in thy womb, and two manner of people shall be separated from thy bowels; and the one people shall be stronger than the other people, and the elder shall serve the younger."

And when her days to be delivered were fulfilled, behold, there were twins in her womb.

- And the first came out red, all over like a hairy garment; and they called his name Esau.
- And after that came his brother out, and his hand took hold on Esau's heel; and his name was called Jacob.

And Isaac was <sup>1</sup>threescore years old when she bare them. And the boys grew. And Esau was a cunning hunter, a man of the field; and Jacob was a plain man, dwelling in tents. And Isaac loved Esau because <sup>2</sup>he did eat of <sup>3</sup>his <sup>4</sup>venison; but Rebekah loved Jacob. *<sup>1</sup>60 <sup>2</sup>Isaac <sup>3</sup>Esau's <sup>4</sup>meal made of animals captured in a hunt*

And Jacob <sup>1</sup>sod <sup>2</sup>pottage. And Esau came from the field, and he was <sup>3</sup>faint. And Esau said to Jacob, "Feed me, I pray thee, with that same red pottage; for I am faint" (therefore was his name called <sup>4</sup>Edom).

*'boil/seethe <sup>2</sup>food boiled in a pot <sup>3</sup>famished and weary <sup>4</sup>meaning "Reddish"*

And Jacob said, "Sell me this day thy birthright."

And Esau said, "Behold, I am at the point to die, and what profit shall this birthright do to me?"

And Jacob said, "Swear to me this day". And he swore unto him, and he sold his birthright unto Jacob. Then Jacob gave Esau bread and pottage of lentils; and he did eat and drink, and rose up, and went his way. Thus Esau despised his birthright.

And there was a famine in the land (beside the first famine that was in the days of Abraham), and Isaac went unto Abimelech king of the Philistines <sup>1</sup>unto Gerar. *<sup>1</sup>to the city of Gerar (which is of Gaza)*

And THE LORD appeared unto him and said, "Go not down into Egypt. Dwell in the land which I shall tell thee of. Sojourn in this land and I will be with thee and will bless thee; for unto thee and unto thy seed I will give all these countries, and I will perform the oath which I swore unto Abraham thy father, and I will make thy seed to multiply as the stars of heaven, and will give unto thy seed all these countries; and in thy Seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed - because that Abraham obeyed My voice and kept My charge, My commandments, My statutes, and My laws."

And Isaac dwelt in Gerar, and the men of the place asked him of his wife; and he said, "She is my sister", for he feared to say "She is my wife" ("lest," said he, "the men of the place should kill me for Rebekah" - because she was fair to look upon).

And it came to pass when he had been there a long time, that Abimelech king of the Philistines looked out at a window and saw, and, behold, Isaac was <sup>1</sup>sporting with Rebekah his wife.

*<sup>1</sup>in this instance it means to laugh and have fun in an intimate or romantic way*

And Abimelech called Isaac, and said, "Behold, of a surety she is thy wife! And how saidst thou, '*She is my sister?*'"

And Isaac said unto him, "Because I said, '*Lest I <sup>1</sup>die for her.*'" *<sup>1</sup>get killed*

And Abimelech said, "What is this thou hast done unto us?! One of the people might <sup>1</sup>lightly have <sup>2</sup>lien with thy wife and thou shouldest have brought guiltiness upon us!" *<sup>1</sup>easily <sup>2</sup>lie down with (have sex with)*

And Abimelech charged all his people, saying, "He that toucheth this man or his wife shall surely be put to death!!"

Then Isaac sowed in that land, and received in the same year an hundredfold; and THE LORD blessed him. And the man waxed great, and went forward, and grew until he became very great; for he had possession of flocks, and possession of herds, and great store of servants - and the Philistines envied him. For all the wells which his father's servants had digged in the days of Abraham his father, the Philistines had stopped them, and filled them with earth.

And Abimelech said unto Isaac, "Go from us; for thou art much mightier than we."

And Isaac departed thence, and pitched his tent in the Valley of Gerar, and dwelt there. And Isaac digged again the wells of water which they had digged in the days of Abraham his father; for the Philistines had stopped them after the death of Abraham. And he called their names after the names by which his father had called them. And Isaac's servants digged in the valley and found there a well of springing water. And the herdmen of Gerar did strive with Isaac's herdmen, saying, "The water is ours!" And he called the name of the well *Esek* because they strove with him. And they digged another well and strove for that also, and he called the name of it *Sitnah*. And he removed from thence and digged another well, and for that they strove not; and he called the name of it *Rehoboth* and he said, "For now THE LORD hath made room for us and we shall be fruitful in the land." And he went up from thence to Beersheba.

And THE LORD appeared unto him the same night, and said, "I am the God of Abraham thy father. Fear not, for I am with thee and will bless thee and multiply thy seed for My servant Abraham's sake!"

And he builded an altar there, and called upon the name of THE LORD, and pitched his tent there. And there Isaac's servants digged a well. Then Abimelech went to him from Gerar, and Ahuzzath one of his friends, and Phichol the chief captain of his army. And Isaac said unto them, "Wherefore come ye to me, seeing ye hate me and have sent me away from you?"

And they said, "We saw certainly that THE LORD was with thee; and we said, '*Let there be now an oath betwixt us - even betwixt us and thee - and let us make a covenant with thee,*' that thou wilt do us no hurt, as we have not touched thee, and as we have done unto thee nothing but good and have sent thee away in peace; thou art now the blessed of THE LORD." And he made them a feast, and they did eat and drink. And they rose up betimes in the morning, and swore one to another. And Isaac sent them away, and they departed from him in peace.

And it came to pass the same day that Isaac's servants came and told him concerning the well which they had digged, and said unto him, "We have found water!" And he called it *Shebah* (therefore the name of the city is Beersheba unto this day).

And Esau was forty years old when he took to wife:

- Judith, the daughter of Beeri the Hittite,
- and Bashemath, the daughter of Elon the Hittite,

which were a grief of mind unto <sup>1</sup>Isaac and to Rebekah.

*<sup>1</sup>his parents*

And it came to pass that when Isaac was old and his eyes were dim so that he could not see, he called Esau his eldest son and said unto him, "My son..."

And he said unto him, "Behold, here am I."

And he said, "Behold now, I am old. I know not the day of my death. Now therefore take, I pray thee, thy weapons, thy quiver and thy bow, and go out to the field and take me some venison; and make me savory meat such as I love, and bring it to me that I may eat, that my soul may bless thee before I die."

And Rebekah heard when Isaac spake to Esau his son. And Esau went to the field to hunt for venison and to bring it. And Rebekah spake unto Jacob her son, saying, "Behold, I heard thy father speak unto Esau thy brother, saying, '*Bring me venison and make me savory meat, that I may eat and bless thee before THE LORD before my death.*' Now therefore, my son, obey my voice according to that which I command thee. Go now to the flock and fetch me from thence two good kids of the goats; and I will make them savory meat for thy father such as he loveth. And thou shalt bring it to thy father that he may eat and that he may bless thee before his death."

And Jacob said to Rebekah his mother, "Behold, Esau my brother is a hairy man, and I am a smooth man. My father peradventure will feel me, and I shall seem to him as a deceiver; and I shall bring a *curse* upon me and not a blessing."

And his mother said unto him, "Upon *me* be thy curse, my son! Only, obey my voice, and go fetch me them."

And he went and fetched, and brought them to his mother; and his mother made savory meat such as his father loved. And Rebekah took goodly raiment of her eldest son Esau which were with her in the house, and put them upon Jacob her younger son. And she put the skins of the kids of the goats upon his hands and upon the smooth of his neck. And she gave the savory meat and the bread which she had prepared into the hand of her son Jacob.

And he came unto his father and said, "My father..."

And he said, "Here am I. Who art thou, my son?"

And Jacob said unto his father, "I am Esau, thy first born. I have done according as thou <sup>1</sup>bade<sup>st</sup> me. Arise, I pray thee; sit and eat of my venison, that thy soul may bless me." <sup>1</sup>bade/requested of me

And Isaac said unto his son, "How is it that thou hast found it so quickly, my son?"

And he said, "Because THE LORD thy God brought it to me."

And Isaac said unto Jacob, "Come near, I pray thee, that I may feel thee, my son, whether thou be my very son Esau or not."

And Jacob went near unto Isaac his father; and he felt him, and said, "The *voice* is Jacob's voice, but the hands are the hands of Esau."

And he discerned him not, because his hands were hairy as his brother Esau's hands. So he blessed him.

And he said, "Art thou my very son Esau?"

And he said, "I am."

And he said, "Bring it near to me and I will eat of my son's venison, that my soul may bless thee." And he brought it near to him and he did eat; and he brought him wine and he drank.

And his father Isaac said unto him, "Come near now, and kiss me, my son."

And he came near and kissed him. And he smelled the smell of his raiment, and blessed him, and said, "See, the smell of my son is as the smell of a field which THE LORD hath blessed. Therefore, God give thee of the dew of heaven and the fatness of the earth and plenty of corn and wine. Let people serve thee and nations bow down to thee. Be lord over thy brethren, and let thy mother's sons bow down to thee. Cursed be every one that curseth thee, and blessed be he that blesseth thee."

And it came to pass, as soon as Isaac had made an end of blessing Jacob, and Jacob was yet scarce gone out from the presence of Isaac his father, that Esau his brother came in from his hunting.

And he also had made savory meat and brought it unto his father, and said unto his father, "Let my father arise and eat of his son's venison, that thy soul may bless me."

And Isaac his father said unto him, "Who art thou?"

And he said, "I am thy son... thy firstborn... *Esau*."

And Isaac trembled very exceedingly, and said, "*Who?! Where is he that hath taken venison and brought it me, and I have eaten of all before thou camest and have blessed him?! Yea, and he shall be blessed.*"

And when Esau heard the words of his father, he cried with a great and exceeding bitter cry, and said unto his father, "Bless me - even *me also*, O my father!!"

And he said, "Thy brother came with subtilty and hath taken away thy blessing."

And he said, "Is not he rightly named <sup>1</sup>*Jacob?! For he hath supplanted me these two times - he took away my birthright, and, behold, now he hath taken away my blessing!*" And he said, "Hast thou not reserved a blessing for *me?*"  
<sup>1</sup>*supplanter - one who takes and holds another person's position of power/authority*

And Isaac answered and said unto Esau, "Behold, I have made him thy lord, and all his brethren have I given to him for servants; and with corn and wine have I sustained him. And what shall I do now unto *thee*, my son?"

And Esau said unto his father, "Hast thou but *one* blessing, my father? Bless me, even me also, O my father!" And Esau lifted up his voice and wept.

And Isaac his father answered and said unto him, "Behold, thy dwelling shall be the fatness of the earth and of the dew of heaven from above; and by thy sword shalt thou live, and shalt serve thy brother; and it shall come to pass when thou shalt have the dominion, that thou shalt break his yoke from off thy neck."

And Esau hated Jacob because of the blessing wherewith his father blessed him; and Esau said in his heart, "The days of <sup>1</sup>mourning for my father are at hand; then will I slay my brother Jacob!"  
<sup>1</sup>*the funeral*

And these words of Esau her elder son were told to Rebekah, and she sent and called Jacob her younger son, and said unto him, "Behold, thy brother Esau, as touching thee, doth comfort himself, purposing to kill thee! Now therefore, my son, obey my voice; arise, flee thou to Laban my brother, <sup>1</sup>to Haran, and tarry with

him a few days until thy brother's fury turn away, until thy brother's anger turn away from thee and he forget that which thou hast done to him. Then I will send and fetch thee from thence. Why should I be deprived also of you both in one day?" <sup>1</sup>*in*

And Rebekah said to Isaac, "I am <sup>1</sup>weary of my life because of the daughters of Heth! If Jacob take a wife of the daughters of Heth, such as these which are of the daughters of the land, what good shall my life do me?" <sup>1</sup>*a figure of speech, as "I'm sick to death of"*

And Isaac called Jacob, and blessed him, and charged him, and said unto him, "Thou shalt not take a wife of the daughters of Canaan. Arise, go to Padanaram, to the house of Bethuel, thy mother's father; and take thee a wife from thence of the daughters of Laban, thy mother's brother. And God Almighty bless thee and make thee fruitful and multiply thee that thou mayest be a multitude of people, and give thee the blessing of Abraham, to thee and to thy seed with thee, that thou mayest inherit the land wherein thou art a stranger, which God gave unto Abraham."

And Isaac sent away Jacob, and he went to Padanaram unto Laban, son of Bethuel the Syrian, the brother of Rebekah, Jacob's and Esau's mother. When Esau saw that Isaac had blessed Jacob and sent him away to Padanaram to take him a wife from thence, and that as he blessed him he gave him a charge, saying, '*Thou shalt not take a wife of the daughters of Canaan*'; and that Jacob obeyed his father and his mother and was gone to Padanaram; and Esau, seeing that the daughters of Canaan pleased not Isaac his father, then went Esau <sup>1</sup>unto Ishmael, and took unto the wives which he had, Mahalath - the daughter of Ishmael (Abraham's son), the sister of <sup>2</sup>Nebajoth, to be his wife. <sup>1</sup>*unto his half-uncle Ishmael* <sup>2</sup>*Ishmael's first born son*

And Jacob went out from Beersheba and went toward Haran. And he <sup>1</sup>lighted upon a certain place and tarried there all night because the sun was set; and he took of the stones of that place, and put them for his pillows, and lay down in that place to sleep. And he dreamed and, behold, a ladder set up on the earth, and the top of it reached to heaven; and behold, the angels of God ascending and descending on it. <sup>1</sup>*settled*

And, behold, THE LORD stood above it, and said, "I am THE LORD God of Abraham thy father, and the God of Isaac. The land whereon thou liest, to thee will I give it, and to thy seed; and thy seed shall be as the dust of the earth, and thou shalt spread abroad to the west, and to the east, and to the north, and to the south. And in thee and in thy seed shall all the families of the earth be blessed. And, behold, I am with thee and will keep thee in all places whither thou goest, and will bring thee again into this land; for I will not leave thee until I have done that which I have spoken to thee of."

And Jacob awaked out of his sleep, and he said, "Surely THE LORD is in this place and I knew it not!" And he was afraid, and said, "How dreadful is this place! This is none other but the House of God, and this is the gate of heaven!"

And Jacob rose up early in the morning and took the stone that he had put for his pillows, and set it up for a pillar, and poured oil upon the top of it. And he called the name of that place <sup>1</sup>*Bethel* (but the name of that city was called Luz <sup>2</sup>at the first). <sup>1</sup>*House of God* <sup>2</sup>*originally*

And Jacob vowed a vow, saying, "If God will be with me and will keep me in this way that I go and will give me bread to eat and raiment to put on so that I come again to my father's house in peace, then shall THE LORD be my God. And this stone, which I have set for a pillar, shall be God's House. And of all that Thou shalt give me I will surely give the tenth unto Thee."

Then Jacob went on his journey and came into the land of the people of the east. And he looked, and behold a well in the field, and, lo, there were three flocks of sheep lying by it; for out of that well they watered the flocks. And a great stone was upon the well's mouth. And thither were all the flocks gathered.

And they rolled the stone from the well's mouth, and watered the sheep, and put the stone again upon the well's mouth in his place.

And Jacob said unto them, "My brethren, whence be ye?"

And they said, "Of Haran are we."

And he said unto them, "Know ye Laban the son of Nahor?"

And they said, "We know him."

And he said unto them, "Is he well?"

And they said, "He is well. And, behold, Rachel his daughter cometh with the sheep."

And he said, "Lo, it is yet high day, neither is it time that the cattle should be gathered together. Water ye the sheep, and go and feed them."

And they said, "We cannot, until all the flocks be gathered together, and till they roll the stone from the well's mouth; then we water the sheep."

And while he yet spake with them, Rachel came with her father's sheep; for she kept them. And it came to pass, when Jacob saw Rachel the daughter of Laban (his mother's brother) and the sheep of Laban his mother's brother, that Jacob went near and rolled the stone from the well's mouth and watered the flock of Laban his mother's brother.

And Jacob kissed Rachel, and lifted up his voice, and wept. And Jacob told Rachel that he was her father's <sup>1</sup>brother and that he was Rebekah's son; and she ran and told her father. And it came to pass, when Laban heard the tidings of Jacob his sister's son, that he ran to meet him, and embraced him, and kissed him, and brought him to his house. And he told Laban all these things. <sup>1</sup>kin

And Laban said to him, "Surely thou art my bone and my flesh!"

And he abode with him the space of a month. And Laban said unto Jacob, "<sup>1</sup>Because thou art my brother, shouldest thou therefore serve me for nought? Tell me, what shall thy wages be?" <sup>1</sup>just because we're related

And Laban had two daughters:

- the name of the elder was Leah,
- and the name of the younger was Rachel.

Leah was <sup>1</sup>tender eyed; but Rachel was beautiful and well favored.

<sup>1</sup>weak (probably bad eyesight, but could also mean unattractive to the eyes)

And Jacob loved Rachel, and said, "I will serve thee seven years for Rachel thy younger daughter."

And Laban said, "It is better that I give her to *thee* than that I should give her to another man. Abide with me." And Jacob served seven years for Rachel; and they seemed unto him but a few days, for the love he had to her.

And Jacob said unto Laban, "Give me my wife, for my days are fulfilled, that I may go in unto her." And Laban gathered together all the men of the place and made a feast. And it came to pass in the evening that <sup>1</sup>he took Leah his daughter and brought her to <sup>2</sup>him; and <sup>3</sup>he went in unto her.

<sup>1</sup>Laban <sup>2</sup>Jacob <sup>3</sup>Jacob made love to [married] Leah

And Laban gave unto his daughter Leah:

- *Zilpah* (his maid) for an handmaid.

And it came to pass that in the morning, behold, it was Leah. And he said to Laban, "What is this thou hast done unto me?! Did not I serve with thee for *Rachel*? Wherefore then hast thou <sup>1</sup>beguiled me?" <sup>1</sup>*deceived*

And Laban said, "It must not be so done in our country to give the younger before the firstborn. Fulfil her week, and we will give thee this also for the service which thou shalt serve with me yet seven other years."

And Jacob did so, and fulfilled her week; and he gave him Rachel his daughter to wife also.

And Laban gave to Rachel his daughter:

- *Bilhah* (his handmaid) to be her maid.

And he went in also unto Rachel, and he loved also Rachel more than Leah, and served with <sup>1</sup>him yet seven other years. And when THE LORD saw that Leah was <sup>2</sup>hated, He opened her womb - but Rachel was barren. <sup>1</sup>*Laban* <sup>2</sup>*unloved*

And Leah conceived and bare a son, and she called his name:

- Reuben (for she said, "Surely THE LORD hath looked upon my affliction; *now* therefore my husband will love me").

And she conceived again and bare a son, and said, "Because THE LORD hath heard I was hated, He hath therefore given me this son also":

- and she called his name Simeon.

And she conceived again and bare a son, and said, "Now this time will my husband be joined unto me, because I have born him three sons":

- therefore was his name called Levi.

And she conceived again and bare a son, and she said, "Now will I praise THE LORD":

- therefore she called his name Judah.

And <sup>1</sup>left bearing.

<sup>1</sup>*stopped having children*

And when Rachel saw that she bare Jacob no children, Rachel envied her sister, and said unto Jacob, "Give me children, or else I die!"

And Jacob's anger was kindled against Rachel, and he said, "Am I in God's stead who hath withheld from thee the fruit of the womb?!"

And she said, "Behold my maid, Bilhah; go in unto her; and she shall bear upon my knees, that I may also have children by her."

And she gave him Bilhah, her handmaid, to wife, and Jacob went in unto her. And Bilhah conceived, and bare Jacob a son.

And Rachel said, "God hath judged me, and hath also heard my voice, and hath given me a son":

- therefore called she his name Dan.

And Bilhah, Rachel's maid, conceived again, and bare Jacob a second son. And Rachel said, "With great wrestlings have I wrestled with my sister, and I have prevailed":

- and she called his name Naphtali.

When Leah saw that <sup>1</sup>she had left bearing, she took Zilpah, her maid, and gave her Jacob to wife. And Zilpah, Leah's maid, bare Jacob a son. And Leah said, "A troop cometh": <sup>1</sup>she herself

- and she called his name Gad.

And Zilpah, Leah's maid, bare Jacob a second son. And Leah said, "Happy am I, for the daughters will call me blessed":

- and she called his name Asher.

And Reuben went, in the days of wheat harvest, and found <sup>1</sup>mandrakes in the field and brought them unto his mother Leah. <sup>1</sup>a plant believed to aid fertility

Then Rachel said to Leah, "Give me, I pray thee, of thy son's mandrakes."

And she said unto her, "Is it a small matter that thou hast taken my husband? And wouldest thou take away my son's mandrakes also?!"

And Rachel said, "Therefore, he shall lie with thee to night for thy son's mandrakes."

And Jacob came out of the field in the evening, and Leah went out to meet him, and said, "Thou must come in unto me; for surely I have hired thee with my son's mandrakes."

And he lay with her that night. And God hearkened unto Leah, and she conceived, and bare Jacob the fifth son.

And Leah said, "God hath given me my hire, because I have given my maiden to my husband":

- and she called his name Issachar.

And Leah conceived again and bare Jacob <sup>1</sup>the sixth son. And Leah said, "God hath endued me with a good dowry; now will my husband dwell with me, because I have born him six sons": <sup>1</sup>her

- and she called his name Zebulun.

And afterwards she bare a daughter:

- and called her name Dinah.

And God remembered Rachel, and God hearkened to her, and opened her womb. And she conceived and bare a son, and said, "God hath taken away my reproach":

- and she called his name Joseph, and said, "THE LORD shall add to me another son."

And it came to pass, when Rachel had born Joseph, that Jacob said unto Laban, "Send me away, that I may go unto mine own place and to my country. Give me my wives and my children for whom I have served thee, and let me go; for thou knowest my service which I have done thee."

And Laban said unto him, "I pray thee, if I have found favor in thine eyes, tarry; for I have learned by experience that THE LORD hath blessed me for thy sake." And he said, "Appoint me thy wages, and I will give it."

And he said unto him, "Thou knowest how I have served thee, and how thy cattle was with me. For it was little which thou hadst before I came, and it is now increased unto a multitude; and THE LORD hath blessed thee since my coming. And now, when shall I provide for mine *own* house also?"

And he said, "What shall I give thee?"

And Jacob said, "Thou shalt not give me any thing. If thou wilt do this thing for me, I will again feed and keep thy flock; I will pass through all thy flock to day, removing from thence all the speckled and spotted cattle, and all the brown cattle among the sheep, and the spotted and speckled among the goats - and of such shall be my hire. So shall my righteousness answer for me in time to come, when it shall come for my hire before thy face. Every one that is not speckled and spotted among the goats, and brown among the sheep - that shall be counted stolen with me."

And Laban said, "Behold, I <sup>1</sup>would it might be according to thy word."

*<sup>1</sup>wish/desire/want it to be*

And he removed that day the he-goats that were ring-streaked and spotted, and all the she-goats that were speckled and spotted, and every one that had some white in it, and all the brown among the sheep, and gave them into the hand of his sons. And he set three days' journey betwixt himself and Jacob. And Jacob fed the rest of Laban's flocks. And Jacob <sup>1</sup>took him rods of green poplar and of the hazel and chestnut tree; and pilled white streaks in them and made the white appear which was in the rods. And he set the rods which he had pilled before the flocks in the gutters in the watering troughs when the flocks came to drink, that they should conceive when they came to drink. And the flocks conceived before the rods and brought forth cattle ring-streaked, speckled, and spotted. And Jacob did separate the lambs, and set the faces of the flocks toward the ring-streaked, and all the brown in the flock of Laban; and he put his own flocks by themselves, and put them not unto Laban's cattle. And it came to pass, whensoever the stronger cattle did conceive, that Jacob laid the rods before the eyes of the cattle in the gutters, that they might conceive among the rods. *<sup>1</sup>husbandry technique: the color/pattern which the livestock saw during conception is what they'll produce*

But when the cattle were feeble, he put them not in. So the feebler were Laban's, and the stronger Jacob's. And the man increased exceedingly, and had much cattle, and maidservants, and menservants, and camels, and asses.

And he heard the words of Laban's sons, saying, "Jacob hath taken away all that was our fathers', and of that which was our fathers' hath he gotten all this glory!"

And Jacob beheld the countenance of Laban and, behold, it was not toward him as before.

And THE LORD said unto Jacob, "Return unto the land of thy fathers and to thy kindred; and I will be with thee."

And Jacob sent and called Rachel and Leah to the field unto his flock, and said unto them, "I see your father's countenance, that it is not toward me as before; but the God of my father hath been with me. And ye know that with all my power I have served your father. And your father hath deceived me and changed my wages ten times; but God suffered him not to hurt me. If he said thus, '*The speckled shall be thy wages*'; then all the cattle bare speckled. And if he said thus, '*The ring-streaked shall be thy hire*'; then bare all the cattle ring-streaked. Thus God hath taken away the cattle of your father and given them to me. And it came to pass at the time that the cattle conceived that I lifted up mine eyes and saw in a dream, and, behold, the rams which leaped upon the cattle were ring-streaked, speckled, and grizzled. And the angel of God spake unto me in a dream, saying, '*Jacob!*' And I said, '*Here am I*'. And he said, '*Lift up now thine eyes, and see, all the rams which leap upon the cattle are ring-streaked, speckled, and grizzled - for I have seen all that Laban doeth unto thee. I am the God of Bethel, where thou anointedst the pillar and where thou vowedst a vow unto Me. Now arise, get thee out from this land, and return unto the land of thy kindred.*'"

And Rachel and Leah answered and said unto him, "Is there yet any portion or inheritance for us in our father's house? Are we not counted of him strangers? For he hath sold us and hath quite devoured also our money! For, all the riches which God hath taken from our father, that is ours and our children's. Now then, whatsoever God hath said unto thee, do."

Then Jacob rose up, and set his sons and his wives upon camels; and he carried away all his cattle, and all his goods which he had gotten, the cattle of his getting, which he had gotten in Padanaram, for to go to Isaac his father in the land of Canaan.

And Laban went to shear his sheep. And Rachel had stolen the <sup>1</sup>images that were her father's. And Jacob stole away, unawares to Laban the Syrian, in that he told him not that he fled. So he fled with all that he had; and he rose up, and passed over the river, and set his face toward the Mount Gilead. And it was told Laban on the third day that Jacob was fled. And he took his brethren with him, and pursued after him seven days' journey; and they overtook him in the Mount Gilead. *<sup>1</sup>idols/religious icons or statues*

And God came to Laban the Syrian in a dream by night and said unto him, "Take heed that thou speak not to Jacob either good or bad!!"

Then Laban overtook Jacob. Now, Jacob had pitched his tent in the mount; and Laban with his brethren pitched in the mount of Gilead.

And Laban said to Jacob, "What hast thou done that thou hast stolen away unawares to me and carried away my daughters, as captives taken with the sword? Wherefore didst thou flee away secretly and steal away from me and didst not tell me, that I might have sent thee away with mirth and with songs, with tabret and with harp - and hast not suffered me to kiss my sons and my daughters? Thou hast now done foolishly in so doing. It is in the power of my hand to do you hurt; but the God of your father spake unto me yesternight, saying, '*Take thou heed that thou speak not to Jacob either good or bad*'. And now, though thou wouldest needs be gone because thou sore longedst after thy father's house, yet wherefore hast thou stolen my gods?"

And Jacob answered and said to Laban, "<sup>1</sup>Because I was afraid. For I said, '*Peradventure thou wouldest take by force thy daughters from me*'. With whomsoever thou findest thy gods, let him not live! <sup>2</sup>Before our brethren, discern thou what is thine with me, and take it to thee" (for Jacob knew not that Rachel had stolen them.) *<sup>1</sup>fled because <sup>2</sup>in the presence of*

And Laban went into Jacob's tent, and into Leah's tent, and into the two maidservants' tents; but he found them not. Then went he out of Leah's tent and entered into Rachel's tent.

Now, Rachel had taken the images and put them in the camel's furniture and sat upon them. And Laban searched all the tent, but found them not.

And she said to her father, "Let it not displease my lord that I cannot rise up before thee; <sup>1</sup>for the custom of women is upon me." *<sup>1</sup>it is my menstrual time of the month*

And he searched but found not the images. And Jacob was wroth and chode with Laban, and Jacob answered and said to Laban, "What is my trespass?! What is my sin, that thou hast so hotly pursued after me?! Whereas thou hast searched all my stuff, what hast thou found of all thy household stuff?! Set it here before my brethren and thy brethren, that they may judge betwixt us both! This twenty years have I been with thee; thy ewes and thy she-goats have not cast their young and the rams of thy flock have I not eaten. That which was torn of beasts I brought not unto thee; I bare the loss of it. Of my hand didst thou require it, whether stolen by day or stolen by night. Thus I was; in the day the drought consumed me and the frost by

night and my sleep departed from mine eyes. Thus have I been twenty years in thy house; I served thee fourteen years for thy two daughters, and six years for thy cattle; and thou hast changed my wages ten times. Except the God of my father, the God of Abraham, and the fear of Isaac had been with me, surely thou <sup>1</sup>hadst sent me away now <sup>2</sup>empty! God hath seen mine affliction and the labor of my hands, and rebuked thee yesternight!" <sup>1</sup>would have <sup>2</sup>empty handed/with nothing

And Laban answered and said unto Jacob, "These daughters are *my* daughters, and these children are *my* children, and these cattle are *my* cattle, and all that thou seest is *mine*! And what can I do this day unto these my daughters, or unto their children which they have born? Now therefore come thou, let us make a covenant, I and thou; and let it be for a witness between me and thee."

And Jacob took a stone and set it up for a pillar. And Jacob said unto his brethren, "Gather stones"; and they took stones, and made an heap, and they did eat there upon the heap.

And Laban called it <sup>1</sup>*Jegarsahadutha*, but Jacob called it <sup>1</sup>*Galeed*. <sup>1</sup>Aramaic & Hebrew for "Witness Pile [of stones]"

And Laban said, "This heap is a witness between me and thee this day."

Therefore was the name of it called *Galeed* and *Mizpah*; for he said, "THE LORD watch between me and thee when we are absent one from another. If thou shalt afflict my daughters, or if thou shalt take other wives beside my daughters, no man is with us; see, God is witness betwixt me and thee."

And Laban said to Jacob, "Behold this heap, and behold this pillar, which I have cast betwixt me and thee. This heap be witness, and this pillar be witness, that I will not pass over this heap to thee, and that thou shalt not pass over this heap and this pillar unto me, for harm. The God of Abraham, and the God of Nahor - the God of their father - judge betwixt us!"

And Jacob swore by the fear of his father Isaac.

Then Jacob offered sacrifice upon the mount and called his brethren to eat bread; and they did eat bread, and tarried all night in the mount.

And early in the morning Laban rose up and kissed his sons and his daughters and blessed them; and Laban departed, and returned unto his place.

And Jacob went on his way, and the angels of God met him. And when Jacob saw them, he said, "This is God's host!" And he called the name of that place <sup>1</sup>*Mahanaim*. <sup>1</sup>"two camps"

And Jacob sent messengers before him to Esau his brother, unto the land of Seir, the country of Edom. And he commanded them, saying, "Thus shall ye speak unto my lord Esau. Thy servant Jacob saith thus: "I have sojourned with Laban, and stayed there until now. And I have oxen, and asses, flocks, and menservants, and womenservants. And I have sent to tell my lord, that I may find grace in thy sight."

And the messengers returned to Jacob, saying, "We came to thy brother Esau, and also *he* cometh to meet *thee* - and four hundred men with him!"

Then Jacob was greatly afraid and distressed. And he divided the people that was with him, and the flocks, and herds, and the camels, into two bands; and said, "If Esau come to the one company and smite it, then the other company which is left shall escape."

And Jacob said, "O God of my father Abraham and God of my father Isaac - THE LORD which saidst unto me, '*Return unto thy country and to thy kindred and I will deal well with thee*' - I am not worthy of the least of all

the mercies and of all the Truth which Thou hast showed unto Thy servant! For, <sup>1</sup>with my staff I passed over this Jordan, and now I am become two bands. Deliver me, I pray thee, from the hand of my brother, from the hand of Esau! For I fear him, lest he will come and smite me and the mother with the children. And Thou saidst, *'I will surely do thee good and make thy seed as the sand of the sea which cannot be numbered for multitude.'* <sup>1</sup>*in other words, I began with nothing but my staff but I've prospered enough to compose two groups*

And he lodged there that same night and took (of that which came to his hand) a present for Esau his brother - two hundred she-goats, and twenty he-goats, two hundred ewes and twenty rams, thirty milch camels with their colts, forty kine, and ten bulls, twenty she-asses, and ten foals.

And he delivered them into the hand of his servants, every <sup>1</sup>drove by themselves; and said unto his servants, "Pass over before me, and put a space betwixt drove and drove." <sup>1</sup>*group of animals*

And he commanded the <sup>1</sup>foremost, saying, "When Esau my brother meeteth thee and asketh thee, saying, *'Whose art thou, and whither goest thou, and whose are these before thee?'* Then thou shalt say, *'They be thy servant Jacob's. It is a present sent unto my lord Esau; and behold also, he is behind us.'* <sup>1</sup>*ones in front*

And so commanded he the second, and the third, and all that followed the droves, saying, "On this manner shall ye speak unto Esau when ye find him. And say ye moreover, *'Behold, thy servant Jacob is behind us.'*" (For he said, "I will appease him with the present that goeth before me, and afterward I will see his face; peradventure he will accept of me").

So went the present over before him. And himself lodged that night in the company. And he rose up that night and took his two wives, and his two womenservants, and his eleven sons, and passed over the Ford Jabbok. And he took them and sent them over the brook, and sent over <sup>1</sup>that he had. <sup>1</sup>*that which*

And Jacob was left alone; and there wrestled a <sup>1</sup>man with him until the breaking of the day. And when he saw that he prevailed not against him, he touched the hollow of his thigh; and the hollow of Jacob's thigh was out of joint as he wrestled with him. <sup>1</sup>*this "man" is commonly accepted to be an angel or even the Lord Himself*

And he said, "Let me go, for the day breaketh."

And he said, "I will not let thee go except thou bless me!"

And he said unto him, "What is thy name?"

And he said, "Jacob."

And he said, "Thy name shall be called no more Jacob, but *Israel* - for, *'as a prince hast thou power with God and with men and hast prevailed!'*"

And Jacob asked him, and said, "Tell me, I pray thee, *thy* name."

And he said, "Wherefore is it that thou dost ask after my name?" And he blessed him there.

And Jacob called the name of the place *Peniel* ("for I have seen God face to face, and my life is preserved").

And as he passed over Penuel the sun rose upon him, and he <sup>1</sup>halted upon his thigh. Therefore the Children of Israel eat not of the sinew which shrank which is upon the hollow of the thigh unto this day, because he touched the hollow of Jacob's thigh in the sinew that shrank. <sup>1</sup>*limped*

And Jacob lifted up his eyes and looked, and, behold, Esau came, and with him four hundred men. And he divided the children unto Leah, and unto Rachel, and unto the two handmaids.

And he put the handmaids and their children foremost, and Leah and her children after, and Rachel and Joseph hindermost.

And he passed over before them and bowed himself to the ground seven times, until he came near to his brother. And Esau ran to meet him, and embraced him, and fell on his neck, and kissed him, and they wept.

And he lifted up his eyes and saw the women and the children, and said, "Who are those with thee?"

And he said, "The children which God hath graciously given thy servant. "

Then the handmaidens came near, they and their children, and they bowed themselves. And Leah also with her children came near, and bowed themselves. And after came Joseph near, and Rachel, and they bowed themselves.

And he said, "What meanest thou by all this <sup>1</sup>drove which I met?"

*'droves of animals*

And he said, "These are to find grace in the sight of my lord."

And Esau said, "I have enough, my brother; keep that thou hast unto thyself."

And Jacob said, "Nay, I pray thee, if now I have found grace in thy sight, then receive my present at my hand. For therefore I have seen thy face as though I had seen the face of God, and thou wast pleased with me. Take, I pray thee, my blessing that is brought to thee, because God hath dealt graciously with me, and because I have enough." And he urged him, and he took it.

And he said, "Let us take our journey, and let us go, and I will go before thee."

And he said unto him, "My lord knoweth that the children are tender, and the flocks and herds with young are with me; and if men should overdrive them one day, all the flock will die. Let my lord, I pray thee, pass over before his servant, and I will lead on softly according as the cattle that goeth before me and the children be able to endure, until I come unto my lord unto Seir."

And Esau said, "Let me now leave with thee some of the folk that are with me."

And he said, "What needeth it? Let me find grace in the sight of my lord."

So Esau returned that day on his way unto Seir. And Jacob journeyed to Succoth, and built him an house, and made booths for his cattle. Therefore the name of the place is called *Succoth*.

And Jacob came to Shalem (a city of Shechem which is in the land of Canaan) when he came from Padanaram, and pitched his tent before the city. And he bought a parcel of a field, where he had spread his tent, at the hand of the children of Hamor, Shechem's father, for an hundred pieces of money.

And he erected there an altar, and called it *Elelohe-Israel*.

And Dinah (the daughter of Leah which she bare unto Jacob) went out to see the daughters of the land. And when Shechem the son of Hamor the Hivite, prince of the country, saw her, he took her and lay with her and defiled her. And his soul clave unto Dinah the daughter of Jacob, and he loved the damsel and spake kindly unto the damsel.

And Shechem spake unto his father Hamor, saying, "Get me this damsel to wife."

And Jacob heard that he had defiled Dinah his daughter. Now, his sons were with his cattle in the field, and Jacob held his peace until they were come. And Hamor the father of Shechem went out unto Jacob to commune with him. And the sons of Jacob came out of the field when they heard it; and the men were grieved, and they were very wroth, because he had wrought folly in Israel in lying with Jacob's daughter, which thing ought not to be done.

And Hamor communed with them, saying, "The soul of my son Shechem longeth for your daughter. I pray you give her him to wife. And make ye marriages with us, and give your daughters unto us, and take our daughters unto you. And ye shall dwell with us, and the land shall be before you. Dwell and trade ye therein, and get you possessions therein."

And Shechem said unto her father and unto her brethren, "Let me find grace in your eyes, and what ye shall say unto me I will give. Ask me <sup>1</sup>never so much dowry and gift, and I will give according as ye shall say unto me. But give me the damsel to wife." *there is no amount too high/I will give whatever you desire*

And the sons of Jacob answered Shechem and Hamor his father deceitfully, and said (because he had defiled Dinah their sister) and they said unto them, "We cannot do this thing, to give our sister to one that is uncircumcised; for that were a reproach unto us. But in *this* will we consent unto you: If ye will be as we be, that every male of you be circumcised, *then* will we give our daughters unto you and we will take your daughters to us, and we will dwell with you, and we will become one people. But if ye will not hearken unto us, to be circumcised, then will we take our daughter and we will be gone."

And their words pleased Hamor and Shechem, Hamor's son. And the young man deferred not to do the thing, because he had delight in Jacob's daughter, and he was more honorable than all the house of his father.

And Hamor and Shechem his son came unto the gate of their city, and communed with the men of their city, saying, "These men are peaceable with us; therefore let them dwell in the land, and trade therein. For the land, behold, it is large enough for them. Let us take their daughters to us for wives, and let us give them our daughters. Only, herein will the men consent unto us for to dwell with us to be one people: *if* every male among us be circumcised as they are circumcised. Shall not their cattle and their substance and every beast of theirs be ours? Only, let us consent unto them, and they will dwell with us."

And unto Hamor and unto Shechem his son hearkened all that went out of the gate of his city; and every male was circumcised, all that went out of the gate of his city. And it came to pass on the third day, when they were sore, that two of the sons of Jacob (Simeon and Levi, Dinah's brethren) took each man his sword, and came upon the city boldly, and slew all the males. And they slew Hamor and Shechem his son with the edge of the sword, and took Dinah out of Shechem's house and went out.

The sons of Jacob came upon the slain and spoiled the city, because they had defiled their sister. They took their sheep, and their oxen, and their asses, and that which was in the city, and that which was in the field, and all their wealth, and all their little ones, and their wives took they captive, and spoiled even all that was in the house.

And Jacob said to Simeon and Levi, "Ye have troubled me to make me to stink among the inhabitants of the land, among the Canaanites and the Perizzites! And I, being few in number, they shall gather themselves together against me and slay me! And I shall be destroyed, I and my house!"

And they said, "Should he deal with our sister as with an harlot?!"

And God said unto Jacob, "Arise; go up to Bethel and dwell there, and make there an altar unto God that appeared unto thee when thou fleddest from the face of Esau thy brother."

Then Jacob said unto his household and to all that were with him, "Put away the strange gods that are among you, and be clean, and change your garments; and let us arise, and go up to Bethel, and I will make there an altar unto God who answered me in the day of my distress and was with me in the way which I went."

And they gave unto Jacob all the strange gods which were in their hand, and all their earrings which were in their ears; and Jacob hid them under the oak which was by Shechem.

And they journeyed; and the terror of God was upon the cities that were round about them, and they did not pursue after the sons of Jacob.

So Jacob came to Luz, which is in the land of Canaan (that is, Bethel), he and all the people that were with him. And he built there an altar, and called the place *Elbethel*, because there God appeared unto him when he fled from the face of his brother. But Deborah, Rebekah's nurse, died, and she was buried beneath Bethel under an oak, and the name of it was called *Allonbachuth*.

And God appeared unto Jacob again when he came out of Padanaram and blessed him. And God said unto him, "Thy name is Jacob. Thy name shall not be called any more Jacob, but *Israel* shall be thy name!" And He called his name Israel. And God said unto him, "I am God Almighty. Be fruitful and multiply; a nation and a company of nations shall be of thee, and kings shall come out of thy loins. And the land which I gave Abraham and Isaac, to thee I will give it, and to thy seed after thee will I give the land."

And God went up from him in the place where He talked with him. And Jacob set up a pillar in the place where he talked with Him, even a pillar of stone; and he poured a drink offering thereon, and he poured oil thereon. And Jacob called the name of the place where God spake with him *Bethel*.

And they journeyed from Bethel; and there was but a little way to come to Ephrath. And Rachel travailed, and she had hard labor. And it came to pass, when she was in hard labor, that the midwife said unto her, "Fear not; thou shalt have this son also."

And it came to pass, as her <sup>1</sup>soul was in departing (for she died), that she called his name *Benoni*, but his father called him *Benjamin*. And Rachel died, and was buried in the way to Ephrath, which is Bethlehem. And Jacob set a pillar upon her grave. That is the pillar of Rachel's grave unto this day. And Israel journeyed, and spread his tent beyond the Tower of Edar. <sup>1</sup> נַפְשׁוֹ/nephesh, meaning life

And it came to pass, when Israel dwelt in that land, that Reuben went and lay with Bilhah - his father's concubine - and Israel heard it.

Now the sons of Jacob were twelve:

The sons of Leah:

- Reuben (Jacob's firstborn),
- and Simeon,
- and Levi,
- and Judah,
- and Issachar,
- and Zebulun.

The sons of Rachel:

- Joseph,
- and Benjamin.

And the sons of Bilhah, Rachel's handmaid:

- Dan,
- and Naphtali.

And the sons of Zilpah, Leah's handmaid:

- Gad,
- and Asher.

These are the sons of Jacob which were born to him in Padanaram.

And Jacob came unto Isaac his father, unto Mamre, unto the city of Arba (which is Hebron) where Abraham and Isaac sojourned. And the days of Isaac were an hundred and fourscore years. And Isaac gave up the ghost and died and was gathered unto his people, being old and full of days. And his sons Esau and Jacob buried him.

Now these are the generations of Esau, who is Edom.

Esau took his wives of the daughters of Canaan:

- Adah the daughter of Elon the Hittite,
- and Aholibamah the daughter of Anah the daughter of Zibeon the Hivite;
- and Bashemath Ishmael's daughter, sister of Nebajoth.

And Adah bare to Esau:

- Eliphaz

and Bashemath bare:

- Reuel

and Aholibamah bare:

- Jeush,
- and Jaalam,
- and Korah

These are the sons of Esau, which were born unto him in the land of Canaan.

And Esau took his wives, and his sons, and his daughters, and all the persons of his house, and his cattle, and all his beasts, and all his substance which he had got in the land of Canaan, and went into the country from the face of his brother Jacob (for their riches were more than that they might dwell together; and the land wherein they were, strangers could not bear them because of their cattle). Thus dwelt Esau in Mount Seir. Esau is Edom. And these are the generations of Esau, the father of the *Edomites* in Mount Seir.

These are the names of Esau's sons:

- Eliphaz the son of Adah (the wife of Esau),
- Reuel the son of Bashemath (the wife of Esau).

And the sons of Eliphaz were:

- Teman,
- Omar,
- Zepho,
- and Gatam,
- and Kenaz.

And Timna was concubine to Eliphaz, Esau's son; and she bare to Eliphaz:

- Amalek.

These were the sons of Adah, Esau's wife.

And these are the sons of Reuel:

- Nahath,
- and Zerah,
- Shammah,
- and Mizzah.

These were the sons of Bashemath, Esau's wife.

And these were the sons of Aholibamah (the daughter of Anah, the daughter of Zibeon), Esau's wife; and she bare to Esau:

- Jeush,
- and Jaalam,
- and Korah.

These were dukes of the sons of Esau - the sons of Eliphaz the firstborn son of Esau:

- duke Teman,
- duke Omar,
- duke Zepho,
- duke Kenaz,
- duke Korah,
- duke Gatam,
- and duke Amalek.

These are the dukes that came of Eliphaz in the land of Edom; these were the sons of Adah.

And these are the sons of Reuel Esau's son:

- duke Nahath,
- duke Zerah,
- duke Shammah,
- duke Mizzah.

These are the dukes that came of Reuel in the land of Edom; these are the sons of Bashemath Esau's wife.

And these are the sons of Aholibamah Esau's wife:

- duke Jeush,
- duke Jaalam,
- duke Korah.

These were the dukes that came of Aholibamah the daughter of Anah, Esau's wife. These are the sons of Esau, who is Edom, and these are their dukes.

These are the sons of Seir the Horite, who inhabited the land:

- Lotan,
- and Shobal,
- and Zibeon,
- and Anah,
- and Dishon,
- and Ezer,
- and Dishan.

These are the dukes of the Horites, the children of Seir in the land of Edom. And the children of Lotan were:

- Hori
- and Hemam.

And Lotan's sister was Timna.

And the children of Shobal were these:

- Alvan,
- and Manahath,
- and Ebal,
- Shepho,
- and Onam.

And these are the children of Zibeon:

- both Ajah,
- and Anah (this was that Anah that found the mules in the wilderness as he fed the asses of Zibeon his father).

And the children of Anah were these:

- Dishon,
- and Aholibamah (the daughter of Anah).

And these are the children of Dishon:

- Hemdan,
- and Eshban,
- and Ithran,
- and Cheran.

The children of Ezer are these:

- Bilhan,
- and Zaavan,
- and Akan.

The children of Dishan are these:

- Uz,
- and Aran.

These are the dukes that came of the Horites:

- duke Lotan,
- duke Shobal,
- duke Zibeon,
- duke Anah,
- duke Dishon,
- duke Ezer,
- duke Dishan.

These are the dukes that came of Hori, among their dukes in the land of Seir. And these are the kings that reigned in the land of Edom, before there reigned any king over the Children of Israel.

And Bela (the son of Beor) reigned in Edom, and the name of his city was Dinhabah.

And Bela died, and Jobab (the son of Zerah of Bozrah) reigned in his stead.

And Jobab died, and Husham (of the land of Temani) reigned in his stead.

And Husham died, and Hadad (the son of Bedad, who smote Midian in the field of Moab) reigned in his stead; and the name of his city was Avith.

And Hadad died, and Samlah (of Masrekah) reigned in his stead.

And Samlah died, and Saul (of Rehoboth-By-The-River) reigned in his stead.

And Saul died, and Baalhanan (the son of Achbor) reigned in his stead.

And Baalhanan (the son of Achbor) died, and Hadar reigned in his stead; and the name of his city was Pau. And his wife's name was Mehetabel, the daughter of Matred, the daughter of Mezahab.

And these are the names of the dukes that came of Esau, according to their families, after their places, by their names:

- duke Timnah,
- duke Alvah,
- duke Jetheth,
- duke Aholibamah,
- duke Elah,
- duke Pinon,
- duke Kenaz,
- duke Teman,
- duke Mibzar,
- duke Magdiel,
- duke Iram.

These be the dukes of Edom according to their habitations in the land of their possession - he is Esau, the father of the Edomites.

And Jacob dwelt in the land wherein his father was a stranger, in the land of Canaan.

These are the generations of Jacob.

Joseph, being seventeen years old, was feeding the flock with his brethren; and the lad was with the sons of Bilhah and with the sons of Zilpah, his father's wives. And Joseph brought unto his father their evil report.

Now, Israel loved Joseph more than all his children because he was the son of his old age; and he made him a coat of many colors.

And when his brethren saw that their father loved him more than all his brethren, they hated him, and could not speak peaceably unto him.

And Joseph dreamed a dream, and he told it his brethren; and they hated him yet the more.

And he said unto them, "Hear, I pray you, this dream which I have dreamed. For, behold, we were binding sheaves in the field, and, lo, my sheaf arose and also stood upright; and, behold, your sheaves stood round about and made obeisance to my sheaf."

And his brethren said to him, "Shalt thou indeed reign over us? Or shalt thou indeed have dominion over us?!" And they hated him yet the more for his dreams and for his words.

And he dreamed yet another dream and told it his brethren, and said, "Behold, I have dreamed a dream more; and, behold, the sun and the moon and the eleven stars made obeisance to me."

And he told it to his father and to his brethren; and his father rebuked him and said unto him, "What is this dream that thou hast dreamed?! Shall I and thy mother and thy brethren indeed come to bow down ourselves to thee to the earth?!"

And his brethren envied him; but his father observed the saying. And his brethren went to feed their father's flock in Shechem.

And Israel said unto Joseph, "Do not thy brethren feed the flock in Shechem? Come, and I will send thee unto them."

And he said to him, "Here am I".

And he said to him, "Go, I pray thee, see whether it be well with thy brethren and well with the flocks, and bring me word again."

So he sent him out of the Vale of Hebron, and he came to Shechem. And a certain man found him, and, behold, he was wandering in the field; and the man asked him, saying, "What seekest thou?"

And he said, "I seek my brethren. Tell me, I pray thee, where they feed their flocks."

And the man said, "They are departed hence; for I heard them say, '*Let us go to Dothan*'."

And Joseph went after his brethren and found them in Dothan. And when they saw him afar off, even before he came near unto them, they conspired against him to slay him.

And they said one to another, "Behold, this dreamer cometh. Come now, therefore, and let us slay him and cast him into some pit. And we will say, '*Some evil beast hath devoured him*', and we shall see what will become of his dreams!"

And Reuben heard it, and he delivered him out of their hands, and said, "Let us not kill him." And Reuben said unto them, "Shed no blood, but cast him into this pit that is in the wilderness, and lay no hand upon him" (that he might <sup>1</sup>rid him out of their hands to deliver him to his father again). <sup>1</sup>rescue

And it came to pass, when Joseph was come unto his brethren, that they stripped Joseph out of his coat, his coat of many colors that was on him; and they took him and cast him into a pit. And the pit was empty. There was no water in it. And they sat down to eat bread, and they lifted up their eyes and looked, and, behold, a company of Ishmaelites came from Gilead with their camels bearing spicery and balm and myrrh, going to carry it down to Egypt.

And Judah said unto his brethren, "What profit is it if we slay our brother and conceal his blood? Come, and let us sell him to the Ishmaelites, and let not our hand be upon him; for he is our brother and our flesh."

And his brethren were content. Then there passed by Midianites merchantmen; and they drew and lifted up Joseph out of the pit and sold Joseph to the Ishmaelites for twenty pieces of silver, and they brought Joseph into Egypt.

And Reuben returned unto the pit; and, behold, Joseph was not in the pit. And he rent his clothes. And he returned unto his brethren, and said, "The child is <sup>1</sup>not! And I, whither shall I go?" <sup>1</sup>no more/dead

And they took Joseph's coat, and killed a kid of the goats, and dipped the coat in the blood; and they sent the coat of many colors and they brought it to their father, and said, "This have we found. Know now whether it be thy son's coat or no."

And he knew it, and said, "It is my son's coat! An evil beast hath devoured him! Joseph is without doubt rent in pieces!"

And Jacob rent his clothes, and put sackcloth upon his loins, and mourned for his son many days. And all his sons and all his daughters rose up to comfort him; but he refused to be comforted. And he said, "For I will go down into the grave unto my son mourning!" Thus his father wept for him.

And the Midianites sold him into Egypt, unto Potiphar, an officer of Pharaoh's, and captain of the guard.

And it came to pass at that time that Judah went down from his brethren, and turned in to a certain Adullamite whose name was Hirah. And Judah saw there a daughter of a certain Canaanite, whose name was Shuah; and he took her, and went in unto her.

And she conceived and bare a son; and he called his name *Er*.

And she conceived again and bare a son; and she called his name *Onan*.

And she yet again conceived and bare a son; and called his name *Shelah* (and he was at Chezib when she bare him).

And Judah took a wife for Er his firstborn, whose name was Tamar. And Er, Judah's firstborn, was wicked in the sight of THE LORD, and THE LORD slew him.

And Judah said unto Onan, "Go in unto thy brother's wife and marry her, and raise up seed to thy brother."

And Onan knew that the seed should not be his; and it came to pass, when he went in unto his brother's wife, that he spilled it on the ground, lest that he should give seed to his brother. And the thing which he did displeased THE LORD; wherefore He slew him also.

Then said Judah to Tamar his daughter-in-law, "Remain a widow at thy father's house till Shelah my son be grown" (for he said, '*Lest peradventure he die also, as his brethren did*').

And Tamar went and dwelt in her father's house. And in process of time the daughter of Shuah, Judah's wife, died; and Judah was comforted, and went up unto his sheepshearers to Timnath, he and his friend Hirah the Adullamite.

And it was told Tamar, saying, "Behold thy father-in-law goeth up to Timnath to shear his sheep."

And she put her widow's garments off from her, and covered her with a vail, and wrapped herself, and sat in an open place which is by the way to Timnath; for she saw that Shelah was grown, and she was not given unto him to wife.

When Judah saw her, he thought her to be an harlot, because she had covered her face. And he turned unto her by the way, and said, "Go to, I pray thee, let me come in unto thee" (for he knew not that she was his daughter-in-law).

And she said, "What wilt thou give me, that thou mayest come in unto me?"

And he said, "I will send thee a kid from the flock."

And she said, "Wilt thou give me a <sup>1</sup>pledge till thou send it?"

*<sup>1</sup>token, as collateral*

And he said, "What pledge shall I give thee?"

And she said, "Thy signet, and thy bracelets, and thy staff that is in thine hand."

And he gave it her, and came in unto her, and she conceived by him. And she arose and went away and laid by her vail from her and put on the garments of her widowhood.

And Judah sent the kid by the hand of his friend the Adullamite, to receive his pledge from the woman's hand - but he found her not.

Then he asked the men of that place, saying, "Where is the harlot that was openly by the way side?"

And they said, "There was no harlot in this place!"

And he returned to Judah, and said, "I cannot find her; and also the men of the place said that there was no harlot in this place."

And Judah said, "Let her take it to her, lest we be shamed. Behold, I sent this kid, and thou hast not found her."

And it came to pass about three months after that it was told Judah, saying, "Tamar thy daughter-in-law hath played the harlot; and also, behold, she is with child by whoredom!"

And Judah said, "Bring her forth and let her be burnt!"

When she was brought forth, she sent to her father-in-law, saying, "By the man, whose these are, am I with child." And she said, "Discern, I pray thee, whose are these - the signet, and bracelets, and staff."

And Judah acknowledged them, and said, "She hath been more righteous than I, because that I gave her not to Shelah my son!"

And he knew her again no more. And it came to pass in the time of her travail, that, behold, twins were in her womb. And it came to pass, when she travailed, that the one put out his hand. And the midwife took and bound upon his hand a scarlet thread, saying, "This came out first."

And it came to pass, as he drew back his hand, that, behold, his brother came out. And she said, "How hast thou broken forth? This breach be upon thee!"

Therefore his name was called:

- *Pharez.*

And afterward came out his brother that had the scarlet thread upon his hand, and his name was called:

- *'Zarah.* *'Note: there is some speculation that he may have been founder of Troy*

And Joseph was brought down to Egypt; and Potiphar - an officer of Pharaoh, captain of the guard, an Egyptian - bought him of the hands of the Ishmaelites which had brought him down thither.

And THE LORD was with Joseph, and he was a prosperous man; and he <sup>1</sup>was in the house of his master the Egyptian. And his master saw that THE LORD was with him, and that THE LORD made all that he did to prosper in his hand. And Joseph found grace in his sight, and he served him. And he made him overseer over his house, and all that he had he put into his hand. *'lived in*

And it came to pass from the time that he had made him overseer in his house, and over all that he had, that THE LORD blessed the Egyptian's house for Joseph's sake; and the blessing of THE LORD was upon all

that he had in the house and in the field. And he left all that he had in Joseph's hand; and he knew not ought he had, save the bread which he did eat. And Joseph was a goodly person, and well favored.

And it came to pass after these things, that his master's wife cast her eyes upon Joseph; and she said, "Lie with me."

But he refused and said unto his master's wife, "Behold, my master wotteth not what is with me in the house, and he hath committed all that he hath to my hand. There is none greater in this house than I; neither hath he kept back any thing from me but *thee*, because thou art his wife. How, then, can I do this great wickedness and sin against God?"

And it came to pass, as she spake to Joseph day by day that he hearkened not unto her, to lie by her, or to be with her. And it came to pass about this time that Joseph went into the house to do his business, and there was none of the men of the house there within.

And she caught him by his garment, saying, "Lie with me". And he left his garment in her hand, and fled, and got him out.

And it came to pass, when she saw that he had left his garment in her hand and was fled forth, that she called unto the men of her house and spake unto them, saying, "See, he hath brought in an Hebrew unto us to mock us! He came in unto me to lie with me, and I cried with a loud voice; and it came to pass, when he heard that I lifted up my voice and cried, that he left his garment with me and fled and got him out!"

And she laid up his garment by her until his lord came home. And she spake unto him according to these words, saying, "The Hebrew servant, which thou hast brought unto us, came in unto me to mock me! And it came to pass, as I lifted up my voice and cried, that he left his garment with me and fled out!"

And it came to pass, when his master heard the words of his wife which she spake unto him, saying, '*After this manner did thy servant to me*', that his wrath was kindled. And Joseph's master took him and put him into the prison, a place where the king's prisoners were bound; and he was there in the prison.

But THE LORD was with Joseph and showed him mercy and gave him favor in the sight of the keeper of the prison. And the keeper of the prison committed to Joseph's hand all the prisoners that were in the prison; and whatsoever they did there, he was the doer of it.

The keeper of the prison looked not to any thing that was under his hand because THE LORD was with him; and that which he did, THE LORD made it to prosper.

And it came to pass after these things that the butler of the king of Egypt and his baker had offended their lord the king of Egypt. And Pharaoh was wroth against two of his officers, against the chief of the butlers and against the chief of the bakers. And he put them in ward in the house of the captain of the guard, into the prison, the place where Joseph was bound. And the captain of the guard charged Joseph with them, and he served them; and they continued a season in ward.

And they dreamed a dream both of them, each man his dream in one night, each man according to the interpretation of his dream, the butler and the baker of the king of Egypt which were bound in the prison. And Joseph came in unto them in the morning and looked upon them, and, behold, they were sad.

And he asked Pharaoh's officers that were with him in the ward of his lord's house, saying, "Wherefore look ye so sadly to day?"

And they said unto him, "We have dreamed a dream, and there is no interpreter of it."

And Joseph said unto them, "Do not interpretations belong to God? Tell me them, I pray you."

And the chief butler told his dream to Joseph, and said to him, "In my dream, behold, a vine was before me; and in the vine were three branches. And it was as though it budded, and her blossoms shot forth; and the clusters thereof brought forth ripe grapes. And Pharaoh's cup was in my hand, and I took the grapes and pressed them into Pharaoh's cup, and I gave the cup into Pharaoh's hand."

And Joseph said unto him, "This is the interpretation of it: The three branches are three days. Yet within three days shall Pharaoh lift up thine head and restore thee unto thy place, and thou shalt deliver Pharaoh's cup into his hand after the former manner when thou wast his butler. But think on me when it shall be well with thee, and show kindness, I pray thee, unto me, and make mention of me unto Pharaoh, and bring me out of this house; for indeed I was stolen away out of the land of the Hebrews, and here also have I done nothing that they should put me into the dungeon."

When the chief baker saw that the interpretation was good, he said unto Joseph, "I also was in my dream, and, behold, I had three white baskets on my head. And in the uppermost basket there was of all manner of bakemeats for Pharaoh; and the birds did eat them out of the basket upon my head."

And Joseph answered and said, "This is the interpretation thereof: The three baskets are three days. Yet within three days shall Pharaoh lift up thy head from off thee, and shall hang thee on a tree; and the birds shall eat thy flesh from off thee."

And it came to pass the third day (which was Pharaoh's birthday) that he made a feast unto all his servants. And he lifted up the head of the chief butler and of the chief baker among his servants. And he restored the chief butler unto his butlership again, and he gave the cup into Pharaoh's hand; but he hanged the chief baker - as Joseph had interpreted to them. Yet did not the chief butler remember Joseph, but forgot him.

And it came to pass at the end of two full years that Pharaoh dreamed. And, behold, he stood by the river. And, behold, there came up out of the river seven well favored <sup>1</sup>kine and fatfleshed, and they fed in a meadow. And, behold, seven other kine came up after them out of the river, ill favored and leanfleshed, and stood by the other kine upon the brink of the river. And the ill favored and leanfleshed kine did eat up the seven well favored and fat kine. So Pharaoh awoke. <sup>1</sup>cows

And he slept and dreamed the second time. And, behold, seven ears of corn came up upon one stalk, rank and good. And, behold, seven thin ears and blasted with the east wind sprung up after them. And the seven thin ears devoured the seven rank and full ears. And Pharaoh awoke, and, behold, it was a dream.

And it came to pass in the morning that his spirit was troubled; and he sent and called for all the magicians of Egypt and all the wise men thereof. And Pharaoh told them his dream, but there was none that could interpret them unto Pharaoh.

Then spake the chief butler unto Pharaoh, saying, "I do remember my faults this day! Pharaoh was wroth with his servants and put me in ward in the captain of the guard's house, both me and the chief baker. And we dreamed a dream in one night, I and he. We dreamed each man according to the interpretation of his dream. And there was there with us a young man, an Hebrew, servant to the captain of the guard; and we told him, and he interpreted to us our dreams - to each man according to his dream he did interpret. And it came to pass! As he interpreted to us, so it was! Me he restored unto mine office, and him he hanged."

Then Pharaoh sent and called Joseph, and they brought him hastily out of the dungeon; and he shaved himself, and changed his raiment, and came in unto Pharaoh.

And Pharaoh said unto Joseph, "I have dreamed a dream and there is none that can interpret it; and I have heard say of thee that thou canst understand a dream to interpret it."

And Joseph answered Pharaoh, saying, "It is not in *me*. *God* shall give Pharaoh an answer of peace."

And Pharaoh said unto Joseph, "In my dream, behold, I stood upon the bank of the river. And, behold, there came up out of the river seven kine, fatfleshed and well favored; and they fed in a meadow. And, behold, seven other kine came up after them, poor and very ill favored and leanfleshed, such as I never saw in all the land of Egypt for badness! And the lean and the ill favored kine did eat up the first seven fat kine; and when they had eaten them up, it could not be known that they had eaten them but they were still ill favored, as at the beginning. So I awoke. And I saw in my dream, and, behold, seven ears came up in one stalk, full and good. And, behold, seven ears, withered, thin, and blasted with the east wind, sprung up after them. And the thin ears devoured the seven good ears. And I told this unto the magicians, but there was none that could declare it to me."

And Joseph said unto Pharaoh, "The dream of Pharaoh is <sup>1</sup>one: God hath showed Pharaoh what He is about to do. The seven good kine are seven years and the seven good ears are seven years - the dream is one. And the seven thin and ill favored kine that came up after them are seven years; and the seven empty ears blasted with the east wind shall be seven years of famine. This is the thing which I have spoken unto Pharaoh. What God is about to do He showeth unto Pharaoh. Behold, there come seven years of great plenty throughout all the land of Egypt; and there shall arise after them seven years of famine. And all the plenty shall be forgotten in the land of Egypt, and the famine shall consume the land. And the plenty shall not be known in the land by reason of that famine following; for it shall be very grievous. And for that the dream was <sup>2</sup>doubled unto Pharaoh twice; it is because the thing is established by God, and God will shortly bring it to pass. Now therefore let Pharaoh <sup>3</sup>look out a man discreet and wise, and set him over the land of Egypt. Let Pharaoh do this, and let him appoint officers over the land, and take up the fifth part of the land of Egypt in the seven plenteous years. And let them gather all the food of those good years that come, and lay up corn under the hand of Pharaoh, and let them keep food in the cities. And that food shall be for store to the land against the seven years of famine which shall be in the land of Egypt, that the land perish not through the famine."  
*<sup>1</sup>the cows and the ears of corn refer to the same thing <sup>2</sup>confirmed <sup>3</sup>seek*

And the thing was good in the eyes of Pharaoh and in the eyes of all his servants.

And Pharaoh said unto his servants, "Can we find such a one as *this* is, a man in whom the Spirit of God is?"

And Pharaoh said unto Joseph, "Forasmuch as God hath showed thee all this, there is none so discreet and wise as thou art. *Thou* shalt be over my house, and according unto thy word shall all my people be ruled. Only in the throne will I be greater than thou."

And Pharaoh said unto Joseph, "<sup>1</sup>See, I have set thee over all the land of Egypt."  
*<sup>1</sup>behold*

And Pharaoh took off his ring from his hand and put it upon Joseph's hand, and arrayed him in vestures of fine linen, and put a gold chain about his neck, and he made him to ride in the second chariot which he had; and they cried before him, "Bow the knee!" And he made him ruler over all the land of Egypt.

And Pharaoh said unto Joseph, "I am Pharaoh, and without <sup>1</sup>thee shall no man lift up his hand or foot in all the land of Egypt."  
*<sup>1</sup>your consent*

And Pharaoh called Joseph's name <sup>1</sup>*Zaphnathpaaneah*; and he gave him to wife Asenath the daughter of Potipherah, priest of On. And Joseph went out over all the land of Egypt.  
*<sup>1</sup>meaning "God speaks and He lives"*

And Joseph was thirty years old when he <sup>1</sup>stood before Pharaoh king of Egypt. And Joseph went out from the presence of Pharaoh, and went throughout all the land of Egypt.

*<sup>1</sup>NOTE: to "stand before the king" refers to a person who is the king's friend and has the authority and honor to stand and speak in his presence and often to act on his behalf*

And in the seven plenteous years the earth brought forth by handfuls. And he gathered up all the food of the seven years which were in the land of Egypt, and laid up the food in the cities. The food of the field, which was round about every city, laid he up in the same. And Joseph gathered corn as the sand of the sea, very much, until he left numbering; for it was without number.

And unto Joseph were born two sons before the years of famine came, which Asenath (the daughter of Potipherah, priest of On) bare unto him.

And Joseph called the name of the firstborn

- Manasseh - "For God," said he, "hath made me forget all my toil, and all my father's house."

And the name of the second called he

- Ephraim - "For God hath caused me to be fruitful in the land of my affliction."

And the seven years of plenteousness that was in the land of Egypt were ended. And the seven years of dearth began to come, according as Joseph had said. And the dearth was in all lands; but in all the land of Egypt there was bread. And when all the land of Egypt was famished, the people cried to Pharaoh for bread. And Pharaoh said unto all the Egyptians, "Go unto Joseph. What he saith to you, do."

And the famine was over all the face of the earth. And Joseph opened all the storehouses, and sold unto the Egyptians; and the famine waxed sore in the land of Egypt. And all countries came into Egypt to Joseph for to buy corn because that the famine was so sore in all lands.

Now, when Jacob saw that there was corn in Egypt, Jacob said unto his sons, "Why do ye look one upon another?" And he said, "Behold, I have heard that there is corn in Egypt. Get you down thither and buy for us from thence, that we may live, and not die."

And Joseph's ten brethren went down to buy corn in Egypt. But Benjamin, Joseph's brother, Jacob sent not with his brethren (for he said, "Lest peradventure mischief befall him").

And the sons of Israel came to buy corn among those that came; for the famine was in the land of Canaan. And Joseph was the governor over the land, and he it was that sold to all the people of the land. And Joseph's brethren came and <sup>1</sup>bowed down themselves before him with their faces to the earth.

*<sup>1</sup>NOTE: thus Joseph's dream came to pass which he had told his brothers*

And Joseph saw his brethren, and he knew them, but made himself <sup>1</sup>strange unto them and spake roughly unto them; and he said unto them, "Whence come ye?!" *<sup>1</sup>unrecognizable*

And they said, "From the land of Canaan to buy food."

And Joseph knew his brethren, but they knew not him. And Joseph remembered the dreams which he dreamed of them, and said unto them, "Ye are spies! To see the nakedness of the land ye are come!"

And they said unto him, "Nay, my lord, but to buy food are thy servants come! We are all one man's sons. We are <sup>1</sup>true men; thy servants are no spies!" *<sup>1</sup>honest*

And he said unto them, "Nay, but to see the nakedness of the land ye are come!"

And they said, "Thy servants are twelve brethren, the sons of one man in the land of Canaan; and, behold, the youngest is this day with our father, and one is <sup>1</sup>not." *<sup>1</sup>gone/no more/dead*

And Joseph said unto them, "That is it that I spake unto you, saying, '*Ye are spies*'; hereby ye shall be proved! By the life of Pharaoh ye shall not go forth hence except your youngest brother come hither! Send one of you, and let him fetch your brother; and ye shall be kept in prison, that your words may be proved, whether there be any truth in you. Or else, by the life of Pharaoh surely ye are spies!"

And he put them all together into ward three days. And Joseph said unto them the third day, "This do, and live; for I fear God. *If* ye be true men, let one of your brethren be bound in the house of your prison; go ye, carry corn for the famine of your houses - but bring your youngest brother unto me. So shall your words be verified, and ye shall not die!"

And they did so. And they said one to another, "We are verily guilty concerning our brother, in that we saw the anguish of his soul when he <sup>1</sup>besought us, and we would not hear; therefore is this distress come upon us!" *<sup>1</sup>pleaded with*

And Reuben answered them, saying, "Spake I not unto you, saying, '*Do not sin against the child*', and ye would not hear?! Therefore, behold, also <sup>1</sup>his blood is required!"

*<sup>1</sup>we are being held accountable for the blood (death) of Joseph*

And they knew not that Joseph understood them; for <sup>1</sup>he spake unto them by an interpreter. And he turned himself about from them and wept, and returned to them again and communed with them, and took from them Simeon and bound him before their eyes. Then Joseph commanded to fill their sacks with corn and to <sup>2</sup>restore every man's money into his sack, and to give them provision for the <sup>3</sup>way; and thus did he unto them. *<sup>1</sup>he spoke Egyptian and had an interpreter translate his words to them <sup>2</sup>refund <sup>3</sup>journey home*

And they laded their <sup>1</sup>asses with the corn and departed thence. And as one of them opened his sack to give his ass provender in the inn, he espied his money; for, behold, it was in his sack's mouth. And he said unto his brethren, "My money is restored; and, lo, it is even in my sack!" *<sup>1</sup>a type of donkey*

And their heart failed them, and they were afraid, saying one to another, "What is this that God hath done unto us?!"

And they came unto Jacob their father unto the land of Canaan and told him all that befell unto them, saying, "The man, who is the lord of the land, spake roughly to us and took us for spies of the country! And we said unto him, '*We are true men; we are no spies! We be twelve brethren, sons of our father; one is not, and the youngest is this day with our father in the land of Canaan.*' And the man, the lord of the country, said unto us, '*Hereby shall I know that ye are true men: leave one of your brethren here with me and take food for the famine of your households and be gone, and bring your youngest brother unto me; then shall I know that ye are no spies, but that ye are true men. So will I deliver you your brother, and ye shall <sup>1</sup>traffic in the land.*'" *<sup>1</sup>trade/do business/travel about*

And it came to pass as they emptied their sacks, that, behold, every man's bundle of money was in his sack; and when both they and their father saw the bundles of money, they were afraid.

And Jacob their father said unto them, "Me have ye bereaved of my children! Joseph is not, and Simeon is not, and ye will take Benjamin away?! All these things are against me!"

And Reuben spake unto his father, saying, "Slay my two sons <sup>1</sup>if I bring him not to thee! Deliver him into my hand and I will bring him to thee again." *<sup>1</sup>if I don't return Benjamin to you*

And he said, "My son shall *not* go down with you! For his brother is dead, and he is left alone. If mischief befall him by the way in the which ye go, then shall ye bring down my gray hairs with sorrow to the grave!"

And the famine was sore in the land. And it came to pass, when they had eaten up the corn which they had brought out of Egypt, their father said unto them, "Go again, buy us a little food."

And Judah spake unto him, saying, "The man did solemnly protest unto us, saying, '*Ye shall not see my face except your brother be with you.*' If thou wilt send our brother with us, we will go down and buy thee food; but if thou wilt not send him, we will not go down. For the man said unto us, '*Ye shall not see my face except your brother be with you.*'"

And Israel said, "Wherefore dealt ye so ill with me as to tell the man whether ye had yet a brother?!"

And they said, "The man asked us straitly of our state, and of our kindred, saying, '*Is your father yet alive? Have ye another brother?*' and we told him according to the tenor of these words. Could we certainly know that he would say, '*Bring your brother down?*'"

And Judah said unto Israel his father, "Send the lad with me and we will arise and go, that we may live and not die - both we, and thou, and also our little ones. I will be <sup>1</sup>surety for him; of my hand shalt thou require him. If I bring him not unto thee and set him before thee, then let me bear the blame for ever. For, except we had lingered, surely now we had returned this second time." <sup>1</sup>mortgage/pledge my own life

And their father Israel said unto them, "If it must be so now, do this: take of the best fruits in the land in your vessels, and carry down the man a present, a little balm, and a little honey, spices, and myrrh, nuts, and almonds. And take double money in your hand; and the money that was brought again in the mouth of your sacks, carry it again in your hand. Peradventure it was an oversight. Take also your brother, and arise, go again unto the man. And God Almighty give you mercy before the man, that he may send away your other brother, and Benjamin. If I <sup>1</sup>be bereaved of my children, <sup>2</sup>I am bereaved." <sup>1</sup>lose <sup>2</sup>so be it

And the men took that present, and they took double money in their hand and Benjamin, and rose up and went down to Egypt and stood before Joseph.

And when Joseph saw Benjamin with them, he said to the ruler of his house, "Bring these men home, and <sup>1</sup>slay, and make ready; for these men shall dine with me at noon." <sup>1</sup>kill an animal for food

And the man did as Joseph bade; and the man brought the men into Joseph's house. And the men were afraid, because they were brought into Joseph's house; and they said, "<sup>1</sup>Because of the money that was returned in our sacks at the first time are we brought in, that he may seek occasion against us, and fall upon us, and take us for bondmen, and our asses!" <sup>1</sup>it is because

And they came near to the steward of Joseph's house, and they communed with him at the door of the house, and said, "O sir, we came indeed down at the first time to buy food. And it came to pass, when we came to the inn, that we opened our sacks, and, behold, every man's money was in the mouth of his sack, our money in full weight. <sup>1</sup>And we have brought it again in our hand. And <sup>2</sup>other money have we brought down in our hands to buy food. We cannot tell who put our money in our sacks." <sup>1</sup>and so <sup>2</sup>more

And he said, "Peace be to you. Fear not. Your God, and the God of your father, hath given you treasure in your sacks. I had your money."

And he brought Simeon out unto them. And the man brought the men into Joseph's house, and gave them water, and they washed their feet; and he gave their asses <sup>1</sup>provender. And they made ready the present <sup>2</sup>against Joseph came at noon, for they heard that they should eat bread there. And when Joseph came

home, they brought him the present which was in their hand into the house, and bowed themselves to him to the earth.

*<sup>1</sup>food consisting of protein, carbohydrates, fatty acids, vitamins and minerals <sup>2</sup>for when*

And he asked them of their welfare, and said, "Is your father well, the old man of whom ye spake? Is he yet alive?"

And they answered, "Thy servant our father is in good health, he is yet alive."

And they bowed down their heads and made obeisance. And he lifted up his eyes and saw his brother Benjamin, his mother's son, and said, "Is this your younger brother of whom ye spake unto me?" And he said, "God be gracious unto thee, my son."

And Joseph <sup>1</sup>made haste (for <sup>2</sup>his bowels did yearn upon his brother), and he sought where to weep; and he entered into his chamber and wept there. And he washed his face, and went out, and <sup>3</sup>refrained himself, and said, "<sup>4</sup>Set on bread." *<sup>1</sup>moved quickly (out of the room) <sup>2</sup>he ached with compassion for <sup>3</sup>contained/controlled <sup>4</sup>Please eat*

And they <sup>1</sup>set on for him by himself, and for them by themselves, and for the Egyptians, which did eat with him, by themselves (because the Egyptians might not eat bread with the Hebrews, <sup>2</sup>for that is an abomination unto the Egyptians).

*<sup>1</sup>Served themselves <sup>2</sup>the Hebrews were shepherds of sheep and cattle, but cattle and sheep were sacred to the Egyptians (much the same way that cows are sacred to Hindus) and worshipped them in deified forms, and therefore sheep herding was blasphemy to Egyptians.*

And they sat before him, the firstborn according to his birthright, and the youngest according to his youth; and the men marveled one at another. And he took and sent <sup>1</sup>messes unto them from before him, but Benjamin's mess was five times so much as any of theirs. And they drank, and were merry with him.

*<sup>1</sup>great gifts*

And he commanded the steward of his house, saying, "Fill the men's sacks with food, as much as they can carry, and put every man's money in his sack's mouth. And put my cup, the silver cup, in the sack's mouth of the youngest, and his corn money."

And he did according to the word that Joseph had spoken. As soon as the morning was light, the men were sent away, they and their asses.

And when they were gone out of the city and not yet far off, Joseph said unto his steward, "Up! Follow after the men; and when thou dost overtake them, say unto them, '*Wherefore have ye rewarded evil for good? Is not this <sup>1</sup>it in which my lord drinketh, and whereby indeed he <sup>2</sup>divineth? Ye have done evil in so doing!*'"

*<sup>1</sup>the cup <sup>2</sup>in this particular case the word "divine" is not meant "to practice divination" but rather it refers to its precise meaning of "to be practiced in" or literally "uses often", meaning that this is the cup that Joseph always drinks from.*

And he overtook them, and he spake unto them these same words. And they said unto him, "Wherefore saith my lord these words? God forbid that thy servants should do according to this thing! Behold, the money which we found in our sacks' mouths we brought again unto thee out of the land of Canaan. How then should we steal out of thy lord's house silver or gold?! With whomsoever of thy servants it be found, both let him die and we also will be my lord's bondmen!"

And <sup>1</sup>he said, "Now also let it be according unto your words! He with whom it is found shall be my servant, and <sup>2</sup>ye shall be blameless."

*<sup>1</sup>the steward, speaking on behalf of Joseph <sup>2</sup>the rest of you*

Then they speedily took down every man his sack to the ground, and opened every man his sack. And he searched, and began at the eldest and <sup>1</sup>left at the youngest - and the cup was found in Benjamin's sack.

*<sup>1</sup>stopped at*

Then they rent their clothes, and <sup>1</sup>laded every man his ass, and returned to the city. And Judah and his brethren came to Joseph's house (for he was yet there), and they fell before him on the ground.

*<sup>1</sup>packed up their stuff onto*

And Joseph said unto them, "What deed is this that ye have done?! <sup>1</sup>Wot ye not that such a man as I can certainly <sup>2</sup>divine?"

*<sup>1</sup>know <sup>2</sup>figure out/understand/discern what is happening (figuratively, put 2 + 2 together)*

And Judah said, "What shall we say unto my lord? What shall we speak? Or how shall we clear ourselves? God hath found out the iniquity of thy servants! Behold, we are my lord's servants, both we, and he also with whom the cup is found."

And he said, "God forbid that I should do so! But, the man in whose hand the cup is found, *he* shall be my servant. And as for you, get you up in peace unto your father."

Then Judah came near unto him, and said, "Oh my lord, let thy servant, I pray thee, speak a word in my lord's ears, and let not thine anger burn against thy servant. For thou art even as Pharaoh. My lord asked his servants, saying, '*Have ye a father or a brother?*' And we said unto my lord, '*We have a father, an old man, and a child of his old age, a little one; and his brother is dead, and he alone is left of his mother, and his father loveth him.*' And thou saidst unto thy servants, '*Bring him down unto me that I may set mine eyes upon him.*' And we said unto my lord, '*The lad cannot leave his father; for, if he should leave his father, his father would die.*' And thou saidst unto thy servants, '*Except your youngest brother come down with you, ye shall see my face no more.*'

"And it came to pass when we came up unto thy servant my father, we told him the words of my lord. And our father said, '*Go again, and buy us a little food.*' And we said, '*We cannot go down; if our youngest brother be with us, then will we go down - for we may not see the man's face except our youngest brother be with us.*' And thy servant, my father, said unto us, '*Ye know that my wife bare me two sons; and the one went out from me, and I said, Surely he is torn in pieces; and I saw him not since. And if ye take this also from me, and mischief befall him, ye shall bring down my gray hairs with sorrow to the grave.*' Now therefore when I come to thy servant, my father, and the lad be not with us, seeing that his life is bound up in the lad's life it shall come to pass, when he seeth that the lad is not with us, that he will die! And thy servants shall bring down the gray hairs of thy servant our father with sorrow to the grave! For thy servant became surety for the lad unto my father, saying, '*If I bring him not unto thee, then I shall bear the blame to my father for ever.*' Now therefore, I pray thee, let <sup>1</sup>thy servant abide instead of the lad, a bondman to my lord; and let the lad go up with his brethren. For how shall I go up to my father and the lad be not with me? Lest peradventure I see the evil that shall come on my father." *<sup>1</sup>let me stay instead of the boy and I will be your slave*

Then Joseph could not refrain himself before all them that stood by him; and <sup>1</sup>he cried, "Cause every man to go out from me!"

*<sup>1</sup>he shouted (to his servants)*

And there stood no man with him while Joseph made himself known unto his brethren. And he wept aloud, and the Egyptians and the house of Pharaoh heard.

And Joseph said unto his brethren, "I am Joseph! Doth my father yet live?"

And his brethren could not answer him, for they were <sup>1</sup>troubled at his presence.

*<sup>1</sup>totally confused and scared to death by Joseph's behavior*

And Joseph said unto his brethren, "Come near to me, I pray you."

And they came near. And he said, "I am Joseph your brother, whom ye sold into Egypt. Now therefore be not grieved nor angry with yourselves that ye sold me hither; for God did send me before you to preserve

life! For these two years hath the famine been in the land, and yet there are five years in the which there shall neither be <sup>1</sup>earing nor harvest. And God sent me before you to preserve you a posterity in the earth, and to save your lives by a great deliverance! So now, it was not *you* that sent me hither, but God! And He hath made me a father to Pharaoh, and lord of all his house, and a ruler throughout all the land of Egypt! Haste ye, and go up to my father, and say unto him: <sup>1</sup>crops

*“Thus saith thy son Joseph: God hath made me lord of all Egypt! Come down unto me, tarry not; and thou shalt dwell in the land of <sup>1</sup>Goshen, and thou shalt be near unto me - thou, and thy children, and thy children's children, and thy flocks, and thy herds, and all that thou hast! And there will I nourish thee; for yet there are five years of famine; lest thou, and thy household, and all that thou hast, come to poverty.’* And, behold, your eyes see, and the eyes of my brother Benjamin, that it is my mouth that speaketh unto you. And ye shall tell my father of all my glory in Egypt and of all that ye have seen; and ye shall haste and bring down my father hither!”

<sup>1</sup>a fertile district in the northeast corner of Egypt between the Nile Delta and the Sinai Peninsula, not to be confused with the land which Joshua renamed 'Goshen' after defeating the Caananites between Judaea and Syria

And he fell upon his brother Benjamin's neck and wept; and Benjamin wept upon his neck. Moreover he kissed all his brethren, and wept upon them; and after that, his brethren talked with him.

And the fame thereof was heard in Pharaoh's house, saying, “Joseph's brethren are come!”

And it pleased Pharaoh well, and his servants. And Pharaoh said unto Joseph, “Say unto thy brethren, *‘This do ye: lade your beasts and go, get you unto the land of Canaan and take your father and your households and come unto me; and I will give you the good of the land of Egypt, and ye shall eat the fat of the land.’* Now thou art commanded, this do ye: take you wagons out of the land of Egypt for your little ones, and for your wives, and bring your father, and come. Also regard not your stuff; for the good of all the land of Egypt is yours!”

And the Children of Israel did so. And Joseph gave them wagons, according to the commandment of Pharaoh, and gave them provision for the way. To all of them he gave each man changes of raiment; but to Benjamin he gave three hundred pieces of silver, and five changes of raiment. And to his father he sent after this manner: ten asses laden with the good things of Egypt, and ten she asses laden with corn and bread and meat for his father by the way.

So he sent his brethren away, and they departed; and he said unto them, “See that ye <sup>1</sup>fall not out by the way.” <sup>1</sup>go straight home, take no detours

And they went up out of Egypt and came into the land of Canaan unto Jacob their father, and told him, saying, “Joseph is yet alive, and he is governor over all the land of Egypt!!”

And Jacob's heart fainted, for he believed them not. And they told him all the words of Joseph which he had said unto them. And when he saw the wagons which Joseph had sent to carry him, the spirit of Jacob their father revived, and Israel said, “It is enough; Joseph my son is yet alive! I will go and see him before I die!”

And Israel took his journey with all that he had, and came to Beersheba and offered sacrifices unto the God of his father Isaac.

And God spake unto Israel in the visions of the night, and said, “Jacob... Jacob...”.

And he said, “Here am I.”

And he said, "I am God, the God of thy father. Fear not to go down into Egypt; for I will there make of thee a great nation. I will go down with thee into Egypt, and I will also surely bring thee up again; and Joseph shall put his hand upon thine eyes."  
*'Joseph will personally and lovingly close your eyelids when you die*

And Jacob rose up from Beersheba, and the sons of Israel carried Jacob their father and their little ones and their wives in the wagons which Pharaoh had sent to carry him. And they took their cattle and their goods which they had gotten in the land of Canaan, and came into Egypt - Jacob, and all his seed with him, his sons, and his sons' sons with him, his daughters, and his sons' daughters, and all his seed brought he with him into Egypt.

And these are the names of the Children of Israel, which came into Egypt, Jacob and his sons:

Reuben (Jacob's firstborn);

and the sons of Reuben:

- Hanoch,
- and Phallu,
- and Hezron,
- and Carmi.

And the sons of Simeon:

- Jemuel,
- and Jamin,
- and Ohad,
- and Jachin,
- and Zohar,
- and Shaul (the son of a Canaanitish woman).

And the sons of Levi:

- Gershon,
- Kohath,
- and Merari.

And the sons of Judah:

- Er,
  - and Onan,
  - and Shelah,
  - and Pharez,
  - and Zarah,
- (but Er and Onan died in the land of Canaan).

And the sons of Pharez were

- Hezron
- and Hamul.

And the sons of Issachar:

- Tola,
- and Phuvah,
- and Job,
- and Shimron.

And the sons of Zebulun:

- Sered,
- and Elon,
- and Jahleel.

(These be the sons of Leah, which she bare unto Jacob in Padanaram, with his daughter Dinah; all the souls of his sons and his daughters were thirty and three.)

And the sons of Gad:

- Ziphion,
- and Haggi,
- Shuni,
- and Ezbon,
- Eri,
- and Arodi,
- and Areli.

And the sons of Asher:

- Jimnah,
- and Ishuah,
- and Isui,
- and Beriah,
- and Serah (their sister).

And the sons of Beriah:

- Heber,
- and Malchiel.

(These are the sons of Zilpah, whom Laban gave to Leah his daughter, and these she bare unto Jacob, even sixteen souls).

The sons of Rachel, Jacob's wife:

- Joseph,
- and Benjamin.

And unto Joseph in the land of Egypt were born:

- Manasseh
- and Ephraim (which Asenath the daughter of Potipherah, priest of On, bare unto him).

And the sons of Benjamin were:

- Belah,
- and Becher,
- and Ashbel,
- Gera,
- and Naaman,
- Ehi,
- and Rosh,
- Muphim,
- and Huphim,
- and Ard.

(These are the sons of Rachel, which were born to Jacob; all the souls were fourteen).

And the sons of Dan:

- Hushim.

And the sons of Naphtali:

- Jahzeel,
- and Guni,
- and Jezer,
- and Shillem.

(These are the sons of Bilhah, which Laban gave unto Rachel his daughter, and she bare these unto Jacob; all the souls were seven. )

All the souls that came with Jacob into Egypt, which came out of his loins, besides Jacob's sons' wives, all the souls were threescore and six; and the sons of Joseph, which were born him in Egypt, were two souls. All the souls of the house of Jacob, which came into Egypt, were <sup>1</sup>threescore and ten. 170

And he sent Judah before him unto Joseph, to direct his face unto Goshen; and they came into the land of Goshen. And Joseph made ready his chariot and went up to meet Israel his father, to Goshen, and presented himself unto him; and he fell on his neck, and wept on his neck a good while.

And Israel said unto Joseph, "Now let me die, since I have seen thy face, because thou art yet alive."

And Joseph said unto his brethren and unto his father's House, "I will go up and show Pharaoh, and say unto him, *'My brethren and my father's House, which were in the land of Canaan, are come unto me. And the men are shepherds, for their trade hath been to feed cattle; and they have brought their flocks, and their herds, and all that they have.'* And it shall come to pass, when Pharaoh shall call you and shall say, *'What is your occupation?'* that ye shall say, *'Thy servants' trade hath been about cattle from our youth even until now, both we, and also our fathers'* - that ye may dwell in the land of Goshen; for every shepherd is an abomination unto the Egyptians."

Then Joseph came and told Pharaoh and said, "My father and my brethren, and their flocks, and their herds, and all that they have, are come out of the land of Canaan; and, behold, they are in the land of Goshen."

And he took some of his brethren, even five men, and presented them unto Pharaoh. And Pharaoh said unto his brethren, "What is your occupation?"

And they said unto Pharaoh, "Thy servants are shepherds, both we, and also our fathers." They said moreover unto Pharaoh, "For to sojourn in the land are we come; for thy servants have no pasture for their flocks, for the famine is sore in the land of Canaan. Now therefore, we pray thee, let thy servants dwell in the land of Goshen."

And Pharaoh spake unto Joseph, saying, "Thy father and thy brethren are come unto thee. The land of Egypt is before thee; in the best of the land make thy father and brethren to dwell! In the land of Goshen let them dwell; and if thou knowest any men of activity among them, then make them rulers over my cattle."

And Joseph brought in Jacob his father and set him before Pharaoh; and Jacob blessed Pharaoh.

And Pharaoh said unto Jacob, "How old art thou?"

And Jacob said unto Pharaoh, "The days of the years of my pilgrimage are an hundred and thirty years; few and evil have the days of the years of my life been, and have not attained unto the days of the years of the life of my fathers in the days of their pilgrimage."

And Jacob blessed Pharaoh and went out from before Pharaoh. And Joseph placed his father and his brethren, and gave them a possession in the land of Egypt, in the best of the land, in the land of Rameses, as Pharaoh had commanded. And Joseph nourished his father and his brethren and all his father's household with bread, according to their families.

And there was no bread in all the land; for the famine was very sore, so that the land of Egypt and all the land of Canaan fainted by reason of the famine.

And Joseph gathered up all the money that was found in the land of Egypt and in the land of Canaan for the corn which they bought, and Joseph brought the money into Pharaoh's house. And when <sup>1</sup>money failed in

the land of Egypt and in the land of Canaan, all the Egyptians came unto Joseph, and said, "Give us bread; for why should we die in thy presence? For the money faileth." *<sup>1</sup>everyone ran out of money*

And Joseph said, "Give your cattle; and I will <sup>1</sup>give you for your cattle if money fail." *<sup>1</sup>give you food in exchange for your cattle if you have no more money*

And they brought their cattle unto Joseph, and Joseph gave them bread in exchange for horses, and for the flocks, and for the cattle of the herds, and for the asses; and he fed them with bread <sup>1</sup>for all their cattle for that year. *<sup>1</sup>in exchange for*

When that year was ended, they came unto him the second year and said unto him, "We will not hide it from my lord how that our money is spent. My lord also hath our herds of cattle. There is not ought left in the sight of my lord but our bodies and our lands. Wherefore shall we die before thine eyes, both we and our land? Buy us and our land for bread, and we and our land will be servants unto Pharaoh; and give us seed, that we may live and not die, that the land be not desolate."

And Joseph bought all the land of Egypt for Pharaoh; for the Egyptians sold, every man, his field because the famine prevailed over them. So the land became Pharaoh's. And as for the people, he removed them to cities from one end of the borders of Egypt even to the other end thereof. Only the land of the priests bought he not; for the priests had a portion assigned them of Pharaoh and did eat their portion which Pharaoh gave them; wherefore they sold not their lands.

Then Joseph said unto the people, Behold, "I have bought you this day and your land for Pharaoh. Lo, here is seed for you, and ye shall sow the land. And it shall come to pass in the <sup>1</sup>increase that ye shall give the fifth part unto Pharaoh, and four parts shall be your own for seed of the field and for your food and for them of your households and for food for your little ones." *<sup>1</sup>prosperity of harvest*

And they said, "Thou hast saved our lives! Let us find grace in the sight of my lord, and we will be Pharaoh's servants."

And Joseph made it a law over the land of Egypt unto this day, that Pharaoh should have the fifth part, except the land of the priests only which became not Pharaoh's.

And Israel dwelt in the land of Egypt, in the country of Goshen; and they had possessions therein, and grew, and multiplied exceedingly. And Jacob lived in the land of Egypt seventeen years. So the whole age of Jacob was an hundred forty and seven years.

And the time drew nigh that Israel must die. And he called his son Joseph and said unto him, "If now I have found grace in thy sight, put, I pray thee, thy hand under my thigh and deal kindly and truly with me. Bury me not, I pray thee, in Egypt, but I will lie with my fathers and thou shalt carry me out of Egypt and bury me in their buryingplace."

And he said, "I will do as thou hast said."

And he said, "Swear unto me." And he sware unto him.

And Israel bowed himself upon the bed's head. And it came to pass after these things that one told Joseph, "Behold, thy father is sick!" And he took with him his two sons, Manasseh and Ephraim.

And one told Jacob, and said, "Behold, thy son Joseph cometh unto thee." And Israel strengthened himself, and sat upon the bed.

And Jacob said unto Joseph, "God Almighty appeared unto me at Luz in the land of Canaan and blessed me and said unto me, '*Behold, I will make thee fruitful and multiply thee, and I will make of thee a multitude of people; and will give this land to thy seed after thee for an everlasting possession.*' And now thy two sons, Ephraim and Manasseh, which were born unto thee in the land of Egypt before I came unto thee into Egypt, are mine; as Reuben and Simeon, they shall be mine. And thy issue, which thou begettest after them, shall be thine, and shall be called after the name of their brethren in their inheritance.

"And as for me, when I came from Padan, Rachel died by me in the land of Canaan in the way when yet there was but a little way to come unto Ephrath, and I buried her there in the way of <sup>1</sup>Ephrath (the same is Bethlehem)."

*<sup>1</sup>also "Bethlehem-Ephratha", named by the prophets as the birthplace of Messiah*

And Israel beheld Joseph's sons, and said, "Who are these?"

And Joseph said unto his father, "They are my sons, whom God hath given me in this place."

And he said, "Bring them, I pray thee, unto me and I will bless them!"

Now, the eyes of Israel were dim for age so that he could not see. And he brought them near unto him; and he kissed them, and embraced them.

And Israel said unto Joseph, "I had not thought to see thy face - and, lo, God hath showed me also thy <sup>1</sup>seed!"

*<sup>1</sup>children/offspring*

And Joseph brought them out from between his knees, and he bowed himself with his face to the earth. And Joseph took them both - Ephraim in his right hand toward Israel's left hand, and Manasseh in his left hand toward Israel's right hand - and brought them near unto him. And Israel stretched out his right hand and laid it upon Ephraim's head (who was the younger) and his left hand upon Manasseh's head, guiding his hands <sup>1</sup>wittingly (for Manasseh was the firstborn).

*<sup>1</sup>with great carefulness and attentiveness to assure that the correct hand was upon the first-born*

And he blessed Joseph and said, "God, before whom my fathers Abraham and Isaac did walk, the God which fed me all my life long unto this day, the <sup>1</sup>Angel which redeemed me from all evil, bless the lads; and let my name be named on them, and the name of my fathers Abraham and Isaac; and let them grow into a multitude in the midst of the earth."

*<sup>1</sup>from the Hebrew "malach", meaning both a king and a messenger (ambassador) of a king - this no doubt is referring to Messiah Jesus Himself who is called the Redeemer who brings the Gospel [Good News] of the Father, therefore making Jesus the supreme Ambassador/Messenger ("Angel") of God the Father.*

And when Joseph saw that his father laid his right hand upon the head of Ephraim, it displeased him; and he held up his father's hand, to remove it from Ephraim's head unto *Manasseh's* head.

And Joseph said unto his father, "Not so, my father, for *this* is the firstborn; put thy right hand upon *his* head."

And his father refused and said, "I know it, my son, I know it. He also shall become a people, and he also shall be great; but truly his *younger* brother shall be greater than he, and his seed shall become a multitude of nations!"

And he blessed them that day, saying, "In thee shall <sup>1</sup>Israel bless, saying, '*God make thee as Ephraim and as Manasseh,*'" and he <sup>2</sup>set Ephraim before Manasseh.

*<sup>1</sup>the People of Israel give blessings <sup>2</sup>spoke Ephraim's name before Manasseh's name*

And Israel said unto Joseph, "Behold, I die. But God shall be with you and bring you again unto the land of your fathers. Moreover, I have given to thee <sup>1</sup>one portion above thy brethren, which I took out of the hand

of the Amorite with my sword and with my bow.” <sup>1</sup>literally, “I gave your eleven brothers one portion of land, but to you I give two”, thus predicting that Joseph’s two sons will be considered equal with the eleven tribes, giving Joseph two territories in the Promised Land. Ephraim and Manasseh’s replacing of Joseph, where one tribe is split into two, is a foreshadowing of Matthias and Paul replacing Judas Iscariot, where one apostleship is split into two (see Acts 1). And, where Manasseh (Joseph’s 1<sup>st</sup> born) would be eclipsed by Ephraim (Joseph’s 2<sup>nd</sup> born), so too Matthias (who was called to apostleship first after Judas) would be eclipsed by Paul (who was called to apostleship second after Judas). All of these being echos of Abraham’s firstborn Ishmael being replaced by Abraham’s secondborn Isaac as heir to God’s promises, and Isaac’s firstborn Esau being replaced as heir by his secondborn Jacob. This is replicated physically and spiritually in myriad ways throughout Scripture – as it is written, the first shall be last and the last shall be first.

And Jacob called unto his sons, and said, “Gather yourselves together, that I may tell you that which shall befall you in the last days. Gather yourselves together, and hear, ye sons of Jacob; and hearken unto Israel your father:

- **Reuben**, thou art my firstborn, my might, and the beginning of my strength, the excellency of dignity, and the excellency of power; unstable as water, thou shalt not excel because thou <sup>1</sup>wentest up to thy father’s bed, then defiledst thou it; he went up to my <sup>2</sup>couch.  
*<sup>1</sup>fornicated with my wife <sup>2</sup>bed*
- **Simeon and Levi** are brethren; instruments of cruelty are in their habitations. O my soul, come not thou into their secret! Unto their assembly, mine honor, be not thou united! For in their anger they slew a man, and in their self-will they digged down a wall. Cursed be their anger, for it was fierce; and their wrath, for it was cruel. I will divide them in Jacob and scatter them in Israel.
- **Judah**, thou art he whom thy brethren shall praise. Thy hand shall be in the neck of thine enemies. Thy father’s children shall bow down before thee. Judah is a lion’s whelp; from the prey, my son, thou art gone up. He stooped down, he couched as a lion, and as an old lion; who shall rouse him up? The <sup>1</sup>sceptre shall not depart from Judah, nor a lawgiver from between his feet, until <sup>2</sup>Shiloh come - and unto Him shall the gathering of the people be. Binding His foal unto the vine, and His ass’s colt unto the choice vine; <sup>3</sup>He washed His garments in wine, and His clothes in the blood of grapes; His eyes shall be red with wine, and His teeth white with milk.  
*<sup>1</sup>prophecy of David and his heirs, of the tribe of Judah, ruling as kings <sup>2</sup>the Messiah <sup>3</sup>spoken of in Revelation, this refers to Messiah “treading the grapes of the winepress of the wrath of God” and “His garments were dipped in blood”, that is, Messiah will execute the wrath of God upon the wicked at the end of time.*
- **Zebulun** shall dwell at the haven of the sea; and he shall be for an haven of ships, and his border shall be unto Zidon.
- **Issachar** is a strong ass couching down between two burdens. And he saw that rest was good, and the land that it was pleasant; and bowed his shoulder to bear, and became a servant unto tribute.
- **Dan** shall judge his people, as one of the tribes of Israel. Dan shall be a serpent by the way, an adder in the path that biteth the horse heels, so that his rider shall fall backward. I have waited for Thy Salvation, O LORD.
- **Gad**, a troop shall overcome him; but *he* shall overcome at the last.
- Out of **Asher** his bread shall be <sup>1</sup>fat, and he shall yield royal dainties. *<sup>1</sup>high quality/the best*
- **Naphtali** is a <sup>1</sup>hind let loose; he giveth goodly words. *<sup>1</sup>a type of deer*
- **Joseph** is a fruitful bough, even a fruitful bough by a well, whose branches run over the wall. The archers have sorely grieved him, and shot at him, and hated him; but his bow abode in strength, and the arms of his hands were made strong by the hands of the Mighty God of Jacob (from thence is the Shepherd, the <sup>1</sup>Stone of Israel). Even by the God of thy father who shall help thee, and by the Almighty who shall bless thee with blessings of heaven above, blessings of the deep that lieth under, blessings of the breasts and of the womb. The blessings of thy father have prevailed above the blessings of my progenitors unto the utmost bound of the everlasting hills. They shall be on the head of Joseph, and on the crown of the head of him that was separate from his brethren. *<sup>1</sup>Rock*
- **Benjamin** shall <sup>1</sup>raven as a wolf; in the morning he shall devour the prey, and at night he shall divide the spoil.” *<sup>1</sup>be ravenous*

All these are the Twelve Tribes of Israel. And this is it that their father spake unto them and blessed them; every one according to his blessing he blessed them.

And he charged them, and said unto them, "I am to be gathered unto my people. Bury me with my fathers in the cave that is in the field of Ephron the Hittite, in the cave that is in the field of Machpelah which is before Mamre in the land of Canaan, which Abraham bought with the field of Ephron the Hittite for a possession of a buryingplace. There they buried Abraham and Sarah his wife; there they buried Isaac and Rebekah his wife; and there I buried Leah. The purchase of the field and of the cave that is therein was from the children of Heth."

And when Jacob had made an end of commanding his sons, he gathered up his feet into the bed and yielded up the ghost, and was gathered unto his people. And Joseph fell upon his father's face, and wept upon him, and kissed him. And Joseph commanded his servants the physicians to embalm his father, and the physicians embalmed Israel. And forty days were fulfilled for him; for so are fulfilled the days of those which are embalmed. And the Egyptians mourned for him <sup>1</sup>threescore and ten days. <sup>1</sup>70 days

And when the days of his mourning were past, Joseph spake unto the House of Pharaoh, saying, "If now I have found grace in your eyes, speak, I pray you, in the ears of Pharaoh, saying, 'My father made me swear, saying, *'Lo, I die; in my grave which I have digged for me in the land of Canaan, there shalt thou bury me.'* Now therefore let me go up, I pray thee, and bury my father, and I will come again'."

And Pharaoh said, "Go up and bury thy father according as he made thee swear."

And Joseph went up to bury his father; and with him went up all the servants of Pharaoh, the elders of his House, and all the elders of the land of Egypt, and all the House of Joseph, and his brethren, and his father's House; only their little ones and their flocks and their herds they left in the land of Goshen. And there went up with him both chariots and horsemen, and it was a very great company.

And they came to the threshingfloor of Atad, which is beyond Jordan, and there they mourned with a great and very sore lamentation; and he made a mourning for his father seven days.

And when the inhabitants of the land, the Canaanites, saw the mourning in the floor of Atad, they said, "This is a grievous mourning to the Egyptians!" (wherefore the name of it was called <sup>1</sup>*Abelmizraim*, which is beyond Jordan). <sup>1</sup>The Meadow of Egypt

And his sons did unto him according as he commanded them, for his sons carried him into the land of Canaan and buried him in the cave of the field of Machpelah which Abraham bought with the field for a possession of a buryingplace of Ephron the Hittite, before Mamre.

And Joseph returned into Egypt - he, and his brethren, and all that went up with him to bury his father - after he had buried his father.

And when Joseph's brethren saw that their father was dead, they said, "Joseph will peradventure hate us and will certainly <sup>1</sup>requite us all the evil which we did unto him!" <sup>1</sup>pay back/get revenge

And they sent a messenger unto Joseph, saying, "Thy father did command before he died, saying, *'So shall ye say unto Joseph: Forgive, I pray thee now, the trespass of thy brethren, and their sin; for they did unto thee evil'*. And now, we pray thee, forgive the trespass of the servants of the God of thy father." And Joseph wept when they spake unto him.

And his brethren also went and fell down before his face, and they said, "Behold, we be thy servants!"

And Joseph said unto them, "Fear not! For, am I in the place of God? But as for you, ye thought evil against me; but God meant it unto good, to bring to pass as it is this day, to save much people alive. Now therefore fear ye not. I will nourish you and your little ones."

And he comforted them, and spake kindly unto them. And Joseph dwelt in Egypt, he, and his father's House. And Joseph lived an hundred and ten years. And Joseph saw Ephraim's children of the third generation; the children also of Machir, the son of Manasseh, were brought up upon Joseph's knees. *'lived to see*

And Joseph said unto his brethren, "I die. And God will surely visit you and bring you out of this land unto the land which He sware to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob."

And Joseph took an oath of the Children of Israel, saying, "God will surely visit you, and ye shall carry up my bones from hence."

So Joseph died, being an hundred and ten years old; and they embalmed him, and he was put in a coffin in Egypt.

Now these are the names of the Children of Israel which came into Egypt; every man and his household came with Jacob:

**Reuben, Simeon, Levi, and Judah, Issachar, Zebulun,  
and Benjamin, Dan, and Naphtali, Gad, and Asher.**

And all the souls that came out of the loins of Jacob were seventy souls (for Joseph was in Egypt already).

And Joseph died, and all his brethren, and all that generation. And the Children of Israel were fruitful, and increased abundantly, and multiplied, and waxed exceeding mighty; and the land was filled with them.

Now, there arose up a new king over Egypt which knew not Joseph. And he said unto his people, "Behold, the people of the Children of Israel are more and mightier than we! Come on, let us deal wisely with them; lest they multiply and it come to pass that, when there falleth out any war, they join also unto our enemies and fight against us, and so get them up out of the land."

Therefore they did set over them taskmasters to afflict them with their burdens. And they built for Pharaoh treasure cities - Pithom and Raamses. But the more they afflicted them, the more they multiplied and grew. And they were grieved because of the Children of Israel.

And the Egyptians made the Children of Israel to serve with rigor; and they made their lives bitter with hard bondage, in mortar, and in brick, and in all manner of service in the field. All their service wherein they made them serve was <sup>1</sup>with rigor. *'as hard and harsh as possible*

And the king of Egypt spake to the Hebrew midwives (of which the name of the one was Shiphrah, and the name of the other Puah), and he said, "When ye do the office of a midwife to the Hebrew women and see them upon the stools, if it be a son, then ye shall kill him; but if it be a daughter, then she shall live."

But the midwives feared God and did not as the king of Egypt commanded them, but saved the men children alive.

And the king of Egypt called for the midwives and said unto them, "Why have ye done this thing and have saved the men children alive?!"

And the midwives said unto Pharaoh, "Because the Hebrew women are not as the Egyptian women; for they are lively, and are <sup>1</sup>delivered <sup>2</sup>ere the midwives come in unto them." *<sup>1</sup>give birth <sup>2</sup>even before*

Therefore God dealt well with the midwives. And the people multiplied, and <sup>1</sup>waxed very mighty. And it came to pass, because the midwives feared God, that He made them <sup>3</sup>Houses.

*<sup>1</sup>built up/grew <sup>2</sup>a House, as in a Family heritage and lineage*

And Pharaoh charged all his people, saying, "Every son that is born ye shall cast into the river, and every daughter ye shall save alive!"

And there went a man of the House of Levi and took to wife a daughter of Levi. And the woman conceived and bare a son; and when she saw him, that he was a goodly child, she hid him three months. And when she could not longer hide him, she took for him an <sup>1</sup>ark of bulrushes, and daubed it with slime and with pitch, and put the child therein; and she laid it in the <sup>2</sup>flags by the river's brink.

*<sup>1</sup>literally "a coffin", in this case, a woven basket <sup>2</sup>bulrushes/cattails/papyrus, a stall slender plant*

And <sup>1</sup>his sister stood afar off, to <sup>2</sup>wit what would be done to him.

*<sup>1</sup>Miriam <sup>2</sup>know*

And the daughter of Pharaoh came down to wash herself at the river, and her maidens walked along by the river's side; and when she saw the ark among the flags, she sent her maid to fetch it. And when she had opened it, she saw the child; and, behold, the babe wept. And she had compassion on him, and said, "This is one of the Hebrews' children!"

Then said <sup>1</sup>his sister to Pharaoh's daughter, "Shall I go and call to thee a <sup>2</sup>nurse of the Hebrew women, that she may <sup>3</sup>nurse the child for thee?"

*<sup>1</sup>Miriam <sup>2</sup>wet nurse <sup>3</sup>breast feed and care for*

And Pharaoh's daughter said to her, "Go."

*<sup>1</sup>go and do so*

And the maid went and called the child's mother.

And Pharaoh's daughter said unto her, "Take this child away and nurse it for me, <sup>1</sup>and I will give thee thy wages."

*<sup>1</sup>NOTE: By a miracle of God, not only did the child's mother receive her child back to raise, but she also had royal protection to care for the child AND she was paid to do it!*

And the women took the child and nursed it. And the child grew, and she brought him unto Pharaoh's daughter, and he became her son. And she called his name <sup>1</sup>Moses, and she said, "Because I drew him out of the water."

*<sup>1</sup>literally "to take back out of the water/baptized"*

And it came to pass in those days, when Moses was grown, that he went out unto his brethren and looked on their burdens. And he <sup>1</sup>spied an Egyptian smiting an Hebrew, one of his brethren. And he looked this way and that way, and when he saw that there was no man, he slew the Egyptian and hid him in the sand. <sup>1</sup>saw

And when he went out the second day, behold, two men of the Hebrews <sup>1</sup>strove together. And he said to him that did the wrong, "Wherefore smitest thou thy fellow?"

*<sup>1</sup>fought*

And he said, "Who made *thee* a prince and a judge over us?! Intendest thou to kill *me* as thou killedst the Egyptian?!"

And Moses feared and said, "Surely this thing is known!"

Now, when Pharaoh heard this thing, he sought to slay Moses. But Moses fled from the face of Pharaoh and dwelt in the <sup>1</sup>land of Midian; and he sat down by a well.

*<sup>1</sup>a territory on the northwest coast of Arabia along the Red Sea's Gulf of Aqaba, site of Mount Sinai*

Now the priest of Midian had seven daughters; and they came and drew water and filled the troughs to water their father's flock. And the shepherds came and drove them away, but Moses stood up and helped them and watered their flock.

And when they came to <sup>1</sup>Reuel their father, he said, "How is it that ye are come so soon to day?" *<sup>1</sup>Jethro Reuel*

And they said, "An Egyptian delivered us out of the hand of the shepherds, and also drew water enough for us, and watered the flock."

And he said unto his daughters, "And where is he?! Why is it that ye have left the man? Call him, that he may eat bread!"

And Moses was content to dwell with the man; and he gave Moses Zipporah his daughter. And she bare him a son, and he called his name *Gershom* (for he said, "I have been a stranger in a strange land").

And it came to pass in process of time that the king of Egypt died; and the Children of Israel <sup>1</sup>sighed by reason of the bondage, and they cried, and their cry came up unto God by reason of the bondage. And God heard their groaning, and God remembered His covenant with Abraham, with Isaac, and with Jacob. And God looked upon the Children of Israel, and God had respect unto them. *<sup>1</sup>groaned*

Now Moses kept the flock of <sup>1</sup>Jethro his father-in-law, the priest of Midian; and he led the flock to the backside of the desert and came to the Mountain of God, even to <sup>2</sup>Horeb.

*<sup>1</sup>literally "his excellency", a title for Reuel <sup>2</sup>literally "wasteland/dried up" - another name for Mt. Sinai*

And the angel of THE LORD appeared unto him in a flame of fire out of the midst of a bush; and he looked, and, behold, the bush burned with fire - and the bush was not consumed!

And Moses said, "I will now turn aside and see this great sight, why the bush is not burnt."

And when THE LORD saw that he turned aside to see, God called unto him out of the midst of the bush and said, "Moses... Moses...".

And he said, "Here am I!"

And He said, "Draw not nigh hither. Put off thy shoes from off thy feet, for the place whereon thou standest is holy ground!" Moreover He said, "I am the God of thy father, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob."

And Moses hid his face, for he was afraid to look upon God.

And THE LORD said, "I have surely seen the affliction of My People which are in Egypt and have heard their cry by reason of their taskmasters; for I know their sorrows. And I am come down to deliver them out of the hand of the Egyptians, and to bring them up out of that land unto a good land and a large, unto a land flowing with milk and honey; unto the place of the Canaanites, and the Hittites, and the Amorites, and the Perizzites, and the Hivites, and the Jebusites. Now therefore, behold, the cry of the Children of Israel is come unto Me, and I have also seen the oppression wherewith the Egyptians oppress them. Come now therefore, and I will send *thee* unto Pharaoh, that thou mayest bring forth My People the Children of Israel out of Egypt."

And Moses said unto God, "Who am I that I should go unto Pharaoh, and that I should bring forth the Children of Israel out of Egypt?"

And He said, "Certainly I will be with thee. And this shall be a token unto thee, that I have sent thee: when thou hast brought forth the people out of Egypt, ye shall serve God upon this mountain."

And Moses said unto God, "Behold, when I come unto the Children of Israel and shall say unto them, 'The God of your fathers hath sent me unto you'; and they shall say to me, 'What is His Name?' what shall I say unto them?"

And God said unto Moses,

## "I AM THAT I AM".

[NOTE: In Hebrew יהוה (YaHWeH/JeHoVaH) literally, "I Am [I exist] – therefore, I Am". NOTE: "Cogito ergo sum" – "I think, therefore I am" is a Latin statement René Descartes in 1644 coined to illustrate a philosophical point; the simple meaning of the phrase is that someone wondering whether or not he exists is, in and of itself, proof that he does exist because he is thinking it in the first place. However, God does not say "Because I THINK, therefore I am" but rather "BECAUSE I EXIST – therefore I exist". This statement about His existence is literally His name, and it is in mockery of all who say there is no God. The very name of God is "I Exist!" - the God who is and was and is to come. So God directs Moses to tell His people that this is His name.]

And He said, "Thus shalt thou say unto the Children of Israel: 'I AM' hath sent me unto you." And God said moreover unto Moses, "Thus shalt thou say unto the Children of Israel: 'THE LORD God of your fathers, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, hath sent me unto you - this is My Name for ever and this is My memorial unto all generations. *"THE LORD God" literally means "The Mighty Yahweh (Jehovah)"*

"Go and gather the elders of Israel together and say unto them: THE LORD God of your fathers, the God of Abraham, of Isaac, and of Jacob, appeared unto me, saying: I have surely visited you and seen that which is done to you in Egypt. And I have said I will bring you up out of the affliction of Egypt unto the land of the Canaanites, and the Hittites, and the Amorites, and the Perizzites, and the Hivites, and the Jebusites, unto a land flowing with milk and honey.

"And they shall hearken to thy voice. And thou shalt come - thou and the elders of Israel - unto the king of Egypt. And ye shall say unto him:

"THE LORD God of the Hebrews hath met with us. And now let us go, we beseech thee, three days' journey into the wilderness, that we may sacrifice to 'THE LORD our God. *יהוה אלהים י יהוה אלדיים* YaHWeH/JeHoVaH Elohim

"And I am sure that the king of Egypt will not let you go, no, not by a mighty hand. And I will stretch out My hand and smite Egypt with all My wonders which I will do in the midst thereof - and after that he will let you go. And I will give this people favor in the sight of the Egyptians; and it shall come to pass that, when ye go, ye shall not go empty, but every woman shall 'borrow of her neighbor, and of her that sojourneth in her house jewels of silver, and jewels of gold, and raiment; and ye shall put them upon your sons and upon your daughters and ye shall spoil the Egyptians." *"literally "to be given what you ask for"*

And Moses answered and said, "But, behold, they will not believe me, nor hearken unto my voice; for they will say, 'THE LORD hath not appeared unto thee!'"

And THE LORD said unto him, "What is that in thine hand?"

And he said, "A rod."

And He said, "Cast it on the ground."

And he cast it on the ground and it became a serpent, and Moses fled from before it.

And THE LORD said unto Moses, "Put forth thine hand and take it by the tail..." (and he put forth his hand and caught it and it became a rod in his hand) "...that they may believe that THE LORD God of their fathers, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, hath appeared unto thee."

And THE LORD said furthermore unto him, "Put now thine hand into thy bosom". And he put his hand into his bosom; and when he took it out, behold, his hand was leprous <sup>1</sup>as snow. And He said, "Put thine hand into thy bosom again..." (and he put his hand into his bosom again and plucked it out of his bosom, and, behold, it was turned again as his other flesh) "...and it shall come to pass, if they will not believe thee, neither hearken to the voice of the first sign, that they will believe the voice of the latter sign. And it shall come to pass, if they will not believe also these two signs, neither hearken unto thy voice, that thou shalt take of the water of the river and pour it upon the dry land; and the water which thou takest out of the river shall become blood upon the dry land." <sup>1</sup>*white as snow*

And Moses said unto THE LORD, "O my LORD, I am not eloquent, neither heretofore nor since Thou hast spoken unto Thy servant; but I am slow of speech, and of a slow tongue!"

And THE LORD said unto him, "Who hath made man's mouth? Or who maketh the dumb, or deaf, or the seeing, or the blind? Have not I <sup>1</sup>THE LORD? Now therefore go, and I will be with thy mouth and teach thee what thou shalt say." <sup>1</sup>יהוה יהוה YaHWeH/JeHoVaH

And he said, "O my LORD, <sup>1</sup>send, I pray thee, by the hand of him whom thou wilt send." <sup>1</sup>*I beg You to send someone else*

And the anger of THE LORD was kindled against Moses, and He said, "Is not Aaron the Levite thy brother? I know that *he* can speak well. And also, behold, he cometh forth to meet thee. And when he seeth thee, he will be glad in his heart. And thou shalt speak unto him and put words in his mouth; and I will be with thy mouth *and* with his mouth and will teach you what ye shall do. And he shall be thy spokesman unto the people. And he shall be, even he shall be to thee instead of a mouth, and thou shalt be to him instead of God. And thou shalt take this rod in thine hand wherewith thou shalt do signs."

And Moses went and returned to Jethro his father-in-law and said unto him, "Let me go, I pray thee, and return unto my brethren which are in Egypt and see whether they be yet alive."

And Jethro said to Moses, "Go in peace!"

And THE LORD said unto Moses in Midian, "Go, return into Egypt; for all the men are dead which sought thy life."

And Moses took his wife and his sons and set them upon an ass, and he returned to the land of Egypt; and Moses took the rod of God in his hand.

And THE LORD said unto Moses, "When thou goest to return into Egypt, see that thou do all those wonders before Pharaoh which I have put in thine hand. But, I will harden his heart, that he shall not let the people go. And thou shalt say unto Pharaoh:

"Thus saith THE LORD: Israel is My son, even My firstborn! And I say unto thee: Let My son go, that he may serve Me! And if thou refuse to let him go, behold, I will slay *thy* son, even thy firstborn!"

And it came to pass by the way in the inn, that THE LORD met him, and sought to kill him. Then Zipporah took a sharp stone, and cut off the foreskin of her son and cast it at his feet, and said, "Surely a bloody husband art thou to me!"

So He let him go. Then she said, "A bloody husband thou art!" (because of the circumcision).

And THE LORD said to Aaron, “Go into the wilderness to meet Moses.”

And he went, and met him in the Mount of God, and kissed him. And Moses told Aaron all the Words of THE LORD who had sent him, and all the signs which He had commanded him. And Moses and Aaron went and gathered together all the elders of the Children of Israel. And Aaron spake all the Words which THE LORD had spoken unto Moses, and did the signs in the sight of the people. And the people believed. And when they heard that THE LORD had visited the Children of Israel, and that He had looked upon their affliction, then they bowed their heads and worshipped.

And afterward Moses and Aaron went in and told Pharaoh, “Thus saith THE LORD God of Israel, ‘*Let My People go, that they may hold a feast unto Me in the wilderness.*’”

And Pharaoh said, “Who is <sup>1</sup>THE LORD that I should obey His voice to let Israel go? I know not THE LORD, neither will I let Israel go!”

<sup>1</sup>יהוה יהוה YəHWeH/JeHoVaH

And they said, “The God of the Hebrews hath met with us. Let us go, we pray thee, three days' journey into the desert, and sacrifice unto THE LORD our God; lest He fall upon us with pestilence, or with the sword.”

And the king of Egypt said unto them, “Wherefore do ye, Moses and Aaron, let the people from their works? Get you unto your burdens!” And Pharaoh said, “Behold, the people of the land now are many, and ye make them rest from their burdens!”

And Pharaoh commanded the same day the taskmasters of the people and their officers, saying, “Ye shall no more give the people straw to make brick, as heretofore. Let them go and gather straw for themselves. And the <sup>1</sup>tale of the bricks which they did make heretofore, ye shall lay upon them; ye shall not diminish ought thereof! For they be idle; therefore they cry, saying, ‘*Let us go and sacrifice to our God.*’ Let there *more* work be laid upon the men, that they may labor therein; and let them not regard vain words!”

<sup>1</sup>tally/number/amount

And the taskmasters of the people went out, and their officers, and they spake to the people, saying, “Thus saith Pharaoh: ‘*I will not give you straw!*’ Go ye, get you straw where ye can find it. Yet not ought of your work shall be diminished!”

So the people were scattered abroad throughout all the land of Egypt to gather stubble instead of straw. And the taskmasters hastened them, saying, “Fulfil your works, your daily tasks, as when there was straw!”

And the officers of the Children of Israel, which Pharaoh's taskmasters had set over them, were beaten, and demanded, “Wherefore have ye not fulfilled your task in making brick both yesterday and to day, as heretofore?”

Then the officers of the Children of Israel came and cried unto Pharaoh, saying, “Wherefore dealest thou thus with thy servants?! There is no straw given unto thy servants, and they say to us, ‘*Make brick!*’ and, behold, thy servants are beaten; but the fault is in thine own people!”

But he said, “Ye are idle! Ye are idle! Therefore ye say, ‘*Let us go and do sacrifice to THE LORD.*’ Go therefore now, and work; for there shall no straw be given you, yet shall ye deliver the tale of bricks!”

And the officers of the Children of Israel did see that they were in evil case after it was said, “*Ye shall not minish ought from your bricks of your daily task*”.

And they met Moses and Aaron, who stood in the way as they came forth from Pharaoh. And they said unto them, "THE LORD look upon you, and judge; because ye have made our savor to be abhorred in the eyes of Pharaoh, and in the eyes of his servants, to put a sword in their hand to slay us!"

And Moses returned unto THE LORD, and said, "LORD, wherefore hast Thou so evil entreated this people? Why is it that Thou hast sent me? For since I came to Pharaoh to speak in Thy name, he hath done evil to this people; neither hast Thou delivered Thy People at all."

Then THE LORD said unto Moses, "Now shalt thou see what I will do to Pharaoh! For with a strong hand shall he let them go, and with a strong hand shall he drive them out of his land!"

And God spake unto Moses and said unto him, "I am THE LORD! And I appeared unto Abraham, unto Isaac, and unto Jacob, by the name of God Almighty, but by My name <sup>1</sup>**Jehovah** was I not known to them. And I have also established My Covenant with them, to give them the land of Canaan, the land of their pilgrimage, wherein they were strangers. יהוה<sup>1</sup> YaHWeH/JeHoVaH

"And I have also heard the groaning of the Children of Israel, whom the Egyptians keep in bondage; and I have remembered My Covenant. Wherefore say unto the Children of Israel: 'I am <sup>1</sup>THE LORD, and I will bring you out from under the burdens of the Egyptians, and I will rid you out of their bondage, and I will redeem you with a stretched out arm, and with great judgments. And I will take you to Me for a people, and I will be to you a God. And ye shall know that I am <sup>1</sup>THE LORD your God which bringeth you out from under the burdens of the Egyptians. And I will bring you in unto the land concerning the which I did swear to give it to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob; and I will give it you for an heritage: I Am <sup>1</sup>THE LORD!'"

יהוה<sup>1</sup> YaHWeH/JeHoVaH

And Moses spake so unto the Children of Israel, but they hearkened not unto Moses for anguish of spirit, and for cruel bondage. And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, "Go in, speak unto Pharaoh king of Egypt, that he let the Children of Israel go out of his land."

And Moses spake before THE LORD, saying, "Behold, the Children of Israel have not hearkened unto me; how then shall *Pharaoh* hear me, who am of uncircumcised lips?"

And THE LORD spake unto Moses and unto Aaron and gave them a charge unto the Children of Israel, and unto Pharaoh king of Egypt, to bring the Children of Israel out of the land of Egypt.

These be the heads of their fathers' Houses:

The sons of Reuben the firstborn of Israel:

- Hanoch,
- and Pallu,
- Hezron,
- and Carmi.

These be the families of Reuben.

And the sons of Simeon:

- Jemuel,
- and Jamin,
- and Ohad,
- and Jachin,
- and Zohar,
- and Shaul (the son of a Canaanitish woman).

These are the families of Simeon.

And these are the names of the sons of Levi according to their generations:

- Gershon,
- and Kohath,
- and Merari.

And the years of the life of Levi were an hundred thirty and seven years.

The sons of Gershon:

- Libni,
- and Shimi,

according to their families.

And the sons of Kohath:

- Amram,
- and Izhar,
- and Hebron,
- and Uzziel.

And the years of the life of Kohath were an hundred thirty and three years.

And the sons of Merari:

- Mahali
- and Mushi.

These are the families of Levi according to their generations.

And Amram took him <sup>1</sup>Jochebed, his father's sister to wife; and she bare him:

- Aaron
- and Moses.

And the years of the life of Amram were an hundred and thirty and seven years.

*<sup>1</sup>pronounced Yo-KHEH-ved*

And the sons of Izhar:

- Korah,
- and Nepheg,
- and Zichr.

And the sons of Uzziel:

- Mishael,
- and Elzaphan,
- and Zithri.

And Aaron took him Elisheba (daughter of Amminadab, sister of Naashon) to wife; and she bare him:

- Nadab,
- and Abihu,
- Eleazar,
- and Ithamar.

And the sons of Korah:

- Assir,
- and Elkanah,
- and Abiasaph.

These are the families of the Korhites.

And Eleazar Aaron's son took him one of the daughters of Putiel to wife; and she bare him:

- Phinehas.

These are the heads of the fathers of the Levites according to their families.

These are *that* Aaron and Moses to whom THE LORD said, "Bring out the Children of Israel from the land of Egypt according to their armies!" These are they which spake to Pharaoh king of Egypt, to bring out the Children of Israel from Egypt - these are *that* Moses and Aaron.

And it came to pass on the day when THE LORD spake unto Moses in the land of Egypt, that THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, "I am <sup>1</sup>THE LORD. Speak thou unto Pharaoh king of Egypt all that I say unto thee."  
<sup>1</sup>יהוה יהוה YahWeH/JeHoVaH

And Moses said before THE LORD, "Behold, I am of uncircumcised lips, and how shall Pharaoh hearken unto me?"

And THE LORD said unto Moses, "See, I have made thee a god to Pharaoh, and Aaron thy brother shall be thy prophet. Thou shalt speak all that I command thee. And Aaron thy brother shall speak unto Pharaoh, that he send the Children of Israel out of his land. And I will harden Pharaoh's heart, and multiply My signs and My wonders in the land of Egypt. But Pharaoh shall not hearken unto you, that I may lay My hand upon Egypt and bring forth Mine armies and My People the Children of Israel out of the land of Egypt by great judgments. And the Egyptians shall know that I Am <sup>1</sup>THE LORD when I stretch forth Mine hand upon Egypt and bring out the Children of Israel from among them."  
<sup>1</sup>יהוה יהוה YahWeH/JeHoVaH

And Moses and Aaron did as THE LORD commanded them, so did they. And Moses was <sup>1</sup>fourscore years old, and Aaron <sup>2</sup>fourscore and three years old, when they spake unto Pharaoh. <sup>180</sup> <sup>283</sup>

And THE LORD spake unto Moses and unto Aaron, saying, "When Pharaoh shall speak unto you, saying, 'Show a miracle for you'; then thou shalt say unto Aaron, 'Take thy rod and cast it before Pharaoh', and it shall become a serpent."

And Moses and Aaron went in unto Pharaoh, and they did so as THE LORD had commanded. And Aaron cast down his rod before Pharaoh and before his servants, and it became a serpent.

Then Pharaoh also called the wise men and the sorcerers. Now the magicians of Egypt, they also did in like manner with their enchantments. For they cast down, every man, his rod and they became serpents - but Aaron's rod swallowed up their rods!

And He hardened Pharaoh's heart that he hearkened not unto them, as THE LORD had said. And THE LORD said unto Moses, "Pharaoh's heart is hardened; he refuseth to let the people go. Get thee unto Pharaoh in the morning; lo, he goeth out unto the water, and thou shalt stand by the river's brink <sup>1</sup>against he come. And the rod which was turned to a serpent shalt thou take in thine hand. And thou shalt say unto him:

*"THE LORD God of the Hebrews hath sent me unto thee, saying, 'Let My People go, that they may serve Me in the wilderness'; and, behold, hitherto thou wouldest not hear. Thus saith THE LORD: In this thou shalt know that I am THE LORD. Behold, I will smite with the rod that is in mine hand upon the waters which are in the river, and they shall be turned to blood! And the fish that is in the river shall die, and the river shall stink; and the Egyptians shall loathe to drink of the water of the river!"*  
<sup>1</sup>awaiting his arrival

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, "Say unto Aaron: Take thy rod and stretch out thine hand upon the waters of Egypt, upon their streams, upon their rivers, and upon their ponds, and upon all their pools of water, that they may become blood, and that there may be blood throughout all the land of Egypt - both in vessels of wood, and in vessels of stone."

And Moses and Aaron did so as THE LORD commanded. And he lifted up the rod and smote the waters that were in the river in the sight of Pharaoh and in the sight of his servants; and all the waters that were in the river were turned to blood. And the fish that was in the river died, and the river stank, and the Egyptians could not drink of the water of the river; and there was blood throughout all the land of Egypt.

And the magicians of Egypt did so with their enchantments. And Pharaoh's heart was hardened, neither did he hearken unto them, as THE LORD had said. And Pharaoh turned and went into his house, neither did he set his heart to this also. And all the Egyptians digged round about the river for water to drink; for they could not drink of the water of the river. And seven days were fulfilled after that THE LORD had smitten the river.

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, "Go unto Pharaoh and say unto him: Thus saith THE LORD, Let My People go, that they may serve Me. And if thou refuse to let them go, behold, I will smite all thy borders with frogs! And the river shall bring forth frogs abundantly, which shall go up and come into thine house, and into thy bedchamber, and upon thy bed, and into the house of thy servants, and upon thy people, and into thine ovens, and into thy kneadingtroughs! And the frogs shall come up both on thee, and upon thy people, and upon all thy servants!"

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, "Say unto Aaron: Stretch forth thine hand with thy rod over the streams, over the rivers, and over the ponds, and cause frogs to come up upon the land of Egypt."

And Aaron stretched out his hand over the waters of Egypt; and the frogs came up and covered the land of Egypt. And the magicians did so with their enchantments, and brought up frogs upon the land of Egypt.

Then Pharaoh called for Moses and Aaron, and said, "Entreat <sup>1</sup>THE LORD, that He may take away the frogs from me and from my people; and I will let the people go, that they may do sacrifice unto <sup>1</sup>THE LORD."

<sup>1</sup>יהוה YaHWeH/JeHoVaH

And Moses said unto Pharaoh, "Glory over me! When shall I entreat for thee, and for thy servants, and for thy people, to destroy the frogs from thee and thy houses, that they may remain in the river only?"

And he said, "To morrow."

And he said, "Be it according to thy word - that thou mayest know that there is none like unto <sup>1</sup>THE LORD our God. And the frogs shall depart from thee, and from thy houses, and from thy servants, and from thy people; they shall remain in the river only."

<sup>1</sup>יהוה YaHWeH/JeHoVaH

And Moses and Aaron went out from Pharaoh. And Moses cried unto THE LORD because of the frogs which he had brought against Pharaoh. And THE LORD did according to the word of Moses; and the frogs died out of the houses, out of the villages, and out of the fields. And they gathered them together upon heaps. And the land stank.

But when Pharaoh saw that there was <sup>1</sup>respite, he hardened his heart and hearkened not unto them, as THE LORD had said.

<sup>1</sup>relief (the plague was over)

And THE LORD said unto Moses, "Say unto Aaron: Stretch out thy rod and smite the dust of the land, that it may become lice throughout all the land of Egypt."

And they did so; for Aaron stretched out his hand with his rod and smote the dust of the earth, and it became lice in man and in beast - all the dust of the land became lice throughout all the land of Egypt. And the magicians did so with their enchantments to bring forth lice, but they could not. So there were lice upon man and upon beast.

Then the magicians said unto Pharaoh, "This is the finger of God!" And Pharaoh's heart was hardened and he hearkened not unto them, as THE LORD had said.

And THE LORD said unto Moses, “Rise up early in the morning and stand before Pharaoh. Lo, he cometh forth to the water. And say unto him:

“Thus saith THE LORD: Let My People go, that they may serve Me! Else, if thou wilt not let My People go, behold, I will send swarms of flies upon thee, and upon thy servants, and upon thy people, and into thy houses! And the houses of the Egyptians shall be full of swarms of flies, and also the ground whereon they are. And I will sever in that day the land of Goshen in which My people dwell, that no swarms of flies shall be there; to the end thou mayest know that I Am THE LORD in the midst of the earth. And I will put a division between My People and thy people. To morrow shall this sign be.”

And THE LORD did so; and there came a grievous swarm of flies into the house of Pharaoh, and into his servants' houses, and into all the land of Egypt. The land was corrupted by reason of the swarm of flies.

And Pharaoh called for Moses and for Aaron, and said, “Go ye, sacrifice to your God in the land!”

And Moses said, “It is not <sup>1</sup>meet so to do; for <sup>2</sup>we shall sacrifice the abomination of the Egyptians to THE LORD our God. Lo, shall we sacrifice the abomination of the Egyptians before their eyes, and will they not stone us? We will go three days' journey into the wilderness and sacrifice to THE LORD our God, as *He* shall command us.” *<sup>1</sup>acceptable <sup>2</sup>we will be sacrificing animals that are sacred to the Egyptians*

And Pharaoh said, “I will let you go that ye may sacrifice to THE LORD your God in the wilderness – only, ye shall not go very far away. <sup>1</sup>Entreat for me!” *<sup>1</sup>pray/plead*

And Moses said, “Behold, I go out from thee, and I will entreat THE LORD that the swarms of flies may depart from Pharaoh, from his servants, and from his people, to morrow. But let not Pharaoh deal deceitfully any more in not letting the people go to sacrifice to THE LORD!”

And Moses went out from Pharaoh and entreated THE LORD. And THE LORD did according to the word of Moses; and He removed the swarms of flies from Pharaoh, from his servants, and from his people; there remained not one. And Pharaoh hardened his heart at this time also, neither would he let the people go.

Then THE LORD said unto Moses, “Go in unto Pharaoh and tell him: Thus saith THE LORD God of the Hebrews:

“Let My People go, that they may serve Me. For, if thou refuse to let them go and wilt hold them still, behold, the hand of THE LORD is upon thy cattle which is in the field, upon the horses, upon the asses, upon the camels, upon the oxen, and upon the sheep! There shall be a very grievous <sup>1</sup>murrain. And THE LORD shall <sup>2</sup>sever between the cattle of Israel and the cattle of Egypt, and there shall nothing die of all that is the childrens' of Israel.” *<sup>1</sup>pestilence/anthrax <sup>2</sup>make a distinction*

And THE LORD appointed a set time, saying, “To morrow THE LORD shall do this thing in the land.” And THE LORD did that thing on the morrow, and all the cattle of Egypt died - but of the cattle of the Children of Israel died not one.

And Pharaoh sent, and, behold, there was not one of the cattle of the Israelites dead. And the heart of Pharaoh was hardened, and he did not let the people go.

And THE LORD said unto Moses and unto Aaron, “Take to you handfuls of ashes of the furnace, and let Moses sprinkle it toward the heaven in the sight of Pharaoh. And it shall become small dust in all the land of Egypt and shall be a boil breaking forth with <sup>1</sup>blains upon man and upon beast throughout all the land of Egypt.” *<sup>1</sup>blisters*

And they took ashes of the furnace and stood before Pharaoh; and Moses sprinkled it up toward heaven and it became a boil breaking forth with blains upon man and upon beast.

And the magicians could not stand before Moses because of the boils; for the boil was upon the magicians and upon all the Egyptians. And THE LORD hardened the heart of Pharaoh and he hearkened not unto them, as THE LORD had spoken unto Moses.

And THE LORD said unto Moses, "Rise up early in the morning and stand before Pharaoh, and say unto him: "Thus saith THE LORD God of the Hebrews: Let My People go, that they may serve Me. For I will at this time send all My plagues upon thine heart, and upon thy servants, and upon thy people, that thou mayest know that there is none like Me in all the earth! For, now I will stretch out My hand, that I may smite thee and thy people with pestilence; and thou shalt be cut off from the earth. And in very deed for *this cause* have I raised thee up - for to show in thee My power, and that My name may be declared throughout all the earth! As yet exaltest thou thyself against My People that thou wilt not let them go? Behold, to morrow about this time I will cause it to rain a very grievous hail such as hath not been in Egypt since the foundation thereof even until now! Send, therefore, now and gather thy cattle and all that thou hast in the field; for, upon every man and beast which shall be found in the field and shall not be brought home, the hail shall come down upon them and they shall die!"

He that feared the Word of THE LORD among the servants of Pharaoh made his servants and his cattle flee into the houses; and he that regarded not the Word of THE LORD left his servants and his cattle in the field.

And THE LORD said unto Moses, "Stretch forth thine hand toward heaven, that there may be hail in all the land of Egypt, upon man, and upon beast, and upon every herb of the field, throughout the land of Egypt."

And Moses stretched forth his rod toward heaven, and THE LORD sent thunder and hail, and the fire ran along upon the ground. And THE LORD rained hail upon the land of Egypt. So there was hail, and fire mingled with the hail, very grievous, such as there was none like it in all the land of Egypt since it became a nation. And the hail smote throughout all the land of Egypt all that was in the field, both man and beast; and the hail smote <sup>1</sup>every herb of the field, and brake every tree of the field.

*<sup>1</sup>NOTE: this was the beginning of the land of Egypt's change from lush tropics to desert*

Only in the land of Goshen, where the Children of Israel were, was there no hail."

And Pharaoh sent and called for Moses and Aaron, and said unto them, "I have sinned this time! <sup>1</sup>THE LORD is righteous, and I and my people are wicked! Entreat THE LORD (for it is enough) that there be no more mighty thunderings and hail; and I will let you go, and ye shall stay no longer." <sup>1</sup> יהוה י יהוה YaHWeH/JeHoVaH

And Moses said unto him, "As soon as I am gone out of the city I will spread abroad my hands unto THE LORD; and the thunder shall cease, neither shall there be any more hail - that thou mayest know how that the earth is THE LORD's. But as for thee and thy servants, I know that ye will *not* yet fear THE LORD God!"

And the flax and the barley was smitten; for the barley was <sup>1</sup>in the ear and the flax was balled. But the wheat and the rye were not smitten, for they were not grown up. <sup>1</sup>ready for harvesting

And Moses went out of the city from Pharaoh and spread abroad his hands unto THE LORD, and the thunders and hail ceased, and the rain was not poured upon the earth. And when Pharaoh saw that the rain and the hail and the thunders were ceased, he sinned yet more and hardened his heart - he and his servants. And the heart of Pharaoh was hardened, neither would he let the Children of Israel go, as THE LORD had spoken by Moses.

And THE LORD said unto Moses, "Go in unto Pharaoh. For I have hardened his heart and the heart of his servants, that I might show these My signs before him and that thou mayest tell in the ears of thy son, and

of thy son's son, what things I have wrought in Egypt, and My signs which I have done among them - that ye may know how that I Am <sup>1</sup>THE LORD.”

<sup>1</sup>יהוה YaHWeH/JeHoVaH

And Moses and Aaron came in unto Pharaoh and said unto him, “Thus saith THE LORD God of the Hebrews: “How long wilt thou refuse to humble thyself before Me?! Let My People go, that they may serve Me! Else, if thou refuse to let My People go, behold, to morrow will I bring the locusts into thy coast! And they shall cover the face of the earth that one cannot be able to see the earth! <sup>1</sup>And they shall eat the residue of that which is escaped, which remaineth unto you from the hail, and shall eat every tree which groweth for you out of the field; and they shall fill thy houses, and the houses of all thy servants, and the houses of all the Egyptians, which neither thy fathers, nor thy fathers' fathers have seen since the day that they were upon the earth unto this day!” *<sup>1</sup>NOTE: with this plague every grass, plant, and tree was wiped out, making Egypt a desert wasteland*

And he turned himself, and went out from Pharaoh.

And Pharaoh's servants said unto him, “How long shall this man be a snare unto us?! Let the men go that they may serve THE LORD their God! Knowest thou not yet that Egypt is destroyed?!”

And Moses and Aaron were brought again unto Pharaoh, and he said unto them, “Go, serve THE LORD your God. But... who are they that shall go?”

And Moses said, “We will go with our young and with our old, with our sons and with our daughters; with our flocks and with our herds will we go. For we must hold a feast unto THE LORD.”

And he said unto them, “Let THE LORD be so with you, as I will let you go and your little ones. <sup>1</sup>Look to it; for evil is before you. <sup>2</sup>Not so! Go now, <sup>3</sup>ye that are *men*, and serve THE LORD - for *that* ye did desire.” And they were driven out from Pharaoh's presence.

*<sup>1</sup>in other words, Beware, you better watch yourself, or I will do evil to you! <sup>2</sup>in other words, You will not have it your way! <sup>3</sup>only the men may go*

And THE LORD said unto Moses, “Stretch out thine hand over the land of Egypt for the locusts, that they may come up upon the land of Egypt and eat every herb of the land, even all that the hail hath left!”

And Moses stretched forth his rod over the land of Egypt, and THE LORD brought an east wind upon the land all that day and all that night; and when it was morning, the east wind brought the locusts. And the locust went up over all the land of Egypt and rested in all the coasts of Egypt. Very grievous were they! Before them there were no such locusts as they, neither after them shall be such. For they covered the face of the whole <sup>1</sup>earth, so that the land was darkened; and they did eat every herb of the land, and all the fruit of the trees which the hail had left. And there remained not any green thing in the trees, or in the herbs of the field, through all the land of Egypt.

<sup>1</sup>ground

Then Pharaoh called for Moses and Aaron in haste; and he said, “I have sinned against THE LORD your God, and against you! Now therefore forgive, I pray thee, my sin only this once and entreat THE LORD your God, that He may take away from me this death only.”

And he went out from Pharaoh and entreated THE LORD. And THE LORD turned a mighty strong west wind, which took away the locusts and cast them into the Red Sea. There remained not one locust in all the coasts of Egypt. But THE LORD hardened Pharaoh's heart so that he would not let the Children of Israel go.

And THE LORD said unto Moses, “Stretch out thine hand toward heaven, that there may be darkness over the land of Egypt - even darkness which may be *felt!*”

And Moses stretched forth his hand toward heaven; and there was a thick darkness in all the land of Egypt three days. They saw not one another, neither rose any from his place for three days. But all the Children of Israel had light in their dwellings.

And Pharaoh called unto Moses and said, "Go ye, serve THE LORD! Only, let your flocks and your herds be stayed. Let your little ones also go with you."

And Moses said, "Thou must give us also sacrifices and burnt offerings, that we may sacrifice unto THE LORD our God. Our cattle also shall go with us; there shall not an hoof be left behind. For thereof must we take to serve THE LORD our God; and we know not with what we must serve THE LORD until we come thither."

But THE LORD hardened Pharaoh's heart, and he would not let them go. And Pharaoh said unto him, "Get thee from me! Take heed to thyself! See my face no more! For in that day thou seest my face thou shalt die!"

And Moses said, "Thou hast spoken well! I will see thy face again no more!"

And THE LORD said unto Moses, "Yet will I bring one plague more upon Pharaoh and upon Egypt. Afterwards he *will* let you go hence! When he shall let you go, he shall surely thrust you out hence altogether. Speak now in the ears of the people, and let every man <sup>1</sup>borrow of his neighbor, and every woman of her neighbor, jewels of silver and jewels of gold." <sup>1</sup>ask (this does not mean "loan")

And THE LORD gave the people favor in the sight of the Egyptians. Moreover the man Moses was very great in the land of Egypt in the sight of Pharaoh's servants and in the sight of the people.

And Moses said, "Thus saith THE LORD: *'About midnight will I go out into the midst of Egypt; and all the firstborn in the land of Egypt shall die - from the first born of Pharaoh that sitteth upon his throne, even unto the firstborn of the maidservant that is behind the mill, and all the firstborn of beasts.'*

"And there shall be a great cry throughout all the land of Egypt such as there was none like it, nor shall be like it any more! But against any of the Children of Israel <sup>1</sup>shall not a dog move his tongue against man or beast, that ye may know how that THE LORD doth put a difference between the Egyptians and Israel! And all these thy servants shall come down unto me and bow down themselves unto me, saying, *'Get thee out, and all the people that follow thee!'* And after that *I will go out!!*" <sup>1</sup>shall not even so much as

And he went out from Pharaoh in a great anger.

And THE LORD said unto Moses, "Pharaoh shall not hearken unto you, that My wonders may be multiplied in the land of Egypt."

And Moses and Aaron did all these wonders before Pharaoh. And THE LORD hardened Pharaoh's heart so that he would not let the Children of Israel go out of his land.

And THE LORD spake unto Moses and Aaron in the land of Egypt saying, "This month shall be unto you the beginning of months; it shall be the first month of the year to you. Speak ye unto all the congregation of Israel, saying:

"In the tenth day of this month they shall take to them, every man, a lamb according to the house of their fathers, a lamb for an house. And if the household be <sup>1</sup>too little for the lamb, let him and his neighbor next unto his house take it according to the number of the souls; every man according to his eating shall make your count for the lamb." <sup>1</sup>too small to eat an entire lamb

“Your lamb shall be without blemish, a male of the first year. Ye shall take it out from the sheep or from the goats, and ye shall keep it up until the fourteenth day of the same month. And the whole assembly of the congregation of Israel shall kill it in the evening.

“And they shall take of the blood and strike it on the two side posts and on the upper door post of the houses wherein they shall eat it. And they shall eat the flesh in that night, roast with fire, and <sup>1</sup>unleavened bread; and with bitter herbs they shall eat it. Eat not of it raw, nor sodden at all with water, but roast with fire - his head with his legs and with the purtenance thereof. And ye shall let *nothing* of it remain until the morning; and that which remaineth of it until the morning ye shall burn with fire.

“And thus shall ye eat it: with your loins girded, your shoes on your feet, and your staff in your hand. And ye shall eat it in haste. It is THE LORD's Passover. For I will pass through the land of Egypt this night and will smite all the firstborn in the land of Egypt, both man and beast; and against all the gods of Egypt I will execute judgment. I Am THE LORD! And the blood shall be to you for a token upon the houses where ye are; and when I see the blood I will ‘*pass over*’ you and the plague shall not be upon you to destroy you when I smite the land of Egypt.

“And this day shall be unto you for a memorial; and ye shall keep it a feast to THE LORD throughout your generations. Ye shall keep it a feast by an ordinance for ever! Seven days shall ye eat unleavened bread. Even the first day ye shall put away leaven out of your houses; for whosoever eateth leavened bread from the first day until the Seventh Day, that soul shall be cut off from Israel!

“And in the first day there shall be an holy convocation, and in the Seventh Day there shall be an holy convocation to you; no manner of work shall be done in them, save that which every man must eat - that *only* may be done of you. And ye shall observe the Feast of Unleavened Bread; for in this selfsame day have I brought your armies out of the land of Egypt. Therefore shall ye observe this day in your generations by an ordinance for ever. In the first month, on the fourteenth day of the month at even ye shall eat unleavened bread until the one and twentieth day of the month at even. Seven days shall there be no leaven found in your houses, for whosoever eateth that which is leavened, even that soul shall be cut off from the congregation of Israel, whether he be a stranger or born in the land. Ye shall eat nothing leavened; in all your habitations shall ye eat unleavened bread.”

### <sup>1</sup>The Unleavened Bread

Jewish tradition teaches that the Hebrews ate unleavened bread at the first Passover because they fled Egypt so fast that they had no time to allow the bread to rise. While it is true that on the day they finally did leave Egypt there was no time for them to wait for the bread to rise, yet here we see that God had explicitly commanded them to *intentionally* prepare unleavened bread for the Passover on the night *before* they knew they were leaving.

Then Moses called for all the elders of Israel and said unto them, “Draw out and take you a lamb according to your families, and kill the Passover. And ye shall take a bunch of hyssop, and dip it in the blood that is in the basin, and strike the lintel and the two side posts with the blood that is in the basin; and none of you shall go out at the door of his house until the morning. For THE LORD will pass through to smite the Egyptians; and when He seeth the blood upon the lintel and on the two side posts, THE LORD will ‘*pass over*’ the door and will not suffer the destroyer to come in unto your houses to smite you. And ye shall observe this thing for an ordinance to thee and to thy sons for ever. And it shall come to pass, when ye be come to the land which THE LORD will give you according as he hath promised, that ye shall keep this service.

“And it shall come to pass, when your children shall say unto you, ‘*What mean ye by this service?*’ That ye shall say, ‘*It is the sacrifice of THE LORD's Passover, who passed over the houses of the Children of Israel in Egypt when He smote the Egyptians and delivered our Houses.*’”

And the people bowed the head and worshipped. And the Children of Israel went away and did as THE LORD had commanded Moses and Aaron - so did they.

And it came to pass that at midnight THE LORD smote all the firstborn in the land of Egypt, from the firstborn of Pharaoh that sat on his throne unto the firstborn of the captive that was in the dungeon; and all the firstborn of cattle.

And Pharaoh rose up in the night - he, and all his servants, and all the Egyptians. And there was a great cry in Egypt, for there was not a house where there was not one dead.

And he called for Moses and Aaron by night and said, "Rise up and get you forth from among my people, both ye and the Children of Israel; and go, serve THE LORD as ye have said. Also take your flocks and your herds as ye have said, and be gone. And... bless me also."

And the Egyptians were urgent upon the people, that they might send them out of the land in haste; for they said, "We be all dead men!"

And the People took their dough before it was leavened, their kneadingtroughs being bound up in their clothes upon their shoulders. And the Children of Israel did according to the word of Moses; and they <sup>1</sup>borrowed of the Egyptians jewels of silver and jewels of gold and raiment; and THE LORD gave the People favor in the sight of the Egyptians so that they <sup>2</sup>lent unto them such things as they required. And they spoiled the Egyptians. *<sup>1</sup>asked (not as a loan) <sup>2</sup>gave (not as a loan)*

And the Children of Israel journeyed from <sup>1</sup>Rameses to <sup>2</sup>Succoth, about six hundred thousand on foot that were men, beside children. And a <sup>2</sup>mixed multitude went up also with them; and flocks, and herds, even very much cattle. *<sup>1</sup>a city in the county [land] of Goshen <sup>2</sup>a city near the border of Goshen <sup>3</sup>people of other nationalities*

<sup>1</sup>And they baked unleavened cakes of the dough which they brought forth out of Egypt, for it was not leavened because they were thrust out of Egypt and could not tarry, neither had they prepared for themselves any victual.

*<sup>1</sup>NOTE: The night of Passover, when they were required to intentionally make unleavened bread, had already passed; the unleavened bread that resulted by fleeing in haste the next day is coincidental. But it did serve a great purpose because they were required to continue eating unleavened bread for six more days. And here also is another refuted tradition, in which it is said that unleavened bread is merely flour & water dough that has not had enough time to rise and has nothing to do with adding a leavening agent such as yeast; yet, here we are told that when they fled they did not have time to leaven (add yeast) and they carried the flour & water dough in their kneadingtroughs. If unleavened bread is merely plain flour & water (without yeast) that has not had time to rise, then the dough they carried would most certainly have risen on its own within 30 minutes. If they were forbidden to eat plain flour & water dough that has risen, then they would not have been allowed to even touch this dough that they carried in their kneadingtroughs. Therefore unleavened bread for Passover must refer to dough in which a leavening agent, like yeast, has been added - not merely plain flour & water dough that has not had time to rise.*

Now the sojourning of the Children of Israel, who dwelt in Egypt, was four hundred and thirty years. And it came to pass at the end of the four hundred and thirty years, even the selfsame day it came to pass, that all the hosts of THE LORD went out from the land of Egypt.

It is a night to be much observed unto THE LORD for bringing them out from the land of Egypt; this is that night of THE LORD to be observed of all the Children of Israel in their generations.

And THE LORD said unto Moses and Aaron, "This is the ordinance of the Passover:

- There shall no stranger eat thereof; but every man's servant that is bought for money, when thou hast circumcised him, then shall he eat thereof. A foreigner and an hired servant shall not eat thereof.
- In one house shall it be eaten; thou shalt not carry forth ought of the flesh abroad out of the house;
- neither shall ye break a bone thereof.
- All the congregation of Israel shall keep it.
- And when a stranger shall sojourn with thee, and will keep the Passover to THE LORD, let all his males be circumcised, and then let him come near and keep it; and he shall be as one that is born in the land - for no uncircumcised person shall eat thereof.

<sup>1</sup>One law shall be to him that is homeborn and unto the stranger that sojourneth among you." *<sup>1</sup>the same*

Thus did all the Children of Israel; as THE LORD commanded Moses and Aaron, so did they. And it came to pass the selfsame day, that THE LORD did bring the Children of Israel out of the land of Egypt by their armies.

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, "Sanctify unto Me all the firstborn, whatsoever openeth the womb among the Children of Israel, both of man and of beast - it is Mine."

And Moses said unto the people, "Remember this day in which ye came out from Egypt, out of the house of bondage; for by strength of hand THE LORD brought you out from this place. There shall no leavened bread be eaten. This day came ye out in the month Abib. And it shall be, when THE LORD shall bring thee into the land of the Canaanites, and the Hittites, and the Amorites, and the Hivites, and the Jebusites - which He sware unto thy fathers to give thee, a land flowing with milk and honey - that thou shalt keep this service in this month! Seven days thou shalt eat unleavened bread, and in the Seventh Day shall be a feast to THE LORD. Unleavened bread shall be eaten seven days; and there shall no leavened bread be seen with thee, neither shall there be leaven seen with thee in all thy quarters. And thou shalt show thy son in that day, saying, *'This is done because of that which THE LORD did unto me when I came forth out of Egypt.'*

"And it shall be for a sign unto thee upon thine hand, and for a memorial between thine eyes, that THE LORD's law may be in thy mouth; for with a strong hand hath THE LORD brought thee out of Egypt. Thou shalt therefore keep this ordinance in his season from year to year.

"And it shall be when THE LORD shall bring thee into the land of the Canaanites, as he sware unto thee and to thy fathers, and shall give it thee, that thou shalt set apart unto THE LORD all that openeth the matrix, and every firstling that cometh of a beast which thou hast; the males shall be THE LORD's. And every firstling of an ass thou shalt redeem with a lamb (and if thou wilt not redeem it, then thou shalt break his neck); and all the firstborn of man among thy children shalt thou redeem.

"And it shall be when thy son asketh thee in time to come, saying, *'What is this?'* that thou shalt say unto him, *'By strength of hand THE LORD brought us out from Egypt, from the house of bondage. And it came to pass, when Pharaoh would hardly let us go, that THE LORD slew all the firstborn in the land of Egypt, both the firstborn of man and the firstborn of beast; therefore I sacrifice to THE LORD all that openeth the matrix, being males - but all the firstborn of my children I redeem. And it shall be for a token upon thine hand, and for frontlets between thine eyes; for by strength of hand THE LORD brought us forth out of Egypt.'*"

And it came to pass, when Pharaoh had let the people go, that God led them not through the way of the land of the Philistines, although that was near (for God said, "Lest peradventure the people repent when they see war, and they return to Egypt"). But God led the people about, through the way of the wilderness of the Red sea, and the Children of Israel went up <sup>1</sup>harnessed out of the land of Egypt. <sup>1</sup>*equipped with weapons*

And Moses took the bones of Joseph with him, for he had straitly sworn the Children of Israel, saying, "God will surely visit you; and ye shall carry up my bones away hence with you."

And they took their journey from Succoth, and encamped in Etham, in the edge of the wilderness. And THE LORD went before them by day in a pillar of a cloud, to lead them the way; and by night in a pillar of fire, to give them light; to go by day and night. He took not away the pillar of the cloud by day, nor the pillar of fire by night, from before the people.

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, "Speak unto the Children of Israel, that they turn and encamp before Pihahiroth, between Migdol and the <sup>1</sup>sea, over against <sup>2</sup>Baalzephon; before it shall ye encamp by the sea. For Pharaoh will say of the Children of Israel, *'They are entangled in the land, the wilderness hath shut them in.'* And I will harden Pharaoh's heart, that he shall follow after them; and I will be honored upon Pharaoh, and upon all his host; that the Egyptians may know that I am THE LORD." And they did so.

<sup>1</sup>*Red Sea* <sup>2</sup>*on the northwest tip of the left branch of the Red Sea*

And it was told the king of Egypt that the people fled. And the heart of Pharaoh and of his servants was turned against the people, and they said, "Why have we done this, that we have let Israel go from serving us?" And he made ready his chariot, and took his people with him. And he took six hundred chosen chariots, and all the chariots of Egypt, and captains over every one of them.

And THE LORD hardened the heart of Pharaoh king of Egypt, and he pursued after the Children of Israel. and the Children of Israel went out with an high hand. But the Egyptians pursued after them, all the horses and chariots of Pharaoh, and his horsemen, and his army, and overtook them encamping by the sea, beside Pihahiroth, before Baalzephon.

And when Pharaoh drew nigh, the Children of Israel lifted up their eyes, and, behold, the Egyptians marched after them; and they were sore afraid, and the Children of Israel cried out unto THE LORD.

And they said unto Moses, "Because there were no graves in Egypt hast thou taken us away to die in the wilderness? Wherefore hast thou dealt thus with us, to carry us forth out of Egypt? Is not this the word that we did tell thee in Egypt, saying, *'Let us alone, that we may serve the Egyptians?'* For it had been better for us to serve the Egyptians, than that we should die in the wilderness!"

And Moses said unto the people, "Fear ye not! Stand still and see the salvation of THE LORD which He will show to you to day! For the Egyptians, whom ye have seen to day, ye shall see them again no more for ever! THE LORD shall fight for you, and ye shall hold your peace!"

And THE LORD said unto Moses, "Wherefore criest thou unto Me? Speak unto the Children of Israel, that they go forward. But lift thou up thy rod, and stretch out thine hand over the sea, and divide it; and the Children of Israel shall go on dry ground through the midst of the sea. And I, behold, I will harden the hearts of the Egyptians, and they shall follow them; and I will get Me honor upon Pharaoh, and upon all his host, upon his chariots, and upon his horsemen. And the Egyptians shall know that I am THE LORD when I have gotten Me honor upon Pharaoh, upon his chariots, and upon his horsemen."

And the angel of God, which went before the camp of Israel, removed and went behind them. And the pillar of the cloud went from before their face and stood behind them; and it came between the camp of the Egyptians and the camp of Israel, and it was a cloud and darkness to them (but it gave light by night to <sup>1</sup>these) so that the one came not near the other all the night. *<sup>1</sup>those who were with Moses*

And Moses stretched out his hand over the sea; and THE LORD caused the sea to go back by a strong east wind all that night, and made the sea dry land, and the waters were divided.

And the Children of Israel went into the midst of the sea upon the dry ground; and the waters were a wall unto them on their right hand and on their left.

And the Egyptians pursued and went in after them to the midst of the sea - even all Pharaoh's horses, his chariots, and his horsemen.

And it came to pass that, in the morning watch, THE LORD looked unto the host of the Egyptians through the pillar of fire and of the cloud, and troubled the host of the Egyptians, and took off their chariot wheels, that they drave them heavily, so that the Egyptians said, "Let us flee from the face of Israel; for THE LORD fighteth for them against the Egyptians!"

And THE LORD said unto Moses, "Stretch out thine hand over the sea, that the waters may come again upon the Egyptians, upon their chariots, and upon their horsemen."

And Moses stretched forth his hand over the sea, and the sea returned to his strength when the morning appeared; and the Egyptians fled against it; and THE LORD overthrew the Egyptians in the midst of the sea.

And the waters returned and covered the chariots, and the horsemen, and all the host of Pharaoh that came into the sea after them; there remained not so much as one of them. But the Children of Israel walked upon dry land in the midst of the sea; and the waters were a wall unto them on their right hand and on their left.

Thus THE LORD saved Israel that day out of the hand of the Egyptians; and Israel saw the Egyptians dead upon the sea shore. And Israel saw that great work which THE LORD did upon the Egyptians, and the people feared THE LORD, and believed THE LORD, and His servant Moses.

Then sang Moses and the Children of Israel this song unto THE LORD, and spake, saying,

*"I will sing unto THE LORD, for He hath triumphed gloriously, the horse and his rider hath He thrown into the sea. THE LORD is My Strength and Song, and He is become my Salvation. He is my God, and I will prepare Him an habitation; my father's God, and I will exalt Him. THE LORD is a man of war. THE LORD is His name. Pharaoh's chariots and his host hath He cast into the sea. his chosen captains also are drowned in the Red sea. The depths have covered them. They sank into the bottom as a stone. Thy right hand, O LORD, is become glorious in power; Thy right hand, O LORD, hath dashed in pieces the enemy. And in the greatness of Thine excellency Thou hast overthrown them that rose up against Thee; Thou sentest forth Thy wrath, which consumed them as stubble. And with the blast of Thy nostrils the waters were gathered together, the floods stood upright as an heap, and the depths were congealed in the heart of the sea. The enemy said, 'I will pursue, I will overtake, I will divide the spoil; my lust shall be satisfied upon them; I will draw my sword, my hand shall destroy them!' Thou didst blow with Thy wind, the sea covered them; they sank as lead in the mighty waters. Who is like unto Thee, O LORD, among the gods? who is like Thee, glorious in holiness, fearful in praises, doing wonders? Thou stretchedst out Thy right hand, the earth swallowed them. Thou in thy mercy hast led forth the people which Thou hast redeemed; Thou hast guided them in Thy strength unto Thy holy habitation. The people shall hear, and be afraid; sorrow shall take hold on the inhabitants of Palestina. Then the dukes of Edom shall be amazed; the mighty men of Moab, trembling shall take hold upon them; all the inhabitants of Canaan shall melt away. Fear and dread shall fall upon them; by the greatness of Thine arm they shall be as still as a stone; till Thy people pass over, O LORD, till the people pass over, which Thou hast purchased. Thou shalt bring them in, and plant them in the mountain of Thine inheritance, in the place, O LORD, which Thou hast made for Thee to dwell in, in the Sanctuary, O Lord, which Thy hands have established. THE LORD shall reign for ever and ever. For the horse of Pharaoh went in with his chariots and with his horsemen into the sea, and THE LORD brought again the waters of the sea upon them; but the Children of Israel went on dry land in the midst of the sea!"*

And Miriam the prophetess, the sister of Aaron, took a timbrel in her hand; and all the women went out after her with timbrels and with dances. And Miriam answered them, "Sing ye to THE LORD, for He hath triumphed gloriously; the horse and his rider hath he thrown into the sea!"

So Moses brought Israel from the Red sea, and they went out into the wilderness of Shur; and they went three days in the wilderness, and found no water. And when they came to Marah, they could not drink of the waters of Marah, for they were bitter (therefore the name of it was called Marah).

And the people murmured against Moses, saying, "What shall we drink?"

And he cried unto THE LORD; and THE LORD showed him a tree which, when he had cast into the waters, the waters were made sweet. There He made for them a statute and an ordinance, and there He proved them, and said, "If thou wilt diligently hearken to the voice of THE LORD thy God, and wilt do that which is

right in His sight, and wilt give ear to His commandments, and keep all His statutes, I will put none of these diseases upon thee which I have brought upon the Egyptians - for I am THE LORD that healeth thee."

And they came to Elim, where were twelve wells of water, and threescore and ten palm trees; and they encamped there by the waters.

And they took their journey from Elim, and all the congregation of the Children of Israel came unto the Wilderness of Sin, which is between Elim and Sinai, on the fifteenth day of the second month after their departing out of the land of Egypt.

And the Children of Israel said unto them, "Would to God we had died by the hand of THE LORD in the land of Egypt, when we sat by the flesh pots, and when we did eat bread to the full; for ye have brought us forth into this wilderness to kill this whole assembly with hunger!"

Then said THE LORD unto Moses, "Behold, I will rain bread from heaven for you; and the people shall go out and gather a certain rate every day, that I may prove them, whether they will walk in My law, or no. And it shall come to pass, that on the sixth day they shall prepare that which they bring in; and it shall be twice as much as they gather daily."

And Moses and Aaron said unto all the Children of Israel, "At even, then ye shall know that THE LORD hath brought you out from the land of Egypt. And in the morning, then ye shall see the glory of THE LORD; for that He heareth your murmurings against THE LORD. And what are we, that ye murmur against us?"

And Moses said, "This shall be, when THE LORD shall give you in the evening flesh to eat, and in the morning bread to the full; for that THE LORD heareth your murmurings which ye murmur against Him. And what are we? Your murmurings are not against us, but against THE LORD!"

And Moses spake unto Aaron, "Say unto all the congregation of the Children of Israel, '*Come near before THE LORD; for He hath heard your murmurings.*'"

And it came to pass, as Aaron spake unto the whole congregation of the Children of Israel, that they looked toward the wilderness, and, behold, the glory of THE LORD appeared in the cloud.

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, "I have heard the murmurings of the Children of Israel. Speak unto them, saying, '*At even ye shall eat flesh, and in the morning ye shall be filled with bread; and ye shall know that I am THE LORD your God.*'"

And it came to pass, that at even the quails came up, and covered the camp; and in the morning the dew lay round about the host. And when the dew that lay was gone up, behold, upon the face of the wilderness there lay a small round thing, as small as the hoar frost on the ground. And when the Children of Israel saw it, they said one to another, "It is manna" (for they wist not what it was).

And Moses said unto them, "This is the bread which THE LORD hath given you to eat. This is the thing which THE LORD hath commanded: Gather of it every man according to his eating, an omer for every man, according to the number of your persons; take ye every man for them which are in his tents."

And the Children of Israel did so, and gathered - some more, some less. And when they did mete it with an omer, he that gathered much had nothing over, and he that gathered little had no lack; they gathered every man according to his eating.

And Moses said, "Let no man leave of it till the morning!"

Notwithstanding they hearkened not unto Moses; but some of them left of it until the morning, and it bred worms, and stank; and Moses was wroth with them.

And they gathered it every morning, every man according to his eating; and when the sun waxed hot, it melted.

And it came to pass, that on the sixth day they gathered twice as much bread - two omers for one man; and all the rulers of the congregation came and told Moses.

And he said unto them, "This is that which THE LORD hath said: To morrow is the rest of the holy Sabbath unto THE LORD; bake that which ye will bake to day, and seethe that which ye will seethe; and, that which remaineth over, lay up for you to be kept until the morning."

And they laid it up till the morning, as Moses bade; and it did not stink, neither was there any worm therein.

And Moses said, "Eat that to day; for to day is a Sabbath unto THE LORD. To day ye shall not find it in the field. Six days ye shall gather it; but on the Seventh Day, which is the Sabbath, in it there shall be none."

And it came to pass, that there went out some of the people on the Seventh Day for to gather, and they found none. And THE LORD said unto Moses, "How long refuse ye to keep My commandments and My laws? See, for that THE LORD hath given you the Sabbath, therefore He giveth you on the sixth day the bread of two days; abide ye every man in his place, let no man go out of his place on the Seventh Day!"

So the people rested on the Seventh Day. *NOTE: the Sabbath was instituted before the 10 Commandments were given*

And the House of Israel called the name thereof *Manna*; and it was like coriander seed, white; and the taste of it was like wafers made with honey.

And Moses said, "This is the thing which THE LORD commendeth: Fill an omer of it to be kept for your generations; that they may see the bread wherewith I have fed you in the wilderness, when I brought you forth from the land of Egypt."

And Moses said unto Aaron, "Take a pot, and put an omer full of manna therein, and lay it up before THE LORD, to be kept for your generations."

As THE LORD commanded Moses, so Aaron laid it up before the Testimony, to be kept. And the Children of Israel did eat manna forty years, until they came to a land inhabited; they did eat manna, until they came unto the borders of the land of Canaan. (Now <sup>1</sup>an omer is the tenth part of <sup>2</sup>an ephah).

<sup>1</sup>2.08 quarts <sup>2</sup>20.8 quarts

And all the congregation of the Children of Israel journeyed from the Wilderness of <sup>1</sup>Sin, after their journeys, according to the commandment of THE LORD, and pitched in Rephidim; and there was no water for the people to drink.

<sup>1</sup>zin

Wherefore the people did chide with Moses, and said, "Give us water that we may drink!"

And Moses said unto them, "Why chide ye with me? Wherefore do ye tempt THE LORD?"

And the people thirsted there for water; and the people murmured against Moses, and said, "Wherefore is this that thou hast brought us up out of Egypt to kill us and our children and our cattle with thirst?"

And Moses cried unto THE LORD, saying, "What shall I do unto this people? They be almost ready to stone me!"

And THE LORD said unto Moses, "Go on before the people, and take with thee of the elders of Israel; and thy rod, wherewith thou smotest the river, take in thine hand, and go. Behold, I will stand before thee there upon the rock in Horeb; and thou shalt smite the rock, and there shall come water out of it that the people may drink."

And Moses did so in the sight of the elders of Israel. And he called the name of the place Massah and Meribah, because of the chiding of the Children of Israel, and because they tempted THE LORD, saying, "IS THE LORD among us, or not?"

Then came Amalek, and fought with Israel in Rephidim.

And Moses said unto Joshua, "Choose us out men and go out - fight with Amalek! To morrow I will stand on the top of the hill with the rod of God in mine hand."

So Joshua did as Moses had said to him and fought with Amalek. And Moses, Aaron, and Hur went up to the top of the hill. And it came to pass, when Moses held up his hand, that Israel prevailed; and when he let down his hand, Amalek prevailed. But Moses' hands were heavy; and they took a stone, and put it under him, and he sat thereon; and Aaron and Hur stayed up his hands, the one on the one side, and the other on the other side; and his hands were steady until the going down of the sun. And Joshua discomfited Amalek and his people with the edge of the sword.

And THE LORD said unto Moses, "Write this for a memorial in a book and rehearse it in the ears of Joshua; for I will utterly put out the remembrance of Amalek from under heaven!" And Moses built an altar, and called the name of it JEHOVAH-NISSI (for he said, "Because THE LORD hath sworn that THE LORD will have war with Amalek from generation to generation").

When Jethro (the priest of Midian, Moses' father-in-law), heard of all that God had done for Moses, and for Israel His People, and that THE LORD had brought Israel out of Egypt; then Jethro (Moses' father-in-law) took Zipporah, Moses' wife, after he had sent her back, and her two sons; of which the name of the one was

- Gershom (for he said, "I have been an alien in a strange land"),

And the name of the other was

- Eliezer ("for the God of my father," said he, "was mine Help, and delivered me from the sword of Pharaoh").

And Jethro, Moses' father-in-law, came with his sons and his wife unto Moses into the wilderness, where he encamped at the mount of God.

And he said unto Moses, "I, thy father-in-law, Jethro, am come unto thee, and thy wife, and her two sons with her."

And Moses went out to meet his father-in-law, and did obeisance, and kissed him; and they asked each other of their welfare; and they came into the tent. And Moses told his father-in-law all that THE LORD had done unto Pharaoh and to the Egyptians for Israel's sake, and all the travail that had come upon them by the way, and how THE LORD delivered them. And Jethro rejoiced for all the goodness which THE LORD had done to Israel, whom He had delivered out of the hand of the Egyptians.

And Jethro said, "Blessed be THE LORD who hath delivered you out of the hand of the Egyptians, and out of the hand of Pharaoh, who hath delivered the people from under the hand of the Egyptians! Now I know that THE LORD is greater than all gods; for in the thing wherein they dealt proudly, He was above them!"

And Jethro, Moses' father-in-law, took a burnt offering and sacrifices for God; and Aaron came, and all the elders of Israel, to eat bread with Moses' father-in-law before God.

And it came to pass on the morrow, that Moses sat to judge the people; and the people stood by Moses from the morning unto the evening. And when Moses' father-in-law saw all that he did to the people, he said, "What is this thing that thou doest to the people? Why sittest thou thyself alone, and all the people stand by thee from morning unto even?"

And Moses said unto his father-in-law, "Because the people come unto me to inquire of God. When they have a matter, they come unto me; and I judge between one and another, and I do make them know the statutes of God and His laws."

And Moses' father-in-law said unto him, "The thing that thou doest is not good. Thou wilt surely wear away, both thou, and this people that is with thee; for this thing is too heavy for thee. Thou art not able to perform it thyself alone! Hearken now unto my voice, I will give thee counsel, and God shall be with thee: Be thou for the people to God-ward, that thou mayest bring the causes unto God, and thou shalt teach them ordinances and laws, and shalt show them the way wherein they must walk, and the work that they must do. Moreover thou shalt provide out of all the people able men such as fear God - men of truth, hating covetousness - and place such over them to be rulers of thousands, and rulers of hundreds, rulers of fifties, and rulers of tens; and let *them* judge the people at all seasons. And it shall be that every great matter they shall bring unto *thee*, but every small matter *they* shall judge. So shall it be easier for thyself, and they shall bear the burden with thee. If thou shalt do this thing, and God command thee so, then thou shalt be able to endure, and all this people shall also go to their place in peace."

So Moses hearkened to the voice of his father-in-law and did all that he had said. And Moses chose able men out of all Israel and made them heads over the people, rulers of thousands, rulers of hundreds, rulers of fifties, and rulers of tens. And they judged the people at all seasons. The hard causes they brought unto Moses, but every small matter they judged themselves. And Moses let his father-in-law depart; and he went his way into his own land.

In the third month, when the Children of Israel were gone forth out of the land of Egypt, the same day came they into the Wilderness of Sinai. For they were departed from Rephidim, and were come to the desert of Sinai, and had pitched in the wilderness; and there Israel camped before the mount.

And Moses went up unto God, and THE LORD called unto him out of the mountain, saying, "Thus shalt thou say to the House of Jacob, and tell the Children of Israel: Ye have seen what I did unto the Egyptians, and how I bare you on eagles' wings and brought you unto Myself. Now therefore, if ye will obey My voice indeed and keep My covenant, then ye shall be a peculiar treasure unto Me above all people (for all the earth is Mine!) and ye shall be unto Me a kingdom of priests and a holy nation. *These* are the words which thou shalt speak unto the Children of Israel!"

And Moses came and called for the elders of the people, and laid before their faces all these Words which THE LORD commanded him. And all the people answered together, and said, "All that THE LORD hath spoken we will do!"

And Moses returned the words of the people unto THE LORD. And THE LORD said unto Moses, "Lo, I come unto thee in a thick cloud, that the people may hear when I speak with thee, and believe thee for ever."

And Moses told the words of the people unto THE LORD. And THE LORD said unto Moses, "Go unto the people, and sanctify them to day and to morrow, and let them wash their clothes, and be ready against the third day; for the third day THE LORD will come down in the sight of all the people upon Mount Sinai. And thou shalt set bounds unto the people round about, saying, '*Take heed to yourselves that ye go not up into*

*the mount, or touch the border of it. Whosoever toucheth the mount shall be surely put to death! There shall not an hand touch it, but he shall surely be stoned, or shot through - whether it be beast or man, it shall not live.' When the trumpet soundeth long, they shall come up to the mount."*

And Moses went down from the mount unto the people, and sanctified the people; and they washed their clothes. And he said unto the people, "Be ready against the third day: come not at your wives."

And it came to pass on the third day, in the morning, that there were thunders and lightnings, and a thick cloud upon the mount, and the voice of the trumpet exceeding loud; so that all the people that was in the camp trembled. And Moses brought forth the people out of the camp to meet with God; and they stood at the nether part of the mount. And Mount Sinai was altogether on a smoke, because THE LORD descended upon it in fire; and the smoke thereof ascended as the smoke of a furnace, and the whole mount quaked greatly. And when the voice of the trumpet sounded long, and waxed louder and louder, Moses spake, and God answered him by a voice. And THE LORD came down upon Mount Sinai, on the top of the mount; and THE LORD called Moses up to the top of the mount, and Moses went up.

And THE LORD said unto Moses, "Go down, charge the people, lest they break through unto THE LORD to gaze, and many of them perish. And let the priests also, which come near to THE LORD, sanctify themselves, lest THE LORD break forth upon them."

And Moses said unto THE LORD, "The people cannot come up to Mount Sinai; for Thou chargedst us, saying, 'Set bounds about the mount, and sanctify it.'"

And THE LORD said unto him, "Away, get thee down! And thou shalt come up - thou, and Aaron with thee. But let not the priests and the people break through to come up unto THE LORD, lest He break forth upon them." So Moses went down unto the people, and spake unto them. And God spake all these words, saying:

## I Am THE LORD thy God

**which have brought thee out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage:  
Thou shalt have no other gods before Me.**

**"Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image,  
or any likeness of any thing that is in heaven above,  
or that is in the earth beneath,  
or that is in the water under the earth -  
thou shalt not bow down thyself to them, nor serve them;  
for I THE LORD thy God am a jealous God,  
visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children  
unto the third and fourth generation of them that hate Me,  
and showing mercy unto thousands of them that love Me and keep My commandments.**

**"Thou shalt not <sup>1</sup>take the name of THE LORD thy God <sup>2</sup>in vain;  
for THE LORD will not hold him guiltless that taketh His name in vain.**

*<sup>1</sup>to pick up and use <sup>2</sup>for vanity/to your own glory*

**"Remember the Sabbath day, to keep it holy.  
Six days shalt thou labour and do all thy work, but the Seventh Day is the Sabbath of THE LORD thy God;  
in it thou shalt not do any work - thou, nor thy son, nor thy daughter,  
thy manservant, nor thy maidservant, nor thy cattle, nor thy stranger that is within thy gates.  
For in six days THE LORD made heaven and earth, the sea, and all that in them is,  
and rested the Seventh Day;**

wherefore THE LORD blessed the Sabbath day and hallowed it.

**“Honour thy father and thy mother  
that thy days may be long upon the land which THE LORD thy God giveth thee.**

**“Thou shalt not kill.**

**“Thou shalt not commit adultery.**

**“Thou shalt not steal.**

**“Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbour.**

**“Thou shalt not covet thy neighbour's house,  
thou shalt not covet thy neighbour's wife,  
nor his manservant, nor his maidservant,  
nor his ox, nor his ass, nor *any thing* that is thy neighbour's.”**

And all the people saw the thunderings, and the lightnings, and the noise of the trumpet, and the mountain smoking. And when the people saw it, they removed, and stood afar off. And they said unto Moses, “Speak thou with us, and we will hear. But let not God speak with us, lest we die!”

And Moses said unto the people, “Fear not: for God is come to prove you, and that His fear may be before your faces, that ye sin not.”

And the people stood afar off, and Moses drew near unto the thick darkness where God was.

And THE LORD said unto Moses, “Thus thou shalt say unto the Children of Israel:

- Ye have seen that I have talked with you from heaven. Ye shall not make with Me gods of silver, neither shall ye make unto you gods of gold.
- An altar of earth thou shalt make unto Me, and shalt sacrifice thereon thy burnt offerings, and thy peace offerings, thy sheep, and thine oxen; in all places where I record My name I will come unto thee, and I will bless thee.
- And if thou wilt make Me an altar of stone, thou shalt not build it of hewn stone; for if thou lift up thy tool upon it, thou hast polluted it.
- Neither shalt thou go up by steps unto Mine altar, that thy nakedness be not discovered thereon.

“Now these are the judgments which thou shalt set before them:

- If thou buy an Hebrew servant, six years he shall serve; and in the seventh he shall go out free for nothing.
- If he came in by himself, he shall go out by himself; if he were married, then his wife shall go out with him.
- If his master have given him a wife, and she have born him sons or daughters; the wife and her children shall be her master's, and he shall go out by himself.
- And if the servant shall plainly say, *‘I love my master, my wife, and my children; I will not go out free’*, then his master shall bring him unto the judges; he shall also bring him to the door, or unto the door post; and his master shall bore his ear through with an awl; and he shall serve him for ever.
- And if a man sell his daughter to be a maidservant, she shall not go out as the menservants do.
- If she please not her master who hath betrothed her to himself, then shall he let her be redeemed; to sell her unto a strange nation he shall have no power, seeing he hath dealt deceitfully with her.
- And if he have betrothed her unto his son, he shall deal with her after the manner of daughters.
- If he take him another wife; her food, her raiment, and her duty of marriage, shall he not diminish.

- And if he do not these three unto her, then shall she go out free without money.
- He that smiteth a man, so that he die, shall be surely put to death.
- And if a man lie not in wait, but God deliver him into his hand; then I will appoint thee a place whither he shall flee.
- But if a man come presumptuously upon his neighbour, to slay him with guile, thou shalt take him from Mine Altar, that he may die.
- And he that smiteth his father or his mother shall be surely put to death.
- And he that 'stealeth a man, and selleth him, or if he be found in his hand, he shall surely be put to death. *'kidnaps*
- And he that curseth his father or his mother shall surely be put to death.
- And if men strive together, and one smite another with a stone, or with his fist, and he die not but keepeth his bed (if he rise again, and walk abroad upon his staff), then shall he that smote him be quit; only, he shall pay for the loss of his time, and shall cause him to be thoroughly healed.
- And if a man smite his servant or his maid with a rod and he die under his hand, he shall be surely punished. Notwithstanding, if he continue a day or two, he shall not be punished; for he is his money.
- If men strive and hurt a woman with child so that her fruit depart from her, and yet no mischief follow, he shall be surely punished according as the woman's husband will lay upon him; and he shall pay as the judges determine.
- And if any mischief follow, then thou shalt give life for life, eye for eye, tooth for tooth, hand for hand, foot for foot, burning for burning, wound for wound, stripe for stripe.
- And if a man smite the eye of his servant or the eye of his maid that it perish, he shall let him go free for his eye's sake.
- And if he smite out his manservant's tooth or his maidservant's tooth, he shall let him go free for his tooth's sake.
- If an ox gore a man or a woman that they die, then the ox shall be surely stoned and his flesh shall not be eaten; but the owner of the ox shall be quit. But, if the ox were wont to push with his horn in time past, and it hath been testified to his owner and he hath not kept him in but that he hath killed a man or a woman, the ox shall be stoned and his owner also shall be put to death. If there be laid on him a sum of money, then he shall give for the ransom of his life whatsoever is laid upon him. Whether he have gored a son, or have gored a daughter, according to this judgment shall it be done unto him.
- If the ox shall push a manservant or a maidservant, he shall give unto their master thirty shekels of silver, and the ox shall be stoned.
- And if a man shall open a pit or if a man shall dig a pit and not cover it, and an ox or an ass fall therein, the owner of the pit shall make it good and give money unto the owner of them; and the dead beast shall be his.
- And if one man's ox hurt another's that he die, then they shall sell the live ox, and divide the money of it; and the dead ox also they shall divide. Or if it be known that the ox hath used to push in time past and his owner hath not kept him in, he shall surely pay ox for ox; and the dead shall be his own.
- If a man shall steal an ox or a sheep and kill it or sell it, he shall restore five oxen for an ox and four sheep for a sheep.
- If a thief be found 'breaking up and be smitten that he die, there shall no blood be shed for him. If the sun be risen upon him, there shall be blood shed for him; for he should make full restitution. If he have nothing, then he shall be sold for his theft. If the theft be certainly found in his hand alive (whether it be ox or ass or sheep), he shall restore double. *'in the act/breaking in*
- If a man shall cause a field or vineyard to be eaten and shall put in his beast and shall feed in another man's field, of the best of his own field and of the best of his own vineyard shall he make restitution.
- If fire break out and catch in thorns so that the stacks of corn or the standing corn or the field be consumed therewith, he that kindled the fire shall surely make restitution.
- If a man shall deliver unto his neighbour money or stuff to keep and it be stolen out of the man's house, if the thief be found let him pay double.

- If the thief be not found, then the master of the house shall be brought unto the judges to see whether he have put his hand unto his neighbour's goods.
- For all manner of trespass - whether it be for ox, for ass, for sheep, for raiment, or for any manner of lost thing, which another challengeth to be his - the cause of both parties shall come before the judges; and whom the judges shall condemn, he shall pay double unto his neighbour.
- If a man deliver unto his neighbour an ass or an ox or a sheep or any beast to keep, and it die or be hurt or driven away, no man seeing it, then shall an oath of THE LORD be between them both, that he hath not put his hand unto his neighbour's goods; and the owner of it shall accept thereof, and he shall not make it good. And if it be stolen from him, he shall make restitution unto the owner thereof. If it be torn in pieces, then let him bring it for witness, and he shall not make good that which was torn.
- And if a man borrow ought of his neighbour, and it be hurt, or die, the owner thereof being not with it, he shall surely make it good. But if the owner thereof be with it, he shall not make it good; if it be an hired thing, it came for his hire.
- And if a man entice a maid that is not betrothed, and lie with her, he shall surely endow her to be his wife. If her father utterly refuse to give her unto him, he shall pay money according to the dowry of virgins.
- Thou shalt not suffer a witch to live.
- Whosoever lieth with a beast shall surely be put to death.
- He that sacrificeth unto any god, save unto THE LORD only, he shall be utterly destroyed.
- Thou shalt neither vex a stranger, nor oppress him; for ye were strangers in the land of Egypt.
- Ye shall not afflict any widow or fatherless child. If thou afflict them in any <sup>1</sup>wise and they cry at all unto Me, I will surely hear their cry and My wrath shall wax hot and I will kill you with the sword; and *your* wives shall be widows and *your* children fatherless. <sup>1</sup>way/manner
- If thou lend money to any of My People <sup>1</sup>that is poor by thee, thou shalt not be to him as an <sup>2</sup>usurer, neither shalt thou lay upon him <sup>2</sup>usury. <sup>1</sup>who are poor in your community <sup>2</sup>to charge an interest fee
- If thou at all take thy neighbour's raiment to <sup>1</sup>pledge, thou shalt deliver it unto him by that the sun goeth down; for that is his covering only, it is his raiment for his skin; wherein shall he sleep? And it shall come to pass when he crieth unto Me, that I will hear; for I Am gracious. <sup>1</sup>as collateral
- Thou shalt not <sup>1</sup>revile <sup>2</sup>the gods, nor curse the ruler of thy people.

*<sup>1</sup>do anything to bring contempt/shame/blasphemy <sup>2</sup>Elohim/אלהים – Hebrew plural of “God”, it is a common biblical reference to the singular plurality of God’s nature. As man, which is made in the image of God, is one entity consisting of soul and body and spirit, so also God is one Entity, consisting of Father and Son and Holy Spirit. “The gods” in this verse does not refer to other deities or gods. But it should be noted that “elohim” has been used elsewhere as a general reference to God’s angelic beings. However, the context of the verse presents another view. “Elohim” means more than just the plural of ‘God’; it has the sense of ‘mighty one who is of great authority with power to judge’. In this verse, ‘thou shalt not revile the gods’ is coupled with ‘nor curse the ruler of thy people’. Therefore it is the most logical to assume that ‘the gods’ here refer to the judges and highest authorities of the people.*

- Thou shalt not delay to offer the first of thy ripe fruits and of thy liquors; the firstborn of thy sons shalt thou give unto Me. Likewise shalt thou do with thine oxen and with thy sheep; seven days it shall be with his dam, on the eighth day thou shalt give it Me.
- And ye shall be holy men unto Me; neither shall ye eat any flesh that is torn of beasts in the field; ye shall cast it to the dogs.
- Thou shalt not raise a false report.
- Put not thine hand with the wicked to be an unrighteous witness.
- Thou shalt not follow a multitude to do evil.
- Neither shalt thou speak in a cause to decline after many to wrest judgment.
- Neither shalt thou countenance a poor man in his cause.
- If thou meet thine enemy's ox or his ass going astray, thou shalt surely bring it back to him again.
- If thou see the ass of him that hateth thee lying under his burden, and wouldest forbear to help him, thou shalt surely help with him.
- Thou shalt not wrest the judgment of thy poor in his cause.
- Keep thee far from a false matter.
- And the innocent and righteous slay thou not - for I will not justify the wicked.

- And thou shalt take no <sup>1</sup>gift - for the gift blindeth the wise, and perverteth the words of the righteous. <sup>1</sup>a bribe
- Also thou shalt not oppress a stranger; for ye know the heart of a stranger, seeing ye were strangers in the land of Egypt.
- And six years thou shalt sow thy land and shalt gather in the fruits thereof; but the seventh year thou shalt let it rest and lie still that the poor of thy people may eat and what they leave the beasts of the field shall eat. In like manner thou shalt deal with thy vineyard, and with thy oliveyard.
- Six days thou shalt do thy work and on the Seventh Day thou shalt rest, that thine ox and thine ass may rest, and the son of thy handmaid, and the stranger, may be refreshed.
- And in all things that I have said unto you, be circumspect!
- And make no mention of the name of other gods, neither let it be heard out of thy mouth.
- Three times thou shalt keep a feast unto Me in the year.
- Thou shalt keep the *Feast of Unleavened Bread* (thou shalt eat unleavened bread seven days, as I commanded thee, in the time appointed of the month Abib; for in it thou camest out from Egypt, and none shall appear before Me empty).
- And the *Feast of Harvest*, the firstfruits of thy labours, which thou hast sown in the field.
- And the *Feast of Ingathering*, which is in the end of the year when thou hast gathered in thy labours out of the field. Three times in the year all thy males shall appear before THE LORD GOD.
- Thou shalt not offer the blood of My sacrifice with leavened bread; neither shall the fat of My sacrifice remain until the morning.
- The first of the firstfruits of thy land thou shalt bring into the House of THE LORD thy God.
- Thou shalt not seethe a kid in his mother's milk.

“Behold, I send an Angel before thee, to keep thee in the way, and to bring thee into the place which I have prepared. Beware of him, and obey his voice, provoke him not; for he will not pardon your transgressions - for My name is in him. But if thou shalt indeed obey his voice and do all that I speak, then I will be an enemy unto thine enemies and an adversary unto thine adversaries. For mine Angel shall go before thee and bring thee in unto the Amorites, and the Hittites, and the Perizzites, and the Canaanites, the Hivites, and the Jebusites, and I will cut them off. Thou shalt not bow down to their gods, nor serve them, nor do after their works, but thou shalt utterly overthrow them and quite break down their images.

“And ye shall serve THE LORD your God, and He shall bless thy bread and thy water; and I will take sickness away from the midst of thee. There shall nothing cast their young nor be barren in thy land; the number of thy days I will fulfil.

“I will send My fear before thee and will destroy all the people to whom thou shalt come, and I will make all thine enemies <sup>1</sup>turn their backs unto thee. And I will send hornets before thee, which shall drive out the Hivite, the Canaanite, and the Hittite, from before thee. I will not drive them out from before thee in one year, lest the land become desolate and the beast of the field multiply against thee. By little and little I will drive them out from before thee, until thou be increased and inherit the land. <sup>1</sup>turn and flee

“And I will set thy bounds from the Red Sea even unto the Sea of the Philistines, and from the desert unto the River. For I will deliver the inhabitants of the land into your hand; and thou shalt drive them out before thee. Thou shalt make no covenant with them, nor with their gods. They shall not dwell in thy land, lest they make thee sin against Me; for, if thou serve their gods, it will surely be a snare unto thee.”

And He said unto Moses, “Come up unto THE LORD - thou, and Aaron, Nadab, and Abihu, and <sup>1</sup>seventy of the elders of Israel; and worship ye afar off. And Moses alone shall come near THE LORD, but they shall not come nigh, neither shall the people go up with him.” <sup>1</sup>the Sanhedrin

And Moses came and told the people all the Words of THE LORD and all the judgments, and all the people answered with one voice and said, “All the Words which THE LORD hath said will we do!”

And Moses wrote all the Words of THE LORD, and rose up early in the morning and builded an altar under the hill, and twelve pillars, according to the twelve tribes of Israel.

And he sent young men of the Children of Israel which offered burnt offerings and sacrificed peace offerings of oxen unto THE LORD.

And Moses took half of the blood and put it in basins; and half of the blood he sprinkled on the altar.

And he took the Book of the Covenant and read in the audience of the people; and they said, "All that THE LORD hath said will we do and be obedient!"

And Moses took the blood and sprinkled it on the people, and said, "Behold the blood of the covenant which THE LORD hath made with you concerning all these Words!"

Then went up Moses, and Aaron, Nadab, and Abihu, and seventy of the elders of Israel; and they saw the God of Israel. And there was under His feet as it were a paved work of a sapphire stone, and as it were the body of heaven in His clearness. And upon the nobles of the Children of Israel He laid not His hand; also they saw God, and did eat and drink.

And THE LORD said unto Moses, "Come up to Me into the mount and be there; and I will give thee tables of stone, and a Law, and Commandments which I have written, that thou mayest teach them."

And Moses rose up, and his minister Joshua; and Moses went up into the mount of God. And he said unto the elders, "Tarry ye here for us until we come again unto you. And, behold, Aaron and Hur are with you; if any man have any matters to do, let him come unto them."

And Moses went up into the mount, and a cloud covered the mount. And the glory of THE LORD abode upon Mount Sinai, and the cloud covered it six days; and the Seventh Day he called unto Moses out of the midst of the cloud. And the sight of the glory of THE LORD was like devouring fire on the top of the mount in the eyes of the Children of Israel. And Moses went into the midst of the cloud and gat him up into the mount; and Moses was in the mount forty days and forty nights.

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, "Speak unto the Children of Israel, that they bring Me an offering; of every man that giveth it willingly - with his heart - ye shall take My offering. And this is the offering which ye shall take of them: gold, and silver, and brass, and blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine linen, and goats' hair, and rams' skins dyed red, and badgers' skins, and shittim wood, oil for the light, spices for anointing oil and for sweet incense, onyx stones, and stones to be set in the ephod and in the breastplate. And let them make Me a sanctuary, that I may dwell among them. According to all that I show thee, after the pattern of The Tabernacle, and the pattern of all the instruments thereof, even so shall ye make it. And they shall make an <sup>1</sup>Ark of shittim wood: *<sup>1</sup>literally, "a coffin"*

- <sup>1</sup>two cubits and a half shall be the length thereof, *<sup>1</sup>about 45 inches (3 feet 9 inches) long*
- and <sup>1</sup>a cubit and a half the breadth thereof, *<sup>1</sup>about 27 inches (2 feet 3 inches) wide*
- and <sup>1</sup>a cubit and a half the height thereof. *<sup>1</sup>about 27 inches (2 feet 3 inches) tall*

And thou shalt overlay it with pure gold - within and without shalt thou overlay it - and shalt make upon it a crown of gold round about.

- And thou shalt cast four rings of gold for it and put them in the four corners thereof; and two rings shall be in the one side of it, and two rings in the other side of it.
- And thou shalt make staves of shittim wood and overlay them with gold, and thou shalt put the staves into the rings by the sides of the Ark, that the Ark may be borne with them. The staves shall be in the rings of the Ark: they shall not be taken from it.
- And thou shalt put into the Ark The Testimony which I shall give thee.

- And thou shalt make a Mercy Seat of pure gold: two cubits and a half shall be the length thereof, and a cubit and a half the breadth thereof.
- And thou shalt make two cherubims of gold, of beaten work shalt thou make them, in the two ends of the Mercy Seat. And make one cherub on the one end, and the other cherub on the other end - even of the Mercy Seat shall ye make the cherubims on the two ends thereof. And the cherubims shall stretch forth their wings on high, covering the Mercy Seat with their wings, and their faces shall look one to another; toward the Mercy Seat shall the faces of the cherubims be.
- And thou shalt put the Mercy Seat above upon the Ark,
- and in the Ark thou shalt put The Testimony that I shall give thee.

“And there I will meet with thee, and I will commune with thee from above the Mercy Seat, from between the two cherubims which are upon the Ark of the Testimony, of all things which I will give thee in commandment unto the Children of Israel.

“Thou shalt also make a table of shittim wood:

- two cubits shall be the length thereof,
- and a cubit the breadth thereof,
- and a cubit and a half the height thereof.
- And thou shalt overlay it with pure gold,
- and make thereto a crown of gold round about.
- And thou shalt make unto it a border of an hand breadth round about,
- and thou shalt make a golden crown to the border thereof round about.
- And thou shalt make for it four rings of gold, and put the rings in the four corners that are on the four feet thereof. Over against the border shall the rings be for places of the staves to bear the table.
- And thou shalt make the staves of shittim wood, and overlay them with gold, that the table may be borne with them.
- And thou shalt make the dishes thereof, and spoons thereof, and covers thereof, and bowls thereof, to cover withal - of pure gold shalt thou make them.
- And thou shalt set upon the table Showbread before Me alway.

And thou shalt make a Candlestick of pure gold:

- of beaten work shall the Candlestick be made: his shaft, and his branches, his bowls, his knops, and his flowers, shall be of the same.
- And six branches shall come out of the sides of it - three branches of the Candlestick out of the one side, and three branches of the Candlestick out of the other side.
- Three bowls made like unto almonds, with a knop and a flower in one branch; and three bowls made like almonds in the other branch, with a knop and a flower: so in the six branches that come out of the Candlestick.
- And in the Candlestick shall be four bowls made like unto almonds, with their knops and their flowers.
- And there shall be a knop under two branches of the same, and a knop under two branches of the same, and a knop under two branches of the same, according to the six branches that proceed out of the Candlestick. Their knops and their branches shall be of the same: all it shall be one beaten work of pure gold.
- And thou shalt make the seven lamps thereof: and they shall light the lamps thereof, that they may give light over against it.

“And the tongs thereof, and the snuffdishes thereof, shall be of pure gold. Of a talent of pure gold shall he make it, with all these vessels.

“And look that thou make them after their pattern which was showed thee in the mount!

“Moreover thou shalt make The Tabernacle with ten curtains of fine twined linen, and blue, and purple, and scarlet: with cherubims of cunning work shalt thou make them.

- The length of one curtain shall be eight and twenty cubits,
- and the breadth of one curtain four cubits,
- and every one of the curtains shall have one measure.
- The five curtains shall be coupled together one to another;
- and other five curtains shall be coupled one to another.
- And thou shalt make loops of blue upon the edge of the one curtain from the selvedge in the coupling; and likewise shalt thou make in the uttermost edge of another curtain, in the coupling of the second - fifty loops shalt thou make in the one curtain, and fifty loops shalt thou make in the edge of the curtain that is in the coupling of the second; that the loops may take hold one of another.
- And thou shalt make fifty taches of gold, and couple the curtains together with the taches, and it shall be one tabernacle.
- And thou shalt make curtains of goats' hair to be a covering upon The Tabernacle; eleven curtains shalt thou make:
  - The length of one curtain shall be thirty cubits,
  - and the breadth of one curtain four cubits,
  - and the eleven curtains shall be all of one measure.
- And thou shalt couple five curtains by themselves, and six curtains by themselves, and shalt double the sixth curtain in the forefront of The Tabernacle.
- And thou shalt make fifty loops on the edge of the one curtain that is outmost in the coupling, and fifty loops in the edge of the curtain which coupleth the second.
- And thou shalt make fifty taches of brass, and put the taches into the loops, and couple the tent together, that it may be one.
- And the remnant that remaineth of the curtains of the tent (the half curtain that remaineth) shall hang over the backside of The Tabernacle.
- And a cubit on the one side, and a cubit on the other side, of that which remaineth in the length of the curtains of the tent, it shall hang over the sides of The Tabernacle, on this side and on that side, to cover it.
- And thou shalt make a covering for the tent of rams' skins dyed red, and a covering above of badgers' skins.
- And thou shalt make boards for The Tabernacle of shittim wood standing up.
  - Ten cubits shall be the length of a board,
  - and a cubit and a half shall be the breadth of one board.
- Two tenons shall there be in one board, set in order one against another - thus shalt thou make for all the boards of The Tabernacle.
- And thou shalt make the boards for The Tabernacle - twenty boards on the south side southward.
- And thou shalt make forty sockets of silver under the twenty boards - two sockets under one board for his two tenons, and two sockets under another board for his two tenons.
- And for the second side of The Tabernacle on the north side there shall be twenty boards and their forty sockets of silver - two sockets under one board, and two sockets under another board.
- And for the sides of The Tabernacle westward thou shalt make six boards.
- And two boards shalt thou make for the corners of The Tabernacle in the two sides.
- And they shall be coupled together beneath, and they shall be coupled together above the head of it unto one ring. Thus shall it be for them both; they shall be for the two corners.
- And they shall be eight boards, and their sockets of silver, sixteen sockets; two sockets under one board, and two sockets under another board.

- And thou shalt make bars of shittim wood - five for the boards of the one side of The Tabernacle, and five bars for the boards of the other side of The Tabernacle, and five bars for the boards of the side of The Tabernacle, for the two sides westward.
- And the middle bar in the midst of the boards shall reach from end to end.
- And thou shalt overlay the boards with gold, and make their rings of gold for places for the bars; and thou shalt overlay the bars with gold.
- And thou shalt rear up The Tabernacle according to the fashion thereof which was showed thee in the mount.
- And thou shalt make a veil of blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine twined linen of cunning work; with cherubims shall it be made.
- And thou shalt hang it upon four pillars of shittim wood overlaid with gold; their hooks shall be of gold, upon the four sockets of silver.
- And thou shalt hang up the veil under the taches, that thou mayest bring in thither within the veil the Ark of the Testimony; and the veil shall divide unto you between the Holy Place and the Most Holy.
- And thou shalt put the Mercy Seat upon the Ark of the Testimony in the <sup>1</sup>Most Holy Place.  
*"Holy of Holies"*
- And thou shalt set the Table without the veil, and the <sup>1</sup>Candlestick over against the Table on the side of The Tabernacle toward the south; and thou shalt put the Table on the north side.  
*<sup>1</sup>Menorah*
- And thou shalt make an hanging for the door of the tent - of blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine twined linen, wrought with needlework.
- And thou shalt make for the hanging five pillars of shittim wood, and overlay them with gold, and their hooks shall be of gold; and thou shalt cast five sockets of brass for them.
- And thou shalt make an Altar of shittim wood:
  - five cubits long,
  - and five cubits broad;
  - the Altar shall be foursquare,
  - and the height thereof shall be three cubits.
- And thou shalt make the horns of it upon the four corners thereof; his horns shall be of the same; and thou shalt overlay it with brass.
- And thou shalt make his pans to receive his ashes, and his shovels, and his basins, and his fleshhooks, and his firepans; all the vessels thereof thou shalt make of brass.
- And thou shalt make for it a grate of network of brass; and upon the net shalt thou make four brazen rings in the four corners thereof. And thou shalt put it under the compass of the Altar beneath, that the net may be even to the midst of the Altar.
- And thou shalt make staves for the Altar, staves of shittim wood, and overlay them with brass. And the staves shall be put into the rings, and the staves shall be upon the two sides of the Altar, to bear it.
- Hollow with boards shalt thou make it; as it was showed thee in the mount, so shall they make it.
- And thou shalt make the Court of The Tabernacle; for the south side southward there shall be hangings for the Court, of fine twined linen of an hundred cubits long for one side.
- And the twenty pillars thereof and their twenty sockets shall be of brass; the hooks of the pillars and their fillets shall be of silver.
- And likewise for the north side, in length there shall be hangings of an hundred cubits long, and his twenty pillars and their twenty sockets of brass; the hooks of the pillars and their fillets of silver.
- And for the breadth of the Court, on the west side, shall be hangings of fifty cubits; their pillars ten, and their sockets ten.
- And the breadth of the Court on the east side eastward shall be fifty cubits.

- The hangings of one side of the gate shall be fifteen cubits; their pillars three, and their sockets three.
- And on the other side shall be hangings fifteen cubits; their pillars three, and their sockets three.
- And for the Gate of the Court shall be an hanging of twenty cubits, of blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine twined linen, wrought with needlework; and their pillars shall be four, and their sockets four.
- All the pillars round about the Court shall be filleted with silver; their hooks shall be of silver, and their sockets of brass.
- The length of the Court shall be an hundred cubits, and the breadth fifty every where, and the height five cubits of fine twined linen, and their sockets of brass.
- All the vessels of The Tabernacle in all the service thereof, and all the pins thereof, and all the pins of the court, shall be of brass.

“And thou shalt command the Children of Israel that they bring thee pure oil olive beaten for the <sup>1</sup>Light, to cause the <sup>1</sup>Lamp to burn always in The Tabernacle of the Congregation <sup>2</sup>without the veil which is before The Testimony; Aaron and his sons shall order it from evening to morning before THE LORD. It shall be a statute for ever unto their generations on the behalf of the Children of Israel. <sup>1</sup>Menorah <sup>2</sup>outside

“And take thou unto thee Aaron thy brother, and his sons with him, from among the Children of Israel, that he may minister unto Me in the priest's office - even Aaron, Nadab and Abihu, Eleazar and Ithamar, Aaron's sons. And thou shalt make holy garments for Aaron thy brother for glory and for beauty. And thou shalt speak unto all that are wise hearted, whom I have filled with the spirit of wisdom, that they may make Aaron's garments to consecrate him, that he may minister unto Me in the priest's office. And these are the garments which they shall make:

- a breastplate,
- and an ephod,
- and a robe,
- and a broidered coat,
- a mitre,
- and a girdle;

and they shall make holy garments for Aaron thy brother, and his sons, that he may minister unto me in the priest's office.

- And they shall take gold, and blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine linen.
- And they shall make the ephod of gold, of blue, and of purple, of scarlet, and fine twined linen, with cunning work.
- It shall have the two shoulder pieces thereof joined at the two edges thereof; and so it shall be joined together.
- And the curious girdle of the ephod, which is upon it, shall be of the same, according to the work thereof; even of gold, of blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine twined linen.
- And thou shalt take two onyx stones, and grave on them the names of the Children of Israel.
- Six of their names on one stone, and the other six names of the rest on the other stone, according to their birth.
- With the work of an engraver in stone, like the engravings of a signet, shalt thou engrave the two stones with the names of the Children of Israel; thou shalt make them to be set in ouches of gold.
- And thou shalt put the two stones upon the shoulders of the ephod for stones of memorial unto the Children of Israel, and Aaron shall bear their names before THE LORD upon his two shoulders for a memorial.
- And thou shalt make <sup>1</sup>ouches of gold; and two chains of pure gold at the ends; of wreathen work shalt thou make them, and fasten the wreathen chains to the ouches.

<sup>1</sup>socket/setting (as for a gem)

- And thou shalt make the Breastplate of Judgment with cunning work; after the work of the ephod thou shalt make it - of gold, of blue, and of purple, and of scarlet, and of fine twined linen, shalt thou make it.
- Foursquare it shall be, being doubled; a span shall be the length thereof, and a span shall be the breadth thereof.
- And thou shalt set in it settings of stones, even four rows of stones.
  - The first row shall be a sardius, a topaz, and a carbuncle - this shall be the first row.
  - And the second row shall be an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond.
  - And the third row a ligure, an agate, and an amethyst.
  - And the fourth row a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper.
- They shall be set in gold in their enclosings.
- And the stones shall be with the names of the Children of Israel, twelve, according to their names, like the engravings of a signet; every one with his name shall they be according to the twelve tribes.
- And thou shalt make upon the breastplate chains at the ends of wreathen work of pure gold.
- And thou shalt make upon the breastplate two rings of gold, and shalt put the two rings on the two ends of the breastplate.
- And thou shalt put the two wreathen chains of gold in the two rings which are on the ends of the breastplate.
- And the other two ends of the two wreathen chains thou shalt fasten in the two ouches, and put them on the shoulder pieces of the ephod before it.
- And thou shalt make two rings of gold, and thou shalt put them upon the two ends of the breastplate in the border thereof, which is in the side of the ephod inward.
- And two other rings of gold thou shalt make, and shalt put them on the two sides of the ephod underneath, toward the forepart thereof, over against the other coupling thereof, above the curious girdle of the ephod.
- And they shall bind the breastplate by the rings thereof unto the rings of the ephod with a lace of blue, that it may be above the curious girdle of the ephod, and that the breastplate be not loosed from the ephod.

“And Aaron shall bear the names of the Children of Israel in the Breastplate of Judgment upon his heart when he goeth in unto the Holy Place for a memorial before THE LORD continually.

“And thou shalt put in the Breastplate of Judgment the <sup>1</sup>Urim and the Thummim, and they shall be upon Aaron's heart when he goeth in before THE LORD; and Aaron shall bear the judgment of the Children of Israel upon his heart before THE LORD continually.

*<sup>1</sup>two stones, indicating “yes” and “no”, which the Lord would cause to glow in answer to a question from the people through the high priest, so that it would be clear to the people that the answer was from God rather than the priest's mere opinion*

“And thou shalt make the robe of the ephod all of blue. And there shall be an hole in the top of it, in the midst thereof. It shall have a binding of woven work round about the hole of it, as it were the hole of an habergeon, that it be not <sup>1</sup>rent. And beneath upon the hem of it thou shalt make pomegranates of blue, and of purple, and of scarlet, round about the hem thereof; and bells of gold between them round about - a golden bell and a pomegranate, a golden bell and a pomegranate, upon the hem of the robe round about. And it shall be upon Aaron to minister; and his sound shall be heard when he goeth in unto the Holy Place before THE LORD, and when he cometh out, that he die not. *<sup>1</sup>ripped or torn*

“And thou shalt make a plate of pure gold, and grave upon it like the engravings of a signet: HOLINESS TO THE LORD. And thou shalt put it on a blue lace, that it may be upon the <sup>1</sup>mitre; upon the forefront of the mitre it shall be. And it shall be upon Aaron's forehead, that Aaron may bear the iniquity of the holy things, which the Children of Israel shall hallow in all their holy gifts; and it shall be always upon his forehead, that they may be accepted before THE LORD. *<sup>1</sup>a type of hat*

“And thou shalt embroider the coat of fine linen, and thou shalt make the mitre of fine linen, and thou shalt make the girdle of needlework.

“And for Aaron's sons thou shalt make coats, and thou shalt make for them girdles, and bonnets shalt thou make for them, for glory and for beauty.

“And thou shalt put them upon Aaron thy brother, and his sons with him; and shalt anoint them, and consecrate them, and sanctify them, that they may minister unto Me in the priest's office.”

“And thou shalt make them linen <sup>1</sup>breeches to cover their nakedness; from the loins even unto the thighs they shall reach. And they shall be upon Aaron and upon his sons when they come in unto The Tabernacle of the Congregation, or when they come near unto the Altar to minister in the Holy Place; that they bear not iniquity, and die. It shall be a statute for ever unto him and his seed after him. *<sup>1</sup>underwear*

“And this is the thing that thou shalt do unto them to hallow them, to minister unto Me in the priest's office: take one young bullock, and two rams without blemish, and unleavened bread, and cakes unleavened tempered with oil, and wafers unleavened anointed with oil. Of wheaten flour shalt thou make them. And thou shalt put them into one basket, and bring them in the basket, with the bullock and the two rams.

“And Aaron and his sons thou shalt bring unto the door of The Tabernacle of the Congregation, and shalt wash them with water.

“And thou shalt take the garments and put upon Aaron the coat, and the robe of the ephod, and the ephod, and the breastplate, and gird him with the curious girdle of the ephod, and thou shalt put the mitre upon his head, and put the holy crown upon the mitre. Then shalt thou take the anointing oil, and pour it upon his head, and anoint him.

“And thou shalt bring his sons, and put coats upon them. And thou shalt gird them with girdles, Aaron and his sons, and put the bonnets on them. And the priest's office shall be theirs for a perpetual statute. And thou shalt consecrate Aaron and his sons.

“And thou shalt cause a bullock to be brought before The Tabernacle of the Congregation, and Aaron and his sons shall put their hands upon the head of the bullock. And thou shalt kill the bullock before THE LORD, by the door of The Tabernacle of the Congregation.

“And thou shalt take of the blood of the bullock, and put it upon the horns of the Altar with thy finger, and pour all the blood beside the bottom of the Altar.

“And thou shalt take all the fat that covereth the inwards, and the caul that is above the liver, and the two kidneys, and the fat that is upon them, and burn them upon the Altar. But the flesh of the bullock, and his skin, and his dung, shalt thou burn with fire without the camp; it is a sin offering.

“Thou shalt also take one ram; and Aaron and his sons shall put their hands upon the head of the ram. And thou shalt slay the ram, and thou shalt take his blood and sprinkle it round about upon the Altar. And thou shalt cut the ram in pieces, and wash the inwards of him, and his legs, and put them unto his pieces, and unto his head. And thou shalt burn the whole ram upon the Altar. It is a burnt offering unto THE LORD; it is a sweet savour, an offering made by fire unto THE LORD.

“And thou shalt take the other ram; and Aaron and his sons shall put their hands upon the head of the ram. Then shalt thou kill the ram, and take of his blood and put it upon the tip of the right ear of Aaron, and upon the tip of the right ear of his sons, and upon the thumb of their right hand, and upon the great toe of their right foot, and sprinkle the blood upon the Altar round about.

“And thou shalt take of the blood that is upon the Altar, and of the anointing oil, and sprinkle it upon Aaron, and upon his garments, and upon his sons, and upon the garments of his sons with him; and he shall be <sup>1</sup>hallowed, and his garments, and his sons, and his sons' garments with him. *<sup>1</sup>made holy*

“Also thou shalt take of the ram the fat and the rump, and the fat that covereth the inwards, and the caul above the liver, and the two kidneys, and the fat that is upon them, and the right shoulder (for it is a ram of consecration); and one loaf of bread, and one cake of oiled bread, and one wafer out of the basket of the unleavened bread that is before THE LORD; and thou shalt put all in the hands of Aaron and in the hands of his sons, and shalt wave them for a wave offering before THE LORD. And thou shalt receive them of their hands, and burn them upon the altar for a burnt offering for a sweet savour before THE LORD; it is an offering made by fire unto THE LORD.

“And thou shalt take the breast of the ram of Aaron's consecration, and wave it for a wave offering before THE LORD, and it shall be thy part.

“And thou shalt sanctify the breast of the wave offering, and the shoulder of the heave offering, which is waved and which is heaved up, of the ram of the consecration, even of that which is for Aaron and of that which is for his sons; and it shall be Aaron's and his sons' by a statute for ever from the Children of Israel, for it is an heave offering. And it shall be an heave offering from the Children of Israel of the sacrifice of their peace offerings, even their heave offering unto THE LORD.

“And the holy garments of Aaron shall be his sons' after him, to be anointed therein and to be consecrated in them. And that son that is priest in his stead shall put them on seven days when he cometh into The Tabernacle of the Congregation to minister in the Holy Place.

“And thou shalt take the ram of the consecration and seethe his flesh in the Holy Place. And Aaron and his sons shall eat the flesh of the ram and the bread that is in the basket by the door of The Tabernacle of the Congregation. And they shall eat those things wherewith the atonement was made, to consecrate and to sanctify them. But a stranger shall not eat thereof, because they are holy. And if ought of the flesh of the consecrations or of the bread remain unto the morning, then thou shalt burn the remainder with fire. It shall not be eaten, because it is holy.

“And thus shalt thou do unto Aaron and to his sons according to all things which I have commanded thee - seven days shalt thou consecrate them.

“And thou shalt offer every day a bullock for a sin offering for atonement. And thou shalt cleanse the Altar when thou hast made an atonement for it; and thou shalt anoint it, to sanctify it. Seven days thou shalt make an atonement for the Altar and sanctify it; and it shall be an Altar most holy. Whatsoever toucheth the Altar shall be holy.

“Now, this is that which thou shalt offer upon the Altar: two lambs of the first year, day by day continually.

- The one lamb thou shalt offer in the morning;
- and the other lamb thou shalt offer at even.
- And with the one lamb a tenth deal of flour mingled with the fourth part of an hin of beaten oil; and the fourth part of an hin of wine for a drink offering.
- And the other lamb thou shalt offer at even, and shalt do thereto according to the meat offering of the morning, and according to the drink offering thereof, for a sweet savour, an offering made by fire unto THE LORD.

“This shall be a continual burnt offering throughout your generations at the door of The Tabernacle of the Congregation before THE LORD where I will meet you, to speak there unto thee. And there I will meet with the Children of Israel, and The Tabernacle shall be sanctified by My glory. And I will sanctify The Tabernacle of the Congregation and the Altar. I will sanctify also both Aaron and his sons, to minister to Me in the priest's office.

“And I will dwell among the Children of Israel and will be their God. And they shall know that I am THE LORD their God that brought them forth out of the land of Egypt, that I may dwell among them: I am THE LORD their God.

“And thou shalt make an Altar to burn incense upon; of shittim wood shalt thou make it.

- A cubit shall be the length thereof,
- and a cubit the breadth thereof;
- foursquare shall it be.
- And two cubits shall be the height thereof - the horns thereof shall be of the same.
- And thou shalt overlay it with pure gold, the top thereof, and the sides thereof round about, and the horns thereof;
- and thou shalt make unto it a crown of gold round about.
- And two golden rings shalt thou make to it under the crown of it, by the two corners thereof, upon the two sides of it shalt thou make it; and they shall be for places for the staves to bear it withal.
- And thou shalt make the staves of shittim wood and overlay them with gold.

“And thou shalt put it before the veil that is by the Ark of the Testimony, before the Mercy Seat that is over The Testimony, where I will meet with thee.

“And Aaron shall burn thereon sweet incense every morning. When he dresseth the Lamps, he shall burn incense upon it. And when Aaron lighteth the Lamps at even, he shall burn incense upon it, a perpetual incense before THE LORD throughout your generations. Ye shall offer no strange incense thereon, nor burnt sacrifice, nor meat offering; neither shall ye pour drink offering thereon. And Aaron shall make an atonement upon the horns of it once in a year with the blood of the sin offering of atonements. Once in the year shall he make atonement upon it throughout your generations: it is most holy unto THE LORD.”

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, “When thou takest the sum of the Children of Israel after their number, then shall they give every man a ransom for his soul unto THE LORD when thou numberest them, that there be no plague among them when thou numberest them. This they shall give, every one that passeth among them that are numbered: half a shekel after the shekel of the sanctuary (a shekel is twenty gerahs) - an half shekel shall be the offering of THE LORD. Every one that passeth among them that are numbered, from twenty years old and above, shall give an offering unto THE LORD. The rich shall not give more, and the poor shall not give less than half a shekel, when they give an offering unto THE LORD to make an atonement for your souls. And thou shalt take the atonement money of the Children of Israel and shalt appoint it for the service of The Tabernacle of the Congregation, that it may be a memorial unto the Children of Israel before THE LORD to make an atonement for your souls.”

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, “Thou shalt also make a Laver of brass, and his foot also of brass, to wash withal. And thou shalt put it between The Tabernacle of the Congregation and the Altar, and thou shalt put water therein - for Aaron and his sons shall wash their hands and their feet thereat. When they go into The Tabernacle of the Congregation, they shall wash with water, that they die not; or when they come near to the Altar to minister, to burn offering made by fire unto THE LORD. So they shall wash their hands and their feet, that they die not. And it shall be a statute for ever to them, even to him and to his seed throughout their generations.”

Moreover THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, “Take thou also unto thee principal spices:

- of pure myrrh, five hundred shekels,
- and of sweet cinnamon, half so much (even two hundred and fifty shekels),
- and of sweet calamus, two hundred and fifty shekels,
- and of cassia, five hundred shekels (after the shekel of the sanctuary),
- and of oil olive, an hin;

and thou shalt make it an oil of holy ointment, an ointment compound after the art of the apothecary. It shall be an holy anointing oil.

“And thou shalt anoint:

- the Tabernacle of the Congregation therewith,
- and the Ark of the Testimony,
- and the Table and all his vessels,
- and the Candlestick and his vessels,
- and the Altar of Incense,
- and the Altar of Burnt Offering with all his vessels,
- and the Laver and his foot.

“And thou shalt sanctify them, that they may be most holy. Whatsoever toucheth them shall be holy.

“And thou shalt anoint Aaron and his sons, and consecrate them, that they may minister unto Me in the priest's office.

“And thou shalt speak unto the Children of Israel, saying: This shall be an holy anointing oil unto Me throughout your generations. Upon man's flesh shall it not be poured, neither shall ye make any other

like it, after the composition of it! It is holy, and it shall be holy unto you. Whosoever compoundeth any like it, or whosoever putteth any of it upon a stranger, shall even be cut off from his people!"

And THE LORD said unto Moses, "Take unto thee sweet spices:

- stacte,
- and onycha,
- and galbanum;
- these sweet spices with pure frankincense.

Of each shall there be a like weight. And thou shalt make it a perfume, a confection after the art of the apothecary, tempered together, pure and holy. And thou shalt beat some of it very small, and put of it before The Testimony in The Tabernacle of the Congregation where I will meet with thee. It shall be unto you most holy. And as for the perfume which thou shalt make, ye shall not make to yourselves according to the composition thereof. It shall be unto thee holy for THE LORD. Whosoever shall make like unto that, to smell thereto, shall even be cut off from his people."

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, "See, I have called, by name, Bezaleel - the son of Uri, the son of Hur, of the tribe of Judah; and I have filled him with the spirit of God, in wisdom, and in understanding, and in knowledge, and in all manner of workmanship, to devise cunning works, to work in gold, and in silver, and in brass, and in cutting of stones, to set them, and in carving of timber, to work in all manner of workmanship.

"And I, behold, I have given with him Aholiab - the son of Ahisamach, of the tribe of Dan; and in the hearts of all that are wise hearted I have put wisdom, that they may make all that I have commanded thee:

- The Tabernacle of the Congregation,
- and the Ark of the Testimony,
- and the Mercy Seat that is thereupon,
- and all the furniture of The Tabernacle,
- and the Table and his furniture,
- and the pure Candlestick with all his furniture,
- and the Altar of Incense,
- and the Altar of Burnt Offering with all his furniture,
- and the Laver and his foot,
- and the cloths of service,
- and the holy garments for Aaron the priest,
- and the garments of his sons, to minister in the priest's office,
- and the anointing oil,
- and sweet incense for the Holy Place.

According to all that I have commanded thee shall they do."

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, "Speak thou also unto the Children of Israel, saying: Verily My Sabbaths ye shall keep; for it is a Sign between Me and you throughout your generations that ye may know that I am THE LORD that doth sanctify you. Ye shall keep the Sabbath therefore; for it is holy unto you. Every one that defileth it shall surely be put to death, for whosoever doeth any work therein, that soul shall be cut off from among his people. Six days may work be done; but in the seventh is the Sabbath of rest, holy to THE LORD. Whosoever doeth any work in the Sabbath day, he shall surely be put to death! Wherefore the Children of Israel shall keep the Sabbath, to observe the Sabbath throughout their generations, for a perpetual covenant. It is a Sign between Me and the Children of Israel for ever - for in six days THE LORD made heaven and earth, and on the Seventh Day He rested and was refreshed."

And He gave unto Moses, when He had made an end of communing with him upon Mount Sinai, two tables of Testimony, tables of stone, written with the finger of God.

And when the people saw that Moses delayed to come down out of the mount, the people gathered themselves together unto Aaron and said unto him, "Up! Make us gods which shall go before us! For, as for this Moses, the man that brought us up out of the land of Egypt, we wot not what is become of him!"

And Aaron said unto them, "Break off the golden earrings which are in the ears of your wives, of your sons, and of your daughters, and bring them unto me."

And all the people brake off the golden earrings which were in their ears and brought them unto Aaron. And he received them at their hand, and fashioned it with a graving tool, after he had made it a molten calf. And they said, "These be thy gods, O Israel, which brought thee up out of the land of Egypt!"

And when Aaron saw it, he built an altar before it; and Aaron made proclamation, and said, "To morrow is a feast to THE LORD."

And they rose up early on the morrow, and offered burnt offerings, and brought peace offerings; and the people sat down to eat and to drink, and rose up to play.

And THE LORD said unto Moses, "Go, get thee down - for thy people, which thou broughtest out of the land of Egypt, have corrupted themselves! They have turned aside quickly out of The Way which I commanded them. They have made them a molten calf, and have worshipped it, and have sacrificed thereunto, and said, '*These be thy gods, O Israel, which have brought thee up out of the land of Egypt.*'" And THE LORD said unto Moses, "I have seen this people and, behold, it is a stiffnecked people! Now therefore let Me alone, that My wrath may wax hot against them, and that I may consume them; and I will make of *thee* a great nation."

And Moses besought THE LORD his God, and said, "LORD, why doth Thy wrath wax hot against Thy People which Thou hast brought forth out of the land of Egypt with great power and with a mighty hand? Wherefore should the Egyptians speak, and say, '*For mischief did He bring them out, to slay them in the mountains, and to consume them from the face of the earth*'? Turn from Thy fierce wrath, and repent of this evil against Thy People. Remember Abraham, Isaac, and Israel, Thy servants, to whom Thou swarest by Thine own Self and saidst unto them, '*I will multiply your seed as the stars of heaven, and all this land that I have spoken of will I give unto your seed, and they shall inherit it for ever.*'"

And THE LORD <sup>1</sup>repented of the evil which He thought to do unto His people. And Moses turned, and went down from the mount, and the two tables of the testimony were in his hand. The tables were written on both their sides; on the one side and on the other were they written. And the tables were the work of God, and the writing was the writing of God, graven upon the tables. <sup>1</sup>turned back from

And when Joshua heard the noise of the people as they shouted, he said unto Moses, "There is a noise of war in the camp!"

And he said, "It is not the voice of them that shout for mastery, neither is it the voice of them that cry for being overcome, but the noise of them that sing do I hear!"

And it came to pass, as soon as he came nigh unto the camp, that he saw the calf and the dancing. And Moses' anger waxed hot, and he cast the tables out of his hands and brake them beneath the mount. And he took the calf which they had made and burnt it in the fire, and ground it to powder, and strowed it upon the water, and made the Children of Israel drink of it.

And Moses said unto Aaron, "What did this people <sup>1</sup>unto thee, that thou hast brought so great a sin upon them?!" <sup>1</sup>do unto you

And Aaron said, "Let not the anger of my lord wax hot. Thou knowest the people, that they are set on mischief. For they said unto me, *'Make us gods which shall go before us; for, as for this Moses, the man that brought us up out of the land of Egypt, we wot not what is become of him.'* And I said unto them, *'Whosoever hath any gold, let them break it off.'* So they gave it <sup>to me</sup>; then I cast it into the fire, and there came out this calf!"

And when Moses saw that the people were naked (for Aaron had made them naked unto their shame among their enemies), then Moses stood in the gate of the camp and said, "Who is on THE LORD'S side? Let him come unto me!"

And all the sons of Levi gathered themselves together unto him.

And he said unto them, "Thus saith THE LORD God of Israel: Put every man his sword by his side, and go in and out from gate to gate throughout the camp, and slay every man his brother, and every man his companion, and every man his neighbor!"

And the children of Levi did according to the word of Moses; and there fell of the people that day about three thousand men (for Moses had said, "Consecrate yourselves to day to THE LORD, even every man upon his son, and upon his brother, that He may bestow upon you a blessing this day.")

And it came to pass on the morrow that Moses said unto the people, "Ye have sinned a great sin! And now I will go up unto THE LORD; peradventure I shall make an atonement for your sin!"

And Moses returned unto THE LORD and said, "Oh, this people have sinned a great sin and have made them gods of gold! Yet now, if Thou wilt forgive their sin... And if not, blot me, I pray thee, out of Thy Book which Thou hast written!"

And THE LORD said unto Moses, "Whosoever hath sinned against Me, *him* will I blot out of My Book! Therefore now go! Lead the people unto the place of which I have spoken unto thee. Behold, Mine Angel shall go before thee; nevertheless in the day when I visit I will visit their sin upon them!"

And THE LORD plagued the people, because they made the calf, which Aaron made. And THE LORD said unto Moses, "Depart, and go up hence, thou and the people which thou hast brought up out of the land of Egypt, unto the land which I swear unto Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob, saying, *'Unto thy seed will I give it'*. And I will send an angel before thee; and I will drive out the Canaanite, the Amorite, and the Hittite, and the Perizzite, the Hivite, and the Jebusite. Unto a land flowing with milk and honey. For I will not go up in the midst of thee (for thou art a stiffnecked people) lest I consume thee in the way!"

And when the people heard these evil tidings, they mourned; and no man did put on him his ornaments. For THE LORD had said unto Moses, "Say unto the Children of Israel: Ye are a stiffnecked people; I will come up into the midst of thee in a moment and consume thee; therefore now put off thy ornaments from thee, that I may know what to do unto thee."

And the Children of Israel stripped themselves of their ornaments by the Mount Horeb. And Moses took The Tabernacle and pitched it without the camp, afar off from the camp, and called it The Tabernacle of the Congregation. And it came to pass that every one which sought THE LORD went out unto The Tabernacle of the Congregation, which was without the camp.

And it came to pass, when Moses went out unto The Tabernacle, that all the people rose up and stood, every man, at his tent door and looked after Moses until he was gone into The Tabernacle. And it came to pass, as Moses entered into The Tabernacle, the cloudy pillar descended and stood at the door of The

Tabernacle, and THE LORD talked with Moses. And all the people saw the cloudy pillar stand at The Tabernacle door; and all the people rose up and worshipped, every man in his tent door.

And THE LORD spake unto Moses face to face, as a man speaketh unto his friend. And he turned again into the camp; but his servant Joshua (the son of Nun, a young man) departed not out of The Tabernacle.

And Moses said unto THE LORD, "See, Thou sayest unto me, '*Bring up this people*', and Thou hast not let me know whom Thou wilt send with me. Yet Thou hast said, '*I know thee by name, and thou hast also found grace in my sight*'. Now therefore, I pray Thee, if I *have* found grace in Thy sight, show me now Thy Way, that I may know Thee, that I may find grace in Thy sight; and consider that this nation is Thy People."

And He said, "My presence shall go with thee, and I will give thee rest."

And he said unto Him, "If Thy presence go *not* with me, carry us not up hence. For wherein shall it be known here that I and Thy People have found grace in Thy sight? Is it not in that Thou goest with us? So shall we be separated, I and Thy People, from all the people that are upon the face of the earth."

And THE LORD said unto Moses, "I will do this thing also that thou hast spoken; for Thou hast found grace in My sight, and <sup>1</sup>I know Thee by name."

*'a figure of speech meaning "we are friends"*

And he said, "I beseech Thee, show me Thy glory."

And He said, "I will make all My goodness pass before thee, and I will proclaim the name of THE LORD before thee; and will be gracious to whom I will be gracious, and will show mercy on whom I will show mercy." And He said, "Thou canst not see My *face*; for there shall no man see Me and <sup>1</sup>live." And THE LORD said, "Behold, there is a place by Me, and thou shalt stand upon a rock; and it shall come to pass, while My glory passeth by, that I will put thee in a cleft of the rock, and will cover thee with My hand while I pass by. And I will take away Mine hand, and thou shalt see My back parts - but My face shall not be seen." And THE LORD said unto Moses, "Hew thee two tables of stone like unto the first, and I will write upon these tables the Words that were in the first tables which thou brakest. And be ready in the morning, and come up in the morning unto Mount Sinai, and present thyself there to Me in the top of the mount. And no man shall come up with thee, neither let any man be seen throughout all the mount; neither let the flocks nor herds feed before that mount."

*'survive it*

And he hewed two tables of stone like unto the first; and Moses rose up early in the morning and went up unto Mount Sinai as THE LORD had commanded him, and took in his hand the two tables of stone. And THE LORD descended in the cloud and stood with him there and proclaimed the name of THE LORD. And THE LORD passed by before him, and proclaimed:

**<sup>1</sup>THE LORD, THE LORD GOD, MERCIFUL AND GRACIOUS, LONGSUFFERING,  
AND ABUNDANT IN GOODNESS AND TRUTH, KEEPING MERCY FOR THOUSANDS,  
FORGIVING INIQUITY AND TRANSGRESSION AND SIN,  
AND THAT WILL BY NO MEANS CLEAR THE GUILTY,  
VISITING THE INIQUITY OF THE FATHERS UPON THE CHILDREN  
AND UPON THE CHILDREN'S CHILDREN UNTO THE THIRD AND TO THE FOURTH GENERATION!"**

*'יהוה (JeHoVaH or YaHWeH)*

And Moses made haste, and bowed his head toward the earth, and worshipped. And he said, "If now I have found grace in Thy sight, O Lord, let my Lord, I pray thee, go among us (for it is a stiffnecked people!), and pardon our iniquity and our sin, and take us for Thine inheritance.

And He said, "Behold, I make a covenant: before all thy people I will do marvels such as have not been done in all the earth, nor in any nation! And all the people among which thou art shall see the work of THE LORD -

for it is a terrible thing that I will do with thee! Observe thou that which I command thee this day! Behold, I drive out before thee the Amorite, and the Canaanite, and the Hittite, and the Perizzite, and the Hivite, and the Jebusite. Take heed to thyself, lest thou make a covenant with the inhabitants of the land whither thou goest, lest it be for a snare in the midst of thee! But ye shall destroy their altars, break their images, and cut down their groves! For thou shalt worship no other god; for THE LORD, whose name is Jealous, is a jealous God - lest thou make a covenant with the inhabitants of the land and they go a whoring after their gods, and do sacrifice unto their gods, and one call thee and thou eat of his sacrifice, and thou take of their daughters unto thy sons, and their daughters go a whoring after their gods, and make thy sons go a whoring after their gods. Thou shalt make thee no molten gods!

“The Feast of Unleavened Bread shalt thou keep. Seven days thou shalt eat unleavened bread, as I commanded thee, in the time of the month Abib - for in the month Abib thou camest out from Egypt.

“All that <sup>1</sup>openeth the matrix is Mine; and every firstling among thy cattle, whether ox or sheep, that is male. <sup>1</sup>come out of the womb

“But the firstling of an ass thou shalt redeem with a lamb; and if thou redeem him not, then shalt thou break his neck.

“All the firstborn of thy sons thou shalt redeem. And none shall appear before Me empty.

“Six days thou shalt work, but on the Seventh Day thou shalt rest; in earing time and in harvest thou shalt rest.

“And thou shalt observe the Feast of Weeks, of the Firstfruits of wheat harvest, and the Feast of Ingathering at the year's end.

“Thrice in the year shall all your menchildren appear before THE LORD GOD, the God of Israel. For I will cast out the nations before thee, and enlarge thy borders; <sup>1</sup>neither shall any man desire thy land when thou shalt go up to appear before THE LORD thy God thrice in the year. <sup>1</sup>your land will be safe

“Thou shalt not offer the blood of My sacrifice with leaven; neither shall the sacrifice of the Feast of the Passover be left unto the morning.

“The first of the firstfruits of thy land thou shalt bring unto the House of THE LORD thy God.

“Thou shalt not seethe a kid in his mother's milk.”

And THE LORD said unto Moses, “Write thou these words – for, after the tenor of these words I have made a covenant with thee and with Israel.

And he was there with THE LORD forty days and forty nights; he did neither eat bread, nor drink water. And he wrote upon the tables the Words of the Covenant - the Ten Commandments.

And it came to pass, when Moses came down from Mount Sinai with the two Tables of Testimony in Moses' hand, when he came down from the mount, that Moses <sup>1</sup>wist not that the skin of his face <sup>2</sup>shone while he talked with Him. And when Aaron and all the Children of Israel saw Moses, behold, the skin of his face shone; and they were afraid to come nigh him. And Moses called unto them; and Aaron and all the rulers of the congregation returned unto him, and Moses talked with them. <sup>1</sup>did not know <sup>2</sup>shined

And afterward all the Children of Israel came nigh, and he gave them in commandment all that THE LORD had spoken with him in Mount Sinai. And till Moses had done speaking with them, he put a veil on his face. But when Moses went in before THE LORD to speak with Him, he took the veil off until he came out. And he came out and spake unto the Children of Israel that which he was commanded. And the Children of Israel saw the face of Moses, that the skin of Moses' face shone; and Moses put the veil upon his face again until he went in to speak with Him.

And Moses gathered all the congregation of the Children of Israel together, and said unto them, “These are the words which THE LORD hath commanded, that ye should do them: Six days shall work be done, but on the Seventh Day there shall be to you an holy day, a Sabbath of rest to THE LORD. Whosoever doeth work therein shall be put to death! Ye shall kindle no fire throughout your habitations upon the Sabbath Day.”

And Moses spake unto all the congregation of the Children of Israel, saying, "This is the thing which THE LORD commanded, saying: Take ye from among you an offering unto THE LORD. Whosoever is of a willing heart, let him bring it, an offering of THE LORD - gold, and silver, and brass, and blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine linen, and goats' hair, and rams' skins dyed red, and badgers' skins, and shittim wood, and oil for the light, and spices for anointing oil and for the sweet incense, and onyx stones, and stones to be set for the ephod and for the breastplate. And every wise hearted among you shall come, and make all that THE LORD hath commanded:

- The Tabernacle, His tent, and His covering, His taches, and His boards, His bars, His pillars, and His sockets;
- the Ark, and the staves thereof, with the Mercy Seat, and the Veil of the Covering;
- the Table, and His staves, and all His vessels, and the Showbread;
- the Candlestick also for the light, and His furniture, and His lamps, with the oil for the light;
- and the Incense Altar, and His staves;
- and the anointing oil;
- and the sweet incense;
- and the hanging for the door at the entering in of The Tabernacle;
- the Altar of Burnt Offering, with His brazen grate, His staves, and all His vessels;
- the Laver and His foot;
- the hangings of the court, his pillars and their sockets, and the hanging for the door of the Court;
- the pins of The Tabernacle;
- and the pins of the Court, and their cords;
- the cloths of service, to do service in the Holy Place;
- the holy garments for Aaron the priest, and the garments of his sons, to minister in the priest's office."

And all the congregation of the Children of Israel departed from the presence of Moses. And they came, every one whose heart stirred him up and every one whom his spirit made willing, and they brought THE LORD'S offering to the work of The Tabernacle of the Congregation, and for all His service, and for the holy garments.

And they came, both men and women, as many as were willing hearted, and brought bracelets, and earrings, and rings, and tablets, all jewels of gold; and every man that offered offered an offering of gold unto THE LORD. And every man, with whom was found blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine linen, and goats' hair, and red skins of rams, and badgers' skins, brought them.

Every one that did offer an offering of silver and brass brought THE LORD's offering; and every man, with whom was found shittim wood for any work of the service, brought it.

And all the women that were wise hearted did spin with their hands, and brought that which they had spun, both of blue, and of purple, and of scarlet, and of fine linen.

And all the women, whose heart stirred them up in wisdom, spun goats' hair.

And the rulers brought onyx stones and stones to be set for the ephod and for the breastplate; and spice, and oil for the Light and for the anointing oil and for the sweet incense.

The Children of Israel brought a willing offering unto THE LORD - every man and woman whose heart made them willing to bring for all manner of work which THE LORD had commanded to be made by the hand of Moses.

And Moses said unto the Children of Israel, "See, THE LORD hath called by name Bezaleel, the son of Uri, the son of Hur, of the tribe of Judah; and He hath filled him with the spirit of God, in wisdom, in understanding, and in knowledge, and in all manner of workmanship and to devise curious works, to work in gold, and in silver, and in brass, and in the cutting of stones, to set them, and in carving of wood, to make any manner of cunning work. And He hath put in his heart that he may teach - both he, and Aholiab, the son of Ahisamach, of the tribe of Dan. Them hath He filled with wisdom of heart to work all manner of work of the engraver, and of the cunning workman, and of the embroiderer, in blue, and in purple, in scarlet, and in fine linen, and of the weaver, even of them that do any work, and of those that devise cunning work."

Then wrought Bezaleel and Aholiab and every wise hearted man in whom THE LORD put wisdom and understanding to know how to work all manner of work for the service of the Sanctuary, according to all that THE LORD had commanded.

And Moses called Bezaleel and Aholiab and every wise hearted man in whose heart THE LORD had put wisdom, even every one whose heart stirred him up to come unto the work to do it; and they received of Moses all the offering which the Children of Israel had brought for the work of the service of the Sanctuary, to make it withal. And they brought yet unto him free offerings every morning.

And all the wise men that wrought all the work of the Sanctuary came, every man, from his work which they made; and they spake unto Moses, saying, "The people bring much more than enough for the service of the work which THE LORD commanded to make."

And Moses gave commandment, and they caused it to be proclaimed throughout the camp, saying, "Let neither man nor woman make any more work for the offering of the Sanctuary."

So the people were restrained from bringing. For the stuff they had was sufficient for all the work to make it, and too much. And every wise hearted man among them that wrought the work of The Tabernacle made ten curtains of fine twined linen, and blue, and purple, and scarlet; with cherubims of cunning work made he them.

The length of one curtain was twenty and eight cubits, and the breadth of one curtain four cubits; the curtains were all of one size.

And he coupled the five curtains one unto another; and the other five curtains he coupled one unto another.

And he made loops of blue on the edge of one curtain from the selvedge in the coupling; likewise he made in the uttermost side of another curtain, in the coupling of the second.

Fifty loops made he in one curtain, and fifty loops made he in the edge of the curtain which was in the coupling of the second; the loops held one curtain to another.

And he made fifty taches of gold, and coupled the curtains one unto another with the taches; so it became one tabernacle.

And he made curtains of goats' hair for the tent over The Tabernacle; eleven curtains he made them.

The length of one curtain was thirty cubits, and four cubits was the breadth of one curtain; the eleven curtains were of one size.

And he coupled five curtains by themselves, and six curtains by themselves.

And he made fifty loops upon the uttermost edge of the curtain in the coupling, and fifty loops made he upon the edge of the curtain which coupleth the second.

And he made fifty taches of brass to couple the tent together, that it might be one.

And he made a covering for the tent of rams' skins dyed red, and a covering of badgers' skins above that.

And he made boards for The Tabernacle of shittim wood, standing up.

The length of a board was ten cubits, and the breadth of a board one cubit and a half.

One board had two tenons, equally distant one from another; thus did he make for all the boards of The Tabernacle.

And he made boards for The Tabernacle. Twenty boards for the south side southward, and forty sockets of silver he made under the twenty boards. Two sockets under one board for his two tenons, and two sockets under another board for his two tenons.

And for the other side of The Tabernacle, which is toward the north corner, he made twenty boards, and their forty sockets of silver; two sockets under one board, and two sockets under another board.

And for the sides of The Tabernacle westward he made six boards.

And two boards made he for the corners of The Tabernacle in the two sides.

And they were coupled beneath, and coupled together at the head thereof, to one ring; thus he did to both of them in both the corners.

And there were eight boards; and their sockets were sixteen sockets of silver, under every board two sockets.

And he made bars of shittim wood; five for the boards of the one side of The Tabernacle, and five bars for the boards of the other side of The Tabernacle, and five bars for the boards of The Tabernacle for the sides westward.

And he made the middle bar to shoot through the boards from the one end to the other.

And he overlaid the boards with gold, and made their rings of gold to be places for the bars, and overlaid the bars with gold.

And he made a veil of blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine twined linen; with cherubims made he it of cunning work.

And he made thereunto four pillars of shittim wood, and overlaid them with gold. Their hooks were of gold. And he cast for them four sockets of silver.

And he made an hanging for The Tabernacle door of blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine twined linen, of needlework; and the five pillars of it with their hooks. And he overlaid their chapters and their fillets with gold; but their five sockets were of brass.

And Bezaleel made The Ark of shittim wood. Two cubits and a half was the length of it, and a cubit and a half the breadth of it, and a cubit and a half the height of it. And he overlaid it with pure gold within and without, and made a crown of gold to it round about.

And he cast for it four rings of gold, to be set by the four corners of it; even two rings upon the one side of it, and two rings upon the other side of it.

And he made staves of shittim wood, and overlaid them with gold. And he put the staves into the rings by the sides of the Ark, to bear the Ark.

And he made the Mercy Seat of pure gold. Two cubits and a half was the length thereof, and one cubit and a half the breadth thereof.

And he made two cherubims of gold, beaten out of one piece made he them, on the two ends of the Mercy Seat - one cherub on the end on this side, and another cherub on the other end on that side; out of the Mercy Seat made he the cherubims on the two ends thereof.

And the cherubims spread out their wings on high, and covered with their wings over the Mercy Seat, with their faces one to another; even to the Mercy Seat-ward were the faces of the cherubims.

And he made The Table of shittim wood. Two cubits was the length thereof, and a cubit the breadth thereof, and a cubit and a half the height thereof. And he overlaid it with pure gold, and made thereunto a crown of gold round about.

Also he made thereunto a border of an handbreadth round about; and made a crown of gold for the border thereof round about.

And he cast for it four rings of gold, and put the rings upon the four corners that were in the four feet thereof.

Over against the border were the rings, the places for the staves to bear the Table.

And he made the staves of shittim wood, and overlaid them with gold, to bear the Table.

And he made the vessels which were upon the Table, His dishes, and His spoons, and His bowls, and His covers to cover withal, of pure gold.

And he made The Candlestick of pure gold. Of beaten work made he the Candlestick; his shaft, and his branch, his bowls, his knops, and his flowers, were of the same - and six branches going out of the sides thereof: three branches of the Candlestick out of the one side thereof, and three branches of the Candlestick out of the other side thereof. Three bowls made after the fashion of almonds in one branch, a knop and a flower; and three bowls made like almonds in another branch, a knop and a flower. So throughout the six branches going out of the Candlestick.

And in the Candlestick were four bowls made like almonds, His knops, and His flowers; and a knop under two branches of the same, and a knop under two branches of the same, and a knop under two branches of the same, according to the six branches going out of it. Their knops and their branches were of the same; all of it was one beaten work of pure gold. And he made His seven lamps, and His snuffers, and His snuffdishes, of pure gold. Of a talent of pure gold made he it, and all the vessels thereof.

And he made the Incense Altar of shittim wood. The length of it was a cubit, and the breadth of it a cubit; it was foursquare, and two cubits was the height of it. The horns thereof were of the same. And he overlaid it

with pure gold, both the top of it, and the sides thereof round about, and the horns of it. Also he made unto it a crown of gold round about. And he made two rings of gold for it under the crown thereof, by the two corners of it, upon the two sides thereof, to be places for the staves to bear it withal. And he made the staves of shittim wood, and overlaid them with gold.

And he made the holy anointing oil, and the pure incense of sweet spices, according to the work of the apothecary.

And he made the Altar of Burnt Offering of shittim wood. Five cubits was the length thereof, and five cubits the breadth thereof; it was foursquare; and three cubits the height thereof.

And he made the horns thereof on the four corners of it; the horns thereof were of the same. And he overlaid it with brass.

And he made all the vessels of the Altar, the pots, and the shovels, and the basins, and the fleshhooks, and the firepans; all the vessels thereof made he of brass. And he made for the altar a brazen grate of network under the compass thereof beneath unto the midst of it. And he cast four rings for the four ends of the grate of brass, to be places for the staves. And he made the staves of shittim wood, and overlaid them with brass. And he put the staves into the rings on the sides of the altar, to bear it withal; he made the altar hollow with boards.

And he made the Laver of brass, and the foot of it of brass, of the lookingglasses of the women assembling, which assembled at the door of The Tabernacle of the Congregation.

And he made the Court. On the south side southward the hangings of the Court were of fine twined linen, an hundred cubits. Their pillars were twenty, and their brazen sockets twenty; the hooks of the pillars and their fillets were of silver. And for the north side the hangings were an hundred cubits, their pillars were twenty, and their sockets of brass twenty; the hooks of the pillars and their fillets of silver. And for the west side were hangings of fifty cubits, their pillars ten, and their sockets ten; the hooks of the pillars and their fillets of silver. And for the east side eastward fifty cubits.

The hangings of the one side of the Gate were fifteen cubits; their pillars three, and their sockets three. And for the other side of the Court gate, on this hand and that hand, were hangings of fifteen cubits; their pillars three, and their sockets three. All the hangings of the Court round about were of fine twined linen.

And the sockets for the pillars were of brass; the hooks of the pillars and their fillets of silver; and the overlaying of their chapters of silver; and all the pillars of the Court were filleted with silver.

And the hanging for the Gate of the Court was needlework, of blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine twined linen. And twenty cubits was the length, and the height in the breadth was five cubits, answerable to the hangings of the Court.

And their pillars were four, and their sockets of brass four; their hooks of silver, and the overlaying of their chapters and their fillets of silver.

And all the pins of The Tabernacle, and of the Court round about, were of brass.

This is the sum of The Tabernacle, even of The Tabernacle of Testimony, as it was counted, according to the commandment of Moses, for the service of the Levites, by the hand of Ithamar, son to Aaron the priest.

And Bezaleel, the son of Uri, the son of Hur, of the tribe of Judah, made all that THE LORD commanded Moses. And with him was Aholiab, son of Ahisamach, of the tribe of Dan, an engraver, and a cunning workman, and an embroiderer in blue, and in purple, and in scarlet, and fine linen.

All the gold that was occupied for the work in all the work of the Holy Place, even the gold of the offering, was twenty and nine talents, and seven hundred and thirty shekels, after the shekel of the Sanctuary. And the silver of them that were numbered of the congregation was an hundred talents, and a thousand seven hundred and threescore and fifteen shekels, after the shekel of the sanctuary - a bekah for every man, that is, half a shekel, after the shekel of the Sanctuary, for every one that went to be numbered, from twenty years old and upward, for six hundred thousand and three thousand and five hundred and fifty men. And of the hundred talents of silver were cast the sockets of the sanctuary, and the sockets of the veil; an hundred sockets of the hundred talents, a talent for a socket. And of the thousand seven hundred seventy and five shekels he made hooks for the pillars, and overlaid their chapiters, and filleted them. And the brass of the offering was seventy talents, and two thousand and four hundred shekels. And therewith he made the sockets to the door of The Tabernacle of the Congregation, and the Brazen Altar, and the brazen grate for it, and all the vessels of the altar, and the sockets of the Court round about, and the sockets of the Court Gate, and all the pins of The Tabernacle, and all the pins of the Court round about. And of the blue and purple and scarlet they made cloths of service to do service in the Holy Place, and made the holy garments for Aaron, as THE LORD commanded Moses. And he made the ephod of gold, blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine twined linen. And they did beat the gold into thin plates, and cut it into wires, to work it in the blue, and in the purple, and in the scarlet, and in the fine linen, with cunning work. They made shoulderpieces for it, to couple it together: by the two edges was it coupled together. And the curious girdle of his ephod, that was upon it, was of the same, according to the work thereof; of gold, blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine twined linen; as THE LORD commanded Moses. And they wrought onyx stones enclosed in ouches of gold, graven, as signets are graven, with the names of the Children of Israel. And he put them on the shoulders of the ephod, that they should be stones for a memorial to the Children of Israel; as THE LORD commanded Moses. And he made the breastplate of cunning work, like the work of the ephod; of gold, blue, and purple, and scarlet, and fine twined linen. It was foursquare; they made the breastplate double: a span was the length thereof, and a span the breadth thereof, being doubled. And they set in it four rows of stones.

The first row was:

- a sardius,
- a topaz,
- and a carbuncle.

This was the first row.

And the second row:

- an emerald,
- a sapphire,
- and a diamond.

And the third row:

- a ligure,
- an agate,
- and an amethyst.

And the fourth row

- a beryl,
- an onyx,
- and a jasper.

They were enclosed in ouches of gold in their enclosings. And the stones were according to the names of the Children of Israel, twelve, according to their names, like the engravings of a signet, every one with his name, according to the twelve tribes.

And they made upon the breastplate chains at the ends, of wreathen work of pure gold. And they made two ouches of gold, and two gold rings; and put the two rings in the two ends of the breastplate. And they put the two wreathen chains of gold in the two rings on the ends of the breastplate. And the two ends of the two wreathen chains they fastened in the two ouches, and put them on the shoulderpieces of the ephod, before it. And they made two rings of gold, and put them on the two ends of the breastplate, upon the border of it, which was on the side of the ephod inward. And they made two other golden rings, and put them on the two sides of the ephod underneath, toward the forepart of it, over against the other coupling thereof, above the curious girdle of the ephod. And they did bind the breastplate by his rings unto the rings of the ephod with a lace of blue, that it might be above the curious girdle of the ephod, and that the breastplate might not be loosed from the ephod; as THE LORD commanded Moses.

And he made the robe of the ephod of woven work, all of blue. And there was an hole in the midst of the robe, as the hole of an habergeon, with a band round about the hole, that it should not rend. And they made upon the hems of the robe pomegranates of blue, and purple, and scarlet, and twined linen. And they made bells of pure gold, and put the bells between the pomegranates upon the hem of the robe, round about between the pomegranates - a bell and a pomegranate, a bell and a pomegranate - round about the hem of the robe to minister in; as THE LORD commanded Moses.

And they made coats of fine linen of woven work for Aaron, and for his sons, and a mitre of fine linen, and goodly bonnets of fine linen, and linen breeches of fine twined linen, and a girdle of fine twined linen, and blue, and purple, and scarlet, of needlework; as THE LORD commanded Moses.

And they made the plate of the holy crown of pure gold, and wrote upon it a writing, like to the engravings of a signet, "HOLINESS TO THE LORD". And they tied unto it a lace of blue, to fasten it on high upon the mitre; as THE LORD commanded Moses.

Thus was all the work of The Tabernacle of the Tent of the Congregation finished; and the Children of Israel did according to all that THE LORD commanded Moses, so did they.

And they brought The Tabernacle unto Moses:

- the Tent and all His furniture, His taches, His boards, His bars, and His pillars, and His sockets,
- and the covering of rams' skins dyed red, and the covering of badgers' skins,
- and the Veil of the Covering,
- the Ark of the Testimony and the staves thereof,
- and the Mercy Seat,
- the Table and all the vessels thereof and the Showbread,
- the pure Candlestick with the lamps thereof, even with the lamps to be set in order, and all the vessels thereof, and the oil for light,
- and the golden Altar,
- and the anointing oil,
- and the sweet incense,
- and the hanging for The Tabernacle door,
- the Brazen Altar and His grate of brass, His staves, and all His vessels,
- the Laver and his foot,
- the hangings of the Court, His pillars, and His sockets,
- and the hanging for the Court Gate, His cords, and His pins,
- and all the vessels of the service of The Tabernacle for The Tent of the Congregation,

- the cloths of service to do service in the Holy Place,
- and the holy garments for Aaron the priest,
- and his sons' garments, to minister in the priest's office.

According to all that THE LORD commanded Moses, so the Children of Israel made all the work. And Moses did look upon all the work, and, behold, they had done it as THE LORD had commanded, even so had they done it; and Moses blessed them.

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, "On the first day of the first month shalt thou set up The Tabernacle of the Tent of the Congregation. And thou shalt put therein the Ark of the Testimony, and cover the Ark with the veil. And thou shalt bring in the Table, and set in order the things that are to be set in order upon it; and thou shalt bring in the Candlestick, and light the lamps thereof. And thou shalt set the Altar of gold for the incense before the Ark of the Testimony, and put the hanging of the door to The Tabernacle.

"And thou shalt set the Altar of the burnt offering before the door of The Tabernacle of the Tent of the Congregation. And thou shalt set the Laver between the Tent of the Congregation and the Altar, and shalt put water therein.

"And thou shalt set up the Court round about, and hang up the hanging at the Court Gate.

"And thou shalt take the anointing oil, and anoint The Tabernacle, and all that is therein, and shalt hallow it, and all the vessels thereof; and it shall be holy.

"And thou shalt anoint the Altar of the burnt offering, and all his vessels, and sanctify the Altar; and it shall be an Altar most holy. And thou shalt anoint the Laver and his foot, and sanctify it.

"And thou shalt bring Aaron and his sons unto the door of The Tabernacle of the Congregation, and wash them with water. And thou shalt put upon Aaron the holy garments, and anoint him, and sanctify him; that he may minister unto me in the priest's office.

"And thou shalt bring his sons, and clothe them with coats; and thou shalt anoint them, as thou didst anoint their father, that they may minister unto Me in the priest's office; for their anointing shall surely be an everlasting priesthood throughout their generations."

Thus did Moses; according to all that THE LORD commanded him, so did he. And it came to pass in the first month in the second year, on the first day of the month, that The Tabernacle was reared up. And Moses reared up The Tabernacle, and fastened His sockets, and set up the boards thereof, and put in the bars thereof, and reared up His pillars. And he spread abroad the tent over The Tabernacle, and put the covering of the tent above upon it; as THE LORD commanded Moses.

And he took and put The Testimony into the Ark, and set the staves on the Ark, and put the Mercy Seat above upon the Ark: and he brought the Ark into The Tabernacle, and set up the Veil of the Covering, and covered the Ark of the Testimony; as THE LORD commanded Moses.

And he put the Table in the Tent of the Congregation, upon the side of The Tabernacle northward, without the veil. And he set the bread in order upon it before THE LORD; as THE LORD had commanded Moses.

And he put the Candlestick in the Tent of the Congregation, over against the Table, on the side of The Tabernacle southward. And he lighted the lamps before THE LORD; as THE LORD commanded Moses.

And he put the golden Altar in the Tent of the Congregation before the veil; and he burnt sweet incense thereon; as THE LORD commanded Moses.

And he set up the hanging at the door of The Tabernacle. And he put the Altar of burnt offering by the door of The Tabernacle of the Tent of the Congregation, and offered upon it the burnt offering and the meat offering; as THE LORD commanded Moses.

And he set the Laver between the Tent of the Congregation and the Altar, and put water there, to wash withal. And Moses and Aaron and his sons washed their hands and their feet thereat - when they went into

the Tent of the Congregation and when they came near unto the Altar, they washed as THE LORD commanded Moses.

And he reared up the Court round about The Tabernacle and the Altar, and set up the hanging of the Court Gate. So Moses finished the work.

Then a cloud covered the Tent of the Congregation, and the glory of THE LORD filled The Tabernacle. And Moses was not able to enter into the Tent of the Congregation, because the cloud abode thereon, and the glory of THE LORD filled The Tabernacle.

And when the cloud was taken up from over The Tabernacle, the Children of Israel went onward in all their journeys; but if the cloud were not taken up, then they journeyed not till the day that it was taken up. For the cloud of THE LORD was upon The Tabernacle by day, and fire was on it by night, in the sight of all the house of Israel, throughout all their journeys.

And THE LORD called unto Moses, and spake unto him out of The Tabernacle of the Congregation, saying, "Speak unto the Children of Israel, and say unto them:

"If any man of you bring an offering unto THE LORD, ye shall bring your offering of the cattle, even of the herd, and of the flock. If his offering be a burnt sacrifice of the herd, let him offer a male without blemish; he shall offer it of his own voluntary will at the door of The Tabernacle of the Congregation before THE LORD.

"And he shall put his hand upon the head of the burnt offering; and it shall be accepted for him to make atonement for him. And he shall kill the bullock before THE LORD; and the priests, Aaron's sons, shall bring the blood, and sprinkle the blood round about upon the Altar that is by the door of The Tabernacle of the Congregation. And he shall flay the burnt offering, and cut it into his pieces.

"And the sons of Aaron the priest shall put fire upon the Altar, and lay the wood in order upon the fire: and the priests, Aaron's sons, shall lay the parts, the head, and the fat, in order upon the wood that is on the fire which is upon the Altar; but his inwards and his legs shall he wash in water. And the priest shall burn all on the Altar, to be a burnt sacrifice, an offering made by fire, of a sweet savour unto THE LORD.

"And if his offering be of the flocks, namely, of the sheep, or of the goats, for a burnt sacrifice; he shall bring it a male without blemish. And he shall kill it on the side of the Altar northward before THE LORD; and the priests, Aaron's sons, shall sprinkle his blood round about upon the altar. And he shall cut it into his pieces, with his head and his fat; and the priest shall lay them in order on the wood that is on the fire which is upon the Altar; but he shall wash the inwards and the legs with water. And the priest shall bring it all, and burn it upon the Altar; it is a burnt sacrifice, an offering made by fire, of a sweet savour unto THE LORD.

"And if the burnt sacrifice for his offering to THE LORD be of fowls, then he shall bring his offering of turtledoves, or of young pigeons. And the priest shall bring it unto the Altar, and wring off his head, and burn it on the Altar; and the blood thereof shall be wrung out at the side of the Altar. And he shall pluck away his crop with his feathers, and cast it beside the Altar on the east part, by the place of the ashes. And he shall cleave it with the wings thereof, but shall not divide it asunder; and the priest shall burn it upon the Altar, upon the wood that is upon the fire. It is a burnt sacrifice, an offering made by fire, of a sweet savour unto THE LORD.

"And when any will offer a meat offering unto THE LORD, his offering shall be of fine flour; and he shall pour oil upon it, and put frankincense thereon, and he shall bring it to Aaron's sons the priests. And he shall take thereout his handful of the flour thereof, and of the oil thereof, with all the frankincense thereof; and the priest shall burn the memorial of it upon the Altar, to be an offering made by fire, of a sweet savour unto THE LORD. And the remnant of the meat offering shall be Aaron's and his sons'. It is a thing most holy of the offerings of THE LORD made by fire.

"And if thou bring an oblation of a meat offering baken in the oven, it shall be unleavened cakes of fine flour mingled with oil, or unleavened wafers anointed with oil.

"And if thy oblation be a meat offering baken in a pan, it shall be of fine flour unleavened, mingled with oil. Thou shalt part it in pieces, and pour oil thereon; it is a meat offering.

“And if thy oblation be a meat offering baken in the fryingpan, it shall be made of fine flour with oil.

“And thou shalt bring the meat offering that is made of these things unto THE LORD; and when it is presented unto the priest, he shall bring it unto the Altar.

“And the priest shall take from the meat offering a memorial thereof, and shall burn it upon the Altar; it is an offering made by fire, of a sweet savour unto THE LORD.

“And that which is left of the meat offering shall be Aaron's and his sons'; it is a thing most holy of the offerings of THE LORD made by fire.

“No meat offering, which ye shall bring unto THE LORD, shall be made with leaven; for ye shall burn no leaven, nor any honey, in any offering of THE LORD made by fire.

“As for the oblation of the firstfruits, ye shall offer them unto THE LORD; but they shall *not* be burnt on the Altar for a sweet savour.

“And every oblation of thy meat offering shalt thou season with salt; neither shalt thou suffer the salt of the covenant of thy God to be lacking from thy meat offering. With all thine offerings thou shalt offer salt.

“And if thou offer a meat offering of thy firstfruits unto THE LORD, thou shalt offer for the meat offering of thy firstfruits green ears of corn dried by the fire, even corn beaten out of full ears. And thou shalt put oil upon it, and lay frankincense thereon; it is a meat offering. And the priest shall burn the memorial of it, part of the beaten corn thereof, and part of the oil thereof, with all the frankincense thereof; it is an offering made by fire unto THE LORD.

“And if his oblation be a sacrifice of peace offering, if he offer it of the herd; whether it be a male or female, he shall offer it without blemish before THE LORD. And he shall lay his hand upon the head of his offering, and kill it at the door of The Tabernacle of the Congregation; and Aaron's sons the priests shall sprinkle the blood upon the Altar round about.

“And he shall offer of the sacrifice of the peace offering an offering made by fire unto THE LORD; the fat that covereth the inwards, and all the fat that is upon the inwards, and the two kidneys, and the fat that is on them, which is by the flanks, and the caul above the liver, with the kidneys, it shall he take away.

“And Aaron's sons shall burn it on the Altar upon the burnt sacrifice, which is upon the wood that is on the fire; it is an offering made by fire, of a sweet savour unto THE LORD.

“And if his offering for a sacrifice of peace offering unto THE LORD be of the flock; male or female, he shall offer it without blemish.

“If he offer a lamb for his offering, then shall he offer it before THE LORD. And he shall lay his hand upon the head of his offering, and kill it before The Tabernacle of the Congregation; and Aaron's sons shall sprinkle the blood thereof round about upon the Altar.

“And he shall offer of the sacrifice of the peace offering an offering made by fire unto THE LORD; the fat thereof, and the whole rump, it shall he take off hard by the backbone; and the fat that covereth the inwards, and all the fat that is upon the inwards, and the two kidneys, and the fat that is upon them, which is by the flanks, and the caul above the liver, with the kidneys, it shall he take away. And the priest shall burn it upon the Altar; it is the food of the offering made by fire unto THE LORD.

“And if his offering be a goat, then he shall offer it before THE LORD. And he shall lay his hand upon the head of it, and kill it before The Tabernacle of the Congregation; and the sons of Aaron shall sprinkle the blood thereof upon the Altar round about. And he shall offer thereof his offering, even an offering made by fire unto THE LORD; the fat that covereth the inwards, and all the fat that is upon the inwards, and the two kidneys, and the fat that is upon them, which is by the flanks, and the caul above the liver, with the kidneys, it shall he take away. And the priest shall burn them upon the Altar; it is the food of the offering made by fire for a sweet savour; all the fat is THE LORD'S.

“It shall be a perpetual statute for your generations throughout all your dwellings, that ye eat neither fat nor blood.”

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, “Speak unto the Children of Israel, saying: If a soul shall sin through ignorance against any of the commandments of THE LORD concerning things which ought not to be done and shall do against any of them, <sup>1</sup>if the priest that is anointed do sin according to the sin of the

people, then let him bring for his sin, which he hath sinned, a young bullock without blemish unto THE LORD for a sin offering. And he shall bring the bullock unto the door of The Tabernacle of the Congregation before THE LORD; and shall lay his hand upon the bullock's head, and kill the bullock before THE LORD. And the priest that is anointed shall take of the bullock's blood and bring it to The Tabernacle of the Congregation, and the priest shall dip his finger in the blood and sprinkle of the blood seven times before THE LORD, before the veil of the Sanctuary. And the priest shall put some of the blood upon the horns of the Altar of sweet incense before THE LORD which is in The Tabernacle of the Congregation, and shall pour all the blood of the bullock at the bottom of the Altar of the burnt offering which is at the door of The Tabernacle of the Congregation. And he shall take off from it all the fat of the bullock for the sin offering; the fat that covereth the inwards, and all the fat that is upon the inwards, and the two kidneys, and the fat that is upon them, which is by the flanks, and the caul above the liver, with the kidneys, it shall he take away, as it was taken off from the bullock of the sacrifice of peace offerings. And the priest shall burn them upon the altar of the burnt offering. And the skin of the bullock, and all his flesh, with his head, and with his legs, and his inwards, and his dung, even the whole bullock shall he carry forth without the camp unto a clean place, where the ashes are poured out, and burn him on the wood with fire; where the ashes are poured out shall he be burnt.

*'or if*

“And if the whole congregation of Israel sin through ignorance, and the thing be hid from the eyes of the assembly, and they have done somewhat against any of the commandments of THE LORD concerning things which should not be done, and are guilty; when the sin, which they have sinned against it, is known, then the congregation shall offer a young bullock for the sin and bring him before The Tabernacle of the Congregation. And the elders of the congregation shall lay their hands upon the head of the bullock before THE LORD, and the bullock shall be killed before THE LORD. And the priest that is anointed shall bring of the bullock's blood to The Tabernacle of the Congregation, and the priest shall dip his finger in some of the blood and sprinkle it seven times before THE LORD, even before the veil. And he shall put some of the blood upon the horns of the Altar which is before THE LORD that is in The Tabernacle of the Congregation and shall pour out all the blood at the bottom of the Altar of the burnt offering which is at the door of The Tabernacle of the Congregation. And he shall take all his fat from him and burn it upon the Altar. And he shall do with the bullock as he did with the bullock for a sin offering, so shall he do with this. And the priest shall make an atonement for them, and it shall be forgiven them. And he shall carry forth the bullock without the camp and burn him as he burned the first bullock; it is a sin offering for the congregation.

“When a ruler hath sinned and done somewhat through ignorance against any of the commandments of THE LORD his God concerning things which should not be done, and is guilty; or, if his sin wherein he hath sinned come to his knowledge; he shall bring his offering - a kid of the goats, a male without blemish - and he shall lay his hand upon the head of the goat and kill it in the place where they kill the burnt offering before THE LORD; it is a sin offering. And the priest shall take of the blood of the sin offering with his finger and put it upon the horns of the Altar of burnt offering and shall pour out his blood at the bottom of the Altar of burnt offering. And he shall burn all his fat upon the Altar, as the fat of the sacrifice of peace offerings; and the priest shall make an atonement for him as concerning his sin, and it shall be forgiven him.

“And if any one of the common people sin through ignorance while he doeth somewhat against any of the commandments of THE LORD concerning things which ought not to be done, and be guilty; or, if his sin which he hath sinned come to his knowledge; then he shall bring his offering - a kid of the goats, a female without blemish - for his sin which he hath sinned. And he shall lay his hand upon the head of the sin offering and slay the sin offering in the place of the burnt offering. And the priest shall take of the blood thereof with his finger and put it upon the horns of the Altar of burnt offering and shall pour out all the blood thereof at the bottom of the Altar. And he shall take away all the fat thereof, as the fat is taken away from off the sacrifice of peace offerings; and the priest shall burn it upon the Altar for a sweet savour unto THE LORD; and the priest shall make an atonement for him, and it shall be forgiven him.

“And if he bring a lamb for a sin offering, he shall bring it a female without blemish. And he shall lay his hand upon the head of the sin offering and slay it for a sin offering in the place where they kill the burnt offering. And the priest shall take of the blood of the sin offering with his finger and put it upon the horns of the Altar of burnt offering and shall pour out all the blood thereof at the bottom of the Altar; and he shall

take away all the fat thereof, as the fat of the lamb is taken away from the sacrifice of the peace offerings. And the priest shall burn them upon the Altar, according to the offerings made by fire unto THE LORD; and the priest shall make an atonement for his sin that he hath committed, and it shall be forgiven him.

“And if a soul sin, and hear the voice of swearing, and is a witness, whether he hath seen or known of it; if he do not <sup>1</sup>utter it, then he shall bear his iniquity. <sup>1</sup>report/tell

“Or if a soul touch any unclean thing, whether it be a carcase of an unclean beast, or a carcase of unclean cattle, or the carcase of unclean creeping things, and if <sup>1</sup>it be hidden from him, he also shall be unclean, and guilty. <sup>1</sup>he doesn't realize or notice that he did it

“Or if he touch the uncleanness of man, whatsoever uncleanness it be that a man shall be defiled withal, and it be hid from him; when he knoweth of it, then he shall be guilty.

“Or if a soul swear, pronouncing with his lips to do evil, or to do good, whatsoever it be that a man shall pronounce with an oath, and it be hid from him; when he knoweth of it, then he shall be guilty in one of these.

“And it shall be, when he shall be guilty in one of these things, that he shall confess that he hath sinned in that thing, and he shall bring his trespass offering unto THE LORD for his sin which he hath sinned - a female from the flock, a lamb or a kid of the goats - for a sin offering; and the priest shall make an atonement for him concerning his sin.

“And if he be not able to bring a lamb, then he shall bring (for his trespass which he hath committed) two turtledoves or two young pigeons unto THE LORD; one for a sin offering, and the other for a burnt offering. And he shall bring them unto the priest, who shall offer that which is for the sin offering first, and wring off his head from his neck, but shall not divide it asunder. And he shall sprinkle of the blood of the sin offering upon the side of the Altar, and the rest of the blood shall be wrung out at the bottom of the Altar; it is a sin offering. And he shall offer the second for a burnt offering, according to the manner; and the priest shall make an atonement for him for his sin which he hath sinned, and it shall be forgiven him.

“But if he be not able to bring two turtledoves or two young pigeons, then he that sinned shall bring for his offering the tenth part of an ephah of fine flour for a sin offering; he shall put no oil upon it, neither shall he put any frankincense thereon; for it is a sin offering. Then shall he bring it to the priest, and the priest shall take his handful of it, even a memorial thereof, and burn it on the Altar, according to the offerings made by fire unto THE LORD; it is a sin offering. And the priest shall make an atonement for him as touching his sin that he hath sinned in one of these, and it shall be forgiven him; and the remnant shall be the priest's, as a meat offering.”

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, “If a soul commit a trespass and sin through ignorance in the holy things of THE LORD, then he shall bring for his trespass unto THE LORD a ram without blemish out of the flocks with thy estimation by shekels of silver, after the shekel of the Sanctuary, for a trespass offering; and he shall make amends for the harm that he hath done in the holy thing and shall add the fifth part thereto, and give it unto the priest; and the priest shall make an atonement for him with the ram of the trespass offering, and it shall be forgiven him.

“And if a soul sin and commit any of these things which are forbidden to be done by the commandments of THE LORD - though he wist it not, yet is he guilty and shall bear his iniquity. And he shall bring a ram without blemish out of the flock with thy estimation, for a trespass offering, unto the priest; and the priest shall make an atonement for him concerning his ignorance wherein he erred and wist it not, and it shall be forgiven him. It is a trespass offering; he hath certainly trespassed against THE LORD.”

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, “If a soul sin and commit a trespass against THE LORD and lie unto his neighbour in that which was delivered him to keep or in fellowship or in a thing taken away by violence, or hath deceived his neighbor, or have found that which was lost and lieth concerning it and sweareth falsely - in any of all these that a man doeth, sinning therein - then it shall be, because he hath sinned and is guilty, that he shall restore that which he took violently away or the thing which he hath deceitfully gotten or that which was delivered him to keep or the lost thing which he found or all that about which he hath sworn falsely. He shall even restore it in the principal AND shall add the fifth part more thereto and give it unto him to whom it appertaineth, in the day of his trespass offering.

“And he shall bring his trespass offering unto THE LORD - a ram without blemish out of the flock with thy estimation - for a trespass offering, unto the priest; and the priest shall make an atonement for him before THE LORD; and it shall be forgiven him for any thing of all that he hath done in trespassing therein.”

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, “Command Aaron and his sons, saying:

“This is the law of the burnt offering: It is the “burnt offering” because of the burning upon the Altar all night unto the morning, and the fire of the altar shall be burning in it. And the priest shall put on his linen garment, and his linen breeches shall he put upon his flesh, and take up the ashes which the fire hath consumed with the burnt offering on the Altar, and he shall put them beside the Altar. And he shall put off his garments, and put on other garments, and carry forth the ashes without the camp unto a clean place. And the fire upon the Altar shall be burning in it; it shall not be put out: and the priest shall burn wood on it every morning, and lay the burnt offering in order upon it; and he shall burn thereon the fat of the peace offerings. The fire shall ever be burning upon the Altar; it shall never go out.

“And this is the law of the meat offering: the sons of Aaron shall offer it before THE LORD, before the Altar. And he shall take of it his handful, of the flour of the meat offering, and of the oil thereof, and all the frankincense which is upon the meat offering, and shall burn it upon the Altar for a sweet savour, even the memorial of it, unto THE LORD. And the remainder thereof shall Aaron and his sons eat; with unleavened bread shall it be eaten in the Holy Place, in the Court of The Tabernacle of the Congregation they shall eat it. It shall not be baken with leaven. I have given it unto them for their portion of My offerings made by fire; it is most holy, as is the sin offering, and as the trespass offering. All the males among the children of Aaron shall eat of it. It shall be a statute for ever in your generations concerning the offerings of THE LORD made by fire; every one that toucheth them shall be holy.”

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, “This is the offering of Aaron and of his sons, which they shall offer unto THE LORD in the day when he is anointed: the tenth part of an ephah of fine flour for a meat offering perpetual, half of it in the morning, and half thereof at night. In a pan it shall be made with oil; and when it is baken, thou shalt bring it in. And the baken pieces of the meat offering shalt thou offer for a sweet savour unto THE LORD. And the priest of his sons that is anointed in his stead shall offer it; it is a statute for ever unto THE LORD; it shall be wholly burnt. For every meat offering for the priest shall be wholly burnt; it shall not be eaten.”

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, “Speak unto Aaron and to his sons, saying:

“This is the law of the sin offering: in the place where the burnt offering is killed shall the sin offering be killed before THE LORD; it is most holy.

“The priest that offereth it for sin shall eat it; in the Holy Place shall it be eaten, in the Court of The Tabernacle of the Congregation. Whatsoever shall touch the flesh thereof shall be holy. And when there is sprinkled of the blood thereof upon any garment, thou shalt wash that whereon it was sprinkled in the Holy Place. But the earthen vessel wherein it is sodden shall be broken. And if it be sodden in a brazen pot, it shall be both scoured and rinsed in water. All the males among the priests shall eat thereof; it is most holy.

“And no sin offering, whereof any of the blood is brought into The Tabernacle of the Congregation to reconcile withal in the Holy Place, shall be eaten; it shall be burnt in the fire. Likewise this is the law of the trespass offering; it is most holy.

“In the place where they kill the burnt offering shall they kill the trespass offering; and the blood thereof shall he sprinkle round about upon the Altar. And he shall offer of it all the fat thereof; the rump, and the fat that covereth the inwards, and the two kidneys, and the fat that is on them, which is by the flanks, and the caul that is above the liver, with the kidneys, it shall he take away. And the priest shall burn them upon the Altar for an offering made by fire unto THE LORD; it is a trespass offering. Every male among the priests shall eat thereof. It shall be eaten in the Holy Place; it is most holy.

“As the sin offering is, so is the trespass offering; there is one law for them. The priest that maketh atonement therewith shall have it.

“And the priest that offereth any man's burnt offering, even the priest shall have to himself the skin of the burnt offering which he hath offered.

“And all the meat offering that is baked in the oven and all that is dressed in the fryingpan and in the pan, shall be the priest's that offereth it.

“And every meat offering, mingled with oil, and dry, shall all the sons of Aaron have, one as much as another.

“And this is the law of the sacrifice of peace offerings, which he shall offer unto THE LORD.

“If he offer it for a thanksgiving, then he shall offer with the sacrifice of thanksgiving unleavened cakes mingled with oil, and unleavened wafers anointed with oil, and cakes mingled with oil, of fine flour, fried.

“Besides the cakes, he shall offer for his offering leavened bread with the sacrifice of thanksgiving of his peace offerings.

“And of it he shall offer one out of the whole oblation for an heave offering unto THE LORD, and it shall be the priest's that sprinkleth the blood of the peace offerings.

“And the flesh of the sacrifice of his peace offerings for thanksgiving shall be eaten the same day that it is offered; he shall not leave any of it until the morning.

“But if the sacrifice of his offering be a vow or a voluntary offering, it shall be eaten the same day that he offereth his sacrifice, and on the morrow also the remainder of it shall be eaten; but the remainder of the flesh of the sacrifice on the third day shall be burnt with fire.

“And if any of the flesh of the sacrifice of his peace offerings be eaten at all on the third day, it shall not be accepted, neither shall it be imputed unto him that offereth it; it shall be an abomination, and the soul that eateth of it shall bear his iniquity. And the flesh that toucheth any unclean thing shall not be eaten; it shall be burnt with fire. And as for the flesh, all that be clean shall eat thereof. But the soul that eateth of the flesh of the sacrifice of peace offerings that pertain unto THE LORD, having his uncleanness upon him, even that soul shall be cut off from his people.

“Moreover the soul that shall touch any unclean thing (as the uncleanness of man or any unclean beast or any abominable unclean thing) and eat of the flesh of the sacrifice of peace offerings which pertain unto THE LORD, even that soul shall be cut off from his people.”

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, “Speak unto the Children of Israel, saying: Ye shall eat no manner of fat of ox, or of sheep, or of goat. And the fat of the beast that dieth of itself, and the fat of that which is torn with beasts, may be used in any other use; but ye shall in no wise *eat* of it. For whosoever eateth the fat of the beast, of which men offer an offering made by fire unto THE LORD, even the soul that eateth it shall be cut off from his people.

“Moreover ye shall eat no manner of blood, whether it be of fowl or of beast, in any of your dwellings. Whatsoever soul it be that eateth any manner of blood, even that soul shall be cut off from his people.”

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, “Speak unto the Children of Israel, saying: He that offereth the sacrifice of his peace offerings unto THE LORD shall bring his oblation unto THE LORD of the sacrifice of his peace offerings. His own hands shall bring the offerings of THE LORD made by fire, the fat with the breast, it shall he bring, that the breast may be waved for a wave offering before THE LORD. And the priest shall burn the fat upon the altar; but the breast shall be Aaron's and his sons'. And the right shoulder shall ye give unto the priest for an heave offering of the sacrifices of your peace offerings. He among the sons of Aaron, that offereth the blood of the peace offerings and the fat, shall have the right shoulder for his part. For the wave breast and the heave shoulder have I taken of the Children of Israel from off the sacrifices of their peace offerings and have given them unto Aaron the priest and unto his sons by a statute for ever from among the Children of Israel. This is the portion of the anointing of Aaron and of the anointing of his sons out of the offerings of THE LORD made by fire in the day when he presented them to minister unto THE LORD in the priest's office which THE LORD commanded to be given them of the Children of Israel in the day that He anointed them by a statute for ever throughout their generations.

“This is the law of the burnt offering, of the meat offering, and of the sin offering, and of the trespass offering, and of the consecrations, and of the sacrifice of the peace offerings, which THE LORD commanded Moses in Mount Sinai in the day that He commanded the Children of Israel to offer their oblations unto THE LORD in the wilderness of Sinai.”

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, "Take Aaron and his sons with him, and the garments, and the anointing oil, and a bullock for the sin offering, and two rams, and a basket of unleavened bread; and gather thou all the congregation together unto the door of The Tabernacle of the Congregation."

And Moses did as THE LORD commanded him; and the assembly was gathered together unto the door of The Tabernacle of the Congregation.

And Moses said unto the congregation, "This is the thing which THE LORD commanded to be done."

And Moses brought Aaron and his sons, and washed them with water. And he put upon him the coat, and girded him with the girdle, and clothed him with the robe, and put the ephod upon him, and he girded him with the curious girdle of the ephod, and bound it unto him therewith. And he put the breastplate upon him; also he put in the breastplate the Urim and the Thummim. And he put the mitre upon his head; also upon the mitre, even upon his forefront, did he put the golden plate, the holy crown, as THE LORD commanded Moses.

And Moses took the anointing oil and anointed The Tabernacle and all that was therein and sanctified them. And he sprinkled thereof upon the Altar seven times, and anointed the Altar and all His vessels, both the Laver and his foot, to sanctify them.

And he poured of the anointing oil upon Aaron's head and anointed him to sanctify him.

And Moses brought Aaron's sons, and put coats upon them, and girded them with girdles, and put bonnets upon them, as THE LORD commanded Moses.

And he brought the bullock for the sin offering. And Aaron and his sons laid their hands upon the head of the bullock for the sin offering. And he slew it; and Moses took the blood and put it upon the horns of the Altar round about with his finger and purified the Altar, and poured the blood at the bottom of the Altar, and sanctified it, to make reconciliation upon it.

And he took all the fat that was upon the inwards, and the caul above the liver, and the two kidneys, and their fat, and Moses burned it upon the Altar. But the bullock, and his hide, his flesh, and his dung, he burnt with fire without the camp; as THE LORD commanded Moses.

And he brought the ram for the burnt offering. And Aaron and his sons laid their hands upon the head of the ram and he killed it. And Moses sprinkled the blood upon the Altar round about. And he cut the ram into pieces; and Moses burnt the head, and the pieces, and the fat.

And he washed the inwards and the legs in water; and Moses burnt the whole ram upon the Altar. It was a burnt sacrifice for a sweet savour and an offering made by fire unto THE LORD as THE LORD commanded Moses.

And he brought the other ram, the ram of consecration. And Aaron and his sons laid their hands upon the head of the ram and he slew it. And Moses took of the blood of it and put it upon the tip of Aaron's right ear, and upon the thumb of his right hand, and upon the great toe of his right foot.

And he brought Aaron's sons, and Moses put of the blood upon the tip of their right ear, and upon the thumbs of their right hands, and upon the great toes of their right feet. And Moses sprinkled the blood upon the Altar round about. And he took the fat, and the rump, and all the fat that was upon the inwards, and the caul above the liver, and the two kidneys, and their fat, and the right shoulder; and out of the basket of unleavened bread that was before THE LORD he took one unleavened cake, and a cake of oiled

bread, and one wafer, and put them on the fat, and upon the right shoulder. And he put all upon Aaron's hands, and upon his sons' hands, and waved them for a wave offering before THE LORD.

And Moses took them from off their hands and burnt them on the Altar upon the burnt offering. They were consecrations for a sweet savour; it is an offering made by fire unto THE LORD.

And Moses took the breast and waved it for a wave offering before THE LORD; for, of the ram of consecration it was Moses' part, as THE LORD commanded Moses.

And Moses took of the anointing oil and of the blood which was upon the Altar and sprinkled it upon Aaron, and upon his garments, and upon his sons, and upon his sons' garments with him, and sanctified Aaron, and his garments, and his sons, and his sons' garments with him.

And Moses said unto Aaron and to his sons, "Boil the flesh at the door of The Tabernacle of the Congregation. And there eat it with the bread that is in the basket of consecrations, as I commanded, saying, *'Aaron and his sons shall eat it.'* And that which remaineth of the flesh and of the bread shall ye burn with fire. And ye shall not go out of the door of The Tabernacle of the Congregation in seven days, until the days of your consecration be at an end - for seven days shall He consecrate you. As He hath done this day, so THE LORD hath commanded to do, to make an atonement for you. Therefore shall ye abide at the door of The Tabernacle of the Congregation day and night seven days and keep the charge of THE LORD, that ye die not. For so I am commanded."

So Aaron and his sons did all things which THE LORD commanded by the hand of Moses.

And it came to pass on the eighth day that Moses called Aaron and his sons, and the elders of Israel; and he said unto Aaron, "Take thee a young calf for a sin offering and a ram for a burnt offering - without blemish - and offer them before THE LORD.

"And unto the Children of Israel thou shalt speak, saying: Take ye a kid of the goats for a sin offering, and a calf and a lamb - both of the first year, without blemish - for a burnt offering. Also a bullock and a ram for peace offerings to sacrifice before THE LORD. And a meat offering mingled with oil. For to day THE LORD will appear unto you."

And they brought that which Moses commanded before The Tabernacle of the Congregation; and all the congregation drew near and stood before THE LORD.

And Moses said, "This is the thing which THE LORD commanded that ye should do, and the glory of THE LORD shall appear unto you."

And Moses said unto Aaron, "Go unto the Altar and offer thy sin offering and thy burnt offering, and make an atonement for thyself and for the people, and offer the offering of the people and make an atonement for them as THE LORD commanded."

Aaron therefore went unto the Altar and slew the calf of the sin offering which was for himself. And the sons of Aaron brought the blood unto him, and he dipped his finger in the blood and put it upon the horns of the Altar, and poured out the blood at the bottom of the Altar. But the fat, and the kidneys, and the caul above the liver of the sin offering, he burnt upon the Altar as THE LORD commanded Moses. And the flesh and the hide he burnt with fire without the camp. And he slew the burnt offering; and Aaron's sons presented unto him the blood, which he sprinkled round about upon the Altar. And they presented the burnt offering unto him, with the pieces thereof, and the head; and he burnt them upon the Altar. And he did wash the inwards and the legs, and burnt them upon the burnt offering on the Altar.

And he brought the people's offering, and took the goat, which was the sin offering for the people, and slew it, and offered it for sin, as the first. And he brought the burnt offering, and offered it according to the manner.

And he brought the meat offering, and took an handful thereof, and burnt it upon the Altar, beside the burnt sacrifice of the morning.

He slew also the bullock and the ram for a sacrifice of peace offerings, which was for the people. And Aaron's sons presented unto him the blood, which he sprinkled upon the altar round about, and the fat of the bullock and of the ram, the rump, and that which covereth the inwards, and the kidneys, and the caul above the liver. And they put the fat upon the breasts, and he burnt the fat upon the Altar; and the breasts and the right shoulder Aaron waved for a wave offering before THE LORD as Moses commanded.

And Aaron lifted up his hand toward the people and blessed them, and came down from offering of the sin offering and the burnt offering and peace offerings.

And Moses and Aaron went into The Tabernacle of the Congregation, and came out and blessed the people; and the glory of THE LORD appeared unto all the people.

And there came a fire out from before THE LORD and consumed upon the Altar the burnt offering and the fat, which, when all the people saw, they shouted and fell on their faces.

And Nadab and Abihu, the sons of Aaron, took either of them his censer, and put fire therein, and put incense thereon, and offered strange fire before THE LORD which he commanded them not.

And there went out fire from THE LORD and devoured them, and they died before THE LORD.

Then Moses said unto Aaron, "This is it <sup>1</sup>that THE LORD spake, saying, '*I will be sanctified in them that come nigh Me, and before all the people I will be glorified!*'" <sup>1</sup>that which

And Aaron held his peace.

And Moses called Mishael and Elzaphan (<sup>1</sup>the sons of Uzziel, the uncle of Aaron), and said unto them, "Come near, carry your brethren from before the sanctuary out of the camp." <sup>1</sup>i.e. first cousins of Aaron, Moses, and Miriam

So they went near and carried them in their coats out of the camp, as Moses had said.

And Moses said unto Aaron, and unto Eleazar and unto Ithamar, his sons, "Uncover not your heads, neither rend your clothes - lest ye die, and lest wrath come upon all the people! But let your brethren - the whole House of Israel - bewail the burning which THE LORD hath kindled. And ye shall not go out from the door of The Tabernacle of the Congregation, lest ye die; for the anointing oil of THE LORD is upon you!"

NOTE: It was a custom to uncover your head and rip a part of your clothes as a sign of mourning for a dead relative; but when God destroyed Nadab and Abihu with a blast of fire for their blasphemy, Moses forbade their brothers Mishael and Elzaphan from doing this custom because they stood in the rank and anointing of the high priesthood under their father Aaron and therefore could have nothing to do with the dead. Yet Moses comforts them in saying that their brothers will be mourned by all the people on their behalf.

And they did according to the word of Moses.

And THE LORD spake unto Aaron, saying, "Do not drink wine nor strong drink - thou, nor thy sons with thee - when ye go into The Tabernacle of the Congregation, lest ye die. It shall be a statute for ever throughout your generations; and that ye may put difference between holy and unholy, and between unclean and clean; and that ye may teach the Children of Israel all the statutes which THE LORD hath spoken unto them by the hand of Moses."

And Moses spake unto Aaron, and unto Eleazar and unto Ithamar (his sons that were left), "Take the meat offering that remaineth of the offerings of THE LORD made by fire, and eat it without leaven beside the Altar; for it is most holy. And ye shall eat it in the Holy Place, because it is thy due, and thy sons' due, of the sacrifices of THE LORD made by fire; for so I am commanded. And the wave breast and heave shoulder shall ye eat in a clean place - thou, and thy sons, and thy daughters with thee; for they be thy due, and thy sons' due, which are given out of the sacrifices of peace offerings of the Children of Israel. The heave shoulder and the wave breast shall they bring with the offerings made by fire of the fat, to wave it for a wave offering before THE LORD; and it shall be thine, and thy sons' with thee, by a statute for ever, as THE LORD hath commanded."

And Moses diligently sought the goat of the sin offering - and, behold, it was burnt! And he was angry with Eleazar and Ithamar, the sons of Aaron which were left alive, saying, "Wherefore have ye not eaten the sin offering in the Holy Place, seeing it is most holy, and God hath given it you to bear the iniquity of the congregation, to make atonement for them before THE LORD?! Behold, the blood of it was not brought in within the Holy Place! Ye should indeed have eaten it in the holy place as I commanded!"

And Aaron said unto Moses, "Behold, this day have they offered their sin offering and their burnt offering before THE LORD; and such things have befallen me! And if I had eaten the sin offering to day, should it have been accepted in the sight of THE LORD?"

And when Moses heard that, he was content.

And THE LORD spake unto Moses and to Aaron, saying unto them, "Speak unto the Children of Israel, saying: These are the beasts which ye shall eat among all the beasts that are on the earth:

- Whatsoever parteth the hoof AND is clovenfooted AND cheweth the cud among the beasts, that shall ye eat.

"Nevertheless these shall ye *not* eat of them that chew the cud, or of them that divide the hoof:

- As the camel, because he cheweth the cud but divideth not the hoof; he is unclean unto you.
- And the coney, because he cheweth the cud but divideth not the hoof; he is unclean unto you.
- And the hare, because he cheweth the cud but divideth not the hoof; he is unclean unto you.
- And the swine, though he divide the hoof and be clovenfooted, yet he cheweth not the cud; he is unclean to you.

Of their flesh shall ye not eat, and their carcase shall ye not touch; they are unclean to you.

"These shall ye eat of all that are in the waters:

- Whatsoever hath fins and scales in the waters, in the seas, and in the rivers, them shall ye eat.

And all that have *not* fins AND scales in the seas, and in the rivers, of all that move in the waters, and of any living thing which is in the waters, they shall be an abomination unto you. They shall be even an abomination unto you; ye shall not eat of their flesh, but ye shall have their carcases in abomination. Whatsoever hath no fins nor scales in the waters, that shall be an abomination unto you.

"And these are they which ye shall have in abomination among the fowls; they shall not be eaten, they are an abomination:

- the eagle,
- and the ossifrage,
- and the osprey,
- and the vulture,
- and the kite after his kind;

- every raven after his kind;
- and the owl,
- and the night hawk,
- and the cuckoo,
- and the hawk after his kind,
- and the little owl,
- and the cormorant,
- and the great owl,
- and the swan,
- and the pelican,
- and the gier eagle,
- and the stork,
- the heron after her kind,
- and the <sup>1</sup>lapwing,
- and the bat.
- All fowls that creep, going upon all four, shall be an abomination unto you.

<sup>1</sup>plover

“Yet, *these* may ye eat of every flying creeping thing that goeth upon all four, which have legs above their feet, to leap withal upon the earth... even these of them ye may eat;

- the locust after his kind,
- and the bald locust after his kind,
- and the beetle after his kind,
- and the grasshopper after his kind.

But all other flying creeping things, which have four feet, shall be an abomination unto you.

“And for these ye shall be unclean; whosoever toucheth the carcase of them shall be unclean until the even. And whosoever beareth ought of the carcase of them shall wash his clothes and be unclean until the even. The carcasses of every beast which divideth the hoof and is not clovenfooted nor cheweth the cud are unclean unto you; every one that toucheth them shall be unclean.

“And whatsoever goeth upon his paws, among all manner of beasts that go on all four, those are unclean unto you; whoso toucheth their carcase shall be unclean until the even. And he that beareth the carcase of them shall wash his clothes and be unclean until the even; they are unclean unto you. These also shall be unclean unto you among the creeping things that creep upon the earth:

- the weasel,
- and the mouse,
- and the tortoise after his kind,
- and the ferret,
- and the chameleon,
- and the lizard,
- and the <sup>1</sup>snail,
- and the mole.

<sup>1</sup>escargo

These are unclean to you among all that creep; whosoever doth touch them when they be dead shall be unclean until the even. And upon whatsoever any of them, when they are dead, doth fall, it shall be unclean - whether it be any vessel of wood, or raiment, or skin, or sack - whatsoever vessel it be wherein any work is done, it must be put into water, and it shall be unclean until the even; so it shall be cleansed. And every earthen vessel whereinto any of them falleth, whatsoever is in it shall be unclean; and ye shall break it.

“Of all meat which may be eaten - that on which such water cometh shall be unclean, and all drink that may be drunk in every such vessel shall be unclean. And every thing whereupon any part of their carcase falleth shall be unclean - whether it be oven or ranges for pots, they shall be broken down, for they are unclean and shall be unclean unto you. Nevertheless a fountain or pit wherein there is plenty of water shall be clean, but that which toucheth their carcase shall be unclean.

“And if any part of their carcase fall upon any sowing seed which is to be sown, it shall be clean. But if any water be put upon the seed and any part of their carcase fall thereon, it shall be unclean unto you.

“And if any beast, of which ye may eat, die; he that toucheth the carcase thereof shall be unclean until the even. And he that eateth of the carcase of it shall wash his clothes and be unclean until the even. He also that beareth the carcase of it shall wash his clothes and be unclean until the even.

“And every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth shall be an abomination; it shall not be eaten. Whatsoever goeth upon the belly, and whatsoever goeth upon all four, or whatsoever hath more feet among all creeping things that creep upon the earth, them ye shall not eat; for they are an abomination.

“Ye shall not make yourselves abominable with any creeping thing that creepeth, neither shall ye make yourselves unclean with them, that ye should be defiled thereby. For I am THE LORD your God; ye shall therefore sanctify yourselves and ye shall be holy - for I am holy. Neither shall ye defile yourselves with any manner of creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth. For I am THE LORD that bringeth you up out of the land of Egypt, to be your God; ye shall therefore be holy, for I am holy.

“This is the law of the beasts, and of the fowl, and of every living creature that moveth in the waters, and of every creature that creepeth upon the earth - to make a difference between the unclean and the clean, and between the beast that may be eaten and the beast that may not be eaten.”

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, “Speak unto the Children of Israel, saying:

“If a woman have conceived seed and born a man child, then she shall be unclean seven days; according to the days of the separation for her infirmity shall she be unclean. And in the eighth day the flesh of his foreskin shall be circumcised. And she shall then continue in the blood of her purifying three and thirty days; she shall touch no hallowed thing, nor come into the Sanctuary, until the days of her purifying be fulfilled.

“But if she bear a maid child, then she shall be unclean two weeks, as in her separation; and she shall continue in the blood of her purifying threescore and six days. And when the days of her purifying are fulfilled, for a son or for a daughter, she shall bring a lamb of the first year for a burnt offering and a young pigeon or a turtledove, for a sin offering, unto the door of The Tabernacle of the Congregation, unto the priest who shall offer it before THE LORD and make an atonement for her; and she shall be cleansed from the issue of her blood. This is the law for her that hath born a male or a female. And if she be not able to bring a lamb, then she shall bring *two* turtles or *two* young pigeons - the one for the burnt offering and the other for a sin offering - and the priest shall make an atonement for her, and she shall be clean.”

And THE LORD spake unto Moses and Aaron, saying, “When a man shall have in the skin of his flesh a rising, a scab, or bright spot, and it be in the skin of his flesh like the plague of leprosy, then he shall be brought unto Aaron the priest or unto one of his sons the priests. And the priest shall look on the plague in the skin of the flesh. And when the hair in the plague is turned white and the plague in sight be deeper than the skin of his flesh, it is a plague of leprosy; and the priest shall look on him and pronounce him unclean.

“If the bright spot be white in the skin of his flesh and in sight be not deeper than the skin and the hair thereof be not turned white, then the priest shall shut up him that hath the plague seven days. And the priest shall look on him the Seventh Day and, behold, if the plague in his sight be at a stay and the plague spread not in the skin then the priest shall shut him up seven days more. And the priest shall look on him again the Seventh Day and, behold, if the plague be somewhat dark and the plague spread not in the skin, the priest shall pronounce him clean. It is but a scab, and he shall wash his clothes and be clean.

“But if the scab spread much abroad in the skin after that he hath been seen of the priest for his cleansing, he shall be seen of the priest again. And if the priest see that, behold, the scab spreadeth in the skin, then the priest shall pronounce him unclean. It is a leprosy.

“When the plague of leprosy is in a man, then he shall be brought unto the priest; and the priest shall see him. And, behold, if the rising be white in the skin and it have turned the hair white and there be quick raw flesh in the rising; it is an old leprosy in the skin of his flesh, and the priest shall pronounce him unclean and shall not shut him up - for he is unclean.

“And if a leprosy break out abroad in the skin, and the leprosy cover all the skin of him that hath the plague from his head even to his foot wheresoever the priest looketh, then the priest shall consider; and, behold, if the leprosy have covered all his flesh, he shall pronounce him clean that hath the plague. It is all turned white; he is clean.

“But when *raw* flesh appeareth in him, he shall be unclean. And the priest shall see the raw flesh, and pronounce him to be unclean; for the raw flesh is unclean - it is a leprosy.

“Or if the raw flesh turn again and be changed unto white, he shall come unto the priest; and the priest shall see him. And, behold, if the plague be turned into white, then the priest shall pronounce him clean that hath the plague - he is clean.

“The flesh also in which, even in the skin thereof, was a boil, and is healed, and in the place of the boil there be a white rising, or a bright spot, white, and somewhat reddish, and it be showed to the priest; and if, when the priest seeth it, behold, it be in sight lower than the skin and the hair thereof be turned white, the priest shall pronounce him unclean - it is a plague of leprosy broken out of the boil.

“But if the priest look on it and, behold, there be no white hairs therein, and if it be not lower than the skin but be somewhat dark, then the priest shall shut him up seven days. And if it spread much abroad in the skin, then the priest shall pronounce him unclean - it is a plague.

“But if the bright spot stay in his place and spread not, it is a burning boil; and the priest shall pronounce him clean.

“Or if there be any flesh in the skin whereof there is a hot burning, and the quick flesh that burneth have a white bright spot, somewhat reddish or white, then the priest shall look upon it. And, behold, if the hair in the bright spot be turned white and it be in sight deeper than the skin, it is a leprosy broken out of the burning. Wherefore the priest shall pronounce him unclean - it is the plague of leprosy.

“But if the priest look on it, and, behold, there be no white hair in the bright spot and it be no lower than the other skin but be somewhat dark, then the priest shall shut him up seven days. And the priest shall look upon him the Seventh Day, and if it be spread much abroad in the skin, then the priest shall pronounce him unclean - it is the plague of leprosy.

“And if the bright spot stay in his place and spread not in the skin but it be somewhat dark, it is a rising of the burning, and the priest shall pronounce him clean - for it is an inflammation of the burning.

“If a man or woman have a plague upon the head or the beard, then the priest shall see the plague. And, behold, if it be in sight deeper than the skin and there be in it a yellow thin hair, then the priest shall pronounce him unclean - it is a dry scall, even a leprosy upon the head or beard.

“And if the priest look on the plague of the scall and, behold, it be not in sight deeper than the skin and that there is no black hair in it, then the priest shall shut up him that hath the plague of the scall seven days. And in the Seventh Day the priest shall look on the plague and, behold, if the scall spread not and there be in it no yellow hair and the scall be not in sight deeper than the skin, he shall be shaven, but the scall shall he not shave. And the priest shall shut up him that hath the scall seven days more. And in the Seventh Day the priest shall look on the scall. And, behold, if the scall be not spread in the skin, nor be in sight deeper than the skin, then the priest shall pronounce him clean - and he shall wash his clothes, and be clean.

“But if the scall spread much in the skin *after* his cleansing, then the priest shall look on him. And, behold, if the scall be spread in the skin, the priest shall not seek for yellow hair; he is unclean.

“But if the scall be in his sight at a stay and that there is black hair grown up therein, the scall is healed - he is clean and the priest shall pronounce him clean.

“If a man also or a woman have in the skin of their flesh bright spots, even white bright spots, then the priest shall look. And, behold, if the bright spots in the skin of their flesh be darkish white, it is a freckled spot that groweth in the skin - he is clean.

“And the man whose hair is fallen off his head, he is bald, yet is he clean. And he that hath his hair fallen off from the part of his head toward his face, he is forehead bald, yet is he clean.

“And if there be in the bald head or bald forehead a white reddish sore, it is a leprosy sprung up in his bald head or his bald forehead. Then the priest shall look upon it. And, behold, if the rising of the sore be white reddish in his bald head or in his bald forehead as the leprosy appeareth in the skin of the flesh, he is a leprous man, he is unclean. The priest shall pronounce him utterly unclean; his plague is in his head.

“And the leper in whom the plague is, his clothes shall be rent, and his head bare, and he shall put a covering upon his upper lip, and shall cry, “Unclean! Unclean!” All the days wherein the plague shall be in him he shall be defiled; he is unclean. He shall dwell alone; without the camp shall his habitation be.

“The garment also that the plague of leprosy is in - whether it be a woollen garment or a linen garment, whether it be in the warp or woof of linen or of woolen, whether in a skin or in any thing made of skin. And if the plague be greenish or reddish in the garment or in the skin, either in the warp or in the woof or in any thing of skin, it is a plague of leprosy and shall be showed unto the priest. And the priest shall look upon the plague and shut up it that hath the plague seven days. And he shall look on the plague on the Seventh Day. If the plague be spread in the garment, either in the warp or in the woof or in a skin or in any work that is made of skin, the plague is a fretting leprosy; it is unclean.

“He shall therefore burn that garment, whether warp or woof, in woollen or in linen, or any thing of skin, wherein the plague is; for it is a fretting leprosy. It shall be burnt in the fire.

“And if the priest shall look and, behold, the plague be not spread in the garment, either in the warp or in the woof or in any thing of skin, then the priest shall command that they wash the thing wherein the plague is and he shall shut it up seven days more. And the priest shall look on the plague after that it is washed. And, behold, if the plague have not changed his colour and the plague be not spread, it is unclean. Thou shalt burn it in the fire; it is fret inward, whether it be bare within or without.

“And if the priest look and, behold, the plague be somewhat dark after the washing of it, then he shall rend it out of the garment or out of the skin or out of the warp or out of the woof. And if it appear still in the garment, either in the warp or in the woof or in any thing of skin, it is a spreading plague. Thou shalt burn that wherein the plague is with fire.

“And the garment, either warp or woof or whatsoever thing of skin it be which thou shalt wash, if the plague be departed from them, then it shall be washed the second time and shall be clean.

“This is the law of the plague of leprosy in a garment of woollen or linen - either in the warp or woof or any thing of skins - to pronounce it clean or to pronounce it unclean.”

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, “This shall be the law of the leper in the day of his cleansing. He shall be brought unto the priest, and the priest shall go forth out of the camp; and the priest shall look, and, behold, if the plague of leprosy be healed in the leper, then shall the priest command to take for him that is to be cleansed two birds alive and clean, and cedar wood, and scarlet, and hyssop. And the priest shall command that one of the birds be killed in an earthen vessel over running water. As for the living bird, he shall take it, and the cedar wood, and the scarlet, and the hyssop, and shall dip them and the living bird in the blood of the bird that was killed over the running water. And he shall sprinkle upon him that is to be cleansed from the leprosy seven times, and shall pronounce him clean, and shall let the living bird loose into the open field.

“And he that is to be cleansed shall wash his clothes and shave off all his hair and wash himself in water, that he may be clean. And after that he shall come into the camp and shall tarry abroad out of his tent seven days. But it shall be on the Seventh Day that he shall shave all his hair off his head and his beard and his eyebrows - even all his hair he shall shave off. And he shall wash his clothes; also he shall wash his flesh in water, and he shall be clean. And the priest that maketh him clean shall present the man that is to be made clean, and those things, before THE LORD at the door of The Tabernacle of the Congregation. And the priest shall take one he-lamb and offer him for a trespass offering, and the log of oil, and wave them for a wave offering before THE LORD.

“And he shall slay the lamb in the place where he shall kill the sin offering and the burnt offering, in the Holy Place. For, as the sin offering is the priest's, so is the trespass offering. It is most holy. And the priest shall take some of the blood of the trespass offering, and the priest shall put it upon the tip of the right ear of him that is to be cleansed, and upon the thumb of his right hand, and upon the great toe of his right foot. And the priest shall take some of the log of oil and pour it into the palm of his own left hand. And the priest shall dip his right finger in the oil that is in his left hand and shall sprinkle of the oil with his finger seven times before THE LORD. And of the rest of the oil that is in his hand shall the priest put upon the tip of the right ear of him that is to be cleansed, and upon the thumb of his right hand, and upon the great toe of his right foot, upon the blood of the trespass offering. And the remnant of the oil that is in the priest's hand

he shall pour upon the head of him that is to be cleansed. And the priest shall make an atonement for him before THE LORD.

“And the priest shall offer the sin offering and make an atonement for him that is to be cleansed from his uncleanness; and afterward he shall kill the burnt offering. And the priest shall offer the burnt offering and the meat offering upon the Altar, and the priest shall make an atonement for him, and he shall be clean.

“And if he be poor and cannot get so much, then he shall take one lamb for a trespass offering to be waved, to make an atonement for him, and one tenth deal of fine flour mingled with oil for a meat offering, and a log of oil, and two turtledoves or two young pigeons, such as he is able to get; and the one shall be a sin offering and the other a burnt offering. And he shall bring them on the eighth day for his cleansing unto the priest, unto the door of The Tabernacle of the Congregation before THE LORD. And the priest shall take the lamb of the trespass offering and the log of oil, and the priest shall wave them for a wave offering before THE LORD. And he shall kill the lamb of the trespass offering, and the priest shall take some of the blood of the trespass offering and put it upon the tip of the right ear of him that is to be cleansed, and upon the thumb of his right hand, and upon the great toe of his right foot. And the priest shall pour of the oil into the palm of his own left hand. And the priest shall sprinkle with his right finger some of the oil that is in his left hand seven times before THE LORD. And the priest shall put of the oil that is in his hand upon the tip of the right ear of him that is to be cleansed, and upon the thumb of his right hand, and upon the great toe of his right foot, upon the place of the blood of the trespass offering. And the rest of the oil that is in the priest's hand he shall put upon the head of him that is to be cleansed, to make an atonement for him before THE LORD.

“And he shall offer the one of the turtledoves or of the young pigeons, such as he can get; even such as he is able to get, the one for a sin offering and the other for a burnt offering, with the meat offering. And the priest shall make an atonement for him that is to be cleansed before THE LORD.

“This is the law of him in whom is the plague of leprosy, whose hand is not able to get that which pertaineth to his cleansing.”

And THE LORD spake unto Moses and unto Aaron, saying, “When ye be come into the land of Canaan which I give to you for a possession, and I put the plague of leprosy in a house of the land of your possession; and he that owneth the house shall come and tell the priest, saying, *‘It seemeth to me there is as it were a plague in the house’*, then the priest shall command that they empty the house before the priest go into it to see the plague, that all that is in the house be not made unclean. And afterward the priest shall go in to see the house. And he shall look on the plague and, behold, if the plague be in the walls of the house with hollow streaks, <sup>1</sup>greenish or reddish, which in sight are lower than the wall, then the priest shall go out of the house to the door of the house and shut up the house seven days: <sup>1</sup>possibly mold/mildew

“And the priest shall come again the Seventh Day and shall look. And, behold, if the plague be spread in the walls of the house, then the priest shall command that they take away the stones in which the plague is, and they shall cast them into an unclean place without the city. And he shall cause the house to be scraped within round about, and they shall pour out the dust that they scrape off without the city into an unclean place. And they shall take other stones and put them in the place of those stones; and he shall take other mortar and shall plaster the house.

“And if the plague come again and break out in the house after that he hath taken away the stones and after he hath scraped the house and after it is plastered, then the priest shall come and look. And, behold, if the plague be spread in the house, it is a fretting leprosy in the house - it is unclean. And he shall break down the house, the stones of it, and the timber thereof, and all the mortar of the house; and he shall carry them forth out of the city into an unclean place.

“Moreover he that goeth into the house all the while that it is shut up shall be unclean until the even. And he that lieth in the house shall wash his clothes; and he that eateth in the house shall wash his clothes.

“And if the priest shall come in and look upon it and, behold, the plague hath not spread in the house after the house was plastered, then the priest shall pronounce the house clean because the plague is healed.

“And he shall take to cleanse the house two birds, and cedar wood, and scarlet, and hyssop. And he shall kill the one of the birds in an earthen vessel over running water. And he shall take the cedar wood, and the hyssop, and the scarlet, and the living bird, and dip them in the blood of the slain bird and in the running water, and sprinkle the house seven times. And he shall cleanse the house with the blood of the bird, and with the running water, and with the living bird, and with the cedar wood, and with the hyssop, and with the scarlet. But he shall let go the living bird out of the city into the open fields, and make an atonement for the house - and it shall be clean.

“This is the law for all manner of plague of leprosy, and <sup>1</sup>scall, and for the leprosy of a garment, and of a house, and for a rising, and for a scab, and for a bright spot, to teach when it is unclean and when it is clean. This is the law of leprosy.”

*<sup>1</sup>a scaly eruption of the skin or scalp*

And THE LORD spake unto Moses and to Aaron, saying, “Speak unto the Children of Israel and say unto them: When any man hath a running <sup>1</sup>issue out of his flesh, because of his issue he is unclean. And this shall be his uncleanness in his issue; whether his flesh run with his issue or his flesh be stopped from his issue, it is his uncleanness.

*<sup>1</sup>ooze (as from a wound or venereal or other disease, or menstruation)*

“Every bed, whereon he lieth that hath the issue, is unclean; and every thing, whereon he sitteth, shall be unclean. And whosoever toucheth his bed shall wash his clothes, and bathe himself in water, and be unclean until the even. And he that sitteth on any thing whereon he sat that hath the issue shall wash his clothes, and bathe himself in water, and be unclean until the even.

“And he that toucheth the flesh of him that hath the issue shall wash his clothes, and bathe himself in water, and be unclean until the even.

“And if he-that-hath-the-issue spit upon him that is clean, then he shall wash his clothes, and bathe himself in water, and be unclean until the even.

“And what saddle soever he rideth upon that hath the issue shall be unclean.

“And whosoever toucheth any thing that was under him shall be unclean until the even. And he that beareth any of those things shall wash his clothes, and bathe himself in water, and be unclean until the even.

“And whomsoever he toucheth that hath the issue and hath not rinsed his hands in water, he shall wash his clothes, and bathe himself in water, and be unclean until the even.

“And the vessel of earth that he toucheth which hath the issue shall be broken; and every vessel of wood shall be rinsed in water.

“And when he-that-hath-an-issue is cleansed of his issue, then he shall number to himself seven days for his cleansing, and wash his clothes, and bathe his flesh in running water, and shall be clean.

“And on the eighth day he shall take to him two turtledoves or two young pigeons and come before THE LORD unto the door of The Tabernacle of the congregation, and give them unto the priest. And the priest shall offer them - the one for a sin offering and the other for a burnt offering - and the priest shall make an atonement for him before THE LORD for his issue.

“And if any man's <sup>1</sup>seed of copulation go out from him, then he shall wash all his flesh in water and be unclean until the even. And every garment and every skin whereon is the seed of copulation shall be washed with water, and be unclean until the even.

*<sup>1</sup>sperm/semen*

“The woman also with whom man shall lie with seed of copulation, they shall both bathe themselves in water and be unclean until the even.”

“And if a woman have an issue, and her issue in her flesh be blood, she shall be put apart seven days. And whosoever toucheth her shall be unclean until the even. And every thing that she lieth upon in her separation shall be unclean. Every thing also that she sitteth upon shall be unclean. And whosoever toucheth her bed shall wash his clothes, and bathe himself in water, and be unclean until the even. And whosoever toucheth any thing that she sat upon shall wash his clothes, and bathe himself in water, and be unclean until the even. And if it be on her bed or on any thing whereon she sitteth when he toucheth it, he shall be unclean until the even.

“And if any man lie with her at all and her flowers be upon him, he shall be unclean seven days; and all the bed whereon he lieth shall be unclean.

“And if a woman have an issue of her blood many days out of the time of her separation, or if it run beyond the time of her separation, all the days of the issue of her uncleanness shall be as the days of her separation - she shall be unclean. Every bed whereon she lieth all the days of her issue shall be unto her as the bed of her separation. And whatsoever she sitteth upon shall be unclean as the uncleanness of her separation. And whosoever toucheth those things shall be unclean and shall wash his clothes, and bathe himself in water, and be unclean until the even.

“But if she be cleansed of her issue, then she shall number to herself seven days, and after that she shall be clean. And on the eighth day she shall take unto her two turtles or two young pigeons and bring them unto the priest, to the door of The Tabernacle of the Congregation. And the priest shall offer the one for a sin offering and the other for a burnt offering; and the priest shall make an atonement for her before THE LORD for the issue of her uncleanness.

“Thus shall ye separate the Children of Israel from their uncleanness, that they die not in their uncleanness when they defile My Tabernacle that is among them. This is the law of him that hath an issue and of him whose seed goeth from him and is defiled therewith; and of her that is sick of her flowers, and of him that hath an issue, of the man and of the woman and of him that lieth with her that is unclean.”

And THE LORD spake unto Moses after the death of the two sons of Aaron (when they offered before THE LORD and died). And THE LORD said unto Moses, “Speak unto Aaron thy brother that he come not <sup>1</sup>at all times into The Holy Place within the veil before the Mercy Seat which is upon the Ark, that he die not. For I will appear in the cloud upon the Mercy Seat. <sup>2</sup>Thus shall Aaron come into the Holy Place: with a young bullock for a sin offering, and a ram for a burnt offering. He shall put on the holy linen coat, and he shall have the linen breeches upon his flesh, and shall be girded with a linen girdle, and with the linen mitre shall he be attired. These are holy garments; therefore shall he wash his flesh in water, and so put them on. And he shall take of the congregation of the Children of Israel two kids of the goats for a sin offering, and one ram for a burnt offering. And Aaron shall offer his bullock of the sin offering, which is for himself, and make an atonement for himself and for his house. And he shall take the two goats and present them before THE LORD at the door of The Tabernacle of the Congregation. *<sup>1</sup>at just any time he wants to <sup>2</sup>in this manner*

“And Aaron shall cast lots upon the two goats; one lot for THE LORD and the other lot for the scapegoat. And Aaron shall bring the goat (upon which THE LORD'S lot fell) and offer him for a sin offering. But the goat on which the lot fell to be the scapegoat shall be presented alive before THE LORD, to make an atonement with him, and to let him go for a scapegoat into the wilderness.

“And Aaron shall bring the bullock of the sin offering, which is for himself, and shall make an atonement for himself and for his house, and shall kill the bullock of the sin offering which is for himself. And he shall take a censer full of burning coals of fire from off the Altar before THE LORD, and his hands full of sweet incense beaten small, and bring it within the veil. And he shall put the incense upon the fire before THE LORD, that the cloud of the incense may cover the Mercy Seat that is upon the testimony, that he die not. And he shall take of the blood of the bullock and sprinkle it with his finger upon the Mercy Seat eastward; and before the Mercy Seat shall he sprinkle of the blood with his finger seven times.

“Then shall he kill the goat of the sin offering that is for the people, and bring his blood within the veil and do with that blood as he did with the blood of the bullock, and sprinkle it upon the Mercy Seat and before the Mercy Seat. And he shall make an atonement for the Holy Place because of the uncleanness of the Children of Israel and because of their transgressions in all their sins. And so shall he do for The Tabernacle of the Congregation that remaineth among them in the midst of their uncleanness.

“And there shall be no man in The Tabernacle of the Congregation when he goeth in to make an atonement in the Holy Place, until he come out and have made an atonement for himself and for his household and for all the congregation of Israel.

“And he shall go out unto the Altar that is before THE LORD and make an atonement for it and shall take of the blood of the bullock, and of the blood of the goat, and put it upon the horns of the Altar round about.

“And he shall sprinkle of the blood upon it with his finger seven times, and cleanse it, and hallow it from the uncleanness of the Children of Israel.

“And when he hath made an end of reconciling the Holy Place and The Tabernacle of the Congregation and the Altar, he shall bring the live goat. And Aaron shall lay both his hands upon the head of the live goat and confess over him all the iniquities of the Children of Israel and all their transgressions in all their sins, putting them upon the head of the goat, and shall send him away by the hand of a fit man into the wilderness. And the goat shall bear upon him all their iniquities unto a land not inhabited, and he shall let go the goat in the wilderness.

“And Aaron shall come into The Tabernacle of the Congregation and shall put off the linen garments (which he put on when he went into the Holy Place) and shall leave them there; and he shall wash his flesh with water in the Holy Place and put on his garments and come forth and offer his burnt offering and the burnt offering of the people, and make an atonement for himself and for the people. And the fat of the sin offering shall he burn upon the Altar.

“And he that let go the goat for the scapegoat shall wash his clothes, and bathe his flesh in water, and afterward come into the camp.

“And the bullock for the sin offering and the goat for the sin offering, whose blood was brought in to make atonement in the Holy Place, shall one carry forth without the camp; and they shall burn in the fire their skins, and their flesh, and their dung.

“And he that burneth them shall wash his clothes, and bathe his flesh in water, and afterward he shall come into the camp.

“And this shall be a statute for ever unto you: that in the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month, ye shall afflict your souls and do no work at all - whether it be one of your own country or a stranger that sojourneth among you. For, on that day shall the priest make an atonement for you, to cleanse you, that ye may be clean from all your sins before THE LORD. It shall be a Sabbath of rest unto you, and ye shall afflict your souls, by a statute for ever. And the priest, whom he shall anoint and whom he shall consecrate to minister in the priest's office in his father's stead, shall make the atonement and shall put on the linen clothes, even the holy garments. And he shall make an atonement for the Holy Sanctuary, and he shall make an atonement for The Tabernacle of the Congregation, and for the Altar, and he shall make an atonement for the priests, and for all the people of the congregation. And this shall be an everlasting statute unto you, to make an atonement for the Children of Israel for all their sins once a year.” <sup>1</sup>Note: *this is Yom Kippur*

And he did as THE LORD commanded Moses. And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, “Speak unto Aaron and unto his sons and unto all the Children of Israel, and say unto them:

“This is the thing which THE LORD hath commanded, saying: What man soever there be of the House of Israel that killeth an ox or lamb or goat in the camp, or that killeth it out of the camp, and bringeth it not unto the door of The Tabernacle of the Congregation to offer an offering unto THE LORD before The Tabernacle of THE LORD, blood shall be imputed unto that man! He hath shed blood! And that man shall be cut off from among his people, to the end that the Children of Israel may bring their sacrifices which they offer in the open field - even *that* they may bring them unto THE LORD, unto the door of The Tabernacle of the Congregation, unto the priest, and offer them for peace offerings unto THE LORD.

“And the priest shall sprinkle the blood upon the Altar of THE LORD at the door of The Tabernacle of the Congregation, and burn the fat for a sweet savour unto THE LORD. And they shall no more offer their sacrifices unto devils, after whom they have gone a whoring. This shall be a statute for ever unto them throughout their generations.

“And thou shalt say unto them: Whatsoever man there be - of the House of Israel or of the strangers which sojourn among you - that offereth a burnt offering or sacrifice, and bringeth it not unto the door of The Tabernacle of the Congregation, to offer it unto THE LORD; even that man shall be cut off from among his people.

“And whatsoever man there be - of the House of Israel or of the strangers that sojourn among you - that eateth any manner of blood, I will even set My face against that soul that eateth blood and will cut him off from among his people. For the life of the flesh is in the blood and I have given it to you upon the Altar to make an atonement for your souls; for it is the blood that maketh an atonement for the soul (therefore I said unto the Children of Israel, ‘*No soul of you shall eat blood, neither shall any stranger that sojourneth among you eat blood.*’)

“And whatsoever man there be - of the Children of Israel or of the strangers that sojourn among you - which hunteth and catcheth any beast or fowl that may be eaten, he shall even pour out the blood thereof and cover it with dust - for it is the life of all flesh. The blood of it is for the life thereof (therefore I said unto the Children of Israel, *‘Ye shall eat the blood of no manner of flesh, for the life of all flesh is the blood thereof; whosoever eateth it shall be cut off’*).

“And every soul that eateth that which died of itself or that which was torn with beasts - whether it be one of your own country or a stranger - he shall both wash his clothes, and bathe himself in water, and be unclean until the even; then shall he be clean. But if he wash them not, nor bathe his flesh, then he shall bear his iniquity.”

And <sup>1</sup>THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, “Speak unto the Children of Israel and say unto them:

“I am <sup>1</sup>THE LORD your God. After the doings of the land of Egypt, wherein ye dwelt, shall ye not do; and after the doings of the land of Canaan, whither I bring you, shall ye not do. Neither shall ye walk in their ordinances. Ye shall do *My* judgments and keep *Mine* ordinances to walk therein. I am <sup>1</sup>THE LORD your God! Ye shall therefore keep My statutes and My judgments which, if a man do, he shall live in them. I am <sup>1</sup>THE LORD!  
*<sup>1</sup>Yahweh (Jehovah)*

- None of you shall approach to any that is near of kin to him, to uncover their nakedness - I am THE LORD!
- The nakedness of thy father or the nakedness of thy mother shalt thou not uncover - she is thy mother; thou shalt not uncover her nakedness.
- The nakedness of thy father's wife shalt thou not uncover - it is thy father's nakedness.
- The nakedness of thy sister (the daughter of thy father or daughter of thy mother) whether she be born at home or born abroad - even their nakedness thou shalt not uncover.
- The nakedness of thy son's daughter or of thy daughter's daughter, even their nakedness thou shalt not uncover - for theirs is thine own nakedness.
- The nakedness of thy father's wife's daughter begotten of thy father - she is thy sister, thou shalt not uncover her nakedness.
- Thou shalt not uncover the nakedness of thy father's sister - she is thy father's near kinswoman.
- Thou shalt not uncover the nakedness of thy mother's sister - for she is thy mother's near kinswoman.
- Thou shalt not uncover the nakedness of thy father's brother, thou shalt not approach to his wife (she is thine aunt).
- Thou shalt not uncover the nakedness of thy daughter-in-law - she is thy son's wife; thou shalt not uncover her nakedness.
- Thou shalt not uncover the nakedness of thy brother's wife - it is thy brother's nakedness.
- Thou shalt not uncover the nakedness of a woman AND her daughter, neither shalt thou take her son's daughter or her daughter's daughter, to uncover her nakedness - for they are her near kinswomen; it is wickedness.
- Neither shalt thou take a wife to her sister, to vex her, to uncover her nakedness, beside the other in her life time.
- Also thou shalt not approach unto a woman to uncover her nakedness as long as she <sup>1</sup>is put apart for her uncleanness. *<sup>1</sup>is in menstration*
- Moreover thou shalt not lie carnally with thy neighbour's wife, to defile thyself with her.
- And thou shalt not <sup>1</sup>let any of thy seed pass through the fire to Molech, neither shalt thou profane the name of thy God - I am THE LORD! *<sup>1</sup>sacrifice your child in fire to a god*
- Thou shalt not lie with mankind, <sup>1</sup>as with womankind; it is abomination. *<sup>1</sup>you cannot lie with females AND males (a person that lies with a female cannot lie with a male)*
- Neither shalt thou lie with any beast to defile thyself therewith, neither shall any woman stand before a beast to lie down thereto - it is confusion.

“Defile not ye yourselves in any of these things; for, in all these the nations are defiled which I cast out before you, and the land is defiled. Therefore I do visit the iniquity thereof upon it, and the land itself vomiteth out her inhabitants.

“Ye shall therefore keep My statutes and My judgments and shall not commit any of these abominations - neither any of your own nation nor any stranger that sojourneth among you (for all these abominations have the men of the land done which were before you, and the land is defiled) - that the land spue not you out also when ye defile it as it spued out the nations that were before you.

“For whosoever shall commit any of these abominations, even the souls that commit them shall be cut off from among their people. Therefore shall ye keep Mine ordinance, that ye commit not any one of these abominable customs which were committed before you, and that ye defile not yourselves therein I am THE LORD your God!”

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, “Speak unto all the congregation of the Children of Israel, and say unto them: Ye shall be holy, for I THE LORD your God am holy:

- Ye shall <sup>1</sup>fear every man his mother and his father. *<sup>1</sup>respect, to the point of fearing to displease*
- And keep My Sabbaths - I am THE LORD your God!
- Turn ye not unto idols, nor make to yourselves molten gods - I am THE LORD your God!
- And if ye offer a sacrifice of peace offerings unto THE LORD, ye shall offer it at your own will. It shall be eaten the same day ye offer it, and on the morrow. And if ought remain until the third day, it shall be burnt in the fire. And if it be eaten at all on the third day, it is abominable; it shall not be accepted. Therefore every one that eateth it shall bear his iniquity, because he hath profaned the hallowed thing of THE LORD; and that soul shall be cut off from among his people.
- And when ye reap the harvest of your land thou shalt not wholly reap the corners of thy field, neither shalt thou gather the gleanings of thy harvest, and thou shalt not glean thy vineyard, neither shalt thou gather every grape of thy vineyard. Thou shalt leave them for the poor and stranger - I am THE LORD your God!
- Ye shall not steal,
- neither deal falsely,
- neither lie one to another.
- And ye shall not swear by My name falsely,
- neither shalt thou profane the name of thy God - I am THE LORD!
- Thou shalt not defraud thy neighbour,
- neither rob him.
- The <sup>1</sup>wages of him that is hired shall not abide with thee all night until the morning. *<sup>1</sup>wages are to be paid on the day work is done, not when the employer feels like paying it*
- Thou shalt not curse the deaf,
- nor put a stumblingblock before the blind,
- but shalt fear thy God - I am THE LORD!
- Ye shall do no unrighteousness in judgment; thou shalt not respect the person of the poor, nor honour the person of the mighty - but *in righteousness* shalt thou judge thy neighbour.
- Thou shalt not go up and down as a talebearer among thy people.
- Neither shalt thou stand against the blood of thy neighbour - I am THE LORD!
- Thou shalt not hate thy brother in thine heart; thou shalt in <sup>1</sup>any wise rebuke thy neighbour and not <sup>2</sup>suffer sin upon him. *<sup>1</sup>any way possible <sup>2</sup>allow/permit*
- Thou shalt not avenge, nor bear any grudge against the children of thy people,
- but thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself - I am THE LORD!
- Ye shall keep My statutes.
- Thou shalt not let thy cattle <sup>1</sup>gender with a diverse kind. *<sup>1</sup>mate*
- Thou shalt not sow thy field with mingled seed.
- Neither shall a garment mingled of linen and woollen come upon thee.

- And whosoever lieth carnally with a woman that is a bondmaid betrothed to an husband and not at all redeemed nor freedom given her, she shall be scourged. They shall not be put to death because she was not free. And he shall bring his trespass offering unto THE LORD, unto the door of The Tabernacle of the Congregation, even a ram for a trespass offering. And the priest shall make an atonement for him with the ram of the trespass offering before THE LORD for his sin which he hath done. And the sin which he hath done shall be forgiven him.
- And when ye shall come into the land and shall have planted all manner of trees for food, then ye shall count the fruit thereof as uncircumcised. Three years shall it be as uncircumcised unto you: it shall not be eaten of. But in the fourth year all the fruit thereof shall be holy to praise THE LORD withal. And in the fifth year shall ye eat of the fruit thereof, that it may yield unto you the increase thereof - I am THE LORD your God.
- Ye shall not eat any thing with the blood.
- Neither shall ye use enchantment nor <sup>1</sup>observe times. *<sup>1</sup>practice sorcery/horoscope*
- Ye shall not round the corners of your heads,
- neither shalt thou mar the corners of thy beard.
- Ye shall not make any cuttings in your flesh for the dead,
- nor <sup>1</sup>print any marks upon you - I am THE LORD! *<sup>1</sup>write/draw/tattoo*
- Do not prostitute thy daughter to cause her to be a whore, lest the land fall to whoredom and the land become full of wickedness.
- Ye shall keep My Sabbaths,
- and reverence My Sanctuary - I am THE LORD!
- Regard not them <sup>1</sup>that have familiar spirits, neither seek after wizards, to be defiled by them - I am THE LORD your God. *<sup>1</sup>who are mediums/necromancers/claims to commune with the dead or with a spirit*
- Thou shalt rise up before the <sup>1</sup>hoary head and honour the face of the old man and fear thy God - I am THE LORD. *<sup>1</sup>"white haired"/the elderly*
- And if a stranger sojourn with thee in your land, ye shall not vex him.
- But the stranger that dwelleth with you shall be unto you as one born among you, and thou shalt love him as thyself; for ye were strangers in the land of Egypt. I am THE LORD your God!
- Ye shall do no unrighteousness in judgment, in meteyard, in weight, or in measure. Just balances, just weights, a just ephah, and a just hin, shall ye have - I am THE LORD your God, which brought you out of the land of Egypt!

Therefore shall ye observe all my statutes, and all my judgments, and do them - I am THE LORD!"

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, "Again, thou shalt say to the Children of Israel:

- Whosoever he be - of the Children of Israel or of the strangers that sojourn in Israel - that <sup>1</sup>giveth any of his seed unto Molech, he shall surely be put to death; the people of the land shall stone him with stones. And I will set My face against that man and will cut him off from among his people, because he hath given of his seed unto Molech to defile My Sanctuary and to profane My holy name. And if the people of the land do any ways hide their eyes from the man when he giveth of his seed unto Molech and kill him not, then I will set My face against that man and against his family and will cut him off, and all that go a whoring after him, to commit whoredom with Molech, from among their people. *<sup>1</sup>sacrifices your child to the god Molech*
- And the soul that turneth after such as have familiar spirits, and after wizards, to go a whoring after them, I will even set My face against that soul and will cut him off from among his people.
- Sanctify yourselves, therefore, and be ye holy; for I am THE LORD your God! And ye shall keep My statutes and do them; I am THE LORD which sanctify you.
- For every one that curseth his father or his mother shall be surely put to death; he hath cursed his father or his mother, his blood shall be upon him.
- And the man that committeth adultery with another man's wife, even he that committeth adultery with his neighbour's wife - the adulterer and the adulteress shall surely be put to death.

- And the man that lieth with his father's wife hath uncovered his father's nakedness; both of them shall surely be put to death, their blood shall be upon them.
- And if a man lie with his daughter-in-law, both of them shall surely be put to death. They have wrought confusion; their blood shall be upon them.
- If <sup>1</sup>a man <sup>2</sup>also lie with mankind, as <sup>3</sup>he lieth with a woman, both of them have committed an abomination; they shall surely be put to death, their blood shall be upon them.

*NOTE: literally, it is an abomination for a man that lies with a woman to also lie with a man. <sup>1</sup>a man that "lieth with a woman"/a heterosexual man <sup>2</sup>too/in addition to/additionally <sup>3</sup>that heterosexual man*

- And if a man take a wife *and* her mother, it is wickedness; they shall be burnt with fire - both he *and* they - that there be no wickedness among you.
- And if a man lie with a beast, he shall surely be put to death - *and* ye shall slay the beast.
- And if a woman approach unto any beast and lie down thereto, thou shalt kill the woman *and* the beast - they shall surely be put to death; their blood shall be upon them.
- And if a man shall take his sister - his father's daughter or his mother's daughter - and see her nakedness and she see his nakedness, it is a wicked thing and they shall be cut off in the sight of their people. He hath uncovered his sister's nakedness; he shall bear his iniquity.
- And if a man shall lie with a woman having her <sup>1</sup>sickness and shall uncover her nakedness, he hath discovered her fountain and she hath uncovered the fountain of her blood, and both of them shall be cut off from among their people. *<sup>1</sup>menstrual cycle*
- And thou shalt not uncover the nakedness of thy mother's sister, nor of thy father's sister; for he uncovereth his near kin. They shall bear their iniquity.
- And if a man shall lie with his uncle's wife, he hath uncovered his uncle's nakedness; they shall bear their sin. They shall die childless.
- And if a man shall take his brother's wife, it is an unclean thing; he hath uncovered his brother's nakedness. They shall be childless.
- Ye shall therefore keep all My statutes and all My judgments and do them, that the land whither I bring you to dwell therein spue you not out. And ye shall not walk in the manners of the nation which I cast out before you; for they committed all these things and therefore I abhorred them. But I have said unto you, '*Ye shall inherit their land, and I will give it unto you to possess it, a land that floweth with milk and honey*'.
- I am THE LORD your God, which have separated you from other people. Ye shall therefore put difference between clean beasts and unclean, and between unclean fowls and clean. And ye shall not make your souls abominable by beast, or by fowl, or by any manner of living thing that creepeth on the ground, which I have separated from you as unclean. And ye shall be holy unto Me, for I THE LORD am holy and have severed you from other people that ye should be Mine.
- A man also or woman that hath a familiar spirit or that is a wizard shall surely be put to death; they shall stone them with stones. Their blood shall be upon them."

And THE LORD said unto Moses, "Speak unto the priests the sons of Aaron and say unto them:

"There shall none <sup>1</sup>be defiled for the dead among his people but for his kin that is near unto him - that is, for his mother, and for his father, and for his son, and for his daughter, and for his brother, and for his sister a virgin that is nigh unto him which hath had no husband (for her may he be defiled). But he shall not defile himself, being a chief man among his people, to profane himself. *<sup>1</sup>come near to a dead person*

"They shall not make baldness upon their head, neither shall they shave off the corner of their beard, nor make any cuttings in their flesh.

"They shall be holy unto their God, and not profane the name of their God for the offerings of THE LORD made by fire, and the bread of their God, they do offer; therefore they shall be holy.

"They shall not take a wife that is a whore or profane; neither shall they take a woman <sup>1</sup>put away from her husband, for he is holy unto his God. *<sup>1</sup>divorced by*

"Thou shalt sanctify him therefore; for he offereth the bread of thy God. He shall be holy unto thee, for I THE LORD, which sanctify you, am holy.

“And the daughter of any priest, if she profane herself by playing the whore, she profaneth her father; she shall be burnt with fire.

“And he that is the High Priest among his brethren, upon whose head the anointing oil was poured and that is consecrated to put on the garments, shall not uncover his head nor rend his clothes; neither shall he go in to any dead body, nor defile himself for his father, or for his mother; neither shall he go out of the Sanctuary, nor profane the Sanctuary of his God; for the crown of the anointing oil of his God is upon him: I am THE LORD.

“And he shall take a wife in her virginity. A widow, or a divorced woman, or profane, or an harlot, these shall he not take. But he shall take a virgin of his own people to wife. Neither shall he profane his seed among his people; for I THE LORD do sanctify him.”

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, “Speak unto Aaron, saying: Whosoever he be of thy seed in their generations that hath any blemish, let him not approach to offer the bread of his God. For whatsoever man he be that hath a blemish, he shall not approach - a blind man, or a lame, or he that hath a flat nose or any thing superfluous, or a man that is brokenfooted, or brokenhanded, or crookbacked, or a dwarf, or that hath a blemish in his eye, or be scurvy, or scabbed, or hath his <sup>1</sup>stones broken - no man that hath a blemish of the seed of Aaron the priest shall come nigh to offer the offerings of THE LORD made by fire. He hath a blemish. He shall not come nigh to offer the bread of his God. He shall *eat* the bread of his God, both of the most holy, and of the holy; only, he shall not go in unto the veil, nor come nigh unto the Altar, because he hath a blemish, that he profane not My sanctuaries: for I THE LORD do sanctify them.” *<sup>1</sup>testicles*

And Moses told it unto Aaron, and to his sons, and unto all the Children of Israel. And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, “Speak unto Aaron and to his sons, that they separate themselves from the holy things of the Children of Israel, and that they profane not My holy name in those things which they hallow unto Me: I am THE LORD.

“Say unto them: Whosoever he be of all your seed among your generations that goeth unto the holy things which the Children of Israel hallow unto THE LORD, having his uncleanness upon him, that soul shall be cut off from my presence: I am THE LORD. What man soever of the seed of Aaron is a leper or hath a running issue, he shall not eat of the holy things until he be clean.

“And whoso toucheth any thing that is unclean by the dead or a man whose <sup>1</sup>seed goeth from him or whosoever toucheth any creeping thing, whereby he may be made unclean, or a man of whom he may take uncleanness, whatsoever uncleanness he hath; the soul which hath touched any such shall be unclean until even and shall not eat of the holy things unless he wash his flesh with water. And when the sun is down he shall be clean and shall afterward eat of the holy things, because it is his food. *<sup>1</sup>sperm/semen*

“That which dieth of itself or is torn with beasts he shall not eat to defile himself therewith: I am THE LORD.

“They shall therefore keep Mine ordinance, lest they bear sin for it and die therefore if they profane it: I THE LORD do sanctify them.

“There shall no stranger eat of the holy thing - a sojourner of the priest, or an hired servant, shall not eat of the holy thing. But if the priest buy any soul with his money, he shall eat of it, and he that is born in his house; they shall eat of his meat. If the priest's daughter also be married unto a stranger, she may not eat of an offering of the holy things. But if the priest's daughter be a widow, or divorced and have no child, and is returned unto her father's house as in her youth, she shall eat of her father's meat - but there shall no stranger eat thereof.

“And if a man eat of the holy thing unwittingly, then he shall put the fifth part thereof unto it, and shall give it unto the priest with the holy thing.

“And they shall not profane the holy things of the Children of Israel which they offer unto THE LORD or suffer them to bear the iniquity of trespass when they eat their holy things: for I THE LORD do sanctify them.”

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, “Speak unto Aaron, and to his sons, and unto all the Children of Israel, and say unto them: Whatsoever he be - of the House of Israel or of the strangers in Israel - that will

offer his oblation for all his vows and for all his freewill offerings which they will offer unto THE LORD for a burnt offering, ye shall offer at *your own will* a male without blemish, of the <sup>1</sup>beeves, of the sheep, or of the goats. But whatsoever hath a blemish, that shall ye not offer, for it shall not be acceptable for you. <sup>1</sup>beef

“And whosoever offereth a sacrifice of peace offerings unto THE LORD to accomplish his vow or a freewill offering in beeves or sheep, it shall be perfect to be accepted; there shall be no blemish therein. Blind, or broken, or maimed, or having a <sup>1</sup>wen, or scurvy, or scabbed, ye shall not offer these unto THE LORD, nor make an offering by fire of them upon the Altar unto THE LORD. Either a bullock or a lamb that hath any thing superfluous or lacking in his parts, that mayest thou offer for a *freewill* offering - but for a *vow* it shall not be accepted. <sup>1</sup>cyst/growth

“Ye shall not offer unto THE LORD that which is bruised, or crushed, or broken, or cut; neither shall ye make any offering thereof in your land.

“Neither from a stranger's hand shall ye offer the bread of your God of any of these, because their corruption is in them and blemishes be in them; they shall not be accepted for you.”

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, “When a bullock or a sheep or a goat is <sup>1</sup>brought forth, then it shall be seven days <sup>2</sup>under the dam; and from the eighth day and thenceforth it shall be accepted for an offering made by fire unto THE LORD. And whether it be cow or ewe, ye shall not kill it *and* her young both in one day. <sup>1</sup>born <sup>2</sup>feeding from its mother

“And when ye will offer a sacrifice of thanksgiving unto THE LORD, offer it at your own will. On the same day it shall be eaten up. Ye shall leave none of it until the morrow: I am THE LORD.

“Therefore shall ye keep My commandments and do them: I am THE LORD. Neither shall ye profane My holy name, but I will be <sup>1</sup>hallowed among the Children of Israel. I am THE LORD which <sup>1</sup>hallow you, that brought you out of the land of Egypt, to be your God. I am THE LORD.”

*NOTE: Throughout the giving of the law through Moses to the world, God repeatedly states “I am The Lord”. It must be remembered that, in Hebrew, He is actually saying “I AM YAHWEH (Jehovah)”. He is not merely saying that He is “The Lord”, but rather, He is repeating His NAME over and over again so that His people understand clearly that Yahweh alone is God, that the mighty works against Egypt and the deliverance of the Hebrews was only by Yaweh, and that the world will answer to Yahweh for obeying or defying these laws. The use of “The Lord” (“Adonai” in Hebrew) in place of God’s name is a custom that began thousands of years ago by the Hebrews and continued right into the New Testament itself by the Apostles. In modern times, most Hebrews use the term “haShem” in place of God’s name, meaning “The Name”. The purpose for this is to protect the holiness of God’s name from abuse or misuse. So it must be understood that the name of the Almighty God given here is not “The Lord” but “Yahweh” meaning “I Am, therefore I Am!”*

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, “Speak unto the Children of Israel and say unto them: Concerning the feasts of THE LORD which ye shall proclaim to be holy convocations, even these are My feasts:

- Six days shall work be done, but the Seventh Day is the Sabbath of rest, an holy convocation; ye shall do no work therein. It is the Sabbath of THE LORD in all your dwellings.

These are the feasts of THE LORD, even holy convocations, which ye shall proclaim in their seasons:

- In the fourteenth day of the first month at even is THE LORD's Passover. And on the fifteenth day of the same month is the Feast of Unleavened Bread unto THE LORD. Seven days ye must eat unleavened bread. In the first day ye shall have an holy convocation; ye shall do no servile work therein. But ye shall offer an offering made by fire unto THE LORD seven days. In the Seventh Day is an holy convocation; ye shall do no servile work therein.”

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, “Speak unto the Children of Israel and say unto them:

- When ye be come into the land which I give unto you and shall reap the harvest thereof, then ye shall bring a sheaf of the firstfruits of your harvest unto the priest and he shall wave the sheaf before THE LORD, to be accepted for you. On the morrow after the Sabbath the priest shall wave it. And ye shall offer that day, when ye wave the sheaf, an he-lamb (without blemish) of the first year for a burnt offering unto THE LORD. And the meat offering thereof shall be two tenth deals of fine flour mingled with oil, an offering made by fire unto THE LORD for a sweet savour. And the drink offering thereof shall be of wine, the fourth part of an hin. And ye shall eat neither bread, nor parched corn, nor green ears, until the selfsame day that ye have brought an offering unto your God. It shall be a statute for ever throughout your generations in all your dwellings.

- And ye shall count unto you - from the morrow after the Sabbath, from the day that ye brought the sheaf of the wave offering - seven Sabbaths shall be complete (even unto the morrow after the seventh Sabbath shall ye number <sup>1</sup>fifty days); and ye shall offer a new meat offering unto THE LORD. Ye shall bring out of your habitations two wave loaves of two tenth deals. They shall be of fine flour; they shall be baked *with* leaven. They are the firstfruits unto THE LORD. And ye shall offer with the bread seven lambs (without blemish) of the first year, and one young bullock, and two rams. They shall be for a burnt offering unto THE LORD, with their meat offering, and their drink offerings, even an offering made by fire, of sweet savour unto THE LORD. Then ye shall sacrifice one kid of the goats for a sin offering, and two lambs of the first year for a sacrifice of peace offerings. And the priest shall wave them with the bread of the firstfruits for a wave offering before THE LORD with the two lambs. They shall be holy to THE LORD for the priest. And ye shall proclaim on the selfsame day that it may be an holy convocation unto you. Ye shall do no servile work therein. It shall be a statute for ever in all your dwellings throughout your generations. And when ye reap the harvest of your land, thou shalt not make clean riddance of the corners of thy field when thou reapest, neither shalt thou gather any gleanings of thy harvest. Thou shalt leave them unto the poor and to the stranger. I am THE LORD your God.”  
*<sup>1</sup>fifty days after the last day of Passover, known as “the days of omer”, culminating in “Pentecost”*

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, “Speak unto the Children of Israel, saying:

- In the seventh month, in the first day of the month, shall ye have a Sabbath, a memorial of blowing of trumpets, an holy convocation. Ye shall do no servile work therein, but ye shall offer an offering made by fire unto THE LORD.” *NOTE: this is Yom Teruah (Rosh Hoshanah), the Feast of Trumpets*

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying,

- Also on the tenth day of this seventh month there shall be a <sup>1</sup>Day of Atonement; it shall be an holy convocation unto you. And ye shall <sup>2</sup>afflict your souls, and offer an offering made by fire unto THE LORD. And ye shall do no work in that same day, for it is a day of atonement to make an atonement for you before THE LORD your God. For, whatsoever soul it be that shall not be <sup>2</sup>afflicted in that same day, he shall be cut off from among his people. And whatsoever soul it be that doeth any work in that same day, the same soul will I destroy from among his people. Ye shall do no manner of work; it shall be a statute for ever throughout your generations in all your dwellings. It shall be unto you a Sabbath of rest and ye shall <sup>1</sup>afflict your souls - in the ninth day of the month at even, from even unto even, shall ye celebrate your Sabbath.”

*<sup>1</sup>NOTE: this is Yom Kippur <sup>2</sup>to depress and debase oneself, to be abject and humble, physical deprivation of all pleasure or nourishment, to chasten and rebuke oneself with greiving and sorrow, to recognize with true fear the great magnitude of the infinitely high, all-mighty, and astoundingly holy God in comparison to the lowliness, powerlessness and unholiness of our mortal selves in His presence. It is a day devoted to utter submission to the Lord in acknowledging and confessing before Him our sins and the sins of our family, our friends, our spiritual and political leaders, the people of our nation, and the people of our world, and in glorifying Him for His astronomical and undeserved mercy and forgiveness.*

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, “Speak unto the Children of Israel, saying:

- The fifteenth day of this seventh month shall be the <sup>1</sup>Feast of Tabernacles for seven days unto THE LORD. On the first day shall be an holy convocation; ye shall do no servile work therein. Seven days ye shall offer an offering made by fire unto THE LORD. On the eighth day shall be an holy convocation unto you and ye shall offer an offering made by fire unto THE LORD; it is a solemn assembly and ye shall do no servile work therein. *<sup>1</sup>NOTE: this is Sukkot*

“These are the feasts of THE LORD which ye shall proclaim to be holy convocations, to offer an offering made by fire unto THE LORD - a burnt offering, and a meat offering, a sacrifice, and drink offerings, every thing upon his day - beside the Sabbaths of THE LORD, and beside your gifts, and beside all your vows, and beside all your freewill offerings, which ye give unto THE LORD.

- Also in the fifteenth day of the seventh month, when ye have gathered in the fruit of the land, ye shall keep a feast unto THE LORD seven days. On the first day shall be a Sabbath and on the eighth day shall be a Sabbath. And ye shall take you on the first day the boughs of goodly trees, branches of palm trees, and the boughs of thick trees, and willows of the brook; and ye shall rejoice before THE LORD your God seven days. And ye shall keep it a feast unto THE LORD seven days in the year. It shall be a statute for ever in your generations; ye shall celebrate it in the

seventh month. Ye shall dwell in booths seven days - <sup>1</sup>all that are Israelites-born shall dwell in booths - that your generations may know that I made the Children of Israel to dwell in booths when I brought them out of the land of Egypt - I am THE LORD your God.”

*NOTE: this is the Feast of Ingathering which occurs during the week of Sukkot (the Feast of Tabernacles). <sup>1</sup>it has been long debated as to whether this means that only those who are physically born in Israel are commanded to keep this holiday or if it applies to all people everywhere who are descended from Israel (Jacob).*

And Moses declared unto the Children of Israel the feasts of THE LORD. And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, “Command the Children of Israel that they bring unto thee pure oil olive beaten for the <sup>1</sup>Light, to cause the lamps to burn continually. Without the veil of The Testimony, in The Tabernacle of the Congregation, shall Aaron order it from the evening unto the morning before THE LORD continually. It shall be a statute for ever in your generations. He shall order the lamps upon the pure Candlestick before THE LORD continually.

*<sup>1</sup>Menorah <sup>2</sup>outside of*

“And thou shalt take fine flour and bake twelve cakes thereof; two tenth deals shall be in one cake. And thou shalt set them in two rows - six on a row - upon the pure table before THE LORD.

“And thou shalt put pure frankincense upon each row that it may be on the bread for a memorial, even an offering made by fire unto THE LORD. Every Sabbath he shall set it in order before THE LORD continually, being taken from the Children of Israel by an everlasting covenant. And it shall be Aaron's and his sons'; and they shall eat it in the holy place; for it is most holy unto him of the offerings of THE LORD made by fire by a perpetual statute.”

And the son of an Israelitish woman, <sup>1</sup>whose father was an Egyptian, went out among the Children of Israel. And this son of the Israelitish woman and a man <sup>2</sup>of Israel <sup>3</sup>strove together in the camp; and the Israelitish woman's son blasphemed the name of THE LORD and cursed. And they brought him unto Moses (and his mother's name was Shelomith, the daughter of Dibri, of the tribe of Dan). And they put him in <sup>4</sup>ward, that the mind of THE LORD might be showed them.

*<sup>1</sup>and his father <sup>2</sup>whose father was an Israelite <sup>3</sup>argue/debate/fight <sup>4</sup>a holding cell*

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, “Bring forth him that hath cursed without the camp, and let all that heard him lay their hands upon his head, and let all the congregation stone him.

“And thou shalt speak unto the Children of Israel, saying:

- Whosoever curseth his God shall bear his sin.
- And he that blasphemeth the name of THE LORD, he shall surely be put to death, and all the congregation shall certainly stone him - as well the stranger as he that is born in the land - when he blasphemeth the name of THE LORD, shall be put to death.
- And he that killeth any man shall surely be put to death.
- And he that killeth a beast shall make it good; beast for beast.
- And if a man cause a blemish in his neighbour, as he hath done, so shall it be done to him - breach for breach, eye for eye, tooth for tooth. As he hath caused a blemish in a man, so shall it be done to him again.
- And he that killeth a beast, he shall restore it.
- And he that killeth a man, he shall be put to death.
- Ye shall have one manner of law - as well for the stranger as for one of your own country; for I am THE LORD your God.”

And Moses spake to the Children of Israel, that they should bring forth him that had cursed out of the camp, and stone him with stones. And the Children of Israel did as THE LORD commanded Moses. And THE LORD spake unto Moses in Mount Sinai, saying, “Speak unto the Children of Israel, and say unto them:

- When ye come into the land which I give you, then shall the land keep a Sabbath unto THE LORD. Six years thou shalt sow thy field and six years thou shalt prune thy vineyard, and gather in the fruit thereof; but in the seventh year shall be a Sabbath of rest unto the land, a Sabbath for THE LORD. Thou shalt neither sow thy field, nor prune thy vineyard. That which groweth of its own accord of thy harvest

thou shalt not reap, neither gather the grapes of thy vine undressed. For it is a year of rest unto the land. And the Sabbath of the land shall be meat for you - for thee, and for thy servant, and for thy maid, and for thy hired servant, and for thy stranger that sojourneth with thee, and for thy cattle, and for the beast that are in thy land shall all the increase thereof be meat.

- And thou shalt number seven Sabbaths of years unto thee, seven times seven years; and the <sup>1</sup>space of the seven Sabbaths of years shall be unto thee forty and nine years. Then shalt thou cause the trumpet of the jubilee to sound on the tenth day of the seventh month, in the day of atonement shall ye make the trumpet sound throughout all your land. And ye shall hallow the fiftieth year, and proclaim liberty throughout all the land unto all the inhabitants thereof: it shall be a jubilee unto you; and ye shall return every man unto his possession, and ye shall return every man unto his family. A jubilee shall that fiftieth year be unto you. Ye shall not sow, neither reap that which groweth of itself in it, nor gather the grapes in it of thy vine undressed. For it is the jubilee; it shall be holy unto you. Ye shall eat the increase thereof out of the field.
- In the year of this jubilee ye shall return every man unto his possession. And if thou sell ought unto thy neighbour, or buyest ought of thy neighbour's hand, ye shall not oppress one another. According to the number of years after the jubilee thou shalt buy of thy neighbour, and according unto the number of years of the fruits he shall sell unto thee. According to the multitude of years thou shalt increase the price thereof, and according to the fewness of years thou shalt diminish the price of it. For, according to the number of the years of the fruits doth he sell unto thee. Ye shall not therefore oppress one another; but thou shalt fear thy God - for I am THE LORD your God. Wherefore ye shall do My statutes, and keep My judgments, and do them; and ye shall dwell in the land in safety. And the land shall yield her fruit, and ye shall eat your fill, and dwell therein in safety.
- And if ye shall say, *'What shall we eat the seventh year? Behold, we shall not sow, nor gather in our increase!'* Then I will command My blessing upon you in the sixth year and it shall bring forth fruit for three years. And ye shall sow the eighth year, and eat yet of old fruit until the ninth year; until her fruits come in ye shall eat of the old store.
- The land shall not be sold for ever; for the land is Mine - for ye are strangers and sojourners with Me. And in all the land of your possession ye shall grant a redemption for the land.
- If thy brother be waxen poor and hath sold away some of his possession, and if any of his kin come to redeem it, then shall he redeem that which his brother sold.
- And if the man have none to redeem it and himself be able to redeem it, then let him count the years of the sale thereof and restore the overplus unto the man to whom he sold it; that he may return unto his possession. But if he be not able to restore it to him, then that which is sold shall remain in the hand of him that hath bought it until the year of jubilee; and in the jubilee it shall go out, and he shall return unto his possession.
- And if a man sell a dwelling house in a walled city, then he may redeem it within a whole year after it is sold; within a full year may he redeem it. And if it be not redeemed within the space of a full year, then the house that is in the walled city shall be established for ever to him that bought it throughout his generations; it shall not go out in the jubilee.
- But the houses of the villages which have no wall round about them shall be counted as the fields of the country; they may be redeemed, and they shall go out in the jubilee.
- Notwithstanding the cities of the Levites and the houses of the cities of their possession may the Levites redeem at any time. And if a man purchase of the Levites, then the house that was sold and the city of his possession shall go out in the year of jubilee; for the houses of the cities of the Levites are their possession among the Children of Israel. But the field of the suburbs of their cities may not be sold; for it is their perpetual possession.
- And if thy brother be waxen poor and fallen in decay with thee, then thou shalt relieve him - yea, though he be a stranger or a sojourner - that he may live with thee. Take thou no usury of him or increase, but fear thy God, that thy brother may live with thee. Thou shalt not give him thy money upon usury, nor lend him thy victuals for increase.

“I am THE LORD your God which brought you forth out of the land of Egypt to give you the land of Canaan and to be your God.

- And if thy brother that dwelleth by thee be waxen poor and be sold unto thee, thou shalt not compel him to serve as a bondservant, but as an hired servant and as a sojourner he shall be with thee, and shall serve thee unto the year of jubilee. And then shall he depart from thee, both he and his children with him, and shall return unto his own family, and unto the possession of his fathers shall he return. For they are My servants which I brought forth out of the land of Egypt - they shall not be sold as bondmen! Thou shalt not rule over him with rigour; but shalt fear thy God.
- Both thy bondmen and thy bondmaids which thou shalt have shall be of the heathen that are round about you - of *them* shall ye buy bondmen and bondmaids.
- Moreover of the children of the strangers that do sojourn among you, of them shall ye buy, and of their families that are with you, which they begat in your land; and they shall be your possession. And ye shall take them as an inheritance for your children after you, to inherit them for a possession; they shall be your bondmen for ever. But over your brethren the Children of Israel, ye shall not rule one over another with rigour.
- And if a sojourner or stranger wax rich by thee, and thy brother that dwelleth by him wax poor and sell himself unto the stranger or sojourner by thee or to the stock of the stranger's family, after that he is sold he may be redeemed again; one of his brethren may redeem him - either his uncle or his uncle's son may redeem him, or any that is nigh of kin unto him of his family may redeem him. Or, if he be able, he may redeem himself.
- And he shall reckon with him that bought him from the year that he was sold to him unto the year of jubilee, and the price of his sale shall be according unto the number of years, according to the time of an hired servant shall it be with him.
- If there be yet many years behind, according unto them he shall give again the price of his redemption out of the money that he was bought for. And if there remain but few years unto the year of jubilee, then he shall count with him, and according unto his years shall he give him again the price of his redemption. And as a yearly hired servant shall he be with him, and the other shall not rule with rigour over him in thy sight. And if he be not redeemed in these years, then he shall go out in the year of jubilee, both he, and his children with him.
- For unto *Me* the Children of Israel are servants; they are *My* servants whom I brought forth out of the land of Egypt - I am THE LORD your God.
- Ye shall make you no idols nor graven image, neither rear you up a standing image, neither shall ye set up any image of stone in your land, to bow down unto it - for I am THE LORD your God.
- Ye shall keep My Sabbaths and reverence My Sanctuary - I am THE LORD.

“If ye walk in My statutes and keep My commandments and do them, then I will give you rain in due season, and the land shall yield her increase, and the trees of the field shall yield their fruit. And your threshing shall reach unto the vintage, and the vintage shall reach unto the sowing time; and ye shall eat your bread to the full, and dwell in your land safely. And I will give peace in the land, and ye shall lie down, and none shall make you afraid. And I will rid evil beasts out of the land, neither shall the sword go through your land. And ye shall chase your enemies, and they shall fall before you by the sword. And five of you shall chase an hundred, and an hundred of you shall put ten thousand to flight; and your enemies shall fall before you by the sword. For I will have respect unto you, and make you fruitful, and multiply you, and establish My Covenant with you. And ye shall eat old store, and bring forth the old because of the new. And I will set My Tabernacle among you and My soul shall not abhor you. And I will walk among you and will be your God, and ye shall be My People.

“I am THE LORD your God which brought you forth out of the land of Egypt that ye should not be their bondmen; and I have broken <sup>1</sup>the bands of your yoke and made you go upright.

<sup>1</sup>*the chains of slavery so that you no longer have to be stooped over from burdens on your back*

“BUT - if ye will *not* hearken unto Me and will *not* do all these commandments, and if ye shall *despise* My statutes, or if your soul *abhor* My judgments so that ye will not do all My commandments, but that ye break My Covenant, I also will do *this* unto you:

“I will even appoint over you terror, consumption, and the burning ague, that shall consume the eyes and cause sorrow of heart! And ye shall sow your seed in vain, for your enemies shall eat it! And I will set My face against you, and ye shall be slain before your enemies. They that hate you shall reign over you; and ye shall flee when none pursueth you. And if ye will not yet, for all this, hearken unto Me, then I will punish you seven times *more* for your sins. And I will break the pride of your power; and I will make your heaven as iron and your earth as brass! And your strength shall be spent in vain; for your land shall not yield her increase, neither shall the trees of the land yield their fruits. And if ye walk contrary unto Me and will not hearken unto Me, I will bring seven times *more* plagues upon you according to your sins. I will also send wild beasts among you which shall rob you of your children and destroy your cattle and make you few in number; and your high ways shall be desolate. And if ye will not be reformed by Me by these things but will walk contrary unto Me, then will I also walk contrary unto *you* and will punish you yet seven times for your sins. And I will bring a sword upon you that shall avenge the quarrel of My Covenant. And when ye are gathered together within your cities, I will send the pestilence among you; and ye shall be delivered into the hand of the enemy. And when I have broken the staff of your bread, ten women shall bake your bread in one oven, and they shall deliver you your bread again by weight; and ye shall eat and not be satisfied. And if ye will not for all *this* hearken unto Me but walk contrary unto Me, then I will walk contrary unto *you also* in fury! And I - even I - will chastise you seven times for your sins.

“And ye shall eat the flesh of your sons, and the flesh of your daughters shall ye eat. And I will destroy your <sup>1</sup>high places, and cut down your images, and cast your carcasses upon the carcasses of your idols, and My soul shall abhor you. And I will make your cities waste, and bring your sanctuaries unto desolation, and I will not smell the savour of your sweet odours. And I will bring the land into desolation, and your enemies which dwell therein shall be astonished at it. <sup>1</sup>shrines

“And I will scatter you among the heathen and will draw out a sword after you; and your land shall be desolate and your cities waste. *Then* shall the land enjoy her Sabbaths, as long as it lieth desolate and ye be in your enemies' land - even then shall the land rest and enjoy her Sabbaths. As long as it lieth desolate it shall rest, because it did not rest in your Sabbaths when ye dwelt upon it!

“And upon them that are left alive of you I will send a faintness into their hearts in the lands of their enemies; and the sound of a shaken leaf shall chase them; and they shall flee as fleeing from a sword and they shall fall when none pursueth. And they shall fall one upon another as it were before a sword (when none pursueth!); and ye shall have no power to stand before your enemies. And ye shall perish among the heathen, and the land of your enemies shall eat you up.

“And they that are left of you shall pine away in their iniquity in your enemies' lands; and also in the iniquities of their fathers shall they pine away with them.

“If they shall confess their iniquity and the iniquity of their fathers, with their trespass which they trespassed against Me, and that also they have walked contrary unto Me, and that I also have walked contrary unto them and have brought them into the land of their enemies – if, then, their uncircumcised hearts be humbled and they then accept of the punishment of their iniquity, then will I remember My Covenant with Jacob, and also My Covenant with Isaac, and also My Covenant with Abraham will I remember; and I will remember the land. The land also shall be left of them and shall enjoy her Sabbaths while she lieth desolate without them; and they shall accept of the punishment of their iniquity because... even because they despised My judgments, and because their soul abhorred My statutes.

“And yet for all that, when they be in the land of their enemies, I will not cast them away, neither will I abhor them, to destroy them utterly and to break My Covenant with them; for I am THE LORD their God. But I will, for their sakes, remember the Covenant of their ancestors whom I brought forth out of the land of Egypt in the sight of the heathen, that I might be their God: I am THE LORD!”

These are the Statutes and Judgments and Laws  
which THE LORD made between Him and the Children of Israel in Mount Sinai by the hand of Moses.

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, “Speak unto the Children of Israel, and say unto them:

- When a man shall make a singular vow, the persons shall be for THE LORD by thy estimation.

- And thy estimation shall be of the male from twenty years old even unto sixty years old, even thy estimation shall be fifty shekels of silver, after the shekel of the sanctuary.
- And if it be a female, then thy estimation shall be thirty shekels.
- And if it be from five years old even unto twenty years old, then thy estimation shall be of the male twenty shekels, and for the female ten shekels.
- And if it be from a month old even unto five years old, then thy estimation shall be of the male five shekels of silver, and for the female thy estimation shall be three shekels of silver.
- And if it be from sixty years old and above; if it be a male, then thy estimation shall be fifteen shekels, and for the female ten shekels.
- But if he be poorer than thy estimation, then he shall present himself before the priest, and the priest shall value him; according to his ability that vowed shall the priest value him.
- And if it be a beast, whereof men bring an offering unto THE LORD, all that any man giveth of such unto THE LORD shall be holy. He shall not alter it, nor change it, a good for a bad or a bad for a good; and if he shall at all change beast for beast, then it and the exchange thereof shall be holy.
- And if it be any unclean beast (of which they do not offer a sacrifice unto THE LORD), then he shall present the beast before the priest and the priest shall value it, whether it be good or bad. (<sup>1</sup>As thou valuest it who art the priest, so shall it be). But if he will at all redeem it, then he shall add a fifth part thereof unto thy estimation. *i.e. "O priest, the value will be what you declare it to be"*
- And when a man shall sanctify his house to be holy unto THE LORD, then the priest shall estimate it, whether it be good or bad; as the priest shall estimate it, so shall it stand.
- And if he that sanctified it will redeem his house, then he shall add the fifth part of the money of thy estimation unto it, and it shall be his.
- And if a man shall sanctify unto THE LORD some part of a field of his possession, then thy estimation shall be according to the seed thereof (an homer of barley seed shall be valued at fifty shekels of silver).
- If he sanctify his field from the year of jubilee, according to thy estimation it shall stand.
- But if he sanctify his field *after* the jubilee, then the priest shall reckon unto him the money according to the years that remain, even unto the year of the jubilee, and it shall be abated from thy estimation.
- And if he that sanctified the field will in *any* wise redeem it, then he shall add the fifth part of the money of thy estimation unto it, and it shall be assured to him.
- And if he will *not* redeem the field, or if he have sold the field to another man, it shall not be redeemed any more.
- But the field - when it goeth out in the jubilee - shall be holy unto THE LORD, as a field devoted; the possession thereof shall be the priest's.
- And if a man sanctify unto THE LORD a field which he hath bought (which is not of the fields of his possession), then the priest shall reckon unto him the worth of thy estimation, even unto the year of the jubilee. And he shall give thine estimation in that day, as a holy thing unto THE LORD.
- In the year of the jubilee the field shall return unto him of whom it was bought, even to him to whom the possession of the land did belong.
- And all thy estimations shall be according to the shekel of the Sanctuary (twenty gerahs shall be the shekel).
- Only the firstling of the beasts - (which should be THE LORD'S firstling!) - no man shall sanctify it whether it be ox or sheep. It is THE LORD'S!
- And if it be of an unclean beast, then he shall redeem it according to thine estimation and shall add a fifth part of it thereto. Or, if it be not redeemed, then it shall be sold according to thy estimation.
- Notwithstanding no devoted thing, that a man shall devote unto THE LORD of all that he hath, both of man and beast, and of the field of his possession, shall be sold or redeemed; every devoted thing is most holy unto THE LORD.
- None devoted, which shall be devoted of men, shall be redeemed; but shall surely be put to death.
- And all the tithe of the land, whether of the seed of the land, or of the fruit of the tree, is THE LORD'S; it is holy unto THE LORD.
- And if a man will at all redeem ought of his tithes, he shall add thereto the fifth part thereof.

- And concerning the tithe of the herd or of the flock, even of whatsoever <sup>1</sup>passeth under the rod, the tenth shall be holy unto THE LORD. He shall not search whether it be good or bad, neither shall he change it; and if he change it at all, then both it and the change thereof shall be holy; it shall not be redeemed.” *livestock is counted by having them pass under a rod from one place to another to keep accurate count*

These are the commandments, which THE LORD commanded Moses for the Children of Israel in Mount Sinai. And THE LORD spake unto Moses in the wilderness of Sinai, in The Tabernacle of the Congregation, on the first day of the second month, in the second year after they were come out of the land of Egypt, saying,

“Take ye the sum of all the congregation of the Children of Israel, after their families, by the house of their fathers, with the number of their names, every male by their polls - from twenty years old and upward, all that are able to go forth to war in Israel: thou and Aaron shall number them by their armies. And with you there shall be a man of every tribe; every one head of the house of his fathers. And these are the names of the men that shall stand with you:

- of the tribe of Reuben: Elizur the son of Shedeur.
- of Simeon: Shelumiel the son of Zurishaddai.
- of Judah: Nahshon the son of Amminadab.
- of Issachar: Nethaneel the son of Zuar.
- of Zebulun: Eliab the son of Helon.
- of the children of Joseph:
  - of Ephraim: Elishama the son of Ammihud:
  - of Manasseh: Gamaliel the son of Pedahzur.
- of Benjamin: Abidan the son of Gideoni.
- of Dan: Ahiezer the son of Ammishaddai.
- of Asher: Pagiel the son of Ocran.
- of Gad: Eliasaph the son of Deuel.
- of Naphtali: Ahira the son of Enan.”

These were the renowned of the congregation, princes of the tribes of their fathers, heads of thousands in Israel. And Moses and Aaron took these men which are expressed by their names.

And they assembled all the congregation together on the first day of the second month, and they declared their pedigrees after their families, by the house of their fathers, according to the number of the names, from twenty years old and upward, by their polls. As THE LORD commanded Moses, so he numbered them in the wilderness of Sinai.

And the children of Reuben, Israel's eldest son, by their generations, after their families, by the House of their fathers, according to the number of the names, by their polls, every male from twenty years old and upward, all that were able to go forth to war, those that were numbered of them, even of the tribe of Reuben, were forty and six thousand and five hundred.

Of the children of Simeon, by their generations, after their families, by the House of their fathers, those that were numbered of them, according to the number of the names, by their polls, every male from twenty years old and upward, all that were able to go forth to war, those that were numbered of them, even of the tribe of Simeon, were fifty and nine thousand and three hundred.

Of the children of Gad, by their generations, after their families, by the House of their fathers, according to the number of the names, from twenty years old and upward, all that were able to go forth to war, those that were numbered of them, even of the tribe of Gad, were forty and five thousand six hundred and fifty.

Of the children of Judah, by their generations, after their families, by the House of their fathers, according to the number of the names, from twenty years old and upward, all that were able to go forth to war, those

that were numbered of them, even of the tribe of Judah, were threescore and fourteen thousand and six hundred.

Of the children of Issachar, by their generations, after their families, by the House of their fathers, according to the number of the names, from twenty years old and upward, all that were able to go forth to war, those that were numbered of them, even of the tribe of Issachar, were fifty and four thousand and four hundred.

Of the children of Zebulun, by their generations, after their families, by the House of their fathers, according to the number of the names, from twenty years old and upward, all that were able to go forth to war, those that were numbered of them, even of the tribe of Zebulun, were fifty and seven thousand and four hundred.

Of the children of Joseph, namely: of the children of Ephraim, by their generations, after their families, by the House of their fathers, according to the number of the names, from twenty years old and upward, all that were able to go forth to war, those that were numbered of them, even of the tribe of Ephraim, were forty thousand and five hundred.

Of the children of Manasseh, by their generations, after their families, by the House of their fathers, according to the number of the names, from twenty years old and upward, all that were able to go forth to war, those that were numbered of them, even of the tribe of Manasseh, were thirty and two thousand and two hundred.

Of the children of Benjamin, by their generations, after their families, by the House of their fathers, according to the number of the names, from twenty years old and upward, all that were able to go forth to war, those that were numbered of them, even of the tribe of Benjamin, were thirty and five thousand and four hundred.

Of the children of Dan, by their generations, after their families, by the House of their fathers, according to the number of the names, from twenty years old and upward, all that were able to go forth to war, those that were numbered of them, even of the tribe of Dan, were threescore and two thousand and seven hundred.

Of the children of Asher, by their generations, after their families, by the House of their fathers, according to the number of the names, from twenty years old and upward, all that were able to go forth to war, those that were numbered of them, even of the tribe of Asher, were forty and one thousand and five hundred.

Of the children of Naphtali, throughout their generations, after their families, by the House of their fathers, according to the number of the names, from twenty years old and upward, all that were able to go forth to war, those that were numbered of them, even of the tribe of Naphtali, were fifty and three thousand and four hundred.

These are those that were numbered, which Moses and Aaron numbered, and the princes of Israel, being twelve men - each one was for the House of his fathers. So were all those that were numbered of the Children of Israel, by the House of their fathers, from twenty years old and upward, all that were able to go forth to war in Israel; even all they that were numbered were <sup>1</sup>six hundred thousand and three thousand and five hundred and fifty. 603,550

But the Levites, after the tribe of their fathers, were not numbered among them. For THE LORD had spoken unto Moses, saying, "Only thou shalt *not* number the tribe of Levi, neither take the sum of them among the Children of Israel; but thou shalt appoint the Levites over The Tabernacle of Testimony, and over all the vessels thereof, and over all things that belong to it. They shall bear The Tabernacle, and all the vessels thereof; and they shall minister unto it, and shall encamp round about The Tabernacle. And when The

Tabernacle setteth forward, the Levites shall take it down; and when The Tabernacle is to be pitched, the Levites shall set it up - and the stranger that cometh nigh shall be put to death. And the Children of Israel shall pitch their tents (every man by his own camp and every man by his own standard) throughout their hosts. But the Levites shall pitch round about The Tabernacle of Testimony that there be no wrath upon the congregation of the Children of Israel, and the Levites shall keep the charge of The Tabernacle of Testimony.”

And the Children of Israel did according to all that THE LORD commanded Moses, so did they.

And THE LORD spake unto Moses and unto Aaron, saying, “Every man of the Children of Israel shall pitch by his own standard, with the ensign of their father's House. Far off about The Tabernacle of the congregation shall they pitch:

- And on the east side toward the rising of the sun shall they of the standard of the camp of Judah pitch throughout their armies; and Nahshon the son of Amminadab shall be captain of the children of Judah. And his host, and those that were numbered of them, were threescore and fourteen thousand and six hundred.
- And those that do pitch next unto him shall be the tribe of Issachar; and Nethaneel the son of Zuar shall be captain of the children of Issachar. And his host, and those that were numbered thereof, were fifty and four thousand and four hundred.
- Then the tribe of Zebulun; and Eliab the son of Helon shall be captain of the children of Zebulun. And his host, and those that were numbered thereof, were fifty and seven thousand and four hundred.

All that were numbered in the camp of Judah were an hundred thousand and fourscore thousand and six thousand and four hundred, throughout their armies. These shall first set forth.

- On the south side shall be the standard of the camp of Reuben according to their armies; and the captain of the children of Reuben shall be Elizur the son of Shedeur. And his host, and those that were numbered thereof, were forty and six thousand and five hundred.
- And those which pitch by him shall be the tribe of Simeon; and the captain of the children of Simeon shall be Shelumiel the son of Zurishaddai. And his host, and those that were numbered of them, were fifty and nine thousand and three hundred.
- Then the tribe of Gad; and the captain of the sons of Gad shall be Eliasaph the son of Reuel. And his host, and those that were numbered of them, were forty and five thousand and six hundred and fifty.

All that were numbered in the camp of Reuben were an hundred thousand and fifty and one thousand and four hundred and fifty, throughout their armies. And they shall set forth in the second rank. Then The Tabernacle of the congregation shall set forward with the camp of the Levites in the midst of the camp; as they encamp, so shall they set forward, every man in his place by their standards.

- On the west side shall be the standard of the camp of Ephraim according to their armies; and the captain of the sons of Ephraim shall be Elishama the son of Ammihud. And his host, and those that were numbered of them, were forty thousand and five hundred.
- And by him shall be the tribe of Manasseh; and the captain of the children of Manasseh shall be Gamaliel the son of Pedahzur. And his host, and those that were numbered of them, were thirty and two thousand and two hundred.
- Then the tribe of Benjamin; and the captain of the sons of Benjamin shall be Abidan the son of Gideon. And his host, and those that were numbered of them, were thirty and five thousand and four hundred.

All that were numbered of the camp of Ephraim were an hundred thousand and eight thousand and an hundred, throughout their armies. And they shall go forward in the third rank.

- The standard of the camp of Dan shall be on the north side by their armies; and the captain of the children of Dan shall be Ahiezer the son of Ammishaddai. And his host, and those that were numbered of them, were threescore and two thousand and seven hundred.

- And those that encamp by him shall be the tribe of Asher; and the captain of the children of Asher shall be Pagiel the son of Ocran. And his host, and those that were numbered of them, were forty and one thousand and five hundred.

- Then the tribe of Naphtali: and the captain of the children of Naphtali shall be Ahira the son of Enan. And his host, and those that were numbered of them, were fifty and three thousand and four hundred.

All they that were numbered in the camp of Dan were an hundred thousand and fifty and seven thousand and six hundred. They shall go hindmost with their standards.”

These are those which were numbered of the Children of Israel by the House of their fathers; all those that were numbered of the camps throughout their hosts were six hundred thousand and three thousand and five hundred and fifty. But the Levites were not numbered among the Children of Israel as THE LORD commanded Moses.

And the Children of Israel did according to all that THE LORD commanded Moses. So they pitched by their standards, and so they set forward, every one after their families, according to the House of their fathers.

These also are the generations of Aaron and Moses  
in the day that THE LORD spake with Moses in Mount Sinai.

And these are the names of the sons of Aaron:

- Nadab (the firstborn),
- and Abihu,
- Eleazar,
- and Ithamar.

These are the names of the sons of Aaron, the priests which were anointed, whom he consecrated to minister in the priest's office.

And Nadab and Abihu died before THE LORD when they offered strange fire before THE LORD in the wilderness of Sinai, and they had no children; and Eleazar and Ithamar ministered in the priest's office in the sight of Aaron their father.

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, “Bring the tribe of Levi near and present them before Aaron the priest that they may minister unto him. And they shall keep his charge and the charge of the whole congregation before The Tabernacle of the Congregation, to do the service of The Tabernacle. And they shall keep all the instruments of The Tabernacle of the congregation and the charge of the Children of Israel, to do the service of The Tabernacle. And thou shalt give the Levites unto Aaron and to his sons; they are wholly given unto him out of the Children of Israel. And thou shalt appoint Aaron and his sons and they shall wait on their priest's office; and the stranger that cometh nigh shall be put to death.”

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, “And I, behold, I have taken the Levites from among the Children of Israel instead of all the firstborn that openeth the matrix among the Children of Israel; therefore the Levites shall be Mine (because all the firstborn are Mine, for, on the day that I smote all the firstborn in the land of Egypt I hallowed unto Me all the firstborn in Israel, both man and beast). Mine shall they be. I am <sup>1</sup>THE LORD.”

<sup>1</sup>*Yahweh (Jehovah)*

And THE LORD spake unto Moses in the wilderness of Sinai, saying, “Number the children of Levi after the House of their fathers, by their families. Every male, from a month old and upward, shalt thou number them.” And Moses numbered them according to the Word of THE LORD as he was commanded.

And these were the sons of Levi by their names:

- Gershon,
- and Kohath,
- and Merari.

And these are the names of the sons of Gershon by their families:

- Libni,
- and Shimei.

And the sons of Kohath by their families:

- Amram,
- and Izechar,
- Hebron,
- and Uzziel.

And the sons of Merari by their families:

- Mahli,
- and Mushi.

These are the families of the Levites according to the House of their fathers.

Of Gershon was the family of The Libnites and the family of The Shimites; these are the families of The Gershonites. Those that were numbered of them, according to the number of all the males, from a month old and upward, even those that were numbered of them were seven thousand and five hundred.

The families of the Gershonites shall pitch behind The Tabernacle westward. And the chief of the House of the father of the Gershonites shall be Eliasaph the son of Lael. And the charge of the sons of Gershon in The Tabernacle of the congregation shall be The Tabernacle, and the tent, the covering thereof, and the hanging for the door of The Tabernacle of the Congregation, and the hangings of the court, and the curtain for the door of the court which is by The Tabernacle and by the altar round about, and the cords of it for all the service thereof.

And of Kohath was the family of The Amramites and the family of The Izecharites and the family of The Hebronites and the family of The Uzzielites; these are the families of the Kohathites. In the number of all the males, from a month old and upward, were eight thousand and six hundred, keeping the charge of the sanctuary.

The families of the sons of Kohath shall pitch on the side of The Tabernacle southward. And the chief of the House of the father of the families of the Kohathites shall be Elizaphan the son of Uzziel. And their charge shall be the Ark, and the Table, and the Candlestick, and the Altars, and the vessels of the Sanctuary wherewith they minister, and the hanging, and all the service thereof.

And Eleazar, the son of Aaron the priest, shall be Chief over the chief of the Levites, and have the oversight of them that keep the charge of the Sanctuary.

Of Merari was the family of The Mahlites and the family of The Mushites; these are the families of Merari. And those that were numbered of them, according to the number of all the males from a month old and upward, were six thousand and two hundred. And the chief of the House of the father of the families of Merari was Zuriel the son of Abihail. These shall pitch on the side of The Tabernacle northward. And under the custody and charge of the sons of Merari shall be the boards of The Tabernacle, and the bars thereof, and the pillars thereof, and the sockets thereof, and all the vessels thereof, and all that serveth thereto, and the pillars of the court round about, and their sockets, and their pins, and their cords.

But those that encamp before The Tabernacle toward the east (even before The Tabernacle of the Congregation eastward) shall be Moses and Aaron and his sons, keeping the charge of the Sanctuary for the charge of the Children of Israel; and the stranger that cometh nigh shall be put to death.

All that were numbered of the Levites which Moses and Aaron numbered at the commandment of THE LORD throughout their families, all the males from a month old and upward, were twenty and two thousand.

And THE LORD said unto Moses, "Number all the firstborn of the males of the Children of Israel from a month old and upward, and take the number of their names. And thou shalt take the Levites for Me (I am THE LORD) instead of all the firstborn among the Children of Israel, and the cattle of the Levites instead of all the firstlings among the cattle of the Children of Israel."

And Moses numbered, as THE LORD commanded him, all the firstborn among the Children of Israel. And all the firstborn males by the number of names, from a month old and upward of those that were numbered of them, were twenty and two thousand two hundred and threescore and thirteen.

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, "Take the Levites instead of all the firstborn among the Children of Israel, and the cattle of the Levites instead of their cattle; and the Levites shall be Mine. I am THE LORD. And for those that are to be redeemed of the two hundred and threescore and thirteen of the firstborn of the Children of Israel, which are more than the Levites, thou shalt even take five shekels apiece by the poll. After the shekel of the Sanctuary shalt thou take them (the shekel is twenty gerahs). And thou shalt give the money, wherewith the odd number of them is to be redeemed, unto Aaron and to his sons."

And Moses took the redemption money of them that were over and above them that were redeemed by the Levites (of the firstborn of the Children of Israel took he the money) a thousand three hundred and threescore and five shekels, after the shekel of the Sanctuary. And Moses gave the money of them that were redeemed unto Aaron and to his sons, according to the Word of THE LORD, as THE LORD commanded Moses.

And THE LORD spake unto Moses and unto Aaron, saying, "Take the sum of the sons of Kohath from among the sons of Levi, after their families, by the House of their fathers, from thirty years old and upward even until fifty years old, all that enter into the host, to do the work in The Tabernacle of the Congregation. "This shall be the service of the sons of Kohath in The Tabernacle of the Congregation about the most holy things.

"And when the camp setteth forward, Aaron shall come, and his sons, and they shall take down the covering veil, and cover the Ark of Testimony with it, and shall put thereon the covering of badgers' skins, and shall spread over it a cloth wholly of blue, and shall put in the staves thereof.

"And upon the Table of Showbread they shall spread a cloth of blue, and put thereon the dishes, and the spoons, and the bowls, and covers to cover withal; and the continual bread shall be thereon. And they shall spread upon them a cloth of scarlet, and cover the same with a covering of badgers' skins, and shall put in the staves thereof.

"And they shall take a cloth of blue, and cover the Candlestick of the light, and his lamps, and his tongs, and his snuffdishes, and all the oil vessels thereof, wherewith they minister unto it; and they shall put it and all the vessels thereof within a covering of badgers' skins, and shall put it upon a bar.

"And upon the golden Altar they shall spread a cloth of blue, and cover it with a covering of badgers' skins, and shall put to the staves thereof. And they shall take all the instruments of ministry, wherewith they minister in the Sanctuary, and put them in a cloth of blue, and cover them with a covering of badgers' skins, and shall put them on a bar. And they shall take away the ashes from the Altar and spread a purple cloth thereon. And they shall put upon it all the vessels thereof wherewith they minister about it, even the censers, the fleshhooks, and the shovels, and the basins, all the vessels of the Altar; and they shall spread upon it a covering of badgers' skins, and put to the staves of it.

“And when Aaron and his sons have made an end of covering the Sanctuary and all the vessels of the Sanctuary as the camp is to set forward, after that the sons of Kohath shall come to bear it. But they shall not touch any holy thing, lest they die. These things are the burden of the sons of Kohath in The Tabernacle of the Congregation.

“And to the office of Eleazar the son of Aaron the priest pertaineth the oil for the Light, and the sweet incense, and the daily meat offering, and the anointing oil, and the oversight of all The Tabernacle, and of all that therein is, in the Sanctuary, and in the vessels thereof.”

And THE LORD spake unto Moses and unto Aaron, saying, “Cut ye not off the tribe of the families of the Kohathites from among the Levites; but thus do unto them, that they may live, and not die, when they approach unto the most holy things:

“Aaron and his sons shall go in and appoint them every one to his service and to his burden; but they shall not go in to see when the holy things are covered, lest they die.”

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, “Take also the sum of the sons of Gershon throughout the Houses of their fathers, by their families. From thirty years old and upward until fifty years old shalt thou number them; all that enter in to perform the service to do the work in The Tabernacle of the Congregation.

“This is the service of the families of the Gershonites, to serve, and for burdens; and they shall bear the curtains of The Tabernacle, and The Tabernacle of the Congregation, his covering, and the covering of the badgers' skins that is above upon it, and the hanging for the door of The Tabernacle of the congregation, and the hangings of the court, and the hanging for the door of the gate of the court, which is by The Tabernacle and by the Altar round about, and their cords, and all the instruments of their service, and all that is made for them - so shall they serve.

“At the appointment of Aaron and his sons shall be all the service of the sons of the Gershonites, in all their burdens, and in all their service; and ye shall appoint unto them in charge all their burdens.

“This is the service of the families of the sons of Gershon in The Tabernacle of the Congregation; and their charge shall be under the hand of Ithamar the son of Aaron the priest.

“As for the sons of Merari, thou shalt number them after their families, by the House of their fathers, from thirty years old and upward even unto fifty years old shalt thou number them, every one that entereth into the service to do the work of The Tabernacle of the Congregation. And this is the charge of their burden according to all their service in The Tabernacle of the Congregation - the boards of The Tabernacle, and the bars thereof, and the pillars thereof, and sockets thereof, and the pillars of the Court round about, and their sockets, and their pins, and their cords, with all their instruments, and with all their service. And by name ye shall reckon the instruments of the charge of their burden.

“This is the service of the families of the sons of Merari, according to all their service, in The Tabernacle of the Congregation, under the hand of Ithamar the son of Aaron the priest.”

And Moses and Aaron and the chief of the congregation numbered the sons of the Kohathites after their families and after the House of their fathers, from thirty years old and upward even unto fifty years old, every one that entereth into the service for the work in The Tabernacle of the Congregation; and those that were numbered of them by their families were two thousand seven hundred and fifty.

These were they that were numbered of the families of the Kohathites, all that might do service in The Tabernacle of the Congregation, which Moses and Aaron did number according to the commandment of THE LORD by the hand of Moses.

And those that were numbered of the sons of Gershon, throughout their families and by the House of their fathers from thirty years old and upward even unto fifty years old, every one that entereth into the service for the work in The Tabernacle of the Congregation, even those that were numbered of them throughout their families by the House of their fathers were two thousand and six hundred and thirty.

These are they that were numbered of the families of the sons of Gershon, of all that might do service in The Tabernacle of the Congregation, whom Moses and Aaron did number according to the commandment of THE LORD.

And those that were numbered of the families of the sons of Merari, throughout their families by the House of their fathers from thirty years old and upward even unto fifty years old, every one that entereth into the service for the work in The Tabernacle of the Congregation, even those that were numbered of them after their families were three thousand and two hundred.

These be those that were numbered of the families of the sons of Merari, whom Moses and Aaron numbered according to the Word of THE LORD by the hand of Moses.

All those that were numbered of the Levites whom Moses and Aaron and the chief of Israel numbered, after their families and after the House of their fathers from thirty years old and upward even unto fifty years old, every one that came to do the service of the ministry and the service of the burden in The Tabernacle of the Congregation, even those that were numbered of them were eight thousand and five hundred and fourscore.

According to the commandment of THE LORD they were numbered by the hand of Moses, every one according to his service and according to his burden; thus were they numbered of him, as THE LORD commanded Moses.

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, "Command the Children of Israel that they put out of the camp every leper, and every one that hath an issue, and whosoever is defiled by the dead. Both male and female shall ye put out, without the camp shall ye put them; that they defile not their camps in the midst whereof I dwell." And the Children of Israel did so and put them out without the camp; as THE LORD spake unto Moses, so did the Children of Israel.

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, "Speak unto the Children of Israel:

"When a man or woman shall commit any sin that men commit, to do a trespass against THE LORD, and that person be guilty, then they shall confess their sin which they have done. And he shall recompense his trespass with the principal thereof, and add unto it the fifth part thereof, and give it unto him against whom he hath trespassed. But if the man have no kinsman to recompense the trespass unto, let the trespass be recompensed unto THE LORD, even to the priest - beside the ram of the atonement, whereby an atonement shall be made for him. And every offering of all the holy things of the Children of Israel which they bring unto the priest shall be his. And every man's hallowed things shall be his. Whatsoever any man giveth the priest, it shall be his."

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, "Speak unto the Children of Israel, and say unto them:

"If any man's wife go aside and commit a trespass against him (and a man lie with her carnally), and it be hid from the eyes of her husband and be kept close and she be defiled, and there be no witness against her, neither she be taken with the manner... and the spirit of jealousy come upon him and he be jealous of his wife and she be defiled - *or*, if the spirit of jealousy come upon him and he be jealous of his wife and she be *not* defiled... then shall the man bring his wife unto the priest, and he shall bring her offering for her the tenth part of an ephah of barley meal (he shall pour no oil upon it, nor put frankincense thereon; for it is an offering of jealousy, an offering of memorial, bringing iniquity to remembrance). And the priest shall bring her near and set her before THE LORD. And the priest shall take holy water in an earthen vessel; and of the dust that is in the floor of The Tabernacle the priest shall take and put it into the water. And the priest shall set the woman before THE LORD and uncover the woman's head and put the offering of memorial in her hands which is the jealousy offering; and the priest shall have in *his* hand the bitter water that causeth the curse.

“And the priest shall charge her by an oath and say unto the woman, *‘If no man have lain with thee and if thou hast not gone aside to uncleanness with another instead of thy husband, be thou free from this bitter water that causeth the curse! But if thou hast gone aside to another instead of thy husband and if thou be defiled and some man have lain with thee beside thine husband...’* (then the priest shall charge the woman with an oath of cursing, and the priest shall say unto the woman), *‘...THE LORD make thee a curse and an oath among thy people when THE LORD doth make thy thigh to rot and thy belly to swell, and this water that causeth the curse shall go into thy bowels, to make thy belly to swell, and thy thigh to rot.’*

“And the woman shall say, *‘Amen! Amen!’* And the priest shall write these curses in a book, and he shall blot them out with the bitter water. And he shall cause the woman to drink the bitter water that causeth the curse, and the water that causeth the curse shall enter into her and become bitter. Then the priest shall take the jealousy offering out of the woman's hand and shall wave the offering before THE LORD and offer it upon the Altar. And the priest shall take an handful of the offering, even the memorial thereof, and burn it upon the Altar, and afterward shall cause the woman to drink the water.

“And when he hath made her to drink the water, then it shall come to pass that, *if she be defiled and have done trespass against her husband, that the water that causeth the curse shall enter into her and become bitter, and her belly shall swell and her thigh shall rot, and the woman shall be a curse among her people. And if the woman be not defiled but be clean, then she shall be free and shall conceive seed.*

“This is the Law of Jealousies when a wife goeth aside to another instead of her husband and is defiled, or when the spirit of jealousy cometh upon him and he be jealous over his wife and shall set the woman before THE LORD, and the priest shall execute upon her all this law. Then shall the man be guiltless from iniquity, and this woman shall bear her iniquity.”

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, “Speak unto the Children of Israel and say unto them:

“When either man or woman shall separate themselves to vow a vow of a Nazarite, to separate themselves unto THE LORD, he shall separate himself from wine and strong drink and shall drink no vinegar of wine or vinegar of strong drink, neither shall he drink any liquor of grapes, nor eat moist grapes or dried. All the days of his separation shall he eat nothing that is made of the vine tree - from the kernels even to the husk. All the days of the vow of his separation there shall no razor come upon his head. Until the days be fulfilled in the which he separateth himself unto THE LORD, he shall be holy, and shall let the locks of the hair of his head grow. All the days that he separateth himself unto THE LORD he shall come at no dead body. He shall not make himself unclean for his father, or for his mother, for his brother, or for his sister, when they die, because the consecration of his God is upon his head. All the days of his separation he is holy unto THE LORD. And if any man die very suddenly by him and he hath defiled the head of his consecration, then he shall shave his head in the day of his cleansing, on the Seventh Day shall he shave it. And on the eighth day he shall bring two turtles or two young pigeons to the priest, to the door of The Tabernacle of the Congregation; and the priest shall offer the one for a sin offering and the other for a burnt offering and make an atonement for him (for that he sinned by the dead) and shall hallow his head that same day. And he shall consecrate unto THE LORD the days of his separation, and shall bring a lamb of the first year for a trespass offering; but the days that were before shall be lost, because his separation was defiled.

“And this is the law of the Nazarite when the days of his separation are fulfilled: he shall be brought unto the door of The Tabernacle of the Congregation and he shall offer his offering unto THE LORD - one he-lamb of the first year without blemish for a burnt offering, and one ewe-lamb of the first year without blemish for a sin offering, and one ram without blemish for peace offerings, and a basket of unleavened bread, cakes of fine flour mingled with oil, and wafers of unleavened bread anointed with oil, and their meat offering, and their drink offerings. And the priest shall bring them before THE LORD and shall offer his sin offering and his burnt offering; and he shall offer the ram for a sacrifice of peace offerings unto THE LORD with the basket of unleavened bread. The priest shall offer also his meat offering and his drink offering. And the Nazarite shall shave the head of his separation at the door of The Tabernacle of the Congregation, and shall take the hair of the head of his separation and put it in the fire which is under the sacrifice of the peace offerings. And the priest shall take the sodden shoulder of the ram and one unleavened cake out of the basket and one unleavened wafer and shall put them upon the hands of the

Nazarite after the hair of his separation is shaven; and the priest shall wave them for a wave offering before THE LORD. This is holy for the priest with the wave breast and heave shoulder. And after that the Nazarite may drink wine. This is the law of the Nazarite who hath vowed, and of his offering unto THE LORD for his separation, beside that that his hand shall get. According to the vow which he vowed, so he must do after the law of his separation.”

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, “Speak unto Aaron and unto his sons, saying: On this wise ye shall bless the Children of Israel, saying unto them:

***‘THE LORD bless thee and keep thee!  
THE LORD make His face shine upon thee and be gracious unto thee!  
THE LORD lift up His countenance upon thee and give thee peace!’***

And they shall put My name upon the Children of Israel; and I will bless them.”

And it came to pass on the day that Moses had fully set up The Tabernacle and had anointed it and sanctified it and all the instruments thereof - both the Altar and all the vessels thereof - and had anointed them and sanctified them, that the princes of Israel (heads of the House of their fathers who were the princes of the tribes and were over them that were numbered) offered, and they brought their offering before THE LORD - six covered wagons and twelve oxen; a wagon for two of the princes, and for each one an ox. And they brought them before The Tabernacle.

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, “Take it of them, that they may be to do the service of The Tabernacle of the Congregation; and thou shalt give them unto the Levites, to every man according to his service.”

And Moses took the wagons and the oxen and gave them unto the Levites. Two wagons and four oxen he gave unto the sons of Gershon according to their service, and four wagons and eight oxen he gave unto the sons of Merari according unto their service, under the hand of Ithamar the son of Aaron the priest. But unto the sons of Kohath he gave none because the service of the Sanctuary belonging unto them was that they should bear upon their shoulders.

And the princes offered for dedicating of the Altar in the day that it was anointed, even the princes offered their offering before the Altar. And THE LORD said unto Moses, “They shall offer their offering, each prince on his day, for the dedicating of the Altar.”

And he that offered his offering the first day was Nahshon the son of Amminadab of the tribe of Judah; and his offering was:

- one silver charger, the weight thereof was an hundred and thirty shekels,
- one silver bowl of seventy shekels, after the shekel of the Sanctuary  
(both of them were full of fine flour mingled with oil for a meat offering),
- one spoon of ten shekels of gold, full of incense,
- one young bullock,
- one ram,
- one lamb of the first year for a burnt offering,
- one kid of the goats for a sin offering.

And for a sacrifice of peace offerings:

- two oxen,
- five rams,
- five he-goats,
- five lambs of the first year.

This was the offering of Nahshon the son of Amminadab.

On the second day Nethaneel the son of Zuar, prince of Issachar, did offer. He offered for his offering:

- one silver charger, the weight whereof was an hundred and thirty shekels,
- one silver bowl of seventy shekels, after the shekel of the Sanctuary (both of them full of fine flour mingled with oil for a meat offering),
- one spoon of gold of ten shekels, full of incense,
- one young bullock,
- one ram,
- one lamb of the first year for a burnt offering,
- one kid of the goats for a sin offering.

And for a sacrifice of peace offerings:

- two oxen,
- five rams,
- five he-goats,
- five lambs of the first year.

This was the offering of Nethaneel the son of Zuar.

On the third day Eliab the son of Helon, prince of the children of Zebulun, did offer. His offering was:

- one silver charger, the weight whereof was an hundred and thirty shekels,
- one silver bowl of seventy shekels, after the shekel of the Sanctuary (both of them full of fine flour mingled with oil for a meat offering),
- one golden spoon of ten shekels, full of incense,
- one young bullock,
- one ram,
- one lamb of the first year for a burnt offering,
- one kid of the goats for a sin offering

And for a sacrifice of peace offerings:

- two oxen,
- five rams,
- five he-goats,
- five lambs of the first year.

This was the offering of Eliab the son of Helon.

On the fourth day Elizur the son of Shedeur, prince of the children of Reuben, did offer. His offering was:

- one silver charger of the weight of an hundred and thirty shekels,
- one silver bowl of seventy shekels, after the shekel of the Sanctuary (both of them full of fine flour mingled with oil for a meat offering),
- one golden spoon of ten shekels, full of incense,
- one young bullock,
- one ram,
- one lamb of the first year for a burnt offering,
- one kid of the goats for a sin offering.

And for a sacrifice of peace offerings:

- two oxen,
- five rams,
- five he-goats,
- five lambs of the first year.

This was the offering of Elizur the son of Shedeur.

On the fifth day Shelumiel the son of Zurishaddai, prince of the children of Simeon, did offer. His offering was:

- one silver charger, the weight whereof was an hundred and thirty shekels,
- one silver bowl of seventy shekels, after the shekel of the Sanctuary (both of them full of fine flour mingled with oil for a meat offering),
- one golden spoon of ten shekels, full of incense,
- one young bullock,
- one ram,
- one lamb of the first year for a burnt offering,
- one kid of the goats for a sin offering.

And for a sacrifice of peace offerings:

- two oxen,
- five rams,
- five he-goats,
- five lambs of the first year.

This was the offering of Shelumiel the son of Zurishaddai.

On the sixth day Eliasaph the son of Deuel, prince of the children of Gad, offered. His offering was:

- one silver charger of the weight of an hundred and thirty shekels,
- a silver bowl of seventy shekels, after the shekel of the Sanctuary (both of them full of fine flour mingled with oil for a meat offering),
- one golden spoon of ten shekels, full of incense,
- one young bullock,
- one ram,
- one lamb of the first year for a burnt offering,
- one kid of the goats for a sin offering.

And for a sacrifice of peace offerings:

- two oxen,
- five rams,
- five he-goats,
- five lambs of the first year.

This was the offering of Eliasaph the son of Deuel.

On the Seventh Day Elishama the son of Ammihud, prince of the children of Ephraim, offered. His offering was:

- one silver charger, the weight whereof was an hundred and thirty shekels,
- one silver bowl of seventy shekels, after the shekel of the Sanctuary (both of them full of fine flour mingled with oil for a meat offering),
- one golden spoon of ten shekels, full of incense,
- one young bullock,
- one ram,
- one lamb of the first year for a burnt offering,
- one kid of the goats for a sin offering.

And for a sacrifice of peace offerings:

- two oxen,
- five rams,
- five he-goats,
- five lambs of the first year.

This was the offering of Elishama the son of Ammihud.

On the eighth day offered Gamaliel the son of Pedahzur, prince of the children of Manasseh. His offering was:

- one silver charger of the weight of an hundred and thirty shekels,
- one silver bowl of seventy shekels, after the shekel of the Sanctuary (both of them full of fine flour mingled with oil for a meat offering),
- one golden spoon of ten shekels, full of incense,
- one young bullock,
- one ram,
- one lamb of the first year for a burnt offering,
- one kid of the goats for a sin offering.

And for a sacrifice of peace offerings:

- two oxen,
- five rams,
- five he-goats,
- five lambs of the first year.

This was the offering of Gamaliel the son of Pedahzur.

On the ninth day Abidan the son of Gideoni, prince of the children of Benjamin, offered. His offering was:

- one silver charger, the weight whereof was an hundred and thirty shekels,
- one silver bowl of seventy shekels, after the shekel of the Sanctuary (both of them full of fine flour mingled with oil for a meat offering),
- one golden spoon of ten shekels, full of incense,
- one young bullock,
- one ram,
- one lamb of the first year for a burnt offering,
- one kid of the goats for a sin offering.

And for a sacrifice of peace offerings:

- two oxen,
- five rams,
- five he-goats,
- five lambs of the first year.

This was the offering of Abidan the son of Gideoni.

On the tenth day Ahiezer the son of Ammishaddai, prince of the children of Dan, offered. His offering was:

- one silver charger, the weight whereof was an hundred and thirty shekels,
- one silver bowl of seventy shekels, after the shekel of the Sanctuary (both of them full of fine flour mingled with oil for a meat offering),
- one golden spoon of ten shekels, full of incense,
- one young bullock,
- one ram,
- one lamb of the first year for a burnt offering,
- one kid of the goats for a sin offering.

And for a sacrifice of peace offerings:

- two oxen,
- five rams,
- five he-goats,
- five lambs of the first year.

This was the offering of Ahiezer the son of Ammishaddai.

On the eleventh day Pagiel the son of Ocran, prince of the children of Asher, offered. His offering was:

- one silver charger, the weight whereof was an hundred and thirty shekels,
- one silver bowl of seventy shekels, after the shekel of the Sanctuary (both of them full of fine flour mingled with oil for a meat offering),
- one golden spoon of ten shekels, full of incense,
- one young bullock,
- one ram,
- one lamb of the first year for a burnt offering,
- one kid of the goats for a sin offering.

And for a sacrifice of peace offerings:

- two oxen,
- five rams,
- five he-goats,
- five lambs of the first year.

This was the offering of Pagiel the son of Ocran.

On the twelfth day Ahira the son of Enan, prince of the children of Naphtali, offered. His offering was

- one silver charger, the weight whereof was an hundred and thirty shekels,
- one silver bowl of seventy shekels, after the shekel of the Sanctuary (both of them full of fine flour mingled with oil for a meat offering),
- one golden spoon of ten shekels, full of incense,
- one young bullock,
- one ram,
- one lamb of the first year for a burnt offering,
- one kid of the goats for a sin offering.

And for a sacrifice of peace offerings:

- two oxen,
- five rams,
- five he-goats,
- five lambs of the first year.

This was the offering of Ahira the son of Enan.

This was the dedication of the Altar in the day when it was anointed by the princes of Israel:

- twelve chargers of silver,
- twelve silver bowls,
- twelve spoons of gold,
- each charger of silver weighing an hundred and thirty shekels,
- each bowl seventy,
- all the silver vessels weighed two thousand and four hundred shekels, after the shekel of the Sanctuary,
- the golden spoons were twelve, full of incense, weighing ten shekels apiece after the shekel of the Sanctuary,
- all the gold of the spoons was an hundred and twenty shekels,
- all the oxen for the burnt offering were twelve bullocks,
- the rams twelve,
- the lambs of the first year twelve (with their meat offering),
- and the kids of the goats (for sin offering) twelve,
- and all the oxen for the sacrifice of the peace offerings were twenty and four bullocks,
- the rams sixty,
- the he-goats sixty,
- the lambs of the first year sixty.

This was the dedication of the Altar after that it was anointed.

And when Moses was gone into The Tabernacle of the Congregation to speak with Him, then he heard the voice of One speaking unto him from off the Mercy Seat that was upon the Ark of Testimony, from between the two cherubims. And He spake unto him. And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, "Speak unto Aaron, and say unto him: When thou lightest the lamps, the seven lamps shall give light over against the Candlestick."

And Aaron did so; he lighted the lamps thereof over against the Candlestick, as THE LORD commanded Moses. And this work of the Candlestick was of beaten gold, unto the shaft thereof, unto the flowers thereof, was beaten work; according unto the pattern which THE LORD had showed Moses, so he made the Candlestick.

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, "Take the Levites from among the Children of Israel and cleanse them. And thus shalt thou do unto them to cleanse them:

"Sprinkle water of purifying upon them, and let them shave all their flesh, and let them wash their clothes, and so make themselves clean. Then let them take a young bullock with his meat offering, even fine flour mingled with oil, and another young bullock shalt thou take for a sin offering. And thou shalt bring the Levites before The Tabernacle of the Congregation and thou shalt gather the whole assembly of the Children of Israel together. And thou shalt bring the Levites before THE LORD. And the Children of Israel shall put their hands upon the Levites, and Aaron shall offer the Levites before THE LORD for an offering of the Children of Israel that they may execute the service of THE LORD. And the Levites shall lay their hands upon the heads of the bullocks, and thou shalt offer the one for a sin offering and the other for a burnt offering unto THE LORD to make an atonement for the Levites. And thou shalt set the Levites before Aaron, and before his sons, and offer them for an offering unto THE LORD. Thus shalt thou separate the Levites from among the Children of Israel, and the Levites shall be Mine.

"And after that shall the Levites go in to do the service of The Tabernacle of the Congregation. And thou shalt cleanse them and offer them for an offering. For they are wholly given unto Me from among the Children of Israel - instead of such as open every womb, even instead of the firstborn of all the Children of Israel, have I taken them unto Me. For all the firstborn of the Children of Israel are Mine - both man and beast. On the day that I smote every firstborn in the land of Egypt I sanctified them for Myself. And I have taken the Levites for all the firstborn of the Children of Israel. And I have given the Levites as a gift to Aaron and to his sons from among the Children of Israel, to do the service of the Children of Israel in The Tabernacle of the Congregation and to make an atonement for the Children of Israel, that there be no plague among the Children of Israel when the Children of Israel come nigh unto the Sanctuary."

And Moses and Aaron and all the congregation of the Children of Israel did to the Levites according unto all that THE LORD commanded Moses concerning the Levites; so did the Children of Israel unto them.

And the Levites were purified, and they washed their clothes, and Aaron offered them as an offering before THE LORD; and Aaron made an atonement for them to cleanse them. And after that went the Levites in to do their service in The Tabernacle of the Congregation before Aaron and before his sons; as THE LORD had commanded Moses concerning the Levites, so did they unto them.

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, "This is it that belongeth unto the Levites: from twenty and five years old and upward they shall go in to wait upon the service of The Tabernacle of the Congregation, and from the age of fifty years they shall cease waiting upon the service thereof and shall serve no more but shall minister with their brethren in The Tabernacle of the Congregation, to keep the charge, and shall do no service. Thus shalt thou do unto the Levites touching their charge."

And THE LORD spake unto Moses in the wilderness of Sinai, in the first month of the second year after they were come out of the land of Egypt, saying, "Let the Children of Israel also keep the Passover at His

appointed season. In the fourteenth day of this month, at even, ye shall keep it in His appointed season; according to all the rites of it and according to all the ceremonies thereof shall ye keep it.”

And Moses spake unto the Children of Israel that they should keep the Passover. And they kept the Passover on the fourteenth day of the first month at even in the wilderness of Sinai; according to all that THE LORD commanded Moses, so did the Children of Israel.

And there were certain men who were defiled by the dead body of a man, that they could not keep the Passover on that day. And they came before Moses and before Aaron on that day. And those men said unto him, “We are defiled by the dead body of a man. Wherefore are we kept back that we may not offer an offering of THE LORD in His appointed season among the Children of Israel?”

And Moses said unto them, “Stand still and I will hear what THE LORD will command concerning you.”

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, “Speak unto the Children of Israel, saying:

“If any man of you or of your posterity shall be unclean by reason of a dead body, or be in a journey afar off, yet he *shall* keep the Passover unto THE LORD. The fourteenth day of the second month at even they shall keep it and eat it with unleavened bread and bitter herbs. They shall leave none of it unto the morning, nor break any bone of it - according to all the ordinances of the Passover they shall keep it. But the man that is clean and is not in a journey and <sup>1</sup>forbareth to keep the Passover, even the same soul shall be cut off from among his people; because he brought not the offering of THE LORD in his appointed season, that man shall bear his sin. *<sup>1</sup>withdraws/desists/shuns*

“And if a stranger shall sojourn among you and will keep the Passover unto THE LORD, according to the ordinance of the Passover and according to the manner thereof, so shall he do. Ye shall have <sup>1</sup>one ordinance, both for the stranger, and for him that was born in the land.” *<sup>1</sup>the same regulations*

And on the day that The Tabernacle was reared up, the cloud covered The Tabernacle, namely, the Tent of the Testimony. And at even there was upon The Tabernacle as it were the appearance of fire until the morning. So it was always - the cloud covered it by day, and the appearance of fire by night. And when the cloud was taken up from The Tabernacle, then after that the Children of Israel journeyed. And in the place where the cloud abode, there the Children of Israel pitched their tents. At the commandment of THE LORD the Children of Israel journeyed, and at the commandment of THE LORD they pitched. As long as the cloud abode upon The Tabernacle they rested in their tents. And when the cloud tarried long upon The Tabernacle many days, then the Children of Israel kept the charge of THE LORD and journeyed not.

And so it was, when the cloud was a few days upon The Tabernacle, according to the commandment of THE LORD they abode in their tents and according to the commandment of THE LORD they journeyed. And so it was, when the cloud abode from even unto the morning, and that the cloud was taken up in the morning, then they journeyed. Whether it was by day or by night that the cloud was taken up, they journeyed. Or whether it were two days, or a month, or a year, that the cloud tarried upon The Tabernacle, remaining thereon, the Children of Israel abode in their tents and journeyed not. But when it was taken up, they journeyed. At the commandment of THE LORD they rested in the tents, and at the commandment of THE LORD they journeyed. They kept the charge of THE LORD at the commandment of THE LORD by the hand of Moses.

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, “Make thee two trumpets of silver; of a <sup>1</sup>whole piece shalt thou make them: that thou mayest use them for the calling of the assembly, and for the journeying of the camps. And when they shall blow with them, all the assembly shall assemble themselves to thee at the door of The Tabernacle of the Congregation. And if they blow but with one trumpet, then the princes, which are heads of the thousands of Israel, shall gather themselves unto thee. When ye blow an alarm, then the camps that lie on the east parts shall go forward. When ye blow an alarm the second time, then the camps that lie on the south side shall take their journey; they shall blow an alarm for their journeys. But when the

congregation is to be gathered together, ye shall blow - but ye shall not sound an alarm. And the sons of Aaron, the priests, shall blow with the trumpets; and they shall be to you for an ordinance for ever throughout your generations.

*<sup>1</sup>single/one piece of silver*

“And if ye go to war in your land against the enemy that oppresseth you, then ye shall blow an alarm with the trumpets; and ye shall be remembered before THE LORD your God, and ye shall be saved from your enemies.

“Also in the day of your gladness, and in your solemn days, and in the beginnings of your months, ye shall blow with the trumpets over your burnt offerings, and over the sacrifices of your peace offerings; that they may be to you for a memorial before your God. I am <sup>1</sup>THE LORD your God!”

*<sup>1</sup>Yahweh (Jehovah)*

And it came to pass on the twentieth day of the second month, in the second year, that the cloud was taken up from off The Tabernacle of the Testimony. And the Children of Israel took their journeys out of the wilderness of Sinai; and the cloud rested in the wilderness of Paran. And they first took their journey according to the commandment of THE LORD by the hand of Moses.

In the first place went the standard of the camp of the children of **Judah** according to their armies, and over his host was Nahshon the son of Amminadab.

And over the host of the tribe of the children of **Issachar** was Nethaneel the son of Zuar.

And over the host of the tribe of the children of **Zebulun** was Eliab the son of Helon.

And The Tabernacle was taken down; and the sons of Gershon and the sons of Merari set forward, bearing The Tabernacle.

And the standard of the camp of **Reuben** set forward according to their armies, and over his host was Elizur the son of Shedeur.

And over the host of the tribe of the children of **Simeon** was Shelumiel the son of Zurishaddai.

And over the host of the tribe of the children of **Gad** was Eliasaph the son of Deuel.

And the Kohathites set forward, bearing the sanctuary; and the other did set up The Tabernacle against they came.

And the standard of the camp of the children of **Ephraim** set forward according to their armies, and over his host was Elishama the son of Ammihud.

And over the host of the tribe of the children of **Manasseh** was Gamaliel the son of Pedahzur.

And over the host of the tribe of the children of **Benjamin** was Abidan the son of Gideoni.

And the standard of the camp of the children of **Dan** set forward, which was the rereward of all the camps throughout their hosts; and over his host was Ahiezer the son of Ammishaddai.

And over the host of the tribe of the children of **Asher** was Pagiel the son of Ocran.

And over the host of the tribe of the children of **Naphtali** was Ahira the son of Enan.

Thus were the journeyings of the Children of Israel according to their armies when they set forward. And Moses said unto Hobab (the son of <sup>1</sup>Raguel the Midianite, Moses' father-in-law), “We are journeying unto the place of which THE LORD said, ‘*I will give it you*’. Come thou with us, and we will do thee good; for THE LORD hath spoken good concerning Israel.”

*<sup>1</sup>a variant spelling of Reuel (Jethro Reuel)*

And he said unto him, “I will not go; but I will depart to mine own land, and to my kindred.”

And he said, “Leave us not, I pray thee; forasmuch as thou knowest how we are to encamp in the wilderness, and thou mayest be to us instead of eyes. And it shall be, if thou go with us, yea, it shall be that what goodness THE LORD shall do unto us, the same will we do unto thee.”

And they departed from the mount of THE LORD three days' journey; and the Ark of the Covenant of THE LORD went before them in the three days' journey, to search out a resting place for them. And the cloud of THE LORD was upon them by day when they went out of the camp.

And it came to pass when the Ark set forward, that Moses said, "Rise up, LORD, and let Thine enemies be scattered; and let them that hate Thee flee before Thee!"

And when it rested, he said, "Return, O LORD, unto the many thousands of Israel!"

And when the people complained it displeased THE LORD, and THE LORD heard it, and His anger was kindled; and the fire of THE LORD burnt among them and consumed them that were in the uttermost parts of the camp. And the people cried unto Moses; and when Moses prayed unto THE LORD, the fire was quenched. And he called the name of the place *Taberah* because the fire of THE LORD burnt among them.

And the mixed multitude that was among them fell a-lusting and the Children of Israel also wept again, and said, "Who shall give us <sup>1</sup>flesh to eat? We remember the fish which we did eat in Egypt freely, the cucumbers, and the melons, and the leeks, and the onions, and the garlic; but now our soul is dried away. There is nothing at all (beside this Manna) before our eyes!" *<sup>1</sup>meat/food*

And the Manna was as coriander seed, and the colour thereof as the colour of bdellium. And the people went about and gathered it, and ground it in mills, or beat it in a mortar, and baked it in pans, and made cakes of it, and the taste of it was as the taste of fresh oil. And when the dew fell upon the camp in the night, the Manna fell upon it.

Then Moses heard the people weep throughout their families, every man in the door of his tent; and the anger of THE LORD was kindled greatly. Moses also was displeased.

And Moses said unto THE LORD, "Wherefore hast Thou afflicted Thy servant?! And wherefore have I not found favour in Thy sight that Thou layest the burden of all this people upon me?! Have I conceived all this people?! Have I begotten them that Thou shouldest say unto me, '*Carry them in thy bosom as a nursing father beareth the sucking child*' unto the land which Thou swarest unto their fathers?! Whence should I have flesh to give unto all this people?! For they weep unto me, saying, '*Give us flesh, that we may eat!*' I am not able to bear all this people alone because it is too heavy for me! And if Thou deal thus with me, kill me, I pray Thee, out of hand, if I have found favour in Thy sight and let me not see my wretchedness!"

And THE LORD said unto Moses, "Gather unto Me <sup>1</sup>seventy men of the elders of Israel whom thou knowest to be the elders of the people and officers over them, and bring them unto The Tabernacle of the Congregation that they may stand there with thee. And I will come down and talk with thee there, and I will take of the spirit which is upon thee and will put it upon them; and they shall bear the burden of the people with thee, that thou bear it not thyself alone. And say thou unto the people: Sanctify yourselves against to morrow, and ye shall eat flesh; for ye have wept in the ears of THE LORD, saying, '*Who shall give us flesh to eat? For it was well with us in Egypt*'. Therefore THE LORD will give you flesh, and ye shall eat. Ye shall not eat one day, nor two days, nor five days, neither ten days, nor twenty days, but even a whole month, until it come out at your nostrils and it be loathsome unto you! Because that ye have despised THE LORD which is among you, and have wept before him, saying, '*Why came we forth out of Egypt?*'"

*<sup>1</sup>The Great Sanhedrin – the council that would one day condemn Jesus and hand Him over to the Romans for crucifixion*

And Moses said, "The people, among whom I am, are six hundred thousand footmen, and Thou hast said, '*I will give them flesh, that they may eat a whole month.*' Shall the flocks and the herds be slain for them to suffice them? Or shall all the fish of the sea be gathered together for them to suffice them?"

And THE LORD said unto Moses, "Is THE LORD'S hand waxed short?! Thou shalt see now whether My Word shall come to pass unto thee or not!"

And Moses went out and told the people the Words of THE LORD, and gathered the seventy men of the elders of the people and set them round about The Tabernacle. And THE LORD came down in a cloud and spake unto him, and took of the spirit that was upon him and gave it unto the seventy elders. And it came to pass that, when the spirit rested upon them, they prophesied and did not cease.

But there remained two of the men in the camp (the name of the one was Eldad, and the name of the other Medad); and the spirit rested upon *them*. And they were of them that were written but went not out unto The Tabernacle, and they prophesied *in the camp*. And there ran a young man and told Moses, and said, "Eldad and Medad do prophesy in the camp!"

And Joshua the son of Nun (the servant of Moses, one of his young men) answered and said, "My lord Moses, forbid them!"

And Moses said unto him, "Enviest thou for *my* sake? <sup>1</sup>Would God that *all* THE LORD'S people were prophets and that THE LORD would put His spirit upon them!" *<sup>1</sup>I wish to God*

And Moses gat him into the camp, he and the elders of Israel.

And there went forth a wind from THE LORD and brought quails from the sea and let them fall by the camp as it were a day's journey on this side and as it were a day's journey on the other side, round about the camp, and as it were two cubits high upon the face of the earth. And the people stood up all that day, and all that night, and all the next day, and they gathered the quails. He that gathered least gathered ten homers. And they spread them all abroad for themselves round about the camp. And while the flesh was yet between their teeth, ere it was chewed, the wrath of THE LORD was kindled against the people, and THE LORD smote the people with a very great plague. And He called the name of that place *Kibroth-hattaavah*, because there they buried the people that lusted. And the people journeyed from Kibroth-hattaavah unto Hazereth; and abode at Hazereth.

And Miriam and Aaron spake against Moses because of the Ethiopian woman whom he had married (for he had married an Ethiopian woman). And they said, "Hath THE LORD indeed spoken only by Moses? Hath He not spoken also by us?"

And THE LORD heard it. (Now, the man Moses was very meek, <sup>1</sup>above all the men which were upon the face of the earth). And THE LORD spake suddenly unto Moses, and unto Aaron, and unto Miriam, "Come out ye three unto The Tabernacle of the Congregation!" *<sup>1</sup>more than*

And they three came out. And THE LORD came down in the pillar of the cloud and stood in the door of The Tabernacle and called Aaron and Miriam, and they both came forth.

And He said, "Hear now My Words! If there be a prophet among you, I THE LORD will make Myself known unto him in a vision and will speak unto him in a dream. My servant Moses is not so, who is faithful in all Mine House. With him will I speak *mouth to mouth*, even *apparently*, and not in dark speeches; and the similitude of THE LORD shall he behold! <sup>1</sup>Wherefore, then, were ye not afraid to speak against My servant Moses?!" *<sup>1</sup>why/how do you dare*

And the anger of THE LORD was kindled against them and He departed. And the cloud departed from off The Tabernacle; and, behold, Miriam became leprous, white as snow. And Aaron looked upon Miriam, and, behold, she was leprous.

And Aaron said unto Moses, "Alas, my lord, I beseech thee, lay not the sin upon us wherein we have done foolishly and wherein we have sinned! Let her not be as one dead, of whom the flesh is half consumed when he cometh out of his mother's womb!"

And Moses cried unto THE LORD, saying, "Heal her now, O God, I beseech thee!"

And THE LORD said unto Moses, "If her father had but spit in her face, should she not be ashamed seven days?! Let her be shut out from the camp seven days! And after that, let her be received in again." And Miriam was shut out from the camp seven days, and the people journeyed not till Miriam was brought in again.

And afterward the people removed from Hazeroth, and pitched in the wilderness of Paran. And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, "Send thou men, that they may search the land of Canaan which I give unto the Children of Israel; of every tribe of their fathers shall ye send a man, every one a ruler among them." And Moses by the commandment of THE LORD sent them from the wilderness of Paran; all those men were heads of the Children of Israel. And these were their names:

- of the tribe of Reuben, Shammua the son of Zaccur.
- of the tribe of Simeon, Shaphat the son of Hori.
- of the tribe of Judah, Caleb the son of Jephunneh.
- of the tribe of Issachar, Igal the son of Joseph.
- of the tribe of Ephraim, Oshea the son of Nun.
- of the tribe of Benjamin, Palti the son of Raphu.
- of the tribe of Zebulun, Gaddiel the son of Sodi.
- of the tribe of Joseph (namely, of the tribe of Manasseh), Gaddi the son of Susi.
- of the tribe of Dan, Ammiel the son of Gemalli.
- of the tribe of Asher, Sethur the son of Michael.
- of the tribe of Naphtali, Nahbi the son of Vophsi.
- of the tribe of Gad, Geuel the son of Machi.

These are the names of the men which Moses sent to spy out the land. And Moses called Oshea, the son of Nun, <sup>1</sup>*Jehoshua*. <sup>1</sup>Joshua/Jesus [Yahweh is Salvation]

And Moses sent them to spy out the land of Canaan and said unto them, "Get you up this way southward, and go up into the mountain and see the land, what it is; and the people that dwelleth therein, whether they be strong or weak, few or many; and what the land is that they dwell in, whether it be good or bad; and what cities they be that they dwell in, whether in tents, or in strong holds; and what the land is, whether it be fat or lean, whether there be wood therein, or not. And be ye of good courage, and bring of the fruit of the land."

Now, the time was the time of the firstripe grapes. So they went up and searched the land from the wilderness of Zin unto Rehob, as men come to Hamath. And they ascended by the south and came unto Hebron where Ahiman, Sheshai, and Talmi, the children of Anak, were. (Now, Hebron was built seven years before Zoan in Egypt). And they came unto the brook of Eshcol, and cut down from thence a branch with one cluster of grapes, and they bare it between two upon a staff; and they brought of the pomegranates, and of the figs. The place was called the brook Eshcol, because of the cluster of grapes which the Children of Israel cut down from thence. And they returned from searching of the land after forty days.

And they went and came to Moses, and to Aaron, and to all the congregation of the Children of Israel, unto the wilderness of Paran, to Kadesh; and brought back word unto them and unto all the congregation, and showed them the fruit of the land.

And they told him, and said, "We came unto the land whither thou sentest us, and surely it floweth with milk and honey - and this is the fruit of it! Nevertheless the people be strong that dwell in the land, and the cities are walled, and very great. And moreover, we saw the children of Anak there. The Amalekites dwell in the land of the south, and the Hittites and the Jebusites and the Amorites dwell in the mountains, and the Canaanites dwell by the sea and by the coast of Jordan."

And Caleb stilled the people before Moses and said, "Let us go up at once and possess it; for we are well able to overcome it!"

But the men that went up with him said, "We be not able to go up against the people; for they are stronger than we!"

And they brought up an evil report of the land which they had searched unto the Children of Israel, saying, "The land, through which we have gone to search it, is a land that eateth up the inhabitants thereof; and all the people that we saw in it are men of a great stature. And there we saw the giants, the sons of Anak, which come of the giants; and we were in our own sight as grasshoppers, and so we were in their sight!"

And all the congregation lifted up their voice and cried; and the people wept that night. And all the Children of Israel murmured against Moses and against Aaron, and the whole congregation said unto them, "Would God that we had died in the land of Egypt!" or "Would God we had died in this wilderness!" and "Wherefore hath THE LORD brought us unto this land to fall by the sword, that our wives and our children should be a prey? Were it not better for us to return into Egypt?" And they said one to another, "Let us make a captain, and let us return into Egypt!"

Then Moses and Aaron fell on their faces before all the assembly of the congregation of the Children of Israel. And Joshua the son of Nun and Caleb the son of Jephunneh, which were of them that searched the land, rent their clothes and they spake unto all the company of the Children of Israel, saying, "The land, which we passed through to search it, is an exceeding good land! If THE LORD delight in us, then HE will bring us into this land and give it us - a land which floweth with milk and honey! Only, rebel not ye against THE LORD, neither fear ye the people of the land; for they are bread for us! Their defence is departed from them and THE LORD is with us! Fear them not!"

But all the congregation bade stone them with stones. And the glory of THE LORD appeared in The Tabernacle of the Congregation before all the Children of Israel.

And THE LORD said unto Moses, "How long will this people provoke Me?! And how long will it be ere they believe Me for all the signs which I have showed among them?! I will smite them with the pestilence and disinherit them, and will make of *thee* a greater nation and mightier than they!"

And Moses said unto THE LORD, "Then the Egyptians shall hear it (for Thou broughtest up this people in Thy might from among them), and they will tell it to the inhabitants of this land - for they have heard that Thou, LORD, art among this people, that Thou, LORD, art seen *face to face*, and that Thy cloud standeth over them, and that Thou goest before them by day time in a pillar of a cloud and in a pillar of fire by night! Now, if Thou shalt kill all this people as one man, then the nations which have heard the fame of Thee will speak, saying, '*Because THE LORD was not able to bring this people into the land which He sware unto them, therefore He hath slain them in the wilderness!*' And now, I beseech Thee, let the power of my LORD be great according as Thou hast spoken, saying, '*THE LORD IS LONGSUFFERING AND OF GREAT MERCY, FORGIVING INIQUITY AND TRANSGRESSION, AND BY NO MEANS CLEARING THE GUILTY, VISITING THE INIQUITY OF THE FATHERS UPON THE CHILDREN UNTO THE THIRD AND FOURTH GENERATION!*' Pardon, I beseech Thee, the iniquity of this people according unto the greatness of Thy mercy, and as Thou hast forgiven this people, from Egypt even until now!"

And THE LORD said, "I have pardoned according to thy word. But as truly as I live, all the earth shall be filled with the glory of THE LORD! Because all those men which have seen My glory and My miracles which I did in Egypt and in the wilderness and have tempted Me now these ten times and have not hearkened to My voice, surely they shall not see the land which I swore unto their fathers, neither shall *any* of them that provoked Me see it but my servant Caleb, because he had <sup>1</sup>another spirit with him and hath followed Me fully. *Him* will I bring into the land whereinto he went, and his seed shall possess it! Now, the Amalekites and the Canaanites dwelt in the valley. To morrow turn you, and get you into the wilderness by the way of the Red Sea."

<sup>1</sup>*different attitude*

And THE LORD spake unto Moses and unto Aaron, saying, "How long shall I <sup>1</sup>bear with this evil congregation which murmur against Me? I have heard the murmurings of the Children of Israel which they murmur against Me. Say unto them: As truly as I live, saith THE LORD, as ye have spoken in Mine ears, so will I do to you! Your carcases *shall* fall in this wilderness; and all that were numbered of you, according to your whole number from twenty years old and upward, which have murmured against Me! Doubtless ye shall not come into the land concerning which I swore to make you dwell therein - save Caleb the son of Jephunneh and Joshua the son of Nun. But your little ones (which ye said <sup>2</sup>should be a prey!), them will I bring in, and *they* shall know the land which ye have despised! But as for you - your carcases, they shall fall in this wilderness! And your children shall wander in the wilderness forty years and <sup>1</sup>bear your whoredoms until your carcases be wasted in the wilderness!

<sup>1</sup>put up with <sup>2</sup>would

"After the number of the days in which ye searched the land, even forty days - each day for a year - shall ye bear your iniquities, even forty years and ye shall know My breach of promise! I THE LORD have said I will surely do it unto all this evil congregation that are gathered together against Me; in this wilderness they shall be consumed, and there they shall die!"

And the men, which Moses sent to search the land, who returned and made all the congregation to murmur against him by bringing up a slander upon the land, even those men that did bring up the evil report upon the land, died by the plague before THE LORD.

But Joshua the son of Nun and Caleb the son of Jephunneh, which were of the men that went to search the land, lived still. And Moses told these sayings unto all the Children of Israel; and the people mourned greatly. And they rose up early in the morning and gat them up into the top of the mountain, saying, "Lo, we be here and will go up unto the place which THE LORD hath promised; for we have sinned!"

And Moses said, "Wherefore now do ye transgress the commandment of THE LORD?! But it shall not prosper! Go not up (for THE LORD is not among you), that ye be not smitten before your enemies. For the Amalekites and the Canaanites are there before you, and ye shall fall by the sword; because ye are turned away from THE LORD, therefore THE LORD will not be with you!"

But they presumed to go up unto the hill top. Nevertheless the Ark of the Covenant of THE LORD, and Moses, departed not out of the camp. Then the Amalekites came down, and the Canaanites which dwelt in that hill, and smote them, and discomfited them, even unto Hormah.

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, "Speak unto the Children of Israel and say unto them: When ye be come into the land of your habitations which I give unto you, and will make an offering by fire unto THE LORD, a burnt offering or a sacrifice in performing a vow or in a freewill offering or in your solemn feasts, to make a sweet savour unto THE LORD of the herd or of the flock, then shall he that offereth his offering unto THE LORD bring a meat offering of a tenth deal of flour mingled with the fourth part of an hin of oil. And the fourth part of an hin of wine for a drink offering shalt thou prepare with the burnt offering or sacrifice, for one lamb. Or for a ram, thou shalt prepare for a meat offering two tenth deals of flour mingled with the third part of an hin of oil. And for a drink offering thou shalt offer the third part of an hin of wine, for a sweet savour unto THE LORD. And when thou preparest a bullock for a burnt offering, or for a sacrifice in performing a vow, or peace offerings unto THE LORD, then shall he bring with a bullock a meat offering of

three tenth deals of flour mingled with half an hin of oil. And thou shalt bring for a drink offering half an hin of wine, for an offering made by fire, of a sweet savour unto THE LORD. Thus shall it be done for one bullock, or for one ram, or for a lamb, or a kid. According to the number that ye shall prepare, so shall ye do to every one according to their number.

“All that are born of the country shall do these things after this manner, in offering an offering made by fire, of a sweet savour unto THE LORD. And if a stranger sojourn with you, or whosoever be among you in your generations, and will offer an offering made by fire of a sweet savour unto THE LORD as ye do, so he shall do. One ordinance shall be both for you of the congregation and also for the stranger that sojourneth with you, an ordinance for ever in your generations; as ye are, so shall the stranger be before THE LORD. One law and one manner shall be for you and for the stranger that sojourneth with you.”

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, “Speak unto the Children of Israel and say unto them:

“When ye come into the land whither I bring you, then it shall be that, when ye eat of the bread of the land, ye shall offer up an heave offering unto THE LORD. Ye shall offer up a cake of the first of your dough for an heave offering; as ye do the heave offering of the threshingfloor, so shall ye heave it. Of the first of your dough ye shall give unto THE LORD an heave offering in your generations.

“And if ye have erred and not observed all these commandments which THE LORD hath spoken unto Moses - even *all* that THE LORD hath commanded you by the hand of Moses from the day that THE LORD commanded Moses and henceforward among your generations - then it shall be, if ought be committed by ignorance without the knowledge of the congregation, that all the congregation shall offer one young bullock for a burnt offering, for a sweet savour unto THE LORD, with His meat offering, and His drink offering, according to the manner, and one kid of the goats for a sin offering. And the priest shall make an atonement for all the congregation of the Children of Israel and it shall be forgiven them; for it is ignorance. And they shall bring their offering a sacrifice made by fire unto THE LORD, and their sin offering before THE LORD, for their ignorance. And it shall be forgiven all the congregation of the Children of Israel *and* the stranger that sojourneth among them; seeing all the people were in ignorance. And if any soul sin through ignorance, then he shall bring a she-goat of the first year for a sin offering. And the priest shall make an atonement for the soul that sinneth ignorantly when he sinneth by ignorance before THE LORD, to make an atonement for him; and it shall be forgiven him. Ye shall have one law for him that sinneth through ignorance - both for him that is born among the Children of Israel and for the stranger that sojourneth among them.

“But the soul that doeth ought <sup>1</sup>presumptuously, whether he be born in the land or a stranger, the same reproacheth THE LORD; and that soul shall be cut off from among his people. Because he hath despised the Word of THE LORD and hath broken His commandment, that soul shall utterly be cut off; his iniquity shall be upon him.” *<sup>1</sup>knowingly/outright*

And while the Children of Israel were in the wilderness they found a man that gathered sticks upon the Sabbath day. And they that found him gathering sticks brought him unto Moses and Aaron and unto all the congregation. And they put him in ward, because it was not declared what should be done to him.

And THE LORD said unto Moses, “The man shall be surely put to death; all the congregation shall stone him with stones without the camp.”

And all the congregation brought him without the camp and stoned him with stones and he died, as THE LORD commanded Moses.

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, “Speak unto the Children of Israel and bid them that they make them fringes in the borders of their garments throughout their generations. And that they put upon the fringe of the borders a ribband of blue, and it shall be unto you for a fringe, that ye may look upon it and remember all the commandments of THE LORD and do them, and that ye seek not after your *own* heart and your *own* eyes (after which ye use to go a whoring), that ye may remember and do all My commandments,

and be holy unto your God. I am THE LORD your God, which brought you out of the land of Egypt to be your God. / am THE LORD your God!"

Now Korah (the son of Izhar, the son of Kohath, the son of Levi) and Dathan and Abiram (the sons of Eliab), and On (the son of Peleth), sons of Reuben - took men. And they rose up before Moses, with certain of the Children of Israel, two hundred and fifty princes of the assembly, famous in the congregation, men of renown. And they gathered themselves together against Moses and against Aaron and said unto them, "Ye take too much upon you, seeing all the congregation are holy, every one of them, and THE LORD is among them! Wherefore then lift ye up yourselves above the congregation of THE LORD?" *'descendants of*

And when Moses heard it, he fell upon his face. And he spake unto Korah and unto all his company, saying, "Even to morrow THE LORD will show who are His and who is holy, and will cause him to come near unto Him - even him whom He hath chosen will He cause to come near unto Him. This do:

"Take you censers - Korah and all his company - and put fire therein and put incense in them before THE LORD to morrow. And it shall be that the man whom THE LORD doth choose, *he* shall be holy. Ye take too much upon *you*, ye sons of Levi!"

And Moses said unto Korah, "Hear, I pray you, ye sons of Levi! Seemeth it but a small thing unto you that the God of Israel hath <sup>1</sup>separated you from the congregation of Israel, to bring you near to Himself to do the service of The Tabernacle of THE LORD, and to stand before the congregation to minister unto them? And He hath brought thee near to Him, and all thy brethren - the sons of Levi with thee. And seek ye the priesthood *also*?! For which cause both thou and all thy company are gathered together against THE LORD; and what is Aaron, that ye murmur against *him*?" *'chosen/selected*

And Moses sent to call Dathan and Abiram, the sons of Eliab which said, "We will not come up! Is it a small thing that thou hast brought us up out of a land that floweth with milk and honey to kill us in the wilderness, <sup>1</sup>except thou make thyself altogether a prince over us? Moreover thou hast *not* brought us into a land that floweth with milk and honey, or given us inheritance of fields and vineyards! Wilt thou put out the eyes of these men? We will *not* come up!" *'so that you can*

And Moses was very wroth and said unto THE LORD, "Respect not Thou their offering! I have not taken one ass from them, neither have I hurt one of them!"

And Moses said unto Korah, "Be thou and all thy company before THE LORD - thou and they *and* Aaron - to morrow! And take every man his censer, and put incense in them, and bring ye before THE LORD every man his censer - two hundred and fifty censers - thou also, and Aaron, each of you his censer."

And they took every man his censer, and put fire in them, and laid incense thereon, and stood in the door of The Tabernacle of the Congregation with Moses and Aaron. And Korah gathered all the congregation against them unto the door of The Tabernacle of the Congregation. And the glory of THE LORD appeared unto all the congregation.

And THE LORD spake unto Moses and unto Aaron, saying, "Separate yourselves from among this congregation that I may consume them in a moment!!"

And they fell upon their faces and said, "O God, the God of the spirits of all flesh! Shall one man sin, and wilt Thou be wroth with *all* the congregation?!"

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, "Speak unto the congregation, saying: <sup>1</sup>Get you up from about the <sup>2</sup>tabernacle of Korah, Dathan, and Abiram!!" *'get away from <sup>2</sup>tent*

And Moses rose up and went unto Dathan and Abiram, and the elders of Israel followed him. And he spake unto the congregation, saying, "Depart, I pray you, from the tents of these wicked men, and touch nothing of theirs, lest ye be consumed in all their sins!"

So they gat up from the tabernacle of Korah, Dathan, and Abiram, on every side. And Dathan and Abiram came out, and stood in the door of their tents, and their wives, and their sons, and their little children.

And Moses said, "Hereby ye shall know that THE LORD hath sent me to do all these works; for I have not done them of mine own mind. If these men die the common death of all men or if they be visited after the visitation of all men, then THE LORD hath not sent me! But if THE LORD make a new thing, and the earth open her mouth and swallow them up with all that appertain unto them, and they go down quick into the pit - then ye shall understand that these men have provoked THE LORD!"

And it came to pass as he had made an end of speaking all these words that the ground clave asunder that was under them. And the earth opened her mouth and swallowed them up and their houses and all the men that appertained unto Korah and all their goods. They, and all that appertained to them, went down alive into the pit, and the earth closed upon them and they perished from among the congregation. And all Israel that were round about them fled at the cry of them (for they said, *'Lest the earth swallow us up also!'*). And there came out a fire from THE LORD, and consumed the two hundred and fifty men that offered incense.

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, "Speak unto Eleazar, the son of Aaron the priest, that he take up the censers out of the burning, and scatter thou the fire yonder; for they are hallowed. The censers of these sinners-against-their-own-souls, let them make them broad plates for a covering of the Altar. For they offered them before THE LORD, therefore they are hallowed; and they shall be a sign unto the Children of Israel."

And Eleazar the priest took the brazen censers wherewith they-that-were-burnt had offered; and they were made broad plates for a covering of the Altar to be a memorial unto the Children of Israel, that no stranger which is not of the seed of Aaron come near to offer incense before THE LORD, that he be not as Korah and as his company - as THE LORD said to him by the hand of Moses.

But on the morrow all the congregation of the Children of Israel murmured against Moses and against Aaron, saying, "Ye have killed the people of THE LORD!"

And it came to pass, when the congregation was gathered against Moses and against Aaron, that they looked toward The Tabernacle of the Congregation - and, behold, the cloud covered it and the glory of THE LORD appeared. And Moses and Aaron came before The Tabernacle of the Congregation.

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, "Get you up from among this congregation that I may consume them as in a moment!!"

And they fell upon their faces. And Moses said unto Aaron, "Take a censer, and put fire therein from off the Altar, and put on incense, and go quickly unto the congregation, and make an atonement for them! For there is wrath gone out from THE LORD - the plague is begun!"

And Aaron took as Moses commanded and ran into the midst of the congregation; and, behold, the plague was begun among the people. And he put on incense and made an atonement for the people. And he stood between the dead and the living, and the plague was stayed.

Now, they that died in the plague were fourteen thousand and seven hundred, beside them that died about the matter of Korah. And Aaron returned unto Moses unto the door of The Tabernacle of the Congregation, and the plague was stayed.

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, "Speak unto the Children of Israel, and take of every one of them a rod according to the House of their fathers, of all their princes according to the House of their fathers - twelve rods. Write thou every man's name upon his rod. And thou shalt write Aaron's name upon the rod of Levi. For, <sup>1</sup>one rod shall be for the head of the House of their fathers. And thou shalt lay them up in The Tabernacle of the Congregation before the Testimony where I will meet with you. And it shall come to pass that the man's rod whom I shall choose shall blossom. And I will make to cease from Me the murmurings of the Children of Israel whereby they murmur against you!" *'each*

And Moses spake unto the Children of Israel, and every one of their princes gave him a rod apiece, for each prince one, according to their fathers' Houses, even twelve rods. And the rod of Aaron was among their rods. And Moses laid up the rods before THE LORD in The Tabernacle of Witness. And it came to pass that on the morrow Moses went into The Tabernacle of Witness and, behold - the rod of Aaron for the House of Levi was budded and brought forth buds, and bloomed blossoms, and yielded almonds. And Moses brought out all the rods from before THE LORD unto all the Children of Israel; and they looked, and took every man his rod.

And THE LORD said unto Moses, "Bring Aaron's rod again before The Testimony, to be kept for a token against the rebels; and thou shalt quite take away their murmurings from Me, that they die not!"

And Moses did so; as THE LORD commanded him, so did he. And the Children of Israel spake unto Moses, saying, "Behold, we die! We perish! We all perish! Whosoever cometh any thing near unto The Tabernacle of THE LORD shall die! Shall we be consumed with dying?"

And THE LORD said unto Aaron, "Thou and thy sons and thy father's House with thee shall bear the iniquity of the Sanctuary; and thou and thy sons with thee shall bear the iniquity of your priesthood. And thy brethren also of the tribe of Levi, the tribe of thy father, bring thou with thee that they may be joined unto thee and minister unto thee. But thou and thy sons with thee shall minister before The Tabernacle of Witness. And they shall keep thy charge and the charge of all The Tabernacle. Only, they shall not come nigh the vessels of the Sanctuary and the Altar, that neither they (nor ye also) die. And they shall be joined unto thee and keep the charge of The Tabernacle of the Congregation for all the service of The Tabernacle. And a stranger shall not come nigh unto you. And ye shall keep the charge of The Sanctuary and the charge of the Altar, that there be no wrath any more upon the Children of Israel. And I, behold, / have taken your brethren the Levites from among the Children of Israel. To you they are given as a gift for THE LORD to do the service of The Tabernacle of the Congregation. Therefore thou and thy sons with thee shall keep your priest's office for every thing of the Altar and within the Veil; and ye shall serve. I have given your priest's office unto you as a service of gift; and the stranger that cometh nigh shall be put to death."

And THE LORD spake unto Aaron, "Behold, I also have given thee the charge of Mine heave offerings of all the hallowed things of the Children of Israel; unto thee have I given them by reason of the anointing, and to thy sons, by an ordinance for ever.

"This shall be thine of the most holy things reserved from the fire: every oblation of theirs, every meat offering of theirs, and every sin offering of theirs, and every trespass offering of theirs (which they shall render unto Me), shall be most holy for thee and for thy sons. In the Most Holy Place shalt thou eat it; every male shall eat it. It shall be holy unto thee.

"And *this* is thine: the heave offering of their gift, with all the wave offerings of the Children of Israel. I have given them unto thee and to thy sons and to thy daughters with thee by a statute for ever; every one that is clean in thy house shall eat of it. All the best of the oil, and all the best of the wine, and of the wheat, the firstfruits of them which they shall offer unto THE LORD, them have I given thee. And

whatsoever is first ripe in the land which they shall bring unto THE LORD shall be thine; every one that is clean in thine house shall eat of it. Everything devoted in Israel shall be thine. Every thing that openeth the matrix in all flesh which they bring unto THE LORD - whether it be of men or beasts - shall be thine. Nevertheless, the firstborn of man shalt thou surely redeem, and the firstling of unclean beasts shalt thou redeem. And those that are to be redeemed, from a month old, shalt thou redeem according to thine estimation, for the money of five shekels, after the shekel of the Sanctuary, which is twenty gerahs. But the firstling of a cow, or the firstling of a sheep, or the firstling of a goat, thou shalt not redeem; they are holy. Thou shalt sprinkle their blood upon the Altar and shalt burn their fat for an offering made by fire for a sweet savour unto THE LORD.

“And the flesh of them shall be thine, as the wave breast and as the right shoulder are thine. All the heave offerings of the holy things which the Children of Israel offer unto THE LORD have I given thee and thy sons and thy daughters with thee by a statute for ever. It is a covenant of salt for ever before THE LORD unto thee and to thy seed with thee.”

And THE LORD spake unto Aaron, “Thou shalt have no inheritance in their land, neither shalt thou have any part among them. I am thy part and thine inheritance among the Children of Israel. And, behold, I have given the children of Levi all the tenth in Israel for an inheritance, for their service which they serve, even the service of The Tabernacle of the Congregation. Neither must the Children of Israel henceforth come nigh The Tabernacle of the Congregation, lest they bear sin and die. But the Levites shall do the service of The Tabernacle of the Congregation, and they shall bear their iniquity. It shall be a statute for ever throughout your generations that among the Children of Israel they have no inheritance. But the tithes of the Children of Israel, which they offer as an heave offering unto THE LORD, I have given to the Levites to inherit. Therefore I have said unto them, *‘Among the Children of Israel they shall have no inheritance.’*”

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, “Thus speak unto the Levites and say unto them: When ye take of the Children of Israel the tithes which I have given you from them for your inheritance, then ye shall offer up an heave offering of it for THE LORD, even a tenth part of the tithe. And this your heave offering shall be reckoned unto you, as though it were the corn of the threshingfloor, and as the fulness of the winepress. Thus ye *also* shall offer an heave offering unto THE LORD of all your tithes which ye receive of the Children of Israel; and ye shall give thereof THE LORD'S heave offering to Aaron the priest. Out of all your gifts ye shall offer every heave offering of THE LORD, of all the best thereof, even the hallowed part thereof out of it.

“Therefore thou shalt say unto them: When ye have heaved the best thereof from it, then it shall be counted unto the Levites as the increase of the threshingfloor, and as the increase of the winepress. And ye shall eat it in every place, ye and your households; for it is your reward for your service in The Tabernacle of the Congregation. And ye shall bear no sin by reason of it when ye have heaved from it the best of it, neither shall ye pollute the holy things of the Children of Israel, lest ye die.”

And THE LORD spake unto Moses and unto Aaron, saying, “This is the ordinance of the Law which THE LORD hath commanded, saying: Speak unto the Children of Israel that they bring thee a red heifer without spot, wherein is no blemish, and upon which never came yoke. And ye shall give her unto Eleazar the priest, that he may bring her forth without the camp, and one shall slay her before his face. And Eleazar the priest shall take of her blood with his finger and sprinkle of her blood directly before The Tabernacle of the Congregation seven times. And one shall burn the heifer in his sight; her skin, and her flesh, and her blood, with her dung, shall he burn. And the priest shall take cedar wood, and hyssop, and scarlet, and cast it into the midst of the burning of the heifer. Then the priest shall wash his clothes, and he shall bathe his flesh in water, and afterward he shall come into the camp, and the priest shall be unclean until the even. And he that burneth her shall wash his clothes in water, and bathe his flesh in water, and shall be unclean until the even.

“And a man that is clean shall gather up the ashes of the heifer and lay them up without the camp in a clean place, and it shall be kept for the congregation of the Children of Israel for a water of separation; it is a purification for sin. And he that gathereth the ashes of the heifer shall wash his clothes, and be

unclean until the even. And it shall be unto the Children of Israel and unto the stranger that sojourneth among them for a statute for ever.

“He that toucheth the dead body of any man shall be unclean seven days. He shall purify himself with it on the third day, and on the Seventh Day he shall be clean. But if he purify not himself the third day, then the Seventh Day he shall not be clean. Whosoever toucheth the dead body of any man that is dead, and purifieth not himself, defileth The Tabernacle of THE LORD; and that soul shall be cut off from Israel. Because the water of separation was not sprinkled upon him, he shall be unclean; his uncleanness is yet upon him.

“This is the law when a man dieth in a tent: all that come into the tent, and all that is in the tent, shall be unclean seven days. And every open vessel which hath no covering bound upon it is unclean.

“And whosoever toucheth one that is slain with a sword in the open fields, or a dead body, or a bone of a man, or a grave, shall be unclean seven days.

“And for an unclean person they shall take of the ashes of the burnt heifer of purification for sin, and running water shall be put thereto in a vessel. And a clean person shall take hyssop and dip it in the water and sprinkle it upon the tent, and upon all the vessels, and upon the persons that were there, and upon him that touched a bone or one slain or one dead or a grave. And the clean person shall sprinkle upon the unclean on the third day and on the Seventh Day. And on the Seventh Day he shall purify himself, and wash his clothes, and bathe himself in water, and shall be clean at even.

“But the man that shall be unclean and shall not purify himself, that soul shall be cut off from among the congregation, because he hath defiled the Sanctuary of THE LORD. The water of separation hath not been sprinkled upon him; he is unclean.

“And it shall be a perpetual statute unto them, that he that sprinkleth the water of separation shall wash his clothes; and he that toucheth the water of separation shall be unclean until even. And whatsoever the unclean person toucheth shall be unclean; and the soul that toucheth it shall be unclean until even.”

Then came the Children of Israel, even the whole congregation, into the desert of Zin in the first month; and the people abode in Kadesh. And Miriam died there, and was buried there.

And there was no water for the congregation. And they gathered themselves together against Moses and against Aaron. And the people chided with Moses and spake, saying, “Would God that we had died when our brethren died before THE LORD! And why have ye brought up the congregation of THE LORD into this wilderness that we and our cattle should die there? And wherefore have ye made us to come up out of Egypt, to bring us in unto this evil place? It is no place of seed, or of figs, or of vines, or of pomegranates; neither is there any water to drink!”

And Moses and Aaron went from the presence of the assembly unto the door of The Tabernacle of the Congregation, and they fell upon their faces, and the glory of THE LORD appeared unto them.

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, “Take the rod, and gather thou the assembly together - thou and Aaron thy brother - and SPEAK ye unto the rock before their eyes; and it shall give forth his water and thou shalt bring forth to them water out of the rock. So thou shalt give the congregation and their beasts drink.”

And Moses took the rod from before THE LORD as He commanded him. And Moses and Aaron gathered the congregation together before the rock, and he said unto them, “Hear now, ye rebels! Must <sup>1</sup>we fetch you water out of this rock?!”

<sup>1</sup>NOTE: here Moses makes the grave error of saying “we” instead of “God”, an error which greatly provokes the Lord and bars him from entering the Promised Land later

And Moses lifted up his hand, and with his rod he smote the rock twice; and the water came out abundantly, and the congregation drank, and their beasts also.

And THE LORD spake unto Moses and Aaron, "Because ye believed Me not, to sanctify Me in the eyes of the Children of Israel, therefore ye shall not bring this congregation into the land which I have given them!"

This is the water of Meribah, because the Children of Israel strove with THE LORD, and He was sanctified in them.

And Moses sent messengers from Kadesh unto the king of Edom, "Thus saith thy <sup>1</sup>brother Israel: Thou knowest all the travail that hath befallen us, how our fathers went down into Egypt, and we have dwelt in Egypt a long time; and the Egyptians vexed us and our fathers. And when we cried unto THE LORD, He heard our voice, and sent an angel, and hath brought us forth out of Egypt. And, behold, we are in Kadesh, a city in the uttermost of thy border. Let us pass, I pray thee, through thy country. We will not pass through the fields or through the vineyards, neither will we drink of the water of the wells. We will go by the King's High Way; we will not turn to the right hand nor to the left until we have passed thy borders."

<sup>1</sup>NOTE: Edom was the nickname of Esau, the brother of Jacob (Israel)

And Edom said unto him, "Thou shalt *not* pass by me, lest I come out against thee with the sword!"

And the Children of Israel said unto him, "We will go by the High Way. And if I and my cattle drink of thy water, then I will pay for it. I will only, without doing any thing else, go through on my feet."

And he said, "Thou shalt *not* go through!"

And Edom came out against him with much people and with a strong hand. Thus Edom refused to give Israel passage through his border. Wherefore Israel turned away from him. And the Children of Israel, even the whole congregation, journeyed from Kadesh and came unto Mount Hor.

And THE LORD spake unto Moses and Aaron in Mount Hor by the coast of the land of Edom, saying, "Aaron shall <sup>1</sup>be gathered unto his people. For he shall not enter into the land which I have given unto the Children of Israel, because ye rebelled against My Word at the water of Meribah. Take Aaron and Eleazar his son, and bring them up unto Mount Hor, and strip Aaron of his garments and put them upon Eleazar his son; and Aaron shall be gathered unto his people, and shall die there." <sup>1</sup>die

And Moses did as THE LORD commanded. And they went up into Mount Hor in the sight of all the congregation. And Moses stripped Aaron of his garments and put them upon Eleazar his son; and Aaron died there in the top of the mount, and Moses and Eleazar came down from the mount.

And when all the congregation saw that Aaron was dead, they mourned for Aaron thirty days, even all the House of Israel.

And when King Arad the Canaanite, which dwelt in the south, heard tell that Israel came (by the way of the spies), then he fought against Israel and took some of them prisoners.

And Israel vowed a vow unto THE LORD, and said, "If Thou wilt indeed deliver this people into my hand, then I will utterly destroy their cities!"

And THE LORD hearkened to the voice of Israel and delivered up the Canaanites; and they utterly destroyed them and their cities. And He called the name of the place *Hormah*.

And they journeyed from Mount Hor by the way of the Red sea to compass the land of Edom; and the soul of the people was much discouraged because of the way.

And the people spake against God and against Moses, "Wherefore have ye brought us up out of Egypt to die in the wilderness? For there is no bread, neither is there any water; and our soul loatheth this <sup>1</sup>light bread."  
*'the manna*

And THE LORD sent fiery serpents among the people, and they bit the people; and much people of Israel died. Therefore the people came to Moses and said, "We have sinned, for we have spoken against THE LORD, and against thee; pray unto THE LORD, that He take away the serpents from us!"



And Moses prayed for the people. And THE LORD said unto Moses, "Make thee a fiery serpent and set it upon a pole, and it shall come to pass that every one that is bitten, when he looketh upon it, shall live."

And Moses made a serpent of brass and put it upon a pole; and it came to pass that, if a serpent had bitten any man, when he beheld the serpent of brass, he lived.

And the Children of Israel set forward,

- and pitched in Oboth.
- And they journeyed from Oboth, and pitched at Ijeabarim, in the wilderness which is before Moab, toward the sunrising.
- From thence they removed, and pitched in the valley of Zared.
- From thence they removed, and pitched on the other side of Arnon, which is in the wilderness that cometh out of the coasts of the Amorites; for Arnon is the border of Moab, between Moab and the Amorites. (Wherefore it is said in the book of the wars of THE LORD what He did in the Red Sea and in the brooks of Arnon and at the stream of the brooks that goeth down to the dwelling of Ar and lieth upon the border of Moab).
- And from thence they went to Beer; that is the well whereof THE LORD spake unto Moses, "*Gather the people together and I will give them water.*" Then Israel sang this song:

"Spring up, O well; sing ye unto it.  
The princes digged the well, the nobles of the people digged it,  
by the direction of the lawgiver, with their staves."

- And from the wilderness they went to Mattanah.
- And from Mattanah to Nahaliel.
- And from Nahaliel to Bamoth.
- And from Bamoth in the valley that is in the country of Moab, to the top of Pisgah which looketh toward Jeshimon.

And Israel sent messengers unto Sihon king of the Amorites, saying, "Let me pass through thy land. We will not turn into the fields or into the vineyards; we will not drink of the waters of the well. But we will go along by the king's high way until we be past thy borders."

And Sihon would not suffer Israel to pass through his border, but Sihon gathered all his people together and went out against Israel into the wilderness.

And he came to Jahaz and fought against Israel. And Israel smote him with the edge of the sword and possessed his land from Arnon unto Jabbok, even unto the children of Ammon (for the border of the children of Ammon was strong).

And Israel took all these cities; and Israel dwelt in all the cities of the Amorites, in Heshbon and in all the villages thereof. For Heshbon was the city of Sihon the king of the Amorites who had fought against the former king of Moab and taken all his land out of his hand, even unto Arnon.

(Wherefore they that speak in proverbs say,

‘Come into Heshbon!  
Let the city of Sihon be built and prepared,  
for there is a fire gone out of Heshbon,  
a flame from the city of Sihon.  
It hath consumed Ar of Moab  
and the lords of the <sup>1</sup>high places of Arnon.  
Woe to thee, Moab!  
Thou art undone, O people of Chemosh!  
He hath given his sons that escaped and his daughters  
into captivity unto Sihon king of the Amorites.  
We have shot at them;  
Heshbon is perished even unto Dibon,  
and we have laid them waste even unto Nophah,  
which reacheth unto Medeba.”

*'shrines*

Thus Israel dwelt in the land of the Amorites. And Moses sent to spy out Jaazer, and they took the villages thereof, and drove out the Amorites that were there.

And they turned and went up by the way of Bashan; and Og the king of Bashan went out against them - he, and all his people, to the battle at Edrei.

And THE LORD said unto Moses, “Fear him not! For I have delivered him into thy hand, and all his people, and his land; and thou shalt do to him as thou didst unto Sihon king of the Amorites which dwelt at Heshbon.”

So they smote him and his sons and all his people until there was none left him alive; and they possessed his land.

And the Children of Israel set forward and pitched in the plains of Moab on this side Jordan by Jericho.

And Balak the son of Zippor saw all that Israel had done to the Amorites. And Moab was sore afraid of the people, because they were many. And Moab was distressed because of the Children of Israel. And Moab said unto the elders of Midian, “Now shall this company lick up all that are round about us, as the ox licketh up the grass of the field!”

And Balak the son of Zippor was king of the Moabites at that time. He sent messengers therefore, unto Balaam the son of Beor, to Pethor which is by the river of the land of the children of his people, to call him, saying, “Behold, there is a people come out from Egypt. Behold, they cover the face of the earth, and they abide over against me. Come now therefore, I pray thee, curse me this people; for they are too mighty for me! Peradventure I shall prevail, that we may smite them, and that I may drive them out of the land. For I <sup>1</sup>wot that he whom thou blessest is blessed, and he whom thou cursest is cursed.”

*'know*

And the elders of Moab and the elders of Midian departed with the rewards of divination in their hand; and they came unto Balaam, and spake unto him the words of Balak.

And he said unto them, “Lodge here this night, and I will bring you word again as THE LORD shall speak unto me.”

And the princes of Moab abode with Balaam.

And God came unto Balaam and said, “What men are these with thee?”

And Balaam said unto God, "Balak the son of Zippor, king of Moab, hath sent unto me, saying, '*Behold, there is a people come out of Egypt which covereth the face of the earth. Come now, curse me them; peradventure I shall be able to overcome them, and drive them out.*'"

And God said unto Balaam, "Thou shalt *not* go with them; thou shalt *not* curse the people; for they are blessed!"

And Balaam rose up in the morning and said unto the princes of Balak, "Get you into your land; for THE LORD refuseth to give me leave to go with you."

And the princes of Moab rose up, and they went unto Balak, and said, "Balaam refuseth to come with us."

And Balak sent yet again princes, more, and more honourable than they. And they came to Balaam and said to him, "Thus saith Balak the son of Zippor: Let nothing, I pray thee, hinder thee from coming unto me! For I will promote thee unto very great honour, and I will do whatsoever thou sayest unto me. Come therefore, I pray thee, curse me this people!"

And Balaam answered and said unto the servants of Balak, "If Balak would give me his house full of silver and gold, I cannot go beyond the Word of THE LORD my God, to do less or more! Now therefore, I pray you, tarry ye also here this night, that I may know what THE LORD will say unto me more." *'even if*

And God came unto Balaam at night and said unto him, "If the men come to call thee, rise up, and go with them; but yet the Word which I shall say unto thee, that shalt thou do."

And Balaam rose up in the morning, and saddled his ass, and went with the princes of Moab. And God's anger was kindled because he went; and the angel of THE LORD stood in the way for an adversary against him.

Now, he was riding upon his ass, and his two servants were with him. And the ass saw the angel of THE LORD standing in the way and his sword drawn in his hand. And the ass turned aside out of the way and went into the field; and Balaam smote the ass, to turn her into the way.

But the angel of THE LORD stood in a path of the vineyards - a wall being on this side and a wall on that side. And when the ass saw the angel of THE LORD, she thrust herself unto the wall and crushed Balaam's foot against the wall, and he smote her again.

And the angel of THE LORD went further and stood in a narrow place where was no way to turn either to the right hand or to the left. And when the ass saw the angel of THE LORD, she fell down under Balaam. And Balaam's anger was kindled, and he smote the ass with a staff.

And THE LORD opened the mouth of the ass, and she said unto Balaam, "What have I done unto thee, that thou hast smitten me these three times?!"

And Balaam said unto the ass, "Because thou hast mocked me! I would there were a sword in mine hand, for now would I kill thee!"

And the ass said unto Balaam, "Am not I thine ass, upon which thou hast ridden ever since I was thine unto this day? Was I *ever* wont to do so unto thee?"

And he said, "Nay."

Then THE LORD opened the eyes of Balaam, and he saw the angel of THE LORD standing in the way, and his sword drawn in his hand; and he bowed down his head, and fell flat on his face.

And the angel of THE LORD said unto him, "Wherefore hast thou smitten thine ass these three times?! Behold, I went out to withstand thee because thy way is perverse before me, and the ass saw me and turned from me these three times. Unless she had turned from me, surely now also I had slain thee, and saved her alive!"

And Balaam said unto the angel of THE LORD, "I have sinned! For I knew not that thou stoodest in the way against me! Now therefore, if it displease thee, I will get me back again."

And the angel of THE LORD said unto Balaam, "Go with the men. But only the word that I shall speak unto thee, *that* thou shalt speak!"

So Balaam went with the princes of Balak. And when Balak heard that Balaam was come, he went out to meet him unto a city of Moab, which is in the border of Arnon, which is in the utmost coast.

And Balak said unto Balaam, "Did I not earnestly send unto thee to call thee? Wherefore camest thou not unto me? Am I not able indeed to promote thee to honour?"

And Balaam said unto Balak, "Lo, I am come unto thee. Have I now any power at all to say any thing? The Word that *God* putteth in my mouth, *that* shall I speak!"

And Balaam went with Balak, and they came unto Kirjathhuzoth. And Balak offered oxen and sheep, and sent to Balaam, and to the princes that were with him.

And it came to pass on the morrow that Balak took Balaam and brought him up into the <sup>1</sup>high places of Baal, that thence he might see the utmost part of the people. <sup>1</sup>shrines

And Balaam said unto Balak, "Build me here seven altars, and prepare me here seven oxen and seven rams."

And Balak did as Balaam had spoken; and Balak and Balaam offered on every altar a bullock and a ram.

And Balaam said unto Balak, "Stand by thy burnt offering and I will go; peradventure THE LORD will come to meet me, and whatsoever He showeth me I will tell thee."

And he went to an high place. And God met Balaam, and he said unto Him, "I have prepared seven altars, and I have offered upon every altar a bullock and a ram."

And THE LORD put a word in Balaam's mouth, and said, "Return unto Balak, and thus thou shalt speak..."

And he returned unto him, and, lo, he stood by his burnt sacrifice, he, and all the princes of Moab. And he took up his parable, and said, "Balak the king of Moab hath brought me from Aram, out of the mountains of the east, saying, '*Come, curse me Jacob, and come, defy Israel.*'"

*"How shall I curse whom God hath not cursed? Or how shall I defy whom THE LORD hath not defied? For, from the top of the rocks I see Him, and from the hills I behold Him. Lo, the people shall dwell alone, and shall not be reckoned among the nations. Who can count the dust of Jacob, and the number of the fourth part of Israel? Let me die the death of the righteous, and let my last end be like his!"*

And Balak said unto Balaam, "What hast thou done unto me?! I took thee to curse mine enemies, and, behold, thou hast blessed them altogether!"

And he answered and said, "Must I not take heed to speak that which THE LORD hath put in my mouth?"

And Balak said unto him, "Come, I pray thee, with me unto another place, from whence thou mayest see them. Thou shalt see but the utmost part of them, and shalt not see them all, and curse me them from thence."

And he brought him into the field of Zophim, to the top of Pisgah, and built seven altars, and offered a bullock and a ram on every altar.

And he said unto Balak, "Stand here by thy burnt offering while I meet THE LORD yonder."

And THE LORD met Balaam and put a word in his mouth, and said, "Go again unto Balak, and say thus..."

And when he came to him, behold, he stood by his burnt offering, and the princes of Moab with him. And Balak said unto him, "What hath THE LORD spoken?"

And he took up his parable, and said, "Rise up, Balak, and hear! Harken unto me, thou son of Zippor! God is not a man, that He should lie! Neither the Son of man, that He should repent! Hath He <sup>1</sup>said and shall He not do it?! Or hath He spoken and shall He not make it good?! Behold, I have received commandment to bless. And He hath blessed and I cannot reverse it! He hath not beheld iniquity in Jacob, neither hath he seen perverseness in Israel. THE LORD his God is with him, and the shout of a king is among them! God brought them out of Egypt; He hath, as it were, the strength of an <sup>2</sup>unicorn. Surely there is no enchantment against Jacob, neither is there any divination against Israel! According to this time it shall be said of Jacob and of Israel, <sup>2</sup>*'What hath God wrought!'* Behold, the people shall rise up as a great lion, and lift up himself as a young lion; he shall not lie down until he eat of the prey and drink the blood of the slain."

<sup>1</sup>*spoken* <sup>2</sup>*a one-horned beast such as the powerful Asian Rhino* <sup>2</sup>*i.e. "Wow! Look what God has done!"*

And Balak said unto Balaam, "Neither curse them at all, nor bless them at all!"

But Balaam answered and said unto Balak, "Told not I thee, saying, *'All that THE LORD speaketh, that I must do?'*"

And Balak said unto Balaam, "Come, I pray thee, I will bring thee unto another place; peradventure it will please God that thou mayest curse <sup>1</sup>me them from thence." <sup>1</sup>*them for me*

And Balak brought Balaam unto the top of Peor that looketh toward Jeshimon. And Balaam said unto Balak, "Build me here seven altars, and prepare me here seven bullocks and seven rams."

And Balak did as Balaam had said and offered a bullock and a ram on every altar. And when Balaam saw that it pleased THE LORD to bless Israel, he went not, as at other times, to seek for enchantments, but he set his face toward the wilderness. And Balaam lifted up his eyes, and he saw Israel abiding in his tents according to their tribes; and the spirit of God came upon him.

And he took up his parable, and said, "Balaam the son of Beor hath <sup>1</sup>said! And the man whose eyes are open hath <sup>1</sup>said! He hath <sup>1</sup>said - which heard the Words of God, which saw the vision of the Almighty, falling into a trance, but having his eyes open - 'How goodly are thy tents, O Jacob! And thy tabernacles, O Israel! As the valleys are, they spread forth, as gardens by the river's side, as the trees of lign aloes which THE LORD hath planted, and as cedar trees beside the waters!' He shall pour the water out of His buckets, and His Seed shall be in many waters, and His King shall be higher than Agag, and His Kingdom shall be exalted! God brought Him forth out of Egypt; He hath as it were the strength of an unicorn! He shall eat up the nations His enemies, and shall break their bones, and pierce them through with His arrows. He couched, He lay

down as a lion, and as a great lion! Who shall stir Him up? Blessed is he that blesseth thee, and cursed is he that curseth thee!!!” <sup>1</sup>spoken

And Balak's anger was kindled against Balaam, and he smote his hands together. And Balak said unto Balaam, “I called thee to *curse* mine enemies, and, behold, thou hast altogether *blessed* them these three times! Therefore now, flee thou to thy place! I thought to promote thee unto great honour; but, lo, THE LORD hath kept thee back from honour!”

And Balaam said unto Balak, “Spake I not also to thy messengers which thou sentest unto me, saying, ‘*If Balak would give me his house full of silver and gold, I cannot go beyond the commandment of THE LORD, to do either good or bad of mine own mind; but what THE LORD saith, that will I speak?*’ And now, behold, I go unto my people. Come therefore, and I will <sup>1</sup>advertise thee what <sup>2</sup>This People shall do to *thy* people in the latter days!” <sup>1</sup>tell you/pronounce to you <sup>2</sup>Israel/Hebrews

And he took up his parable, and said, “Balaam the son of Beor hath <sup>1</sup>said! And the man whose eyes are open hath <sup>1</sup>said! He hath <sup>1</sup>said - which heard the words of God, and knew the knowledge of the most High, which saw the vision of the Almighty, falling into a trance, but having his eyes open – <sup>2</sup>“I shall see Him, but not now! I shall behold Him, but not nigh! There shall come a Star out of Jacob, and a Scepter shall rise out of Israel, and shall smite the corners of Moab, and destroy all the children of Sheth! And Edom shall be a possession, Seir also shall be a possession for his enemies; and Israel shall do valiantly! Out of Jacob shall come He that shall have dominion and shall destroy him that remaineth of the city!”

<sup>1</sup>spoken <sup>2</sup>NOTE: Balaam's prophecy foretells the coming of Messiah the King (“the Scepter”) and that His arrival will be heralded by a star over Israel; the rest foretells of His actions at His second coming, as spoken of in both the Old and New Testaments.

And when he looked on Amalek, he took up his parable, and said, “Amalek was the first of the nations; but his latter end shall be that he perish for ever!”

And he looked on the Kenites, and took up his parable, and said, “Strong is thy dwellingplace, and thou puttest thy nest in a rock. Nevertheless the Kenite shall be wasted until Asshur shall carry thee away captive!”

And he took up his parable, and said, “Alas! Who shall live when God doeth this! And ships shall come from the coast of Chittim, and shall afflict Asshur, and shall afflict Eber, and he also shall perish for ever!”

And Balaam rose up, and went and returned to his place; and Balak also went his way.

And Israel abode in Shittim, and the people began to commit whoredom with the daughters of Moab. And they called the people unto the sacrifices of their gods, and the people did eat, and bowed down to their gods. And Israel joined himself unto Baalpeor; and the anger of THE LORD was kindled against Israel.

And THE LORD said unto Moses, “Take all the <sup>1</sup>heads of the people and hang them up before THE LORD against the sun, that the fierce anger of THE LORD may be turned away from Israel.” <sup>1</sup>leaders

And Moses said unto the judges of Israel, “Slay ye every one his men that were joined unto Baalpeor!”

And, behold, one of the children of Israel came and brought unto his brethren a Midianitish woman in the sight of Moses and in the sight of all the congregation of the Children of Israel who were weeping before the door of The Tabernacle of the Congregation. And when Phinehas, the son of Eleazar, the son of Aaron the priest, saw it, he rose up from among the congregation and took a javelin in his hand; and he went after the man of Israel into the tent and thrust both of them through - the man of Israel and the woman - through her belly. So the plague was stayed from the Children of Israel. And those that died in the plague were twenty and four thousand.

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, "Phinehas, the son of Eleazar, the son of Aaron the priest, hath turned My wrath away from the children of Israel while he was zealous for My sake among them, that I consumed not the children of Israel in My jealousy. Wherefore say: Behold, I give unto him My covenant of peace, and he shall have it, and his seed after him, even the covenant of an everlasting priesthood, because he was zealous for his God and made an atonement for the Children of Israel."

Now the name of the Israelite that was slain, even that was slain with the Midianitish woman, was Zimri, the son of Salu, a prince of a chief House among the Simeonites. And the name of the Midianitish woman that was slain was Cozbi, the daughter of Zur (he was head over a people and of a chief House in Midian).

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, "Vex the Midianites and smite them! For they vex you with their wives, wherewith they have beguiled you in the matter of Peor and in the matter of Cozbi the daughter of a prince of Midian, their sister, which was slain in the day of the plague for Peor's sake."

And it came to pass after the plague that THE LORD spake unto Moses and unto Eleazar the son of Aaron the priest, saying, "Take the sum of all the congregation of the Children of Israel, from twenty years old and upward throughout their fathers' House, all that are able to go to war in Israel."

And Moses and Eleazar the priest spake with them in the plains of Moab by Jordan near Jericho, saying, "Take the sum of the people, from twenty years old and upward," as THE LORD commanded Moses and the Children of Israel which went forth out of the land of Egypt:

**Reuben**, the eldest son of Israel; the children of Reuben:

- Hanoch, of whom cometh the family of the Hanochites;
- of Pallu, the family of the Palluites;
- of Hezron, the family of the Hezronites;
- of Carmi, the family of the Carmites.

These are the families of the Reubenites; and they that were numbered of them were forty and three thousand and seven hundred and thirty.

And the sons of Pallu:

- Eliab.

And the sons of Eliab:

- Nemuel,
- and Dathan,
- and Abiram.

(This is that Dathan and Abiram which were famous in the congregation, who strove against Moses and against Aaron in the company of Korah when they strove against THE LORD, and the earth opened her mouth and swallowed them up together with Korah when that company died, what time the fire devoured two hundred and fifty men; and they became a sign. Notwithstanding the *children* of Korah died not.)

The sons of **Simeon** after their families:

- of Nemuel, the family of the Nemuelites;
- of Jamin, the family of the Jaminites;
- of Jachin, the family of the Jachinites;
- of Zerah, the family of the Zarhites;
- of Shaul, the family of the Shaulites.

These are the families of the Simeonites, twenty and two thousand and two hundred.

The children of **Gad** after their families:

- of Zephon, the family of the Zephonites;
- of Haggi, the family of the Haggites;

- of Shuni, the family of the Shunites;
- of Ozni, the family of the Oznites;
- of Eri, the family of the Erites;
- of Arod, the family of the Arodites;
- of Areli, the family of the Arelites.

These are the families of the children of Gad according to those that were numbered of them, forty thousand and five hundred.

The sons of **Judah** were:

- Er,
- and Onan,  
(and Er and Onan died in the land of Canaan). And the sons of Judah after their families were;
- of Shelah, the family of the Shelanites;
- of Pharez, the family of the Pharzites;
- of Zerah, the family of the Zarhites.

And the sons of Pharez were:

- of Hezron, the family of the Hezronites;
- of Hamul, the family of the Hamulites.

These are the families of Judah according to those that were numbered of them, threescore and sixteen thousand and five hundred.

Of the sons of **Issachar** after their families:

- of Tola, the family of the Tolaites;
- of Pua, the family of the Punites;
- of Jashub, the family of the Jashubites;
- of Shimron, the family of the Shimronites.

These are the families of Issachar according to those that were numbered of them, threescore and four thousand and three hundred.

Of the sons of **Zebulun** after their families:

- of Sered, the family of the Sardites;
- of Elon, the family of the Elonites;
- of Jahleel, the family of the Jahleelites.

These are the families of the Zebulunites according to those that were numbered of them, threescore thousand and five hundred.

The sons of **Joseph** after their families were:

- Manasseh,
- and Ephraim.

Of the sons of Manasseh:

- of Machir, the family of the Machirites:  
and Machir begat
  - Gilead - of Gilead come the family of the Gileadites.

These are the sons of Gilead:

- of Jeezer, the family of the Jeezerites;
- of Helek, the family of the Helekites;
- and of Asriel, the family of the Asrielites;
- and of Shechem, the family of the Shechemites;
- and of Shemida, the family of the Shemidaites;
- and of Hepher, the family of the Hepherites:
  - and Zelophehad the son of Hepher had no sons, but daughters.

And the names of the daughters of Zelophehad were:

- Mahlah,
- and Noah,
- Hoglah,
- Milcah,
- and Tirzah.

These are the families of Manasseh and those that were numbered of them - fifty and two thousand and seven hundred.

These are the sons of Ephraim after their families:

- of Shuthelah, the family of the Shuthalhites;
- of Becher, the family of the Bachrites;
- of Tahan, the family of the Tahanites.

And these are the sons of Shuthelah:

- of Eran, the family of the Eranites.

These are the families of the sons of Ephraim according to those that were numbered of them, thirty and two thousand and five hundred. These are the sons of Joseph after their families.

The sons of **Benjamin** after their families:

- of Bela, the family of the Belaites;
- of Ashbel, the family of the Ashbelites;
- of Ahiram, the family of the Ahiramites;
- of Shupham, the family of the Shuphamites;
- of Hupham, the family of the Huphamites.

And the sons of Bela were:

- Ard,
- and Naaman:

(of Ard, the family of the Ardites; and of Naaman, the family of the Naamites.)

These are the sons of Benjamin after their families, and they that were numbered of them were forty and five thousand and six hundred.

These are the sons of **Dan** after their families:

- of Shuham, the family of the Shuhamites.

These are the families of Dan after their families. All the families of the Shuhamites, according to those that were numbered of them, were threescore and four thousand and four hundred.

Of the children of **Asher** after their families:

- of Jimna, the family of the Jimnites;
- of Jesui, the family of the Jesuites;
- of Beriah, the family of the Beriites.

Of the sons of Beriah:

- of Heber, the family of the Heberites;
- of Malchiel, the family of the Malchielites.

And the name of the daughter of Asher was

- Sarah.

These are the families of the sons of Asher according to those that were numbered of them; who were fifty and three thousand and four hundred.

Of the sons of **Naphtali** after their families:

- of Jahzeel, the family of the Jahzeelites;
- of Guni, the family of the Gunites;
- of Jezer, the family of the Jezerites;

- of Shillem, the family of the Shillemites.

These are the families of Naphtali according to their families, and they that were numbered of them were forty and five thousand and four hundred.

These were the numbered of the Children of Israel: <sup>1</sup>six hundred thousand and a thousand seven hundred and thirty. <sup>1</sup>601,730

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, “Unto these the land shall be divided for an inheritance according to the number of names. To many thou shalt give the more inheritance, and to few thou shalt give the less inheritance; to every one shall his inheritance be given according to those that were numbered of him. Notwithstanding, the land shall be divided by lot; according to the names of the tribes of their fathers they shall inherit. According to the lot shall the possession thereof be divided between many and few.”

And these are they that were numbered of the Levites after their families:

- of Gershon, the family of the Gershonites;
- of Kohath, the family of the Kohathites;
- of Merari, the family of the Merarites.

These are the families of the Levites:

- the family of the Libnites,
- the family of the Hebronites,
- the family of the Mahlites,
- the family of the Mushites,
- the family of the Korathites.

And Kohath begat

- Amram.

And the name of Amram's wife was Jochebed, the daughter of Levi, whom her mother bare to Levi in Egypt.

And she bare unto Amram

- Aaron,
- and Moses,
- and Miriam their sister.

And unto Aaron was born

- Nadab,
- and Abihu,
- Eleazar,
- and Ithamar.

And Nadab and Abihu died when they offered strange fire before THE LORD.

And those that were numbered of them were twenty and three thousand, all males from a month old and upward; for they were not numbered among the Children of Israel because there was no inheritance given them among the Children of Israel. These are they that were numbered by Moses and Eleazar the priest, who numbered the Children of Israel in the plains of Moab by Jordan near Jericho. But among these there was not a man of them whom Moses and Aaron the priest numbered, when they numbered the Children of Israel in the wilderness of Sinai. For THE LORD had said of them, *'They shall surely die in the wilderness.'* And there was not left a man of them, save Caleb the son of Jephunneh and Joshua the son of Nun.

Then came the daughters of Zelophehad,  
 the son of Hopher,  
     the son of Gilead,  
         the son of Machir,  
             the son of Manasseh,

of the families of Manasseh the son of Joseph, and these are the names of his daughters:

- Mahlah,
- Noah,
- and Hoglah,
- and Milcah,
- and Tirzah.

And they stood before Moses and before Eleazar the priest and before the princes and all the congregation by the door of The Tabernacle of the Congregation, saying, "Our father died in the wilderness, and he was not in the company of them that gathered themselves together against THE LORD in the company of Korah, but died in his own sin, and had no sons. Why should the name of our father be done away from among his family because he hath no son? Give unto us therefore a possession among the brethren of our father."

And Moses brought their cause before THE LORD. And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, "The daughters of Zelophehad speak right. Thou shalt surely give them a possession of an inheritance among their father's brethren; and thou shalt cause the inheritance of their father to pass unto them. And thou shalt speak unto the Children of Israel, saying: If a man die and have no son, then ye shall cause his inheritance to pass unto his daughter. And if he have no daughter, then ye shall give his inheritance unto his brethren. And if he have no brethren, then ye shall give his inheritance unto his father's brethren. And if his father have no brethren, then ye shall give his inheritance unto his kinsman that is next to him of his family, and he shall possess it. And it shall be unto the Children of Israel a statute of judgment, as THE LORD commanded Moses."

And THE LORD said unto Moses, "Get thee up into this Mount Abarim and see the land which I have given unto the Children of Israel. And when thou hast seen it, thou also shalt be gathered unto thy people, as Aaron thy brother was gathered. For ye rebelled against My commandment in the desert of Zin in the strife of the congregation, to sanctify Me at the water before their eyes (that is, the water of Meribah in Kadesh in the wilderness of Zin)."

And Moses spake unto THE LORD, saying, "Let THE LORD, the God of the spirits of all flesh, set a man over the congregation which may go out before them and which may go in before them, and which may lead them out and which may bring them in, that the congregation of THE LORD be not as sheep which have no shepherd."

And THE LORD said unto Moses, "Take thee Joshua the son of Nun, a man in whom is the spirit, and lay thine hand upon him. And set him before Eleazar the priest and before all the congregation, and give him a charge in their sight. And thou shalt put some of thine honour upon him that all the congregation of the Children of Israel may be obedient. And he shall stand before Eleazar the priest, who shall ask counsel for him after the judgment of Urim before THE LORD. At his word shall they go out and at his word they shall come in - both he, and all the Children of Israel with him, even all the congregation."

And Moses did as THE LORD commanded him. And he took Joshua and set him before Eleazar the priest and before all the congregation; and he laid his hands upon him and gave him a charge, as THE LORD commanded by the hand of Moses.

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, "Command the Children of Israel and say unto them: My offering, and My bread for My sacrifices made by fire for a sweet savour unto Me, shall ye observe to offer unto Me in their due season.

"And thou shalt say unto them: This is the offering made by fire which ye shall offer unto THE LORD: two lambs of the first year without spot day by day, for a continual burnt offering. The one lamb shalt thou offer in the morning, and the other lamb shalt thou offer at even; and a tenth part of an ephah of flour for a meat offering, mingled with the fourth part of an hin of beaten oil. It is a continual burnt offering, which was ordained in Mount Sinai for a sweet savour, a sacrifice made by fire unto THE LORD.

“And the drink offering thereof shall be the fourth part of an hin for the one lamb; in the Holy Place shalt thou cause the strong wine to be poured unto THE LORD for a drink offering. And the other lamb shalt thou offer at even; as the meat offering of the morning and as the drink offering thereof thou shalt offer it, a sacrifice made by fire, of a sweet savour unto THE LORD.

“And on the Sabbath Day - two lambs of the first year without spot, and two tenth deals of flour for a meat offering mingled with oil, and the drink offering thereof. This is the burnt offering of every Sabbath, beside the continual burnt offering, and his drink offering.

“And in the beginnings of your months ye shall offer a burnt offering unto THE LORD; two young bullocks, and one ram, seven lambs of the first year without spot, and three tenth deals of flour for a meat offering, mingled with oil, for one bullock; and two tenth deals of flour for a meat offering, mingled with oil, for one ram; and a several tenth deal of flour mingled with oil for a meat offering unto one lamb - for a burnt offering of a sweet savour, a sacrifice made by fire unto THE LORD.

“And their drink offerings shall be half an hin of wine unto a bullock, and the third part of an hin unto a ram, and a fourth part of an hin unto a lamb. This is the burnt offering of every month throughout the months of the year.

“And one kid of the goats for a sin offering unto THE LORD shall be offered, beside the continual burnt offering, and his drink offering.

“And in the fourteenth day of the first month is the Passover of THE LORD. And in the fifteenth day of this month is the feast. Seven days shall unleavened bread be eaten. In the first day shall be an holy convocation; ye shall do no manner of servile work therein, but ye shall offer a sacrifice made by fire for a burnt offering unto THE LORD - two young bullocks, and one ram, and seven lambs of the first year. They shall be unto you without blemish. And their meat offering shall be of flour mingled with oil. Three tenth deals shall ye offer for a bullock, and two tenth deals for a ram; a several tenth deal shalt thou offer for every lamb, throughout the seven lambs; and one goat for a sin offering, to make an atonement for you. Ye shall offer these beside the burnt offering in the morning, which is for a continual burnt offering. After this manner ye shall offer daily, throughout the seven days, the meat of the sacrifice made by fire, of a sweet savour unto THE LORD. It shall be offered beside the continual burnt offering and his drink offering. And on the Seventh Day ye shall have an holy convocation; ye shall do no servile work.

“Also in the day of the firstfruits, when ye bring a new meat offering unto THE LORD, after your weeks be out, ye shall have an holy convocation; ye shall do no servile work: but ye shall offer the burnt offering for a sweet savour unto THE LORD. Two young bullocks, one ram, seven lambs of the first year; and their meat offering of flour mingled with oil, three tenth deals unto one bullock, two tenth deals unto one ram, a several tenth deal unto one lamb, throughout the seven lambs; and one kid of the goats, to make an atonement for you. Ye shall offer them beside the continual burnt offering and his meat offering (they shall be unto you without blemish) and their drink offerings.

“And in the seventh month, on the first day of the month, ye shall have an holy convocation; ye shall do no servile work. It is a day of blowing the trumpets unto you. And ye shall offer a burnt offering for a sweet savour unto THE LORD; one young bullock, one ram, and seven lambs of the first year without blemish. And their meat offering shall be of flour mingled with oil, three tenth deals for a bullock, and two tenth deals for a ram, and one tenth deal for one lamb, throughout the seven lambs; and one kid of the goats for a sin offering, to make an atonement for you - beside the burnt offering of the month, and his meat offering, and the daily burnt offering, and his meat offering, and their drink offerings, according unto their manner, for a sweet savour, a sacrifice made by fire unto THE LORD.

“And ye shall have, on the tenth day of this seventh month, an holy convocation; and ye shall afflict your souls. Ye shall not do any work therein, but ye shall offer a burnt offering unto THE LORD for a sweet savour; one young bullock, one ram, and seven lambs of the first year; they shall be unto you without blemish. And their meat offering shall be of flour mingled with oil, three tenth deals to a bullock, and two tenth deals to one ram, a several tenth deal for one lamb, throughout the seven lambs; one kid of the goats for a sin offering; beside the sin offering of atonement, and the continual burnt offering, and the meat offering of it, and their drink offerings.

“And on the fifteenth day of the seventh month ye shall have an holy convocation; ye shall do no servile work, and ye shall keep a feast unto THE LORD seven days. And ye shall offer a burnt offering, a

sacrifice made by fire, of a sweet savour unto THE LORD; thirteen young bullocks, two rams, and fourteen lambs of the first year; they shall be without blemish. And their meat offering shall be of flour mingled with oil, three tenth deals unto every bullock of the thirteen bullocks, two tenth deals to each ram of the two rams, and a several tenth deal to each lamb of the fourteen lambs; and one kid of the goats for a sin offering; beside the continual burnt offering, his meat offering, and his drink offering.

“And on the second day ye shall offer twelve young bullocks, two rams, fourteen lambs of the first year without spot; and their meat offering and their drink offerings for the bullocks, for the rams, and for the lambs, shall be according to their number, after the manner; and one kid of the goats for a sin offering; beside the continual burnt offering, and the meat offering thereof, and their drink offerings.

“And on the third day eleven bullocks, two rams, fourteen lambs of the first year without blemish; and their meat offering and their drink offerings for the bullocks, for the rams, and for the lambs, shall be according to their number, after the manner; and one goat for a sin offering; beside the continual burnt offering, and his meat offering, and his drink offering.

“And on the fourth day ten bullocks, two rams, and fourteen lambs of the first year without blemish; their meat offering and their drink offerings for the bullocks, for the rams, and for the lambs, shall be according to their number, after the manner; and one kid of the goats for a sin offering; beside the continual burnt offering, his meat offering, and his drink offering.

“And on the fifth day nine bullocks, two rams, and fourteen lambs of the first year without spot; and their meat offering and their drink offerings for the bullocks, for the rams, and for the lambs, shall be according to their number, after the manner; and one goat for a sin offering; beside the continual burnt offering, and his meat offering, and his drink offering.

“And on the sixth day eight bullocks, two rams, and fourteen lambs of the first year without blemish; and their meat offering and their drink offerings for the bullocks, for the rams, and for the lambs, shall be according to their number, after the manner; and one goat for a sin offering; beside the continual burnt offering, his meat offering, and his drink offering.

“And on the Seventh Day seven bullocks, two rams, and fourteen lambs of the first year without blemish; and their meat offering and their drink offerings for the bullocks, for the rams, and for the lambs, shall be according to their number, after the manner; and one goat for a sin offering; beside the continual burnt offering, his meat offering, and his drink offering.

“On the eighth day ye shall have a solemn assembly; ye shall do no servile work therein, but ye shall offer a burnt offering, a sacrifice made by fire, of a sweet savour unto THE LORD. One bullock, one ram, seven lambs of the first year without blemish; their meat offering and their drink offerings for the bullock, for the ram, and for the lambs, shall be according to their number, after the manner; and one goat for a sin offering; beside the continual burnt offering, and his meat offering, and his drink offering.

“These things ye shall do unto THE LORD in your set feasts (beside your vows and your freewill offerings) for your burnt offerings and for your meat offerings and for your drink offerings and for your peace offerings.”

And Moses told the Children of Israel according to all that THE LORD commanded Moses. And Moses spake unto the heads of the tribes concerning the Children of Israel, saying, “This is the thing which THE LORD hath commanded:

“If a man vow a vow unto THE LORD or swear an oath to bind his soul with a bond, he shall not break his word; he shall do according to all that proceedeth out of his mouth.

“If a woman also vow a vow unto THE LORD and bind herself by a bond, being in her father's house in her youth, and her father hear her vow and her bond wherewith she hath bound her soul and her father shall hold his peace at her, then all her vows shall stand and every bond wherewith she hath bound her soul shall stand.

“But, if her father disallow her in the day that he heareth, not any of her vows or of her bonds wherewith she hath bound her soul shall stand; and THE LORD shall forgive her, because her father disallowed her.

“And if she had at all an husband when she vowed or uttered ought out of her lips wherewith she bound her soul, and her husband heard it and held his peace at her in the day that he heard it, then her vows shall stand and her bonds wherewith she bound her soul shall stand.

“But if her husband disallowed her on the day that he heard it, then he shall make her vow which she vowed and that which she uttered with her lips wherewith she bound her soul of none effect; and THE LORD shall forgive her.

“But every vow of a widow and of her that is divorced wherewith they have bound their souls shall stand against her.

“And if she vowed in her husband's house or bound her soul by a bond with an oath, and her husband heard it and held his peace at her and disallowed her not, then all her vows shall stand, and every bond wherewith she bound her soul shall stand.

“But if her husband hath utterly made them void on the day he heard them, then whatsoever proceeded out of her lips concerning her vows or concerning the bond of her soul shall not stand; her husband hath made them void and THE LORD shall forgive her.

“Every vow and every binding oath to afflict the soul, her husband may establish it, or her husband may make it void. But if her husband altogether hold his peace at her from day to day, then he establisheth all her vows or all her bonds which are upon her; he confirmeth them, because he held his peace at her in the day that he heard them.

“But if he shall any ways make them void after that he hath heard them, then he shall bear her iniquity.”

These are the statutes which THE LORD commanded Moses between a man and his wife, between the father and his daughter being yet in her youth in her father's house.

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, “Avenge the Children of Israel of the Midianites. Afterward shalt thou be gathered unto thy people.”

And Moses spake unto the people, saying, “Arm some of yourselves unto the war and let them go against the Midianites and avenge THE LORD of Midian. Of every tribe a thousand, throughout all the tribes of Israel, shall ye send to the war.”

So there were delivered out of the thousands of Israel, a thousand of every tribe, twelve thousand armed for war. And Moses sent them to the war, a thousand of every tribe, them and Phinehas the son of Eleazar the priest, to the war, with the holy instruments, and the trumpets to blow in his hand. And they warred against the Midianites as THE LORD commanded Moses, and they slew all the males. And they slew the kings of Midian, beside the rest of them that were slain - namely, Evi, and Rekem, and Zur, and Hur, and Reba - five kings of Midian. Balaam also, the son of Beor, they slew with the sword.

And the Children of Israel took all the women of Midian captives, and their little ones, and took the spoil of all their cattle, and all their flocks, and all their goods. And they burnt all their cities wherein they dwelt, and all their goodly castles, with fire. And they took all the spoil, and all the prey, both of men and of beasts. And they brought the captives and the prey and the spoil unto Moses and Eleazar the priest and unto the congregation of the Children of Israel, unto the camp at the plains of Moab which are by Jordan near Jericho.

And Moses and Eleazar the priest and all the princes of the congregation went forth to meet them without the camp. And Moses was wroth with the officers of the host, with the captains over thousands, and captains over hundreds, which came from the battle.

And Moses said unto them, “Have ye saved all the women alive?! Behold, these caused the Children of Israel, through the counsel of Balaam, to commit trespass against THE LORD in the matter of Peor, and there was a plague among the congregation of THE LORD!! Now therefore kill every male among the little

ones, and kill every woman that hath known man by lying with him. But all the women children that have not known a man by lying with him, keep alive for yourselves. And do ye abide without the camp seven days; whosoever hath killed any person, and whosoever hath touched any slain, purify both yourselves and your captives on the third day and on the Seventh Day. And purify all your raiment, and all that is made of skins, and all work of goats' hair, and all things made of wood."

And Eleazar, the priest, said unto the men of war which went to the battle, "This is the ordinance of the law which THE LORD commanded Moses. Only the gold, and the silver, the brass, the iron, the tin, and the lead - every thing that may abide the fire - ye shall make it go through the fire and it shall be clean. Nevertheless it shall be purified with the water of separation; and all that abideth not the fire ye shall make go through the water. And ye shall wash your clothes on the Seventh Day, and ye shall be clean, and afterward ye shall come into the camp."

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, "Take the sum of the prey that was taken, both of man and of beast - thou, and Eleazar the priest, and the chief fathers of the congregation - and divide the prey into two parts between them that took the war upon them, who went out to battle, and between all the congregation. And levy a tribute unto THE LORD of the men of war which went out to battle: one soul of five hundred, both of the persons, and of the beeves, and of the asses, and of the sheep. Take it of their half, and give it unto Eleazar the priest for an heave offering of THE LORD. And of the Children of Israel's half, thou shalt take one portion of fifty, of the persons, of the beeves, of the asses, and of the flocks, of all manner of beasts, and give them unto the Levites which keep the charge of The Tabernacle of THE LORD."

And Moses and Eleazar the priest did as THE LORD commanded Moses. And the booty, being the rest of the prey which the men of war had caught, was <sup>1</sup>six hundred thousand and seventy thousand and five thousand sheep. And <sup>2</sup>threescore and twelve thousand beeves, and <sup>3</sup>threescore and one thousand asses, and <sup>4</sup>thirty and two thousand persons in all, of women that had not known man by lying with him. And the half, which was the portion of them that went out to war, was in number <sup>5</sup>three hundred thousand and seven and thirty thousand and five hundred sheep. And THE LORD'S tribute of the sheep was <sup>6</sup>six hundred and threescore and fifteen. And the beeves were <sup>7</sup>thirty and six thousand, of which THE LORD'S tribute was <sup>8</sup>threescore and twelve. And the asses were <sup>9</sup>thirty thousand and five hundred, of which THE LORD'S tribute was <sup>10</sup>threescore and one. And the persons were sixteen thousand; of which THE LORD'S tribute was thirty and two persons.

<sup>1</sup>675,000 <sup>2</sup>72,000 <sup>3</sup>61,000 <sup>4</sup>32,000 <sup>5</sup>337,500 <sup>6</sup>675 <sup>7</sup>36,000 <sup>8</sup>72 <sup>9</sup>30,500 <sup>10</sup>61

And Moses gave the tribute which was THE LORD'S heave offering unto Eleazar the priest as THE LORD commanded Moses; and of the Children of Israel's half, which Moses divided from the men that warred.

(Now the half that pertained unto the congregation was <sup>1</sup>three hundred thousand and thirty thousand and seven thousand and five hundred sheep, and <sup>2</sup>thirty and six thousand beeves, and thirty thousand asses and five hundred, and sixteen thousand persons).

<sup>1</sup>337,500 <sup>2</sup>36,000 <sup>3</sup>30,500

Even of the Children of Israel's half Moses took one portion of fifty, both of man and of beast, and gave them unto the Levites which kept the charge of The Tabernacle of THE LORD as THE LORD commanded Moses. And the officers which were over thousands of the host, the captains of thousands, and captains of hundreds, came near unto Moses.

And they said unto Moses, "Thy servants have taken the sum of the men of war which are under our charge, and there lacketh not one man of us. We have therefore brought an oblation for THE LORD, what every man hath gotten, of jewels of gold, chains, and bracelets, rings, earrings, and tablets, to make an atonement for our souls before THE LORD."

And Moses and Eleazar the priest took the gold of them, even all wrought jewels. And all the gold of the offering that they offered up to THE LORD, of the captains of thousands, and of the captains of hundreds,

was sixteen thousand seven hundred and fifty shekels (for the men of war had taken spoil, every man for himself.) And Moses and Eleazar the priest took the gold of the captains of thousands and of hundreds, and brought it into The Tabernacle of the Congregation for a memorial for the Children of Israel before THE LORD.

Now, the children of Reuben and the children of Gad had a very great multitude of cattle. And when they saw the land of Jazer and the land of Gilead that, behold, the place was a place for cattle, the children of Gad and the children of Reuben came and spake unto Moses and to Eleazar the priest and unto the princes of the congregation, saying, "Ataroth, and Dibon, and Jazer, and Nimrah, and Heshbon, and Elealeh, and Shebam, and Nebo, and Beon, even the country which THE LORD smote before the congregation of Israel, is a land for cattle - and thy servants have cattle. Wherefore," said they, "if we have found grace in thy sight, let this land be given unto thy servants for a possession, and bring us not over Jordan."

And Moses said unto the children of Gad and to the children of Reuben, "Shall your brethren go to war and shall ye sit here? And wherefore discourage ye the heart of the Children of Israel from going over into the land which THE LORD hath given them? Thus did your fathers when I sent them from Kadesh-barnea to see the land! For when they went up unto the Valley of Eshcol and saw the land, they discouraged the heart of the Children of Israel that they should not go into the land which THE LORD had given them. And THE LORD'S anger was kindled the same time, and He sware, saying, '*Surely none of the men that came up out of Egypt, from twenty years old and upward, shall see the land which I sware unto Abraham, unto Isaac, and unto Jacob, because they have not wholly followed Me - save Caleb the son of Jephunneh the Kenezite and Joshua the son of Nun, for they have wholly followed THE LORD.*' And THE LORD'S anger was kindled against Israel, and He made them wander in the wilderness forty years until all the generation that had done evil in the sight of THE LORD was consumed. And, behold, ye are risen up in your fathers' stead, an increase of sinful men, to augment yet the fierce anger of THE LORD toward Israel! For if ye turn away from after Him, He will yet again leave them in the wilderness; and ye shall destroy all this people!"

And they came near unto him, and said, "We will build sheepfolds here for our cattle, and cities for our little ones; but we ourselves will go ready armed before the Children of Israel until we have brought them unto their place. And our little ones shall dwell in the fenced cities because of the inhabitants of the land. We will not return unto our houses until the Children of Israel have inherited every man his inheritance. For we will not inherit with them on yonder side Jordan or forward, because our inheritance is fallen to us on this side Jordan eastward."

And Moses said unto them, "*IF* ye will do this thing, *IF* ye will go armed before THE LORD to war, and will go *all of you* armed over Jordan before THE LORD until He hath driven out His enemies from before Him and the land be subdued before THE LORD, then afterward ye shall return and be guiltless before THE LORD and before Israel, and this land shall be your possession before THE LORD. *BUT*, if ye will *not* do so, behold, ye have sinned against THE LORD - and be sure your sin will find you out! Build you cities for your little ones, and folds for your sheep; and do that which hath proceeded out of your mouth."

And the children of Gad and the children of Reuben spake unto Moses, saying, "Thy servants will do as my lord commandeth. Our little ones, our wives, our flocks, and all our cattle, shall be there in the cities of Gilead; but thy servants will pass over, every man armed for war, before THE LORD to battle, as my lord saith."

So, concerning them, Moses commanded Eleazar the priest and Joshua the son of Nun and the chief fathers of the tribes of the Children of Israel; and Moses said unto them, "If the children of Gad and the children of Reuben will pass with you over Jordan, every man armed to battle before THE LORD, and the land shall be subdued before you, then ye shall give them the land of Gilead for a possession. But if they will not pass over with you armed, they shall have possessions among you in the land of Canaan."

And the children of Gad and the children of Reuben answered, saying, "As THE LORD hath said unto thy servants, so will we do. We will pass over armed before THE LORD into the land of Canaan, that the possession of our inheritance on this side Jordan may be ours."

And Moses gave unto them - even to the children of Gad and to the children of Reuben and unto half the tribe of Manasseh the son of Joseph - the kingdom of Sihon king of the Amorites and the kingdom of Og king of Bashan - the land, with the cities thereof in the coasts, even the cities of the country round about.

And the children of Gad built Dibon, and Ataroth, and Aroer, and Atroth, Shopan, and Jaazer, and Jogbehah, and Bethnimrah, and Bethharan - fenced cities - and folds for sheep.

And the children of Reuben built Heshbon, and Elealeh, and Kirjathaim, and Nebo, and Baalmeon (their names being changed), and Shibmah, and gave other names unto the cities which they builded.

And the children of Machir the son of Manasseh went to Gilead and took it and dispossessed the Amorite which was in it. And Moses gave Gilead unto Machir the son of Manasseh; and he dwelt therein.

And Jair the son of Manasseh went and took the small towns thereof, and called them Havothjair.

And Nobah went and took Kenath and the villages thereof, and called it Nobah, after his own name.

These are the journeys of the Children of Israel  
which went forth out of the land of Egypt with their armies under the hand of Moses and Aaron.

And Moses wrote their goings out according to their journeys by the commandment of THE LORD, and these are their journeys according to their goings out.

And they departed from Rameses in the first month, on the fifteenth day of the first month - on the morrow after the Passover the Children of Israel went out with an high hand in the sight of all the Egyptians. (For the Egyptians buried all their firstborn which THE LORD had smitten among them. Upon their gods also THE LORD executed judgments).

And the Children of Israel removed from Rameses and pitched in Succoth.

And they departed from Succoth and pitched in Etham, which is in the edge of the wilderness.

And they removed from Etham and turned again unto Pihahiroth which is before Baalzephon, and they pitched before Migdol.

And they departed from before Pihahiroth and passed through the midst of the Sea into the wilderness, and went three days' journey in the wilderness of Etham and pitched in Marah.

And they removed from Marah and came unto Elim. And in Elim were twelve fountains of water, and threescore and ten palm trees; and they pitched there.

And they removed from Elim and encamped by the Red sea.

And they removed from the Red Sea and encamped in the wilderness of Sin.

And they took their journey out of the wilderness of Sin and encamped in Dophkah.

And they departed from Dophkah and encamped in Alush.

And they removed from Alush and encamped at Rephidim (where was no water for the people to drink).

And they departed from Rephidim and pitched in the wilderness of Sinai.

And they removed from the desert of Sinai and pitched at Kibrothhattaavah.

And they departed from Kibrothhattaavah and encamped at Hazeroth.

And they departed from Hazeroth and pitched in Rithmah.

And they departed from Rithmah and pitched at Rimmonparez.

And they departed from Rimmonparez and pitched in Libnah.

And they removed from Libnah and pitched at Rissah.

And they journeyed from Rissah and pitched in Kehelathah.

And they went from Kehelathah and pitched in Mount Shapher.

And they removed from Mount Shapher and encamped in Haradah.

And they removed from Haradah and pitched in Makheloth.

And they removed from Makheloth and encamped at Tahath.

And they departed from Tahath and pitched at Tarah.

And they removed from Tarah and pitched in Mithcah.

And they went from Mithcah and pitched in Hashmonah.

And they departed from Hashmonah and encamped at Moseroth.

And they departed from Moseroth and pitched in Benejaakan.

And they removed from Benejaakan and encamped at Horhagidgad.

And they went from Horhagidgad and pitched in Jotbathah.

And they removed from Jotbathah and encamped at Ebronah.

And they departed from Ebronah and encamped at Eziongaber.

And they removed from Eziongaber and pitched in the wilderness of Zin (which is Kadesh).

And they removed from Kadesh and pitched in Mount Hor in the edge of the land of Edom. And Aaron the priest went up into Mount Hor at the commandment of THE LORD and died there in the fortieth year after the Children of Israel were come out of the land of Egypt, in the first day of the fifth month. And Aaron was

an hundred and twenty and three years old when he died in Mount Hor. And King Arad the Canaanite, which dwelt in the south in the land of Canaan, heard of the coming of the Children of Israel.

And they departed from Mount Hor and pitched in Zalmonah.

And they departed from Zalmonah and pitched in Punon.

And they departed from Punon and pitched in Oboth.

And they departed from Oboth and pitched in Ijeabarim in the border of Moab.

And they departed from Ijeabarim and pitched in Dibongad.

And they removed from Dibongad and encamped in Almondiblathaim.

And they removed from Almondiblathaim and pitched in the mountains of Abarim before Nebo.

And they departed from the mountains of Abarim and pitched in the plains of Moab by Jordan near Jericho.

And they pitched by Jordan, from Bethjesimoth even unto Abelshittim in the plains of Moab.

And THE LORD spake unto Moses in the plains of Moab by Jordan near Jericho, saying, "Speak unto the Children of Israel and say unto them: When ye are passed over Jordan into the land of Canaan, then ye shall drive out all the inhabitants of the land from before you and destroy all their <sup>1</sup>pictures, and destroy all their molten images, and quite pluck down all their <sup>2</sup>high places, and ye shall dispossess the inhabitants of the land and dwell therein; for I have given you the land to possess it. And ye shall divide the land by lot for an inheritance among your families; and to the more ye shall give the more inheritance, and to the fewer ye shall give the less inheritance. Every man's inheritance shall be in the place where his lot falleth; according to the tribes of your fathers ye shall inherit. <sup>1</sup>carvings, possibly wall images <sup>2</sup>shrines

"But, if ye will not drive out the inhabitants of the land from before you, then it shall come to pass that those which ye let remain of them shall be pricks in your eyes and thorns in your sides and shall vex you in the land wherein ye dwell. Moreover it shall come to pass that I shall do unto *you* as I thought to do unto them."

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, "Command the Children of Israel and say unto them: When ye come into the land of Canaan (this is the land that shall fall unto you for an inheritance, even the land of Canaan with the coasts thereof),

- then your south quarter shall be from the wilderness of Zin along by the coast of Edom, and your south border shall be the outmost coast of the <sup>1</sup>Salt Sea eastward. And your border shall turn from the south to the ascent of Akkrabbim and pass on to Zin. And the going forth thereof shall be from the south to Kadeshbarnea and shall go on to Hazaraddar and pass on to Azmon. And the border shall fetch a compass from Azmon unto the river of Egypt, and the goings out of it shall be at the sea. <sup>1</sup>Dead Sea
- And as for the western border, ye shall even have the <sup>1</sup>Great Sea for a border; this shall be your west border. <sup>1</sup>Mediterranean Sea
- And this shall be your north border: from the Great Sea ye shall point out for you Mount Hor. From Mount Hor ye shall point out your border unto the entrance of Hamath; and the goings forth of the border shall be to Zedad. And the border shall go on to Ziphron, and the goings out of it shall be at Hazarenan; this shall be your north border.
- And ye shall point out your east border from Hazarenan to Shepham. And the coast shall go down from Shepham to Riblah on the east side of Ain. And the border shall descend and shall reach unto the side of the Sea of <sup>1</sup>Chinnereth eastward. And the border shall go down to Jordan, and the goings out of it shall be at the Salt Sea; this shall be your land with the coasts thereof round about." <sup>1</sup>Galilee

And Moses commanded the Children of Israel, saying, "This is the land which ye shall inherit by lot, which THE LORD commanded to give unto the nine tribes, and to the half tribe (for the tribe of the children of Reuben according to the House of their fathers, and the tribe of the children of Gad according to the House of their fathers, have received their inheritance; and half the tribe of Manasseh have received their inheritance). The two tribes and the half tribe have received their inheritance on this side Jordan near Jericho eastward, toward the sunrising."

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, "These are the names of the men which shall divide the land unto you: Eleazar the priest and Joshua the son of Nun. And ye shall take one prince of every tribe, to divide the land by inheritance. And the names of the men are these:

- Of the tribe of Judah, Caleb the son of Jephunneh.
- And of the tribe of the children of Simeon, Shemuel the son of Ammihud.
- Of the tribe of Benjamin, Elidad the son of Chislon.
- And the prince of the tribe of the children of Dan, Bukki the son of Jogli.
- The prince of the children of Joseph, for the tribe of the children of Manasseh, Hanniel the son of Ephod.
- And the prince of the tribe of the children of Ephraim, Kemuel the son of Shiphtan.
- And the prince of the tribe of the children of Zebulun, Elizaphan the son of Parnach.
- And the prince of the tribe of the children of Issachar, Paltiel the son of Azzan.
- And the prince of the tribe of the children of Asher, Ahihud the son of Shelomi.
- And the prince of the tribe of the children of Naphtali, Pedahel the son of Ammihud."

These are they whom THE LORD commanded to divide the inheritance unto the Children of Israel in the land of Canaan. And THE LORD spake unto Moses in the plains of Moab by Jordan near Jericho, saying, "Command the Children of Israel that they give unto the Levites of the inheritance of their possession cities to dwell in; and ye shall give also unto the Levites suburbs for the cities round about them. And the cities shall they have to dwell in; and the suburbs of them shall be for their cattle, and for their goods, and for all their beasts. And the suburbs of the cities, which ye shall give unto the Levites, shall reach from the wall of the city and outward a thousand cubits round about. And ye shall measure from without the city on the east side two thousand cubits, and on the south side two thousand cubits, and on the west side two thousand cubits, and on the north side two thousand cubits; and the city shall be in the midst. This shall be to them the suburbs of the cities.

"And among the cities which ye shall give unto the Levites there shall be six cities for refuge, which ye shall appoint for the manslayer, that he may flee thither; and to them ye shall add forty and two cities.

"So all the cities which ye shall give to the Levites shall be forty and eight cities. Them shall ye give with their suburbs. And the cities which ye shall give shall be of the possession of the Children of Israel. From them that have many ye shall give many; but from them that have few ye shall give few. Every one shall give of his cities unto the Levites according to his inheritance which he inheriteth."

And THE LORD spake unto Moses, saying, "Speak unto the Children of Israel and say unto them: When ye be come over Jordan into the land of Canaan, then ye shall appoint you cities to be Cities of Refuge for you, that the slayer may flee thither, which killeth any person at unawares. And they shall be unto you Cities for Refuge from the avenger, that the manslayer die not until he stand before the congregation in judgment.

"And of these cities which ye shall give, six cities shall ye have for refuge. Ye shall give three cities on this side Jordan, and three cities shall ye give in the land of Canaan, which shall be Cities of Refuge. These six cities shall be a refuge, both for the Children of Israel and for the stranger and for the sojourner among them, that every one that killeth any person <sup>1</sup>unawares may flee thither. *'accidentally/without intent*

"And if he smite him with an instrument of iron so that he die, he is a murderer. The murderer shall surely be put to death. And if he smite him with throwing a stone wherewith he may die, and he die, he is a murderer. The murderer shall surely be put to death. Or, if he smite him with an hand weapon of wood

wherewith he may die, and he die, he is a murderer. The murderer shall surely be put to death. The Revenger of Blood himself shall slay the murderer; when he meeteth him, he shall slay him.

“But if he thrust him <sup>1</sup>of hatred, or hurl at him by laying of wait, that he die, or in enmity smite him with his hand that he die, he that smote him shall surely be put to death; for he is a murderer. The Revenger of Blood shall slay the murderer when he meeteth him. <sup>1</sup>out of/because of

“But if he thrust him suddenly *without* enmity, or have cast upon him any thing without laying of wait, or with any stone, wherewith a man may die, seeing him not, and cast it upon him, that he die, and was not his enemy, neither sought his harm, then the congregation shall judge between the slayer and the Revenger of Blood according to these judgments. And the congregation shall deliver the slayer out of the hand of the Revenger of Blood, and the congregation shall restore him to the city of his refuge whither he was fled. And he shall abide in it unto the death of the High Priest which was anointed with the holy oil.

“But if the slayer shall at any time come without the border of the City of his Refuge whither he was fled, and the Revenger of Blood find him without the borders of the City of his Refuge, and the Revenger of Blood kill the slayer, he shall not be guilty of blood because he should have remained in the City of his Refuge until the death of the High Priest. But after the death of the High Priest the slayer shall return into the land of his possession.

“So these things shall be for a statute of judgment unto you throughout your generations in all your dwellings.

“Whoso killeth any person, the murderer shall be put to death by the mouth of witnesses; but <sup>1</sup>one witness shall not testify against any person to cause him to die. <sup>1</sup>a single

“Moreover ye shall take no satisfaction for the life of a murderer which is guilty of death; but he shall be surely put to death.

“And ye shall take no satisfaction for him that is fled to the City of his Refuge, that he should come again to dwell in the land, until the death of the priest.

“So, ye shall not pollute the land wherein ye are; for blood, it defileth the land, and the land cannot be cleansed of the blood that is shed therein but by the blood of him that shed it. Defile not therefore the land which ye shall inhabit, wherein I dwell - for I THE LORD dwell among the Children of Israel.”

And the chief fathers of the families of the children of Gilead (the son of Machir, the son of Manasseh, of the families of the sons of Joseph) came near and spake before Moses, and before the princes, the chief fathers of the Children of Israel. And they said, “THE LORD commanded my lord to give the land for an inheritance by lot to the Children of Israel. And my lord was commanded by THE LORD to give the inheritance of Zelophehad our brother unto his daughters. And if they be married to any of the sons of the other tribes of the Children of Israel, then shall their inheritance be taken from the inheritance of our fathers and shall be put to the inheritance of the tribe whereunto they are received; so shall it be taken from the lot of our inheritance. And when the jubile of the Children of Israel shall be, then shall their inheritance be put unto the inheritance of the tribe whereunto they are received; so shall their inheritance be taken away from the inheritance of the tribe of our fathers.”

And Moses commanded the Children of Israel according to the Word of THE LORD, saying, “The tribe of the sons of Joseph hath said well. This is the thing which THE LORD doth command concerning the daughters of Zelophehad, saying, ‘*Let them marry to whom they think best; only, to the family of the tribe of their father shall they marry.*’ So shall not the inheritance of the Children of Israel remove from tribe to tribe; for every one of the Children of Israel shall keep himself to the inheritance of the tribe of his fathers.

“And every daughter that possesseth an inheritance in any tribe of the Children of Israel shall be wife unto one of the family of the tribe of her father, that the Children of Israel may enjoy, every man, the inheritance of his fathers.

“Neither shall the inheritance remove from one tribe to another tribe; but every one of the tribes of the Children of Israel shall keep himself to his own inheritance.”

Even as THE LORD commanded Moses, so did the daughters of Zelophehad; for Mahlah, Tirzah, and Hoglah, and Milcah, and Noah - the daughters of Zelophehad - were married unto their father's brothers' sons, and

<sup>1</sup>they were married into the families of the sons of Manasseh the son of Joseph, and their inheritance remained in the tribe of the family of their father. <sup>1</sup>therefore they

These are the commandments and the judgments which THE LORD commanded by the hand of Moses unto the Children of Israel in the plains of Moab by Jordan near Jericho.

These be the words which Moses spake unto all Israel on this side Jordan in the wilderness, in the plain over against the Red sea, between Paran, and Tophel, and Laban, and Hazeroth, and Dizahab. (There are eleven days' journey from Horeb by the way of Mount Seir unto Kadeshbarnea.)

And it came to pass in the fortieth year, in the eleventh month, on the first day of the month, that Moses spake unto the Children of Israel according unto all that THE LORD had given him in commandment unto them, after he had slain Sihon the king of the Amorites which dwelt in Heshbon and Og the king of Bashan which dwelt at Astaroth in Edrei; on this side Jordan, in the land of Moab, began Moses to declare this Law, saying, "THE LORD our God spake unto us in Horeb, saying: *'Ye have dwelt long enough in this mount; turn you, and take your journey, and go to the mount of the Amorites, and unto all the places nigh thereunto, in the plain, in the hills, and in the vale, and in the south, and by the sea side, to the land of the Canaanites, and unto Lebanon, unto the great river - the river Euphrates. Behold, I have set the land before you. Go in and possess the land which THE LORD sware unto your fathers - Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob - to give unto them and to their seed after them.'* And I spake unto you at that time, saying, *'I am not able to bear you myself alone. THE LORD your God hath multiplied you and, behold, ye are this day as the stars of heaven for multitude.'* (THE LORD God of your fathers make you a thousand times so many more as ye are, and bless you, as He hath promised you!) *'How can I myself alone bear your cumbrance, and your burden, and your strife? Take you wise men, and understanding, and known among your tribes, and I will make them rulers over you.'* And ye answered me and said, *'The thing which thou hast spoken is good for us to do.'*

"So I took the chief of your tribes, wise men, and known, and made them heads over you, captains over thousands, and captains over hundreds, and captains over fifties, and captains over tens, and officers among your tribes. And I charged your judges at that time, saying, *'Hear the causes between your brethren, and judge righteously between every man and his brother, and the stranger that is with him. Ye shall not respect persons in judgment, but ye shall hear the small as well as the great; ye shall not be afraid of the face of man, for the judgment is God's. And the cause that is too hard for you, bring it unto me, and I will hear it.'*

"And I commanded you at that time all the things which ye should do. And when we departed from Horeb, we went through all that great and terrible wilderness, which ye saw by the way of the mountain of the Amorites, as THE LORD our God commanded us; and we came to Kadeshbarnea. And I said unto you, *'Ye are come unto the mountain of the Amorites, which THE LORD our God doth give unto us. Behold, THE LORD thy God hath set the land before thee. Go up and possess it as THE LORD God of thy fathers hath said unto thee; fear not, neither be discouraged.'*

"And ye came near unto me, every one of you, and said, *'We will send men before us, and they shall search us out the land, and bring us word again by what way we must go up, and into what cities we shall come.'* And the saying pleased me well. And I took twelve men of you, one of <sup>1</sup>a tribe; and they turned and went up into the mountain, and came unto the valley of Eshcol, and searched it out. <sup>1</sup>each tribe  
"And they took of the fruit of the land in their hands and brought it down unto us, and brought us word again and said, *'It is a good land which THE LORD our God doth give us!'*

"Notwithstanding, ye would not go up but rebelled against the commandment of THE LORD your God, and ye murmured in your tents and said, *'Because THE LORD hated us He hath brought us forth out of the land of Egypt to deliver us into the hand of the Amorites, to destroy us. Whither shall we go up? Our brethren have discouraged our heart, saying, 'The people is greater and taller than we; the cities are great and walled up to heaven; and moreover we have seen the sons of the Anakims there.'*

"Then I said unto you, *'Dread not, neither be afraid of them. THE LORD your God which goeth before you, He shall fight for you according to all that He did for you in Egypt before your eyes; and in the*

wilderness, where thou hast seen how that THE LORD thy God bare thee as a man doth bear his son, in all the way that ye went, until ye came into this place.'

"Yet in this thing ye did not believe THE LORD your God who went in the way before you, to search you out a place to pitch your tents in, in fire by night to show you by what way ye should go, and in a cloud by day. And THE LORD heard the voice of your words, and was wroth, and sware, saying, 'Surely there shall not one of these men of this evil generation see that good land which I sware to give unto your fathers, save Caleb the son of Jephunneh - he shall see it, and to him will I give the land that he hath trodden upon, and to his children, because he hath wholly followed THE LORD.'

"Also THE LORD was angry with me for your sakes, saying, 'Thou also shalt not go in thither. But Joshua the son of Nun, which standeth before thee, he shall go in thither. Encourage him; for he shall cause Israel to inherit it. Moreover your little ones which ye said should be a prey, and your children which in that day had no knowledge between good and evil, they shall go in thither, and unto them will I give it, and they shall possess it. But as for you, turn you and take your journey into the wilderness by the way of the Red Sea.'

"Then ye answered and said unto me, 'We have sinned against THE LORD! We will go up and fight according to all that THE LORD our God commanded us.'

"And when ye had girded on every man his weapons of war, ye were ready to go up into the hill. And THE LORD said unto me, 'Say unto them: Go not up, neither fight, for I am not among you; lest ye be smitten before your enemies!'

"So I spake unto you; and ye would not hear but rebelled against the commandment of THE LORD, and went presumptuously up into the hill. And the Amorites, which dwelt in that mountain, came out against you and chased you, as bees do, and destroyed you in Seir, even unto Hormah. And ye returned and wept before THE LORD; but THE LORD would not hearken to your voice, nor give ear unto you. So ye abode in Kadesh many days, according unto the days that ye abode there.

"Then we turned and took our journey into the wilderness by the way of the Red Sea as THE LORD spake unto me, and we compassed Mount Seir many days.

"And THE LORD spake unto me, saying, 'Ye have compassed this mountain long enough. Turn you northward. And command thou the people, saying: Ye are to pass through the coast of your brethren - the children of Esau which dwell in Seir - and they shall be afraid of you. Take ye good heed unto yourselves therefore. Meddle not with them - for I will not give you of their land, no, not so much as a foot breadth, because I have given Mount Seir unto Esau for a possession. Ye shall buy meat of them for money that ye may eat, and ye shall also buy water of them for money that ye may drink.' For THE LORD thy God hath blessed thee in all the works of thy hand. He knoweth thy walking through this great wilderness. These forty years THE LORD thy God hath been with thee; thou hast lacked nothing.

"And when we passed by from our brethren - the children of Esau which dwelt in Seir - through the way of the plain from Elath and from Eziongaber, we turned and passed by the way of the wilderness of Moab.

"And THE LORD said unto me, 'Distress not the Moabites, neither contend with them in battle; for I will not give thee of their land for a possession, because I have given Ar unto the children of Lot for a possession.' The Emims dwelt therein in times past, a people great and many and tall as the Anakims, which also were accounted giants as the Anakims (but the Moabites call them Emims). The Horims also dwelt in Seir beforetime; but the children of Esau succeeded them when they had destroyed them from before them, and dwelt in their stead, as Israel did unto the land of his possession which THE LORD gave unto them.

"Now rise up, said I, and get you over the brook Zered. And we went over the brook Zered. And the <sup>1</sup>space in which we came from Kadeshbarnea, until we were come over the brook Zered, was thirty and eight years, until all the generation of the men of war were wasted out from among the host, as THE LORD sware unto them. For indeed the hand of THE LORD was against them, to destroy them from among the host, until they were consumed. *'length of time*

"So it came to pass, when all the men of war were consumed and dead from among the people, that THE LORD spake unto me, saying: 'Thou art to pass over through Ar, the coast of Moab, this day. Behold, I set before you this day a blessing and a curse - A blessing, if ye obey the commandments of THE

LORD your God which I command you this day; and a curse, if ye will not obey the commandments of THE LORD your God but turn aside out of the way which I command you this day, to go after other gods which ye have not known. And it shall come to pass, when THE LORD thy God hath brought thee in unto the land whither thou goest to possess it, that thou shalt put the blessing upon Mount Gerizim, and the curse upon Mount Ebal. Are they not on the other side Jordan by the way where the sun goeth down, in the land of the Canaanites which dwell in the champaign over against Gilgal beside the plains of Moreh? For ye shall pass over Jordan to go in to possess the land which THE LORD your God giveth you, and ye shall possess it, and dwell therein. And ye shall observe to do all the statutes and judgments which I set before you this day.

“These are the statutes and judgments which ye shall observe to do in the land which THE LORD God of thy fathers giveth thee to possess it all the days that ye live upon the earth. Ye shall utterly destroy all the places wherein the nations which ye shall possess served their gods upon the high mountains and upon the hills and under every green tree; and ye shall overthrow their altars, and break their pillars, and burn their groves with fire, and ye shall hew down the graven images of their gods and destroy the names of them out of that place.

“Ye shall not do so unto THE LORD your God. But unto the place which THE LORD your God shall choose out of all your tribes to put His name there, even unto His habitation shall ye seek, and thither thou shalt come; and thither ye shall bring your burnt offerings, and your sacrifices, and your tithes, and heave offerings of your hand, and your vows, and your freewill offerings, and the firstlings of your herds and of your flocks. And there ye shall eat before THE LORD your God, and ye shall rejoice in all that ye put your hand unto, ye and your households, wherein THE LORD thy God hath blessed thee. Ye shall not do after all the things that we do here this day, every man whatsoever is right in his *own* eyes. For ye are not as yet come to the Rest and to the Inheritance which THE LORD your God giveth you. But when ye go over Jordan and dwell in the land which THE LORD your God giveth you to inherit, and when He giveth you rest from all your enemies round about so that ye dwell in safety, then there shall be a place which THE LORD your God shall choose to cause His name to dwell there. Thither shall ye bring all that I command you - your burnt offerings, and your sacrifices, your tithes, and the heave offering of your hand, and all your choice vows which ye vow unto THE LORD.

“And ye shall rejoice before THE LORD your God - ye, and your sons, and your daughters, and your menservants, and your maidservants, and the Levite that is within your gates (forasmuch as he hath no part nor inheritance with you).

“Take heed to thyself that thou offer not thy burnt offerings <sup>1</sup>in every place that thou seest; but in the place which THE LORD shall choose <sup>2</sup>in one of thy tribes, there thou shalt offer thy burnt offerings, and there thou shalt do all that I command thee. <sup>1</sup>where ever you so desire <sup>2</sup>in the territory of

“Notwithstanding, thou mayest kill and eat flesh in all thy gates, whatsoever thy soul lusteth after, according to the blessing of THE LORD thy God which He hath given thee. The unclean and the clean may eat thereof, as of the roebuck and as of the hart – only, ye shall not eat the blood; ye shall pour it upon the earth as water.

“Thou mayest not eat within thy gates the tithes of thy corn, or of thy wine, or of thy oil, or the firstlings of thy herds or of thy flock, nor any of thy vows which thou vowest, nor thy freewill offerings, or heave offering of thine hand, but thou must eat them before THE LORD thy God in the place which THE LORD thy God shall choose - thou, and thy son, and thy daughter, and thy manservant, and thy maidservant, and the Levite that is within thy gates. And thou shalt rejoice before THE LORD thy God in all that thou puttest thine hands unto.

“Take heed to thyself that thou forsake not the Levite as long as thou livest upon the earth!  
“When THE LORD thy God shall enlarge thy border as He hath promised thee, and thou shalt say, ‘*I will eat flesh*’ (because thy soul longeth to eat flesh), thou mayest eat flesh, whatsoever thy soul lusteth after.

“If the place which THE LORD thy God hath chosen to put His name there be too far from thee, then thou shalt kill of thy herd and of thy flock, which THE LORD hath given thee, as I have commanded thee, and thou shalt eat in thy gates whatsoever thy soul lusteth after. Even as the roebuck and the hart is eaten, so thou shalt eat them. The unclean and the clean shall eat of them alike. Only, be sure that thou eat not the blood - for the blood is the life, and thou mayest not eat the life with the flesh. Thou shalt not eat it;

thou shalt pour it upon the earth as water. Thou shalt not eat it, that it may go well with thee, and with thy children after thee, when thou shalt do that which is right in the sight of THE LORD.

“Only, thy holy things which thou hast, and thy vows, thou shalt take and go unto the place which THE LORD shall choose. And thou shalt offer thy burnt offerings, the flesh and the blood, upon the Altar of THE LORD thy God; and the blood of thy sacrifices shall be poured out upon the Altar of THE LORD thy God, and thou shalt eat the flesh.

“Observe and hear all these words which I command thee, that it may go well with thee and with thy children after thee for ever, when thou doest that which is good and right in the sight of THE LORD thy God.

“When THE LORD thy God shall cut off the nations from before thee whither thou goest to possess them, and thou succeedest them and dwellest in their land, take heed to thyself that thou be not snared by following them after *‘that they be destroyed from before thee, and that thou inquire not after their gods, saying, ‘How did these nations serve their gods? Even so will I do likewise.’* *‘that which*

“Thou shalt not do so unto THE LORD thy God; for every abomination to THE LORD which He hateth have *they* done unto their gods; for even their sons and their daughters they have burnt in the fire to their gods!

“What thing soever I command you, observe to do it. Thou shalt not add thereto, nor diminish from it. If there arise among you a prophet, or a dreamer of dreams, and giveth thee a sign or a wonder, and the sign or the wonder come to pass whereof he spake unto thee, saying, *‘Let us go after other gods which thou hast not known, and let us serve them,’* thou shalt *not* hearken unto the words of that prophet or that dreamer of dreams - for THE LORD your God proveth you to know whether ye love THE LORD your God with all your heart and with all your soul. Ye shall walk after THE LORD your God and fear *Him*, and keep *His* commandments, and obey *His* voice, and ye shall serve *Him*, and cleave unto *Him*. And that prophet or that dreamer of dreams shall be put to death, because he hath spoken to turn you away from THE LORD your God (which brought you out of the land of Egypt and redeemed you out of the house of bondage), to thrust thee out of The Way which THE LORD thy God commanded thee to walk in. So shalt thou put the evil away from the midst of thee.

“If thy brother (the son of thy mother), or thy son or thy daughter or the wife of thy bosom or thy friend which is as thine own soul, entice thee secretly, saying, *‘Let us go and serve other gods’* which thou hast not known, thou, nor thy fathers (namely, of the gods of the people which are round about you, nigh unto thee, or far off from thee, from the one end of the earth even unto the other end of the earth) - thou shalt not consent unto him, nor hearken unto him. Neither shall thine eye pity him, neither shalt thou spare, neither shalt thou conceal him, but thou shalt surely kill him. *Thine* hand shall be first upon him to put him to death, and afterwards the hand of all the people. And thou shalt stone him with stones that he die, because he hath sought to thrust thee away from THE LORD thy God which brought thee out of the land of Egypt, from the house of bondage. And all Israel shall hear, and fear, and shall do no more any such wickedness as this is among you.

“If thou shalt hear say in one of thy cities which THE LORD thy God hath given thee to dwell there, saying, *‘Certain men, the children of Belial, are gone out from among you and have withdrawn the inhabitants of their city, saying, ‘Let us go and serve other gods which ye have not known’*, Then shalt thou inquire, and make search, and ask diligently. And, behold, if it be truth, and the thing certain, that such abomination is wrought among you, thou shalt surely smite the inhabitants of that city with the edge of the sword, destroying it utterly, and all that is therein, and the cattle thereof, with the edge of the sword. And thou shalt gather all the spoil of it into the midst of the street thereof and shalt burn with fire the city, and all the spoil thereof every whit, for THE LORD thy God. And it shall be an heap for ever; it shall not be built again.

“And there shall cleave nought of the cursed thing to thine hand, that THE LORD may turn from the fierceness of His anger and show thee mercy and have compassion upon thee, and multiply thee, as He hath sworn unto thy fathers, when thou shalt hearken to the voice of THE LORD thy God to keep all His commandments which I command thee this day, to do that which is right in the eyes of THE LORD thy God. Ye are the children of THE LORD your God. Ye shall not cut yourselves, nor make any baldness between your

eyes for the dead. For thou art an Holy People unto THE LORD thy God, and THE LORD hath chosen thee to be a peculiar people unto Himself above all the nations that are upon the earth.

“Thou shalt not eat any abominable thing. These are the beasts which ye *shall* eat:

- the ox,
- the sheep,
- and the goat,
- the hart,
- and the roebuck,
- and the fallow deer,
- and the wild goat,
- and the <sup>1</sup>pygarg,
- and the wild ox,
- and the <sup>1</sup>chamois.

<sup>1</sup>a type of antelope

<sup>1</sup>a type of goat antelope

And every beast that parteth the hoof *and* cleaveth the cleft into two claws *and* cheweth the cud among the beasts, that ye shall eat. Nevertheless these ye shall *not* eat of them that chew the cud, or of them that divide the cloven hoof; as:

- the <sup>1</sup>camel,
- and the <sup>1</sup>hare,
- and the <sup>1</sup>coney:

<sup>1</sup>dromedary

<sup>1</sup>jack rabbit

<sup>1</sup>a rock hyrax

(for they chew the cud but divide not the hoof, therefore they are unclean unto you).

- And the <sup>1</sup>swine,

<sup>1</sup>pig species

(because it divideth the hoof yet cheweth not the cud it is unclean unto you). Ye shall not eat of their flesh, nor touch their dead carcase.

“These ye shall eat of all that are in the waters:

- all that have fins AND scales shall ye eat.

And whatsoever hath not fins AND scales ye may *not* eat; it is unclean unto you.

“Of all clean birds ye shall eat. But these are they of which ye shall *not* eat:

- the eagle,
- and the <sup>1</sup>ossifrage,
- and the <sup>1</sup>osprey,

<sup>1</sup>bearded vulture eagle

<sup>1</sup>sea hawk

“And when thou comest nigh over against the children of Ammon, distress them not, nor meddle with them; for I will not give thee of the land of the children of Ammon any possession; because I have given it unto the children of Lot for a possession. (That also was accounted a land of giants; giants dwelt therein in old time, and the Ammonites call them Zamzummims, a people great, and many, and tall, as the Anakims; but THE LORD destroyed them before them, and they succeeded them, and dwelt in their stead, as He did to the children of Esau which dwelt in Seir when He destroyed the Horims from before them and they succeeded them and dwelt in their stead even unto this day; and the Avims which dwelt in Hazerim even unto Azzah, the Caphtorims which came forth out of Caphtor destroyed them and dwelt in their stead).

“Rise ye up, take your journey, and pass over the river Arnon. Behold, I have given into thine hand Sihon, the Amorite king of Heshbon, and his land. Begin to possess it, and contend with him in battle. This day will I begin to put the dread of thee and the fear of thee upon the nations that are under the whole heaven, who shall hear report of thee and shall tremble and be in anguish because of thee.

“And I sent messengers out of the wilderness of Kedemoth unto Sihon king of Heshbon with words of peace, saying, ‘*Let me pass through thy land. I will go along by the high way, I will neither turn unto the right hand nor to the left. Thou shalt sell me meat for money that I may eat, and give me water for money that I may drink; only I will pass through on my feet (as the children of Esau which dwell in Seir, and the Moabites which dwell in Ar, did unto me) until I shall pass over Jordan into the land which THE LORD our God giveth us.*’

“But Sihon, king of Heshbon, would not let us pass by him, for THE LORD thy God hardened his spirit and made his heart obstinate, that He might deliver him into thy hand, as appeareth this day. And THE LORD said unto me, *‘Behold, I have begun to give Sihon and his land before thee; begin to possess, that thou mayest inherit his land.’*

“Then Sihon came out against us, he and all his people, to fight at Jahaz. And THE LORD our God delivered him before us; and we smote him and his sons and all his people. And we took all his cities at that time, and utterly destroyed the men and the women and the little ones of every city; we left none to remain. Only the cattle we took for a prey unto ourselves, and the spoil of the cities which we took.

“From Aroer, which is by the brink of the river of Arnon, and from the city that is by the river, even unto Gilead, there was not one city too strong for us. THE LORD our God delivered all unto us!

“Only unto the land of the children of Ammon thou camest not, nor unto any place of the river Jabbok, nor unto the cities in the mountains, nor unto whatsoever THE LORD our God forbade us.

“Then we turned and went up the way to Bashan. And Og the king of Bashan came out against us, he and all his people, to battle at Edrei. And THE LORD said unto me, *‘Fear him not! For I will deliver him and all his people and his land into thy hand, and thou shalt do unto him as thou didst unto Sihon, king of the Amorites, which dwelt at Heshbon.’* So THE LORD our God delivered into our hands Og also, the king of Bashan, and all his people; and we smote him until none was left to him remaining. And we took all his cities at that time. There was not a city which we took not from them - <sup>1</sup>threescore cities, all the region of Argob, the kingdom of Og in Bashan. All these cities were fenced with high walls, gates, and bars, beside unwalled towns a great many. And we utterly destroyed them as we did unto Sihon king, of Heshbon, utterly destroying the men, women, and children, of every city. But all the cattle and the spoil of the cities we took for a prey to ourselves. <sup>160</sup>

“And we took at that time, out of the hand of the two kings of the Amorites, the land that was on this side Jordan, from the river of Arnon unto Mount Hermon (which Hermon the Sidonians call Sirion and the Amorites call it Shenir) - all the cities of the plain, and all Gilead, and all Bashan, unto Salchah and Edrei, cities of the kingdom of Og in Bashan - for only Og, king of Bashan, remained of the remnant of giants. Behold, his <sup>1</sup>bedstead was a bedstead of iron (is it not in Rabbath of the children of Ammon?). <sup>2</sup>Nine cubits was the length thereof, and <sup>3</sup>four cubits the breadth of it, after the <sup>4</sup>cubit of a man.

<sup>1</sup>bed frame <sup>2</sup>about 14 feet <sup>3</sup>about 6 feet <sup>4</sup>about 1 foot 8 inches

“And this land, which we possessed at that time, from Aroer which is by the River Arnon, and half Mount Gilead, and the cities thereof, gave I unto the Reubenites and to the Gadites. And the rest of Gilead and all Bashan (being the kingdom of Og) gave I unto the half tribe of Manasseh; all the region of Argob, with all Bashan, which was called The Land of Giants. Jair, the son of Manasseh, took all the country of Argob unto the coasts of Geshuri and Maachathi, and called them after his own name - Bashan Havoth Jair - unto this day. And I gave Gilead unto Machir. And unto the Reubenites and unto the Gadites I gave from Gilead even unto the river Arnon half the valley, and the border even unto the river Jabbok which is the border of the children of Ammon - the plain also, and Jordan, and the coast thereof, from <sup>1</sup>Chinnereth even unto the sea of the plain, even the <sup>2</sup>Salt Sea under Ashdodthpispah eastward. <sup>3</sup>Sea of Galilee <sup>2</sup>Dead Sea

“And I commanded you at that time, saying, *‘THE LORD your God hath given you this land to possess it. Ye shall pass over armed before your brethren the Children of Israel, all that are <sup>1</sup>meet for the war. But your wives and your little ones and your cattle (for I know that ye have much cattle) shall abide in your cities which I have given you, until THE LORD have given rest unto your brethren, as well as unto you, and until they also possess the land which THE LORD your God hath given them beyond Jordan; and then shall ye return, every man, unto his possession which I have given you.’* <sup>1</sup>fit/suitable

“And I commanded Joshua at that time, saying, *‘Thine eyes have seen all that THE LORD your God hath done unto these two kings. So shall THE LORD do unto all the kingdoms whither thou passest. Ye shall not fear them - for THE LORD your God, He shall fight for you.’*

“And I besought THE LORD at that time, saying, *‘O Lord GOD, Thou hast begun to show Thy servant Thy greatness and Thy mighty hand; for what God is there in heaven or in earth that can do according to Thy works and according to Thy might? I pray Thee, let me go over and see the good land that is beyond Jordan, that goodly mountain, and Lebanon.’*

“But THE LORD was wroth with me for your sakes and would not hear me. And THE LORD said unto me, *‘Let it suffice thee; speak no more unto Me of this matter. Get thee up into the top of Pisgah and lift up thine eyes westward, and northward, and southward, and eastward, and behold it with thine eyes; for thou shalt not go over this Jordan. But charge Joshua, and encourage him, and strengthen him; for he shall go over before this people, and he shall cause them to inherit the land which thou shalt see.’*

“So we abode in the valley over against Bethpeor. Now therefore hearken, O Israel, unto the statutes and unto the judgments which I teach you, for to do them, that ye may live and go in and possess the land which THE LORD God of your fathers giveth you.

“Ye shall not add unto the Word which I command you, neither shall ye diminish ought from it, that ye may keep the commandments of THE LORD your God which I command you.

“Your eyes have seen what THE LORD did because of Baalpeor; for, all the men that followed Baalpeor, THE LORD thy God hath destroyed them from among you. But ye that did cleave unto THE LORD your God are alive, every one of you, this day. Behold, I have taught you statutes and judgments even as THE LORD my God commanded me, that ye should do so in the land whither ye go to possess it. Keep, therefore, and do them; for this is your wisdom and your understanding in the sight of the nations which shall hear all these statutes and say, *‘Surely this great nation is a wise and understanding people!’* - for what nation is there so great, who hath God so nigh unto them as THE LORD our God is in all things that we call upon Him for? And what nation is there so great that hath statutes and judgments so righteous as all this Law which I set before you this day?

“Only, take heed to thyself, and keep thy soul diligently, lest thou forget the things which thine eyes have seen, and lest they depart from thy heart all the days of thy life! But teach them thy sons, and thy sons' sons; specially the day that thou stoodest before THE LORD thy God in Horeb, when THE LORD said unto me, *‘Gather Me the people together, and I will make them hear My Words, that they may learn to fear Me all the days that they shall live upon the earth, and that they may teach their children.’*

“And ye came near and stood under the mountain; and the mountain burned with fire unto the midst of heaven, with darkness, clouds, and thick darkness.

“And THE LORD spake unto you out of the midst of the fire. Ye heard the voice of the Words, but saw no similitude; only ye heard a Voice.

“And He declared unto you His Covenant, which He commanded you to perform, even ten commandments; and He wrote them upon two tables of stone.

“And THE LORD commanded me at that time to teach you statutes and judgments, that ye might do them in the land whither ye go over to possess it.

“Take ye therefore good heed unto yourselves; for ye saw no manner of <sup>1</sup>similitude on the day that THE LORD spake unto you in Horeb out of the midst of the fire - lest ye corrupt yourselves and make you a graven image (the similitude of any figure, the likeness of male or female, the likeness of any beast that is on the earth, the likeness of any winged fowl that flieth in the air, the likeness of any thing that creepeth on the ground, the likeness of any fish that is in the waters beneath the earth), and lest thou lift up thine eyes unto heaven and, when thou seest the sun and the moon and the stars, even all the host of heaven, shouldst be driven to worship them and serve them, which THE LORD thy God hath divided unto all nations under the whole heaven.

*<sup>1</sup>image of someone/something*

“But THE LORD hath taken you and brought you forth out of the iron furnace, even out of Egypt, to be unto Him a People of Inheritance, as ye are this day. Furthermore THE LORD was angry with me for your sakes and swore that I should not go over Jordan, and that I should not go in unto that good land which THE LORD thy God giveth thee for an inheritance; but I must die in this land, I must not go over Jordan. But ye shall go over and possess that good land.

“Take heed unto yourselves, lest ye forget the Covenant of THE LORD your God which He made with you and make you a graven image or the likeness of any thing which THE LORD thy God hath forbidden thee - for THE LORD thy God is a consuming fire, even a jealous God.

“When thou shalt beget children, and children's children, and ye shall have remained long in the land, and shall corrupt yourselves and make a graven image or the likeness of any thing, and shall do evil in the sight of THE LORD thy God to provoke Him to anger, I call heaven and earth to witness against you this day that ye shall soon utterly perish from off the land whereunto ye go over Jordan to possess it; ye shall

not prolong your days upon it but shall utterly be destroyed. And THE LORD shall scatter you among the nations, and ye shall be left few in number among the heathen whither THE LORD shall lead you. And there ye shall serve gods, the work of men's hands, wood and stone, which neither see, nor hear, nor eat, nor smell.

*“But, if from thence thou shalt seek THE LORD thy God, thou shalt find Him - if thou seek Him with all thy heart and with all thy soul. When thou art in tribulation and all these things are come upon thee - even in the latter days - if thou turn to THE LORD thy God and shalt be obedient unto His voice (for THE LORD thy God is a merciful God), He will not forsake thee, neither destroy thee, nor forget the Covenant of thy fathers which He swore unto them.*

*“For, ask now of the days that are past which were before thee since the day that God created man upon the earth, and ask from the one side of heaven unto the other whether there hath been any such thing as this great thing is, or hath been heard like it? Did ever people hear the voice of God speaking out of the midst of the fire, as thou hast heard, and live?! Or hath God assayed to go and take Him a nation from the midst of another nation, by temptations, by signs, and by wonders, and by war, and by a mighty hand, and by a stretched out arm, and by great terrors, according to all that THE LORD your God did for you in Egypt before your eyes? Unto thee it was showed, that thou mightest know that THE LORD - He is God - there is none else beside Him! Out of heaven He made thee to hear His voice that He might instruct thee, and upon earth He showed thee His great fire; and thou heardest His Words out of the midst of the fire!*

*“And because He loved thy fathers, therefore He chose their seed after them and brought thee out in His sight with His mighty power out of Egypt, to drive out nations from before thee greater and mightier than thou art, to bring thee in, to give thee their land for an inheritance, as it is this day. Know therefore this day, and consider it in thine heart, that THE LORD - He is God in heaven above and upon the earth beneath - there is none else!*

*“Thou shalt keep therefore His statutes and His commandments which I command thee this day, that it may go well with thee and with thy children after thee, and that thou mayest prolong thy days upon the earth which THE LORD thy God giveth thee for ever!”*

Then Moses severed three cities on this side Jordan toward the sun rising, that the slayer might flee thither, which should kill his neighbour unawares and hated him not in times past, and that fleeing unto one of these cities he might live, namely:

- Bezer in the wilderness, in the plain country, of the Reubenites;
- and Ramoth in Gilead, of the Gadites;
- and Golan, in Bashan, of the Manassites.

And this is the Law which Moses set before the Children of Israel. These are the testimonies, and the statutes, and the judgments, which Moses spake unto the Children of Israel, after they came forth out of Egypt, on this side Jordan, in the valley over against Bethpeor, in the land of Sihon king of the Amorites who dwelt at Heshbon (whom Moses and the Children of Israel smote after they were come forth out of Egypt). and they possessed his land, and the land of Og king of Bashan - two kings of the Amorites, which were on this side Jordan toward the sun rising, from Aroer which is by the bank of the river Arnon, even unto Mount Sion, which is <sup>1</sup>Hermon, and all the plain on this side Jordan eastward, even unto the sea of the plain, under the springs of Pishgah.

*<sup>1</sup>the summit of Mt. Hermon*

And Moses called all Israel and said unto them:

*“Hear, O Israel, the statutes and judgments which I speak in your ears this day, that ye may learn them, and keep, and do them.*

*“THE LORD our God made a covenant with us in Horeb. THE LORD made not this covenant with our fathers, but with us - even us, who are all of us here alive this day.*

*“THE LORD talked with you face to face in the Mount out of the midst of the fire (I stood between THE LORD and you at that time, to show you the Word of THE LORD; for ye were afraid by reason of the fire, and went not up into the mount) saying:*

I am THE LORD thy God which brought thee out of the land of Egypt, from the house of bondage.  
Thou shalt have none other gods before Me!

Thou shalt not make thee any graven image or any likeness of any thing that is in heaven above,  
or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in the waters beneath the earth;  
thou shalt not bow down thyself unto them, nor serve them - for I, THE LORD thy God, am a jealous God,  
visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children unto the third and fourth generation of them that hate  
Me, and showing mercy unto thousands of them that love Me and keep My commandments.

Thou shalt not take the name of THE LORD thy God <sup>1</sup>in vain - for THE LORD will not hold him guiltless  
that taketh His name <sup>1</sup>in vain!

*<sup>1</sup>with an injurious or deceptive objective*

Keep the Sabbath Day, to sanctify it, as THE LORD thy God hath commanded thee.  
Six days thou shalt labour and do all thy work, but the Seventh Day is the Sabbath of THE LORD thy God.  
In it thou shalt not do any work - thou, nor thy son, nor thy daughter, nor thy manservant, nor thy  
maidservant, nor thine ox, nor thine ass, nor any of thy cattle, nor thy stranger that is within thy gates;  
that thy manservant and thy maidservant may rest as well as thou.  
And remember that *thou* wast a servant in the land of Egypt, and that THE LORD thy God brought thee out  
thence through a mighty hand and by a stretched out arm;  
therefore THE LORD thy God commanded thee to keep the Sabbath day.

Honour thy father and thy mother, as THE LORD thy God hath commanded thee, that thy days may be  
prolonged and that it may go well with thee in the land which THE LORD thy God giveth thee.

Thou shalt not kill.

Neither shalt thou commit adultery.

Neither shalt thou steal.

Neither shalt thou bear false witness against thy neighbour.

Neither shalt thou desire thy neighbour's wife, neither shalt thou covet thy neighbour's house, his field, or  
his manservant, or his maidservant, his ox, or his ass, or any thing that is thy neighbour's.'

"These Words THE LORD spake unto all your assembly in the mount out of the midst of the fire, of  
the cloud, and of the thick darkness, with a great voice - and He added no more. And He wrote them in two  
tables of stone, and delivered them unto me.

"And it came to pass, when ye heard the Voice out of the midst of the darkness (for the mountain  
did burn with fire) that ye came near unto me, even all the heads of your tribes, and your elders; and ye  
said, '*Behold, THE LORD our God hath showed us His glory and His greatness, and we have heard His voice  
out of the midst of the fire! We have seen this day that God doth talk with man and He liveth! Now,  
therefore, why should we die? For this great fire will consume us! If we hear the voice of THE LORD our God  
any more, then we shall die! For who is there of all flesh that hath heard the voice of the living God speaking  
out of the midst of the fire, as we have, and lived? Go thou near and hear all that THE LORD our God shall  
say; and speak thou unto us all that THE LORD our God shall speak unto thee; and we will hear it and do it.*'

"And THE LORD heard the voice of your words when ye spake unto me; and THE LORD said unto  
me, '*I have heard the voice of the words of this people which they have spoken unto thee. They have well  
said all that they have spoken. O that there were such an heart in them that they would fear Me and keep all  
My commandments always, that it might be well with them and with their children for ever! Go say to them:  
Get you into your tents again. But as for thee, stand thou here by Me and I will speak unto thee all the*

*commandments and the statutes and the judgments which thou shalt teach them, that they may do them in the land which I give them to possess it.'*

"Ye shall observe to do, therefore, as THE LORD your God hath commanded you - ye shall not turn aside to the right hand or to the left. Ye shall walk in all the ways which THE LORD your God hath commanded you, that ye may live, and that it may be well with you, and that ye may prolong your days in the land which ye shall possess.

"Now these are the commandments, the statutes, and the judgments, which THE LORD your God commanded to teach you, that ye might do them in the land whither ye go to possess it, that thou mightest fear THE LORD thy God, to keep all His statutes and His commandments, which I command thee - thou, and thy son, and thy son's son, all the days of thy life; and that thy days may be prolonged.

"Hear, therefore, O Israel, and observe to do it, that it may be well with thee, and that ye may increase mightily, as THE LORD God of thy fathers hath promised thee, in the land that floweth with milk and honey.

**"Hear, O Israel:  
THE LORD our God is One [LORD]!  
And thou shalt love THE LORD thy God  
with all thine heart,  
and with all thy soul,  
and with all thy might!**

"And these words, which I command thee this day, shall be in thine heart; and thou shalt teach them diligently unto thy children and shalt talk of them when thou sittest in thine house and when thou walkest by the way and when thou liest down and when thou risest up. And thou shalt bind them for a sign upon thine hand, and they shall be as frontlets between thine eyes. And thou shalt write them upon the posts of thy house and on thy gates.

"And it shall be, when THE LORD thy God shall have brought thee into the land which He swore unto thy fathers - to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob - to give thee great and goodly cities which thou buildedst not, and houses full of all good things which thou filledst not, and wells digged which thou diggedst not, vineyards and olive trees which thou plantedst not - when thou shalt have eaten and be full, then beware! Lest thou forget THE LORD which brought thee forth out of the land of Egypt, from the house of bondage.

"Thou shalt fear THE LORD thy God and serve Him and shalt swear by His name! Ye shall not go after other gods, of the gods of the people which are round about you - for THE LORD thy God is a jealous God among you - lest the anger of THE LORD thy God be kindled against thee and destroy thee from off the face of the earth!

"Ye shall not tempt THE LORD your God as ye tempted Him in Massah!

"Ye shall *diligently* keep the commandments of THE LORD your God and His testimonies and His statutes which He hath commanded thee.

"And thou shalt do that which is *right* and *good* in the sight of THE LORD, that it may be well with thee, and that thou mayest go in and possess the good land which THE LORD swore unto thy fathers, to cast out all thine enemies from before thee, as THE LORD hath spoken!

"And when thy son asketh thee in time to come, saying, '*What mean the testimonies and the statutes and the judgments which THE LORD our God hath commanded you?*' then thou shalt say unto thy son, '*We were Pharaoh's bondmen in Egypt; and THE LORD brought us out of Egypt with a mighty hand! And THE LORD showed signs and wonders, great and sore, upon Egypt, upon Pharaoh and upon all his household before our eyes! And He brought us out from thence, that He might bring us in, to give us the land which He swore unto our fathers! And THE LORD commanded us to do all these statutes to fear THE LORD our God for our good always, that He might preserve us alive as it is at this day. And it shall be our righteousness, if we observe to do all these commandments before THE LORD our God, as He hath commanded us.'*

"When THE LORD thy God shall bring thee into the land whither thou goest to possess it and hath cast out many nations before thee - the Hittites, and the Girgashites, and the Amorites, and the Canaanites,

and the Perizzites, and the Hivites, and the Jebusites... seven nations greater and mightier than thou - and when THE LORD thy God shall deliver them before thee, thou shalt smite them and utterly destroy them! Thou shalt make no covenant with them, nor show mercy unto them; neither shalt thou make marriages with them - thy daughter thou shalt not give unto his son, nor his daughter shalt thou take unto thy son. For they will turn away thy son from following Me, that they may serve other gods. So will the anger of THE LORD be kindled against you and destroy thee suddenly.

“But thus shall ye deal with them: Ye shall destroy their altars, and break down their images, and cut down their groves, and burn their graven images with fire. For thou art an holy people unto THE LORD thy God! THE LORD thy God hath chosen *thee* to be a special People unto Himself above all people that are upon the face of the earth!

“THE LORD did not set His love upon you nor choose you because ye were more in number than any people (for ye were the fewest of all people), but because THE LORD *loved* you! And, because He <sup>1</sup>would keep the oath which He had sworn unto your fathers hath THE LORD, brought you out with a mighty hand, and redeemed you out of the house of bondmen, from the hand of Pharaoh king of Egypt. <sup>1</sup>*desired/wanted to*

“KNOW THEREFORE THAT THE LORD THY GOD – HE IS GOD, THE FAITHFUL GOD – WHICH KEEPETH COVENANT AND MERCY WITH THEM THAT LOVE HIM AND KEEP HIS COMMANDMENTS TO A THOUSAND GENERATIONS, AND REPAYETH THEM THAT HATE HIM TO THEIR FACE, TO DESTROY THEM. HE WILL NOT <sup>1</sup>BE SLACK TO HIM THAT HATETH HIM, HE WILL REPAY HIM TO HIS FACE.” <sup>1</sup>*procrastinate/delay*

“Thou shalt therefore keep the commandments and the statutes and the judgments which I command thee this day, to do them. Wherefore it shall come to pass, if ye hearken to these judgments and keep and do them, that THE LORD thy God shall keep unto thee the covenant and the mercy which He swore unto thy fathers. And He will love thee, and bless thee, and multiply thee. He will also bless the fruit of thy womb, and the fruit of thy land, thy corn, and thy wine, and thine oil, the increase of thy kine, and the flocks of thy sheep, in the land which He swore unto thy fathers to give thee. Thou shalt be blessed above all people. There shall not be male or female barren among you or among your cattle. And THE LORD will take away from thee all sickness and will put none of the evil diseases of Egypt (which thou knowest) upon thee; but will lay them upon all them that hate thee.

“And thou shalt consume all the people which THE LORD thy God shall deliver thee; thine eye shall have no pity upon them, neither shalt thou serve their gods - for that will be a snare unto thee. If thou shalt say in thine heart, *‘These nations are more than I! How can I dispossess them?’* Thou shalt not be afraid of them but shalt well remember what THE LORD thy God did unto Pharaoh and unto all Egypt, the great temptations which thine eyes saw, and the signs and the wonders and the mighty hand and the stretched out arm whereby THE LORD thy God brought thee out. So shall THE LORD thy God do unto all the people of whom thou art afraid. Moreover THE LORD thy God will send the hornet among them, until they that are left and hide themselves from thee be destroyed. Thou shalt not be affrighted at them; for THE LORD thy God is among you, a mighty God and terrible.

“And THE LORD thy God will put out those nations before thee by little and little; thou mayest not consume them at once, lest the beasts of the field increase upon thee. But THE LORD thy God shall deliver them unto thee and shall destroy them with a mighty destruction until they be destroyed.

“And He shall deliver their kings into thine hand, and thou shalt destroy their name from under heaven. There shall no man be able to stand before thee, until thou have destroyed them.

“The graven images of their gods shall ye burn with fire. Thou shalt not desire the silver or gold that is on them, nor take it unto thee, lest thou be snared therein - for it is an abomination to THE LORD thy God. Neither shalt thou bring an abomination into thine house, lest thou be a cursed thing like it - but thou shalt utterly detest it, and thou shalt utterly abhor it; for it is a cursed thing.

“All the commandments which I command thee this day shall ye observe to do, that ye may live and multiply and go in and possess the land which THE LORD swore unto your fathers. And thou shalt remember all the Way which THE LORD thy God led thee these forty years in the wilderness, to humble thee and to prove thee, to know what was in thine heart, whether thou wouldest keep His commandments or no.

“And He humbled thee, and suffered thee to hunger, and fed thee with manna which thou knewest not (neither did thy fathers know) that He might make thee know that man doth not live by bread only; but by every Word that proceedeth out of the mouth of THE LORD doth man live.

“Thy raiment waxed not old upon thee, neither did thy foot swell, these forty years.

“Thou shalt also consider in thine heart that, as a man <sup>1</sup>chasteneth his son, so THE LORD thy God chasteneth thee.

*<sup>1</sup>corrects and disciplines*

“Therefore thou shalt keep the commandments of THE LORD thy God, to walk in His ways and to fear Him. For THE LORD thy God bringeth thee into a good land, a land of brooks of water, of fountains and depths that spring out of valleys and hills; a land of wheat, and barley, and vines, and fig trees, and pomegranates; a land of oil olive and honey; a land wherein thou shalt eat bread without scarceness. Thou shalt not lack any thing in it; a land whose stones are iron, and out of whose hills thou mayest dig brass.

“When thou hast eaten and art full, then thou shalt bless THE LORD thy God for the good land which He hath given thee. Beware that thou forget not THE LORD thy God, in not keeping His commandments and His judgments and His statutes which I command thee this day – lest, when thou hast eaten and art full and hast built goodly houses and dwelt therein, and when thy herds and thy flocks multiply and thy silver and thy gold is multiplied and all that thou hast is multiplied, then thine heart be lifted up and thou forget THE LORD thy God which brought thee forth out of the land of Egypt, from the house of bondage, who led thee through that great and terrible wilderness wherein were fiery serpents and scorpions and drought, where there was no water, who brought thee forth water out of the rock of flint, who fed thee in the wilderness with manna which thy fathers knew not, that He might humble thee, and that He might prove thee, to do thee good at thy latter end; and thou say in thine heart, *‘My power and the might of mine hand hath gotten me this wealth’*. But thou shalt remember THE LORD thy God; for it is *He* that giveth thee power to get wealth, that He may establish His Covenant which He sware unto thy fathers, as it is this day.

“And it shall be, if thou do at all forget THE LORD thy God and walk after other gods and serve them and worship them - I testify against you this day that ye *shall* surely perish! As the nations which THE LORD destroyeth before your face, so shall ye perish, because ye would not be obedient unto the voice of THE LORD your God.

“Hear, O Israel! Thou art to pass over Jordan this day to go in to possess nations greater and mightier than thyself - cities great and fenced up to heaven, a people great and tall, the children of the Anakims, whom thou knowest and of whom thou hast heard say, *‘Who can stand before the children of Anak?!’*

“Understand therefore this day that THE LORD thy God is He which goeth over before thee; as a consuming fire He shall destroy them, and He shall bring them down before thy face. So shalt thou drive them out and destroy them quickly, as THE LORD hath said unto thee!

“Speak not thou in thine heart after that THE LORD thy God hath cast them out from before thee, saying, *‘For my righteousness THE LORD hath brought me in to possess this land’* - <sup>1</sup>but for the wickedness of these nations THE LORD doth drive them out from before thee. Not for *thy* righteousness or for the uprightness of *thine* heart dost thou go to possess their land, <sup>1</sup>but for the wickedness of these nations THE LORD thy God doth drive them out from before thee, and that He may perform the Word which THE LORD sware unto thy fathers Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.

*<sup>1</sup>but rather it was*

“Understand, therefore, that THE LORD thy God giveth thee not this good land to possess it for *thy* righteousness - for thou art a stiffnecked people!

“Remember and forget not how thou *provokedst* THE LORD thy God to wrath in the wilderness - from the day that thou didst depart out of the land of Egypt until ye came unto this place ye have been rebellious against THE LORD! Also in Horeb ye provoked THE LORD to wrath so that THE LORD was angry with you to have destroyed you!

“When I was gone up into the mount to receive the tables of stone, even the tables of the Covenant which THE LORD made with you, then I abode in the mount forty days and forty nights. I neither did eat bread nor drink water. And THE LORD delivered unto me two tables of stone written with the finger of God; and on them was written according to all the Words which THE LORD spake with you in the mount out of the midst of the fire in the day of the assembly. And it came to pass at the end of forty days and forty

nights that THE LORD gave me the two tables of stone - even the tables of the Covenant. And THE LORD said unto me, *'Arise, get thee down quickly from hence; for thy people which thou hast brought forth out of Egypt have corrupted themselves; they are quickly turned aside out of the Way which I commanded them; they have made them a molten image!'*

*"Furthermore THE LORD spake unto me, saying, 'I have seen this people and, behold, it is a stiffnecked people! Let Me alone, that I may destroy them and blot out their name from under heaven, and I will make of thee a nation mightier and greater than they.'*

*"So I turned and came down from the mount, and the mount burned with fire; and the two tables of the covenant were in my two hands. And I looked and, behold, ye had sinned against THE LORD your God, and had made you a molten calf - ye had turned aside quickly out of the Way which THE LORD had commanded you!*

*"And I took the two tables, and cast them out of my two hands, and brake them before your eyes. And I fell down before THE LORD, as at the first, forty days and forty nights. I did neither eat bread, nor drink water, because of all your sins which ye sinned in doing wickedly in the sight of THE LORD, to provoke Him to anger. For I was afraid of the anger and hot displeasure wherewith THE LORD was wroth against you to destroy you! But THE LORD hearkened unto me at that time also. And THE LORD was very angry with Aaron to have destroyed him; and I prayed for Aaron also the same time. And I took your sin - the calf which ye had made - and burnt it with fire, and stamped it, and ground it very small, even until it was as small as dust, and I cast the dust thereof into the brook that descended out of the mount.*

*"And at Taberah and at Massah and at Kibrothhattaavah ye provoked THE LORD to wrath!*

*"Likewise when THE LORD sent you from Kadeshbarnea, saying, 'Go up and possess the land which I have given you,' then ye rebelled against the commandment of THE LORD your God and ye believed Him not, nor hearkened to His voice!*

*"Ye have been rebellious against THE LORD from the day that I knew you!!"*

*"Thus I fell down before THE LORD forty days and forty nights, as I fell down at the first; because THE LORD had said He would destroy you. I prayed, therefore, unto THE LORD and said, 'O Lord GOD, destroy not Thy People and Thine Inheritance which Thou hast redeemed through Thy greatness, which Thou hast brought forth out of Egypt with a mighty hand! Remember Thy servants - Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob! Look not unto the stubbornness of this people, nor to their wickedness, nor to their sin - lest the land whence Thou broughtest us out say, 'Because THE LORD was not able to bring them into the land which He promised them, and because He hated them, He hath brought them out to slay them in the wilderness.' Yet they are Thy People and Thine Inheritance which Thou broughtest out by Thy mighty power and by Thy stretched out arm!'*

*"At that time THE LORD said unto me, 'Hew thee two tables of stone like unto the first, and come up unto Me into the mount, and make thee an Ark of wood. And I will write on the tables the Words that were in the first tables which thou brakest, and thou shalt put them in the Ark.'*

*"And I made an Ark of shittim wood, and hewed two tables of stone like unto the first, and went up into the mount, having the two tables in mine hand. And He wrote on the tables according to the first writing - the Ten Commandments - which THE LORD spake unto you in the mount out of the midst of the fire in the day of the assembly, and THE LORD gave them unto me.*

*"And I turned myself and came down from the mount and put the tables in the Ark which I had made; and there they be, as THE LORD commanded me.*

*"And the Children of Israel took their journey from Beeroth (of the children of Jaakan) to Mosera. There Aaron died, and there he was buried; and Eleazar his son ministered in the priest's office in his stead.*

*"From thence they journeyed unto Gudgodah; and from Gudgodah to Jotbath, a land of rivers of waters.*

*"At that time THE LORD separated the tribe of Levi, to bear the Ark of the Covenant of THE LORD, to stand before THE LORD to minister unto Him, and to bless in His name, unto this day.*

*"Wherefore Levi hath no part nor inheritance with his brethren; THE LORD is his inheritance, according as THE LORD thy God promised him.*

*"And I stayed in the mount, according to the first time - forty days and forty nights; and THE LORD hearkened unto me at that time also, and THE LORD would not destroy thee.*

And THE LORD said unto me, *“Arise, take thy journey before the people, that they may go in and possess the land which I sware unto their fathers to give unto them.”*

“And now, Israel, what doth THE LORD thy God require of thee but to fear THE LORD thy God, to walk in all His ways, and to love Him, and to serve THE LORD thy God with all thy heart and with all thy soul, to keep the commandments of THE LORD and His statutes which I command thee this day for thy good?

“Behold, the heaven and the heaven of heavens is THE LORD'S thy God; the earth also, with all that therein is. Only, THE LORD had a delight in thy fathers to love them, and He chose their seed after them, even you above all people, as it is this day. Circumcise therefore the foreskin *of your heart*, and be no more stiffnecked! For THE LORD your God is God of gods and Lord of lords, a great God, a mighty, and a terrible, which regardeth not persons, nor taketh <sup>1</sup>reward. He doth execute the judgment of the fatherless and widow, and loveth the stranger, in giving him food and raiment. Love ye therefore the stranger - for ye were strangers in the land of Egypt!

*<sup>1</sup>bribes*

“Thou shalt fear THE LORD thy God; Him shalt thou serve, and to Him shalt thou cleave, and swear by His name. *He* is thy praise and *He* is thy God that hath done for thee these great and terrible things, which thine eyes have seen!

“Thy fathers went down into Egypt with <sup>1</sup>threescore and ten persons; and now THE LORD thy God hath made thee as the stars of heaven for multitude! Therefore thou shalt love THE LORD thy God, and keep His charge and His statutes and His judgments and His commandments, always!

*<sup>1</sup>70*

“And know ye this day (for I speak not with your children which have not known and which have not seen the chastisement of THE LORD your God, His greatness, His mighty hand, and His stretched out arm, and His miracles, and His acts, which He did in the midst of Egypt unto Pharaoh the king of Egypt and unto all his land, and what He did unto the army of Egypt, unto their horses, and to their chariots, how He made the water of the Red Sea to overflow them as they pursued after you, and how THE LORD hath destroyed them unto this day, and what He did unto you in the wilderness until ye came into this place, and what He did unto Dathan and Abiram (the sons of Eliab, the son of Reuben) - how the earth opened her mouth and swallowed them up and their households and their tents and all the substance that was in their possession, in the midst of all Israel), but *your* eyes have seen all the great acts of THE LORD which He did!

“Therefore shall ye keep all the commandments which I command you this day, that ye may be strong and go in and possess the land whither ye go to possess it, and that ye may prolong your days in the land which THE LORD sware unto your fathers to give unto them and to their seed - a land that floweth with milk and honey. For the land, whither thou goest in to possess it, is not as the land of Egypt from whence ye came out, where thou sowedst thy seed, and wateredst it with thy foot, as a garden of herbs. But the land whither ye go to possess it is a land of hills and valleys, and drinketh water of the rain of heaven, a land which THE LORD thy God careth for. The eyes of THE LORD thy God are always upon it, from the beginning of the year even unto the end of the year!

“And it shall come to pass if ye shall hearken diligently unto my commandments which I command you this day - to love THE LORD your God and to serve Him with all your heart and with all your soul - that *‘I will give you the rain of your land in his due season, the first rain and the latter rain, that thou mayest gather in thy corn, and thy wine, and thine oil; and I will send grass in thy fields for thy cattle, that thou mayest eat and be full.’*

“Take heed to yourselves that your heart be not deceived and ye turn aside and serve other gods and worship them, and then THE LORD'S wrath be kindled against you and He shut up the heaven that there be no rain and that the land yield not her fruit, and lest ye perish quickly from off the good land which THE LORD giveth you.

“Therefore shall ye lay up these my words in your heart and in your soul, and bind them for a sign upon your hand, that they may be as frontlets between your eyes. And ye shall teach them your children, speaking of them when thou sittest in thine house and when thou walkest by the way, when thou liest down and when thou risest up. And thou shalt write them upon the door posts of thine house and upon thy gates, that your days may be multiplied, and the days of your children, in the land which THE LORD sware unto your fathers to give them, as the days of heaven upon the earth.

“For if ye shall diligently keep all these commandments which I command you - to do them, to love THE LORD your God, to walk in all His ways, and to cleave unto Him - then will THE LORD drive out all these

nations from before you, and ye shall possess greater nations and mightier than yourselves. Every place whereon the soles of your feet shall tread shall be yours - from the wilderness and Lebanon, from the river, the river Euphrates, even unto the uttermost sea shall your coast be. There shall no man be able to stand before you, for THE LORD your God shall lay the fear of you and the dread of you upon all the land that ye shall tread upon, as He hath said unto you.

“And the glede, and the kite, and the vulture after his kind, and every raven after his kind, and the owl, and the night hawk, and the cuckoo, and the hawk after his kind, the little owl, and the great owl, and the swan, and the pelican, and the gier eagle, and the cormorant, and the stork, and the heron after her kind, and the lapwing, and the bat, and every creeping thing that flieth, is unclean unto you; they shall not be eaten. But of all clean fowls ye may eat.

“Ye shall not eat of any thing that dieth of itself. Thou shalt give it unto the stranger that is in thy gates, that he may eat it; or thou mayest sell it unto an alien. For thou art an holy people unto THE LORD thy God.

“Thou shalt not seethe a kid in his mother's milk.

“Thou shalt truly tithe all the increase of thy seed, that the field bringeth forth year by year.

“And thou shalt eat before THE LORD thy God (in the place which He shall choose to place His name there) the tithe of thy corn, of thy wine, and of thine oil, and the firstlings of thy herds and of thy flocks; that thou mayest learn to fear THE LORD thy God always. And if the way be too long for thee so that thou art not able to carry it, or if the place be too far from thee which THE LORD thy God shall choose to set His name there when THE LORD thy God hath blessed thee, then shalt thou turn it into money, and bind up the money in thine hand, and shalt go unto the place which THE LORD thy God shall choose, and thou shalt bestow that money for whatsoever thy soul lusteth after - for oxen, or for sheep, or for wine, or for strong drink, or for whatsoever thy soul desireth - and thou shalt eat there before THE LORD thy God, and thou shalt rejoice, thou, and thine household, and the Levite that is within thy gates (thou shalt not forsake <sup>him</sup>, for he hath no part nor inheritance with thee). <sup>the Levites</sup>

“At the end of three years thou shalt bring forth all the tithe of thine increase the same year, and shalt lay it up within thy gates; and the Levite (because he hath no part nor inheritance with thee), and the stranger, and the fatherless, and the widow, which are within thy gates, shall come and shall eat and be satisfied, that THE LORD thy God may bless thee in all the work of thine hand which thou doest.

“At the end of every seven years thou shalt make a release. And this is the manner of the release: Every creditor that lendeth ought unto his neighbour shall release it; he shall not exact it of his neighbour or of his brother because it is called THE LORD'S Release. Of a *foreigner* thou mayest exact it again; but that which is thine with thy brother, thine hand shall release - save when there shall be no poor among you (for THE LORD shall greatly bless thee in the land which THE LORD thy God giveth thee for an inheritance to possess it - *only* if thou carefully hearken unto the voice of THE LORD thy God, to observe to do all these commandments which I command thee this day).

“For THE LORD thy God blesseth thee, as He promised thee; and thou shalt lend unto many nations but thou shalt not borrow, and thou shalt reign over many nations but they shall not reign over thee.

“If there be among you a poor man of one of thy brethren within any of thy gates in thy land which THE LORD thy God giveth thee, thou shalt not harden thine heart nor shut thine hand from thy poor brother, but thou shalt open thine hand wide unto him and shalt surely lend him sufficient for his need in that which he <sup>wanteth</sup>.

“Beware that there be not a thought in thy wicked heart, saying, *‘The seventh year, the year of release, is at hand,’* and thine eye be evil against thy poor brother and thou givest him nought, and he cry unto THE LORD against thee, and it be sin unto thee! Thou shalt surely give him, and thine heart shall not be grieved when thou givest unto him, because that *for* this thing THE LORD thy God shall bless thee in all thy works and in all that thou putteth thine hand unto. For the poor shall never cease out of the land; therefore I command thee, saying, *‘Thou shalt open thine hand wide unto thy brother, to thy poor and to thy needy, in thy land.’*

“And if thy brother - an Hebrew man or an Hebrew woman - be sold unto thee and serve thee six years, then in the seventh year thou shalt let him go free from thee. And when thou sendest him out free from thee, thou shalt not let him go away <sup>empty</sup>! Thou shalt furnish him liberally out of thy flock, and out

of thy floor, and out of thy winepress; of that wherewith THE LORD thy God hath blessed thee thou shalt give unto him. And thou shalt remember that thou wast a bondman in the land of Egypt and THE LORD thy God redeemed thee - therefore I command thee this thing to day. *'empty-handed*

"And it shall be, if he say unto thee, '*I will not go away from thee,*' because he loveth thee and thine house because he is well with thee, then thou shalt take an awl and thrust it through his ear unto the door, and he shall be thy servant for ever. And also unto thy maidservant thou shalt do likewise. It shall not seem hard unto thee when thou sendest him away free from thee; for he hath been worth a double hired servant to thee in serving thee six years - and THE LORD thy God shall bless thee in all that thou doest.

"All the firstling males that come of thy herd and of thy flock thou shalt sanctify unto THE LORD thy God. Thou shalt do no work with the firstling of thy bullock, nor shear the firstling of thy sheep. Thou shalt eat it before THE LORD thy God year by year in the place which THE LORD shall choose, thou and thy household. And if there be any blemish therein (as, if it be lame or blind or have any ill blemish), thou shalt not sacrifice it unto THE LORD thy God. Thou shalt eat it within thy gates. The unclean and the clean person shall eat it alike, as the roebuck, and as the hart. Only, thou shalt not eat the blood thereof; thou shalt pour it upon the ground as water.

"Observe the month of Abib and keep the Passover unto THE LORD thy God; for in the month of Abib THE LORD thy God brought thee forth out of Egypt by night. Thou shalt therefore sacrifice the Passover unto THE LORD thy God, of the flock and the herd, in the place which THE LORD shall choose to place His name there. Thou shalt eat no leavened bread with it; seven days shalt thou eat unleavened bread therewith, even the bread of affliction - for thou camest forth out of the land of Egypt in haste - that thou mayest remember the day when thou camest forth out of the land of Egypt all the days of thy life. And there shall be no leavened bread seen with thee in all thy coast seven days; neither shall there any thing of the flesh (which thou sacrificedst the first day at even) remain all night until the morning. Thou mayest not sacrifice the Passover within any of thy gates which THE LORD thy God giveth thee; but at the place which THE LORD thy God shall choose to place His name in, *there* thou shalt sacrifice the Passover at even, at the going down of the sun, at the season that thou camest forth out of Egypt. And thou shalt roast and eat it in the place which THE LORD thy God shall choose, and thou shalt turn in the morning and go unto thy tents. Six days thou shalt eat unleavened bread, and on the Seventh Day shall be a solemn assembly to THE LORD thy God - thou shalt do no work therein.

"Seven weeks shalt thou number unto thee. Begin to number the seven weeks from such time as thou beginnest to put the sickle to the corn. And thou shalt keep the Feast of Weeks unto THE LORD thy God with a tribute of a freewill offering of thine hand, which thou shalt give unto THE LORD thy God according as THE LORD thy God hath blessed thee. And thou shalt rejoice before THE LORD thy God - thou, and thy son, and thy daughter, and thy manservant, and thy maidservant, and the Levite that is within thy gates, and the stranger and the fatherless and the widow that are among you, in the place which THE LORD thy God hath chosen to place His name there.

"And thou shalt remember that thou wast a bondman in Egypt, and thou shalt observe and do these statutes.

"Thou shalt observe the Feast of Tabernacles seven days, after that thou hast gathered in thy corn and thy wine. And thou shalt rejoice in thy feast - thou, and thy son, and thy daughter, and thy manservant, and thy maidservant, and the Levite, the stranger and the fatherless and the widow that are within thy gates. Seven days shalt thou keep a solemn feast unto THE LORD thy God in the place which THE LORD shall choose. Because THE LORD thy God shall bless thee in all thine increase and in all the works of thine hands, therefore thou shalt surely rejoice.

"Three times in a year shall all thy males appear before THE LORD thy God in the place which He shall choose:

- in the Feast of Unleavened Bread,
- and in the Feast of Weeks,
- and in the Feast of Tabernacles,

and they shall not appear before THE LORD empty - every man shall give as he is able, according to the blessing of THE LORD thy God which He hath given thee.

“Judges and officers shalt thou make thee in all thy gates which THE LORD thy God giveth thee throughout thy tribes, and they shall judge the people with just judgment.

“Thou shalt not wrest judgment; thou shalt not respect persons, neither take a <sup>1</sup>gift (for a <sup>1</sup>gift doth blind the eyes of the wise and pervert the words of the righteous). <sup>1</sup>bribe

“That which is altogether just shalt thou follow, that thou mayest live and inherit the land which THE LORD thy God giveth thee.

“Thou shalt not plant thee a grove of any trees near unto the Altar of THE LORD thy God which thou shalt make thee.

“Neither shalt thou set thee up any image (which THE LORD thy God hateth).

“Thou shalt not sacrifice unto THE LORD thy God any bullock or sheep wherein is blemish or any evil-favouredness - for that is an abomination unto THE LORD thy God.

“If there be found among you, within any of thy gates which THE LORD thy God giveth thee, man or woman that hath wrought wickedness in the sight of THE LORD thy God in transgressing His Covenant, and hath gone and served other gods and worshipped them - either the sun or moon or any of the host of heaven, which I have not commanded - and it be told thee and thou hast heard of it and inquired diligently and, behold, it be true and the thing certain that such abomination is wrought in Israel, then shalt thou bring forth that man or that woman which have committed that wicked thing unto thy gates, even that man or that woman, and shalt stone them with stones till they die.

“At the mouth of two witnesses, or three witnesses, shall he that is worthy of death be put to death; but at the mouth of one witness he shall not be put to death.

“The hands of the witnesses shall be first upon him to put him to death, and afterward the hands of all the people. So thou shalt put the evil away from among you.

“If there arise a matter too hard for thee in judgment, between blood and blood, between plea and plea, and between stroke and stroke, being matters of controversy within thy gates, then shalt thou arise and get thee up into the place which THE LORD thy God shall choose and thou shalt come unto the priests the Levites and unto the judge that shall be in those days, and inquire; and they shall show thee the sentence of judgment, and thou shalt do according to the sentence which *they* of that place (which THE LORD shall choose) shall show thee; and thou shalt observe to do according to all that they inform thee. According to the sentence of the law which they shall teach thee and according to the judgment which they shall tell thee, thou shalt do. Thou shalt not decline from the sentence which they shall show thee, to the right hand, nor to the left. And the man that will do presumptuously and will not hearken unto the priest that standeth to minister there before THE LORD thy God, or unto the judge, even that man shall die; and thou shalt put away the evil from Israel. And all the people shall hear, and fear, and do no more presumptuously.

“When thou art come unto the land which THE LORD thy God giveth thee and shalt possess it and shalt dwell therein, and shalt say, *‘I will set a king over me like as all the nations that are about me,’* thou shalt in any wise set him king over thee whom THE LORD thy God shall choose. One from among thy brethren shalt thou set king over thee; thou mayest not set a stranger over thee which is not thy brother. But he shall not multiply horses to himself, nor cause the people to return to Egypt to the end that he should multiply horses; forasmuch as THE LORD hath said unto you, *‘Ye shall henceforth return no more that way!’* Neither shall he multiply wives to himself, that his heart turn not away, neither shall he greatly multiply to himself silver and gold. And it shall be, when he sitteth upon the throne of his kingdom, that he shall write him a copy of this Law in a book out of that which is before the priests the Levites, and it shall be with him and he shall read therein all the days of his life, that he may learn to fear THE LORD his God, to keep all the Words of this Law and these statutes, to do them, that his heart be not lifted up above his brethren, and that he turn not aside from the commandment to the right hand or to the left, to the end that he may prolong his days in his kingdom - he and his children - in the midst of Israel.

“The priests the Levites, and all the tribe of Levi, shall have no part nor inheritance with Israel. They shall eat the offerings of THE LORD made by fire, and his inheritance. Therefore shall they have no inheritance among their brethren - *THE LORD* is their inheritance, as He hath said unto them. And this shall be the priest’s due from the people, from them that offer a sacrifice, whether it be ox or sheep; and they shall give unto the priest the shoulder, and the two cheeks, and the maw. The firstfruit also of thy corn, of

thy wine, and of thine oil, and the first of the fleece of thy sheep, shalt thou give him. For THE LORD thy God hath chosen him out of all thy tribes to stand to minister in the name of THE LORD - him and his sons for ever. And if a Levite come from any of thy gates out of all Israel, where he sojourned, and come with all the desire of his mind unto the place which THE LORD shall choose, then he shall minister in the name of THE LORD his God, as all his brethren the Levites do, which stand there before THE LORD.

“They shall have like portions to eat, beside that which cometh of the sale of his patrimony.

“When thou art come into the land which THE LORD thy God giveth thee, thou shalt not learn to do after the abominations of those nations. There shall not be found among you any one

- that maketh his son or his daughter to pass through the fire,
- or that useth divination,
- or an observer of times,
- or an enchanter,
- or a witch,
- or a charmer,
- or a consulter with familiar spirits,
- or a wizard,
- or a necromancer.

For all that do these things are an abomination unto THE LORD, and *because* of these abominations THE LORD thy God doth drive them out from before thee. Thou shalt be perfect with THE LORD thy God! For these nations, which thou shalt possess, hearkened unto observers of times and unto diviners; but as for thee, THE LORD thy God hath not <sup>1</sup>suffered *thee* so to do. *permitted/allowed/tolerated*

“THE LORD thy God will raise up unto thee a Prophet from the midst of thee, of thy brethren, like unto me. Unto Him ye shall hearken, according to all that thou desiredst of THE LORD thy God in Horeb in the day of the assembly, saying, *‘Let me not hear again the voice of THE LORD my God, neither let me see this great fire any more, that I die not.’*

“And THE LORD said unto me, ‘They have well spoken that which they have spoken. I will raise them up a Prophet from among their brethren, like unto thee, and will put My words in His mouth and He shall speak unto them all that I shall command Him. And it shall come to pass that whosoever will not hearken unto My Words which He shall speak in My name, I will require it of him! But the prophet which shall presume to speak a word in My name which I have not commanded him to speak, or that shall speak in the name of other gods, even that prophet shall die.

“And if thou say in thine heart, *‘How shall we know the Word which THE LORD hath not spoken?’*

When a prophet speaketh in the name of THE LORD, if the thing follow not, nor come to pass, *that* is the thing which THE LORD hath not spoken, but the prophet hath spoken it presumptuously. Thou shalt not be afraid of him!

“When THE LORD thy God hath cut off the nations, whose land THE LORD thy God giveth thee, and thou succeedest them and dwellest in their cities and in their houses, thou shalt separate three cities for thee in the midst of thy land which THE LORD thy God giveth thee to possess it. Thou shalt prepare thee a way, and divide the coasts of thy land, which THE LORD thy God giveth thee to inherit, into three parts, that every slayer may flee thither. And this is the case of the slayer which shall flee thither that he may live: whoso killeth his neighbour ignorantly, whom he hated not in time past (as when a man goeth into the wood with his neighbour to hew wood and his hand fetcheth a stroke with the ax to cut down the tree and the head slippeth from the helve and lighteth upon his neighbour that he die), he shall flee unto one of those cities and live, lest the avenger of the blood pursue the slayer while his heart is hot and overtake him, because the way is long, and slay him; whereas he was not worthy of death, inasmuch as he hated him not in time past. Wherefore I command thee, saying, *‘Thou shalt separate three cities for thee.’* And if THE LORD thy God enlarge thy coast, as He hath sworn unto thy fathers, and give thee all the land which He promised to give unto thy fathers; if thou shalt keep all these commandments, to do them, which I command thee this day - to love THE LORD thy God and to walk ever in His ways - then shalt thou add three cities more for thee, beside these three, that innocent blood be not shed in thy land which THE LORD thy God giveth thee for an inheritance, and so blood be upon thee.

“But if any man hate his neighbour, and lie in wait for him and rise up against him and smite him mortally that he die, and fleeth into one of these cities, then the elders of his city shall send and fetch him thence and deliver him into the hand of the Avenger of Blood, that he may die. Thine eye shall not pity him, but thou shalt put away the guilt of innocent blood from Israel, that it may go well with thee.

“Thou shalt not remove thy neighbour's landmark which they of old time have set in thine inheritance, which thou shalt inherit in the land that THE LORD thy God giveth thee to possess it.

“One witness shall not rise up against a man for any iniquity, or for any sin, in any sin that he sinneth. At the mouth of two witnesses, or at the mouth of three witnesses, shall the matter be established.

“If a false witness rise up against any man to testify against him that which is wrong, then both the men between whom the controversy is shall stand before THE LORD, before the priests and the judges which shall be in those days; and the judges shall make diligent inquisition. And, behold, if the witness be a false witness and hath testified falsely against his brother, then shall ye do unto him as he had thought to have done unto his brother. So shalt thou put the evil away from among you. And those which remain shall hear, and fear, and shall henceforth commit no more any such evil among you. And thine eye shall not pity; but life shall go for life, eye for eye, tooth for tooth, hand for hand, foot for foot.

“When thou goest out to battle against thine enemies, and seest horses, and chariots, and a people more than thou, be not afraid of them! For THE LORD thy God is with thee, which brought thee up out of the land of Egypt. And it shall be, when ye are come nigh unto the battle, that the priest shall approach and speak unto the people, and shall say unto them, *‘Hear, O Israel, ye approach this day unto battle against your enemies! Let not your hearts faint, fear not, and do not tremble, neither be ye terrified because of them! For THE LORD your God is He that goeth with you, to fight for you against your enemies, to save you!’* And the officers shall speak unto the people, saying, *‘What man is there that hath built a new house and hath not dedicated it? Let him go and return to his house, lest he die in the battle and another man dedicate it. And what man is he that hath planted a vineyard and hath not yet eaten of it? Let him also go and return unto his house, lest he die in the battle and another man eat of it. And what man is there that hath betrothed a wife and hath not taken her? Let him go and return unto his house, lest he die in the battle and another man take her.’* And the officers shall speak further unto the people, and they shall say, *‘What man is there that is fearful and fainthearted? Let him go and return unto his house, lest his brethren's heart faint as well as his heart.’* And it shall be, when the officers have made an end of speaking unto the people, that they shall make captains of the armies to lead the people.

“When thou comest nigh <sup>1</sup>unto a city to fight against it, then proclaim peace unto it. And it shall be, if it make thee answer of peace and open unto thee, then it shall be that all the people that is found therein shall be tributaries unto thee, and they shall serve thee. And if it will make no peace with thee, but will make war against thee, then thou shalt besiege it. And when THE LORD thy God hath delivered it into thine hands, thou shalt smite every male thereof with the edge of the sword - but the women, and the little ones, and the cattle, and all that is in the city, even all the spoil thereof, shalt thou take unto thyself; and thou shalt eat the spoil of thine enemies which THE LORD thy God hath given thee. Thus shalt thou do unto all the cities which are very far off from thee which are *not* of the cities of <sup>2</sup>these nations.

*<sup>1</sup>in a battle of foreign war <sup>2</sup>nations trespassing in the land given to Israel*

“But of the cities of these people which THE LORD thy God doth give thee for an inheritance, thou shalt save alive nothing that breatheth; but thou shalt utterly destroy them - namely, the Hittites, and the Amorites, the Canaanites, and the Perizzites, the Hivites, and the Jebusites - as THE LORD thy God hath commanded thee, that they teach you not to do after all their abominations which they have done unto their gods, so should ye sin against THE LORD your God.

“When thou shalt besiege a city a long time in making war against it to take it, thou shalt not destroy the trees thereof by forcing an ax against them. For thou mayest eat of them, and thou shalt not cut them down (for the tree of the field is man's life) to employ them in the siege; only the trees which thou knowest that they be not trees for meat thou shalt destroy and cut them down, and thou shalt build bulwarks against the city that maketh war with thee, until it be subdued.

“If one be found slain in the land which THE LORD thy God giveth thee to possess it, lying in the field, and it be not known who hath slain him, then thy elders and thy judges shall come forth, and they shall measure unto the cities which are round about him that is slain. And it shall be that the city which is

next unto the slain man, even the elders of that city shall take an heifer which hath not been wrought with and which hath not drawn in the yoke, and the elders of that city shall bring down the heifer unto a rough valley which is neither eared nor sown and shall strike off the heifer's neck there in the valley. And the priests, the sons of Levi, shall come near (for, them THE LORD thy God hath chosen to minister unto Him, and to bless in the name of THE LORD, and by their word shall every controversy and every stroke be tried); and all the elders of that city that are next unto the slain man shall wash their hands over the heifer that is beheaded in the valley. And they shall answer and say, *'Our hands have not shed this blood, neither have our eyes seen it. Be merciful, O LORD, unto Thy People Israel whom Thou hast redeemed, and lay not innocent blood unto Thy People of Israel's charge.'* And the blood shall be forgiven them. So shalt thou put away the guilt of innocent blood from among you when thou shalt do that which is right in the sight of THE LORD.

"When thou goest forth to war against thine enemies and THE LORD thy God hath delivered them into thine hands, and thou hast taken them captive and seest among the captives a beautiful woman and hast a desire unto her that thou wouldest have her to thy wife, then thou shalt bring her home to thine house and she shall shave her head and pare her nails, and she shall put the raiment of her captivity from off her, and shall remain in thine house and bewail her father and her mother a full month. And after that thou shalt go in unto her and be her husband, and she shall be thy wife. And it shall be, if thou have no delight in her, then thou shalt let her go whither she will - but thou shalt *not* sell her at all for money, thou shalt *not* make merchandise of her, because thou hast humbled her!

"If a man have two wives - one beloved and another hated - and they have born him children (both the beloved and the hated), and, if the firstborn son be hers that was hated, then it shall be, when he maketh his sons to inherit that which he hath, that he may *not* <sup>1</sup>make the son of the beloved <sup>2</sup>firstborn before the son of the hated, which is indeed the firstborn, but he shall *acknowledge* the son of the hated for the firstborn by giving him a double portion of all that he hath; for he is the beginning of his strength - the Right of the Firstborn is his. <sup>1</sup>bestow upon <sup>2</sup>the Birth Right of the Firstborn

"If a man have a stubborn and rebellious son which will not obey the voice of his father or the voice of his mother, and that, when they have chastened him, will not hearken unto them, then shall his father and his mother lay hold on him and bring him out unto the elders of his city and unto the gate of his place; and they shall say unto the elders of his city, *'This our son is stubborn and rebellious, he will not obey our voice (he is a glutton, and a drunkard....).'* And all the men of his city shall stone him with stones that he die. So shalt thou put evil away from among you; and all Israel shall hear, and fear.

"And if a man have committed a sin worthy of death, and he be to be put to death, and thou hang him on a tree, his body shall not remain all night upon the tree, but thou shalt in any wise bury him *that day* (for he that is hanged is accursed of God), that thy land be not defiled which THE LORD thy God giveth thee for an inheritance.

"Thou shalt not see thy brother's ox or his sheep go astray and hide thyself from them; thou shalt in any case bring them again unto thy brother. And if thy brother be not nigh unto thee, or if thou know him not, then thou shalt bring it unto thine own house, and it shall be with thee until thy brother seek after it, and thou shalt restore it to him again. In like manner shalt thou do with his ass, and so shalt thou do with his raiment; and with *all* lost thing of thy brother's, which he hath lost and thou hast found, shalt thou do likewise. Thou mayest not hide thyself.

"Thou shalt not see thy brother's ass or his ox fall down by the way and hide thyself from them; thou shalt surely help him to lift them up again!

"The woman shall not wear that which pertaineth unto a man, neither shall a man put on a woman's garment - for all that do so are abomination unto THE LORD thy God.

"If a bird's nest chance to be before thee in the way in any tree, or on the ground, whether they be young ones, or eggs, and the dam sitting upon the young or upon the eggs, thou shalt not take the dam *with* the young; but thou shalt in any wise let the dam go, and take the young to thee, that it may be well with thee, and that thou mayest prolong thy days.

"When thou buildest a new house, then thou shalt make a <sup>1</sup>battlement for thy roof, that thou bring not blood upon thine house if any man fall from thence. <sup>1</sup>wall/railing

"Thou shalt not sow thy vineyard with <sup>1</sup>divers seeds, lest the fruit of thy seed which thou hast sown, and the fruit of thy vineyard, be defiled. <sup>1</sup>various/sundry

"Thou shalt not plow with an ox *and* an ass together.

"Thou shalt not wear a garment of <sup>1</sup>divers sorts, as of woollen and linen together. <sup>1</sup>variety of materials

"Thou shalt make thee fringes upon the four quarters of thy vesture wherewith thou coverest thyself.

"If any man take a wife and go in unto her and hate her, and give occasions of speech against her and bring up an evil name upon her, and say, '*I took this woman, and when I came to her I found her not a <sup>1</sup>maid*', then shall the father of the damsel and her mother take and bring forth <sup>2</sup>the tokens of the damsel's virginity unto the elders of the city in the gate, and the damsel's father shall say unto the elders, '*I gave my daughter unto this man to wife and he hateth her; and, lo, he hath given occasions of speech against her, saying, 'I found not thy daughter a <sup>1</sup>maid'; and yet these are the tokens of my daughter's virginity.*' And they shall spread the cloth before the elders of the city. And the elders of that city shall take that man and chastise him; and they shall <sup>3</sup>amerce him in an hundred shekels of silver, and give them unto the father of the damsel, because he hath brought up an evil name upon a virgin of Israel; and she shall be his wife - he may <sup>4</sup>not put her away all his days.

*<sup>1</sup>a virgin. <sup>2</sup>it was the custom of times past that females live with their parents until marriage; sheets or garments that were soiled with blood from their monthly period could be used as evidence ("a token") for her virginity, and therefore the public shame which her husband sought to bring on her by falsely accusing her of not being a virgin would be turned back on him, and he would then be required by law to keep her and treat her with the dignities due to a wife, with the public now keeping a close eye on the husband to see to it that he does so. <sup>3</sup>fine <sup>4</sup>divorce her.*

"But if this thing be true, and the tokens of virginity be not found for the damsel, then they shall bring out the damsel to the door of her father's house and the men of her city shall stone her with stones that she die, because she hath wrought folly in Israel to play the whore in her father's house. So shalt thou put evil away from among you.

"If a man be found lying with a woman married to an husband, then they shall *both* of them die - both the man that lay with the woman *and* the woman. So shalt thou put away evil from Israel.

"If a damsel that is a virgin be betrothed unto an husband, and a man find her in the city and lie with her, then ye shall bring them both out unto the gate of that city and ye shall stone them with stones that they die - the damsel, because she cried not (being in the city), and the man, because he hath humbled his neighbour's wife. So thou shalt put away evil from among you.

"But if a man find a betrothed damsel in the field and the man <sup>1</sup>force her and lie with her, then the man only, that lay with her, shall die; but unto the damsel thou shalt do nothing - there is in the damsel no sin worthy of death, for, as when a man riseth against his neighbour and slayeth him, even so is this matter, for he found her in the field, and the betrothed damsel cried, and there was none to save her. <sup>1</sup>rape

"If a man find a damsel that is a virgin which is not betrothed and lay hold on her and lie with her and they be found, then the man that lay with her shall give unto the damsel's father fifty shekels of silver and she shall be his wife; because he hath humbled her he may not <sup>1</sup>put her away all his days. <sup>1</sup>divorce

"A man shall not take his father's wife, nor <sup>1</sup>discover his father's skirt. <sup>1</sup>uncover

"He that is wounded in the <sup>1</sup>stones or hath his <sup>2</sup>privy member cut off shall not enter into the congregation of THE LORD. <sup>1</sup>testicles <sup>2</sup>private part (penis)

"A <sup>1</sup>bastard shall not enter into the congregation of THE LORD - even to his tenth generation shall he not enter into the congregation of THE LORD. <sup>1</sup>illegitimate child (one born to unmarried parents)

"An Ammonite or Moabite shall not enter into the congregation of THE LORD; even to their tenth generation shall they not enter into the congregation of THE LORD for ever, because they met you not with bread and with water in the way when ye came forth out of Egypt, and because they hired against thee Balaam the son of Beor of Pethor of Mesopotamia to curse thee (nevertheless THE LORD thy God would not hearken unto Balaam, but THE LORD thy God turned the curse into a blessing unto thee, because THE LORD thy God loved thee). Thou shalt not seek their peace nor their prosperity all thy days for ever.

"Thou shalt not abhor an <sup>1</sup>Edomite; for he is thy brother. <sup>1</sup>descendant of Esau, the brother of Jacob

"Thou shalt not abhor an Egyptian, because thou wast a stranger in his land. The children that are begotten of them shall enter into the congregation of THE LORD in their third generation.

"When the host goeth forth against thine enemies, then keep thee from every wicked thing.

"If there be among you any man that is not clean by reason of <sup>1</sup>uncleanness <sup>2</sup>that chanceth him by night, then shall he go abroad out of the camp, he shall not come within the camp; but it shall be, when evening cometh on, he shall wash himself with water, and when the sun is down he shall come into the camp again. <sup>1</sup>unsanitary <sup>2</sup>nocturnal emissions/"wet dreams" (a natural & healthy function of the male body to dump excess semen)

"Thou shalt have a place also without the camp whither thou shalt go forth abroad, and thou shalt have a paddle upon thy weapon; and it shall be, when thou wilt <sup>1</sup>ease thyself abroad, thou shalt dig therewith and shalt turn back and cover that which cometh from thee - for THE LORD thy God walketh in the midst of thy camp to deliver thee and to give up thine enemies before thee; therefore shall thy camp be holy, that He see no unclean thing in thee and turn away from thee. <sup>1</sup>deficate

"Thou shalt not deliver unto his master the servant which is escaped from his master unto thee. He shall dwell with thee, even among you, in that place which he shall choose in one of thy gates where it liketh him best. Thou shalt not oppress him!

"There shall be no whore of the daughters of Israel, nor a <sup>1</sup>sodomite of the sons of Israel. Thou shalt not bring the <sup>2</sup>hire of a whore or the <sup>3</sup>price of a dog into the House of THE LORD thy God for any vow; for even both these are abomination unto THE LORD thy God.

<sup>1</sup>קְדֵשִׁים (Khadeshim) a male prostitute of an idol's temple who engaged in sexual religious rites with both females and males for pagan fertility gods (it does not mean "homosexual") <sup>2</sup>money made by a female prostitute <sup>3</sup>money made by a male prostitute/a gigalo

"Thou shalt not lend <sup>1</sup>upon usury to thy brother (usury of money, usury of victuals, usury of any thing that is lent upon usury). Unto a stranger thou mayest lend upon usury - but unto thy brother thou shalt not lend upon usury, that THE LORD thy God may bless thee in all that thou settest thine hand to in the land whither thou goest to possess it. <sup>1</sup>with interest

"When thou shalt vow a vow unto THE LORD thy God, thou shalt not slack to pay it! For THE LORD thy God will surely require it of thee and it would be sin in thee. But if thou shalt forbear to vow, it shall be no sin in thee. That which is gone out of thy lips thou shalt keep and perform - even a freewill offering, according as thou hast vowed unto THE LORD thy God, which thou hast promised with thy mouth.

"When thou comest into thy neighbour's vineyard, then thou mayest <sup>1</sup>eat grapes thy fill at thine own pleasure; but thou shalt not put any in thy vessel. <sup>1</sup>pluck and eat immediately

"When thou comest into the standing corn of thy neighbour, then thou mayest pluck the ears with thine hand; but thou shalt not move a sickle unto thy neighbour's standing corn.

"When a man hath taken a wife and married her and it come to pass that she find no favour in his eyes because he hath found some uncleanness in her, <sup>1</sup>then let him write her a bill of divorcement and give it in her hand and send her out of his house; and when she is departed out of his house, she may go and be another man's wife. And if the latter husband hate her and write her a bill of divorcement and giveth it in her hand and sendeth her out of his house, or, if the latter husband die which took her to be his wife, her former husband which sent her away may *not* take her again to be his wife after that she is defiled; for that is abomination before THE LORD, and thou shalt not cause the land to sin which THE LORD thy God giveth thee for an inheritance. <sup>1</sup>NOTE: this law repealed in Mat. 5:31-32 by Messiah and governed by 1<sup>st</sup> Cor. 7:10-16

"When a man hath taken a new wife, he shall not go out to war, neither shall he be charged with any business; but he shall be free at home one year and shall cheer up his wife which he hath taken.

"No man shall take the nether or the upper millstone <sup>1</sup>to pledge; for he taketh a man's <sup>2</sup>life to pledge. <sup>1</sup>as collateral <sup>2</sup>livelihood/source of income

"If a man be found <sup>1</sup>stealing any of his brethren of the Children of Israel and maketh merchandise of him or selleth him, then that thief shall die and thou shalt put evil away from among you. <sup>1</sup>kidnapping

"Take heed in the plague of leprosy, that thou observe diligently and do according to all that the priests the Levites shall teach you. As I commanded them, so ye shall observe to do. Remember what THE LORD thy God did unto Miriam by the way, after that ye were come forth out of Egypt!

"When thou dost lend thy brother any thing, thou shalt not go into his house to fetch his pledge. Thou shalt stand abroad, and the man to whom thou dost lend shall bring out the pledge abroad unto thee. And if the man be poor, thou shalt not <sup>1</sup>sleep with his pledge; in any case thou shalt deliver him the pledge again when the sun goeth down, that he may sleep in his own raiment and bless thee, and it shall be righteousness unto thee before THE LORD thy God. <sup>1</sup>keep overnight

"Thou shalt not oppress an hired servant that is poor and needy, whether he be of thy brethren or of thy strangers that are in thy land within thy gates. At his day thou shalt give him his <sup>1</sup>hire, neither shall the sun go down upon it; for he is poor and setteth his heart upon it - lest he cry against thee unto THE LORD, and it be sin unto thee! <sup>1</sup>wages

"The fathers shall not be put to death for the children, neither shall the children be put to death for the fathers - every man shall be put to death for his *own* sin.

"Thou shalt not pervert the judgment of the stranger, nor of the fatherless; nor take a widow's raiment to pledge. But thou shalt remember that thou wast a bondman in Egypt and THE LORD thy God redeemed thee thence. Therefore I command thee to do this thing.

"When thou cuttest down thine harvest in thy field and hast forgot a sheaf in the field, thou shalt *not* go again to fetch it. It shall be for the stranger, for the fatherless, and for the widow, that THE LORD thy God may bless thee in all the work of thine hands.

"When thou beatest thine olive tree, thou shalt not go over the boughs again. It shall be for the stranger, for the fatherless, and for the widow.

"When thou gatherest the grapes of thy vineyard, thou shalt <sup>1</sup>not glean it afterward. It shall be for the stranger, for the fatherless, and for the widow. And thou shalt remember that thou wast a bondman in the land of Egypt. Therefore I command thee to do this thing. <sup>1</sup>only glean it one time

"If there be a controversy between men, and they come unto judgment that the judges may judge them; then they shall justify the righteous and condemn the wicked.

"And it shall be, if the wicked man be worthy to be beaten, that the judge shall cause him to lie down and to be beaten <sup>1</sup>before his face according to his fault by a certain number. Forty stripes he may give him and not exceed, lest, if he should exceed and beat him above these with many stripes, then thy brother should seem vile unto thee. <sup>1</sup>in his presence

"Thou shalt not muzzle the ox when he treadeth out the corn.

"If brethren dwell together, and one of them die and have no child, the wife of the dead shall not marry without unto a stranger. Her husband's brother shall go in unto her and take her to him to wife and perform the duty of an husband's brother unto her. And it shall be that the firstborn which she beareth shall succeed in the name of his brother which is dead, that his name be not put out of Israel.

"And if the man like not to take his brother's wife, then let his brother's wife go up to the gate unto the elders, and say, '*My husband's brother refuseth to raise up unto his brother a name in Israel, he will not perform the duty of my husband's brother*'. Then the elders of his city shall call him and speak unto him; and if he <sup>1</sup>stand to it and say, '*I like not to take her*', then shall his brother's wife come unto him in the presence of the elders and loose his shoe from off his foot and spit in his face, and shall answer and say, '*So shall it be done unto that man that will not build up his brother's house.*' And his name shall be called in Israel, '*The house of him that hath his shoe loosed.*' <sup>1</sup>affirms

"When men strive together one with another, and the wife of the one draweth near for to deliver her husband out of the hand of him that smiteth him, and putteth forth her hand and taketh him by <sup>1</sup>the secrets, then thou shalt cut off her hand; thine eye shall not pity her. <sup>1</sup>his genitals

"Thou shalt not have in thy bag divers weights, a great and a small. Thou shalt not have in thine house divers measures, a great and a small. But thou shalt have a perfect and just weight, a perfect and just measure shalt thou have, that thy days may be lengthened in the land which THE LORD thy God giveth thee (for all that <sup>1</sup>do such things, and all that do unrighteously, are an abomination unto THE LORD thy God). <sup>1</sup>deal in false weights and measures

"Remember what Amalek did unto thee by the way when ye were come forth out of Egypt - how he met thee by the way and smote the hindmost of thee, even all that were feeble behind thee, when thou wast faint and weary - and he feared not God. Therefore it shall be, when THE LORD thy God hath given thee rest from all thine enemies round about in the land which THE LORD thy God giveth thee for an inheritance to possess it, that thou shalt blot out the remembrance of Amalek from under heaven; thou shalt not forget it.

"And it shall be, when thou art come in unto the land which THE LORD thy God giveth thee for an inheritance and possessest it and dwellest therein, that thou shalt take of the first of all the fruit of the earth, which thou shalt bring of thy land that THE LORD thy God giveth thee, and shalt put it in a basket and

shalt go unto the place which THE LORD thy God shall choose to place His name there. And thou shalt go unto the priest that shall be in those days and say unto him, "I profess this day unto THE LORD thy God that I am come unto the country which THE LORD sware unto our fathers for to give us."

*"And the priest shall take the basket out of thine hand and set it down before the Altar of THE LORD thy God. And thou shalt speak and say before THE LORD thy God, 'A Syrian ready to perish was my father, and he went down into Egypt and sojourned there with a few and became there a nation, great, mighty, and populous; and the Egyptians evil entreated us and afflicted us and laid upon us hard bondage. And when we cried unto THE LORD God of our fathers, THE LORD heard our voice and looked on our affliction and our labour and our oppression. And THE LORD brought us forth out of Egypt with a mighty hand and with an outstretched arm and with great terribleness and with signs and with wonders. And He hath brought us into this place and hath given us this land - even a land that floweth with milk and honey! And now, behold, I have brought the firstfruits of the land which Thou O LORD hast given me.'*

"And thou shalt set it before THE LORD thy God and worship before THE LORD thy God, and thou shalt rejoice in every good thing which THE LORD thy God hath given unto thee and unto thine house - thou, and the Levite and the stranger that is among you.

*"When thou hast made an end of tithing all the tithes of thine increase the third year (which is the year of tithing), and hast given it unto the Levite, the stranger, the fatherless, and the widow, that they may eat within thy gates and be filled, then thou shalt say before THE LORD thy God, 'I have brought away the hallowed things out of mine house and also have given them unto the Levite and unto the stranger, to the fatherless and to the widow, according to all Thy commandments which Thou hast commanded me. I have not transgressed Thy commandments, neither have I forgotten them. I have not eaten thereof in my mourning, neither have I taken away ought thereof for any unclean use, nor given ought thereof for the dead, but I have hearkened to the voice of THE LORD my God and have done according to all that Thou hast commanded me. Look down from Thy holy habitation, from heaven, and bless Thy People Israel and the land which Thou hast given us as Thou swarest unto our fathers, a land that floweth with milk and honey.'*

"This day THE LORD thy God hath commanded thee to do these statutes and judgments; thou shalt therefore keep and do them with all thine heart, and with all thy soul. Thou hast avouched THE LORD this day to be thy God and to walk in His ways and to keep His statutes and His commandments and His judgments and to hearken unto His voice, and THE LORD hath avouched thee this day to be His peculiar People (as He hath promised thee) and that thou shouldst keep all His commandments, and to make thee high above all nations which He hath made, in praise and in name and in honour; and that thou mayest be an Holy People unto THE LORD thy God, as He hath spoken!"

And Moses, with the elders of Israel, commanded the people, saying, "Keep all the commandments which I command you this day. And it shall be on the day when ye shall pass over Jordan unto the land which THE LORD thy God giveth thee, that thou shalt set thee up great stones and plaster them with plaster, and thou shalt write upon them all the Words of this Law when thou art passed over, that thou mayest go in unto the land which THE LORD thy God giveth thee - a land that floweth with milk and honey as THE LORD God of thy fathers hath promised thee!

"Therefore it shall be when ye be gone over Jordan that ye shall set up these stones which I command you this day, in Mount Ebal, and thou shalt plaster them with plaster. And there shalt thou build an altar unto THE LORD thy God, an altar of stones. Thou shalt not lift up any iron tool upon them. Thou shalt build the Altar of THE LORD thy God of whole stones, and thou shalt offer burnt offerings thereon unto THE LORD thy God, and thou shalt offer peace offerings, and shalt eat there, and rejoice before THE LORD thy God. And thou shalt write upon the stones all the Words of this Law very plainly."

And Moses and the priests the Levites spake unto all Israel, saying, "Take heed and hearken, O Israel! This day thou art become the People of THE LORD thy God! Thou shalt therefore obey the voice of THE LORD thy God and do His commandments and His statutes which I command thee this day!"

And Moses charged the people the same day, saying, "These shall stand upon Mount Gerizim to bless the people when ye are come over Jordan:

- Simeon,
- and Levi,
- and Judah,
- and Issachar,
- and Joseph,
- and Benjamin.

And these shall stand upon Mount Ebal to curse:

- Reuben,
- Gad,
- and Asher,
- and Zebulun,
- Dan,
- and Naphtali.

And the Levites shall speak and say unto all the men of Israel with a loud voice:

- *'Cursed be the man that maketh any graven or molten image - an abomination unto THE LORD, the work of the hands of the craftsman - and putteth it in a secret place!'* And all the people shall answer and say, 'Amen!'
- *'Cursed be he that setteth light by his father or his mother.'* And all the people shall say, 'Amen!'  
*'lightly esteem/despise'*
- *'Cursed be he that removeth his neighbour's landmark.'* And all the people shall say, 'Amen!'
- *'Cursed be he that maketh the blind to wander out of the way.'* And all the people shall say, 'Amen!'
- *'Cursed be he that perverteth the judgment of the stranger, fatherless, and widow.'* And all the people shall say, 'Amen!'
- *'Cursed be he that lieth with his father's wife, because he uncovereth his father's skirt.'* And all the people shall say, 'Amen!'
- *'Cursed be he that lieth with any manner of beast.'* And all the people shall say, 'Amen!'
- *'Cursed be he that lieth with his sister, the daughter of his father or the daughter of his mother.'* And all the people shall say, 'Amen!'
- *'Cursed be he that lieth with his mother-in-law.'* And all the people shall say, 'Amen!'
- *'Cursed be he that smiteth his neighbour secretly.'* And all the people shall say, 'Amen!'
- *'Cursed be he that taketh reward to slay an innocent person.'* And all the people shall say, 'Amen!'
- *'Cursed be he that confirmeth not all the Words of this Law to do them.'* And all the people shall say, 'Amen!'

"And it shall come to pass, if thou shalt hearken diligently unto the voice of THE LORD thy God to observe and to do all His commandments which I command thee this day, that THE LORD thy God will set thee on high above all nations of the earth and all these blessings shall come on thee and overtake thee - *if* thou shalt hearken unto the voice of THE LORD thy God! Blessed shalt thou be in the city, and blessed shalt thou be in the field! Blessed shall be the fruit of thy body, and the fruit of thy ground, and the fruit of thy cattle, the increase of thy kine, and the flocks of thy sheep! Blessed shall be thy basket and thy store! Blessed shalt thou be when thou comest in, and blessed shalt thou be when thou goest out! THE LORD shall cause thine enemies that rise up against thee to be smitten before thy face - they shall come out against thee one way, and flee before thee seven ways! THE LORD shall command the blessing upon thee in thy storehouses and in all that thou settest thine hand unto; and He shall bless thee in the land which THE LORD thy God giveth thee! THE LORD shall establish thee an Holy People unto Himself as He hath sworn unto thee - *if* thou shalt keep the commandments of THE LORD thy God and walk in His ways. And all people of the earth shall see that thou art called by the name of THE LORD and they shall be afraid of thee! And THE LORD shall make thee plenteous in goods, in the fruit of thy body, and in the fruit of thy cattle, and in the fruit of thy ground, in the land which THE LORD sware unto thy fathers to give thee! THE LORD shall open unto thee His good

treasure - the heaven to give the rain unto thy land in his season - and to bless all the work of thine hand. And thou shalt lend unto many nations, and thou shalt not borrow! And THE LORD shall make thee the head and not the tail, and thou shalt be above only and thou shalt not be beneath - *if* that thou hearken unto the commandments of THE LORD thy God which I command thee this day to observe and to do them, and thou shalt not go aside from any of the words which I command thee this day to the right hand or to the left to go after other gods to serve them.

“But it shall come to pass - if thou wilt *not* hearken unto the voice of THE LORD thy God to observe to do all His commandments and His statutes which I command thee this day - that all these curses shall come upon thee and overtake thee! *Cursed* shalt thou be in the city and *cursed* shalt thou be in the field. *Cursed* shall be thy basket and thy store. *Cursed* shall be the fruit of thy body and the fruit of thy land, the increase of thy kine, and the flocks of thy sheep. *Cursed* shalt thou be when thou comest in and *cursed* shalt thou be when thou goest out! THE LORD shall send upon thee cursing, vexation, and rebuke, in all that thou settest thine hand unto for to do until thou be destroyed and until thou perish quickly ‘*because of the wickedness of thy doings whereby thou hast forsaken Me*’. THE LORD shall make the pestilence cleave unto thee until He have consumed thee from off the land whither thou goest to possess it. THE LORD shall smite thee with a consumption and with a fever and with an inflammation and with an extreme burning and with the sword and with <sup>1</sup>blasting and with mildew and they shall pursue thee until thou perish. And thy heaven that is over thy head shall be brass, and the earth that is under thee shall be iron. THE LORD shall make the rain of thy land powder and dust; from heaven shall it come down upon thee until thou be destroyed. THE LORD shall cause thee to be smitten before thine enemies - thou shalt go out one way against them and flee seven ways before them, and shalt be removed into all the kingdoms of the earth. And thy carcase shall be meat unto all fowls of the air, and unto the beasts of the earth, and no man shall fray them away. THE LORD will smite thee with the <sup>2</sup>botch of Egypt and with the <sup>3</sup>emerods and with the scab and with the itch whereof thou canst not be healed. THE LORD shall smite thee with madness and blindness and astonishment of heart, and thou shalt grope at noonday as the blind gropeth in darkness, and thou shalt not prosper in thy ways. And thou shalt be only oppressed and spoiled evermore, and no man shall save thee. Thou shalt betroth a wife and another man shall lie with her. Thou shalt build an house and thou shalt not dwell therein. Thou shalt plant a vineyard and shalt not gather the grapes thereof. Thine ox shall be slain before thine eyes and thou shalt not eat thereof. Thine ass shall be violently taken away from before thy face and shall not be restored to thee. Thy sheep shall be given unto thine enemies and thou shalt have none to rescue them. Thy sons and thy daughters shall be given unto another people and thine eyes shall look and fail with longing for them all the day long and there shall be no might in thine hand. The fruit of thy land and all thy labours shall a nation (which thou knowest not) eat up, and thou shalt be only oppressed and crushed always, so that thou shalt be mad for the sight of thine eyes which thou shalt see. THE LORD shall smite thee in the knees and in the legs with a sore botch that cannot be healed from the sole of thy foot unto the top of thy head. THE LORD shall bring thee and thy king which thou shalt set over thee unto a nation which neither thou nor thy fathers have known; and there shalt thou serve other gods, wood and stone. And thou shalt become an astonishment, a proverb, and a byword among all nations whither THE LORD shall lead thee. Thou shalt carry much seed out into the field and shalt gather but little in; for the locust shall consume it. Thou shalt plant vineyards and dress them but shalt neither drink of the wine nor gather the grapes; for the worms shall eat them. Thou shalt have olive trees throughout all thy coasts but thou shalt not anoint thyself with the oil; for thine olive shall cast his fruit. Thou shalt beget sons and daughters but thou shalt not enjoy them; for they shall go into captivity. All thy trees and fruit of thy land shall the locust consume. The stranger that is within thee shall get up above thee very high and thou shalt come down very low. He shall lend to thee and thou shalt not lend to him. He shall be the head and thou shalt be the tail.

<sup>1</sup>blight <sup>2</sup>boils <sup>3</sup>hemorrhoid/tumors

“Moreover, all these curses shall come upon thee and shall pursue thee and overtake thee till thou be destroyed, because thou hearkenedst not unto the voice of THE LORD thy God to keep His commandments and His statutes which He commanded thee. And they shall be upon thee for a sign and for a wonder and upon thy seed for ever. Because thou servedst not THE LORD thy God with joyfulness and with gladness of heart for the abundance of all things, therefore shalt thou serve thine enemies which THE LORD shall send

against thee, in hunger, and in thirst, and in nakedness, and in want of all things, and He shall put a yoke of iron upon thy neck until He have destroyed thee.

“THE LORD shall bring a nation against thee from far, from the end of the earth, as swift as the eagle flieth, a nation whose tongue thou shalt not understand, a nation of fierce countenance which shall not regard the person of the old, nor show favour to the young. And he shall eat the fruit of thy cattle and the fruit of thy land until thou be destroyed, which also shall not leave thee either corn, wine, or oil, or the increase of thy kine or flocks of thy sheep, until he have destroyed thee. And he shall besiege thee in all thy gates until thy high and fenced walls come down, wherein thou trustedst, throughout all thy land. And he shall besiege thee in all thy gates throughout all thy land which THE LORD thy God hath given thee. And thou shalt eat the fruit of thine own body - the flesh of thy sons and of thy daughters - which THE LORD thy God hath given thee, in the siege and in the straitness wherewith thine enemies shall distress thee, so that the man that is tender among you and very delicate, his eye shall be evil toward his brother and toward the wife of his bosom and toward the remnant of his children which he shall leave, so that he will not give to any of them of the flesh of his children whom he shall eat, because he hath nothing left him in the siege and in the straitness wherewith thine enemies shall distress thee in all thy gates. The tender and delicate woman among you which would not adventure to set the sole of her foot upon the ground for delicateness and tenderness, her eye shall be evil toward the husband of her bosom and toward her son and toward her daughter and toward her young one that cometh out from between her feet and toward her children which she shall bear - for she shall eat them for want of all things secretly in the siege and straitness wherewith thine enemy shall distress thee in thy gates.

“If thou wilt not observe to do all the Words of this Law that are written in this Book that thou mayest fear this glorious and fearful name - **‘THE LORD THY GOD’** - then THE LORD will make thy plagues wonderful and the plagues of thy seed, even great plagues, and of long continuance, and sore sicknesses, and of long continuance.

“Moreover He will bring upon thee all the diseases of Egypt, which thou wast afraid of; and they shall cleave unto thee. Also every sickness and every plague which is not written in the Book of this Law - them will THE LORD bring upon thee until thou be destroyed. And ye shall be left few in number (whereas ye *were* as the stars of heaven for multitude), because thou wouldest not obey the voice of THE LORD thy God.

“And it shall come to pass that, as THE LORD rejoiced over you to do you good and to multiply you, so THE LORD will rejoice over you to destroy you and to bring you to nought; and ye shall be plucked from off the land whither thou goest to possess it. And THE LORD shall scatter thee among all people, from the one end of the earth even unto the other; and there thou shalt serve other gods which neither thou nor thy fathers have known, even wood and stone. And among these nations shalt thou find no ease, neither shall the sole of thy foot have rest, but THE LORD shall give thee there a trembling heart and failing of eyes and sorrow of mind. And thy life shall hang in doubt before thee; and thou shalt fear day and night, and shalt have none assurance of thy life! In the morning thou shalt say, *‘Would God it were even!’* and at even thou shalt say, *‘Would God it were morning!’* for the fear of thine heart wherewith thou shalt fear, and for the sight of thine eyes which thou shalt see.

“And THE LORD shall bring thee into Egypt again with ships by the way whereof I spake unto thee, *‘Thou shalt see it no more again’*, and there ye shall be sold unto your enemies for bondmen and bondwomen - and no man shall buy you.”

These are the Words of the Covenant which THE LORD commanded Moses to make with the Children of Israel in the land of Moab, <sup>1</sup>beside the Covenant which He made with them in Horeb. *<sup>1</sup>in addition to*

And Moses called unto all Israel, and said unto them, “Ye have seen all that THE LORD did before your eyes in the land of Egypt unto Pharaoh and unto all his servants and unto all his land - the great temptations which thine eyes have seen, the signs, and those great miracles. Yet THE LORD hath not given you an heart to perceive and eyes to see and ears to hear unto this day (*‘and I have led you forty years in the wilderness; your clothes are not waxen old upon you, and thy shoe is not waxen old upon thy foot; ye have not eaten bread, neither have ye drunk wine or strong drink, that ye might know that I am THE LORD your God’*). And when ye came unto this place, Sihon the king of Heshbon and Og the king of Bashan came out against us

unto battle, and we smote them. And we took their land and gave it for an inheritance unto the Reubenites, and to the Gadites, and to the half tribe of Manasseh.

“Keep therefore the Words of this Covenant and do them, that ye may prosper in all that ye do. Ye stand this day, all of you, before THE LORD your God - your captains of your tribes, your elders, and your officers, with all the men of Israel, your little ones, your wives, and thy stranger that is in thy camp, from the hewer of thy wood unto the drawer of thy water - that thou shouldest enter into covenant with THE LORD thy God and into His Oath which THE LORD thy God maketh with thee this day, that He may establish thee to day for a people unto Himself and that He may be unto thee a God, as He hath said unto thee and as He hath sworn unto thy fathers - to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob.

“Neither with you only do I make this Covenant and this Oath - but with him that standeth here with us this day before THE LORD our God, and *also* with him that is *not* here with us this day - for ye know how we have dwelt in the land of Egypt and how we came through the nations which ye passed by and ye have seen their abominations and their idols, wood and stone, silver and gold, which were among them - lest there should be among you man or woman or family or tribe whose heart turneth away this day from THE LORD our God to go and serve the gods of these nations, lest there should be among you a root that beareth gall and wormwood, and it come to pass when he heareth the words of this curse that he bless himself in his heart, saying, *‘I shall have peace, though I walk in the imagination of mine heart, to add drunkenness to thirst’* - THE LORD will not spare him, but then the anger of THE LORD and His jealousy shall smoke against that man and all the curses that are written in this Book shall lie upon him, and THE LORD shall blot out his name from under heaven.

“And THE LORD shall separate him unto evil out of all the tribes of Israel, according to all the curses of the covenant that are written in this Book of the Law, so that the generation to come of your children that shall rise up after you, and the stranger that shall come from a far land, shall say (when they see the plagues of that land and the sicknesses which THE LORD hath laid upon it and that the whole land thereof is brimstone and salt and burning, that it is not sown, nor beareth, nor any grass groweth therein, like the overthrow of Sodom, and Gomorrah, Admah, and Zeboim, which THE LORD overthrew in His anger and in His wrath), even all nations shall say, *‘Wherefore hath THE LORD done thus unto this land?! What meaneth the heat of this great anger?!’* Then men shall say, *‘Because they have forsaken the Covenant of THE LORD God of their fathers which He made with them when He brought them forth out of the land of Egypt; for they went and served other gods and worshipped them - gods whom they knew not and whom He had not given unto them; and the anger of THE LORD was kindled against this land, to bring upon it all the curses that are written in this Book; and THE LORD rooted them out of their land in anger and in wrath and in great indignation, and cast them into another land, as it is this day!’*

“The secret things belong unto THE LORD our God - but those things which are revealed belong unto us and to our children for ever that we may do all the Words of this Law.

“And it shall come to pass when all these things are come upon thee (the blessing and the curse which I have set before thee) - and thou shalt call them to mind among all the nations whither THE LORD thy God hath driven thee and shalt return unto THE LORD thy God and shalt obey his voice according to all that I command thee this day, thou and thy children, with all thine heart and with all thy soul - that then THE LORD thy God will turn thy captivity and have compassion upon thee and will return and gather thee from all the nations whither THE LORD thy God hath scattered thee.

“If any of thine be driven out unto the outmost parts of heaven, from thence will THE LORD thy God gather thee and from thence will He fetch thee! And THE LORD thy God will bring thee into the land which thy fathers possessed, and thou shalt possess it; and He will do thee good, and multiply thee above thy fathers. And THE LORD thy God will circumcise thine *heart* and the heart of thy seed to love THE LORD thy God with all thine heart and with all thy soul, that thou mayest live.

“And THE LORD thy God will put all these curses upon thine enemies, and on them that hate thee, which persecuted thee. And thou shalt return and obey the voice of THE LORD, and do all His commandments which I command thee this day. And THE LORD thy God will make thee plenteous in every work of thine hand, in the fruit of thy body, and in the fruit of thy cattle, and in the fruit of thy land, for good. For THE LORD will again rejoice over thee for good, as He rejoiced over thy fathers - *if* thou shalt hearken unto the voice of THE LORD thy God to keep His commandments and His statutes which are written

in this Book of the Law, and *if* thou turn unto THE LORD thy God with all thine heart and with all thy soul. For this commandment which I command thee this day, it is not hidden from thee, neither is it far off.

*"It is not in heaven, that thou shouldest say, 'Who shall go up for us to heaven and bring <sup>1</sup>it unto us, that we may hear it and do it?' Neither is <sup>1</sup>It beyond the sea, that thou shouldest say, 'Who shall go over the sea for us and bring <sup>1</sup>it unto us, that we may hear it and do it?' But the Word is very nigh unto thee - in thy mouth and in thy heart - that thou mayest do <sup>1</sup>It.*

*<sup>1</sup>the Word of God/Messiah*

*"See, I have set before thee this day life and good, and death and evil, in that I command thee this day to love THE LORD thy God, to walk in His ways and to keep His commandments and His statutes and His judgments, that thou mayest live and multiply, and THE LORD thy God shall bless thee in the land whither thou goest to possess it.*

*"But if thine heart turn away so that thou wilt not hear, but shalt be drawn away and worship other gods and serve them; I denounce unto you this day that ye shall surely perish, and that ye shall not prolong your days upon the land whither thou passest over Jordan to go to possess it.*

*"I call heaven and earth to record this day against you, that I have set before you life and death, blessing and cursing! Therefore choose *life*, that both thou and thy seed may live! That thou mayest love THE LORD thy God, and that thou mayest obey His voice, and that thou mayest cleave unto Him; for He is thy life and the length of thy days, that thou mayest dwell in the land which THE LORD sware unto thy fathers - to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob - to give them."*

And Moses went and spake these words unto all Israel. And he said unto them, 'I am an hundred and twenty years old this day; I can no more go out and come in. Also THE LORD hath said unto me, *'Thou shalt not go over this Jordan.'* THE LORD thy God, He will go over before thee and He will destroy these nations from before thee, and thou shalt possess them. And Joshua - he shall go over before thee, as THE LORD hath said. And THE LORD shall do unto them as he did to Sihon and to Og, kings of the Amorites, and unto the land of them whom He destroyed. And THE LORD shall give them up before your face that ye may do unto them according unto all the commandments which I have commanded you. Be strong and of a good courage! Fear not, nor be afraid of them! For THE LORD thy God - He it is that doth go with thee; He will not fail thee nor forsake thee!!"

And Moses called unto Joshua, and said unto him in the sight of all Israel, 'Be strong and of a good courage; for thou must go with this people unto the land which THE LORD hath sworn unto their fathers to give them; and thou shalt cause them to inherit it. And THE LORD - He it is that doth go before thee; He will be with thee, He will not fail thee, neither forsake thee. Fear not, neither be dismayed!'"

<sup>1</sup>And Moses wrote this Law, and delivered it unto the priests the sons of Levi which bare the Ark of the Covenant of THE LORD, and unto all the elders of Israel. And Moses commanded them, saying, "At the end of every seven years, in the solemnity of the Year of Release, in the Feast of Tabernacles when all Israel is come to appear before THE LORD thy God in the place which He shall choose, thou shalt read this Law before all Israel in their hearing. Gather the people together, men, and women, and children, and thy stranger that is within thy gates (that they may hear and that they may learn, and fear THE LORD your God, and observe to do all the Words of this Law, and that their children, which have not known any thing, may hear and learn to fear THE LORD your God, as long as ye live in the land whither ye go over Jordan to possess it)."

*<sup>1</sup>i.e. "And I, Moses"*

And THE LORD said unto Moses, "Behold, thy days approach that thou must die. Call Joshua, and present yourselves in The Tabernacle of the Congregation, that I may give him a charge."

And Moses and Joshua went and presented themselves in The Tabernacle of the Congregation. And THE LORD appeared in The Tabernacle in a pillar of a cloud, and the pillar of the cloud stood over the door of The Tabernacle.

And THE LORD said unto Moses, "Behold, thou shalt sleep with thy fathers; and this people will rise up and go a whoring after the gods of the strangers of the land whither they go to be among them, and will forsake Me and break My Covenant which I have made with them. Then My anger shall be kindled against them in that day, and I will forsake them and I will hide My face from them, and they shall be devoured, and many evils and troubles shall befall them so that they will say in that day, '*Are not these evils come upon us because our God is not among us?*' And I will surely hide My face in that day for all the evils which they shall have wrought, in that they are turned unto other gods.

"Now therefore write ye this song for you, and teach it the Children of Israel; put it in their mouths that this song may be a witness for Me against the Children of Israel. For, when I shall have brought them into the land which I swore unto their fathers that floweth with milk and honey and they shall have eaten and filled themselves and waxen fat, then will they turn unto other gods and serve them and provoke Me and break My Covenant. And it shall come to pass, when many evils and troubles are befallen them, that this song shall testify against them as a witness; for it shall not be forgotten out of the mouths of their seed; for I know their imagination which they go about, even now before I have brought them into the land which I swore."

Moses therefore wrote this song the same day and taught it the Children of Israel.

And he gave Joshua the son of Nun a charge, and said, "Be strong and of a good courage! For thou shalt bring the Children of Israel into the land which I swore unto them, and I will be with thee."

And it came to pass, when Moses had made an end of writing the Words of this Law in a book until they were finished, that Moses commanded the Levites which bare the Ark of the Covenant of THE LORD, saying, "Take this Book of the Law and put it in the side of the Ark of the Covenant of THE LORD your God, that it may be there for a witness against thee. For I know thy rebellion and thy stiff neck. Behold, while I am yet alive with you this day ye have been rebellious against THE LORD; and how much more *after* my death?!

"Gather unto me all the elders of your tribes and your officers, that I may speak these words in their ears, and call heaven and earth to record against them. For I know that after my death ye will utterly corrupt yourselves and turn aside from the way which I have commanded you; and evil will befall you in the latter days because ye will do evil in the sight of THE LORD to provoke Him to anger through the work of your hands."

And Moses spake in the ears of all the congregation of Israel the words of this song until they were ended:

"Give ear, O ye heavens, and I will speak; and hear, O earth, the words of my mouth.  
My doctrine shall drop as the rain, my speech shall distil as the dew,  
As the small rain upon the tender herb, and as the showers upon the grass,  
Because I will publish the name of THE LORD!  
Ascribe ye greatness unto our God! He is the Rock, His work is perfect!  
For all His ways are judgment! A God of truth and without iniquity, just and right is He!  
They have corrupted themselves, their spot is not the spot of His children;  
They are a perverse and crooked generation.  
Do ye thus requite THE LORD, O foolish people and unwise?  
Is not He thy Father that hath bought thee? Hath He not made thee, and established thee?  
Remember the days of old, consider the years of many generations;  
ask thy father and he will show thee; thy elders, and they will tell thee.  
When the Most High divided to the nations their inheritance when He separated the sons of Adam,  
He set the bounds of the people according to the number of the Children of Israel.  
For THE LORD'S portion is His People; Jacob is the lot of His inheritance.  
He found him in a desert land, and in the waste howling wilderness;  
He led him about, He instructed him, He kept him as the apple of His eye.  
As an eagle stirreth up her nest, fluttereth over her young,

Spreadeth abroad her wings, taketh them, beareth them on her wings,  
 So THE LORD alone did lead him, and there was no strange god with him.  
 He made him ride on the high places of the earth, that he might eat the increase of the fields;  
 And He made him to suck honey out of the rock, and oil out of the flinty rock;  
 Butter of kine, and milk of sheep, with fat of lambs, and rams of the breed of Bashan,  
 and goats, with the fat of kidneys of wheat; and thou didst drink the pure blood of the grape.  
 But Jeshurun waxed fat, and kicked;  
 Thou art waxen fat, thou art grown thick, thou art covered with fatness;  
 Then he forsook God which made him, and lightly esteemed the Rock of his salvation.  
 They provoked Him to Jealousy with strange gods; with abominations provoked they Him to anger.  
 They sacrificed unto devils, not to God; to gods whom they knew not,  
 to new gods that came newly up, whom your fathers feared not.  
 Of the Rock that begat thee thou art unmindful, and hast forgotten God that formed thee.  
 And when THE LORD saw it, He abhorred them, because of the provoking of His sons and of His daughters.  
 And He said: I will hide My face from them, I will see what their end shall be.  
 For they are a very <sup>1</sup>froward generation, children in whom is no faith. <sup>1</sup>perverse/fraudulent  
 They have moved Me to jealousy with that which is not God.  
 They have provoked Me to anger with their vanities;  
 and I will move them to jealousy with those which are not a people!  
 I will provoke them to anger with a foolish nation.  
 For a fire is kindled in Mine anger, and shall burn unto the lowest <sup>1</sup>hell, <sup>1</sup>grave  
 and shall consume the earth with her increase, and set on fire the foundations of the mountains.  
 I will heap mischiefs upon them; I will spend Mine arrows upon them.  
 They shall be burnt with hunger, and devoured with burning heat, and with bitter destruction!  
 I will also send the teeth of beasts upon them, with the poison of serpents of the dust.  
 The sword without, and terror within, shall destroy both the young man and the virgin;  
 the suckling also with the man of gray hairs.  
 I said I would scatter them into corners!  
 I would make the remembrance of them to cease from among men:  
 Were it not that I feared the wrath of the enemy, lest their adversaries should behave themselves strangely,  
 and lest they should say, '*Our hand is high and THE LORD hath not done all this*'.  
 For they are a nation void of counsel, neither is there any understanding in them.  
 O that they were wise, that they understood this, that they would consider their latter end!  
 How should one chase a thousand and two put ten thousand to flight,  
 except their Rock had sold them and THE LORD had shut them up?  
 For their rock is not as our Rock - even our enemies themselves being judges.  
 For their vine is of the vine of Sodom, and of the fields of Gomorrah.  
 Their grapes are grapes of gall, their clusters are bitter.  
 Their wine is the poison of dragons, and the cruel venom of asps.  
 Is not this laid up in store with Me, and sealed up among My treasures?  
 To Me belongeth vengeance and recompense; their foot shall slide in due time;  
 For the day of their calamity is at hand, and the things that shall come upon them make haste.  
 For THE LORD shall judge His people and repent Himself for His servants,  
 when He seeth that their power is gone, and there is none shut up, or left.  
 And He shall say, "Where are their gods, their rock in whom they trusted,  
 which did eat the fat of their sacrifices, and drank the wine of their drink offerings?  
 Let *them* rise up and help you and be your protection!"  
 See now that I, even I, am He, and there is no god with Me!  
 I kill and I make alive; I wound and I heal!  
 Neither is there any that can deliver out of My hand!  
 For I lift up My hand to heaven, and say, 'I live for ever!'  
 If I whet My glittering sword, and Mine hand take hold on judgment;

I will render vengeance to Mine enemies, and will reward them that hate Me.  
I will make Mine arrows drunk with blood and My sword shall devour flesh -  
and *that*, with the blood of the slain and of the captives,  
from the beginning of revenges upon the enemy.  
Rejoice, O ye nations, with His people! For He will avenge the blood of His servants,  
and will render vengeance to His adversaries, and will be merciful unto His land and to His people!”

And Moses came and spake all the words of this song in the ears of the people - he, and <sup>1</sup>Hoshea the son of Nun. And Moses made an end of speaking all these words to all Israel. *<sup>1</sup>Joshua*

And he said unto them, “Set your hearts unto all the words which I testify among you this day, which ye shall command your children to observe to do all the Words of this Law. For it is not a vain thing for you, because it is your life, and through this thing ye shall prolong your days in the land whither ye go over Jordan to possess it.”

And THE LORD spake unto Moses that selfsame day, saying, “Get thee up into this Mountain Abarim, unto Mount Nebo, which is in the land of Moab that is <sup>1</sup>over against Jericho; and behold the land of Canaan which I give unto the Children of Israel for a possession; and die in the mount whither thou goest up and be gathered unto thy people, as Aaron thy brother died in Mount Hor and was gathered unto his people - because ye trespassed against Me among the Children of Israel at the waters of Meribah-Kadesh, in the wilderness of Zin, because ye sanctified Me not in the midst of the Children of Israel. Yet, thou shalt see the land before thee; but thou shalt not go thither unto the land which I give the Children of Israel.”  
*<sup>1</sup>across the way from*

And this is the blessing wherewith Moses the man of God blessed the Children of Israel before his death. And he said, “THE LORD came from Sinai and rose up from Seir unto them; He shined forth from Mount Paran, and He came with ten thousands of <sup>1</sup>saints. From His right hand went a fiery Law for them. Yea, He loved the people; all His <sup>2</sup>saints are in Thy hand, and they sat down at Thy feet; every one shall receive of Thy words.  
*<sup>1</sup>“sanctified ones”; most likely referring to angels in this case <sup>2</sup>in this case, either holy people or angels*

Moses commanded us a Law, even the Inheritance of the Congregation of Jacob. And he was king in Jeshurun, when the heads of the people and the tribes of Israel were gathered together.  
“Let Reuben live, and not die; and let not his men be few.”

“And this is the blessing of Judah;” and he said, “Hear, LORD, the voice of Judah, and bring him unto his people; let his hands be sufficient for him; and be Thou an help to him from his enemies.”

And of Levi he said, “Let thy Thummim and thy Urim be with thy holy one, whom Thou didst prove at Massah and with whom Thou didst strive at the waters of Meribah, who said unto his father and to his mother, *‘I have not seen him’*; neither did he acknowledge his brethren, nor knew his own children; for they have observed Thy Word, and kept Thy Covenant. They shall teach Jacob Thy judgments, and Israel Thy Law; they shall put incense before Thee, and whole burnt sacrifice upon Thine Altar. Bless, LORD, his substance, and accept the work of his hands; smite through the loins of them that rise against him, and of them that hate him, that they rise not again.”

And of Benjamin he said, “The beloved of THE LORD shall dwell in safety by him; and THE LORD shall cover him all the day long, and he shall dwell between his shoulders.”

And of Joseph he said, “Blessed of THE LORD be his land, for the precious things of heaven, for the dew, and for the deep that coucheth beneath, and for the precious fruits brought forth by the sun, and for the precious things put forth by the moon, and for the chief things of the ancient mountains, and for the precious things of the lasting hills, and for the precious things of the earth and fulness thereof, and for the

good will of him that dwelt in the bush; let the blessing come upon the head of Joseph, and upon the top of the head of him that was separated from his brethren. His glory is like the firstling of his bullock, and his horns are like the horns of unicorns; with them he shall push the people together to the ends of the earth; and they are the ten thousands of Ephraim, and they are the thousands of Manasseh.”

And of Zebulun he said, “Rejoice, Zebulun, in thy going out; and, Issachar, in thy tents. They shall call the people unto the mountain; there they shall offer sacrifices of righteousness; for they shall suck of the abundance of the seas, and of treasures hid in the sand.”

And of Gad he said, “Blessed be he that enlargeth Gad; he dwelleth as a lion, and teareth the arm with the crown of the head. And he provided the first part for himself, because there, in a portion of the lawgiver, was he seated; and he came with the heads of the people, he executed the justice of THE LORD, and his judgments with Israel.”

And of Dan he said, “Dan is a lion's whelp; he shall leap from Bashan.”

And of Naphtali he said, “O Naphtali, satisfied with favour and full with the blessing of THE LORD, possess thou the west and the south.”

And of Asher he said, “Let Asher be blessed with children; let him be acceptable to his brethren, and let him dip his foot in oil. Thy shoes shall be iron and brass; and as thy days, so shall thy strength be.”

There is none like unto the <sup>1</sup>God of Jeshurun, who rideth upon the heaven in thy help, and in His excellency on the sky. The eternal God is thy refuge, and underneath are the everlasting arms; and He shall thrust out the enemy from before thee and shall say, “Destroy them!” <sup>1</sup>literally “God of the upright”

Israel then shall dwell in safety alone. The fountain of Jacob shall be upon a land of corn and wine; also his heavens shall drop down dew. Happy art thou, O Israel! Who is like unto thee, O People saved by THE LORD The Shield of thy Help, and who is the Sword of thy excellency! And thine enemies shall be found liars unto thee; and thou shalt tread upon their <sup>1</sup>high places! <sup>1</sup>shrines

And Moses went up from the plains of Moab unto the Mountain of Nebo, to the top of Pisgah that is over against Jericho. And THE LORD showed him all the land of Gilead, unto Dan, and all Naphtali, and the land of Ephraim, and Manasseh, and all the land of Judah, unto the utmost sea, and the south, and the plain of the Valley of Jericho, the city of palm trees, unto Zoar.

And THE LORD said unto him, “This is the land which I swear unto Abraham, unto Isaac, and unto Jacob, saying, *‘I will give it unto thy seed.’* I have caused thee to see it with thine eyes, but thou shalt not go over thither.”

So Moses the servant of THE LORD died there in the land of Moab according to the Word of THE LORD. And <sup>1</sup>He buried him in a valley in the land of Moab over against Bethpeor - but no man knoweth <sup>2</sup>of his sepulchre unto this day. <sup>1</sup>God <sup>2</sup>the location of his tomb

And Moses was an hundred and twenty years old when he died. His eye was not dim, nor his natural force abated. And the Children of Israel wept for Moses in the plains of Moab thirty days.

So the days of weeping and mourning for Moses were ended. And Joshua the son of Nun was full of the spirit of wisdom (for Moses had laid his hands upon him), and the Children of Israel hearkened unto him and did as THE LORD commanded Moses.

And there arose not a prophet since in Israel like unto Moses, whom THE LORD knew face to face, in all the signs and the wonders, which THE LORD sent him to do in the land of Egypt to Pharaoh, and to all his servants, and to all his land, and in all that mighty hand, and in all the great terror which Moses showed in the sight of all Israel.

Now, after the death of Moses the servant of THE LORD, it came to pass that THE LORD spake unto Joshua (the son of Nun, Moses' minister), saying, "Moses My servant is dead. Now therefore arise, go over this Jordan - thou and all this people - unto the land which I do give to them, even to the Children of Israel. Every place that the sole of your foot shall tread upon, that have I given unto you, as I said unto Moses. From the wilderness and this Lebanon, even unto the great river - the river Euphrates - all the land of the Hittites, and unto the <sup>1</sup>Great Sea toward the going down of the sun, shall be your coast. *<sup>1</sup>Mediterranean Sea*

"There shall not any man be able to stand before thee all the days of thy life. As I was with Moses, so I will be with thee. I will not fail thee, nor forsake thee. Be strong and of a good courage; for unto this People shalt thou divide for an inheritance the land which I sware unto their fathers to give them. Only, be thou strong and very courageous, that thou mayest observe to do according to all the Law which Moses My servant commanded thee - turn not from it to the right hand or to the left, that thou mayest prosper whithersoever thou goest. This Book of the Law shall not depart out of thy mouth; but thou shalt meditate therein day and night, that thou mayest observe to do according to all that is written therein; for then thou shalt make thy way prosperous, and then thou shalt have good success. Have not I commanded thee? Be strong and of a good courage; be not afraid, neither be thou dismayed! For THE LORD thy God is with thee whithersoever thou goest."

Then Joshua commanded the officers of the people, saying, "Pass through the host and command the people, saying, "Prepare you victuals; for within three days ye shall pass over this Jordan to go in to possess the land which THE LORD your God giveth you to possess it!"

And to the Reubenites, and to the Gadites, and to half the tribe of Manasseh, spake Joshua, saying, "Remember the word which Moses, the servant of THE LORD, commanded you, saying, '*THE LORD your God hath given you rest, and hath given you this land.*' Your wives, your little ones, and your cattle, shall remain in the land which Moses gave you on this side Jordan - *but* ye shall pass before your brethren armed, all the mighty men of valour, and help them until THE LORD have given your brethren rest as he hath given you, and they also have possessed the land which THE LORD your God giveth them. *Then* ye shall return unto the land of your possession, and enjoy it, which Moses THE LORD'S servant gave you on this side Jordan toward the sunrising."

And they answered Joshua, saying, "All that thou commandest us we will do; and whithersoever thou sendest us, we will go. According as we hearkened unto Moses in all things, so will we hearken unto thee. Only, THE LORD thy God be with thee as He was with Moses! Whosoever he be that doth rebel against thy commandment and will not hearken unto thy words in all that thou commandest him, he shall be put to death! Only, be strong and of a good courage!"

And Joshua the son of Nun sent out of Shittim two men to spy secretly, <sup>1</sup>saying, "Go view the land, even Jericho." *<sup>1</sup>instructing them*

And they went, and came into an harlot's house, named Rahab, and lodged there. And it was told the king of Jericho, saying, "Behold, there came men in hither to night of the Children of Israel to search out the country!"

And the king of Jericho sent unto Rahab, saying, "Bring forth the men that are come to thee which are entered into thine house; for they be come to search out all the country!"

And the woman took the two men and hid them and said thus, "There came men unto me, but I <sup>1</sup>wist not whence they were; and it came to pass about the time of shutting of the <sup>2</sup>gate, when it was dark, that the men went out. Whither the men went I <sup>1</sup>wot not. Pursue after them quickly; for ye shall overtake them."

*<sup>1</sup>did not know wherethey came from or where they went <sup>2</sup>city gates*

<sup>1</sup>But she had brought them up to the roof of the house and hid them with the stalks of flax which she had laid in order upon the roof.

*<sup>1</sup>but actually*

And the men pursued after them the way to Jordan unto the fords; and as soon as they which pursued after them were gone out, they shut the gate.

And before they were laid down, she came up unto them upon the roof, and she said unto the men, "I know that <sup>1</sup>THE LORD hath given you the land, and that your terror is fallen upon us, and that all the inhabitants of the land faint because of you. For we have heard how <sup>1</sup>THE LORD dried up the water of the Red Sea for you when ye came out of Egypt, and what ye did unto the two kings of the Amorites that were on the other side Jordan - Sihon and Og - whom ye utterly destroyed. And as soon as we had heard these things our hearts did melt, neither did there remain any more courage in any man because of you; for <sup>1</sup>THE LORD your God - He is God in heaven above and in earth beneath! Now therefore, I pray you, swear unto me by <sup>1</sup>THE LORD (since I have showed you kindness) that ye will also show kindness unto my father's House, and give me a true token, and that ye will save alive my father, and my mother, and my brethren, and my sisters, and all that they have, and deliver our lives from death."

*<sup>1</sup>Jehovah/<sup>1</sup>Yahweh*

And the men answered her, "Our life for yours if ye utter not this our business. And it shall be, when THE LORD hath given us the land, that we will deal kindly and truly with thee."

Then she let them down by a cord through the window (for her house was upon the town wall, and she dwelt upon the wall).

And she said unto them, "Get you to the mountain, lest the pursuers meet you; and hide yourselves there three days, until the pursuers be returned. And afterward may ye go your way."

And the men said unto her, "We will be blameless of this thine oath which thou hast made us swear. Behold, when we come into the land, thou shalt bind this line of scarlet thread in the window which thou didst let us down by; and thou shalt bring thy father, and thy mother, and thy brethren, and all thy father's household, home unto thee. And it shall be that whosoever shall go out of the doors of thy house into the street, his blood shall be upon his head and we will be guiltless; and whosoever shall be with thee in the house, his blood shall be on *our* head if any <sup>1</sup>hand be upon him. And if thou utter this our business, then we will be <sup>2</sup>quit of thine oath which thou hast made us to swear."

*<sup>1</sup>violence <sup>2</sup>released from*

And she said, "According unto your words, so be it."

And she sent them away and they departed, and she bound the scarlet line in the window.

And they went, and came unto the mountain and abode there three days, until the pursuers were returned; and the pursuers sought them throughout all the way, but found them not. So the two men returned, and descended from the mountain and passed over and came to Joshua, the son of Nun, and told him all things that befell them.

And they said unto Joshua, "Truly THE LORD hath delivered into our hands all the land; for even all the inhabitants of the country do faint because of us!"

And Joshua rose early in the morning, and they removed from Shittim and came to Jordan (he and all the Children of Israel), and lodged there before they passed over.

And it came to pass after three days that the officers went through the host, and they commanded the people, saying, "When ye see the Ark of the Covenant of THE LORD your God, and the priests the Levites bearing it, then ye shall remove from your place and go after it. Yet, there shall be a space between you and it, about <sup>1</sup>two thousand cubits by measure; come not near unto it, that ye may know the way by which ye must go, for ye have not passed this way heretofore." *<sup>1</sup>about 3000 ft.*

And Joshua said unto the people, "Sanctify yourselves! For tomorrow THE LORD will do wonders among you!"

And Joshua spake unto the priests, saying, "Take up the Ark of the Covenant and pass over before the people."

And they took up the Ark of the Covenant and went before the people.

And THE LORD said unto Joshua, "This day will I begin to magnify thee in the sight of all Israel that they may know that, as I was with Moses, so I will be with thee. And thou shalt command the priests that bear the Ark of the Covenant, saying, 'When ye are come to the brink of the water of Jordan, ye shall stand still in Jordan'."

And Joshua said unto the Children of Israel, "Come hither and hear the Words of THE LORD your God!"

And Joshua said, "Hereby ye shall know that the living God is among you - and that He will, without fail, drive out from before you the Canaanites, and the Hittites, and the Hivites, and the Perizzites, and the Girgashites, and the Amorites, and the Jebusites. Behold, the Ark of the Covenant of THE LORD of all the earth passeth over before you into Jordan! Now therefore take you twelve men out of the tribes of Israel, out of every tribe a man. And it shall come to pass, as soon as the soles of the feet of the priests that bear the Ark of THE LORD (THE LORD of all the earth!) shall rest in the waters of Jordan, that the waters of Jordan shall be cut off from the waters that come down from <sup>1</sup>above; and they shall stand <sup>2</sup>upon an heap!" *<sup>1</sup>up-river <sup>2</sup>upright like a wall*

And it came to pass, when the people removed from their tents to pass over Jordan, and the priests bearing the Ark of the Covenant before the people, and as they that bare the Ark were come unto Jordan and the feet of the priests that bare the Ark were dipped in the brim of the water (for Jordan overfloweth all his banks all the time of harvest), that the waters which came down from above stood and rose up upon an heap very far from the city Adam that is beside Zaretan; and those that came down toward the sea of the plain, even the <sup>1</sup>Salt Sea, <sup>2</sup>failed and were cut off, and the people passed over right against Jericho. *<sup>1</sup>Dead Sea <sup>2</sup>ceased to flow*

And the priests that bare the Ark of the Covenant of THE LORD stood firm on dry ground in the midst of Jordan, and all the Israelites passed over on dry ground until all the people were passed clean over Jordan.

And it came to pass, when all the people were clean passed over Jordan, that THE LORD spake unto Joshua, saying, "Take you twelve men out of the people, out of every tribe a man, and command ye them, saying, 'Take you hence out of the midst of Jordan (out of the place where the priests' feet stood firm) twelve stones; and ye shall carry them over with you and leave them in the lodging place where ye shall lodge this night'."

Then Joshua called the twelve men whom he had prepared of the Children of Israel out of every tribe a man. And Joshua said unto them, "Pass over before the Ark of THE LORD your God into the midst of Jordan,

and take you up every man of you a stone upon his shoulder, <sup>1</sup>according unto the number of the tribes of the Children of Israel, that this may be a sign among you, that when your children ask their fathers in time to come, saying, *'What mean ye by these stones?'* then ye shall answer them that the waters of Jordan were cut off before the Ark of the Covenant of THE LORD - when it passed over Jordan, the waters of Jordan were cut off, and these stones shall be for a memorial unto the Children of Israel for ever." <sup>1</sup>one for each of

And the Children of Israel did so as Joshua commanded and took up twelve stones out of the midst of Jordan as THE LORD spake unto Joshua, according to the number of the tribes of the Children of Israel, and carried them over with them unto the place where they lodged and laid them down there.

And Joshua set up twelve stones in the midst of Jordan in the place where the feet of the priests which bare the Ark of the covenant stood, and they are there unto this day (for the priests which bare the Ark stood in the midst of Jordan until every thing was finished that THE LORD commanded Joshua to speak unto the people, according to all that Moses commanded Joshua; and the people hastened and passed over).

And it came to pass, when all the people were clean passed over, that the Ark of THE LORD passed over, and the priests, in the presence of the people.

And the children of Reuben, and the children of Gad, and half the tribe of Manasseh, passed over armed before the Children of Israel, as Moses spake unto them - about forty thousand prepared for war passed over before THE LORD unto battle, to the plains of Jericho.

On that day THE LORD magnified Joshua in the sight of all Israel; and they <sup>1</sup>feared him as they <sup>1</sup>feared Moses all the days of his life. <sup>1</sup>had such absolute respect/did not desire to defy

And THE LORD spake unto Joshua, saying, "Command the priests that bear the Ark of the Testimony, that they come up out of Jordan."

Joshua therefore commanded the priests, saying, "Come ye up out of Jordan."

And it came to pass, when the priests that bare the Ark of the Covenant of THE LORD were come up out of the midst of Jordan and the soles of the priests' feet were lifted up unto the dry land, that the waters of Jordan returned unto their place and flowed over all his banks as they did before.

And the people came up out of Jordan on the tenth day of the first month, and encamped in Gilgal in the east border of Jericho. And those twelve stones, which they took out of Jordan, did Joshua <sup>1</sup>pitch in Gilgal. <sup>1</sup>set up

And he spake unto the Children of Israel, saying, "When your children shall ask their fathers in time to come, saying, *'What mean these stones?'* then ye shall let your children know, saying: *'Israel came over this Jordan on dry land. For THE LORD your God dried up the waters of Jordan from before you until ye were passed over, as THE LORD your God did to the Red Sea which He dried up from before us until we were gone over, that all the people of the earth might know the hand of THE LORD, that it is mighty, that ye might fear THE LORD your God for ever.*

*"And it came to pass, when all the kings of the Amorites which were on the side of Jordan westward, and all the kings of the Canaanites which were by the sea, heard that THE LORD had dried up the waters of Jordan from before the Children of Israel until we were passed over, that their heart melted, neither was there spirit in them any more, because of the Children of Israel."*

At that time THE LORD said unto Joshua, "Make thee sharp knives, and circumcise <sup>1</sup>again the Children of Israel the second time." And Joshua made him sharp knives, and circumcised the Children of Israel at the Hill of the Foreskins.

*<sup>1</sup>Clarification: this does not mean that Joshua was to circumcise a second time those who were already circumcised (which is not possible), but that he should circumcise the new generation which had not been circumcised with the previous generation that left Egypt – as is made clear in the next paragraph. Circumcision in these days only included the foreskin hanging beyond the glans (it was only meant to be a sign of the covenant which exposed the sensitive glans as one ought to expose the sensitive heart to God; it was not a mutilation of the genitals). The unbiblical tradition of modern total foreskin destruction began about the time of the Greek Olympic Games when athletes participated in the nude; Greeks considered circumcision to be extremely offensive and prohibited Hebrew athletes unless they stretched the shaft skin to look 'uncircumcised'. This in turn offended the Jewish rabbinate, who then horrifically ordered full foreskin obliteration of all males to prevent this. The Apostle Paul says to beware of those who do this, calling them "the concision", a Greek word meaning "the mutilators", and saying, "For circumcision is nothing and uncircumcision is nothing".*

And this is the cause why Joshua did circumcise: All the people that came out of Egypt that were males, even all the men of war, died in the wilderness by the way, after they came out of Egypt. Now, all the people that came out were circumcised - but all the people that were born in the wilderness by the way as they came forth out of Egypt, them they had not circumcised. For the Children of Israel walked forty years in the wilderness till all the people that were men of war, which came out of Egypt, were consumed because they obeyed not the voice of THE LORD (unto whom THE LORD swore that He would not show them the land which THE LORD swore unto their fathers that He would give us, a land that floweth with milk and honey). And their children, whom he raised up in their stead, them Joshua circumcised; for they were uncircumcised, because they had not circumcised them by the way.

And it came to pass, when they had done circumcising all the people, that they abode in their places in the camp till they were <sup>1</sup>whole. *<sup>1</sup>healed*

And THE LORD said unto Joshua, "This day have I rolled away the reproach of Egypt from off you." Wherefore the name of the place is called Gilgal unto this day.

And the Children of Israel encamped in Gilgal and kept the Passover on the fourteenth day of the month at even in the plains of Jericho. And they did eat of the old corn of the land (on the morrow after the Passover), unleavened cakes and parched corn in the selfsame day.

And the manna <sup>1</sup>ceased on the morrow after they had eaten of the old corn of the land; neither had the Children of Israel manna any more, but they did eat of the fruit of the land of Canaan that year. *<sup>1</sup>stopped appearing/was no longer supplied*

And it came to pass, when Joshua was by Jericho, that he lifted up his eyes and looked and, behold, there stood a man over against him with his sword drawn in his hand. And Joshua went unto him and said unto him, <sup>1</sup>"Art thou for us, or for our adversaries?" *<sup>1</sup>"are you on our side or our enemy's side?"*

And he said, "Nay, but as <sup>1</sup>Captain of the Host of THE LORD am I now come!" *<sup>1</sup>NOTE: it is possible that this is Jesus or the archangel Michael*

And Joshua fell on his face to the earth and did worship, and said unto him, "What saith my lord unto his servant?"

And the Captain of THE LORD'S Host said unto Joshua, "Loose thy shoe from off thy foot; for the place whereon thou standest is holy!"

And Joshua did so.

Now, Jericho was straitly shut up because of the Children of Israel. None went out, and none came in. And THE LORD said unto Joshua, "See, I have given into thine hand Jericho and the king thereof and the mighty

men of valour. And ye shall compass the city, all ye men of war, and go round about the city once. Thus shalt thou do six days. And seven priests shall bear before the Ark seven <sup>1</sup>trumpets of rams' horns; and the Seventh Day ye shall compass the city seven times, and the priests shall blow with the <sup>1</sup>trumpets. And it shall come to pass that when they make a long blast with the <sup>1</sup>ram's horn and when ye hear the sound of the <sup>1</sup>trumpet, all the people shall shout with a great shout; and the wall of the city shall fall down flat, and the people shall ascend up, every man, straight before him.”

*<sup>1</sup>shofars (ram's horn)*

And Joshua, the son of Nun, called the priests and said unto them, “Take up the Ark of the Covenant, and let seven priests bear seven trumpets of rams' horns before the Ark of THE LORD.”

And he said unto the people, “Pass on and compass the city, and let him that is armed pass on before the Ark of THE LORD.”

And it came to pass, when Joshua had spoken unto the people, that the seven priests bearing the seven trumpets of rams' horns passed on before THE LORD and blew with the trumpets; and the Ark of the Covenant of THE LORD followed them. And the armed men went before the priests that blew with the trumpets, and the <sup>1</sup>rereward came after the Ark, the priests going on and blowing with the trumpets.

*<sup>1</sup>gathered people*

And Joshua had commanded the people, saying, “Ye shall not shout, nor make any noise with your voice, neither shall any word proceed out of your mouth, until the day I bid you shout; then shall ye shout.”

So the Ark of THE LORD compassed the city, going about it once; and they came into the camp, and lodged in the camp. And Joshua rose early in the morning, and the priests took up the Ark of THE LORD. And seven priests bearing seven trumpets of rams' horns before the Ark of THE LORD went on continually, and blew with the trumpets; and the armed men went before them, but the <sup>1</sup>rereward came after the Ark of THE LORD, the priests going on and blowing with the trumpets.

*<sup>1</sup>rear-ward, those in the rear*

And the second day they compassed the city once and returned into the camp. So they did six days.

And it came to pass on the Seventh Day that they rose early about the dawning of the day, and compassed the city after the same manner seven times; only, on *that* day they compassed the city seven times.

And it came to pass at the seventh time, when the priests blew with the trumpets, Joshua said unto the people, “Shout! For THE LORD hath given you the city! And the city shall be accursed, even it, and all that are therein, to THE LORD! Only Rahab the harlot shall live - she and all that are with her in the house - because she hid the messengers that we sent. And ye, in any wise keep yourselves <sup>1</sup>from the accursed thing, lest ye make yourselves accursed when ye take of the accursed thing, and make the camp of Israel a curse and trouble it. But all the silver, and gold, and vessels of brass and iron, are consecrated unto THE LORD; they shall come into the Treasury of THE LORD.”

*<sup>1</sup>from touching/taking*

So the people shouted when the priests blew with the trumpets. And it came to pass, when the people heard the sound of the trumpet, and the people shouted with a great shout, that the wall fell down flat so that the people went up into the city, every man straight before him, and they took the city. And they utterly destroyed all that was in the city, both man and woman, young and old, and ox, and sheep, and ass, with the edge of the sword.

But Joshua had said unto the two men that had spied out the country, “Go into the harlot's house and bring out thence the woman and all that she hath, as ye sware unto her.”

And the young men that were spies went in and brought out Rahab, and her father and her mother, and her brethren, and all that she had; and they brought out all her kindred and left them <sup>1</sup>without the camp of Israel. *<sup>1</sup>outside*

And they burnt the city with fire and all that was therein; only, the silver and the gold and the vessels of brass and of iron they put into the Treasury of the House of THE LORD.

And Joshua saved Rahab the harlot alive and her father's household and all that she had, and she dwelleth in Israel even unto this day because she hid the messengers which Joshua sent to spy out Jericho.

And Joshua adjured them at that time, saying, "Cursed be the man before THE LORD that riseth up and buildeth this city Jericho! He shall lay the foundation thereof in his firstborn, and in his youngest son shall he set up the gates of it."

So THE LORD was with Joshua; and his fame was noised throughout all the country. But the Children of Israel committed a trespass in the accursed thing; for Achan (the son of Carmi, the son of Zabdi, the son of Zerah, of the tribe of Judah) took of the accursed thing. And the anger of THE LORD was kindled against the Children of Israel.

And Joshua sent men from Jericho to Ai (which is beside Bethaven on the east side of Bethel) and spake unto them, saying, "Go up and view the country." And the men went up and viewed Ai.

And they returned to Joshua, and said unto him, "Let not all the people go up; but let about two or three thousand men go up and smite Ai and make not all the people to labour thither, for they are but few."

So there went up thither of the people about three thousand men - <sup>1</sup>and they fled before the men of Ai. And the men of Ai smote of them about thirty and six men, for they chased them from before the gate even unto Shebarim and smote them in the going down; wherefore the hearts of the people melted and became as water. *<sup>1</sup>but they ran from*

And Joshua <sup>1</sup>rent his clothes and fell to the earth upon his face before the Ark of THE LORD until the eventide - he and the elders of Israel - and put dust upon their heads. *<sup>1</sup>ripped apart*

And Joshua said, "Alas, O Lord GOD, wherefore hast Thou at all brought this people over Jordan to deliver us into the hand of the Amorites to destroy us? Would to God we had been content and dwelt on the other side Jordan! O Lord, what shall I say when Israel turneth their backs before their enemies! For the Canaanites and all the inhabitants of the land shall hear of it and shall environ us round and cut off our name from the earth - and <sup>1</sup>what wilt Thou do unto Thy great name?" *<sup>1</sup>how will this give glory or magnify*

And THE LORD said unto Joshua, "Get thee up! Wherefore liest thou thus upon thy face?! Israel hath sinned, and they have also transgressed My Covenant which I commanded them; for they have even taken of the accursed thing, and have also stolen, and dissembled also, and they have put it even among their own stuff! Therefore the Children of Israel could not stand before their enemies but turned their backs before their enemies, because they were accursed! Neither will I be with you any more except ye destroy the accursed from among you.

"Up! Sanctify the people, and say: Sanctify yourselves against tomorrow, for thus saith THE LORD God of Israel: There is an accursed thing in the midst of thee, O Israel! Thou canst not stand before thine enemies until ye take away the accursed thing from among you!

"In the morning therefore ye shall be brought according to your tribes; and it shall be that the tribe which THE LORD taketh shall come according to the families thereof, and the family which THE LORD shall take shall come by households, and the household, which THE LORD shall <sup>1</sup>take, shall come man by man.

And it shall be that he that is taken with the accursed thing shall be burnt with fire - he and all that he hath - because he hath transgressed the Covenant of THE LORD, and because he hath wrought folly in Israel!"

So Joshua rose up early in the morning and brought Israel by their tribes; and the tribe of Judah was <sup>1</sup>taken.  
*<sup>1</sup>singled out by God as the culprit*

And he brought the family of Judah; and he took the family of the Zarhites, and he brought the family of the Zarhites man by man.

And Zabdi was taken; and he brought his household man by man.

And Achan (the son of Carmi, the son of Zabdi, the son of Zerah, of the tribe of Judah) was taken.

And Joshua said unto Achan, "My son, give, I pray thee, glory to THE LORD God of Israel and make confession unto Him and tell me now what thou hast done; hide it not from me."

And Achan answered Joshua, and said, "Indeed I have sinned against THE LORD God of Israel, and thus and thus have I done... when I saw among the spoils a goodly Babylonish garment and two hundred shekels of silver and a wedge of gold of fifty shekels weight, then I coveted them and took them; and, behold, they are hid in the earth in the midst of my tent, and the silver under it."

So Joshua sent messengers, and they ran unto the tent; and, behold, it was hid in his tent, and the silver under it. And they took them out of the midst of the tent and brought them unto Joshua and unto all the Children of Israel, and laid them out before THE LORD. And Joshua, and all Israel with him, took Achan the son of Zerah, and the silver, and the garment, and the wedge of gold, and his sons, and his daughters, and his oxen, and his asses, and his sheep, and his tent, and all that he had; and they brought them unto the Valley of Achor.

And Joshua said, "Why hast thou troubled us? THE LORD shall trouble *thee* this day!"

And all Israel stoned him with stones, and burned them with fire after they had stoned them with stones. And they raised over him a great heap of stones unto this day. So THE LORD turned from the fierceness of His anger. Wherefore the name of that place was called The Valley of Achor unto this day.

And THE LORD said unto Joshua, "Fear not, neither be thou dismayed. Take all the people of war with thee and arise; go up to Ai. See, I have given into thy hand the king of Ai, and his people, and his city, and his land; and thou shalt do to Ai and her king as thou didst unto Jericho and her king. Only, the spoil thereof and the cattle thereof shall ye take for a prey unto yourselves; lay thee an ambush for the city behind it."

So Joshua arose, and all the people of war, to go up against Ai; and Joshua chose out thirty thousand mighty men of valour and sent them away by night.

And he commanded them, saying, "Behold, ye shall lie in wait against the city, even behind the city. Go not very far from the city, but be ye all ready. And I, and all the people that are with me, will approach unto the city; and it shall come to pass, when they come out against us as at the first, that we will flee before them (for they will come out after us) till we have drawn them from the city. For they will say, '*They flee before us, as at the first!*' Therefore we *will* flee before them. Then ye shall rise up from the ambush and seize upon the city, for THE LORD your God will deliver it into your hand. And it shall be, when ye have taken the city, that ye shall set the city on fire; according to the commandment of THE LORD shall ye do. See, I have commanded you."

Joshua therefore sent them forth. And they went to lie in ambush and abode between Bethel and Ai, on the west side of Ai; but Joshua lodged that night among the people.

And Joshua rose up early in the morning and numbered the people and went up (he and the elders of Israel) before the people to Ai. And all the people, even the people of war that were with him, went up and drew nigh and came before the city, and pitched on the north side of Ai.

Now, there was a valley between them and Ai. And he took about five thousand men and set them to lie in ambush between Bethel and Ai, on the west side of the city. And when they had set the people, even all the host that was on the north of the city, and their liers-in-wait on the west of the city, Joshua went that night into the midst of the valley.

And it came to pass, when the king of Ai saw it, that they hastened and rose up early, and the men of the city went out against Israel to battle, he and all his people, at a time appointed, before the plain; but he <sup>1</sup>wist not that there were liers-in-ambush against him behind the city. *<sup>1</sup>knew*

And Joshua and all Israel <sup>1</sup>made as if they were beaten before them, and fled by the way of the wilderness. *<sup>1</sup>pretended*

And all the people that were in Ai were called together to pursue after them; and they pursued after Joshua and were drawn away from the city. And there was not a man left in Ai or Bethel that went not out after Israel; and they left the city open and pursued after Israel.

And THE LORD said unto Joshua, "Stretch out the spear that is in thy hand toward Ai; for I will give it into thine hand!"

And Joshua stretched out the spear that he had in his hand toward the city. And the ambush arose quickly out of their place, and they ran as soon as he had stretched out his hand; and they entered into the city, and took it, and hastened and set the city on fire.

And when the men of Ai looked behind them, they saw, and, behold, the smoke of the city ascended up to heaven, and they had no power to flee this way or that way; and <sup>1</sup>the people that fled to the wilderness turned back upon the pursuers. *<sup>1</sup>Joshua's people*

And when Joshua and all Israel saw that the ambush had taken the city and that the smoke of the city ascended, then they turned again and slew the men of Ai.

And the <sup>1</sup>other issued out of the city against them; so <sup>2</sup>they were in the midst of Israel (some on this side, and some on that side), and they smote them so that they let none of them remain or escape.

*<sup>1</sup>other group/the ambushers <sup>2</sup>the enemy*

And the king of Ai they took alive and brought him to Joshua. And it came to pass, when Israel had made an end of slaying all the inhabitants of Ai in the field, in the wilderness wherein they chased them, and when they were all fallen on the edge of the sword until they were consumed, that all the Israelites returned unto Ai and smote it with the edge of the sword.

And so it was, that all that fell that day, both of men and women, were twelve thousand, even all the men of Ai. For Joshua drew not his hand back wherewith he stretched out the spear until he had utterly destroyed all the inhabitants of Ai. Only the cattle and the spoil of that city Israel took for a prey unto themselves, according unto the Word of THE LORD which He commanded Joshua. And Joshua burnt Ai and made it an heap for ever, even a desolation unto this day. And the king of Ai he hanged on a tree until eventide; and as soon as the sun was down, Joshua commanded that they should take his carcass down from the tree and

cast it at the <sup>1</sup>entering of the gate of the city, and raise thereon a great heap of stones, that remaineth unto this day. <sup>1</sup>entrance

Then Joshua built an altar unto THE LORD God of Israel in Mount Ebal as Moses the servant of THE LORD commanded the Children of Israel (as it is written in the Book of the Law of Moses) - an altar of whole stones over which no man hath lift up any <sup>1</sup>iron. And they offered thereon burnt offerings unto THE LORD, and sacrificed peace offerings. <sup>1</sup>tool

And he wrote there, upon the stones, a copy of the Law of Moses, which he wrote in the presence of the Children of Israel.

And all Israel, and their elders, and officers, and their judges, stood on this side the Ark and on that side before the priests the Levites which bare the Ark of the covenant of THE LORD - as well the stranger as he that was born among them; half of them over against Mount Gerizim, and half of them over against Mount Ebal, as Moses the servant of THE LORD had commanded before, that they should bless the people of Israel. And afterward he read all the Words of the Law, the blessings and cursings, according to all that is written in the Book of the Law. There was not a word, of all that Moses commanded, which Joshua read not before all the congregation of Israel, with the women and the little ones and the strangers that were conversant among them.

And it came to pass, when all the kings which were on this side Jordan in the hills and in the valleys and in all the coasts of the <sup>1</sup>Great Sea over against Lebanon (the Hittite, and the Amorite, the Canaanite, the Perizzite, the Hivite, and the Jebusite) heard thereof, that they gathered themselves together to fight with Joshua and with Israel with one accord. <sup>1</sup>Mediterranean Sea

And when the inhabitants of Gibeon heard what Joshua had done unto Jericho and to Ai, they did work <sup>1</sup>wilily, and went and made as if they had been ambassadors, and took old sacks upon their asses, and wine bottles, old and rent and bound up, and old shoes and clouted upon their feet, and old garments upon them; and all the bread of their provision was dry and mouldy. <sup>1</sup>with trickery

And they went to Joshua unto the camp at Gilgal and said unto him and to the men of Israel, "We be come from a far country; now therefore make ye a <sup>1</sup>league with us." <sup>1</sup>confederacy/compact

And the men of Israel said unto the Hivites, "Peradventure ye dwell among us; and how shall we make a league with you?"

And they said unto Joshua, "We are thy servants."

And Joshua said unto them, "Who are ye? And from whence come ye?"

And they said unto him, "From a very far country thy servants are come because of the name of THE LORD thy God; for we have heard the fame of Him and all that He did in Egypt, and all that He did to the two kings of the Amorites that were beyond Jordan - to Sihon king of Heshbon and to Og king of Bashan which was at Ashtaroth. Wherefore our elders and all the inhabitants of our country spake to us, saying, 'Take victuals with you for the journey and go to meet them, and say unto them, *'We are your servants; therefore now make ye a league with us'*. This our bread we took hot for our provision out of our houses on the day we came forth to go unto you; but now, behold, it is dry and it is mouldy. And these bottles of wine which we filled were new; and, behold, they be rent. And these our garments and our shoes are become old by reason of the very long journey."

And the men took of their victuals and asked not counsel at the mouth of THE LORD.

And Joshua made peace with them, and made a league with them, to let them live; and the princes of the congregation <sup>1</sup>swore unto them. *<sup>1</sup>made oaths*

And it came to pass at the end of three days after they had made a league with them, that they heard that they <sup>1</sup>were their neighbours and that they dwelt among them. And the Children of Israel journeyed and came unto their cities on the third day. Now, their cities were Gibeon, and Chephirah, and Beeroth, and Kirjathjearim. *<sup>1</sup>were actually*

And the Children of Israel smote them not, because the princes of the congregation had sworn unto them by THE LORD God of Israel. And all the congregation murmured against the princes. But all the princes said unto all the congregation, "We have sworn unto them by THE LORD God of Israel. Now therefore we may not touch them. *This* we will do to them: we will even let them live, lest wrath be upon us because of the oath which we swore unto them." And the princes said unto them, "Let them live - but let them be hewers of wood and drawers of water unto all the congregation, as the princes had promised them."

And Joshua called for them, and he spake unto them, saying, "Wherefore have ye beguiled us, saying, '*We are very far from you*', when <sup>1</sup>ye dwell among us?! Now therefore ye are cursed, and there shall none of you be freed from being bondmen and hewers of wood and drawers of water for the House of my God!" *<sup>1</sup>when the real truth is that*

And they answered Joshua, and said, "Because it was certainly told thy servants how that THE LORD thy God commanded His servant Moses to give you all the land and to destroy all the inhabitants of the land from before you; therefore we were sore afraid of our lives because of you and have done this thing. And now, behold, we are in thine hand. As it seemeth good and right unto thee to do unto us, do."

And so did he unto them, and delivered them out of the hand of the Children of Israel, that they slew them not. And Joshua made them that day hewers of wood and drawers of water for the congregation and for the Altar of THE LORD (even unto this day) in the place which He should choose.

Now it came to pass, when Adonizedek, king of Jerusalem, had heard how Joshua had taken Ai and had utterly destroyed it (as he had done to Jericho and her king, so he had done to Ai and her king), and how the inhabitants of Gibeon had made peace with Israel and were among them, that they feared greatly, because Gibeon was a great city, as one of the royal cities, and because it was greater than Ai and all the men thereof were mighty.

Wherefore Adonizedek king of Jerusalem sent unto Hoham king of Hebron, and unto Piram king of Jarmuth, and unto Japhia king of Lachish, and unto Debir king of Eglon, saying, "Come up unto me and help me, that we may smite Gibeon; for it hath made peace with Joshua and with the Children of Israel!"

Therefore the five kings of the Amorites - the king of Jerusalem, the king of Hebron, the king of Jarmuth, the king of Lachish, the king of Eglon - gathered themselves together and went up, they and all their hosts, and encamped before Gibeon and made war against it.

And the men of Gibeon sent unto Joshua to the camp to Gilgal, saying, "Slack not thy hand from thy servants! Come up to us quickly and save us and help us! For all the kings of the Amorites that dwell in the mountains are gathered together against us!"

So Joshua ascended from Gilgal - he, and all the people of war with him, and all the mighty men of valour.

And THE LORD said unto Joshua, "Fear them not; for I have delivered them into thine hand. There shall not a man of them stand before thee!"

Joshua therefore came unto them suddenly, and went up from Gilgal all night.

And THE LORD <sup>1</sup>discomfited them before Israel, and slew them with a great slaughter at Gibeon, and chased them along the way that goeth up to Beth-Horon, and smote them to Azekah and unto Makkedah.

*<sup>1</sup>greatly agitate*

And it came to pass, as they fled from before Israel and were in the going down to Beth-Horon, that THE LORD cast down great stones from heaven upon them unto Azekah and they died. They were more which died with hailstones than they whom the Children of Israel slew with the sword.

Then spake Joshua to THE LORD in the day when THE LORD delivered up the Amorites before the Children of Israel, and he said in the sight of Israel, "Sun, stand thou still upon Gibeon! And thou, Moon, in the Valley of Ajalon!"

And the sun stood still and the moon stayed until the people had avenged themselves upon their enemies. Is not this written in <sup>1</sup>*The Book of Jasher?*

*<sup>1</sup>literally "Book of the Upright Ones" - a kind of national sacred song-book, a collection of songs in praise of the heroes of Israel which is not part of the sacred inspired Scripture*

So the sun stood still in the midst of heaven and hasted not to go down about a whole day. <sup>1</sup>And there was no day like that before it or after it that THE LORD hearkened unto the voice of a man; for THE LORD fought for Israel.

*<sup>1</sup>NOTE: The magnitude of this miracle is massive. The earth rotates around the sun, and the moon rotates around the earth. For these heavenly bodies to "stand still" over a specific place on earth would mean that God had to stop the rotation of the earth on its axis and stop its rotation around the sun and stop the rotation of the moon – a gravitational disruption that would have obliterated the planet had it occurred naturally rather than by the direct intervention of God.*

And Joshua returned, and all Israel with him, unto the camp to Gilgal. But these five kings fled and hid themselves in a cave at Makkedah. And it was told Joshua, saying, "The five kings are found hid in a cave at Makkedah!"

And Joshua said, "Roll great stones upon the mouth of the cave, and set men by it for to keep them, and stay ye not, but pursue after your enemies, and smite the hindmost of them; suffer them not to enter into their cities - for THE LORD your God hath delivered them into your hand!"

And it came to pass, when Joshua and the Children of Israel had made an end of slaying them with a very great slaughter till they were consumed, that the rest which remained of them entered into fenced cities.

And all the people returned to the camp to Joshua at Makkedah in peace; none <sup>1</sup>moved his tongue against any of the Children of Israel.

*<sup>1</sup>spoke against*

Then said Joshua, "Open the mouth of the cave and bring out those five kings unto me out of the cave!"

And they did so and brought forth those five kings unto him out of the cave - the king of Jerusalem, the king of Hebron, the king of Jarmuth, the king of Lachish, and the king of Eglon. And it came to pass, when they brought out those kings unto Joshua, that Joshua called for all the men of Israel and said unto the captains of the men of war which went with him, "Come near! Put your feet upon the necks of these kings!"

And they came near and put their feet upon the necks of them.

And Joshua said unto them, "Fear not, nor be dismayed, be strong and of good courage! For thus shall THE LORD do to all your enemies against whom ye fight."

And afterward Joshua smote them, and slew them, and hanged them on five trees; and they were hanging upon the trees until the evening. And it came to pass at the time of the going down of the sun that Joshua commanded, and they took them down off the trees and cast them into the cave wherein they had been hid, and laid great stones in the cave's mouth, which remain until this very day.

And that day Joshua took Makkedah and smote it with the edge of the sword, and the king thereof he utterly destroyed - them, and all the souls that were therein. He let none remain, and he did to the king of Makkedah as he did unto the king of Jericho.

Then Joshua passed from Makkedah, and all Israel with him, unto Libnah, and fought against Libnah. And THE LORD delivered it also, and the king thereof, into the hand of Israel; and he smote it with the edge of the sword, and all the souls that were therein. He let none remain in it, but did unto the king thereof as he did unto the king of Jericho.

And Joshua passed from Libnah, and all Israel with him, unto Lachish, and encamped against it, and fought against it. And THE LORD delivered Lachish into the hand of Israel, which took it on the second day, and smote it with the edge of the sword, and all the souls that were therein, according to all that he had done to Libnah.

Then Horam king of Gezer came up to help Lachish; and Joshua smote him and his people until he had left him none remaining.

And from Lachish Joshua passed unto Eglon, and all Israel with him; and they encamped against it, and fought against it. And they took it on that day, and smote it with the edge of the sword, and all the souls that were therein he utterly destroyed that day, according to all that he had done to Lachish.

And Joshua went up from Eglon, and all Israel with him, unto Hebron; and they fought against it. And they took it, and smote it with the edge of the sword, and the king thereof, and all the cities thereof, and all the souls that were therein. He left none remaining, according to all that he had done to Eglon; but destroyed it utterly, and all the souls that were therein.

And Joshua returned, and all Israel with him, to Debir; and fought against it. And he took it, and the king thereof, and all the cities thereof; and they smote them with the edge of the sword, and utterly destroyed all the souls that were therein. He left none remaining. As he had done to Hebron, so he did to Debir and to the king thereof, as he had done also to Libnah and to her king.

So Joshua smote all the country of the hills, and of the south, and of the <sup>1</sup>vale, and of the springs, and all their kings. He left none remaining, but utterly destroyed all that breathed, as THE LORD God of Israel commanded. <sup>1</sup>valley

And Joshua smote them from Kadeshbarnea even unto Gaza, and all the country of <sup>1</sup>Goshen, even unto Gibeon. And all these kings and their land did Joshua take at one time, because THE LORD God of Israel fought for Israel. <sup>1</sup>likely a different Goshen from the one where they dwelled in Egypt

And Joshua returned, and all Israel with him, unto the camp to Gilgal.

And it came to pass, when Jabin king of Hazor had heard those things, that he sent to Jobab king of Madon, and to the king of Shimron, and to the king of Achshaph, and to the kings that were on the north of the mountains, and of the plains south of <sup>1</sup>Chinneroth, and in the valley, and in the borders of Dor on the west, and to the Canaanite on the east and on the west, and to the Amorite, and the Hittite, and the Perizzite, and the Jebusite in the mountains, and to the Hivite under Hermon in the land of Mizpeh. <sup>1</sup>Galilee

And they went out, they and all their hosts with them, much people, even as the sand that is upon the sea shore in multitude, with horses and chariots very many. And when all these kings were met together, they came and pitched together at the waters of <sup>1</sup>Merom to fight against Israel. *<sup>1</sup>northwest of the Sea of Galilee*

And THE LORD said unto Joshua, "Be not afraid because of them! For to morrow about this time will I deliver them up all slain before Israel; thou shalt hock their horses and burn their chariots with fire!"

So Joshua came, and all the people of war with him, against them by the waters of Merom suddenly; and they fell upon them. And THE LORD delivered them into the hand of Israel, who smote them and chased them unto great Zidon and unto Misrephothmaim and unto the valley of Mizpeh eastward; and they smote them until they left them none remaining. And Joshua did unto them as THE LORD bade him; he hocked their horses and burnt their chariots with fire.

And Joshua at that time turned back and took Hazor, and smote the king thereof with the sword (for Hazor beforetime was the head of all those kingdoms). And they smote all the souls that were therein with the edge of the sword, utterly destroying them; there was not any left to breathe. And he burnt Hazor with fire.

And all the cities of those kings, and all the kings of them, did Joshua take and smote them with the edge of the sword, and he utterly destroyed them as Moses the servant of THE LORD commanded. But as for the cities that stood still in their strength, Israel burned none of them (save Hazor only - *that* did Joshua burn). And all the spoil of these cities, and the cattle, the Children of Israel took for a prey unto themselves; but every man they smote with the edge of the sword until they had destroyed them, neither left they any to breathe.

As THE LORD commanded Moses His servant, so did Moses command Joshua, and so did Joshua; he left nothing undone of all that THE LORD commanded Moses.

So Joshua took all that land, the hills, and all the south country, and all the land of Goshen, and the valley, and the plain, and the mountain of Israel, and the valley of the same; even from the Mount Halak that goeth up to Seir, even unto Baalgad in the Valley of Lebanon under Mount Hermon. And all their kings he took, and smote them, and slew them.

Joshua made war a long time with all those kings. There was not a city that made peace with the Children of Israel, <sup>1</sup>save the Hivites the inhabitants of Gibeon; all other they took in battle. *<sup>1</sup>except the Hivite inhabitants*

For it was of THE LORD to harden their hearts that they should come against Israel in battle, that He might destroy them utterly and that they might have no favour, but that He might destroy them as THE LORD commanded Moses.

And at that time came Joshua and cut off the Anakims from the mountains, from Hebron, from Debir, from Anab, and from all the mountains of Judah and from all the mountains of Israel; Joshua destroyed them utterly with their cities. There was none of the Anakims left in the land of the Children of Israel; only in Gaza, in Gath, and in Ashdod, there remained.

So Joshua took the whole land according to all that THE LORD said unto Moses; and Joshua gave it for an inheritance unto Israel according to their divisions by their tribes. And the land rested from war.

Now these are the kings of the land which the Children of Israel smote and possessed their land on the other side Jordan toward the rising of the sun, from the River Arnon unto Mount Hermon, and all the plain on the east:

- Sihon king of the Amorites, who dwelt in Heshbon and ruled from Aroer which is upon the bank of the River Arnon, and from the middle of the river and from half Gilead even unto the River Jabbok,

which is the border of the children of Ammon; and from the plain to the Sea of Chinneroth on the east, and unto the sea of the plain, even the Salt Sea on the east, the way to Bethjeshimoth; and from the south, under Ashdothpishgah;

- And the coast of Og king of Bashan, which was of the remnant of the giants that dwelt at Ashtaroth and at Edrei and reigned in Mount Hermon, and in Salcah, and in all Bashan, unto the border of the Geshurites and the Maachathites, and half Gilead, the border of Sihon king of Heshbon.

Them did Moses the servant of THE LORD and the Children of Israel smite; and Moses the servant of THE LORD gave it for a possession unto the Reubenites, and the Gadites, and the half tribe of Manasseh.

And these are the kings of the country which Joshua and the Children of Israel smote on this side Jordan on the west, from Baalgad in the valley of Lebanon even unto the Mount Halak that goeth up to Seir, which Joshua gave unto the tribes of Israel for a possession according to their divisions; in the mountains, and in the valleys, and in the plains, and in the springs, and in the wilderness, and in the south country:

- the Hittites,
- the Amorites,
- and the Canaanites,
- the Perizzites,
- the Hivites,
- and the Jebusites,
- the king of Jericho, one,
- the king of Ai, which is beside Bethel, one,
- the king of Jerusalem, one,
- the king of Hebron, one,
- the king of Jarmuth, one,
- the king of Lachish, one,
- the king of Eglon, one,
- the king of Gezer, one,
- the king of Debir, one,
- the king of Geder, one,
- the king of Hormah, one,
- the king of Arad, one,
- the king of Libnah, one,
- the king of Adullam, one,
- the king of Makkedah, one,
- the king of Bethel, one,
- the king of Tappuah, one,
- the king of Hopher, one,
- the king of Aphek, one,
- the king of Lasharon, one,
- the king of Madon, one,
- the king of Hazor, one,
- the king of Shimronmeron, one,
- the king of Achshaph, one,
- the king of Taanach, one,
- the king of Megiddo, one,
- the king of Kedesh, one,
- the king of Jokneam of Carmel, one,
- the king of Dor in the coast of Dor, one,
- the king of the nations of Gilgal, one,
- the king of Tirzah, one.

All the kings thirty and one.

Now Joshua was old and stricken in years; and THE LORD said unto him, "Thou art old and stricken in years, and there remaineth yet very much land to be possessed. This is the land that yet remaineth: all the borders of the Philistines and all Geshuri - from Sihor which is before Egypt, even unto the borders of Ekron northward which is counted to the Canaanite; five lords of the Philistines - the Gazathites, and the Ashdothites, the Eshkalonites, the Gittites, and the Ekronites. Also the Avites. From the south, all the land of the Canaanites, and Mearah that is beside the Sidonians unto Aphek, to the borders of the Amorites. And the land of the Giblites, and all Lebanon toward the sunrising, from Baalgad under Mount Hermon unto the entering into Hamath. All the inhabitants of the hill country from Lebanon unto Misrephothmaim and all the Sidonians, them will I drive out from before the Children of Israel - only, divide thou it by lot unto the Israelites for an inheritance, as I have commanded thee. Now therefore divide this land for an inheritance unto the nine tribes, and the half tribe of Manasseh, with whom the Reubenites and the Gadites have received their inheritance, which Moses gave them beyond Jordan eastward, even as Moses the servant of THE LORD gave them from Aroer that is upon the bank of the river Arnon, and the city that is in the midst of the river, and all the plain of Medeba unto Dibon, and all the cities of Sihon king of the Amorites which reigned in Heshbon, unto the border of the children of Ammon, and Gilead, and the border of the Geshurites and Maachathites, and all Mount Hermon, and all Bashan unto Salcah; all the kingdom of Og in Bashan which reigned in Ashtaroth and in Edrei who remained of the remnant of the giants - for these did Moses smite and cast them out."

Nevertheless the Children of Israel expelled not the Geshurites, nor the Maachathites; but the Geshurites and the Maachathites dwell among the Israelites until this day. Only unto the tribe of Levi he gave none inheritance; the sacrifices of THE LORD God of Israel made by fire are their inheritance, as He said unto them.

And Moses gave unto the tribe of the children of Reuben inheritance according to their families. And their coast was from Aroer that is on the bank of the River Arnon, and the city that is in the midst of the river, and all the plain by Medeba; Heshbon, and all her cities that are in the plain; Dibon, and Bamothbaal, and Bethbaalmeon, and Jahaza, and Kedemoth, and Mephaath, and Kirjathaim, and Sibmah, and Zarethshahar in the mount of the valley; and Bethpeor, and Ashdothpisgah, and Bethjeshimoth, and all the cities of the plain; and all the kingdom of Sihon king of the Amorites which reigned in Heshbon whom Moses smote with the princes of Midian, Evi, and Rekem, and Zur, and Hur, and Reba, which were dukes of Sihon dwelling in the country. Balaam also (the son of Beor, the soothsayer) did the Children of Israel slay with the sword among them that were slain by them. And the border of the children of Reuben was Jordan, and the border thereof. This was the inheritance of the children of Reuben after their families, the cities and the villages thereof.

And Moses gave inheritance unto the tribe of Gad, even unto the children of Gad according to their families. And their coast was Jazer, and all the cities of Gilead, and half the land of the children of Ammon unto Aroer that is before Rabbah; and from Heshbon unto Ramathmizpeh, and Betonim; and from Mahanaim unto the border of Debir; and in the valley - Betharam, and Bethnimrah, and Succoth, and Zaphon, the rest of the kingdom of Sihon king of Heshbon, Jordan and his border, even unto the edge of the <sup>1</sup>Sea of Chinnereth on the other side Jordan eastward. This is the inheritance of the children of Gad after their families, the cities, and their villages.

<sup>1</sup>Sea of Galilee



And Moses gave inheritance unto the half tribe of Manasseh; and this was the possession of the half tribe of the children of Manasseh by their families. And their coast was from Mahanaim, all Bashan, all the kingdom of Og king of Bashan, and all the towns of Jair, which are in Bashan (<sup>1</sup>threescore cities); and half Gilead and Ashtaroth and Edrei, cities of the kingdom of Og in Bashan, were pertaining unto the children of Machir the son of Manasseh, even to the one half of the children of Machir by their families. These are the countries which Moses did distribute for inheritance in the plains of Moab, on the other side Jordan, by Jericho, eastward. <sup>160</sup>

But unto the tribe of Levi Moses gave not any inheritance; THE LORD God of Israel was their inheritance, as he said unto them.

And these are the countries which the Children of Israel inherited in the land of Canaan, which Eleazar the priest, and Joshua the son of Nun, and the heads of the fathers of the tribes of the Children of

Israel, distributed for inheritance to them. By lot was their inheritance, as THE LORD commanded by the hand of Moses, for the nine tribes, and for the half tribe (for Moses had given the inheritance of two tribes and an half tribe on the other side Jordan); but unto the Levites he gave none inheritance among them.

For the children of Joseph were two tribes - Manasseh and Ephraim. Therefore they gave no part unto the Levites in the land, save cities to dwell in, with their suburbs for their cattle and for their substance. As THE LORD commanded Moses, so the Children of Israel did, and they divided the land.

Then the children of Judah came unto Joshua in Gilgal, and Caleb the son of Jephunneh the Kenezite said unto him, "Thou knowest the thing that THE LORD said unto Moses, the man of God, concerning me and thee in Kadeshbarnea. Forty years old was I when Moses the servant of THE LORD sent me from Kadeshbarnea to espy out the land; and I brought him word again as it was in mine heart. Nevertheless my brethren that went up with me made the heart of the people melt; but I wholly followed THE LORD my God. And Moses sware on that day, saying, *'Surely the land whereon thy feet have trodden shall be thine inheritance, and thy children's for ever, because thou hast wholly followed THE LORD my God.'* And now, behold, THE LORD hath kept me alive, as He said, these forty and five years, even since THE LORD spake this word unto Moses while the Children of Israel wandered in the wilderness; and now, lo, I am this day <sup>1</sup>fourscore and five years old. As yet I am as strong this day as I was in the day that Moses sent me; as my strength was then, even so is my strength now, for war, both to go out and to come in! Now therefore give me this mountain whereof THE LORD spake in that day; for thou heardest in that day how the Anakims

were there, and that the cities were great and fenced; if so be THE LORD will be with me, then I shall be able to drive them out as THE LORD said.”

’85

And Joshua blessed him and gave unto Caleb, the son of Jephunneh, Hebron for an inheritance. Hebron therefore became the inheritance of Caleb, the son of Jephunneh the Kenezite, unto this day because that he wholly followed THE LORD God of Israel. And the name of Hebron before was Kirjath-Arba, *which* Arba was a great man among the Anakims. And the land had rest from war.

This then was the lot of the tribe of the children of Judah by their families; even to the border of Edom - the wilderness of Zin southward was the uttermost part of the south coast. And their south border was from the shore of the Salt Sea, from the bay that looketh southward; and it went out to the south side to Maalehacrabim, and passed along to Zin, and ascended up on the south side unto Kadeshbarnea, and passed along to Hebron, and went up to Adar, and fetched a compass to Karkaa. From thence it passed toward Azmon, and went out unto the river of Egypt; and the goings out of that coast were at the sea - this shall be your south coast. And the east border was the Salt Sea, even unto the end of Jordan. And their border in the north quarter was from the bay of the sea at the uttermost part of Jordan; and the border went up to Bethhogla, and passed along by the north of Betharabah; and the border went up to the stone of Bohan the son of Reuben; and the border went up toward Debir from the valley of Achor, and so northward looking toward Gilgal that is before the going up to Adummim which is on the south side of the river; and the border passed toward the waters of Enshemesh, and the goings out thereof were at Enrogel; and the border went up by the valley of the son of Hinnom unto the south side of the Jebusite (the same is Jerusalem); and the border went up to the top of the mountain that lieth before the valley of Hinnom westward, which is at the end of the valley of the giants northward; and the border was drawn from the top of the hill unto the fountain of the water of Nephtoah, and went out to the cities of mount Ephron; and the border was drawn to Baalah, which is Kirjath-Jearim; and the border compassed from Baalah westward unto Mount Seir, and passed along unto the side of Mount Jearim (which is Chesalon, on the north side), and went down to Bethshemesh, and passed on to Timnah; and the border went out unto the side of Ekron northward; and the border was drawn to Shicron, and passed along to Mount Baalah, and went out unto Jabneel; and the goings out of the border were at the sea. And the west border was to the Great sea and the coast thereof. This is the coast of the children of Judah round about according to their families.

And unto Caleb, the son of Jephunneh, he gave a part among the children of Judah according to the commandment of THE LORD to Joshua, even the city of Arba the father of Anak, which city is Hebron. And Caleb drove thence the three sons of Anak - Sheshai, and Ahiman, and Talmai, the children of Anak.

And he went up thence to the inhabitants of Debir (and the name of Debir before was Kirjathsepher). And Caleb said, “He that smiteth Kirjathsepher and taketh it, to him will I give Achsah my daughter to wife!

And Othniel - the son of Kenaz, the brother of Caleb - took it; and he gave him Achsah, his daughter, to wife. And it came to pass as she came unto him that she moved him to ask of her father a field. And she lighted off her ass; and Caleb said unto her, “What wouldest thou?” who answered, “Give me a blessing. For thou hast given me a south land; give me also springs of water”.

And he gave her the upper springs and the nether springs. This is the inheritance of the tribe of the children of Judah according to their families. And the uttermost cities of the tribe of the children of Judah toward the coast of Edom southward were:

- Kabzeel,
- and Eder,
- and Jagur,
- and Kinah,
- and Dimonah,
- and Adadah,

- and Kedesh,
- and Hazor,
- and Ithnan,
- Ziph,
- and Telem,
- and Bealoth,
- and Hazor,
- Hadattah,
- and Kerioth,
- and Hezron (which is Hazor),
- Amam,
- and Shema,
- and Moladah,
- and Hazargaddah,
- and Heshmon,
- and Bethpalet,
- and Hazarshual,
- and Beersheba,
- and Bizjothjah,
- Baalah,
- and lim,
- and Azem,
- and Eltolad,
- and Chesil,
- and Hormah,
- and Ziklag,
- and Madmannah,
- and Sansannah,
- and Lebaoth,
- and Shilhim,
- and Ain,
- and Rimmon.

All the cities are twenty and nine, with their villages, and in the valley:

- Eshtaol,
- and Zoreah,
- and Ashnah,
- and Zanoah,
- and Engannim,
- Tappuah,
- and Enam,
- Jarmuth,
- and Adullam,
- Socoh,
- and Azekah,
- and Sharaim,
- and Adithaim,
- and Gederah,
- and Gederothaim;

Fourteen cities with their villages:

- Zenan,

- and Hadashah,
- and Migdalgad,
- and Dilean,
- and Mizpeh,
- and Joktheel,
- Lachish,
- and Bozkath,
- and Eglon,
- and Cabbon,
- and Lahmam,
- and Kithlish,
- and Gederoth,
- Bethdagon,
- and Naamah,
- and Makkedah;

Sixteen cities with their villages:

- Libnah,
- and Ether,
- and Ashan,
- and Jiphtah,
- and Ashnah,
- and Nezib,
- and Keilah,
- and Achzib,
- and Mareshah;

Nine cities with their villages:

- Ekron, with her towns and her villages,
- from Ekron even unto the sea, all that lay near Ashdod with their villages,
- Ashdod with her towns and her villages,
- Gaza with her towns and her villages, unto the river of Egypt, and the Great Sea, and the border thereof.

And in the mountains:

- Shamir,
- and Jattir,
- and Socoh,
- and Dannah,
- and Kirjath-Sannah (which is Debir),
- and Anab,
- and Eshtemoh,
- and Anim,
- and Goshen,
- and Holon,
- and Giloh;

Eleven cities with their villages:

- Arab,
- and Dumah,
- and Eshean,
- and Janum,
- and Beth-Tappuah,
- and Aphekah,

- and Humtah,
- and Kirjath-Arba (which is Hebron),
- and Zior;

Nine cities with their villages:

- Maon,
- Carmel,
- and Ziph,
- and Juttah,
- and Jezreel,
- and Jokdeam,
- and Zanoah,
- Cain,
- Gibeah,
- and Timnah;

Ten cities with their villages:

- Halhul,
- Beth-Zur,
- and Gedor,
- and Maarath,
- and Beth-Anoth,
- and Eltekon;

Six cities with their villages:

- Kirjath-Baal (which is Kirjath-Jearim),
- and Rabbah;

Two cities with their villages. In the wilderness:

- Beth-Arabah,
- Middin,
- and Secacah,
- and Nibshan,
- and The City of Salt,
- and Engedi;

Six cities with their villages.

As for the Jebusites (the inhabitants of Jerusalem), the children of Judah could not drive them out; but the Jebusites dwell with the children of Judah at Jerusalem unto this day.

And the lot of the children of Joseph fell from Jordan by Jericho unto the water of Jericho on the east, to the wilderness that goeth up from Jericho throughout Mount Bethel and goeth out from Bethel to Luz, and passeth along unto the borders of Archi to Ataroth, and goeth down westward to the coast of Japhleti, unto the coast of Bethhoron the Nether and to Gezer; and the goings out thereof are at the sea. So the children of Joseph - Manasseh and Ephraim - took their inheritance.

And the border of the children of Ephraim according to their families was thus: even the border of their inheritance on the east side was Atarothaddar, unto Bethhoron the Upper; and the border went out toward the sea to Michmethah on the north side; and the border went about eastward unto Taanathshiloh, and passed by it on the east to Janohah; and it went down from Janohah to Ataroth, and to Naarath, and came to Jericho, and went out at Jordan. The border went out from Tappuah westward unto the river Kanah; and the goings out thereof were at the sea. This is the inheritance of the tribe of the children of Ephraim by their families.

And the separate cities for the children of Ephraim were among the inheritance of the children of Manasseh, all the cities with their villages. And they drove not out the Canaanites that dwelt in Gezer; but the Canaanites dwell among the Ephraimites unto this day and serve under tribute.

There was also a lot for the tribe of Manasseh; for he was the firstborn of Joseph; to wit, for Machir the firstborn of Manasseh, the father of Gilead; because he was a man of war, therefore he had Gilead and Bashan.

There was also a lot for the rest of the children of Manasseh by their families:

- for the children of Abiezer,
- and for the children of Helek,
- and for the children of Asriel,
- and for the children of Shechem,
- and for the children of Hephher,
- and for the children of Shemida.

These were the male children of Manasseh the son of Joseph by their families.

But Zelophehad, the son of Hephher, the son of Gilead, the son of Machir, the son of Manasseh, had no sons, but daughters. And these are the names of his daughters:

- Mahlah,
- and Noah,
- Hoglah,
- Milcah,
- and Tirzah.

And they came near before Eleazar the priest, and before Joshua the son of Nun, and before the princes, saying, "THE LORD commanded Moses to give us an inheritance among our brethren. Therefore according to the commandment of THE LORD he gave them an inheritance among the brethren of their father." And there fell ten portions to Manasseh, beside the land of Gilead and Bashan, which were on the other side Jordan; because the daughters of Manasseh had an inheritance among his sons.

And the rest of Manasseh's sons had the land of Gilead. And the coast of Manasseh was from Asher to Michmethah, that lieth before Shechem; and the border went along on the right hand unto the inhabitants of Entappuah. Now Manasseh had the land of Tappuah; but Tappuah on the border of Manasseh belonged to the children of Ephraim. And the coast descended unto the river Kanah, southward of the river. These cities of Ephraim are among the cities of Manasseh. The coast of Manasseh also was on the north side of the river, and the outgoings of it were at the sea. Southward it was Ephraim's, and northward it was Manasseh's, and the sea is his border; and they met together in Asher on the north, and in Issachar on the east. And Manasseh had, in Issachar and in Asher, Bethshean and her towns, and Ibleam and her towns, and the inhabitants of Dor and her towns, and the inhabitants of Endor and her towns, and the inhabitants of Taanach and her towns, and the inhabitants of <sup>1</sup>Megiddo and her towns, even three countries. Yet the children of Manasseh could not drive out the inhabitants of those cities; but the Canaanites would dwell in that land.

*<sup>1</sup>Har-Megiddon/Armageddon*

Yet it came to pass, when the Children of Israel were waxen strong, that they put the Canaanites to tribute; but did not utterly drive them out. And the children of Joseph spake unto Joshua, saying, "Why hast thou given me but one lot and one portion to inherit, seeing I am a great people, forasmuch as THE LORD hath blessed me hitherto?"

And Joshua answered them, "If thou be a great people, then get thee up to the wood country, and cut down for thyself there in the land of the Perizzites and of the giants, if Mount Ephraim be too narrow for thee."

And the children of Joseph said, "The hill is not enough for us; and all the Canaanites that dwell in the land of the valley have chariots of iron - both they who are of Beth-Shean and her towns, and they who are of the Valley of Jezreel."

And Joshua spake unto the House of Joseph, even to Ephraim and to Manasseh, saying, "Thou art a great people and hast great power. Thou shalt not have one lot only, but the mountain shall be thine; for it is a <sup>1</sup>wood and thou shalt cut it down, and the outgoings of it shall be thine; for thou shalt drive out the Canaanites, though they have iron chariots and though they be strong." *<sup>1</sup>forest*

And the whole congregation of the Children of Israel assembled together at Shiloh and set up The Tabernacle of the Congregation there. And the land was subdued before them. And there remained among the Children of Israel seven tribes which had not yet received their inheritance.

And Joshua said unto the Children of Israel, "How long are ye slack to go to possess the land which THE LORD God of your fathers hath given you? Give out from among you three men for each tribe, and I will send them, and they shall rise and go through the land and describe it according to the inheritance of them; and they shall come again to me. And they shall divide it into seven parts. Judah shall abide in their coast on the south, and the House of Joseph shall abide in their coasts on the north. Ye shall therefore describe the land into seven parts, and bring the description hither to me, that I may cast lots for you here before THE LORD our God. But the Levites have no part among you (for the Priesthood of THE LORD is their inheritance), and Gad, and Reuben, and half the tribe of Manasseh, <sup>1</sup>have received their inheritance beyond Jordan on the east, which Moses the servant of THE LORD gave them." *<sup>1</sup>have already*

And the men arose and went away; and Joshua charged them that went to describe the land, saying, "Go and walk through the land and describe it and come again to me, that I may here cast lots for you before THE LORD in Shiloh."

And the men went and passed through the land, and described it by cities into seven parts in a book, and came again to Joshua to the host at Shiloh. And Joshua cast lots for them in Shiloh before THE LORD; and there Joshua divided the land unto the Children of Israel according to their divisions.

And the lot of the tribe of the children of Benjamin came up according to their families; and the coast of their lot came forth between the children of Judah and the children of Joseph. And their border on the north side was from Jordan; and the border went up to the side of Jericho on the north side, and went up through the mountains westward; and the goings out thereof were at the wilderness of Bethaven. And the border went over from thence toward Luz, to the side of Luz, which is Bethel, southward; and the border descended to Ataroth-Adar, near the hill that lieth on the south side of the nether Beth-Horon. And the border was drawn thence, and compassed the corner of the sea southward, from the hill that lieth before Beth-Horon southward; and the goings out thereof were at Kirjath-Baal (which is Kirjath-Jearim, a city of the children of Judah); this was the west quarter. And the south quarter was from the end of Kirjath-Jearim, and the border went out on the west, and went out to the well of waters of Nephtoah; and the border came down to the end of the mountain that lieth before the Valley of the Son of Hinnom, and which is in the Valley of the Giants on the north, and descended to the Valley of Hinnom, to the side of Jebusi on the south, and descended to Enrogel, and was drawn from the north, and went forth to Enshemesh, and went forth toward Geliloth, which is over against the going up of Adummim, and descended to the stone of Bohan the son of Reuben, and passed along toward the side over against Arabah northward, and went down unto Arabah; and the border passed along to the side of Beth-Hoglah northward; and the outgoings of the border were at the north bay of the salt sea at the south end of Jordan; this was the south coast. And Jordan was the border of it on the east side. This was the inheritance of the children of Benjamin, by the coasts thereof round about, according to their families.

Now the cities of the tribe of the children of Benjamin according to their families were:

- Jericho,
- and Beth-Hoglah,
- and the Valley of Keziz,
- and Beth-Arabah,
- and Zemaraim,
- and Bethel,
- and Avim,
- and Parah,
- and Ophrah,
- and Chepharhaammonai,
- and Ophni,
- and Gaba;

Twelve cities with their villages:

- Gibeon,
- and Ramah,
- and Beeroth,
- and Mizpeh,
- and Chephirah,
- and Mozah,
- and Rekem,
- and Irpeel,
- and Taralah,
- and Zelah,
- Eleph,
- and Jebusi (which is Jerusalem),
- Gibeath,
- and Kirjath;

Fourteen cities with their villages. This is the inheritance of the children of Benjamin according to their families.

And the second lot came forth to Simeon, even for the tribe of the children of Simeon according to their families; and their inheritance was within the inheritance of the children of Judah. And they had in their inheritance:

- Beersheba,
- and Sheba,
- and Moladah,
- and Hazarshual,
- and Balah,
- and Azem,
- and Eltolad,
- and Bethul,
- and Hormah,
- and Ziklag,
- and Beth-Marcaboth,
- and Hazarsusah,
- and Beth-Lebaoth,
- and Sharuhem;

Thirteen cities and their villages:

- Ain,

- Remmon,
- and Ether,
- and Ashan;

Four cities and their villages; and all the villages that were round about these cities to Baalathbeer, Ramath of the south. This is the inheritance of the tribe of the children of Simeon according to their families. Out of the portion of the children of Judah was the inheritance of the children of Simeon; for the part of the children of Judah was too much for them; therefore the children of Simeon had their inheritance within the inheritance of them.

And the third lot came up for the children of Zebulun according to their families. And the border of their inheritance was unto Sarid, and their border went up toward the sea, and Maralah, and reached to Dabbasheth, and reached to the river that is before Jokneam; and turned from Sarid eastward toward the sunrising unto the border of Chislothabor, and then goeth out to Daberath, and goeth up to Japhia. And from thence passeth on along on the east to Gittahhepher, to Ittahkazin, and goeth out to Remmonmethoar to Neah; and the border compasseth it on the north side to Hannathon. And the outgoings thereof are:

- in the valley of Jiphthahel,
- and Kattath,
- and Nahallal,
- and Shimron,
- and Idalah,
- and Bethlehem.

Twelve cities with their villages. This is the inheritance of the children of Zebulun according to their families, these cities with their villages.

And the fourth lot came out to Issachar, for the children of Issachar according to their families. And their border was toward:

- Jezreel,
- and Chesulloth,
- and Shunem,
- and Haphraim,
- and Shihon,
- and Anaharath,
- and Rabbith,
- and Kishion,
- and Abez,
- and Remeth,
- and Engannim,
- and Enhaddah,
- and Beth-Pazzez;

And the coast reacheth to:

- Tabor,
- and Shahazimah,
- and Beth-Shemesh;

And the outgoings of their border were at Jordan; sixteen cities with their villages. This is the inheritance of the tribe of the children of Issachar according to their families, the cities and their villages.

And the fifth lot came out for the tribe of the children of Asher according to their families. And their border was:

- Helkath,
- and Hali,
- and Beten,

- and Achshaph,
- and Alammelech,
- and Amad,
- and Misheal,

and reacheth to Carmel westward, and to Shihorlibnath; and turneth toward the sunrising to Bethdagon, and reacheth to Zebulun, and to the valley of Jiphthahel toward the north side of Bethemek, and Neiel, and goeth out to Cabul on the left hand, and:

- Hebron,
- and Rehob,
- and Hammon,
- and Kanah,
- even unto Great Zidon.

And then the coast turneth to Ramah, and to the strong city Tyre; and the coast turneth to Hosah; and the outgoings thereof are at the sea from the coast to Achzib. Ummah also, and Aphek, and Rehob. Twenty and two cities with their villages. This is the inheritance of the tribe of the children of Asher according to their families, these cities with their villages.

The sixth lot came out to the children of Naphtali, even for the children of Naphtali according to their families. And their coast was from Heleph, from Allon to Zaananim, and Adami, Nekeb, and Jabneel, unto Lakum; and the outgoings thereof were at Jordan. And then the coast turneth westward to Aznohtabor, and goeth out from thence to Hukkok, and reacheth to Zebulun on the south side, and reacheth to Asher on the west side, and to Judah upon Jordan toward the sunrising. And the fenced cities are:

- Ziddim,
- Zer,
- and Hammath,
- Rakkath,
- and <sup>1</sup>Chinnereth,
- and Adamah,
- and Ramah,
- and Hazor,
- and Kedesh,
- and Edrei,
- and Enhazor,
- and Iron,
- and Migdalel,
- Horem,
- and Beth-Anath,
- and Beth-Shemesh;

<sup>1</sup>Galilee

Nineteen cities with their villages. This is the inheritance of the tribe of the children of Naphtali according to their families, the cities and their villages.

And the seventh lot came out for the tribe of the children of Dan according to their families. And the coast of their inheritance was:

- Zorah,
- and Eshtaol,
- and Irshemesh,
- and Shaalabbin,
- and Ajalon,
- and Jethlah,
- and Elon,

- and Thimnathah,
- and Ekron,
- and Eltekeh,
- and Gibbethon,
- and Baalath,
- and Jehud,
- and Beneberak,
- and Gathrimmon,
- and Mejarkon,
- and Rakkon,
- with the border before Japho.

And the coast of the children of Dan went out too little for them; therefore the children of Dan went up to fight against Leshem and took it and smote it with the edge of the sword and possessed it and dwelt therein, and called Leshem “Dan”, after the name of Dan their father. This is the inheritance of the tribe of the children of Dan according to their families, these cities with their villages.

When they had made an end of dividing the land for inheritance by their coasts, the Children of Israel gave an inheritance to Joshua the son of Nun among them. According to the Word of THE LORD, they gave him the city which he asked, even Timnathserah in Mount Ephraim; and he built the city, and dwelt therein.

These are the inheritances, which Eleazar the priest and Joshua the son of Nun and the heads of the fathers of the tribes of the Children of Israel, divided for an inheritance by lot in Shiloh before THE LORD at the door of The Tabernacle of the Congregation. So they made an end of dividing the country.

THE LORD also spake unto Joshua, saying, “Speak to the Children of Israel, saying: Appoint out for you cities of refuge whereof I spake unto you by the hand of Moses, that the slayer that killeth any person unawares and unwittingly may flee thither; and they shall be your refuge from the Avenger of Blood. And when he that doth flee unto one of those cities shall stand at the entering of the gate of the city and shall declare his cause in the ears of the elders of that city, they shall take him into the city unto them and give him a place, that he may dwell among them. And if the Avenger of Blood pursue after him, then they shall not deliver the slayer up into his hand, because he smote his neighbour unwittingly and hated him not beforetime. And he shall dwell in that city, until he stand before the congregation for judgment, and until the death of the High Priest that shall be in those days. Then shall the slayer return and come unto his own city, and unto his own house, unto the city from whence he fled.”

And they appointed:

- Kedesh in Galilee in Mount Naphtali,
- and Shechem in Mount Ephraim,
- and Kirjath-Arba (which is Hebron) in the Mountain of Judah.

And on the other side Jordan by Jericho eastward, they assigned:

- Bezer in the wilderness upon the plain out of the tribe of Reuben,
- and Ramoth in Gilead out of the tribe of Gad,
- and Golan in Bashan out of the tribe of Manasseh.

These were the cities appointed for all the Children of Israel, and for the stranger that sojourneth among them, that whosoever killeth any person at unawares might flee thither and not die by the hand of the Avenger of Blood until he stood before the congregation.

Then came near the heads of the fathers of the Levites unto Eleazar the priest, and unto Joshua the son of Nun, and unto the heads of the fathers of the tribes of the Children of Israel, and they spake unto them at Shiloh in the land of Canaan, saying, “THE LORD commanded by the hand of Moses to give us cities to dwell in, with the suburbs thereof for our cattle.”

And the Children of Israel gave unto the Levites out of their inheritance, at the commandment of THE LORD, these cities and their suburbs.

And the lot came out for the families of the Kohathites; and the children of Aaron the priest, which were of the Levites, had by lot out of the tribe of Judah, and out of the tribe of Simeon, and out of the tribe of Benjamin, thirteen cities.

And the rest of the children of Kohath had by lot out of the families of the tribe of Ephraim, and out of the tribe of Dan, and out of the half tribe of Manasseh, ten cities.

And the children of Gershon had by lot out of the families of the tribe of Issachar, and out of the tribe of Asher, and out of the tribe of Naphtali, and out of the half tribe of Manasseh in Bashan, thirteen cities.

The children of Merari by their families had out of the tribe of Reuben, and out of the tribe of Gad, and out of the tribe of Zebulun, twelve cities.

And the Children of Israel gave by lot unto the Levites these cities with their suburbs, as THE LORD commanded by the hand of Moses. And they gave out of the tribe of the children of Judah, and out of the tribe of the children of Simeon, these cities which are here mentioned by name, which the children of Aaron, being of the families of the Kohathites, who were of the children of Levi, had; for theirs was the first lot. And they gave them the city of Arba (the father of Anak) - which city is Hebron in the hill country of Judah, with the suburbs thereof round about it. But the fields of the city, and the villages thereof, gave they to Caleb the son of Jephunneh for his possession. Thus they gave to the children of Aaron the priest:

- Hebron with her suburbs (to be a city of refuge for the slayer),
- and Libnah with her suburbs,
- and Jattir with her suburbs,
- and Eshtemoa with her suburbs,
- and Holon with her suburbs,
- and Debir with her suburbs,
- and Ain with her suburbs,
- and Juttah with her suburbs,
- and Beth-Shemesh with her suburbs;

Nine cities out of those two tribes. And out of the tribe of Benjamin:

- Gibeon with her suburbs,
- Geba with her suburbs,
- Anathoth with her suburbs,
- and Almon with her suburbs;

Four cities. All the cities of the children of Aaron, the priests, were thirteen cities with their suburbs. And the families of the children of Kohath, the Levites which remained of the children of Kohath, even they had the cities of their lot out of the tribe of Ephraim. For they gave them:

- Shechem with her suburbs in Mount Ephraim, to be a city of refuge for the slayer,
- and Gezer with her suburbs,
- and Kibzaim with her suburbs,
- and Bethhoron with her suburbs;

Four cities. And out of the tribe of Dan:

- Eltekeh with her suburbs,
- Gibbethon with her suburbs,
- Aijalon with her suburbs,
- Gathrimmon with her suburbs;

Four cities. And out of the half tribe of Manasseh:

- Tanach with her suburbs,
- and Gathrimmon with her suburbs;

Two cities. All the cities were ten with their suburbs for the families of the children of Kohath that remained. And unto the children of Gershon, of the families of the Levites, out of the other half tribe of Manasseh they gave:

- Golan in Bashan with her suburbs (to be a city of refuge for the slayer),
- and Beeshterah with her suburbs;

Two cities. And out of the tribe of Issachar:

- Kishon with her suburbs,
- Dabareh with her suburbs,
- Jarmuth with her suburbs,
- Engannim with her suburbs;

Four cities. And out of the tribe of Asher:

- Mishal with her suburbs,
- Abdon with her suburbs,
- Helkath with her suburbs,
- and Rehob with her suburbs;

Four cities. And out of the tribe of Naphtali:

- Kedesh in Galilee with her suburbs (to be a city of refuge for the slayer),
- and Hammothdor with her suburbs,
- and Kartan with her suburbs;

Three cities. All the cities of the Gershonites according to their families were thirteen cities with their suburbs. And unto the families of the children of Merari, the rest of the Levites, out of the tribe of Zebulun:

- Jokneam with her suburbs,
- and Kartah with her suburbs,
- Dimnah with her suburbs,
- Nahalal with her suburbs;

Four cities. And out of the tribe of Reuben:

- Bezer with her suburbs,
- and Jahazah with her suburbs,
- Kedemoth with her suburbs,
- and Mephaath with her suburbs;

Four cities. And out of the tribe of Gad:

- Ramoth in Gilead with her suburbs (to be a city of refuge for the slayer),
- and Mahanaim with her suburbs,
- Heshbon with her suburbs,
- Jazer with her suburbs;

Four cities in all. So all the cities for the children of Merari by their families, which were remaining of the families of the Levites, were by their lot twelve cities. All the cities of the Levites within the possession of the Children of Israel were forty and eight cities with their suburbs. These cities were, every one, with their suburbs round about them; thus were all these cities. And THE LORD gave unto Israel all the land which He swore to give unto their fathers; and they possessed it, and dwelt therein.

And THE LORD gave them rest round about according to all that He swore unto their fathers. And there stood not a man of all their enemies before them; THE LORD delivered all their enemies into their hand. There failed not ought of any good thing which THE LORD had spoken unto the House of Israel; all came to pass.

Then Joshua called the Reubenites, and the Gadites, and the half tribe of Manasseh, and said unto them, "Ye have kept all that Moses the servant of THE LORD commanded you, and have obeyed my voice in all that I commanded you. Ye have not left your brethren these many days unto this day, but have kept the

charge of the commandment of THE LORD your God. And now THE LORD your God hath given rest unto your brethren as He promised them. Therefore, now, return ye and get you unto your tents, and unto the land of your possession which Moses the servant of THE LORD gave you on the other side Jordan. But take diligent heed to do the Commandment and the Law which Moses the servant of THE LORD charged you - to love THE LORD your God and to walk in all His ways and to keep His commandments and to cleave unto Him, and to serve Him with all your heart and with all your soul."

So Joshua blessed them and sent them away, and they went unto their tents.

Now, to the one half of the tribe of Manasseh Moses had given possession in Bashan, but unto the other half thereof gave Joshua among their brethren on this side Jordan westward. And when Joshua sent them away also unto their tents, then he blessed them and he spake unto them, saying, "Return with much riches unto your tents and with very much cattle, with silver, and with gold, and with brass, and with iron, and with very much raiment; divide the spoil of your enemies with your brethren."

And the children of Reuben and the children of Gad and the half tribe of Manasseh returned and departed from the Children of Israel out of Shiloh, which is in the land of Canaan, to go unto the country of Gilead, to the land of their possession whereof they were possessed according to the Word of THE LORD by the hand of Moses. And when they came unto the borders of Jordan that are in the land of Canaan, the children of Reuben and the children of Gad and the half tribe of Manasseh built there an altar by Jordan, a great altar to see to.

And the Children of Israel heard say, "Behold, the children of Reuben and the children of Gad and the half tribe of Manasseh have built an altar over against the land of Canaan, in the borders of Jordan, at the passage of the Children of Israel!"

And when the Children of Israel heard of it, the whole congregation of the Children of Israel gathered themselves together at Shiloh to go up to war against them. And the Children of Israel <sup>1</sup>sent unto the children of Reuben, and to the children of Gad, and to the half tribe of Manasseh, into the land of Gilead, Phinehas - the son of Eleazar the priest - and with him ten princes of each chief house a prince throughout all the tribes of Israel; and each one was an head of the House of their fathers among the thousands of Israel. *<sup>1</sup>sent word*

And they came unto the children of Reuben, and to the children of Gad, and to the half tribe of Manasseh, unto the land of Gilead, and they spake with them, saying, "Thus saith the whole Congregation of THE LORD: What trespass is this that ye have committed against the God of Israel, to turn away this day from following THE LORD in that ye have builded you an altar that ye might rebel this day against THE LORD?! Is the iniquity of Peor too little for us (from which we are not cleansed until this day although there was a plague in the congregation of THE LORD) but that ye must turn away this day from following THE LORD?! And it will be - seeing ye rebel to day against THE LORD - that to morrow He will be wroth with the whole congregation of Israel! Notwithstanding, if the land of your possession be unclean, then pass ye over unto the land of the possession of THE LORD wherein THE LORD'S tabernacle dwelleth and take possession among us - but rebel not against THE LORD, nor rebel against us, in building you an altar <sup>1</sup>beside the Altar of THE LORD our God! Did not Achan the son of Zerah commit a trespass in the accursed thing and wrath fell on *all* the congregation of Israel? And that man perished not alone in his iniquity!" *<sup>1</sup>in addition to*

Then the children of Reuben and the children of Gad and the half tribe of Manasseh answered, and said unto the heads of the thousands of Israel, "THE LORD God of gods! THE LORD God of gods! <sup>1</sup>He knoweth, and Israel, he *shall* know, if it be in rebellion or if in transgression against THE LORD (save us not this day) that we have built us an altar to turn from following THE LORD, or if to offer thereon burnt offering or meat offering, or if to offer peace offerings thereon - let THE LORD *Himself* require it! And if we have not rather done it for fear of this thing, saying, 'In time to come your children might speak unto our children, saying:

*'What have ye to do with THE LORD God of Israel? For THE LORD hath made Jordan a border between us and you, ye children of Reuben and children of Gad; ye have no part in THE LORD!' So shall your children make our children cease from fearing THE LORD!* *<sup>1</sup>in other words, God knows the truth, and all of Israel will too, as to whether or not we've committed rebellion and sin by erecting this altar – and if we did, may God not save us!*

“Therefore we said, ‘Let us now prepare to build us an altar - not for burnt offering nor for sacrifice - but that it may be a witness between us and you and our generations after us, that we might do the service of THE LORD before Him with our burnt offerings and with our sacrifices and with our peace offerings, that your children may not say to our children in time to come, *‘Ye have no part in THE LORD.’*”

“Therefore said we that, it shall be, when they should so say to us or to our generations in time to come, that we may say again, *‘Behold the pattern of the Altar of THE LORD which our fathers made - not for burnt offerings, nor for sacrifices - but it is a witness between us and you.’*”

“God forbid that we should rebel against THE LORD and turn this day from following THE LORD, to build an altar for burnt offerings for meat offerings or for sacrifices <sup>1</sup>beside the Altar of THE LORD our God that is before His Tabernacle!!” *<sup>1</sup>in addition to*

And when Phinehas the priest, and the princes of the congregation and heads of the thousands of Israel which were with him, heard the words that the children of Reuben and the children of Gad and the children of Manasseh spake, it pleased them.

And Phinehas the son of Eleazar the priest said unto the children of Reuben, and to the children of Gad, and to the children of Manasseh, “This day we perceive that THE LORD is among us, because ye have not committed <sup>1</sup>this trespass against THE LORD! Now ye have delivered the Children of Israel out of <sup>2</sup>the hand of THE LORD!” *<sup>1</sup>the alleged trespass <sup>2</sup>wrath*

And Phinehas the son of Eleazar the priest, and the princes, returned from the children of Reuben, and from the children of Gad, out of the land of Gilead, unto the land of Canaan, to the Children of Israel, and brought them word again. And the thing pleased the Children of Israel; and the Children of Israel blessed God and did not intend to go up against them in battle, to destroy the land wherein the children of Reuben and Gad dwelt. And the children of Reuben and the children of Gad called the altar <sup>1</sup>Ed (for “it shall be a witness between us that THE LORD is God”). *<sup>1</sup>Ayd, meaning Witness*

And it came to pass a long time after that THE LORD had given rest unto Israel from all their enemies round about, that Joshua waxed old and stricken in age.

And Joshua called for all Israel, and for their elders, and for their heads, and for their judges, and for their officers, and said unto them, “I am old and stricken in age: and ye have seen all that THE LORD your God hath done unto all these nations because of you; for THE LORD your God is He that hath fought for you. Behold, I have divided unto you by lot these nations that remain, to be an inheritance for your tribes, from Jordan, with all the nations that I have cut off, even unto the <sup>1</sup>Great Sea westward. *<sup>1</sup>Mediterranean Sea*

“And THE LORD your God, He shall expel them from before you and drive them from out of your sight; and ye shall possess their land as THE LORD your God hath promised unto you. Be ye therefore very courageous to keep and to do all that is written in the Book of the Law of Moses, that ye turn not aside therefrom to the right hand or to the left, that ye come not among these nations (these that remain among you), neither make mention of the name of their gods, nor cause to swear by them, neither serve them, nor bow yourselves unto them, but cleave unto THE LORD your God as ye have done unto this day. For THE LORD hath driven out from before you great nations and strong; but as for you, no man hath been able to stand before you unto this day. <sup>1</sup>One man of you shall chase a thousand; for, THE LORD your God - He it is that fighteth for you, as He hath promised you.

*<sup>1</sup>NOTE: There is no punctuation in biblical Hebrew, and therefore this statement can also be written as, “One man of you shall chase a thousand for the Lord your God; He it is that fighteth for you, as He promised you.”*

“Take good heed, therefore, unto yourselves, that ye love THE LORD your God. Else, if ye do in any wise go back and cleave unto the remnant of these nations (even these that remain among you) and shall

make marriages with them and <sup>1</sup>go in unto them and they to you, know for a certainty that THE LORD your God will no more drive out any of these nations from before you, but they shall be snares and traps unto you and scourges in your sides and thorns in your eyes until ye perish from off this good land which THE LORD your God hath given you. *<sup>1</sup>marry with/have sex with*

“And, behold, this day I am <sup>1</sup>going the way of all the earth; and ye know in all your hearts and in all your souls that not one thing hath failed of all the good things which THE LORD your God spake concerning you; all are come to pass unto you and not one thing hath failed thereof. Therefore it shall come to pass that, as all good things are come upon you which THE LORD your God promised you, so shall THE LORD bring upon you all evil things until He have destroyed you from off this good land which THE LORD your God hath given you. When ye have transgressed the Covenant of THE LORD your God which He commanded you and have gone and served other gods and bowed yourselves to them, then shall the anger of THE LORD be kindled against you and ye shall perish quickly from off the good land which He hath given unto you.” *<sup>1</sup>dying*

And Joshua gathered all the tribes of Israel to Shechem, and called for the elders of Israel, and for their heads, and for their judges, and for their officers; and they presented themselves before God.

And Joshua said unto all the people, “Thus saith THE LORD God of Israel: Your fathers dwelt <sup>1</sup>on the other side of the Flood in old time - even Terah, the father of Abraham and the father of Nachor - and they served other gods. And I took your father Abraham from <sup>1</sup>the other side of the Flood and led him throughout all the land of Canaan, and multiplied his seed, and gave him Isaac.

*<sup>1</sup>after Noah's flood occurred (though some insist that this refers to the Nile or even the Euphrates when it floods its banks)*

“And <sup>1</sup>I gave unto Isaac Jacob and Esau. And I gave unto Esau Mount Seir, to possess it; but Jacob and his children went down into Egypt. *<sup>1</sup>I gave Jacob and Esau unto Isaac*

“<sup>1</sup>I sent Moses also and Aaron, and I plagued Egypt according to that which I did among them, and afterward I brought you out!

“And I brought your fathers out of Egypt and ye came unto the sea; and the Egyptians pursued after your fathers with chariots and horsemen unto the Red Sea. And when they cried unto THE LORD, He put darkness between you and the Egyptians and brought the sea upon them and covered them, and your eyes have seen what I have done in Egypt, and ye dwelt in the wilderness a long season.

“And I brought you into the land of the Amorites which dwelt on the other side Jordan; and they fought with you and I gave them into your hand that ye might possess their land, and I destroyed them from before you!

“Then Balak the son of Zippor, king of Moab, arose and warred against Israel and sent and called Balaam the son of Beor to curse you; but I would not hearken unto Balaam - therefore he blessed you still, <sup>1</sup>so I delivered you out of his hand! *<sup>1</sup>and in this way/by this method/like so*

“And ye went over Jordan and came unto Jericho. And the men of Jericho fought against you - the Amorites, and the Perizzites, and the Canaanites, and the Hittites, and the Girgashites, the Hivites, and the Jebusites - and I delivered them into your hand!

“And I sent the hornet before you which drove them out from before you, even the two kings of the Amorites - but not with thy sword, nor with thy bow!

“And I have given you a land for which ye did not labour, and cities which ye built not, and ye dwell in them; of the vineyards and oliveyards, which ye planted not, do ye eat.

“Now therefore fear THE LORD and serve Him in sincerity and in truth and put away the gods which your fathers served on the other side of the <sup>1</sup>Flood and in Egypt; and serve ye THE LORD. And if it seem evil unto you to serve THE LORD, choose you this day whom ye will serve - whether the gods which your fathers served that were on the other side of the <sup>1</sup>Flood, or the gods of the Amorites in whose land ye dwell - but as for me and my house, we will serve THE LORD!” *<sup>1</sup>a reference to either Noah's flood or to the flood plains of Euphrates*

And the people answered and said, “God forbid that we should forsake THE LORD to serve other gods! For THE LORD our God - *He* it is that brought us up and our fathers out of the land of Egypt, from the house of bondage, and which did those great signs in our sight and preserved us in all the way wherein we went and

among all the people through whom we passed; and THE LORD drove out from before us all the people, even the Amorites which dwelt in the land; therefore will we also serve THE LORD, for He is our God!”

And Joshua said unto the people, “Ye cannot serve THE LORD, for He is an holy God, He is a jealous God, He will not forgive your transgressions nor your sins; if ye forsake THE LORD and serve strange gods, then He will turn and do you hurt and consume you after that He hath done you good!”

And the people said unto Joshua, “Nay! But we *will* serve THE LORD!”

And Joshua said unto the people, “Ye are witnesses against yourselves that ye have chosen you THE LORD, to serve him!”

And they said, “We are witnesses!”

“Now therefore put away,” said he, “the strange gods which are among you and incline your heart unto THE LORD God of Israel!”

And the people said unto Joshua, “THE LORD our God will we serve, and *His* voice will we obey!”

So Joshua made a covenant with the people that day and set them a statute and an ordinance in Shechem. And Joshua wrote these words in the Book of the Law of God, and took a great stone and set it up there under an oak that was by the Sanctuary of THE LORD.

And Joshua said unto all the people, “Behold, this stone shall be a witness unto us; for <sup>1</sup>it hath heard all the Words of THE LORD which He spake unto us. It shall be therefore a witness unto you, lest ye deny your God!”

*NOTE: It is possible that it was to this statement that Jesus referred when He said that, if the people cease to praise Him, the rocks would cry out; for the rocks heard their oath to serve Him and would testify against them.*

So Joshua let the people depart, every man unto his inheritance. And it came to pass after these things that Joshua the son of Nun, the servant of THE LORD, died, being an hundred and ten years old. And they buried him in the border of his inheritance in Timnathserah, which is in Mount Ephraim, on the north side of the hill of Gaash. And Israel served THE LORD all the days of Joshua and all the days of the elders that overlived Joshua and which had known all the works of THE LORD that He had done for Israel.

And the bones of Joseph, which the Children of Israel brought up out of Egypt, buried they in Shechem in a parcel of ground which Jacob bought of the sons of Hamor (the father of Shechem) for an hundred pieces of silver; and it became the inheritance of the children of Joseph.

And Eleazar the son of Aaron died; and they buried him in a hill that pertained to Phinehas his son, which was given him in Mount Ephraim.

Now after the death of Joshua it came to pass that the children of Israel asked the LORD, saying, “Who shall go up for us against the Canaanites first, to fight against them?”

And the LORD said, “Judah shall go up - behold, I have delivered the land into his hand.”

And Judah said unto Simeon his brother, “Come up with me into my lot that we may fight against the Canaanites; and I likewise will go with thee into thy lot.”

So Simeon went with him. And Judah went up and the LORD delivered the Canaanites and the Perizzites into their hand, and they slew of them in Bezek ten thousand men. And they found Adonibezek in Bezek,

and they fought against him, and they slew the Canaanites and the Perizzites. But Adonibezek fled; and they pursued after him, and caught him, and cut off his thumbs and his great toes.

And Adonibezek said, “<sup>1</sup>Threescore and ten kings, having their thumbs and their great toes cut off, gathered their meat under my table; as I have done, so God hath requited me.” <sup>170</sup>

And they brought him to Jerusalem, and there he died.

Now the children of Judah had fought against Jerusalem and had taken it and smitten it with the edge of the sword and set the city on fire. And afterward the children of Judah went down to fight against the Canaanites that dwelt in the mountain and in the south and in the valley. And Judah went against the Canaanites that dwelt in Hebron (now, the name of Hebron before was Kirjath-Arba); and they slew Sheshai, and Ahiman, and Talmi. And from thence he went against the inhabitants of Debir (and the name of Debir before was Kirjath-Sepher).

And Caleb said, “He that smiteth Kirjath-Sepher and taketh it, to him will I give Achsah my daughter to wife.”

And Othniel the son of Kenaz, Caleb's younger brother, took it; and he gave him Achsah his daughter to wife. And it came to pass, when she came to him, that she moved him to ask of her father a field; and she lighted from off her ass.

And Caleb said unto her, “What wilt thou?”

And she said unto him, “Give me a blessing, for thou hast given me a south land; give me also springs of water.”

And Caleb gave her the upper springs and the nether springs.

And the children of the Kenite, Moses' father-in-law, went up out of the City of Palm Trees with the children of Judah into the Wilderness of Judah which lieth in the south of Arad; and they went and dwelt among the people. And Judah went with Simeon his brother, and they slew the Canaanites that inhabited Zephath and utterly destroyed it. And the name of the city was called Hormah.

Also Judah took Gaza with the coast thereof, and Askelon with the coast thereof, and Ekron with the coast thereof. And the LORD was with Judah; and he drave out the inhabitants of the mountain, but could not drive out the inhabitants of the valley because they had chariots of iron. And they gave Hebron unto Caleb, as Moses said; and he expelled thence the three sons of Anak.

And the children of Benjamin did not drive out the Jebusites that inhabited Jerusalem; but the Jebusites dwell with the children of Benjamin in Jerusalem unto this day.

And the House of Joseph, they also went up against Bethel: and the LORD was with them. And the House of Joseph sent to <sup>1</sup>descry Bethel (now, the name of the city before was Luz). <sup>1</sup>spy upon

And the spies saw a man come forth out of the city, and they said unto him, “Show us, we pray thee, the entrance into the city and we will show thee mercy.”

And when he showed them the entrance into the city, they smote the city with the edge of the sword; but they let go the man and all his family. And the man went into the land of the Hittites, and built a city, and called the name thereof Luz, which is the name thereof unto this day.

Neither did Manasseh drive out the inhabitants of Bethshean and her towns, nor Taanach and her towns, nor the inhabitants of Dor and her towns, nor the inhabitants of Ibleam and her towns, nor the inhabitants of Megiddo and her towns, but the Canaanites would dwell in that land.

And it came to pass, when Israel was strong, that they put the Canaanites to tribute and did not utterly drive them out.

Neither did Ephraim drive out the Canaanites that dwelt in Gezer; but the Canaanites dwelt in Gezer among them.

Neither did Zebulun drive out the inhabitants of Kitron, nor the inhabitants of Nahalol; but the Canaanites dwelt among them, and became tributaries.

Neither did Asher drive out the inhabitants of Accho, nor the inhabitants of Zidon, nor of Ahlab, nor of Achzib, nor of Helbah, nor of Aphik, nor of Rehob; but the Asherites dwelt among the Canaanites, the inhabitants of the land, for they did not drive them out.

Neither did Naphtali drive out the inhabitants of Bethshemesh, nor the inhabitants of Bethanath; but he dwelt among the Canaanites, the inhabitants of the land. Nevertheless the inhabitants of Bethshemesh and of Bethanath became tributaries unto them.

And the Amorites forced the children of Dan into the mountain, for they would not suffer them to come down to the valley; but the Amorites would dwell in Mount Heres in Aijalon and in Shaalbim. Yet the hand of the House of Joseph prevailed so that they became tributaries. And the coast of the Amorites was from the going up to Akrabbim, from the rock and upward.

And an angel of the LORD came up from Gilgal to Bochim, and <sup>1</sup>said, "I made you to go up out of Egypt and have brought you unto the land which I swore unto your fathers; and I said, '*I will never break My Covenant with you. And ye shall make no league with the inhabitants of this land; ye shall throw down their altars.*' But ye have not obeyed My voice. Why have ye done this? <sup>2</sup>Wherefore I also said, '*I will not drive them out from before you; but they shall be as thorns in your sides and their gods shall be a snare unto you.*'"

<sup>1</sup>delivered the following message from The Lord <sup>2</sup>for this reason

And it came to pass, when the angel of the LORD spake these words unto all the children of Israel, that the people lifted up their voice and wept. And they called the name of that place <sup>1</sup>Bochim; and they sacrificed there unto the LORD.

<sup>1</sup>Weepers

And when Joshua had let the people go, the children of Israel went every man unto his inheritance to possess the land. And the people served the LORD all the days of Joshua, and all the days of the elders that outlived Joshua, who had seen all the great works of the LORD that He did for Israel. And Joshua, the son of Nun, the servant of the LORD, died, being an hundred and ten years old. And they buried him in the border of his inheritance in Timnathheres, in the mount of Ephraim, on the north side of the hill Gaash. And also all that generation were gathered unto their fathers.

And there arose another generation after them which knew not the LORD nor yet the works which He had done for Israel. And the children of Israel did evil in the sight of the LORD, and served Baalim; and they forsook the LORD God of their fathers which brought them out of the land of Egypt and followed other gods, of the gods of the people that were round about them, and bowed themselves unto them, and provoked the LORD to anger. And they forsook the LORD and served <sup>1</sup>Baal and Ashtaroth.

<sup>1</sup>the fertility idols also called Hadad and Atargatis/Astarte (the original mermaid goddess who took male genitals as a sacrifice) modeled after Nimrod and Semiramis, the founders of Babylon

And the anger of the LORD was hot against Israel, and He delivered them into the hands of spoilers that spoiled them, and He sold them into the hands of their enemies round about so that they could not any longer stand before their enemies.

Whithersoever they went out, the hand of the LORD was against them for evil, as the LORD had said, and as the LORD had sworn unto them; and they were greatly distressed. Nevertheless the LORD raised up judges which delivered them out of the hand of those that spoiled them. And yet they would not hearken unto their judges, but they went a whoring after other gods and bowed themselves unto them; they turned quickly out of the way which their fathers walked in obeying the commandments of the LORD; but they did not so.

And when the LORD raised them up judges, then the LORD was with the judge, and delivered them out of the hand of their enemies all the days of the judge, for it repented the LORD because of their groanings by reason of them that oppressed them and vexed them.

And it came to pass, when the judge was dead, that they returned and corrupted themselves more than their fathers in following other gods to serve them and to bow down unto them; they ceased not from their own doings, nor from their stubborn way.

And the anger of the LORD was hot against Israel; and He said, "Because that this people hath transgressed My Covenant which I commanded their fathers and have not hearkened unto My voice, I also will not henceforth drive out any from before them of the nations which Joshua left when he died, that through them I may prove Israel, whether they will keep the Way of the LORD to walk therein as their fathers did keep it, or not."

Therefore the LORD left those nations without driving them out hastily; neither delivered He them into the hand of Joshua.

Now these are the nations which the LORD left, to prove Israel by them, even as many of Israel as had not known all the wars of Canaan; only that the generations of the children of Israel might know, to teach them war, at the least such as before knew nothing thereof - namely, five lords of the Philistines, and all the Canaanites, and the Sidonians, and the Hivites that dwelt in Mount Lebanon, from Mount Baalhermon unto the entering in of Hamath. And they were to prove Israel by them, to know whether they would hearken unto the commandments of the LORD which He commanded their fathers by the hand of Moses.

And the children of Israel dwelt among the Canaanites, Hittites, and Amorites, and Perizzites, and Hivites, and Jebusites, and they took their daughters to be their wives, and gave their daughters to their sons, and served their gods. And the children of Israel did evil in the sight of the LORD, and forgot the LORD their God, and served Baalim and the <sup>1</sup>groves. *<sup>1</sup>images of fertility goddesses*

Therefore the anger of the LORD was hot against Israel, and He sold them into the hand of Chushanrishathaim king of Mesopotamia; and the children of Israel served Chushanrishathaim eight years.

And when the children of Israel cried unto the LORD, the LORD raised up a deliverer to the children of Israel, who delivered them - even Othniel the son of Kenaz, Caleb's younger brother. And the spirit of the LORD came upon him, and he judged Israel, and went out to war; and the LORD delivered Chushanrishathaim king of Mesopotamia into his hand, and his hand prevailed against Chushanrishathaim. And the land had rest forty years. And Othniel the son of Kenaz died.

And the children of Israel did evil again in the sight of the LORD, and the LORD strengthened Eglon the king of Moab against Israel, because they had done evil in the sight of the LORD. And he gathered unto him the

children of Ammon and Amalek, and went and smote Israel, and possessed the City of Palm Trees. So the children of Israel served Eglon the king of Moab eighteen years.

But when the children of Israel cried unto the LORD, the LORD raised them up a deliverer - Ehud the son of Gera, a Benjamite, a man lefthanded; and by him the children of Israel sent a present unto Eglon the king of Moab. But Ehud made him a dagger which had two edges, of <sup>1</sup>a cubit length; and he did gird it under his raiment upon his right thigh. And he brought the present unto Eglon king of Moab (and Eglon was a very fat man), and when he had made an end to offer the present, he sent away the people that bare the present. But he himself turned again from the quarries that were by Gilgal, and said, "I have a secret errand unto thee, O king", who said, "Keep silence." And all that stood by him went out from him. And Ehud came unto him; and he was sitting in a summer parlour, which he had for himself alone. <sup>1</sup>about 18 inches long

And Ehud said, "I have a message from God unto thee."

And he arose out of his seat. And Ehud put forth his left hand, and took the dagger from his right thigh, and thrust it into his belly, and the <sup>1</sup>haft also went in after the blade; and the fat closed upon the blade so that he could not draw the dagger out of his belly; and the <sup>2</sup>dirt came out. <sup>1</sup>hilt <sup>2</sup>excrement

Then Ehud went forth through the porch and shut the doors of the parlour upon him and locked them. When he was gone out, his servants came; and when they saw that, behold, the doors of the parlour were locked, they said, "Surely he <sup>1</sup>covereth his feet in his summer chamber."

<sup>1</sup>is using the toilet (as when you drop your pants or skirt down to your feet to use the toilet)

And they tarried till they were ashamed; and, behold, he opened not the doors of the parlour. Therefore they took a key and opened them; and, behold, their lord was fallen down dead on the earth.

And Ehud escaped while they tarried, and passed beyond the quarries and escaped unto Seirath. And it came to pass, when he was come, that he blew a trumpet in the mountain of Ephraim, and the children of Israel went down with him from the mount, and he before them.

And he said unto them, "Follow after me! For the LORD hath delivered your enemies, the Moabites, into your hand!"

And they went down after him and took the fords of Jordan toward Moab, and suffered not a man to pass over. And they slew of Moab at that time about ten thousand men, all lusty, and all men of valour; and there escaped not a man. So Moab was subdued that day under the hand of Israel. And the land had rest <sup>1</sup>fourscore years. <sup>1</sup>80

And after him was Shamgar, the son of Anath, which slew of the Philistines six hundred men with an <sup>1</sup>ox goad; and he also delivered Israel. <sup>1</sup>animal prod

And the children of Israel again did evil in the sight of the LORD when Ehud was dead. And the LORD sold them into the hand of Jabin, king of Canaan, that reigned in Hazor - the captain of whose host was Sisera, which dwelt in Harosheth of the Gentiles.

And the children of Israel cried unto the LORD, for he had nine hundred chariots of iron and twenty years he mightily oppressed the children of Israel.

And Deborah, a prophetess, the wife of Lapidoth, she judged Israel at that time. And she dwelt under the Palm Tree of Deborah between Ramah and Bethel in Mount Ephraim; and the children of Israel came up to her for judgment.

And she sent and called Barak, the son of Abinoam, out of Kedeshnaphtali, and said unto him, "Hath not the LORD God of Israel commanded, saying, 'Go and draw toward Mount Tabor, and take with thee ten thousand men of the children of Naphtali and of the children of Zebulun, and I will draw unto thee, to the River Kishon, Sisera - the captain of Jabin's army, with his chariots and his multitude; and I will deliver him into thine hand'?"

And Barak said unto her, "If thou wilt go with me, then I will go; but if thou wilt not go with me, then I will not go."

And she said, "I will surely go with thee. Notwithstanding, the journey that thou takest shall not be for thine honour; for the LORD shall sell Sisera into the hand of a woman."

And Deborah arose and went with Barak to Kedesh. And Barak called Zebulun and Naphtali to Kedesh; and he went up with ten thousand men at his feet, and Deborah went up with him.

Now, Heber the Kenite (which was of the children of <sup>1</sup>Hobab the father-in-law of Moses) had <sup>2</sup>severed himself from the Kenites, and pitched his tent unto the plain of Zaanaim, which is by Kedesh.

<sup>1</sup>meaning "Cherished one" - it is either another name for Jethro Reuel the father of Moses' first wife Zipporah, or the name of the father of Moses' Ethiopian second wife. <sup>2</sup>separated.

And they <sup>1</sup>showed Sisera that Barak the son of Abinoam was gone up to Mount Tabor. And Sisera gathered together all his chariots, even nine hundred chariots of iron, and all the people that were with him, from Harosheth of the Gentiles unto the river of Kishon. <sup>1</sup>told/informed (possibly showed him Barak's location on a map)

And Deborah said unto Barak, "Up! For this is the day in which the LORD hath delivered Sisera into thine hand! Is not the LORD gone out before thee?"

So Barak went down from Mount Tabor, and ten thousand men after him. And the LORD discomfited Sisera and all his chariots and all his host with the edge of the sword before Barak, so that Sisera lighted down off his chariot and fled away on his feet. But Barak pursued after the chariots and after the host unto Harosheth of the Gentiles, and all the host of Sisera fell upon the edge of the sword; and there was not a man left.

Howbeit Sisera fled away on his feet to the tent of Jael (the wife of Heber the Kenite), for there was peace between Jabin the king of Hazor and the House of Heber the Kenite.

And Jael went out to meet Sisera, and said unto him, "Turn in, my lord, turn in to me; fear not!"

And when he had turned in unto her into the tent, she covered him with a mantle.

And he said unto her, "Give me, I pray thee, a little water to drink; for I am thirsty."

And she opened a bottle of milk, and gave him drink, and covered him.

Again he said unto her, "Stand in the door of the tent; and it shall be, when any man doth come and inquire of thee and say, 'Is there any man here?' that thou shalt say, 'No.'"

Then Jael, Heber's wife, took a <sup>1</sup>nail of the tent and took an hammer in her hand, and went softly unto him and smote the nail into his temples and fastened it into the ground (for he was fast asleep and weary). So he died. <sup>1</sup>tent stake

And, behold, as Barak pursued Sisera, Jael came out to meet him and said unto him, "Come, and I will show thee the man whom thou seekest."

And when he came into her tent, behold, Sisera lay dead, and the nail was in his temples. So God subdued on that day Jabin the king of Canaan before the children of Israel. And the hand of the children of Israel prospered and prevailed against Jabin the king of Canaan, until they had destroyed Jabin king of Canaan.

Then sang Deborah and Barak the son of Abinoam on that day, saying,

"Praise ye the LORD for the avenging of Israel when the people willingly offered themselves.

Hear, O ye kings! Give ear, O ye princes!

I, even I, will sing unto the LORD; I will sing praise to the LORD God of Israel.

LORD, when Thou wentest out of Seir, when Thou marchedst out of the field of Edom,

the earth trembled, and the heavens dropped, the clouds also dropped water.

The mountains melted from before the LORD, even that Sinai from before the LORD God of Israel.

In the days of Shamgar the son of Anath, in the days of Jael,

the highways were unoccupied, and the travellers walked through byways.

The inhabitants of the villages ceased, they ceased in Israel;

until that I, Deborah, arose, that I arose a mother in Israel.

They chose new gods; then was war in the gates!

Was there a shield or spear seen among forty thousand in Israel?

My heart is toward the governors of Israel that offered themselves willingly among the people.

Bless ye the LORD!

Speak, ye that ride on white asses, ye that sit in judgment, and walk by the way!

They that are delivered from the noise of archers in the places of drawing water,

there shall they rehearse the righteous acts of the LORD,

even the righteous acts toward the inhabitants of His villages in Israel!

Then shall the people of the LORD go down to the gates.

Awake, awake, Deborah! Awake, awake, utter a song!

Arise, Barak, and lead thy captivity captive, thou son of Abinoam!

Then he made him that remaineth have dominion over the nobles among the people.

The LORD made me have dominion over the mighty.

Out of Ephraim was there a root of them against Amalek; after thee, Benjamin, among thy people.

Out of Machir came down governors, and out of Zebulun they that handle the pen of the writer.

And the princes of Issachar were with Deborah - even Issachar, and also Barak.

He was sent on foot into the valley.

For the divisions of Reuben there were great thoughts of heart.

Why abodest thou among the sheepfolds, to hear the bleatings of the flocks?

For the divisions of Reuben, there were great searchings of heart.

Gilead abode beyond Jordan; and why did Dan remain in ships?

Asher continued on the sea shore and abode in his breaches.

Zebulun and Naphtali were a people that jeopardized their lives unto the death in the high places of the field.

The kings came and fought; then fought the kings of Canaan in Taanach by the waters of Megiddo.

They took no gain of money. They fought from heaven; the stars in their courses fought against Sisera.

The river of Kishon swept them away, that ancient river, the river Kishon.

O my soul, thou hast trodden down strength.

Then were the horsehoofs broken by the means of the prancings, the prancings of their mighty ones.

Curse ye Meroz, said the angel of the LORD, curse ye bitterly the inhabitants thereof!

Because they came not to the help of the LORD, to the help of the LORD against the mighty.

Blessed above women shall Jael the wife of Heber the Kenite be!

Blessed shall she be above women in the tent.

He asked water, and she gave him milk; she brought forth butter in a lordly dish.

She put her hand to the nail, and her right hand to the workmen's hammer,

and with the hammer she smote Sisera!  
 She smote off his head when she had pierced and stricken through his temples.  
 At her feet he bowed, he fell, he lay down; at her feet he bowed, he fell.  
 Where he bowed, there he fell down dead.  
 The mother of Sisera looked out at a window and cried through the lattice,  
*'Why is his chariot so long in coming? Why tarry the wheels of his chariots?'*  
 Her wise ladies answered her, yea, she returned answer to herself,  
*'Have they not sped? Have they not divided the prey; to every man a damsel or two;  
 to Sisera a prey of divers colours, a prey of divers colours of needlework,  
 of divers colours of needlework on both sides, meet for the necks of them that take the spoil?'*  
 So let all Thine enemies perish, O LORD!  
 But let them that love Him be as the sun when he goeth forth in his might!"

And the land had rest forty years. And the children of Israel did evil in the sight of the LORD, and the LORD delivered them into the hand of Midian seven years, and the hand of Midian prevailed against Israel. And because of the Midianites the children of Israel made them the dens which are in the mountains, and caves, and strong holds. And so it was, when Israel had sown, that the Midianites came up, and the Amalekites, and the children of the east, even they came up against them. And they encamped against them and destroyed the increase of the earth, till thou come unto Gaza, and left no sustenance for Israel, neither sheep, nor ox, nor ass. For they came up with their cattle and their tents, and they came as grasshoppers for multitude; for both they and their camels were without number, and they entered into the land to destroy it.

And Israel was greatly impoverished because of the Midianites; and the children of Israel cried unto the LORD. And it came to pass, when the children of Israel cried unto the LORD because of the Midianites, that the LORD sent a prophet unto the children of Israel, which said unto them, "Thus saith the LORD God of Israel: I brought you up from Egypt, and brought you forth out of the house of bondage; and I delivered you out of the hand of the Egyptians, and out of the hand of all that oppressed you, and drave them out from before you, and gave you their land. And I said unto you, *'I am the LORD your God; fear not the gods of the Amorites, in whose land ye dwell'*; but ye have not obeyed My voice!"

And there came an angel of the LORD and sat under an oak which was in Ophrah that pertained unto Joash the Abiezrite; and his son Gideon threshed wheat by the winepress, to hide it from the Midianites.

And the angel of the LORD appeared unto him, and said unto him, "The LORD is with thee, thou mighty man of valour!"

And Gideon said unto him, "Oh my Lord, if the LORD be with us, why then is all this befallen us? And where be all His miracles which our fathers told us of, saying, *'Did not the LORD bring us up from Egypt?'* But now the LORD hath forsaken us and delivered us into the hands of the Midianites!"

And the LORD looked upon him and said, "Go in this thy might, and thou shalt save Israel from the hand of the Midianites; have not I sent thee?"

And he said unto him, "Oh my Lord, wherewith shall I save Israel? Behold, my family is poor in Manasseh, and I am the least in my father's House."

And the LORD said unto him, "Surely I will be with thee, and thou shalt smite the Midianites as one man."

And he said unto him, "If now I have found grace in Thy sight, then show me a sign that <sup>1</sup>Thou talkest with me. Depart not hence, I pray thee, until I come unto Thee and bring forth my present and set it before Thee."

*<sup>1</sup>that it really is You*

And He said, "I will tarry until thou come again."

And Gideon went in and made ready a kid and unleavened cakes of an ephah of flour; the flesh he put in a basket, and he put the broth in a pot, and brought it out unto Him under the oak and presented it.

And the angel of God said unto him, "Take the flesh and the unleavened cakes and lay them upon this rock, and pour out the broth."

And he did so. Then the angel of the LORD put forth the end of the staff that was in his hand and touched the flesh and the unleavened cakes; and there rose up fire out of the rock and consumed the flesh and the unleavened cakes. Then the angel of the LORD departed out of his sight. And when Gideon perceived that he was an angel of the LORD, Gideon said, "Alas, O Lord GOD! For because I have seen an angel of the LORD face to face!"

And the LORD said unto him, "Peace be unto thee! Fear not! Thou shalt not die."

Then Gideon built an altar there unto the LORD and called it <sup>1</sup>Jehovah-Shalom; unto this day it is yet in Ophrah of the Abiezrites.

*<sup>1</sup>Jehovah is Peace*

And it came to pass the same night that the LORD said unto him, "Take thy father's young bullock, even the second bullock of seven years old, and throw down the altar of Baal that thy father hath, and cut down the grove that is by it and build an altar unto the LORD thy God upon the top of this rock, in the ordered place; and take the second bullock and offer a burnt sacrifice with the wood of the grove which thou shalt cut down."

Then Gideon took ten men of his servants and did as the LORD had said unto him; and so it was (because he feared his father's household and the men of the city, that he could not do it by day) that he did it by night. And when the men of the city arose early in the morning, behold, the altar of Baal was cast down and the grove was cut down that was by it, and the second bullock was offered upon the altar that was built.

And they said one to another, "Who hath done this thing?!"

And when they inquired and asked, they said, "Gideon the son of Joash hath done this thing!"

Then the men of the city said unto Joash, "Bring out thy son that he may die, because he hath cast down the altar of Baal, and because he hath cut down the grove that was by it!"

And Joash said unto all that stood against him, "Will ye plead for Baal? Will ye save him? He that will plead for him, let him be put to death whilst it is yet morning! If he be a god, let him plead for *himself* because one hath cast down his altar!"

Therefore on that day he called <sup>1</sup>him Jerubbaal, saying, "Let Baal plead against him, because he hath thrown down his altar."

*<sup>1</sup>Gideon*

Then all the Midianites and the Amalekites and the children of the east were gathered together, and went over, and pitched in the valley of Jezreel. But the spirit of the LORD came upon Gideon, and he blew a trumpet; and Abiezer was gathered after him.

And he sent messengers throughout all Manasseh who also was gathered after him; and he sent messengers unto Asher, and unto Zebulun, and unto Naphtali; and they came up to meet them.

And Gideon said unto God, "If thou wilt save Israel by mine hand (as Thou hast said), behold, I will put a fleece of wool in the floor; and if the dew be on the fleece only and it be dry upon all the earth beside, then shall I know that Thou wilt save Israel by mine hand as Thou hast said."

And it was so; for he rose up early on the morrow, and thrust the fleece together and wringed the dew out of the fleece - a bowl full of water.

And Gideon said unto God, "Let not Thine anger be hot against me and I will speak but this once. Let me prove, I pray Thee, but this once with the fleece; let it now be dry only upon the fleece, and upon all the ground let there be dew."

And God did so that night; for it was dry upon the fleece only, and there was dew on all the ground. Then Jerubbaal (who is Gideon), and all the people that were with him, rose up early and pitched beside the well of Harod so that the host of the Midianites were on the north side of them by the hill of Moreh in the valley.

And the LORD said unto Gideon, "The people that are with thee are too many for Me to give the Midianites into their hands, lest Israel vaunt themselves against Me, saying, '*Mine own hand hath saved me.*' Now therefore go to, proclaim in the ears of the people, saying: Whosoever is fearful and afraid, let him return and depart early from Mount Gilead."

And there returned of the people twenty and two thousand; and there remained ten thousand.

And the LORD said unto Gideon, "The people are yet too many; bring them down unto the water, and I will try them for thee there. And it shall be that, of whom I say unto thee, '*This shall go with thee*', the same shall go with thee; and of whomsoever I say unto thee, '*This shall not go with thee*', the same shall not go."

So he brought down the people unto the water. And the LORD said unto Gideon, "Every one that lappeth of the water with his tongue, as a dog lappeth, him shalt thou set by himself; likewise every one that boweth down upon his knees to drink."

And the number of them that lapped, putting their hand to their mouth, were three hundred men; but all the rest of the people bowed down upon their knees to drink water.

And the LORD said unto Gideon, "By the three hundred men that lapped will I save you and deliver the Midianites into thine hand; and let all the other people go, every man, unto his place."

So the people took victuals in their hand and their trumpets, and he sent all the rest of Israel, every man, unto his tent, and retained those three hundred men; and the host of Midian was beneath him in the valley.

And it came to pass the same night that the LORD said unto him, "Arise, get thee down unto the host; for I have delivered it into thine hand! But if thou fear to go down, go thou with Phurah thy servant down to the host and thou shalt hear what they say; and afterward shall thine hands be strengthened to go down unto the host."

Then went he down with Phurah his servant unto the outside of the armed men that were in the host. And the Midianites and the Amalekites and all the children of the east lay along in the valley like grasshoppers for multitude; and their camels were without number, as the sand by the sea side for multitude.

And when Gideon was come, behold, there was a man that told a dream unto his fellow, and said, "Behold, I dreamed a dream, and, lo, a cake of barley bread tumbled into the host of Midian, and came unto a tent, and smote it that it fell, and overturned it, that the tent lay along."

And his fellow answered and said, "This is nothing else save the sword of Gideon the son of Joash, a man of Israel! For into his hand hath God delivered Midian, and all the host!"

And it was so, when Gideon heard the telling of the dream and the interpretation thereof, that he worshipped, and returned into the host of Israel, and said, "Arise; for the LORD hath delivered into your hand the host of Midian!"

And he divided the three hundred men into three companies, and he put a trumpet in every man's hand, with empty pitchers, and lamps within the pitchers.

And he said unto them, "Look on me and do likewise; and, behold, when I come to the outside of the camp, it shall be that, as I do, so shall ye do. When I blow with a trumpet (I and all that are with me), then blow ye the trumpets also on every side of all the camp, and say, "The sword of the LORD, and of Gideon!"

So Gideon and the hundred men that were with him came unto the outside of the camp in the beginning of the middle watch (and they had but newly set the watch), and they blew the trumpets and brake the pitchers that were in their hands.

And the three companies blew the trumpets and brake the pitchers and held the lamps in their left hands, and the trumpets in their right hands to blow withal: and they cried, "The sword of the LORD, and of Gideon!"

And they stood every man in his place round about the camp, and all the host ran and cried and fled. And the three hundred blew the trumpets, and the LORD set every man's sword against his fellow, even throughout all the host; and the host fled to Bethshittah in Zererath, and to the border of Abelmeholah, unto Tabbath.

And the men of Israel gathered themselves together out of Naphtali and out of Asher and out of all Manasseh, and pursued after the Midianites.

And Gideon sent messengers throughout all Mount Ephraim, saying, "Come down against the Midianites, and <sup>1</sup>take before them the waters unto Bethbarah and Jordan!" *<sup>1</sup>i.e. follow the river*

Then all the men of Ephraim gathered themselves together and took the waters unto Bethbarah and Jordan. And they took two princes of the Midianites, Oreb and Zeeb; and they slew Oreb upon the rock *Oreb*, and Zeeb they slew at the Winepress of Zeeb, and pursued Midian, and brought the <sup>1</sup>heads of Oreb and Zeeb to Gideon on the other side Jordan. *<sup>1</sup>leaders/rulers*

And the men of Ephraim said unto <sup>1</sup>him, "Why hast thou <sup>2</sup>served us thus, that thou calledst us not when thou wentest to fight with the Midianites?!" *<sup>1</sup>Gideon <sup>2</sup>treated us this way*

And they did chide with him sharply.

And he said unto them, "What have I done now in comparison of you? Is not the gleaning of the grapes of Ephraim better than the vintage of Abiezer? God hath delivered into your hands the princes of Midian, Oreb and Zeeb; and what was I able to do in comparison of you?!"

Then their anger was <sup>1</sup>abated toward him when he had said that. And Gideon came to Jordan and passed over, he, and the three hundred men that were with him, faint, yet pursuing them. *<sup>1</sup>withdrawn*

And he said unto the men of Succoth, "Give, I pray you, loaves of bread unto the people that follow me; for they be faint, and I am pursuing after Zebah and Zalmunna, kings of Midian."

And the princes of Succoth said, "Are the hands of Zebah and Zalmunna now in thine hand, that we should give bread unto thine army?"

And Gideon said, "Therefore, when the LORD hath delivered Zebah and Zalmunna into mine hand, then I will tear your flesh with the thorns of the wilderness and with briers!"

*'in other words, "Fine! Since you don't want to help us..."*

And he went up thence to Penuel and spake unto them likewise; and the men of Penuel answered him as the men of Succoth had answered him.

And he spake also unto the men of Penuel, saying, "When I come again in peace, I will break down this tower!"

Now Zebah and Zalmunna were in Karkor, and their hosts with them - about fifteen thousand men, all that were left of all the hosts of the children of the east; for there fell an hundred and twenty thousand men that drew sword.

And Gideon went up by the way of them that dwelt in tents on the east of Nobah and Jogbehah and smote the host; for the host was secure. And when Zebah and Zalmunna fled, he pursued after them and took the two kings of Midian (Zebah and Zalmunna) and discomfited all the host. And Gideon the son of Joash returned from battle before the sun was up and caught a young man of the men of Succoth and inquired of him; and he described unto him the princes of Succoth, and the elders thereof, even threescore and seventeen men.

And he came unto the men of Succoth, and said, "Behold Zebah and Zalmunna - with whom ye did upbraid me, saying, 'Are the hands of Zebah and Zalmunna now in thine hand, that we should give bread unto thy men that are weary?'"

And he took the elders of the city, and thorns of the wilderness and briers, and with them he <sup>1</sup>taught the men of Succoth. And he beat down the tower of Penuel and slew the men of the city.

*<sup>1</sup>possibly meaning "whipped them" in the sense of "I'll teach you a lesson!"*

Then said he unto Zebah and Zalmunna, "What manner of men were they whom ye slew at Tabor?"

And they answered, "As thou art, so were they; each one resembled the children of a king."

And he said, "They were my brethren, even the sons of my mother! As the LORD liveth, if ye had saved them alive, I would not slay you!" And he said unto Jether his firstborn, "Up, and slay them!"

But the youth drew not his sword; for he feared, because he was yet a youth.

Then Zebah and Zalmunna <sup>1</sup>said, "Rise thou, and fall upon us. For, as the man is, so is his strength."

*<sup>1</sup>in the sense of taunting him and calling him a coward*

And Gideon arose and slew Zebah and Zalmunna and took away the ornaments that were on their camels' necks.

Then the men of Israel said unto Gideon, "Rule thou over us - both thou and thy son and thy son's son also; for thou hast delivered us from the hand of Midian."

And Gideon said unto them, "I will *not* rule over you, neither shall my son rule over you! *The LORD* shall rule over you!"

And Gideon said unto them, "I would desire a request of you, that ye would give me, every man, the earrings of his prey" (for they had golden earrings, because they were Ishmaelites).

And they answered, "We will willingly give them!"

And they spread a garment and did cast therein, every man, the earrings of his prey. And the weight of the golden earrings that he requested was a thousand and seven hundred shekels of gold - beside ornaments, and collars, and purple raiment that was on the kings of Midian, and beside the chains that were about their camels' necks. And Gideon made an <sup>1</sup>ephod thereof and put it in his city, even in Ophrah; and all Israel went thither a whoring after it, which thing became a snare unto Gideon and to his House. <sup>1</sup>*a golden image or idol*

Thus was Midian subdued before the children of Israel, so that they lifted up their heads no more. And the country was in quietness forty years in the days of Gideon. And <sup>1</sup>Jerubbaal the son of Joash went and dwelt in his own house. And Gideon had <sup>2</sup>threescore and ten sons of his body begotten (for he had many wives). And his concubine that was in Shechem, she also bare him a son, whose name he called Abimelech.

<sup>1</sup>*Gideon* <sup>2</sup>*70*

And Gideon the son of Joash died in a good old age and was buried in the sepulchre of Joash his father, in Ophrah of the Abiezrites. And it came to pass, as soon as Gideon was dead, that the children of Israel turned again and went a whoring after Baalim, and made Baalberith their god. And the children of Israel remembered not the LORD their God who had delivered them out of the hands of all their enemies on every side; neither showed they kindness to the House of Jerubbaal (namely, Gideon), according to all the goodness which he had showed unto Israel.

And Abimelech the son of Jerubbaal went to Shechem, unto his mother's brethren, and communed with them and with all the family of the House of his mother's father, saying, "Speak, I pray you, in the ears of all the men of Shechem, '*Whether is better for you? Either that ALL the sons of Jerubbaal (which are threescore and ten persons) reign over you, or that one reign over you? Remember also that I am your bone and your flesh*'."

And his mother's brethren spake of him in the ears of all the men of Shechem all these words, and their hearts inclined to follow Abimelech (for they said, "He is our brother").

And they gave him <sup>1</sup>threescore and ten pieces of silver out of the <sup>2</sup>house of Baalberith, <sup>3</sup>wherewith Abimelech hired vain and light persons, which followed him. <sup>1</sup>*70* <sup>2</sup>*temple* <sup>3</sup>*with which*

And he went unto his father's house at Ophrah and slew his brethren - the sons of <sup>1</sup>Jerubbaal (being <sup>2</sup>threescore and ten persons) - upon one stone. Notwithstanding, yet Jotham, the youngest son of Jerubbaal, was left; for he hid himself. <sup>1</sup>*Gideon* <sup>2</sup>*70*

And all the men of Shechem gathered together, and all the House of Millo, and went and made Abimelech king by the plain of the pillar that was in Shechem. And when they told it to Jotham, he went and stood in the top of Mount Gerizim and lifted up his voice and cried and said unto them, "Hearken unto me, ye men of Shechem, that God may hearken unto you..."

The trees went forth <sup>1</sup>on a time to anoint a king over them.

And they said unto the olive tree, '*Reign thou over us!*'

<sup>1</sup>*once upon a time*

But the olive tree said unto them, *'Should I leave my 'fatness wherewith by me they honour God and man, and go to be promoted over the trees?!*' <sup>1</sup>abundance

And the trees said to the fig tree, *'Come thou and reign over us!'*

But the fig tree said unto them, *"Should I forsake my sweetness and my good fruit, and go to be promoted over the trees?!"*

Then said the trees unto the vine, *'Come thou and reign over us!'*

And the vine said unto them, *'Should I leave my wine, which cheereth God and man, and go to be promoted over the trees?'*

Then said all the trees unto the bramble, *'Come thou and reign over us.'*

And the bramble said unto the trees, *"If in truth ye anoint me king over you, then come and put your trust in my shadow; and if not, let fire come out of the bramble and devour the cedars of Lebanon!"*

"Now therefore if ye have done truly and sincerely in that ye have made Abimelech king, and if ye have dealt well with Jerubbaal and his House and have done unto him according to the deserving of his hands (for my father fought for you and adventured his life far and delivered you out of the hand of Midian and ye are risen up against my father's House this day and have slain his sons, threescore and ten persons, upon one stone, and have made Abimelech - the son of his maidservant! - king over the men of Shechem because he is your brother); if ye then have dealt truly and sincerely with Jerubbaal and with his House this day, then rejoice ye in Abimelech and let him also rejoice in you! *But* - if not, let fire come out from Abimelech and devour the men of Shechem and the House of Millo, and let fire come out from the men of Shechem and from the House of Millo and devour Abimelech!"

And Jotham ran away and fled and went to Beer and dwelt there, for fear of Abimelech his brother. When Abimelech had reigned three years over Israel, then God sent <sup>1</sup>an evil spirit between Abimelech and the men of Shechem; and the men of Shechem dealt treacherously with Abimelech, that the cruelty done to the threescore and ten sons of Jerubbaal might come (and their blood be laid) upon Abimelech their brother which slew them, and upon the men of Shechem which aided him in the killing of his brethren. And the men of Shechem set liers-in-wait for him in the top of the mountains, and they robbed all that came along that way by them, and it was told Abimelech. <sup>1</sup>literally "bad breath" or "bad air", possibly meaning "animosity"

And Gaal the son of Ebed came with his brethren and went over to Shechem, and the men of Shechem put their confidence in him. And they went out into the fields and gathered their vineyards, and trode the grapes, and made merry, and went into the house of their god and did eat and drink and cursed Abimelech.

And Gaal the son of Ebed said, "Who is Abimelech, and who is Shechem, that we should serve him?! Is not he the son of Jerubbaal, and Zebul his officer? Serve the men of Hamor the father of Shechem; for why should we serve him? And would to God this people were under my hand! Then would I remove Abimelech!"

And he said to Abimelech, "Increase thine army and come out!"

And when Zebul, the ruler of the city, heard the words of Gaal the son of Ebed, his anger was kindled. And he sent messengers unto Abimelech <sup>1</sup>privily, saying, "Behold, Gaal the son of Ebed and his brethren be come to Shechem; and, behold, they fortify the city against thee. Now therefore, up by night - thou and the people that is with thee - and lie in wait in the field. And it shall be that in the morning, as soon as the sun is

up, thou shalt rise early and set upon the city; and, behold, when he and the people that is with him come out against thee, then mayest thou do to them as thou shalt find occasion.” *<sup>1</sup>privately/secretly*

And Abimelech rose up, and all the people that were with him, by night, and they laid wait against Shechem in four companies.

And Gaal the son of Ebed went out and stood in the entering of the gate of the city; and Abimelech rose up, and the people that were with him, from lying in wait. And when Gaal saw the people, he said to Zebul, “Behold, there come people down from the top of the mountains.”

And Zebul said unto him, *<sup>1</sup>“Thou seest the shadow of the mountains as if they were men!”*  
*<sup>1</sup>in essence, “you’re seeing/imagining things”*

And Gaal spake again and said, “See! There come people down by the middle of the land, and another company come along by the plain of Meonenim!”

Then said Zebul unto him, “Where is now thy <sup>1</sup>mouth wherewith thou saidst, *‘Who is Abimelech that we should serve him?’* Is not this the people that thou hast despised? Go out, I pray now, and fight with them!”  
*<sup>1</sup>tough talk*

And Gaal went out before the men of Shechem and fought with Abimelech. And Abimelech chased him and he fled before him, and many were overthrown and wounded, even unto the <sup>1</sup>entering of the gate. And Abimelech dwelt at Arumah, and Zebul thrust out Gaal and his brethren, that they should not dwell in Shechem.  
*<sup>1</sup>entrance to the city*

And it came to pass <sup>1</sup>on the morrow, that the people went out into the field, and they told Abimelech.  
*<sup>1</sup>the next day/tomorrow*

And he took the people and divided them into three companies and laid wait in the field and looked, and, behold, the people were come forth out of the city; and he rose up against them and smote them. And Abimelech and the company that was with him rushed forward and stood in the entering of the gate of the city: and the two other companies ran upon all the people that were in the fields, and slew them. And Abimelech fought against the city all that day; and he took the city and slew the people that was therein and beat down the city and <sup>1</sup>sowed it with salt.  
*<sup>1</sup>contaminated the soil with salt to prevent the growth of crops*

And when all the men of the Tower of Shechem heard that, they entered into an <sup>1</sup>hold of the <sup>2</sup>house of the god Berith.  
*<sup>1</sup>stronghold/guardhouse/prison <sup>2</sup>temple*

And it was told Abimelech that all the men of the Tower of Shechem were gathered together. And Abimelech gat him up to Mount Zalmon - he and all the people that were with him - and Abimelech took an ax in his hand and cut down a bough from the trees, and took it and laid it on his shoulder, and said unto the people that were with him, “What ye have seen me do, make haste and do as I have done!”

And all the people likewise cut down every man his bough and followed Abimelech and put them to the hold and set the hold on fire upon them; so that all the men of the Tower of Shechem died also - about a thousand men and women.

Then went Abimelech to <sup>1</sup>Thebez, and encamped against Thebez and took it. But there was a strong tower within the city, and thither fled all the men and women and all they of the city, and <sup>2</sup>shut it to them and gat them up to the top of the tower.  
*<sup>1</sup>pronounced ‘Te-betz’, not ‘Theebs’ <sup>2</sup>shut themselves in*

And Abimelech came unto the tower and fought against it and went hard unto the door of the tower to burn it with fire. And a certain woman cast a piece of a millstone upon Abimelech's head and all to brake his skull.

Then he called hastily unto the young man his armourbearer and said unto him, "Draw thy sword and slay me, that men say not of me, 'A woman slew him!'"

And his young man thrust him through, and he died. And when the men of Israel saw that Abimelech was dead, they departed every man unto his place.

Thus God rendered the wickedness of Abimelech which he did unto his father, in slaying his seventy brethren. And all the evil of the men of Shechem did God render upon their heads, and upon them came the curse <sup>1</sup>of Jotham the son of Jerubbaal. <sup>1</sup>declared by

And after Abimelech there arose, to defend Israel, Tola (the son of Puah, the son of Dodo, a man of Issachar), and he dwelt in Shamir in Mount Ephraim. And he judged Israel twenty and three years, and died, and was buried in Shamir.

And after him arose Jair, a Gileadite, and judged Israel twenty and two years. And he had thirty sons that rode on thirty ass colts, and they had thirty cities which are called Havothjair unto this day which are in the land of Gilead. And Jair died, and was buried in Camon.

And the children of Israel did evil again in the sight of the LORD and served Baalim, and Ashtaroth, and the gods of Syria, and the gods of Zidon, and the gods of Moab, and the gods of the children of Ammon, and the gods of the Philistines, and forsook THE LORD and served not Him.

And the anger of the LORD was hot against Israel and He sold them into the hands of the Philistines and into the hands of the children of Ammon. And <sup>1</sup>that year they vexed and oppressed the children of Israel eighteen years, all the children of Israel that were on the other side Jordan in the land of the Amorites, which is in Gilead. <sup>1</sup>beginning that year

Moreover the children of Ammon passed over Jordan to fight also against Judah, and against Benjamin, and against the House of Ephraim; so that Israel was sore distressed.

And the children of Israel cried unto the LORD, saying, "We have sinned against Thee - both because we have forsaken our God, and also served Baalim!"

And the LORD said unto the children of Israel, "Did not I deliver you from the Egyptians, and from the Amorites, from the children of Ammon, and from the Philistines? The Zidonians also, and the Amalekites, and the Maonites, did oppress you; and ye cried to Me and I delivered you out of their hand. Yet ye have forsaken Me and served other gods! Wherefore I will deliver you no more! Go and cry unto the gods which ye have chosen! Let *them* deliver you in the time of your tribulation!"

And the children of Israel said unto the LORD, "We have sinned! Do Thou unto us whatsoever seemeth good unto Thee; deliver us only, we pray Thee, this day!"

And they put away the strange gods from among them and served the LORD; and His soul was <sup>1</sup>grieved for the misery of Israel. <sup>1</sup>heartbroken

Then the children of Ammon were gathered together and encamped in Gilead. And the children of Israel assembled themselves together and encamped in Mizpeh. And the people and princes of Gilead said one to

another, "What man is he that will begin to fight against the children of Ammon? He shall be head over all the inhabitants of Gilead."

Now Jephthah the Gileadite was a mighty man of valour, and he was the son of an harlot (and Gilead begat Jephthah). And Gilead's wife bare him sons; and his wife's sons grew up and they thrust out Jephthah and said unto him, "Thou shalt not inherit in our father's House; for thou art the son of a strange woman!"

Then Jephthah fled from his brethren and dwelt in the land of Tob; and there were gathered vain men to Jephthah and went out with him. And it came to pass in process of time that the children of Ammon made war against Israel. And it was so that when the children of Ammon made war against Israel, the elders of Gilead went to fetch Jephthah out of the land of Tob.

And they said unto Jephthah, "Come and be our captain, that we may fight with the children of Ammon."

And Jephthah said unto the elders of Gilead, "Did not ye hate me and expel me out of my father's House? And why are ye come unto me now when ye are in distress?"

And the elders of Gilead said unto Jephthah, "Therefore we turn again to thee now, that thou mayest go with us and fight against the children of Ammon and be our head over all the inhabitants of Gilead."

*for that [very] reason*

And Jephthah said unto the elders of Gilead, "If ye bring me home again to fight against the children of Ammon, and the LORD deliver them before me, *shall* I be your head?"

And the elders of Gilead said unto Jephthah, "The LORD be witness between us if we do not so according to thy words!"

Then Jephthah went with the elders of Gilead, and the people made him head and captain over them; and Jephthah uttered all his words before the LORD in Mizpeh.

And Jephthah sent messengers unto the king of the children of Ammon, saying, "What hast thou to do with me, that thou art come against me to fight in my land?"

And the king of the children of Ammon answered unto the messengers of Jephthah, "Because Israel took away my land when they came up out of Egypt, from Arnon even unto Jabbok, and unto Jordan! Now, therefore, restore those lands again peaceably!"

And Jephthah sent messengers again unto the king of the children of Ammon, and said unto him:

"Thus saith Jephthah:

*Israel* took not away the land of Moab, nor the land of the children of Ammon! But when Israel came up from Egypt and walked through the wilderness unto the Red sea and came to Kadesh, then Israel sent messengers unto the king of Edom, saying, '*Let me, I pray thee, pass through thy land*'; but the king of Edom would not hearken thereto. And in like manner they sent unto the king of Moab, but he would not consent; and Israel abode in Kadesh.

Then they went along through the wilderness and compassed the land of Edom and the land of Moab, and came by the east side of the land of Moab and pitched on the other side of Arnon, but came not within the border of Moab - for Arnon was the border of Moab. And Israel sent messengers unto Sihon king of the Amorites, the king of Heshbon; and Israel said unto him, '*Let us pass, we pray thee, through thy land into my place.*' But Sihon trusted not Israel to pass through his coast, but Sihon gathered all his people together and pitched in Jahaz and fought against Israel. And the LORD God of Israel delivered Sihon and all

his people into the hand of Israel, and they smote them. So Israel possessed all the land of the Amorites, the inhabitants of that country. And they possessed all the coasts of the Amorites, from Arnon even unto Jabbok, and from the wilderness even unto Jordan.

So now, *THE LORD God of Israel* hath dispossessed the Amorites from before His people Israel - and shouldest *thou* possess it?! Wilt not thou possess that which Chemosh thy god giveth thee to possess? 'So, whomsoever the LORD our God shall drive out from before us, them will *we* possess! *likewise*

And now art thou any thing better than Balak the son of Zippor, king of Moab? Did he ever strive against Israel, or did he ever fight against them, while Israel dwelt in Heshbon and her towns, and in Aroer and her towns, and in all the cities that be along by the coasts of Arnon, three hundred years? Why therefore did ye not recover them within *that* time?!

Wherefore, I have *not* sinned against thee, but *thou* doest *me* wrong to war against me! THE LORD the Judge be judge this day between the children of Israel and the children of Ammon!"

Howbeit the king of the children of Ammon hearkened not unto the words of Jephthah which he sent him. Then the Spirit of the LORD came upon Jephthah, and he passed over Gilead and Manasseh, and passed over Mizpeh of Gilead, and from Mizpeh of Gilead he passed over unto the children of Ammon. And Jephthah vowed a vow unto the LORD, and said, "If Thou shalt without fail deliver the children of Ammon into mine hands, then it shall be that whatsoever cometh forth of the doors of my house to meet me when I return in peace from the children of Ammon shall surely be the LORD'S, and I will offer it up for a 'burnt offering." *'a holy and sacred thing*

So Jephthah passed over unto the children of Ammon to fight against them; and the LORD delivered them into his hands. And he smote them from Aroer, even till thou come to Minnith, even twenty cities, and unto the plain of the vineyards, with a very great slaughter. Thus the children of Ammon were subdued before the children of Israel. And Jephthah came to Mizpeh unto his house, and, behold - his *daughter* came out to meet him with timbrels and with dances! And she was his only child; beside her he had neither son nor daughter.

And it came to pass when he saw her that he rent his clothes, and said, "Alas, my daughter! Thou hast brought me very low and thou art one of them that trouble me! For I have opened my mouth unto the LORD, and I cannot go back!"

And she said unto him, "My father, if thou hast opened thy mouth unto the LORD, do to me according to that which hath proceeded out of thy mouth! Forasmuch as the LORD hath taken vengeance for thee of thine enemies, even of the children of Ammon." And she said unto her father, "Let this thing be done for me. Let me alone two months, that I may go up and down upon the mountains and 'bewail my virginity, I and my fellows." *'grieve because I'll never marry (because she'll be consecrated to the Lord)*

And he said, "Go."

And he sent her away for two months; and she went with her companions, and bewailed her virginity upon the mountains. And it came to pass at the end of two months that she returned unto her father who did with her according to his vow which he had vowed, and she knew no man. And it was a custom in Israel that the daughters of Israel went yearly to lament the daughter of Jephthah the Gileadite four days in a year.

And the men of Ephraim gathered themselves together and went northward, and said unto Jephthah, "Wherefore passedst thou over to fight against the children of Ammon and didst not call us to go with thee?! We will burn thine house upon thee with fire!"

And Jephthah said unto them, "I and my people were at great strife with the children of Ammon; and when I called you, ye delivered me not out of their hands! And when I saw that ye delivered me not, I put my life

in my hands and passed over against the children of Ammon, and THE LORD delivered them into my hand. Wherefore then are ye come up unto me this day to fight against me?!"

Then Jephthah gathered together all the men of Gilead and fought with Ephraim; and the men of Gilead smote Ephraim, because they said, "Ye Gileadites are fugitives of Ephraim among the Ephraimites and among the Manassites!"

And the Gileadites took the passages of Jordan before the Ephraimites; and it was so that, when those Ephraimites which were escaped said, '*Let me go over*', that the men of Gilead said unto him, '*Art thou an Ephraimite?*' If he said, "Nay", then said they unto him, '*Say now Shibboleth*'; and he said 'Sibboleth' (for he could not frame <sup>1</sup>to pronounce it right). Then they took him and slew him at the passages of Jordan; and there fell at that time of the Ephraimites forty and two thousand.

<sup>1</sup>*Ephraimites could not pronounce "sh" and therefore gave themselves away*

And Jephthah judged Israel six years. Then died Jephthah the Gileadite and was buried in one of the cities of Gilead.

And after him Ibzan of Bethlehem judged Israel. And he had thirty sons and thirty daughters, whom he sent abroad, and took in thirty daughters from abroad for his sons. And he judged Israel seven years. Then died Ibzan and was buried at Bethlehem.

And after him Elon, a Zebulonite, judged Israel; and he judged Israel ten years. And Elon the Zebulonite died, and was buried in Aijalon in the country of Zebulun.

And after him Abdon the son of Hillel, a Pirathonite, judged Israel. And he had forty sons and thirty nephews, that rode on threescore and ten ass colts, and he judged Israel eight years. And Abdon the son of Hillel the Pirathonite died, and was buried in Pirathon in the land of Ephraim, in the mount of the Amalekites.

And the children of Israel did evil again in the sight of the LORD; and the LORD delivered them into the hand of the Philistines forty years.

And there was a certain man of Zorah, of the family of the Danites, whose name was Manoah; and his wife was barren, and bare not.

And the angel of the LORD appeared unto the woman, and said unto her, "Behold now, thou art barren, and bearest not. But thou shalt conceive and bear a son. Now therefore beware, I pray thee, and drink not wine nor strong drink, and eat not any unclean thing; for, lo, thou shalt conceive and bear a son; and no razor shall come on his head - for the child shall be a Nazarite unto God from the womb, and he shall begin to deliver Israel out of the hand of the Philistines."

Then the woman came and told her husband, saying, "A man of God came unto me, and his countenance was like the countenance of an angel of God, very terrible: but I asked him not whence he was, neither told he me his name. But he said unto me, '*Behold, thou shalt conceive, and bear a son; and now drink no wine nor strong drink, neither eat any unclean thing; <sup>1</sup>for the child shall be a Nazarite to God from the womb to the day of his death.*'"

<sup>1</sup>*This is a double prophecy, foretelling that Messiah would be conceived in Nazareth and would be known as a Nazarite ("Nazarene") until His death. And so it was that, though Jesus was born in Bethlehem, He was conceived in Nazareth, and as He died on the cross there was placed a sign over Him saying "Jesus of Nazareth, King of the Jews".*

Then Manoah entreated the LORD, and said, "O my Lord, let the man of God which Thou didst send come again unto us and teach us what we shall do unto the child that shall be born."

And God hearkened to the voice of Manoah; and the angel of God came again unto the woman as she sat in the field, but Manoah her husband was not with her. And the woman made haste, and ran, and showed her husband, and said unto him, "Behold, the man hath appeared unto me that came unto me the other day!"

And Manoah arose, and went after his wife and came to the man, and said unto him, "Art thou the man that spakest unto the woman?"

And he said, "I am."

And Manoah said, "Now let thy words come to pass. How shall we <sup>1</sup>order the child, and how shall we do unto him?"

*<sup>1</sup>rear/raise/direct*

And the angel of the LORD said unto Manoah, "Of all that I said unto the woman let her beware! She may not eat of any thing that cometh of the vine, neither let her drink wine or strong drink, nor eat any unclean thing. All that I commanded her, let her observe."

And Manoah said unto the angel of the LORD, "I pray thee, let us detain thee, until we shall have made ready a <sup>1</sup>kid for thee."

*<sup>1</sup>young goat or lamb*

And the angel of the LORD said unto Manoah, "Though thou detain me, I will not eat of thy bread; and if thou wilt offer a burnt offering, thou must offer it unto *THE LORD*" (for Manoah knew not that he was an angel of the LORD).

And Manoah said unto the angel of the LORD, "What is thy name, that when thy sayings come to pass we may do thee honour?"

And the angel of the LORD said unto him, "Why askest thou thus after my name, seeing it is secret?!"

So Manoah took a kid with a meat offering and offered it upon a rock unto the LORD, and the angel did wonderously; and Manoah and his wife looked on - for it came to pass, when the flame went up toward heaven from off the altar, that the angel of THE LORD ascended in the flame of the altar. And Manoah and his wife looked on it and fell on their faces to the ground. But the angel of THE LORD did no more appear to Manoah and to his wife. Then Manoah knew that he was an angel of THE LORD.

And Manoah said unto his wife, "We shall surely die, because we have seen God!"

But his wife said unto him, "If THE LORD were pleased to kill us, He would not have received a burnt offering and a meat offering at our hands, neither would He have showed us all these things, nor would as at this time have told us such things as these."

And the woman bare a son and called his name *Samson*. And the child grew, and THE LORD blessed him. And the Spirit of THE LORD began to move him at times in the camp of Dan between Zorah and Eshtaol.

And Samson went down to Timnath and saw a woman in Timnath of the daughters of the Philistines. And he came up and told his father and his mother, and said, "I have seen a woman in Timnath of the daughters of the Philistines; now therefore, get her for me to wife."

Then his father and his mother said unto him, "Is there never a woman among the daughters of thy brethren or among all my people that thou goest to take a wife of the uncircumcised Philistines?!"

And Samson said unto his father, "Get her for me; for she pleaseth me well."

But his father and his mother knew not that it was of THE LORD, that He sought an occasion against the Philistines; for at that time the Philistines had dominion over Israel. Then went Samson down, and his father and his mother, to Timnath, and came to the vineyards of Timnath. And, behold, a young lion roared against him. And the Spirit of THE LORD came mightily upon him, and he rent him as he would have rent a kid, and he had nothing in his hand; but he told not his father or his mother what he had done. And he went down and talked with the woman; and she pleased Samson well. And after a time he returned to take her, and he turned aside to see the carcase of the lion - and, behold, there was a swarm of bees and honey in the carcase of the lion. And he took thereof in his hands and went on, eating, and came to his father and mother, and he gave them, and they did eat; but he told not them that he had taken the honey out of the carcase of the lion. So his father went down unto the woman and Samson made there a feast; for so used the young men to do. And it came to pass, when they saw him, that they brought thirty companions to be with him.

And Samson said unto them, "I will now put forth a riddle unto you. If ye can certainly declare it me within the seven days of the feast and find it out, then I will give you thirty sheets and thirty change of garments. But if ye cannot declare it me, then shall ye give *me* thirty sheets and thirty change of garments."

And they said unto him, "Put forth thy riddle, that we may hear it."

And he said unto them, "Out of the eater came forth meat, and out of the strong came forth sweetness."

And they could not in three days expound the riddle.

And it came to pass on the Seventh Day that they said unto Samson's wife, "Entice thy husband, that he may declare unto us the riddle, lest we burn thee and thy father's House with fire! Have ye called us to take that we have? Is it not so?"

And Samson's wife wept before him, and said, "Thou dost but hate me and lovest me not! Thou hast put forth a riddle unto the children of my people and hast not told it *me*."

And he said unto her, "Behold, I have <sup>1</sup>not told it my father nor my mother, and shall I tell it *thee*?"

<sup>1</sup>*not even*

And she wept before him the seven days while their feast lasted. And it came to pass on the Seventh Day that he told her (because she lay sore upon him), and she told the riddle to the children of her people.

And the men of the city said unto him on the Seventh Day before the sun went down, "What is sweeter than honey? And what is stronger than a lion?"

And he said unto them, "If ye had not plowed with my heifer, ye had not found out my riddle."

And the Spirit of THE LORD came upon him, and he went down to Ashkelon, and slew thirty men of them, and took their spoil, and gave change of garments unto them which expounded the riddle. And his anger was kindled, and he went up to his father's house. But Samson's wife was given to his companion, whom he <sup>1</sup>had used as his friend. But it came to pass within a while after, in the time of wheat harvest, that Samson visited his wife with a kid; and he said, "I will go in to my wife into the chamber."

<sup>1</sup>*used to be*

But her father would not suffer him to go in. And her father said, "I verily thought that thou hadst utterly hated her; therefore I gave her to thy companion. Is not her younger sister fairer than she? Take *her*, I pray thee, instead of her."

And Samson said concerning them, "Now shall I be more blameless than the Philistines, though I do them a displeasure!"

And Samson went and caught three hundred foxes, and took firebrands, and <sup>1</sup>turned tail to tail, and put a firebrand in the midst between two tails. And when he had set the brands on fire, he let them go into the standing corn of the Philistines, and burnt up both the shocks, and also the standing corn, with the vineyards and olives. <sup>1</sup> *tied*

Then the Philistines said, "Who hath done this?!"

And they answered, "Samson, the son-in-law of the Timnite, because he had taken his wife and given her to his companion."

And the Philistines came up and burnt her and her father with fire.

And Samson said unto them, "Though ye have done this yet will I be avenged of you, and after that I will cease."

And he smote them hip and thigh with a great slaughter; and he went down and dwelt in the top of the rock Etam. Then the Philistines went up, and pitched in Judah, and spread themselves in Lehi.

And the men of Judah said, "Why are ye come up against us?!"

And they answered, "To bind Samson are we come up, to do to him as he hath done to us!"

Then three thousand men of Judah went to the top of the rock Etam and said to Samson, "Knowest thou not that the Philistines are rulers over us?! What is this that thou hast done unto us?!"

And he said unto them, "As they did unto me, so have I done unto them."

And they said unto him, "We are come down to bind thee, that we may deliver thee into the hand of the Philistines."

And Samson said unto them, "Swear unto me that ye will not <sup>1</sup>fall upon me yourselves." <sup>1</sup> *kill*

And they spake unto him, saying, "No; but we will bind thee fast, and deliver thee into their hand; but surely we will not kill thee."

And they bound him with two new cords, and brought him up from the rock. And when he came unto Lehi, the Philistines shouted against him. And the Spirit of THE LORD came mightily upon him, and the cords that were upon his arms became as flax that was burnt with fire, and his bands loosed from off his hands. And he found a new jawbone of an ass, and put forth his hand and took it and slew a thousand men therewith.

And Samson said, "With the jawbone of an ass - heaps upon heaps with the jaw of an ass - have I slain a thousand men."

And it came to pass, when he had made an end of speaking, that he cast away the jawbone out of his hand, and called that place Ramathlehi.

And he was sore athirst and called on THE LORD, and said, "Thou hast given this great deliverance into the hand of Thy servant... and now shall I die for thirst and fall into the hand of the <sup>1</sup>uncircumcised?" <sup>1</sup> *unbelievers*

But God clave an hollow place that was in the jaw, and there came water thereout; and when he had drunk, his spirit came again, and he revived. Wherefore he called the name thereof Enhakkore, which is in Lehi unto this day. And he judged Israel in the days of the Philistines twenty years.

Then went Samson to Gaza, and saw there an harlot, and went in unto her. And it was told the Gazites, saying, "Samson is come hither!"

And they compassed him in, and laid wait for him all night in the gate of the city, and were quiet all the night, saying, "In the morning, when it is day, we shall kill him."

And Samson lay till midnight, and arose at midnight, and took the doors of the gate of the city, and the two posts, and went away with them, bar and all, and put them upon his shoulders, and carried them up to the top of an hill that is before Hebron.

And it came to pass afterward that he loved a woman in the Valley of Sorek, whose name was Delilah. And the lords of the Philistines came up unto her, and said unto her, "Entice him, and see wherein his great strength lieth, and by what means we may prevail against him, that we may bind him to afflict him; and we will give thee, every one of us, eleven hundred pieces of silver."

And Delilah said to Samson, "Tell me, I pray thee, wherein thy great strength lieth, and wherewith thou mightest be bound to afflict thee."

And Samson said unto her, "If they bind me with seven green withs that were never dried, then shall I be weak, and be as another man."

Then the lords of the Philistines brought up to her seven green withs which had not been dried, and she bound him with them.

Now there were men lying in wait, abiding with her in the chamber. And she said unto him, "The Philistines be upon thee, Samson!" And he brake the withs as a thread of tow is broken when it toucheth the fire. So his strength was not known.

And Delilah said unto Samson, "Behold, thou hast mocked me, and told me lies! Now tell me, I pray thee, wherewith thou mightest be bound."

And he said unto her, "If they bind me fast with new ropes that never were occupied, then shall I be weak, and be as another man."

Delilah therefore took new ropes, and bound him therewith, and said unto him, "The Philistines be upon thee, Samson!"

And there were liars in wait abiding in the chamber. And he brake them from off his arms like a thread.

And Delilah said unto Samson, "Hitherto thou hast mocked me, and told me lies! Tell me wherewith thou mightest be bound."

And he said unto her, "If thou weavest the seven locks of my head with the <sup>1</sup>web." *<sup>1</sup>webbing of the loom*

And she fastened it with the pin, and said unto him, "The Philistines be upon thee, Samson!"

And he awaked out of his sleep and went away with the pin of the beam and with the web.



And there was a man of Mount Ephraim whose name was Micah. And he said unto his mother, "The eleven hundred shekels of silver that were taken from thee, about which thou cursedst and spakest of also in mine ears - behold, the silver is with me; I took it."

And his mother said, "Blessed be thou of THE LORD, my son!"

And when he had restored the eleven hundred shekels of silver to his mother, his mother said, "I had wholly dedicated the silver unto THE LORD from my hand for my son, to make a graven image and a molten image. Now therefore I will restore it unto thee."

Yet he restored the money unto his mother; and his mother took two hundred shekels of silver and gave them to the founder who made thereof a graven image and a molten image; and they were in the house of Micah. And the man Micah had an house of gods, and made an <sup>1</sup>ephod and teraphim, and consecrated one of his sons, who became his priest. *<sup>1</sup>priestly robe and an idol*

In those days there was no king in Israel, but every man did that which was right in his own eyes. And there was a young man out of Bethlehemjudah of the family of Judah, who was a Levite, and he sojourned there. And the man departed out of the city from Bethlehemjudah to sojourn where he could find a place; and he came to Mount Ephraim to the house of Micah as he journeyed.

And Micah said unto him, "Whence comest thou?"

And he said unto him, "I am a Levite of Bethlehemjudah, and I go to sojourn where I may find a place."

And Micah said unto him, "Dwell with me and be unto me a father and a priest, and I will give thee ten shekels of silver <sup>1</sup>by the year, and a suit of apparel, and thy victuals." *<sup>1</sup>each year*

So the Levite went in. And the Levite was content to dwell with the man; and the young man was unto him as one of his sons. And Micah consecrated the Levite; and the young man became his priest, and was in the house of Micah.

Then said Micah, "Now know I that THE LORD will do me good, seeing I have a Levite to my priest!"

In those days there was no king in Israel; and in those days the tribe of the Danites sought them an inheritance to dwell in; for unto that day all their inheritance had not fallen unto them among the tribes of Israel. And the children of Dan sent of their family five men from their coasts, men of valour, from Zorah and from Eshtaol, to spy out the land and to search it; and they said unto them, '*Go, search the land*' – who, when they came to Mount Ephraim, to the house of Micah, they lodged there. When they were by the house of Micah, they knew the voice of the young man the Levite; and they turned in thither, and said unto him, "Who brought thee hither? And what makest thou in this place? And what hast thou here?"

And he said unto them, "Thus and thus dealeth Micah with me, and hath hired me, and I am his priest."

And they said unto him, "Ask counsel, we pray thee, of God, that we may know whether our way which we go shall be prosperous."

And the priest said unto them, "Go in peace; before THE LORD is your way wherein ye go."

Then the five men departed and came to Laish and saw the people that were therein, how they dwelt careless after the manner of the Zidonians, quiet and secure; and there was no magistrate in the land that might <sup>1</sup>put them to shame in any thing; and they were far from the Zidonians, and had no business with any man. *<sup>1</sup>punish/discipline/establish law & order*

And they came unto their brethren to Zorah and Eshtaol; and their brethren said unto them, "What say ye?"

And they said, "Arise, that we may go up against them, for we have seen the land and, behold, it is very good - <sup>1</sup>and are ye still?! Be not slothful to go and to enter to possess the land! When ye go, ye shall come unto a people secure and to a large land; for God hath given it into your hands - a place where there is no <sup>2</sup>want of any thing that is in the earth." <sup>1</sup>*Why are you just sitting still! Get up! Let's go!* <sup>2</sup>*lack*

And there went from thence of the family of the Danites, out of Zorah and out of Eshtaol, six hundred men appointed with weapons of war. And they went up, and pitched in Kirjath-Jearim, in Judah. Wherefore they called that place MahanehDan unto this day; behold, it is behind Kirjath-Jearim. And they passed thence unto Mount Ephraim, and came unto the house of Micah.

Then answered the five men that went to spy out the country of Laish, and said unto their brethren, "Do ye know that there is in these houses an ephod and teraphim and a graven image and a molten image? Now therefore consider what ye have to do..."

And they turned thitherward and came to the house of the young man the Levite, even unto the house of Micah, and saluted him. And the six hundred men appointed with their weapons of war, which were of the children of Dan, stood by the entering of the gate.

And the five men that went to spy out the land went up, and came in thither and took the graven image and the ephod and the teraphim and the molten image; and the priest stood in the entering of the gate with the six hundred men that were appointed with weapons of war. And these went into Micah's house, and fetched the carved image, the ephod, and the teraphim, and the molten image.

Then said the priest unto them, "What do ye?!"

And they said unto him, "Hold thy peace! Lay thine hand upon thy mouth and go with us, and be to us a father and a priest. Is it better for thee to be a priest unto the house of one man, or that thou be a priest unto a tribe and a family in Israel?"

And the priest's heart was glad, and he took the ephod, and the teraphim, and the graven image, and went in the midst of the people. So they turned and departed, and put the little ones and the cattle and the carriage before them. And when they were a good way from the house of Micah, the men that were in the houses near to Micah's house were gathered together, and overtook the children of Dan.

And they cried unto the children of Dan. And they turned their faces and said unto Micah, "What aileth thee, that thou comest with such a company?"

And he said, "Ye have taken away my gods which I made, and the priest, and ye are gone away; and what have I more? And <sup>1</sup>what is this that ye say unto me, '*What aileth thee?*'" <sup>1</sup>*and how can you say unto me*

And the children of Dan said unto him, "Let not thy voice be heard among us, lest angry fellows run upon thee and thou lose thy life with the lives of thy household!"

And the children of Dan went their way. And when Micah saw that they were too strong for him, he turned and went back unto his house. And they took the things which Micah had made, and the priest which he had, and came unto Laish, unto a people that were at quiet and secure; and they smote them with the edge of the sword, and burnt the city with fire. And there was no deliverer, because it was far from Zidon, and they had no <sup>1</sup>business with any man; and it was in the valley that lieth by Bethrehob. And they built a city, and dwelt therein. <sup>1</sup>*dealings*

And they called the name of the city Dan, after the name of Dan their father who was born unto Israel; howbeit the name of the city was Laish at the first.

And the children of Dan set up the graven image. and Jonathan (the son of Gershom, the son of Manasseh), he and his sons were priests to the tribe of Dan until the day of the captivity of the land. And they set them up Micah's graven image which he made, all the time that the House of God was in Shiloh.

And it came to pass in those days when there was no king in Israel, that there was a certain Levite sojourning on the side of Mount Ephraim who took to him a concubine out of Bethlehemjudah. And his concubine played the whore against him, and went away from him unto her father's house to Bethlehemjudah, and was there four whole months. And her husband arose and went after her, to speak friendly unto her and to bring her again, having his servant with him and a couple of asses, and she brought him into her father's house. And when the father of the damsel saw him, he rejoiced to meet him. And his father-in-law, the damsel's father, retained him; and he abode with him three days. So they did eat and drink and lodged there.

And it came to pass on the fourth day when they arose early in the morning, that he rose up to depart; and the damsel's father said unto his son-in-law, "Comfort thine heart with a morsel of bread, and afterward go your way." *'relax a while*

And they sat down and did eat and drink both of them together; for the damsel's father had said unto the man, "Be content, I pray thee, and tarry all night, and let thine heart be merry."

And when the man rose up to depart, his father-in-law urged him; therefore he lodged there again. And he arose early in the morning on the fifth day to depart. And the damsel's father said, "Comfort thine heart, I pray thee."

And they tarried until afternoon, and they did eat both of them. And when the man rose up to depart, he, and his concubine, and his servant, his father-in-law, the damsel's father, said unto him, "Behold, now the day draweth toward evening, I pray you tarry all night. Behold, the day groweth to an end, lodge here, that thine heart may be merry; and to morrow get you early on your way, that thou mayest go home."

But the man would not tarry that night, but he rose up and departed, and came over against Jebus, which is Jerusalem; and there were with him two asses saddled, his concubine also was with him.

And when they were by Jebus the day was far spent; and the servant said unto his master, "Come, I pray thee, and let us turn in into this city of the Jebusites, and lodge in it."

And his master said unto him, "We will not turn aside hither into the city of a stranger that is not of the Children of Israel; we will pass over to Gibeah." And he said unto his servant, "Come, and let us draw near to one of these places to lodge all night, in Gibeah, or in Ramah."

And they passed on and went their way; and the sun went down upon them when they were by Gibeah, which belongeth to Benjamin. And they turned aside thither to go in and to lodge in Gibeah. And when he went in, he sat him down in a street of the city, for there was no man that took them into his house to lodging. And, behold, there came an old man from his work out of the field at even which was also of Mount Ephraim, and he sojourned in Gibeah. But the men of the place were Benjamites. And when he had lifted up his eyes he saw a wayfaring man in the street of the city.

And the old man said, "Whither goest thou? And whence comest thou?"

And he said unto him, "We are passing from Bethlehemjudah toward the side of Mount Ephraim; from thence am I. And I went to Bethlehemjudah, but I am now going to the House of THE LORD; and there is no man that receiveth me to <sup>1</sup>house. Yet there is both straw and provender for our asses, and there is bread and wine also for me and for thy handmaid and for the young man which is with thy servants; there is no want of any thing." <sup>1</sup>shelter me

And the old man said, "Peace be with thee. Howsoever, let all thy wants lie upon me; only, lodge not in the street."

So he brought him into his house, and gave provender unto the asses; and they washed their feet and did eat and drink.

Now, as they were making their hearts merry, behold, the men of the city (certain sons of <sup>1</sup>Belial) beset the house round about and beat at the door and spake to the master of the house, the old man, saying, "Bring forth the man that came into thine house, that we may know him." <sup>1</sup>"Worthlessness" - the name of a fallen angel

And the man, the master of the house, went out unto them and said unto them, "Nay, my brethren, nay, I pray you, do not so wickedly; seeing that this man is come into mine house, do not this folly! Behold, here is my daughter a maiden, and his concubine - them I will bring out now, and humble ye *them*, and do with them what seemeth good unto you. But unto this man do not so vile a thing!"

*NOTE: This event is nearly identical to that which occurred in Sodom, demonstrating that these were not groups of homosexual men, but violent people who desire to abuse and kill strangers, in violation of God's law that strangers be treated with extreme dignity*

But the men would not hearken to him, so the man took his concubine and brought her forth unto them; and they <sup>1</sup>knew her and abused her all the night until the morning, and when the day began to spring they let her go. <sup>1</sup>raped

Then came the woman in the dawning of the day and fell down at the door of the man's house where her lord was till it was light. And her lord rose up in the morning and opened the doors of the house and went out to go his way; and, behold, the woman his concubine was fallen down at the door of the house, and her hands were upon the threshold.

And he said unto her, "Up, and let us be going."

But <sup>1</sup>none answered. Then the man took her up upon an ass, and the man rose up and <sup>2</sup>gat him unto his place. <sup>1</sup>there was no reply from her <sup>2</sup>went home

And when he was come into his house, he took a knife and laid hold on his concubine and divided her, together with her bones, into twelve pieces, and sent her into all the coasts of Israel.

And it was so that all that saw it said, "There was no such deed done nor seen, from the day that the Children of Israel came up out of the land of Egypt unto this day! Consider of it, take advice, and speak your minds!"

Then all the Children of Israel went out, and the congregation was gathered together as one man - from Dan even to Beersheba with the land of Gilead - unto THE LORD in Mizpeh.

And the chief of all the people, even of all the tribes of Israel, presented themselves in the assembly of the people of God, four hundred thousand footmen that drew sword. (Now, the children of Benjamin heard that the Children of Israel were gone up to Mizpeh).

Then said the Children of Israel, "Tell us, how was this wickedness?"

And the Levite, the husband of the woman that was slain, answered and said, "I came into Gibeah <sup>1</sup>that belongeth to Benjamin (I and my concubine) to lodge. And the men of Gibeah rose against me, and beset the house round about upon me by night, and thought to have slain me! And my concubine have they <sup>2</sup>forced that she is dead! And I took my concubine, and cut her in pieces, and sent her throughout all the country of the inheritance of Israel - for they have committed lewdness and folly in Israel! Behold, ye are all Children of Israel; give here your advice and counsel!" *<sup>1</sup>which belongs to the Tribe of Benjamin <sup>2</sup>raped to death*

And all the people arose as one man, saying, "We will not any of us go to his tent, neither will we any of us turn into his house. But now this shall be the thing which we will do to Gibeah: we will go up by lot against it, and we will take ten men of an hundred throughout all the tribes of Israel, and an hundred of a thousand, and a thousand out of ten thousand, to fetch victual for the people, that they may do when they come to Gibeah of Benjamin according to all the folly that they have wrought in Israel!"

So all the men of Israel were gathered against the city, knit together as one man.

And the tribes of Israel sent men through all the tribe of Benjamin, saying, "What wickedness is this that is done among you?! Now therefore deliver us the men - the children of Belial which are in Gibeah - that we may put them to death and put away evil from Israel!"

But the children of Benjamin would not hearken to the voice of their brethren the Children of Israel, but the children of Benjamin gathered themselves together out of the cities unto Gibeah to go out to battle against the Children of Israel. And the children of Benjamin were numbered at that time out of the cities twenty and six thousand men that drew sword, beside the inhabitants of Gibeah, which were numbered seven hundred chosen men. Among all this people there were seven hundred chosen men lefthanded; every one could sling stones at an <sup>1</sup>hair breadth, and not miss. *<sup>1</sup>a spot the width of a hair*

And the men of Israel, beside Benjamin, were numbered four hundred thousand men that drew sword; all these were men of war.

And the Children of Israel arose and went up to the House of God and asked counsel of God and said, "Which of us shall go up first to the battle against the children of Benjamin?"

And THE LORD said, "Judah shall go up first."

And the Children of Israel rose up in the morning and encamped against Gibeah. And the men of Israel went out to battle against Benjamin; and the men of Israel put themselves in array to fight against them at Gibeah. And the children of Benjamin came forth out of Gibeah and destroyed down to the ground of the Israelites that day twenty and two thousand men. And the people the men of Israel encouraged themselves, and set their battle again in array in the place where they put themselves in array the first day.

And the Children of Israel went up and wept before THE LORD until even, and asked counsel of THE LORD, saying, "Shall I go up again to battle against the children of Benjamin my brother?"

And THE LORD said, "Go up against him."

And the Children of Israel came near against the children of Benjamin the second day. And Benjamin went forth against them out of Gibeah the second day, and destroyed down to the ground of the Children of Israel again eighteen thousand men; all these drew the sword.

Then all the Children of Israel, and all the people, went up, and came unto the House of God, and wept, and sat there before THE LORD, and fasted that day until even, and offered burnt offerings and peace offerings before THE LORD.

And the Children of Israel inquired of THE LORD (for the Ark of the Covenant of God was there in those days, and Phinehas, the son of Eleazar the son of Aaron, <sup>1</sup>stood before it in those days), saying, "Shall I yet again go out to battle against the children of Benjamin my brother, or shall I cease?" *<sup>1</sup>was high priest*

And THE LORD said, "Go up; for to morrow I will deliver them into thine hand."

And Israel set liers-in-wait round about Gibeah. And the Children of Israel went up against the children of Benjamin on the third day, and put themselves in array against Gibeah, as at other times. And the children of Benjamin went out against the people, and were drawn away from the city; and they began to smite of the people, and kill, as at other times, in the highways - of which one goeth up to the House of God, and the other to Gibeah in the field - about thirty men of Israel.

And the children of Benjamin said, "They are smitten down before us, as at the first!"

But the Children of Israel said, "Let us flee and draw them from the city unto the highways."

And all the men of Israel rose up out of their place and put themselves in array at Baaltamar; and the liers-in-wait of Israel came forth out of their places, even out of the meadows of Gibeah. And there came against Gibeah ten thousand chosen men out of all Israel and the battle was sore, but they knew not that <sup>1</sup>evil was near them. And THE LORD smote Benjamin before Israel, and the Children of Israel destroyed of the Benjamites that day twenty and five thousand and an hundred men; all these drew the sword. *<sup>1</sup>their doom was near*

So the children of Benjamin saw that they were smitten; for the men of Israel gave place to the Benjamites because they trusted unto the liers-in-wait which they had set beside Gibeah. And the liers-in-wait hastened and rushed upon Gibeah; and the liers-in-wait drew themselves along and smote all the city with the edge of the sword.

Now, there was an appointed <sup>1</sup>sign between the men of Israel and the liers-in-wait, that they should make a great flame with smoke rise up out of the city. And when the men of Israel retired in the battle, Benjamin began to smite and kill of the men of Israel about thirty persons; for they said, "Surely they are smitten down before us, as in the first battle!" *<sup>1</sup>signal*

But when the flame began to arise up out of the city with a pillar of smoke, the Benjamites looked behind them and, behold, the flame of the city ascended up to heaven. And when the men of Israel turned again, the men of Benjamin were amazed, for they saw that evil was come upon them. Therefore they turned their backs before the men of Israel unto the way of the wilderness; but the battle overtook them; and them which came out of the cities they destroyed in the midst of them. Thus they enclosed the Benjamites round about, and chased them, and trode them down with ease over against Gibeah toward the sunrising.

And there fell of Benjamin eighteen thousand men; all these were men of valour. And they turned and fled toward the wilderness unto the Rock of Rimmon; and they gleaned of them in the highways five thousand men and pursued hard after them unto Gidom and slew two thousand men of them, so that all which fell that day of Benjamin were twenty and five thousand men that drew the sword. All these were men of valour. But six hundred men turned and fled to the wilderness unto the Rock Rimmon, and abode in the Rock Rimmon four months.

And the men of Israel turned again upon the children of Benjamin and smote them with the edge of the sword, as well the men of every city as the beast and all that came to hand; also they set on fire all the cities that they came to.

Now the men of Israel had sworn in Mizpeh, saying, "There shall not any of us give his daughter unto Benjamin to wife!"

And the people came to the House of God, and abode there till even before God, and lifted up their voices and wept sore, and said, "O LORD God of Israel! Why is this come to pass in Israel that there should be to day one tribe lacking in Israel?!"

And it came to pass on the morrow that the people rose early and built there an altar, and offered burnt offerings and peace offerings.

And the Children of Israel said, "Who is there among all the tribes of Israel that came not up with the congregation unto THE LORD?" (for they had made a great oath concerning <sup>1</sup>him that came not up to THE LORD to Mizpeh, saying, *'He shall surely be put to death'*). *'anyone*

And the Children of Israel repented them for Benjamin their brother, and said, "There is one tribe cut off from Israel this day. How shall we do for wives for them that remain, seeing we have sworn by THE LORD that we will not give them of our daughters to wives?"

And they said, "What one is there of the tribes of Israel that came not up to Mizpeh to THE LORD?"

And, behold, there came none to the camp from Jabesh-Gilead to the assembly. For the people were numbered, and, behold, there were none of the inhabitants of Jabesh-Gilead there. And the congregation sent thither twelve thousand men of the valiantest, and commanded them, saying, "Go and smite the inhabitants of Jabesh-Gilead with the edge of the sword, with the women and the children! And this is the thing that ye shall do: Ye shall utterly destroy every male, and every woman that hath lain by man!"

And they found among the inhabitants of Jabesh-Gilead four hundred young virgins that had known no man by lying with any male; and they brought them unto the camp to Shiloh which is in the land of Canaan.

And the whole congregation sent some to speak to the children of Benjamin that were in the rock Rimmon, and to call peaceably unto them. And Benjamin came again at that time; and they gave them wives which they had saved alive of the women of Jabesh-Gilead; and yet so they sufficed them not. And the people repented them for Benjamin, because that THE LORD had made a breach in the tribes of Israel.

Then the elders of the congregation said, "How shall we do for wives for them that remain, seeing the women are destroyed out of Benjamin?"

And they said, "There *must* be an inheritance for them that be escaped of Benjamin, that <sup>1</sup>a tribe be not destroyed out of Israel! Howbeit, we may not give them wives of our daughters; for the Children of Israel have sworn, saying, *'Cursed be he that giveth a wife to Benjamin.'*" *'an entire tribe*

Then they said, "Behold, there is a feast of THE LORD in Shiloh yearly in a place which is on the north side of Bethel, on the east side of the highway that goeth up from Bethel to Shechem, and on the south of Lebonah."

Therefore they commanded the children of Benjamin, saying, "Go and lie in wait in the vineyards and see, and, behold, if the daughters of Shiloh come out to dance in dances, then come ye out of the vineyards and catch you every man his wife of the daughters of Shiloh and go to the land of Benjamin. And it shall be,

when their fathers or their brethren come unto us to complain, that we will say unto them, *'Be favourable unto them for our sakes, because we reserved not to each man his wife in the war'* - for ye did not give unto them at this time, that ye should be guilty."

And the children of Benjamin did so and took them wives, according to their number, of them that danced whom they caught; and they went and returned unto their inheritance, and repaired the cities, and dwelt in them. And the Children of Israel departed thence at that time, every man to his tribe and to his family, and they went out from thence every man to his inheritance. In those days there was no king in Israel; every man did that which was right in his own eyes.

Now it came to pass in the days when the judges ruled, that there was a famine in the land. And a certain man of Bethlehem-Judah went to sojourn in the country of Moab - he, and his wife, and his two sons. And the name of the man was Elimelech, and the name of his wife Naomi, and the name of his two sons Mahlon and Chilion - Ephrathites of Bethlehem-Judah. And they came into the country of Moab, and continued there.

And Elimelech, Naomi's husband, died; and she was left, and her two sons. And they took them wives of the women of Moab - the name of the one was Orpah, and the name of the other Ruth. And they dwelled there about ten years. And Mahlon and Chilion died also both of them; and <sup>1</sup>the woman was left of her two sons and her husband. Then she arose with her daughters-in-law, that she might return from the country of Moab; for she had heard in the country of Moab how that THE LORD had visited His people in giving them bread. Wherefore she went forth out of the place where she was, and her two daughters-in-law with her; and they went on the way to return unto the land of Judah.

And Naomi said unto her two daughters-in-law, "Go, return each to her mother's house. THE LORD deal kindly with you, as ye have dealt with the dead, and with me. THE LORD grant you that ye may find rest, each of you in the House of her husband."

Then she kissed them and they lifted up their voice and wept; and they said unto her, "Surely we will return with thee unto thy people!"

And Naomi said, "Turn again, my daughters. Why will ye go with me? Are there yet any more sons in my womb, that they may be your husbands? Turn again, my daughters, go your way; for I am too old to have an husband. If I should say *'I have hope'*, if I should have an husband also to night and should also bear sons, would ye tarry for them till they were grown? Would ye <sup>1</sup>stay for them from having husbands? Nay, my daughters; for it grieveth me much for your sakes that the hand of THE LORD is gone out against me."

*<sup>1</sup>remain husbandless until you can marry them*

And they lifted up their voice and wept again; and Orpah <sup>1</sup>kissed her mother-in-law. But Ruth clave unto her, and <sup>2</sup>she said, "Behold, thy sister-in-law is gone back unto her people and unto her gods; return thou after thy sister-in-law."

*<sup>1</sup>kissed her good-bye*

*<sup>2</sup>Naomi*

And Ruth said, "Entreat me not to leave thee or to return from following after thee; for whither thou goest I will go, and where thou lodgest I will lodge, thy people shall be my people, and thy God my God, where thou diest will I die, and there will I be buried. THE LORD do so to me, and more also if ought but death part thee and me!" When <sup>1</sup>she saw that <sup>2</sup>she was stedfastly minded to go with her, then she <sup>3</sup>left speaking unto her.

*<sup>1</sup>Naomi <sup>2</sup>Ruth <sup>3</sup>stopped trying to convince her to leave*

So they two went until they came to Bethlehem. And it came to pass, when they were come to Bethlehem that all the city was moved about them, and they said, "Is this Naomi?"

And she said unto them, "Call me not *Naomi*. Call me <sup>1</sup>*Mara* - for The Almighty hath dealt very bitterly with me. I went out full, and THE LORD hath brought me home again empty. Why then call ye me Naomi, seeing THE LORD hath testified against me, and the Almighty hath afflicted me?" <sup>1</sup>*Mary/Maria ["bitterness"]*

So Naomi returned and Ruth the Moabitess, her daughter-in-law, with her, which returned out of the country of Moab. And they came to Bethlehem in the beginning of barley harvest. And Naomi had a kinsman of her husband's, a mighty man of wealth of the family of Elimelech; and his name was Boaz.

And Ruth the Moabitess said unto Naomi, "Let me now go to the field and glean ears of corn after him in whose sight I shall find grace."

And she said unto her, "Go, my daughter."

And she went, and came and gleaned in the field after the reapers; and her <sup>1</sup>hap was to <sup>2</sup>light on a part of the field belonging unto Boaz who was of the kindred of <sup>3</sup>Elimelech.

<sup>1</sup>*happenance/good fortune* <sup>2</sup>*come upon* <sup>3</sup>*Naomi's deceased husband*

And, behold, Boaz came from Bethlehem and said unto the reapers, "THE LORD be with you!"

And they answered him, "THE LORD bless thee!"

Then said Boaz unto his servant that was set over the reapers, "Whose damsel is this?"

And the servant that was set over the reapers answered and said, "It is the Moabitish damsel that came back with Naomi out of the country of Moab, and she said, '*I pray you, let me glean and gather after the reapers among the sheaves*'. So she came, and hath continued even from the morning until now, that she tarried a little in the house."

Then said Boaz unto Ruth, "Hearest thou not, my daughter? Go not to glean in another field, neither go from hence, but abide here <sup>1</sup>fast by my maidens. Let thine eyes be on the field that they do reap, and go thou after them (have I not charged the young men that they shall not touch thee?); and when thou art athirst, go unto the vessels and drink of that which the young men have drawn." <sup>1</sup>*close by*

Then she fell on her face and bowed herself to the ground, and said unto him, "Why have I found grace in thine eyes that thou shouldest take knowledge of me, seeing I am a stranger?"

And Boaz answered and said unto her, "It hath fully been showed me all that thou hast done unto thy mother-in-law since the death of thine husband, and how thou hast left thy father and thy mother and the land of thy nativity and art come unto a people which thou knewest not heretofore. THE LORD <sup>1</sup>recompense thy work and a full reward be given thee of THE LORD God of Israel, under whose wings thou art come to trust." <sup>1</sup>*reward/payment*

Then she said, "Let me find favour in thy sight, my lord; for that thou hast comforted me and for that thou hast spoken friendly unto thine handmaid, though I be not like unto one of thine handmaidens."

And Boaz said unto her, "At mealtime come thou hither and eat of the bread and dip thy morsel in the vinegar."

And she sat beside the reapers; and he reached her parched corn, and she did eat, and was sufficed, and left. And when she was risen up to glean, Boaz commanded his young men, saying, "Let her glean even among the sheaves, and reproach her not; and let fall also some of the handfuls <sup>1</sup>of purpose for her, and leave them, that she may glean them, and rebuke her not." <sup>1</sup>*drop on purpose*

So she gleaned in the field until even, and beat out that she had gleaned; and it was about an <sup>1</sup>ephah of barley! <sup>1</sup>over 20 quarts

And she took it up and went into the city. And her mother-in-law saw what she had gleaned; and she brought forth and gave to her <sup>1</sup>that she had reserved after she was sufficed. <sup>1</sup>that which

And her mother-in-law said unto her, "Where hast thou gleaned to day? And where wroughtest thou? Blessed be he that did take knowledge of thee!"

And she <sup>1</sup>showed her mother-in-law with whom she had wrought, and said, "The man's name with whom I wrought to day is Boaz." <sup>1</sup>revealed/made known to

And Naomi said unto her daughter-in-law, "Blessed be he of THE LORD, who hath not left off his kindness to the living and to the dead!!"

And Naomi said unto her, "The man is near of kin unto us, one of our next kinsmen!"

And Ruth the Moabitess said, "He said unto me also, 'Thou shalt keep fast by my young men, until they have ended all my harvest'."

And Naomi said unto Ruth her daughter-in-law, "It is good, my daughter, that thou go out with his maidens, that they meet thee not in any other field."

So she kept fast by the maidens of Boaz to glean unto the end of barley harvest and of wheat harvest; and dwelt with her mother-in-law.

Then Naomi, her mother-in-law, said unto her, "My daughter, shall I not seek <sup>1</sup>rest for thee, that it may be well with thee? And now, is not Boaz of our kindred, with whose maidens thou wast? Behold, he <sup>2</sup>winnoweth barley to night in the threshingfloor. Wash thy self therefore, and anoint thee, and put thy raiment upon thee, and get thee down to the floor - but make not thyself known unto the man until he shall have done eating and drinking. And it shall be, when he lieth down, that thou shalt <sup>3</sup>mark the place where he shall lie, and thou shalt go in, and uncover his feet and lay thee down; and he will tell thee what thou shalt do." <sup>1</sup>permanent home <sup>2</sup>blow off barley husks with a winnow paddle <sup>3</sup>take note/notice/see where

And she said unto her, "All that thou sayest unto me I will do."

And she went down unto the <sup>1</sup>floor, and did according to all that her mother-in-law bade her. And when Boaz had eaten and drunk and his heart was merry, he went to lie down at the end of the heap of corn; and she came softly and <sup>2</sup>uncovered his feet and laid her down. And it came to pass at midnight that the man was afraid and turned himself - and, behold, a woman lay at his feet! <sup>1</sup>threshing floor <sup>2</sup>(see insert)

And he said, "Who art thou?!"

And she answered, "I am Ruth, thine handmaid; spread therefore thy skirt over thine handmaid, for thou art a near kinsman."

And he said, "Blessed be thou of THE LORD, my daughter! For thou hast showed more kindness in the latter end than at the beginning, inasmuch as thou followedst not young men, whether poor or rich! And now, my daughter, fear not; I will do to thee all that thou requires; for all the city of my people doth know that

#### <sup>2</sup>UNCOVER HIS FEET

The custom of the time allowed a servant or woman to lie crossways at the foot of their master at night, and if the servant/woman wanted a covering, custom allowed them to use the part of the covering on their master's bed that covers his feet. It was considered most honorable.

thou art a virtuous woman. And now - it is true that I am thy near kinsman; howbeit, there is a kinsman nearer than I. Tarry this night, and it shall be in the morning, that if he will perform unto thee <sup>1</sup>the part of a kinsman, <sup>2</sup>well; let him do the kinsman's part. But if he will not do the part of a kinsman to thee, then will I do the part of a kinsman to thee, as THE LORD liveth. Lie down until the morning.”

<sup>1</sup>(see insert) <sup>2</sup>very well/so be it

And she lay at his feet until the morning; and she rose up before one could know another.

And he said, “Let it not be known that a woman came into the floor.”

Also he said, “Bring the veil that thou hast upon thee, and hold it.”

And when she held it, he measured six measures of barley and laid it on her, and she went into the city. And when she came to her mother-in-law, she said, “Who art thou, my daughter?”

And she told her all that the man had done to her. And she said, “These six measures of barley gave he me; for he said to me, ‘Go not <sup>1</sup>empty unto thy mother-in-law.’”

<sup>1</sup>empty handed

Then said <sup>1</sup>she, “Sit still, my daughter, until thou know how the matter will fall; for the man will not be in rest until he have finished the thing this day.”

<sup>1</sup>Naomi

Then went Boaz up to the gate and sat him down there; and, behold, the kinsman of whom Boaz spake came by, unto whom he said, “Ho, such a one! Turn aside, sit down here.” And he turned aside, and sat down.

And he took ten men of the elders of the city, and said, “Sit ye down here”. And they sat down.

And he said unto the kinsman, “Naomi (that is come again out of the country of Moab) selleth a parcel of land which was our brother Elimelech's. And I thought to advertise thee, saying buy it before the inhabitants and before the elders of my people. If thou wilt redeem it, redeem it; but if thou wilt not redeem it, then tell me, that I may know. For there is none to redeem it beside thee; and I am <sup>1</sup>after thee.”

<sup>1</sup>next in line to claim it

And he said, “I will redeem it.”

Then said Boaz, “What day thou buyest the field of the hand of Naomi, thou must buy it also of Ruth the Moabitess, the wife of the dead, to raise up the name of the dead upon his inheritance.”

And the kinsman said, “I cannot redeem it for myself, lest I mar mine own inheritance; redeem thou my right to thyself, for I cannot redeem it.”

Now this was the manner in former time in Israel concerning redeeming and concerning changing, for to confirm all things; a man plucked off his shoe, and gave it to his neighbour; and this was a testimony in Israel. Therefore the kinsman said unto Boaz, “Buy it for thee.” So he drew off his shoe.

And Boaz said unto the elders and unto all the people, “Ye are witnesses this day that I have bought all that was Elimelech's, and all that was Chilion's and Mahlon's, of the hand of Naomi. Moreover, Ruth the Moabitess, the wife of Mahlon, have I purchased to be my wife, to raise up the name of the dead upon his inheritance, that the name of the dead be not cut off from among his brethren and from the gate of his place. Ye are witnesses this day.”

#### <sup>1</sup>THE PART OF A KINSMAN

Biblical law declares in Deuteronomy 25:5 that, when a man dies, especially without children, the duty [or “part”] falls to his nearest brother to marry his widow, to care for her and raise a child in his honor.

And all the people that were in the gate and the elders, said, "We are witnesses. THE LORD make the woman that is come into thine house like Rachel and like Leah which two did build the House of Israel, and do thou worthily in Ephratah and be famous in Bethlehem, and let thy House be like the House of Pharez whom Tamar bare unto Judah - of the seed which THE LORD shall give thee of this young woman."

So Boaz took Ruth, and she was his wife; and when he went in unto her, THE LORD gave her conception, and she bare a son.

And the women said unto Naomi, "Blessed be THE LORD which hath not left thee this day without a kinsman, that his name may be famous in Israel! And he shall be unto thee a restorer of thy life, and a nourisher of thine old age; for thy daughter-in-law, which loveth thee, which is better to thee than seven sons, hath borne him!"

And Naomi took the child, and laid it in her bosom, and became nurse unto it. And the women her neighbours gave it a name, saying, "There is a son born to Naomi." And they called his name Obed; he is the father of Jesse, the father of David.

#### **Now these are the generations of Pharez**

Pharez begat Hezron,  
and Hezron begat Ram,  
and Ram begat Amminadab,  
and Amminadab begat Nahshon,  
and Nahshon begat Salmon,  
and Salmon begat Boaz,  
and Boaz begat Obed,  
and Obed begat Jesse,  
and Jesse begat David.

Now, there was a certain man of RamathaimZophim, of Mount Ephraim, and his name was Elkanah, the son of Jeroham, the son of Elihu, the son of Tohu, the son of Zuph, an Ephrathite. And he had two wives; the name of the one was Hannah and the name of the other Peninnah. And Peninnah had children, but Hannah had no children.

And this man went up out of his city yearly to worship and to sacrifice unto THE LORD of Hosts in Shiloh. And the two sons of Eli - Hophni and Phinehas, the priests of THE LORD - were there. And when the time was that Elkanah offered, he gave to Peninnah his wife and to all her sons and her daughters, portions; but unto Hannah he gave a worthy portion, for he loved Hannah, but THE LORD had shut up her womb. And her adversary also provoked her sore, for to make her fret, because THE LORD had shut up her womb.

And as he did so year by year, when she went up to the House of THE LORD, so she provoked her; therefore she wept and did not eat.

Then said Elkanah her husband to her, "Hannah, why weepest thou, and why eatest thou not, and why is thy heart grieved? Am not I better to thee than ten sons?" So Hannah rose up after they had eaten in Shiloh and after they had drunk.

Now, Eli the priest sat upon a seat by a post of the Temple of THE LORD. And <sup>1</sup>she was in bitterness of soul, and prayed unto THE LORD, and wept sore.

*<sup>1</sup>Hannah*

And she vowed a vow, and said, "O LORD of Hosts, if Thou wilt indeed look on the affliction of Thine handmaid, and remember me and not forget Thine handmaid, but wilt give unto thine handmaid a man child, then I will give him unto THE LORD all the days of his life, and there shall no razor come upon his head."

And it came to pass, as she continued praying before THE LORD, that Eli <sup>1</sup>marked her mouth. Now Hannah, she spake in her heart - only her lips moved, but her voice was not heard. Therefore Eli thought she had been drunken. <sup>1</sup>noticed

And Eli said unto her, "How long wilt thou be drunken? Put away thy wine from thee!"

And Hannah answered and said, "No, my lord, I am a woman of a sorrowful spirit. I have drunk neither wine nor strong drink, but have poured out my soul before THE LORD. Count not thine handmaid for a daughter of Belial! For out of the abundance of my complaint and grief have I spoken hitherto."

Then Eli answered and said, "Go in peace; and the God of Israel grant thee thy petition that thou hast asked of Him."

And she said, "Let thine handmaid find grace in thy sight."

So the woman went her way, and did eat, and her countenance was no more sad. And they rose up in the morning early, and worshipped before THE LORD, and returned, and came to their house to Ramah. And Elkanah knew Hannah his wife; and THE LORD remembered her.

Wherefore it came to pass, when the time was come about after Hannah had conceived, that she bare a son and called his name *Samuel*, saying, "Because I have asked him of THE LORD."

And the man Elkanah and all his House went up to offer unto THE LORD the yearly sacrifice and his vow. But Hannah went not up; for she said unto her husband, "I will not go up until the child be weaned; and then I will bring him, that he may appear before THE LORD, and there abide for ever."

And Elkanah her husband said unto her, "Do what seemeth thee good; tarry until thou have weaned him - only, THE LORD establish His Word."

So the woman abode, and gave her son suck until she weaned him. And when she had weaned him, she took him up with her, with three bullocks, and one ephah of flour, and a bottle of wine, and brought him unto the House of THE LORD in Shiloh; and the child was young. And they slew a bullock, and brought the child to Eli.

And she said, "Oh my lord! As thy soul liveth, my lord, I am the woman that stood by thee here, praying unto THE LORD. For *this* child I prayed, and THE LORD hath given me my petition which I asked of Him! Therefore also I have lent him to THE LORD; as long as he liveth he shall be lent to THE LORD!"

And he worshipped THE LORD there.

And Hannah prayed and said, "My heart rejoiceth in THE LORD! Mine horn is exalted in THE LORD! My mouth is enlarged over mine enemies, because I rejoice in Thy salvation! There is none holy as THE LORD, for there is none beside Thee! Neither is there any Rock like our God! Talk no more so exceeding proudly; let not arrogancy come out of your mouth - for THE LORD is a God of knowledge and by Him actions are weighed! The bows of the mighty men are broken and they that stumbled are girded with strength! They that were full have hired out themselves for bread and they that were hungry <sup>1</sup>ceased, so that the barren hath born <sup>2</sup>seven and she that hath many children is waxed feeble! THE LORD killeth and maketh alive, He

bringeth down to the grave and <sup>3</sup>bringeth up! THE LORD maketh poor and maketh rich, He bringeth low and lifteth up! He raiseth up the poor out of the dust and lifteth up the beggar from the dunghill to set them among princes and to make them inherit the throne of glory - for the <sup>4</sup>pillars of the earth are THE LORD's and He hath set the world upon them! He will <sup>5</sup>keep the feet of His <sup>6</sup>saints and the wicked shall be silent in darkness; for by strength shall no man prevail! The adversaries of THE LORD shall be broken to pieces; out of heaven shall He thunder upon them! THE LORD shall judge the ends of the earth, and He shall give strength unto His King and exalt the horn of <sup>7</sup>His Anointed!"

<sup>1</sup>Ceased to hunger <sup>2</sup>Seven children <sup>3</sup>Resurrects from the dead <sup>4</sup>Continental columns and crustal layers <sup>5</sup>Guide <sup>6</sup>"sanctified ones" (all those who believe in Him) <sup>7</sup>the Messiah

And Elkanah went to Ramah, to his house. And the child did minister unto THE LORD before Eli the priest. Now, the sons of Eli were <sup>1</sup>sons of Belial; they knew not THE LORD. And the priests' custom with the people was that when any man offered sacrifice, the priest's servant came (while the flesh was in seething) with a fleshhook of three <sup>2</sup>teeth in his hand; and he struck it into the pan, or kettle, or caldron, or pot; all that the fleshhook brought up, the priest took for himself. So they did in Shiloh, unto all the Israelites that came thither. Also before they burnt the fat, the priest's servant came and said to the man that sacrificed, 'Give flesh to roast for the priest; for he will not have <sup>3</sup>sodden flesh of thee, but raw.' And if any man said unto him, 'Let them not fail to burn the fat presently, and then take as much as thy soul desireth'; then he would answer him, 'Nay; but thou shalt give it me now; and if not, I will take it by force!' Wherefore the sin of the young men was very great before THE LORD, for men abhorred <sup>4</sup>the offering of THE LORD.

<sup>1</sup>Servants of the god Bel/Satan/wicked <sup>2</sup>Prongs <sup>3</sup>soaked with moisture/badly cooked <sup>4</sup>this method of offering

But Samuel ministered before THE LORD, being a child, girded with a linen ephod. Moreover his mother made him a little coat and brought it to him from year to year when she came up with her husband to offer the yearly sacrifice. And Eli blessed Elkanah and his wife, and said, "THE LORD <sup>1</sup>give thee seed of this woman for the loan which is lent to THE LORD." <sup>1</sup>give you another child by this woman in place of the one that you loaned to God

And they went unto their own home. And THE LORD visited Hannah so that she conceived and bare three sons and two daughters! And the child Samuel grew before THE LORD.

Now Eli was very old and heard all that his sons did unto all Israel, and how they <sup>1</sup>lay with the women that assembled at the door of The Tabernacle of the Congregation. <sup>1</sup>fornicated

And he said unto them, "Why do ye such things? For I hear of your evil dealings by all this people! Nay, my sons; for it is no good report that I hear! Ye make THE LORD's people to transgress! If one man sin against another, the judge shall judge him; but if a man sin against *THE LORD*, who shall <sup>1</sup>entreat for him?" <sup>1</sup>intercede/plead/negotiate

Notwithstanding, they hearkened not unto the voice of their father, because THE LORD would slay them.

And the child Samuel grew on, and was in favour both with THE LORD, and also with men.

And there came a man of God unto Eli and said unto him, "Thus saith THE LORD: Did I plainly appear unto the House of thy father when they were in Egypt in Pharaoh's house? And did I choose him out of all the tribes of Israel to be My priest, to offer upon Mine Altar, to burn incense, to wear an ephod before Me? And did I give unto the House of thy father all the offerings made by fire of the Children of Israel? Wherefore kick ye at My sacrifice and at Mine offering which I have commanded in My habitation; and honourest thy sons above *Me* to make yourselves fat with the chiefest of all the offerings of Israel My People?! Wherefore THE LORD God of Israel saith, I said indeed that thy House and the House of thy father should walk before Me for ever! But *now* THE LORD saith: Be it far from Me! <sup>1</sup>For them that honour Me I will honour, and they that despise Me shall be lightly esteemed! Behold, the days come, that I will cut off thine arm, and the arm of thy father's House, that there shall not be an <sup>2</sup>old man in thine house. And thou shalt see an enemy in My

habitation, in all the wealth which God shall give Israel; and there shall not be an <sup>2</sup>old man in thine house for ever. And the man of thine, whom I shall not cut off from Mine Altar, shall be to consume thine eyes and to grieve thine heart; and all the increase of thine House shall die <sup>3</sup>in the flower of their age. And this shall be a sign unto thee that shall come upon thy two sons - on Hophni and Phinehas - in one day they shall die, both of them. And I will raise Me up a *faithful* priest that shall do according to that which is in *Mine* heart and in *My* mind: and I will build him a sure House; and he shall walk before <sup>4</sup>Mine Anointed for ever. And it shall come to pass that every one that is left in thine House shall come and <sup>5</sup>crouch to him for a piece of silver and a morsel of bread, and shall say, *'Put me, I pray thee, into one of the priests' offices, that I may eat a piece of bread!'*"  
*<sup>1</sup>Only for the ones <sup>2</sup>wise elders <sup>3</sup>in their prime <sup>4</sup>the Messiah <sup>5</sup>grovel*

And the child Samuel ministered unto THE LORD before Eli. And the Word of THE LORD was <sup>1</sup>precious in those days; there was no open vision. And it came to pass at that time, when Eli was laid down in his place and his eyes began to wax dim that he could not see, and ere <sup>2</sup>the lamp of God went out in the Temple of THE LORD where the Ark of God was, and Samuel was laid down to sleep, that THE LORD called Samuel.  
*<sup>1</sup>valuable (in the sense of being very rare) <sup>2</sup>the Menorah*

And he answered, "Here am I!"

And he ran unto Eli, and said, "Here am I; for thou calledst me."

And he said, "I called not; lie down again." And he went and lay down.

And THE LORD called yet again, "Samuel....!"

And Samuel arose and went to Eli and said, "Here am I; for thou didst call me."

And he answered, "I called not, my son; lie down again."

Now, Samuel did not yet know THE LORD, neither was the Word of THE LORD yet revealed unto him. And THE LORD called Samuel again the third time.

And he arose and went to Eli and said, "Here am I; for thou didst call me."

And Eli perceived that THE LORD had called the child. Therefore Eli said unto Samuel, "Go, lie down; and it shall be, if He call thee, that thou shalt say, *'Speak, LORD; for Thy servant heareth!'*"

So Samuel went and lay down in his place. And THE LORD came and stood and called as at other times, "Samuel... Samuel....!"

Then Samuel answered, "Speak; for Thy servant heareth."

And THE LORD said to Samuel, "Behold, I will do a thing in Israel at which both the ears of every one that heareth it shall tingle! In that day I will perform against Eli all things which I have spoken concerning his House. When I begin, I will also <sup>1</sup>make an end. For I have told him that I will judge his House for ever for the iniquity which <sup>2</sup>he knoweth, because his sons made themselves vile and he restrained them not. And therefore I have sworn unto the House of Eli that the iniquity of Eli's House shall not be <sup>3</sup>purged with sacrifice nor offering <sup>4</sup>for ever."  
*<sup>1</sup>bring it to an end <sup>2</sup>he knows has been done <sup>3</sup>made clean <sup>4</sup>indefinitely*

And Samuel lay until the morning, and opened the doors of the House of THE LORD. And Samuel feared to show Eli the vision.

Then Eli called Samuel, and said, "Samuel...! My son...!"

And he answered, "Here am I."

And he said, "What is the thing that THE LORD hath said unto thee? I pray thee hide it not from me! God do so to thee, and more also, if thou hide any thing from me of all the things that He said unto thee!"

And Samuel told him every whit and hid nothing from him. And he said, "It *is* THE LORD! Let Him do what seemeth Him good."

And Samuel grew, and THE LORD was with him, and did let none of His Words fall to the ground. And all Israel, from Dan even to Beersheba, knew that Samuel was established to be a prophet of THE LORD. And THE LORD appeared again in Shiloh (for THE LORD revealed Himself to Samuel in Shiloh by the Word of THE LORD). And the word of Samuel came to all Israel.

Now, Israel went out against the Philistines to battle and pitched beside Ebenezer, and the Philistines pitched in Aphek. And the Philistines put themselves in array against Israel; and when they joined battle, Israel was smitten before the Philistines, and they slew of the army in the field about four thousand men.

And when the people were come into the camp, the elders of Israel said, "Wherefore hath THE LORD smitten us to day before the Philistines? Let us fetch the Ark of the Covenant of THE LORD out of Shiloh unto us that, when it cometh among us, it may save us out of the hand of our enemies!"

So the people sent to Shiloh, that they might bring from thence the Ark of the Covenant of THE LORD of Hosts which dwelleth between the cherubims. And the two sons of Eli (Hophni and Phinehas) were there with the Ark of the Covenant of God. And when the Ark of the Covenant of THE LORD came into the camp, all Israel shouted with a great shout so that the earth rang again.

And when the Philistines heard the noise of the shout, they said, "What meaneth the noise of this great shout in the camp of the Hebrews?!" And they understood that the Ark of THE LORD was come into the camp.

And the Philistines were afraid, for they said, "God is come into the camp!" And they said, "Woe unto us! For there hath not been such a thing heretofore! Woe unto us! Who shall deliver us out of the hand of these mighty Gods? These are the Gods that smote the Egyptians with all the plagues in the wilderness! Be strong, and <sup>1</sup>quit yourselves like men, O ye Philistines, that ye be not servants unto the Hebrews, as they have been to you! <sup>1</sup>Quit yourselves like men, and fight!" *'be a man/be manly*

And the Philistines fought and Israel was smitten, and they fled every man into his tent. And there was a very great slaughter; for there fell of Israel thirty thousand footmen. And the Ark of God was taken, and the two sons of Eli (Hophni and Phinehas) were slain.

And there ran a man of Benjamin out of the army and came to Shiloh the same day, with his clothes rent and with <sup>1</sup>earth upon his head. *'soil (put upon the head for grieving)*

And when he came, lo, Eli sat upon a seat by the wayside watching, for his heart trembled <sup>1</sup>for the Ark of God. *'for the safety of*

And when the man came into the city and told it, all the city cried out. And when Eli heard the noise of the crying, he said, "What meaneth the noise of this tumult?!"

And the man came in hastily and told Eli. Now, Eli was ninety and eight years old, and his eyes were dim that he could not see. And the man said unto Eli, "I am he that came out of the army and I fled to day out of the army."

And he said, "What <sup>1</sup>is there done, my son?"

*<sup>1</sup>has happened*

And the messenger answered and said, "Israel is fled before the Philistines and there hath been also a great slaughter among the people and thy two sons also, Hophni and Phinehas, are dead and... the Ark of God is taken!!!"

And it came to pass, when he made mention of the Ark of God, that <sup>1</sup>he fell from off the seat backward by the side of the gate, and his neck brake and he died (for he was an old man and heavy). And he had judged Israel forty years.

*<sup>1</sup>Eli*

And his daughter-in-law (Phinehas' wife) was with child, near to be delivered. And when she heard the tidings - that the Ark of God was taken and that her father-in-law and her husband were dead - she bowed herself and travailed, for her pains came upon her. And about the time of her death the women that stood by her said unto her, "Fear not; for thou hast borne a son."

But she answered not, neither did she regard it. And she named the child Ichabod, saying, "The glory is departed from Israel!" (because the Ark of God was taken and because of her father-in-law and her husband). And she said, "The glory is departed from Israel, for the Ark of God is taken!!!"

And the Philistines took the Ark of God and brought it from Ebenezer unto Ashdod. When the Philistines took the Ark of God, they brought it into the <sup>1</sup>house of Dagon, and set it by Dagon.

*<sup>1</sup>temple*

And when they of Ashdod arose early on the morrow, behold, Dagon was fallen upon his face to the earth before the Ark of THE LORD. And they took Dagon, and set him in his place again.

And when they arose early on the morrow morning, behold, Dagon was fallen upon his face to the ground before the Ark of THE LORD - and the head of Dagon and both the palms of his hands were cut off upon the threshold; only the stump of Dagon was left to him. Therefore neither the priests of Dagon, nor any that come into Dagon's house, tread on the threshold of Dagon in Ashdod unto this day. But the hand of THE LORD was heavy upon them of Ashdod, and He destroyed them and smote them with <sup>1</sup>emerods, even Ashdod and the coasts thereof.

*<sup>1</sup>ulcers/hemorrhoids*

And when the men of Ashdod saw that it was so, they said, "The Ark of the God of Israel shall not abide with us, for His hand is sore upon us and upon Dagon our god!"

They sent therefore and gathered all the lords of the Philistines unto them, and said, "What shall we do with the Ark of the God of Israel?"

And they answered, "Let the Ark of the God of Israel be carried about unto Gath!"

And they carried the Ark of the God of Israel about <sup>1</sup>thither. And it was so that, after they had carried it about, the hand of THE LORD was against the city with a very great destruction, and He smote the men of the city, both small and great, and they had <sup>2</sup>emerods in their secret parts.

*<sup>1</sup>to the city of Gath <sup>2</sup>ulcers on the genitals*

Therefore they sent the Ark of God to Ekron. And it came to pass, as the Ark of God came to Ekron, that the Ekronites cried out, saying, "They have brought about the Ark of the God of Israel to us, to slay us and our people!!!"

So they sent and gathered together all the lords of the Philistines, and said, "Send away the Ark of the God of Israel and let it go again to His own place, that it slay us not and our people!!" (for there was a deadly destruction throughout all the city; the hand of God was very heavy there). And the men that died not were smitten with the emerods, and the cry of the city went up to heaven.

And the Ark of THE LORD was in the country of the Philistines seven months. And the Philistines called for the priests and the <sup>1</sup>diviners, saying, "What shall we do to the Ark of <sup>2</sup>THE LORD? Tell us wherewith we shall send it to His place!"

*<sup>1</sup>wizards/fortune tellers/sorcerers <sup>2</sup>Jehovah/Yahweh*

And they said, "If ye send away the Ark of the God of Israel, send it not <sup>1</sup>empty; but in any wise return Him a trespass offering. Then ye shall be healed, and it shall be known to you why His hand is not removed from you."

*<sup>1</sup>without a gift*

Then said they, "What shall be the trespass offering which we shall return to Him?"

They answered, "Five golden emerods and five golden mice, according to the number of the lords of the Philistines - for <sup>1</sup>one plague was on you all and on your lords. Wherefore ye shall make images of your emerods and images of your mice that mar the land; and ye shall give glory unto the God of Israel. Peradventure He will lighten His hand from off you and from off your gods and from off your land. Wherefore then do ye harden your hearts, as the Egyptians and Pharaoh hardened *their* hearts? When He had wrought wonderfully among them, did they not let the people go, and they departed? Now therefore make a new cart, and take two <sup>2</sup>milch kine on which there hath come no yoke, and tie the kine to the cart (and bring their calves home from them), and take the Ark of THE LORD and lay it upon the cart. And put the jewels of gold, which ye return Him for a trespass offering, in a coffer by the side thereof; and send it away that it may go. And see if it goeth up by the way of His own coast, to Bethshemesh) - then He *hath* done us this great evil. But if not, then we shall know that it is not His hand that smote us; it was <sup>3</sup>a chance that happened to us."

*<sup>1</sup>one and the same <sup>2</sup>milking heifer <sup>3</sup>mere coincidence*

And the men did so; and took two milch kine and tied them to the cart and shut up their calves at home. And they laid the Ark of THE LORD upon the cart, and the coffer with the mice of gold and the images of their emerods. And the kine took the straight way to the way of Bethshemesh and went along the highway, <sup>1</sup>lowing as they went, and turned not aside to the right hand or to the left.

*<sup>1</sup>mooring*

And the lords of the Philistines went after them unto the border of Bethshemesh. And they of Bethshemesh were reaping their wheat harvest in the valley; and they lifted up their eyes and saw the Ark and rejoiced to see it. And the cart came into the field of Joshua, a Bethshemite, and stood there where there was a great stone. And they <sup>1</sup>clave the wood of the cart, and offered the kine <sup>2</sup>a burnt offering unto THE LORD.

*<sup>1</sup>broke apart <sup>2</sup>as a*

And the Levites took down the Ark of THE LORD and the coffer that was with it (wherein the jewels of gold were), and put them on the great stone; and the men of Bethshemesh offered burnt offerings and sacrificed sacrifices the same day unto THE LORD. And when the five lords of the Philistines had seen it, they returned to Ekron the same day.

And these are the golden emerods which the Philistines returned for a trespass offering unto THE LORD:

- for Ashdod one,
- for Gaza one,
- for Askelon one,
- for Gath one,
- for Ekron one;

And the golden mice, according to the number of all the cities of the Philistines belonging to the five lords - both of fenced cities, and of country villages, even unto the great stone of Abel whereon they set down the Ark of THE LORD (which stone remaineth unto this day in the field of Joshua, the Bethshemite).

And He smote the men of Bethshemesh because they had looked into the Ark of THE LORD, even He smote of the people fifty thousand and threescore and ten men; and the people lamented, because THE LORD had smitten many of the people with a great slaughter.

And the men of Bethshemesh said, "Who is able to stand before this holy LORD God? And to whom shall He go up from us?"

And they sent messengers to the inhabitants of Kirjath-Jearim, saying, "The Philistines have brought again the Ark of THE LORD; come ye down and fetch it up to you."

And the men of Kirjath-Jearim came and fetched up the Ark of THE LORD and brought it into the house of Abinadab in the hill, and sanctified Eleazar his son to keep the Ark of THE LORD. And it came to pass, while the Ark abode in Kirjath-Jearim, that the time was long (for it was twenty years), and all the House of Israel lamented after THE LORD.

And Samuel spake unto all the House of Israel, saying, "If ye do return unto THE LORD with all your hearts, then put away the strange gods and Ashtaroth from among you, and prepare your hearts unto THE LORD and serve Him only, and He will deliver you out of the hand of the Philistines."

Then the Children of Israel did put away Baalim and Ashtaroth, and served THE LORD only.

And Samuel said, "Gather all Israel to Mizpeh, and I will pray for you unto THE LORD."

And they gathered together to Mizpeh, and drew water, and poured it out before THE LORD, and fasted on that day, and said there, "We have sinned against THE LORD!"

And Samuel judged the Children of Israel in Mizpeh. And when the Philistines heard that the Children of Israel were gathered together to Mizpeh, the lords of the Philistines went up against Israel. And when the Children of Israel heard it, they were afraid of the Philistines.

And the Children of Israel said to Samuel, "Cease not to cry unto THE LORD our God for us, that He will save us out of the hand of the Philistines!"

And Samuel took a sucking lamb and offered it for a burnt offering wholly unto THE LORD, and Samuel cried unto THE LORD for Israel - and THE LORD heard him.

And as Samuel was offering up the burnt offering, the Philistines drew near to battle against Israel. But THE LORD thundered with a great thunder on that day upon the Philistines and discomfited them; and they were smitten before Israel. And the men of Israel went out of Mizpeh, and pursued the Philistines, and smote them, until they came under Bethcar.

Then Samuel took a stone and set it between Mizpeh and Shen, and called the name of it Ebenezer, saying, "Hitherto hath THE LORD helped us."

So the Philistines were subdued and they came no more into the coast of Israel, and the hand of THE LORD was against the Philistines all the days of Samuel. And the cities which the Philistines had taken from Israel were restored to Israel, from Ekron even unto Gath; and the coasts thereof did Israel deliver out of the hands of the Philistines. And there was peace between Israel and the Amorites.

And Samuel judged Israel all the days of his life. And he went from year to year in circuit to Bethel, and Gilgal, and Mizpeh, and judged Israel in all those places. And his return was to Ramah (for there was his house); and there he judged Israel and there he built an altar unto THE LORD.

And it came to pass, when Samuel was old, that he made his sons judges over Israel. Now the name of his firstborn was

- Joel;

and the name of his second,

- Abiah.

They were judges in Beersheba. And his sons walked not in his ways, but turned aside after lucre, and took bribes, and perverted judgment. Then all the elders of Israel gathered themselves together, and came to Samuel unto Ramah, and said unto him, "Behold, thou art old, and thy sons walk not in thy ways. Now make us a king to judge us like all the nations."

But the thing displeased Samuel when they said, '*Give us a king to judge us*'. And Samuel prayed unto THE LORD.

And THE LORD said unto Samuel, "Hearken unto the voice of the people in all that they say unto thee - for they have not rejected *thee*, but they have rejected *ME* that I should not reign over them. According to all the works which they have done since the day that I brought them up out of Egypt, even unto this day wherewith they have forsaken Me and served other gods, so do they also unto thee. Now therefore hearken unto their voice - howbeit yet protest solemnly unto them and show them the manner of the king that shall reign over them."

And Samuel told all the Words of THE LORD unto the people that asked of him a king. And he said, "*This* will be the manner of the king that shall reign over you: he will take your sons and appoint them for himself, for his chariots, and to be his horsemen; and some shall run before his chariots. And he will appoint him captains over thousands and captains over fifties; and will set them to ear his ground and to reap his harvest and to make his instruments of war and instruments of his chariots. And he will take your daughters to be confectionaries, and to be cooks, and to be bakers. And he will take your fields and your vineyards and your oliveyards, even the best of them, and give them to his servants. And he will take the tenth of your seed and of your vineyards, and give to his officers, and to his servants. And he will take your menservants and your maidservants and your goodliest young men and your asses, and put them to his work. He will take the tenth of your sheep, and ye shall be his servants. And ye shall cry out in that day because of your king which ye shall have chosen you - and THE LORD will not hear you in that day!"

Nevertheless the people refused to obey the voice of Samuel; and they said, "Nay! But we *will* have a king over us, that we also may be like all the nations, and that our king may judge us, and go out before us, and fight our battles!"

And Samuel heard all the words of the people, and he rehearsed them in the ears of THE LORD. And THE LORD said to Samuel, "Hearken unto their voice and make them a king."

And Samuel said unto the men of Israel, "Go ye every man unto his city!"

Now, there was a man of Benjamin whose name was Kish (the son of Abiel, the son of Zeror, the son of Bechorath, the son of Aphiah), a Benjamite, a mighty man of power. And he had a son whose name was Saul, a choice young man, and a goodly; and there was not among the Children of Israel a goodlier person than he - from his shoulders and upward he was higher than any of the people.

And the asses of Kish, Saul's father, were lost; and Kish said to Saul his son, "Take now one of the servants with thee, and arise, go seek the asses."

And he passed through Mount Ephraim and passed through the land of Shalisha, but they found them not. Then they passed through the land of Shalim, and there they were not. And he passed through the land of the Benjamites, but they found them not. And when they were come to the land of Zuph, Saul said to his servant that was with him, "Come, and let us return; lest my father <sup>1</sup>leave caring for the asses and take thought for us." *<sup>1</sup>stop worrying about the asses and start worrying about us*

And he said unto him, "Behold now, there is in this city a man of God, and he is an honourable man. All that he saith cometh surely to pass. Now let us go thither - peradventure he can show us our way that we should go."

Then said Saul to his servant, "But, behold, if we go, what shall we bring the man? For the bread is spent in our vessels, and there is not a present to bring to the man of God. What have we?"

And the servant answered Saul again, and said, "Behold, I have here at hand the fourth part of a shekel of silver; that will I give to the man of God, to tell us our way."

(Beforetime in Israel, when a man went to inquire of God, thus he spake, "Come, and let us go to the Seer"; for he that is now called "a Prophet" was beforetime called "a Seer".)

Then said Saul to his servant, "Well said. Come, let us go."

So they went unto the city where the man of God was. And as they went up the hill to the city, they found young maidens going out to draw water, and said unto them, "Is the seer here?"

And they answered them and said, "He is. Behold, he is before you. Make haste now, for he came to day to the city; for there is a sacrifice of the people to day in the high place. As soon as ye be come into the city, ye shall straightway find him before he go up to the high place to eat; for the people will not eat until he come because he doth bless the sacrifice. And afterwards they eat that be bidden. Now therefore get you up; for about this time ye shall find him."

And they went up into the city; and when they were come into the city, behold, Samuel came out <sup>1</sup>against them for to go up to the high place. *<sup>1</sup>in front of them/ahead of them in the path, coming toward them*

Now, THE LORD had told Samuel in his ear a day before Saul came, saying, "To morrow about this time I will send thee a man out of the land of Benjamin, and thou shalt anoint him to be captain over My People Israel, that he may save My people out of the hand of the Philistines; for I have looked upon My People because their cry is come unto Me."

And when Samuel saw Saul, THE LORD said unto him, "Behold the man whom I spake to thee of! This same shall reign over My People!"

Then Saul drew near to Samuel in the gate and said, "Tell me, I pray thee, where The Seer's house is."

And Samuel answered Saul, and said, "I am The Seer. Go up before me unto the high place; for ye shall eat with me to day, and to morrow I will let thee go, and will <sup>1</sup>tell thee all that is in thine heart. And... as for thine asses that were lost three days ago, set not thy mind on them; for they are found. And on whom is all the desire of Israel? Is it not on thee, and on all thy father's House?" *<sup>1</sup>give you and answer for*

And Saul answered and said, "Am not I a Benjamite, of the smallest of the tribes of Israel? And my family the least of all the families of the tribe of Benjamin? Wherefore then speakest thou so to me?"

And Samuel took Saul and his servant and brought them into the parlour, and made them sit in the chiefest place among them that were <sup>1</sup>bidden, which were about thirty persons. *'invited to come*

And Samuel said unto the cook, "Bring the portion which I gave thee, of which I said unto thee, '*Set it <sup>1</sup>by thee.*'" *'aside*

And the cook took up the shoulder, and that which was upon it, and set it before Saul. And Samuel said, "Behold that which is left! Set it before thee and eat - for unto this time hath it been kept for thee since I said, '*I have invited the people.*'"

So Saul did eat with Samuel that day. And when they were come down from the high place into the city, Samuel communed with Saul upon the top of the house. And they arose early; and it came to pass about the spring of the day that Samuel called Saul to the top of the house, saying, "Up, that I may send thee away."

And Saul arose, and they went out both of them, he and Samuel, abroad. And as they were going down to the end of the city, Samuel said to Saul, "Bid the servant pass on before us," (and he passed on), "but stand thou still a while that I may show thee the Word of God."

Then Samuel took a vial of oil and poured it upon his head and kissed him, and said, "Is it not because THE LORD hath anointed thee to be captain over His inheritance? When thou art departed from me to day, then thou shalt find two men by Rachel's Sepulchre in the border of Benjamin at Zelzah; and they will say unto thee, 'The asses which thou wentest to seek are found; and, lo, thy father hath left the care of the asses and sorroweth for you, saying, '*What shall I do for my son?!*' Then shalt thou go on forward from thence, and thou shalt come to the Plain of Tabor, and there shall meet thee three men going up to God to Bethel, one carrying three kids and another carrying three loaves of bread and another carrying a bottle of wine; and they will salute thee and give thee two loaves of bread, which thou shalt receive of their hands. After that thou shalt come to the hill of God where is the garrison of the Philistines. And it shall come to pass, when thou art come thither to the city, that thou shalt meet a company of prophets coming down from the high place with a psaltery and a tabret and a pipe and a harp before them; and they shall prophesy, and the Spirit of THE LORD will come upon thee and thou shalt prophesy *with* them and shalt be <sup>1</sup>turned into another man. And let it be, when these signs are come unto thee, that thou do as occasion serve thee; for God is with thee. And thou shalt go down before me to Gilgal; and, behold, I will come down unto thee, to offer burnt offerings and to sacrifice sacrifices of peace offerings - seven days shalt thou tarry, till I come to thee and show thee what thou shalt do. *'born again*

And it was so that, when he had turned his back to go from Samuel, God gave him another heart, and all those signs came to pass that day. And when they came thither to the hill, behold, a company of prophets met him; and the Spirit of God came upon him, and he prophesied among them. And it came to pass, when all that knew him beforetime saw that, behold, he prophesied among the prophets, then the people said one to another, "What is this that is come unto the son of Kish?! Is Saul also among the prophets?!" And one of the same place answered and said, "But who is *their* father?"

Therefore it became a proverb, "*Is Saul also among the prophets?*"

And when he had made an end of prophesying, he came to the high place.

And Saul's uncle said unto him and to his servant, "Whither went ye?"

And he said, "To seek the asses; and when we saw that they were no where, we came to Samuel."

And Saul's uncle said, "Tell me, I pray thee, what Samuel said unto you."

And Saul said unto his uncle, "He told us plainly that the asses were found" (but of the matter of the kingdom, whereof Samuel spake, he told him not).

And Samuel called the people together unto THE LORD to Mizpeh, and said unto the Children of Israel, "Thus saith THE LORD God of Israel: I brought up Israel out of Egypt and delivered you out of the hand of the Egyptians and out of the hand of all kingdoms and of them that oppressed you. And ye have this day rejected your God, who Himself saved you out of all your adversities and your tribulations! And ye have said unto Him, '*Nay, but set a king over us!*' Now therefore present yourselves before THE LORD by your tribes, and by your thousands."

And when Samuel had caused all the tribes of Israel to come near, the tribe of Benjamin was <sup>1</sup>taken. When he had caused the tribe of Benjamin to come near by their families, the family of Matri was <sup>1</sup>taken, and Saul the son of Kish was <sup>1</sup>taken; and when they sought him, he could not be found. <sup>1</sup>*chosen*

Therefore they inquired of THE LORD further, if the man should yet come thither.

And THE LORD answered, "Behold, he hath hid himself among the stuff."

And they ran and fetched him thence; and when he stood among the people, he was higher than any of the people from his shoulders and upward.

And Samuel said to all the people, "See ye him whom THE LORD hath chosen, that there is none like him among all the people?"

And all the people shouted, and said, <sup>1</sup>"God save the king!" <sup>1</sup>*long live the king*

Then Samuel told the people the manner of the kingdom, and wrote it in a book, and laid it up before THE LORD. And Samuel sent all the people away, every man to his house.

And Saul also went home to Gibeah; and there went with him a band of men whose hearts God had touched.

But the <sup>1</sup>children of Belial said, "How shall this man save us?!" And they despised him, and brought him no presents. But he held his peace. <sup>1</sup>*servants of Bel/Satan*

Then Nahash, the Ammonite, came up and encamped against Jabesh-Gilead, and all the men of Jabesh said unto Nahash, "Make a covenant with us, and we will serve thee."

And Nahash the Ammonite answered them, "On this condition will I make a covenant with you: that I may thrust out all your right eyes, and lay it for a reproach upon all Israel!"

And the elders of Jabesh said unto him, "Give us seven days' respite, that we may send messengers unto all the coasts of Israel; and then, if there be no man to save us, we will come out to thee."

Then came the messengers to Gibeah of Saul and told the tidings in the ears of the people, and all the people lifted up their voices and wept.

And, behold, Saul came after the herd out of the field; and Saul said, "What aileth the people that they weep?"

And they told him the tidings of the men of Jabesh. And the Spirit of God came upon Saul when he heard those tidings, and his anger was kindled greatly. And he took a yoke of oxen and hewed them in pieces, and sent them throughout all the coasts of Israel by the hands of messengers, saying, "Whosoever cometh not forth after Saul and after Samuel, so shall it be done unto his oxen!"

And the fear of THE LORD fell on the people, and they came out with one consent. And when he numbered them in Bezek, the Children of Israel were three hundred thousand, and the men of Judah thirty thousand.

And they said unto the messengers that came, "Thus shall ye say unto the men of Jabesh-Gilead: To morrow, by that time the sun be hot, ye shall have help!"

And the messengers came and showed it to the men of Jabesh; and they were glad. Therefore the men of Jabesh said, "To morrow we will come out unto you, and ye shall do with us all that seemeth good unto you."

And it was so on the morrow that Saul put the people in three companies, and they came into the midst of the host in the morning watch and slew the Ammonites until the heat of the day; and it came to pass that they which remained were scattered, so that two of them were not left together.

And the people said unto Samuel, "Who is he that said, '*Shall Saul reign over us?*' Bring the men, that we may put them to death!"

And Saul said, "There shall *not* a man be put to death this day! For to day THE LORD hath wrought salvation in Israel!"

Then said Samuel to the people, "Come, and let us go to Gilgal, and renew the kingdom there!"

And all the people went to Gilgal; and there they made Saul king before THE LORD in Gilgal, and there they sacrificed sacrifices of peace offerings before THE LORD, and there Saul and all the men of Israel rejoiced greatly.

And Samuel said unto all Israel, "Behold, I have hearkened unto your voice in all that ye said unto me, and have made a king over you. And now, behold, the king walketh before you. And I am old and grayheaded; and, behold, my sons are with you. And I have walked before you from my childhood unto this day. Behold, here I am! Witness against me before THE LORD and before <sup>1</sup>His Anointed! Whose ox have I taken?! Or, whose ass have I taken?! Or, whom have I defrauded?! Whom have I oppressed?! Or of whose hand have I received any bribe to blind mine eyes therewith?! And I will restore it you." *<sup>1</sup>The Messiah*

And they said, "Thou hast *not* defrauded us, nor oppressed us, neither hast thou taken ought of any man's hand!"

And he said unto them, "THE LORD is witness against you, and <sup>1</sup>His Anointed is witness this day, that ye have not found ought in my hand." *<sup>1</sup>The Messiah*

And they answered, "He is witness."

And Samuel said unto the people, "It is THE LORD that advanced Moses and Aaron, and that brought your fathers up out of the land of Egypt. Now therefore stand still, that I may reason with you before THE LORD of all the righteous acts of THE LORD which He did to you and to your fathers!"

"When Jacob was come into Egypt, and your fathers cried unto THE LORD, then THE LORD sent Moses and Aaron, which brought forth your fathers out of Egypt and made them dwell in this place. And when they forgat THE LORD their God, He sold them into the hand of Sisera ( captain of the host of Hazor) and into the hand of the Philistines, and into the hand of the king of Moab, and they fought against them.

"And they cried unto THE LORD and said, *'We have sinned because we have forsaken THE LORD and have served Baalim and Ashtaroth! But now, deliver us out of the hand of our enemies, and we will serve Thee!'*

"And THE LORD sent Jerubbaal, and Bedan, and Jephthah, and Samuel, and delivered you out of the hand of your enemies on every side, and ye dwelled safe. And when ye saw that Nahash the king of the children of Ammon came against you, ye said unto me, *'Nay, but a king shall reign over us'* - when THE LORD your God <sup>*'was already*</sup> *was* your king!! Now therefore, behold the king whom ye have chosen, and whom ye have desired! And, behold, THE LORD hath set a king over you! If ye will fear THE LORD and serve Him and obey His voice and not rebel against the commandment of THE LORD, then shall both ye and also the king that reigneth over you continue following THE LORD your God. *But* - if ye will not obey the voice of THE LORD, but rebel against the commandment of THE LORD, then shall the hand of THE LORD be against you, as it was against your fathers!

"Now therefore, stand and see this great thing which THE LORD will do before your eyes! Is it not wheat harvest to day? I will call unto THE LORD and He shall send thunder and rain, that ye may perceive and see that your wickedness is great which ye have done in the sight of THE LORD, in asking you a king!"

So Samuel called unto THE LORD; and THE LORD sent thunder and rain that day, and all the people greatly feared THE LORD and Samuel. And all the people said unto Samuel, "Pray for thy servants unto THE LORD thy God, that we die not! For we have added unto all our sins this evil, to ask us a king!"

And Samuel said unto the people, "Fear not! Ye *have* done all this wickedness - yet turn not aside from following THE LORD; but serve THE LORD with all your heart and turn ye not aside! For then should ye go after vain things which cannot profit nor deliver; for they are vain. For THE LORD will not forsake His People - *for His great name's sake* - because it hath pleased THE LORD to make you His People! Moreover as for me, God forbid that I should sin against THE LORD in ceasing to pray for you! But I will teach you the good and the right way; only, fear THE LORD and serve Him in truth with all your heart, for consider how great things He hath done for you! But if ye shall still do wickedly, ye shall be consumed - both ye *and* your king!"

Saul reigned one year. And when he had reigned two years over Israel, Saul chose him three thousand men of Israel, whereof two thousand were with Saul in Michmash and in Mount Bethel, and a thousand were with Jonathan in Gibeah of Benjamin, and the rest of the people he sent every man to his tent.

And Jonathan smote the garrison of the Philistines that was in Geba, and the Philistines heard of it. And Saul blew the trumpet throughout all the land, saying, "Let the Hebrews hear!"

And all Israel heard say that Saul had smitten a garrison of the Philistines, and that Israel also was had in abomination with the Philistines. And the people were called together after Saul to Gilgal. And the Philistines gathered themselves together to fight with Israel thirty thousand chariots and six thousand horsemen and people as the sand which is on the sea shore in multitude; and they came up, and pitched in Michmash, eastward from Bethaven.

When the men of Israel saw that they were in a strait (for the people were distressed), then the people did hide themselves in caves and in thickets and in rocks and in high places and in pits. And some of the Hebrews went over Jordan to the land of Gad and Gilead. As for Saul, he was yet in Gilgal, and all the people followed him trembling.

And he tarried seven days, according to the set time that Samuel had appointed; but Samuel came not to Gilgal, and the people were scattered from him.

And Saul said, "Bring hither a burnt offering to me, and peace offerings!"

And he offered the burnt offering. And it came to pass that as soon as he had made an end of offering the burnt offering, behold, Samuel came; and Saul went out to meet him that he might salute him.

And Samuel said, "What hast thou done?!"

And Saul said, "Because I saw that the people were scattered from me, and that thou camest not within the days appointed, and that the Philistines gathered themselves together at Michmash - therefore said I, *'The Philistines will come down now upon me to Gilgal, and I have not made supplication unto THE LORD.'* I forced myself therefore and offered a burnt offering."

And Samuel said to Saul, "Thou hast done foolishly!! Thou hast *not* kept the commandment of THE LORD thy God which He commanded thee - for now would THE LORD have established thy kingdom upon Israel for ever. But now thy kingdom shall not continue! THE LORD hath sought Him a man after *His* own heart, and THE LORD hath commanded *him* to be captain over His people because thou hast not kept that which THE LORD commanded thee!"

And Samuel arose and gat him up from Gilgal unto Gibeah of Benjamin. And Saul numbered the people that were present with him, about six hundred men. And Saul, and Jonathan his son, and the people that were present with them, abode in Gibeah of Benjamin; but the Philistines encamped in Michmash. And the spoilers came out of the camp of the Philistines in three companies - one company turned unto the way that leadeth to Ophrah, unto the land of Shual, and another company turned the way to Bethhoron, and another company turned to the way of the border that looketh to the valley of Zeboim toward the wilderness.

Now there was no smith found throughout all the land of Israel (for the Philistines said, "...Lest the Hebrews make them swords or spears..."). But all the Israelites went down to the Philistines, to sharpen every man his share, and his coulter, and his ax, and his mattock. Yet they had a file for the mattocks, and for the coulters, and for the forks, and for the axes, and to sharpen the goads.

So it came to pass in the day of battle that there was neither sword nor spear found in the hand of any of the people that were with Saul and Jonathan - but with Saul and with Jonathan his son was there <sup>1</sup>found.

*<sup>1</sup>swords and spears*

And the garrison of the Philistines went out to the passage of Michmash.

Now, it came to pass upon a day, that Jonathan the son of Saul said unto the young man that bare his armour, "Come, and let us go over to the Philistines' garrison that is on the other side" - but he told not his father.

And Saul tarried in the uttermost part of Gibeah under a pomegranate tree which is in Migron; and the people that were with him were about six hundred men. And Ahiah (the son of Ahitub, Ichabod's brother, the son of Phinehas, the son of Eli, THE LORD'S priest in Shiloh), wearing an ephod. And the people knew not that Jonathan was gone. And between the passages, by which Jonathan sought to go over unto the Philistines' garrison, there was a sharp rock on the one side, and a sharp rock on the other side; and the name of the one was Bozez, and the name of the other Seneh. The forefront of the one was situate northward over against Michmash, and the other southward over against Gibeah.

And Jonathan said to the young man that bare his armour, "Come, and let us go over unto the garrison of these uncircumcised. It may be that THE LORD will work for us, for there is no restraint to THE LORD to save by many or by few."

And his armourbearer said unto him, "Do all that is in thine heart. Turn thee; behold, I am with thee according to thy heart."

Then said Jonathan, "Behold, we will pass over unto these men, and we will <sup>1</sup>discover ourselves unto them. If they say thus unto us, '*Tarry until we come to you,*' then we will stand still in our place and will not go up unto them. But, if they say thus, '*Come up unto us,*' then we will go up - for THE LORD hath delivered them into our hand and this shall be a sign unto us." *'reveal*

And both of them discovered themselves unto the garrison of the Philistines; and the Philistines said, "Behold, the Hebrews come forth out of the holes where they had hid themselves!"

And the men of the garrison answered Jonathan and his armourbearer, and said, "Come up to us and we will show you a thing."

And Jonathan said unto his armourbearer, "Come up after me; for THE LORD hath delivered them into the hand of Israel!"

And Jonathan climbed up upon his hands and upon his feet, and his armourbearer after him; and they fell before Jonathan, and his armourbearer slew after him. And that first slaughter, which Jonathan and his armourbearer made, was about twenty men within as it were an half acre of land, which a yoke of oxen might plow.

And there was trembling in the host, in the field, and among all the people; the garrison, and the spoilers, they also trembled, and the earth quaked, so it was a very great trembling.

And the watchmen of Saul in Gibeah of Benjamin looked; and, behold, the multitude melted away, and they went on beating down one another.

Then said Saul unto the people that were with him, "Number now, and see who is gone from us."

And when they had numbered, behold, Jonathan and his armourbearer were not there.

And Saul said unto Ahiah, "Bring hither the Ark of God!" (for the Ark of God was at that time with the Children of Israel).

And it came to pass, while Saul talked unto the priest, that the noise that was in the host of the Philistines went on and increased; and Saul said unto the priest, "Withdraw thine hand."

And Saul and all the people that were with him assembled themselves, and they came to the battle; and, behold, every man's sword was against his fellow, and there was a very great discomfiture.

Moreover the Hebrews that were with the Philistines before that time, which went up with them into the camp from the country round about, even they also turned to be with the Israelites that were with Saul and Jonathan. Likewise all the men of Israel which had hid themselves in Mount Ephraim, when they heard that the Philistines fled, even they also followed hard after them in the battle. So THE LORD saved Israel that day; and the battle passed over unto Bethaven.

And the men of Israel were distressed that day, for Saul had adjured the people, saying, "Cursed be the man that eateth any food until evening, that I may be avenged on mine enemies." So none of the people tasted any food.

And all they of the land came to a wood; and there was honey upon the ground. And when the people were come into the wood, behold, the honey dropped; but no man put his hand to his mouth, for the people feared the oath. But Jonathan heard not when his father charged the people with the oath; wherefore he put forth the end of the rod that was in his hand, and dipped it in an honeycomb, and put his hand to his mouth; and his eyes were <sup>1</sup>enlightened. *<sup>1</sup>brightened/refreshed (in the sense of having received healthy nourishment)*

Then answered one of the people, and said, "Thy father straitly charged the people with an oath, saying, 'Cursed be the man that eateth any food this day!'"

And the people were faint.

Then said Jonathan, "My father hath troubled the land! See, I pray you, how mine eyes have been enlightened because I tasted a little of this honey. How much more, if haply the people had eaten freely to day of the spoil of their enemies which they found? For, had there not been now a much greater slaughter among the Philistines?"

And they smote the Philistines that day from Michmash to Aijalon, and the people were very <sup>1</sup>faint. And the people flew upon the spoil, and took sheep, and oxen, and calves, and slew them on the ground: and the people did eat them with the blood. *<sup>1</sup>weary and exhausted to the point of fainting*

Then they told Saul, saying, "Behold, the people sin against THE LORD in that they eat <sup>1</sup>with the blood!" *<sup>1</sup>with the blood still in the meat (whether raw or cooked)*

And he said, "Ye have transgressed! Roll a great stone unto me this day!" And Saul said, "Disperse yourselves among the people and say unto them, 'Bring me hither every man his ox, and every man his sheep, and slay them here and eat; and sin not against THE LORD in eating with the blood!'"

And all the people brought every man his ox with him that night, and slew them there. And Saul built an altar unto THE LORD (the same was the first altar that he built unto THE LORD).

And Saul said, "Let us go down after the Philistines by night, and spoil them until the morning light, and let us not leave a man of them."

And they said, "Do whatsoever seemeth good unto thee."

Then said the priest, "Let us draw near hither unto God."

And Saul asked counsel of God, "Shall I go down after the Philistines? Wilt Thou deliver them into the hand of Israel?"

But He answered him not that day.

And Saul said, "Draw ye near hither all the chief of the people, and know and see wherein this sin hath been this day. For, as THE LORD liveth, which saveth Israel, <sup>1</sup>though it be in Jonathan my son, he shall surely die!" *<sup>1</sup>even if*

But there was not a man among all the people that answered him.

Then said he unto all Israel, "Be ye on one side, and I and Jonathan my son will be on the other side."

And the people said unto Saul, "Do what seemeth good unto thee."

Therefore Saul said unto THE LORD God of Israel, <sup>1</sup>"Give a perfect lot." <sup>1</sup>*determine who is guilty*

And Saul and Jonathan were <sup>1</sup>taken, but the people <sup>2</sup>escaped.  
<sup>1</sup>*chosen as having committed the sin* <sup>2</sup>*were not chosen as guilty*

And Saul said, "Cast lots between me and Jonathan my son."

And Jonathan was taken.

Then Saul said to Jonathan, "Tell me what thou hast done!"

And Jonathan told him, and said, "I did but taste a little honey with the end of the rod that was in mine hand, and, lo, I must die!"

And Saul answered, "God do so and more also, for thou *shalt* surely die, Jonathan!"

And the people said unto Saul, "*Shall* Jonathan die who hath wrought this great salvation in Israel?! God forbid!! As THE LORD liveth, there shall not one hair of his head fall to the ground! For he hath wrought with God this day!"

So the people rescued Jonathan that he died not.

Then Saul went up from following the Philistines, and the Philistines went to their own place.

So Saul took the kingdom over Israel, and fought against all his enemies on every side - against Moab, and against the children of Ammon, and against Edom, and against the kings of Zobah, and against the Philistines; and whithersoever he turned himself, he vexed them. And he gathered an host and smote the Amalekites, and delivered Israel out of the hands of them that spoiled them.

Now the sons of Saul were:

- Jonathan,
- and Ishui,
- and Melchishua.

And the names of his two daughters were these:

- the name of the firstborn Merab,
- and the name of the younger Michal.

And the name of Saul's wife was Ahinoam, the daughter of Ahimaaz.

And the name of the captain of his host was Abner, the son of Ner, Saul's uncle.

And Kish was the father of Saul

And Ner (the father of Abner) was the son of Abiel.

And there was sore war against the Philistines all the days of Saul; and when Saul saw any strong man, or any valiant man, he took him unto him.

Samuel also said unto Saul, "THE LORD sent me to anoint thee to be king over His People - over Israel. Now therefore hearken thou unto the voice of the Words of THE LORD. Thus saith THE LORD of Hosts: I remember that which Amalek did to Israel, how he laid wait for him in the way when he came up from Egypt. Now go and smite Amalek and utterly destroy all that they have and spare them not; but slay both man and woman, infant and suckling, ox and sheep, camel and ass."

And Saul gathered the people together and numbered them in Telaim - two hundred thousand footmen, and ten thousand men of Judah. And Saul came to a city of Amalek, and laid wait in the valley.

And Saul said unto the Kenites, "Go, depart, get you down from among the Amalekites, lest I destroy you with them; for ye showed kindness to all the Children of Israel when they came up out of Egypt."

So the Kenites departed from among the Amalekites. And Saul smote the Amalekites from Havilah until thou comest to Shur that is <sup>1</sup>over against Egypt. And he took Agag the king of the Amalekites alive and utterly destroyed all the people with the edge of the sword. *<sup>1</sup>across from*

But Saul and the people spared Agag, and the best of the sheep, and of the oxen, and of the fatlings, and the lambs, and all that was good, and would not utterly destroy them; but every thing that was vile and refuse, that they destroyed utterly.

Then came the Word of THE LORD unto Samuel, saying, "It repenteth Me that I have set up Saul to be king! For he is turned back from following Me and hath not performed My Commandments."

And it grieved Samuel; and he cried unto THE LORD all night. And when Samuel rose early to meet Saul in the morning, it was told Samuel, saying, "Saul came to Carmel, and, behold, he set him up a place, and is gone about, and passed on, and gone down to Gilgal."

And Samuel came to Saul, and Saul said unto him, "Blessed be thou of THE LORD! I have performed the commandment of THE LORD."

And Samuel said, "What meaneth then this bleating of the sheep in mine ears, and the lowing of the oxen which I hear?"

And Saul said, "They have brought them from the Amalekites; for the people spared the best of the sheep and of the oxen to sacrifice unto THE LORD thy God, and the rest we have utterly destroyed."

Then Samuel said unto Saul, "Stay, and I will tell thee what THE LORD hath said to me this night."

And he said unto him, "Say on."

And Samuel said, "When thou wast <sup>1</sup>little in thine own sight, wast thou not made the head of the tribes of Israel and THE LORD anointed thee king over Israel? And THE LORD sent thee on a journey, and said, '*Go and utterly destroy the sinners the Amalekites, and fight against them until they be consumed.*' Wherefore then didst thou not obey the voice of THE LORD, but didst fly upon the spoil, and didst evil in the sight of THE LORD?!" *<sup>1</sup>a nobody/a lowly person*

And Saul said unto Samuel, "Yea, I *have* obeyed the voice of THE LORD, and *have* gone the way which THE LORD sent me, and have brought Agag the king of Amalek, and have utterly destroyed the Amalekites! But the people took of the spoil, sheep and oxen, the chief of the things which should have been utterly destroyed, to sacrifice unto THE LORD thy God in Gilgal."

And Samuel said, "Hath THE LORD as great delight in burnt offerings and sacrifices as in obeying the voice of THE LORD? Behold, to obey is better than sacrifice, and to hearken than the fat of rams! For rebellion is as the sin of witchcraft, and stubbornness is as iniquity and idolatry. Because thou hast rejected the Word of THE LORD, He hath also rejected thee from being king!"

And Saul said unto Samuel, "I have sinned, for I have transgressed the commandment of THE LORD and thy words because I feared the people and obeyed their voice! Now therefore, I pray thee, pardon my sin, and turn again with me, that I may worship THE LORD."

And Samuel said unto Saul, "I will *not* return with thee - for thou hast rejected the Word of THE LORD, and THE LORD hath rejected thee from being king over Israel!"

And as Samuel turned about to go away, he laid hold upon the skirt of his mantle, and it rent. And Samuel said unto him, "THE LORD hath rent the kingdom of Israel from thee this day, and hath given it to a neighbour of thine that is better than thou! And also <sup>1</sup>The Strength of Israel will not lie nor repent; for He is not a man that He should repent." <sup>1</sup>God

Then he said, "I have sinned! Yet honour me now, I pray thee, before the elders of my people, and before Israel, and turn again with me, that I may worship THE LORD thy God."

So Samuel turned again after Saul; and Saul worshipped THE LORD.

Then said Samuel, "Bring ye hither to me Agag the king of the Amalekites."

And Agag came unto him <sup>1</sup>delicately. And Agag said, "Surely the <sup>2</sup>bitterness of death is past." <sup>1</sup>cheerfully <sup>2</sup>threat

And Samuel said, "As thy sword hath made women childless, so shall *thy* mother be childless among women!"

And Samuel hewed Agag in pieces before THE LORD in Gilgal.

Then Samuel went to Ramah; and Saul went up to his house to Gibeah of Saul. And Samuel came no more to see Saul until the day of his death. Nevertheless Samuel mourned for Saul, and THE LORD repented that He had made Saul king over Israel.

And THE LORD said unto Samuel, "How long wilt thou mourn for Saul, seeing I have rejected him from reigning over Israel? Fill thine horn with oil, and go! I will send thee to Jesse, the Bethlehemite; for I have provided Me a king among his sons."

And Samuel said, "How can I go? If Saul hear it, he will kill me!"

And THE LORD said, "Take an heifer with thee and say, '*I am come to sacrifice to THE LORD.*' And call Jesse to the sacrifice, and I will show thee what thou shalt do. And thou shalt anoint unto Me him whom I name unto thee."

And Samuel did that which THE LORD spake and came to Bethlehem. And the elders of the town trembled at his coming, and said, "Comest thou <sup>1</sup>peaceably?" <sup>1</sup>in peace

And he said, "Peaceably. I am come to sacrifice unto THE LORD. Sanctify yourselves and come with me to the sacrifice."

And he sanctified Jesse and his sons, and called them to the sacrifice.

And it came to pass, when they were come, that he looked on Eliab, and said, "Surely THE LORD's Anointed is before him."

But THE LORD said unto Samuel, "Look not on his countenance, or on the height of his stature; because I have refused him. For THE LORD seeth not as man seeth - for man looketh on the outward appearance, but THE LORD looketh on the heart!"

Then Jesse called Abinadab, and made him pass before Samuel. And he said, "Neither hath THE LORD chosen <sup>1</sup>this." *'this one*

Then Jesse made Shammah to pass by. And he said, "Neither hath THE LORD chosen this."

Again, Jesse made seven of his sons to pass before Samuel. And Samuel said unto Jesse, "THE LORD hath not chosen these."

And Samuel said unto Jesse, "Are here *all* thy children?"

And he said, "There remaineth yet the youngest, and, behold, he keepeth the sheep."

And Samuel said unto Jesse, "Send and fetch him; for we will not sit down till he come hither."

And he sent, and brought him in. Now, he was ruddy, and withal of a beautiful countenance, and goodly to look to.

And THE LORD said, "Arise! Anoint him! For this is he!"

Then Samuel took the horn of oil, and anointed him in the midst of his brethren; and the Spirit of THE LORD came upon David from that day forward.

So Samuel rose up, and went to Ramah.

But the Spirit of THE LORD departed from Saul, and an evil spirit from THE LORD troubled him.

And Saul's servants said unto him, "Behold now, an evil spirit from God troubleth thee. Let our lord now command thy servants which are before thee to seek out a man who is a cunning player on an harp; and it shall come to pass, when the evil spirit from God is upon thee, that he shall play with his hand, and thou shalt be well."

And Saul said unto his servants, "Provide me now a man that can play well, and bring him to me."

Then answered one of the servants and said, "Behold, I have seen a son of Jesse the Bethlehemite, that is cunning in playing, and a mighty valiant man, and a man of war, and prudent in matters, and a comely person, and THE LORD is with him."

Wherefore Saul sent messengers unto Jesse and said, "Send me David thy son, which is with the sheep."

And Jesse took an ass laden with bread, and a bottle of wine, and a kid, and sent them by David his son unto Saul. And David came to Saul and stood before him; and he loved him greatly, and he became his armourbearer.

And Saul sent to Jesse, saying, "Let David, I pray thee, <sup>1</sup>stand before me; for he hath found favour in my sight."  
<sup>1</sup>remain with

And it came to pass, when the evil spirit from God was upon Saul, that David took an harp and played with his hand. So Saul was refreshed and was well, and the evil spirit departed from him.

Now the Philistines gathered together their armies to battle and were gathered together at Shochoh (which belongeth to Judah), and pitched between Shochoh and Azekah, in Ephesdammim. And Saul and the men of Israel were gathered together and pitched by the Valley of Elah and set the battle in array against the Philistines. And the Philistines stood on a mountain on the one side, and Israel stood on a mountain on the other side, and there was a valley between them. And there went out a champion out of the camp of the Philistines named Goliath of Gath whose height was <sup>1</sup>six cubits and a span.  
<sup>1</sup>9ft 9in

And he had an helmet of brass upon his head, and he was armed with a coat of mail; and the weight of the coat was <sup>1</sup>five thousand shekels of brass.  
<sup>1</sup>125 LBS

And he had <sup>1</sup>greaves of brass upon his legs, and a <sup>2</sup>target of brass between his shoulders.  
<sup>1</sup>shin armor <sup>2</sup>small round shield

And the staff of his spear was like <sup>1</sup>a weaver's beam; and his spear's head weighed <sup>2</sup>six hundred shekels of iron.  
<sup>1</sup>about 3" thick <sup>2</sup>15 LBS

And one bearing a shield went before him. And he stood and cried unto the armies of Israel and said unto them, "Why are ye come out to set your battle in array? Am not I a Philistine, and ye servants to Saul? Choose you a man for you, and let him come down to me. If he be able to fight with me and to kill me, then will we be your servants. But if I prevail against him and kill him, then shall ye be *our* servants and serve *us*." And the Philistine said, "I defy the armies of Israel this day! Give me a man, that we may fight together!"

When Saul and all Israel heard those words of the Philistine, they were dismayed, and greatly afraid.

Now, David was the son of that Ephrathite of Bethlehem-Judah whose name was Jesse; and he had eight sons. And the man went among men for an old man in the days of Saul. And the three eldest sons of Jesse went and followed Saul to the battle, and the names of his three sons that went to the battle were Eliab the firstborn, and next unto him Abinadab, and the third Shammah. And David was the youngest. And the three eldest followed Saul. But David went and returned from Saul to feed his father's sheep at Bethlehem.

And the Philistine drew near morning and evening, and presented himself forty days.

And Jesse said unto David his son, "Take now for thy brethren an ephah of this parched corn, and these ten loaves, and run to the camp to thy brethren; and carry these ten cheeses unto the captain of their thousand, and look how thy brethren fare, and take their pledge."

Now Saul, and they, and all the men of Israel, were in the valley of Elah, fighting with the Philistines. And David rose up early in the morning, and left the sheep with a keeper, and took and went as Jesse had commanded him; and he came to the trench as the host was going forth to the fight and shouted for the battle (for Israel and the Philistines had put the battle in array, army against army). And David left his carriage in the hand of the keeper of the carriage, and ran into the army, and came and saluted his brethren. And as he talked with them, behold, there came up the champion, the Philistine of Gath - Goliath by name - out of the armies of the Philistines, and spake according to the same words (and David heard them).

And all the men of Israel, when they saw the man, fled from him and were sore afraid. And the men of Israel said, "Have ye seen this man that is come up? Surely to defy Israel is he come up! And it shall be that the man who killeth him, the king will enrich him with great riches, and will give him his daughter, and make his father's House free in Israel!"

And David spake to the men that stood by him, saying, "*What* shall be done to the man that killeth this Philistine, and taketh away the reproach from Israel? For who is this uncircumcised Philistine that he should defy the armies of the living God?!"

And the people answered him after <sup>1</sup>this manner, saying, "So shall it be done to the man that killeth him."  
*<sup>1</sup>repeated what they had said*

And Eliab his eldest brother heard when he spake unto the men; and Eliab's anger was kindled against David, and he said, "Why camest thou down hither? And with whom hast thou left those few sheep in the wilderness? I know thy pride, and the naughtiness of thine heart; for thou art come down that thou mightest see the battle!"

And David said, "What have I now done? Is there not a cause?"

And he turned from him toward another, and spake after the same manner; and the people answered him again after the former manner. And when the words were heard which David spake, they rehearsed them before Saul, and he sent for him.

And David said to Saul, "Let no man's heart fail because of him! Thy servant will go and fight with this Philistine!"

And Saul said to David, "Thou art not able to go against this Philistine to fight with him; for thou art but a youth, and he a man of war from his youth!"

And David said unto Saul, "Thy servant kept his father's sheep, and there came a lion, and a bear, and took a lamb out of the flock. And I went out after him, and smote him, and delivered it out of his mouth; and when he arose against me, I caught him by his beard, and smote him, and slew him. Thy servant slew *both* the lion and the bear - and this uncircumcised Philistine shall be as one of them, seeing he hath defied the armies of the living God!"

David said moreover, "THE LORD that delivered me out of the paw of the lion and out of the paw of the bear - He will deliver me out of the hand of this Philistine."

And Saul said unto David, "Go... and THE LORD be with thee!"

And Saul armed David with his armour, and he put an helmet of brass upon his head; also he armed him with a coat of mail. And David girded his sword upon his armour, and he <sup>1</sup>assayed to go; for he had not <sup>2</sup>proved it.  
*<sup>1</sup>tried <sup>2</sup>tested*

And David said unto Saul, "I cannot go with these; for I have not <sup>1</sup>proved them."  
*<sup>1</sup>trained with them*

And David put them off him. And he took his staff in his hand, and chose him five smooth stones out of the brook and put them in a shepherd's bag which he had, even in a scrip; and his sling was in his hand, and he drew near to the Philistine. And the Philistine came on and drew near unto David; and the man that bare the shield went before him. And when the Philistine looked about and saw David, he disdained him; for he was but a youth, and ruddy, and of a fair countenance.

And the Philistine said unto David, "Am I a dog, that thou comest to me with staves?!" And the Philistine cursed David by his gods. And the Philistine said to David, "Come to me, and I will give thy flesh unto the fowls of the air and to the beasts of the field!"

Then said David to the Philistine, "Thou comest to me with a sword and with a spear and with a shield - but I come to thee in the name of THE LORD of Hosts, the God of the armies of Israel, whom thou hast defied! This day will THE LORD deliver thee into mine hand; and I will smite thee and take thine head from thee; and I will give the carcasses of the host of the Philistines this day unto the fowls of the air and to the wild beasts of the earth, that all the earth may know that there is a God in Israel! And all this assembly shall know that THE LORD saveth not with sword and spear; for the battle is THE LORD's, and He will give you into our hands!"

And it came to pass, when the Philistine arose and came and drew nigh to meet David, that David hasted and ran toward the army to meet the Philistine. And David put his hand in his bag and took thence a stone, and slang it, and smote the Philistine in his forehead, that the stone sunk into his forehead; and he fell upon his face to the earth. So David prevailed over the Philistine with a sling and with a stone, and smote the Philistine, and slew him; but there was no sword in the hand of David. Therefore David ran, and stood upon the Philistine, and took his sword, and drew it out of the sheath thereof, and slew him, and cut off his head therewith. And when the Philistines saw their champion was dead, they fled.

And the men of Israel and of Judah arose, and shouted, and pursued the Philistines until thou come to the valley and to the gates of Ekron. And the wounded of the Philistines fell down by the way to Shaaraim, even unto Gath, and unto Ekron. And the Children of Israel returned from chasing after the Philistines, and they spoiled their tents.

And David took the head of the Philistine and brought it to Jerusalem; but he put his armour in his tent.

And when Saul saw David go forth against the Philistine, he said unto Abner (the captain of the host), "Abner, whose son is this youth?"

And Abner said, "As thy soul liveth, O king, I <sup>1</sup>cannot tell." *<sup>1</sup>do not know*

And the king said, "Inquire thou whose son the stripling is."

And as David returned from the slaughter of the Philistine, Abner took him and brought him before Saul with the head of the Philistine in his hand.

And Saul said to him, "Whose son art thou, thou young man?"

And David answered, "I am the son of thy servant Jesse, the Bethlehemite."

And it came to pass, when he had made an end of speaking unto Saul, that the soul of Jonathan was knit with the soul of David, and Jonathan <sup>1</sup>loved him as his own soul. And Saul took him that day, and would let him go no more home to his father's house. Then Jonathan and David made a covenant because he loved him as his own soul. And Jonathan stripped himself of the robe that was upon him, and gave it to David, and his garments, even to his sword, and to his bow, and to his girdle. *<sup>1</sup>to fall in love*

And David went out whithersoever Saul sent him, and behaved himself wisely; and Saul set him over the men of war, and he was accepted in the sight of all the people, and also in the sight of Saul's servants. And it came to pass as they came, when David was returned from the slaughter of the Philistine, that the women came out of all cities of Israel, singing and dancing, to meet king Saul, with tabrets, with joy, and with instruments of music.

And the women answered one another as they played, and said, "Saul hath slain his thousands, and David his *ten* thousands."

And Saul was very wroth, and the saying displeased him; and he said, "They have ascribed unto David ten thousands, and to me they have ascribed but thousands - and what can he have more but the kingdom?!"

And Saul <sup>1</sup>eyed David from that day and forward.

<sup>1</sup>*was suspicious of/kept an eye on*

And it came to pass on the morrow that the evil spirit from God came upon Saul, and he prophesied in the midst of the house, and David played with his hand as at other times. And there was a javelin in Saul's hand, and Saul cast the javelin; for he said, "I will smite David even to the wall with it!"

And David avoided out of his presence twice. And Saul was afraid of David, because THE LORD was with him, and was departed from Saul. Therefore Saul removed him from him, and made him his captain over a thousand; and he went out and came in before the people. And David behaved himself wisely in all his ways; and THE LORD was with him. Wherefore when Saul saw that he behaved himself very wisely, he was afraid of him. But all Israel and Judah loved David, because he went out and came in before them.

And Saul said to David, "Behold my elder daughter Merab, her will I give thee to wife: only be thou valiant for me, and fight THE LORD'S battles (for Saul said, 'Let not mine hand be upon him, but let the hand of the Philistines be upon him.')

And David said unto Saul, "Who am I? And what is my life, or my father's family in Israel, that I should be son-in-law to the king?"

But it came to pass at the time when Merab, Saul's daughter, should have been given to David that she was given unto Adriel the Meholathite to wife.

And Michal, Saul's daughter, loved David; and they told Saul, and the thing pleased him.

And Saul said, "I will give him her, that she may be a snare to him, and that the hand of the Philistines may be against him."

Wherefore Saul said to David, "Thou shalt this day be my son-in-law <sup>1</sup>in the one of the twain."

<sup>1</sup>*בשתינו* once again/a second time/ through both of them (David's pre-existing covenant with Jonathan being the first)

And Saul commanded his servants, saying, "Commune with David secretly and say: Behold, the king hath delight in thee, and all his servants love thee; now therefore be the king's son-in-law."

And Saul's servants spake those words in the ears of David. And David said, "Seemeth it to you a light thing to be a king's son-in-law, seeing that I am a poor man and lightly esteemed?!"

And the servants of Saul told him, saying, "On this manner spake David..."

And Saul said, "Thus shall ye say to David: The king desireth not any dowry but an hundred foreskins of the Philistines, to be avenged of the king's enemies."

But Saul thought to make David fall by the hand of the Philistines. And when his servants told David these words, it pleased David well to be the king's son-in-law, and the days were not expired. Wherefore David arose and went, he and his men, and slew of the Philistines two hundred men; and David brought their foreskins, and they gave them in full <sup>1</sup>tale to the king, that he might be the king's son-in-law. And Saul gave

him Michal his daughter to wife. And Saul saw and knew that THE LORD was with David, and that Michal Saul's daughter loved him. And Saul was yet the more afraid of David; and Saul became David's enemy continually. <sup>1</sup>talley/total

Then the princes of the Philistines went forth; and it came to pass, after they went forth, that David behaved himself more wisely than all the servants of Saul, so that his name was much set by. And Saul spake to Jonathan his son, and to all his servants, that they should kill David.

But Jonathan, Saul's son, delighted much in David. And Jonathan told David, saying, "Saul my father seeketh to kill thee! Now therefore, I pray thee, take heed to thyself until the morning, and abide in a secret place, and hide thyself. And I will go out and stand beside my father in the field where thou art, and I will commune with my father of thee; and what I see, that I will tell thee."

And Jonathan spake good of David unto Saul his father, and said unto him, "Let not the king sin against his servant, against David; because he hath not sinned against thee, and because his works have been to thee-ward very good. For he did put his life in his hand and slew the Philistine, and THE LORD wrought a great salvation for all Israel. Thou sawest it, and didst rejoice! Wherefore then wilt thou sin against innocent blood, to slay David without a cause?"

And Saul hearkened unto the voice of Jonathan, and Saul sware, "As THE LORD liveth, he shall not be slain."

And Jonathan called David, and Jonathan showed him all those things. And Jonathan brought David to Saul, and he was in his presence as in times past. And there was war again; and David went out and fought with the Philistines and slew them with a great slaughter, and they fled from him.

And the evil spirit from THE LORD was upon Saul, as he sat in his house with his javelin in his hand and David played with his hand. And Saul sought to smite David even to the wall with the javelin; but he slipped away out of Saul's presence, and he smote the javelin into the wall. And David fled, and escaped that night. Saul also sent messengers unto David's house, to watch him, and to slay him in the morning. And Michal, David's wife, told him, saying, "If thou save not thy life to night, to morrow thou shalt be slain!"

So Michal let David down through a window; and he went, and fled, and escaped. And Michal took <sup>1</sup>an image and laid it in the bed, and put a pillow of goats' hair for his <sup>2</sup>bolster, and covered it with a cloth. <sup>1</sup>mannequin <sup>2</sup>pillow

And when Saul sent messengers to take David, she said, "He is sick."

And Saul sent the messengers again to see David, saying, "Bring him up to me in the bed, that I may slay him!"

And when the messengers were come in, behold, there was an image in the bed, with a pillow of goats' hair for his bolster. And Saul said unto Michal, "Why hast thou deceived me so, and sent away mine enemy, that he is escaped?!"

And Michal answered Saul, "He said unto me, 'Let me go; why should I kill thee?'"

So David fled, and escaped, and came to Samuel to Ramah, and told him all that Saul had done to him. And he and Samuel went and dwelt in Naioth.

And it was told Saul, saying, "Behold, David is at Naioth in Ramah."

And Saul sent messengers to take David; and when they saw the company of the prophets prophesying and Samuel standing as appointed over them, the Spirit of God was upon the messengers of Saul, and they also prophesied. And when it was told Saul, he sent other messengers, and they prophesied likewise. And Saul sent messengers again the third time, and they prophesied also.

Then went *he* also to Ramah, and came to a great well that is in Sechu; and he asked and said, "Where are Samuel and David?"

And one said, "Behold, they be at Naioth in Ramah."

And he went thither to Naioth in Ramah; and the Spirit of God was upon him also, and he went on, and prophesied, until he came to Naioth in Ramah. And he stripped off his clothes also, and prophesied before Samuel in like manner, and lay down naked all that day and all that night. Wherefore they say, "Is Saul also among the prophets?"

And David fled from Naioth in Ramah, and came and said before Jonathan, "What have I done? What is mine iniquity? And what is my sin before thy father, that he seeketh my life?"

And he said unto him, "God forbid! Thou shalt not die! Behold, my father will do nothing either great or small, but that he will <sup>1</sup>show it me. And why should my father hide this thing from me? It is not so."

<sup>1</sup>reveal it to me

And David sware moreover, and said, "Thy father certainly knoweth that I have found grace in thine eyes; and he saith, '*Let not Jonathan know this, lest he be grieved*'; but truly as THE LORD liveth, and as thy soul liveth, there is but a step between me and death!"

Then said Jonathan unto David, "Whatsoever thy soul desireth, I will even do it for thee."

And David said unto Jonathan, "Behold, to morrow is the new moon, and I should not fail to sit with the king at meat; but let me go, that I may hide myself in the field unto the third day at even. If thy father at all miss me, then say, '*David earnestly asked leave of me that he might run to Bethlehem his city, for there is a yearly sacrifice there for all the family.*' If he say thus, '*It is well*', thy servant shall have peace; but, if he be very wroth, then be sure that evil is determined by him. Therefore thou shalt deal kindly with thy servant - for thou hast brought thy servant into a Covenant of THE LORD with thee. Notwithstanding, if there be in me iniquity, slay me thyself; for why shouldst thou bring me to thy father?"

And Jonathan said, "Far be it from thee! for if I knew certainly that evil were determined by my father to come upon thee, then would not I tell it thee?"

Then said David to Jonathan, "Who shall tell me? Or what if thy father answer thee roughly?"

And Jonathan said unto David, "Come, and let us go out into the field."

And they went out both of them into the field. And Jonathan said unto David, "O LORD God of Israel, when I have <sup>1</sup>sounded my father about to morrow any time, or <sup>2</sup>the third day, and, behold, if there be good toward David and I then send not unto thee and <sup>3</sup>show it thee - THE LORD do so and much more to Jonathan! But if it please my father to do thee evil, then I will <sup>3</sup>show it thee and send thee away that thou mayest go in peace. And THE LORD be with thee, as He hath been with my father. And thou shalt not only (while yet I live) show me the kindness of THE LORD that I die not, but also thou shalt not cut off thy kindness from my House for ever - no, not when THE LORD hath cut off the enemies of David every one from the face of the earth!"

<sup>1</sup>interrogate/investigate <sup>2</sup>the day after tomorrow <sup>3</sup>reveal it to you

So Jonathan made a covenant with the House of David, saying, "Let THE LORD even require it at the hand of David's enemies!"

And Jonathan caused David to swear again, because he loved him; for he loved him as he loved his own soul.

Then Jonathan said to David, "To morrow is the new moon, and thou shalt be missed because thy seat will be empty. And when thou hast stayed three days, then thou shalt go down quickly and come to the place where thou didst hide thyself when the business was in hand, and shalt remain by the stone Ezel. And I will shoot three arrows on the side thereof, as though I shot at a mark. And, behold, I will send a lad, saying, '*Go, find out the arrows.*' If I expressly say unto the lad, '*Behold, the arrows are on this side of thee, take them,*' then come thou - for there is peace to thee and no hurt; as THE LORD liveth. But, if I say thus unto the young man, '*Behold, the arrows are beyond thee,*' go thy way; for THE LORD hath sent thee away. And as touching the matter which thou and I have spoken of - behold, THE LORD be between thee and me for ever!"

So David hid himself in the field; and when the new moon was come, the king sat him down to eat meat. And the king sat upon his seat as at other times, even upon a seat by the wall. And Jonathan arose, and Abner sat by Saul's side, and David's place was empty. Nevertheless Saul spake not any thing that day (for he thought, '*Something hath befallen him, he 'is not clean; surely he is not clean.*')

*'is a sinner/has sinned/broken a law of uncleanness*

And it came to pass on the morrow (which was the second day of the month) that David's place was empty. And Saul said unto Jonathan his son, "Wherefore cometh not the son of Jesse to meat, neither yesterday, nor to day?!"

And Jonathan answered Saul, "David earnestly asked leave of me to go to Bethlehem, and he said, '*Let me go, I pray thee; for our family hath a sacrifice in the city. And my brother, he hath commanded me to be there. And now, if I have found favour in thine eyes, let me get away, I pray thee, and see my brethren.*' Therefore he cometh not unto the king's table."

Then Saul's anger was kindled against Jonathan, and he said unto him, "Thou son of the perverse rebellious woman! Do not I know that thou 'hast chosen the son of Jesse to thine own confusion, and unto the confusion of thy mother's nakedness?! For as long as the son of Jesse liveth upon the ground, thou shalt not be established, nor thy kingdom. Wherefore now send and fetch him unto me, for he shall surely die!"

*'are mated with/romantically & sexually involved with/covenanted with*

And Jonathan answered Saul his father, and said unto him, "Wherefore shall he be slain?! What hath he done?!"

And Saul cast a javelin at him to smite him; whereby Jonathan knew that it was determined of his father to slay David. So Jonathan arose from the table in fierce anger, and did eat no meat the second day of the month, for he was grieved for David, because his father had done him shame.

And it came to pass in the morning that Jonathan went out into the field at the time appointed with David, and a little lad with him. And he said unto his lad, "Run, find out now the arrows which I shoot."

And as the lad ran, he shot an arrow beyond him. And when the lad was come to the place of the arrow which Jonathan had shot, Jonathan cried after the lad, and said, "Is not the arrow beyond thee?" And Jonathan cried after the lad, "Make speed, haste, stay not!"

And Jonathan's lad gathered up the arrows, and came to his master. But the lad knew not any thing; only Jonathan and David knew the matter. And Jonathan gave his artillery unto his lad, and said unto him, "Go, carry them to the city."

And as soon as the lad was gone, David arose out of a place toward the south, and fell on his face to the ground, and bowed himself three times.

And they kissed one another, and wept one with another, until David exceeded.

And Jonathan said to David, "Go in peace, forasmuch as we have sworn both of us in the name of THE LORD, saying, *'THE LORD be between me and thee, and between my seed and thy seed for ever.'*"

And he arose and departed, and Jonathan went into the city. Then came David to Nob, to Ahimelech the priest; and Ahimelech was afraid at the meeting of David, and said unto him, "Why art thou alone, and no man with thee?"

And David said unto Ahimelech the priest, "The king hath commanded me a business, and hath said unto me, *'Let no man know any thing of the business whereabout I send thee and what I have commanded thee; and I have appointed my servants to such and such a place.'* Now therefore what is under thine hand? Give me five loaves of bread in mine hand, or what there is present."

And the priest answered David, and said, "There is no common bread under mine hand, but there is hallowed bread - *if* the young men have <sup>1</sup>kept themselves at least from women." <sup>1</sup>*not had sex*

And David answered the priest and said unto him, "Of a truth women have been kept from us about these three days, since I came out, and the vessels of the young men are holy, and the bread is in a manner common, yea, though it were sanctified this day in the vessel."

So the priest gave him <sup>1</sup>hallowed bread; for there was no bread there but the <sup>1</sup>Showbread that was taken from before THE LORD, to put hot bread in the day when it was taken away.

<sup>1</sup>*sacred unleavened bread for the Tabernacle/Temple*

Now, a certain man of the servants of Saul was there that day, detained before THE LORD; and his name was Doeg, an Edomite, the chiefest of the herdmen that belonged to Saul.

And David said unto Ahimelech, "And is there not here under thine hand spear or sword? For I have neither brought my sword nor my weapons with me, because the king's business required haste."

And the priest said, "The sword of Goliath the Philistine, whom thou slewest in the Valley of Elah, behold, it is here wrapped in a cloth behind the ephod. If thou wilt take that, take it; for there is no other, save that, here."

And David said, "There is none like that! Give it me."

And David arose and fled that day for fear of Saul, and went to Achish the king of Gath. And the servants of Achish said unto him, "Is not this David the king of the land? Did they not sing one to another of him in dances, saying, *'Saul hath slain his thousands, and David his ten thousands'?*"

And David laid up these words in his heart, and was sore afraid of Achish the king of Gath. And he changed his behaviour before them, and feigned himself mad in their hands, and scrabbled on the doors of the gate, and let his spittle fall down upon his beard.

Then said Achish unto his servants, "Lo, ye see the man is <sup>1</sup>mad! Wherefore then have ye brought him to me? Have I need of mad men, that ye have brought this fellow to play the <sup>1</sup>mad man in my presence? Shall this fellow come into my house?" <sup>1</sup>*lunatic*

David therefore departed thence, and escaped to the cave Adullam; and when his brethren and all his father's House heard it, they went down thither to him. And every one that was in distress, and every one that was in debt, and every one that was discontented, gathered themselves unto him; and he became a captain over them, and there were with him about four hundred men.

And David went thence to Mizpeh of Moab, and he said unto the king of Moab, "Let my father and my mother, I pray thee, come forth, and be with you till I know what God will do for me."

And he brought them before the king of Moab and they dwelt with him all the while that David was in the hold.

And the prophet Gad said unto David, "Abide not in the hold; depart, and get thee into the land of Judah."

Then David departed and came into the forest of Hareth. When Saul heard that David was discovered, and the men that were with him - (now, Saul abode in Gibeah under a tree in Ramah, having his spear in his hand and all his servants were standing about him) - then Saul said unto his servants that stood about him, "Hear now, ye Benjamites! Will the son of Jesse give every one of you fields and vineyards, and make you all captains of thousands, and captains of hundreds, that all of you have conspired against me and there is none that showeth me that my son hath made a league with the son of Jesse, and there is none of you that is sorry for me or showeth unto me that my son hath stirred up my servant against me, to lie in wait, as at this day?!"

Then answered Doeg the Edomite, which was set over the servants of Saul, and said, "I saw the son of Jesse coming to Nob, to Ahimelech the son of Ahitub. And he inquired of THE LORD for him, and gave him victuals, and gave him the sword of Goliath the Philistine."

Then the king sent to call Ahimelech the priest, the son of Ahitub, and all his father's house (the priests that were in Nob); and they came all of them to the king.

And Saul said, "Hear now, thou son of Ahitub!"

And he answered, "Here I am, my lord."

And Saul said unto him, "Why have ye conspired against me - thou and the son of Jesse - in that thou hast given him bread, and a sword, and hast inquired of God for him, that he should rise against me, to lie in wait, as at this day?"

Then Ahimelech answered the king, and said, "And who is so faithful among all thy servants as David - which is the king's son-in-law - and goeth at thy bidding, and is honourable in thine house? Did I then begin to inquire of God for him? Be it far from me! Let not the king <sup>1</sup>impute any thing unto his servant, nor to all the House of my father; for thy servant knew nothing of all this, less or more!" <sup>1</sup>*accuse*

And the king said, "Thou shalt surely die, Ahimelech! Thou, and all thy father's House!"

And the king said unto the footmen that stood about him, "Turn, and slay the priests of THE LORD; because <sup>1</sup>their hand also is with David, and because they knew when he fled and did not show it to me!"

<sup>1</sup>*they are on David's side*

But the servants of the king would not put forth their hand to fall upon the priests of THE LORD. And the king said to Doeg, "Turn thou, and fall upon the priests!" And Doeg the Edomite turned, and he fell upon the priests, and slew on that day <sup>1</sup>fourscore and five persons that did wear a linen ephod. <sup>185</sup> priests

And Nob, the city of the priests, smote he with the edge of the sword, both men and women, children and sucklings, and oxen, and asses, and sheep, with the edge of the sword. And one of the sons of Ahimelech the son of Ahitub, named Abiathar, escaped, and fled after David. And Abiathar showed David that Saul had slain THE LORD'S priests.

And David said unto Abiathar, "I knew it that day, when Doeg the Edomite was there, that he would surely tell Saul. I have <sup>1</sup>occasioned the death of all the persons of thy father's house. Abide thou with me, fear not; for he that seeketh my life seeketh thy life, but with me thou shalt be in safeguard." <sup>1</sup>caused

Then they told David, saying, "Behold, the Philistines fight against Keilah, and they rob the threshingfloors."

Therefore David inquired of THE LORD, saying, "Shall I go and smite these Philistines?"

And THE LORD said unto David, "Go, and smite the Philistines, and save Keilah."

And David's men said unto him, "Behold, we be afraid here in Judah! How much more then if we come to Keilah against the armies of the Philistines?!"

Then David inquired of THE LORD yet again. And THE LORD answered him and said, "Arise, go down to Keilah; for I *will* deliver the Philistines into thine hand."

So David and his men went to Keilah and fought with the Philistines, and brought away their cattle, and smote them with a great slaughter. So David saved the inhabitants of Keilah. And it came to pass, when Abiathar the son of Ahimelech fled to David to Keilah, that he came down with an ephod in his hand.

And it was told Saul that David was come to Keilah. And Saul said, "God hath delivered him into mine hand; for he is shut in by entering into a town that hath gates and bars!"

And Saul called all the people together to war, to go down to Keilah, to besiege David and his men. And David knew that Saul secretly practiced mischief against him; and he said to Abiathar the priest, "Bring hither the ephod." Then said David, "O LORD God of Israel, thy servant hath certainly heard that Saul seeketh to come to Keilah, to destroy the city for my sake. Will the men of Keilah deliver me up into his hand? Will Saul come down, as thy servant hath heard? O LORD God of Israel, I beseech Thee, tell thy servant!"

And THE LORD said, "He will come down."

Then said David, "Will the men of Keilah deliver me and my men into the hand of Saul?"

And THE LORD said, "They will deliver thee up."

Then David and his men, which were about six hundred, arose and departed out of Keilah, and went whithersoever they could go. And it was told Saul that David was escaped from Keilah; and he forbore to go forth. And David abode in the wilderness in strong holds, and remained in a mountain in the wilderness of Ziph. And Saul sought him every day, but God delivered him not into his hand. And David saw that Saul was come out to seek his life, and David was in the wilderness of Ziph in a wood.

And Jonathan, Saul's son, arose and went to David into the wood, and strengthened his hand in God. And he said unto him, "Fear not; for the hand of Saul my father shall not find thee, and thou shalt be king over Israel, and I shall be next unto thee - and that also Saul my father knoweth."

And they two made a covenant before THE LORD; and David abode in the wood, and Jonathan went to his house.

Then came up the Ziphites to Saul to Gibeah, saying, "Doth not David hide himself with us in strong holds in the wood, in the hill of Hachilah, which is on the south of Jeshimon? Now therefore, O king, come down according to all the desire of thy soul to come down; and our part shall be to deliver him into the king's hand."

And Saul said, "Blessed be ye of THE LORD; for ye have compassion on me. Go, I pray you, prepare yet, and know and see his place where his <sup>1</sup>haunt is, and who hath seen him there; for it is told me that he dealeth very subtly. See therefore, and take knowledge of all the lurking places where he hideth himself, and come ye again to me with the <sup>2</sup>certainty, and I will go with you; and it shall come to pass, if he be in the land, that I will search him out throughout all the thousands of Judah." *<sup>1</sup>hang out/<sup>2</sup>hide out <sup>3</sup>facts*

And they arose, and went to Ziph before Saul; but David and his men were in the wilderness of Maon, in the plain on the south of Jeshimon. Saul also and his men went to seek him. And they told David; wherefore he came down into a rock, and abode in the wilderness of Maon. And when Saul heard that, he pursued after David in the wilderness of Maon. And Saul went on this side of the mountain, and David and his men on that side of the mountain, and David made haste to get away for fear of Saul; for Saul and his men compassed David and his men round about to take them.

But there came a messenger unto Saul, saying, "Haste thee, and come; for the Philistines have invaded the land!"

Wherefore Saul returned from pursuing after David, and went against the Philistines; therefore they called that place Selah-ammahlekoth.

And David went up from thence, and dwelt in strong holds at Engedi.

And it came to pass, when Saul was returned from following the Philistines, that it was told him, saying, "Behold, David is in the wilderness of Engedi!"

Then Saul took three thousand chosen men out of all Israel, and went to seek David and his men upon the rocks of the wild goats. And he came to the <sup>1</sup>sheepcotes by the way, where was a cave; and Saul went in to <sup>2</sup>cover his feet. And David and his men remained in the sides of the cave. *<sup>1</sup>stable <sup>2</sup>use the toilet*

And the men of David said unto him, "Behold the day of which THE LORD said unto thee, '*Behold, I will deliver thine enemy into thine hand, that thou mayest do to him as it shall seem good unto thee.*'"

Then David arose, and cut off the skirt of Saul's robe <sup>1</sup>privily. *<sup>1</sup>secretly*

And it came to pass afterward that David's <sup>1</sup>heart smote him, because he had cut off Saul's skirt. *<sup>1</sup>heart ached/<sup>2</sup>heart grieved/<sup>3</sup>heart was broken*

And he said unto his men, "THE LORD forbid that I should do this thing unto my master, THE LORD'S anointed, to stretch forth mine hand against him, seeing he is the anointed of THE LORD!"

So David stayed his servants with these words and suffered them not to rise against Saul. But Saul rose up out of the cave, and went on his way.

David also arose afterward and went out of the cave, and cried after Saul, saying, "My lord the king!"

And when Saul looked behind him, David stooped with his face to the earth and bowed himself. And David said to Saul, "Wherefore <sup>1</sup>hearest thou men's words, saying, '*Behold, David seeketh thy hurt*'? Behold, this day thine eyes have seen how that THE LORD had delivered thee to day into mine hand in the cave - and some <sup>2</sup>bade me kill thee! But <sup>3</sup>mine eye spared thee, and I said I will not put forth mine hand against my lord, for he is THE LORD'S anointed. Moreover, my father... see! Yea, see the skirt of thy robe in my hand! For, in that I cut off the skirt of thy robe and killed thee not, know thou and see that there is neither evil nor transgression in mine hand and I have not sinned against thee - yet thou huntest my soul to take it! THE LORD judge between me and thee, and THE LORD avenge me of thee; but <sup>4</sup>mine hand shall not be upon thee! As saith the proverb of the ancients, '*Wickedness proceedeth from the wicked,*' but <sup>4</sup>mine hand shall *not* be upon thee! After whom is the king of Israel come out? After whom dost thou pursue? After a dead dog! After a flea! THE LORD therefore be judge, and judge between me and thee, and see, and plead my cause, and deliver me out of thine hand!" <sup>1</sup>why do you listen to gossip <sup>2</sup>told me to <sup>3</sup>I pitied you <sup>4</sup>I will not harm you

And it came to pass, when David had made an end of speaking these words unto Saul, that Saul said, <sup>1</sup>"Is this thy voice, my son David?" <sup>1</sup>Is this what you have to say? (do you really mean those words that you've spoken?)

And Saul lifted up his voice and wept. And he said to David, "Thou art more righteous than I! For thou hast rewarded me good, whereas I have rewarded thee evil! And thou hast showed this day how that thou hast dealt well with me; forasmuch as when THE LORD had delivered me into thine hand, thou killedst me not. For if a man find his enemy, will he let him <sup>1</sup>go well away? Wherefore THE LORD reward thee good for that thou hast done unto me this day!! And now, behold, I know well that thou shalt surely be king, and that the kingdom of Israel shall be established in thine hand! Swear now therefore unto me by THE LORD, that thou wilt not cut off my seed after me, and that thou wilt not destroy my name out of my father's house." <sup>1</sup>get away unharmed

And David sware unto Saul. And Saul went home; but David and his men gat them up unto the hold.

And Samuel died. And all the Israelites were gathered together, and lamented him, and buried him in his house at Ramah.

And David arose, and went down to the wilderness of Paran. And there was a man in Maon whose possessions were in Carmel; and the man was very great, and he had three thousand sheep, and a thousand goats, and he was shearing his sheep in Carmel.

Now, the name of the man was Nabal, and the name of his wife Abigail, and she was a woman of good understanding and of a beautiful countenance; but the man was churlish and evil in his doings, and he was of the House of Caleb. And David heard in the wilderness that Nabal did shear his sheep.

And David sent out ten young men, and David said unto the young men, "Get you up to Carmel, and go to Nabal and greet him in my name; and thus shall ye say to him that liveth in prosperity, '*Peace be both to thee, and peace be to thine house, and peace be unto all that thou hast. And now I have heard that thou hast shearers. Now, thy shepherds which were with us, we hurt them not, neither was there ought missing unto them, all the while they were in Carmel - ask thy young men and they will <sup>1</sup>show thee. Wherefore let the young men find favour in thine eyes (for we come in a good day). Give, I pray thee, whatsoever cometh to thine hand unto thy servants, and to thy son David.*'" <sup>1</sup>tell/prove it to you

And when David's young men came, they spake to Nabal according to all those words in the name of David, and ceased. And Nabal answered David's servants, and said, "Who is David? And who is the son of Jesse? There be many servants now-a-days that break away, every man, from his master. Shall I then take my bread and my water and my <sup>1</sup>flesh that I have killed for my shearers, and give it unto men whom I know not whence they be?!" <sup>1</sup>meat/food

So David's young men turned their way, and went again and came and told <sup>1</sup>him all those sayings. <sup>1</sup>David

And David said unto his men, "Gird ye on every man his sword!"

And they girded on every man his sword; and David also girded on his sword. And there went up after David about four hundred men, and two hundred <sup>1</sup>abode by the stuff. <sup>1</sup>stayed with their things

But one of the young men told Abigail, Nabal's wife, saying, "Behold, David sent messengers out of the wilderness to salute our master, and he <sup>1</sup>railed on them! But the men were very good unto us, and we were not hurt, neither missed we any thing, as long as we were conversant with them when we were in the fields. They were <sup>2</sup>a wall unto us both by night and day all the while we were with them keeping the sheep. Now therefore know and consider what thou wilt do; for evil is determined against our master and against all his household - for he is such a <sup>3</sup>son of Belial that a man cannot speak to him!"

<sup>1</sup>verbally attacked <sup>2</sup>wall of protection <sup>3</sup>wicked/servant of the Devil

Then Abigail made haste, and took two hundred loaves, and two bottles of wine, and five sheep ready dressed, and five measures of parched corn, and an hundred clusters of raisins, and two hundred cakes of figs, and laid them on asses.

And she said unto her servants, "Go on before me; behold, I come after you." But she told not her husband Nabal. And it was so, as she rode on the ass, that she came down by the <sup>1</sup>covert on the hill, and, behold, David and his men came down against her; and she met them. <sup>1</sup>sheltered area

Now, David had said, "Surely in vain have I <sup>1</sup>kept all that this fellow hath in the wilderness, so that nothing was missed of all that pertained unto him; and he hath <sup>2</sup>requited me evil for good. <sup>3</sup>So (and more also!) do God unto the enemies of David if I leave of all that pertain to him by the morning light any that pisseth against the wall!" <sup>1</sup>protected <sup>2</sup>repaid <sup>3</sup>the same thing

And when Abigail saw David, she hastened, and lighted off the ass, and fell before David on her face, and bowed herself to the ground and fell at his feet, and said, "Upon me, my lord, upon me let this iniquity be! And let thine handmaid, I pray thee, speak in thine audience and hear the words of thine handmaid. Let not my lord, I pray thee, regard this man of Belial, even Nabal - for <sup>1</sup>as his name is, so is he! "Nabal" is his name, and "folly" is with him - but I, thine handmaid, saw not the young men of my lord whom thou didst send. Now therefore, my lord, as THE LORD liveth and as thy soul liveth, seeing THE LORD hath withholden thee from coming to shed blood and from avenging thyself with thine own hand, now let thine enemies and they that seek evil to my lord be as Nabal. And now this blessing which thine handmaid hath brought unto my lord, let it even be given unto the young men that follow my lord. I pray thee, forgive the trespass of thine handmaid, for THE LORD will certainly make my lord a sure House because my lord fighteth the battles of THE LORD, and evil hath not been found in thee all thy days. Yet a man is risen to pursue thee and to seek thy soul, but the soul of my lord shall be bound in the bundle of life with THE LORD thy God; and the souls of thine enemies - them shall he sling out as out of the middle of a sling. And it shall come to pass, when THE LORD shall have done to my lord according to all the good that he hath spoken concerning thee, and shall have appointed thee ruler over Israel, that this shall be no grief unto thee nor offence of heart unto my lord, either that thou hast shed blood causeless or that my lord hath avenged himself. But when THE LORD shall have dealt well with my lord, then remember thine handmaid."

And David said to Abigail, "Blessed be THE LORD God of Israel which sent thee this day to meet me! And blessed be thy advice, and blessed be thou, which hast kept me this day from coming to shed blood, and from avenging myself with mine own hand! For in very deed, as THE LORD God of Israel liveth, which hath kept me back from hurting thee, except thou hadst hasted and come to meet me, surely there had not been left unto Nabal by the morning light any that pisseth against the wall."

So David received of her hand that which she had brought him, and said unto her, "Go up in peace to thine house; see, I have hearkened to thy voice, and have accepted thy person."

And Abigail came to Nabal; and, behold, he held a feast in his house, like the feast of a king. And Nabal's heart was merry within him, for he was very drunken. Wherefore she told him nothing, less or more, until the morning light. But it came to pass in the morning, when the wine was gone out of Nabal, and his wife had told him these things, that his heart died within him and he became as a stone. And it came to pass about ten days after, that THE LORD smote Nabal that he died.

And when David heard that Nabal was dead, he said, "Blessed be THE LORD that hath pleaded the cause of my reproach from the hand of Nabal, and hath kept his servant from evil! For THE LORD hath returned the wickedness of Nabal upon his own head!"

And David sent and communed with Abigail to take her to him to wife. And when the servants of David were come to Abigail to Carmel, they spake unto her, saying, "David sent us unto thee, to take thee to him to wife."

And she arose, and bowed herself on her face to the earth, and said, "Behold, let thine handmaid be a servant to wash the feet of the servants of my lord!"

And Abigail hasted, and arose, and rode upon an ass, with five damsels of hers that went after her; and she went after the messengers of David, and became his wife.

David also took Ahinoam of Jezreel; and they were also both of them his wives.

But Saul had given Michal his daughter, David's wife, to Phalti the son of Laish, which was of Gallim.

And the Ziphites came unto Saul to Gibeah, saying, "Doth not David hide himself in the hill of Hachilah, which is before Jeshimon?"

Then Saul arose and went down to the wilderness of Ziph, having three thousand chosen men of Israel with him, to seek David in the wilderness of Ziph. And Saul pitched in the hill of Hachilah which is before Jeshimon by the way. But David abode in the wilderness, and he saw that Saul came after him into the wilderness. David therefore sent out spies, and understood that Saul was come in <sup>1</sup>very deed. *<sup>1</sup>in person*

And David arose, and came to the place where Saul had <sup>1</sup>pitched; and David beheld the place where Saul lay, and Abner the son of Ner, the captain of his host. And Saul lay in the trench, and the people <sup>1</sup>pitched round about him. *<sup>1</sup>pitched a tent/camped*

Then answered David and said to Ahimelech the Hittite and to Abishai the son of Zeruiah (brother to Joab), saying, "Who will go down with me to Saul to the camp?"

And Abishai said, "I will go down with thee."

So David and Abishai came to the people by night. And, behold, Saul lay sleeping within the trench, and his spear stuck in the ground at his <sup>1</sup>bolster; but Abner and the people lay round about him. *<sup>1</sup>pillow*

Then said Abishai to David, "God hath delivered thine enemy into thine hand this day! Now therefore let me smite him, I pray thee, with the spear even to the earth at once, and I will not smite him the second time."

And David said to Abishai, "Destroy him not! For who can stretch forth his hand against THE LORD'S anointed and be guiltless?!"

David said furthermore, "As THE LORD liveth, *THE LORD* shall smite him; or, his day shall come to die; or, he shall descend into battle and perish. THE LORD forbid that *I* should stretch forth *mine* hand against THE LORD'S anointed! But, I pray thee, take thou now the spear that is at his bolster, and the cruse of water, and let us go."

So David took the spear and the cruse of water from Saul's bolster; and they gat them away, and no man saw it, nor knew it, neither awaked (for they were all asleep, because a deep sleep from THE LORD was fallen upon them).

Then David went over to the other side and stood on the top of an hill afar off, a great space being between them. And David cried to the people, and to Abner the son of Ner, saying, "Answerest thou not, Abner?!"

Then Abner answered and said, "Who art thou that criest to the king?"

And David said to Abner, "Art not thou a valiant man? And who is like to thee in Israel? Wherefore then hast thou not <sup>1</sup>kept thy lord the king? For there came one of the people in to destroy the king thy lord! This thing is not good that thou hast done! As THE LORD liveth, ye are worthy to die, because ye have not <sup>1</sup>kept your master, THE LORD'S anointed! And now see where the king's spear is, and the cruse of water that was at his bolster." *<sup>1</sup>guarded/kept vigilance*

And Saul knew David's voice, and said, "Is this thy voice, my son David?"

And David said, "It is my voice, my lord, O king." And he said, "Wherefore doth my lord thus pursue after his servant? For what have I done, or what evil is in mine hand? Now therefore, I pray thee, let my lord the king hear the words of his servant. If THE LORD have stirred thee up against me, let him accept an offering; but if they be the children of men, cursed be they before THE LORD! For they have driven me out this day from abiding in the inheritance of THE LORD, saying, '*Go, serve other gods!*' Now therefore, let not my blood fall to the earth before the face of THE LORD; for the king of Israel is come out to seek a flea, as when one doth hunt a partridge in the mountains!"

Then said Saul, "I have sinned! Return, my son David; for I will no more do thee harm, because my soul was precious in thine eyes this day. Behold, I have played the fool, and have erred exceedingly!"

And David answered and said, "Behold the king's spear! And let one of the young men come over and fetch it. THE LORD render to every man his righteousness and his faithfulness, for THE LORD delivered thee into my hand to day, but I would not stretch forth mine hand against THE LORD'S anointed! And, behold, as thy life was much set by this day in mine eyes, so let *my* life be much set by in the eyes of THE LORD, and let Him deliver me out of all tribulation."

Then Saul said to David, "Blessed be thou, my son David! Thou shalt both do great things, and also shalt still prevail!"

So David went on his way, and Saul returned to his place. And David said in his heart, "I shall now perish one day by the hand of Saul. There is nothing better for me than that I should speedily escape into the land of

the Philistines; and Saul shall despair of me, to seek me any more in any coast of Israel; so shall I escape out of his hand."

And David arose, and he passed over with the six hundred men that were with him unto Achish, the son of Maach, king of Gath. And David dwelt with Achish at Gath, he and his men, every man with his household, even David with his two wives, Ahinoam the Jezreelitess, and Abigail the Carmelitess (Nabal's <sup>1</sup>wife). And it was told Saul that David was fled to Gath, and he sought no more again for him. <sup>1</sup>widow

And David said unto Achish, "If I have now found grace in thine eyes, let them give me a place in some town in the country, that I may dwell there: for why should <sup>1</sup>thy servant dwell in the royal city with thee?" <sup>1</sup>we

Then Achish gave him Ziklag that day; wherefore Ziklag <sup>1</sup>pertaineth unto the kings of Judah unto this day. And the time that David dwelt in the country of the Philistines was a full year and four months. And David and his men went up and invaded the Geshurites, and the Gezrites, and the Amalekites; for those nations were of old the inhabitants of the land, as thou goest to Shur, even unto the land of Egypt. And David smote the land and left neither man nor woman alive, and took away the sheep, and the oxen, and the asses, and the camels, and the apparel, and returned, and came to Achish. <sup>1</sup>belongs

And Achish said, "Whither have ye made a road to day?"

And David said, "Against the south of Judah, and against the south of the Jerahmeelites, and against the south of the Kenites."

And David saved neither man nor woman alive, to bring tidings to Gath, saying, "...Lest they should <sup>1</sup>tell on us, saying, *'So did David, and so will be his manner all the while he dwelleth in the country of the Philistines.'*" <sup>1</sup>tattle/report us

And Achish believed David, saying, "He hath made his people Israel utterly to abhor him; therefore he shall be my servant for ever."

And it came to pass in those days that the Philistines gathered their armies together for warfare to fight with Israel. And Achish said unto David, "Know thou assuredly that thou shalt go out with me to battle, thou and thy men."

And David said to Achish, "Surely thou shalt know what thy servant can do."

And Achish said to David, "Therefore will I make thee <sup>1</sup>keeper of mine head for ever." <sup>1</sup>personal guard

Now Samuel was dead, and all Israel had lamented him and buried him in Ramah, even in his own city. And Saul had put away those that had familiar spirits and the wizards out of the land. And the Philistines gathered themselves together and came and pitched in Shunem, and Saul gathered all Israel together and they pitched in Gilboa. And when Saul saw the host of the Philistines, he was afraid, and his heart greatly trembled. And when Saul inquired of THE LORD, THE LORD answered him not, neither by dreams, nor by Urim, nor by prophets.

Then said Saul unto his servants, "Seek me a woman that hath a familiar spirit, that I may go to her and inquire of her."

And his servants said to him, "Behold, there is a woman that hath a familiar spirit at Endor."

And Saul disguised himself and put on other raiment, and he went and two men with him, and they came to the woman by night." And he said, "I pray thee, divine unto me by the familiar spirit, and bring me him up whom I shall name unto thee."

And the woman said unto him, "Behold, thou knowest what Saul hath done - how he hath cut off those that have familiar spirits and the wizards out of the land. Wherefore then layest thou a snare for my life, to cause me to <sup>1</sup>die?" *<sup>1</sup>to be put to death (for divination)*

And Saul swore to her by THE LORD, saying, "As THE LORD liveth, there shall no punishment happen to thee for this thing!"

Then said the woman, "Whom shall I bring up unto thee?"

And he said, "Bring me up Samuel."

And when the woman saw Samuel she cried with a loud voice; and the woman spake to Saul, saying, "Why hast thou deceived me? For thou art Saul!"

And the king said unto her, "Be not afraid; for what sawest thou?"

And the woman said unto Saul, "I saw gods ascending out of the earth."

And he said unto her, "What form is he of?"

And she said, "An old man cometh up; and he is covered with a mantle."

And Saul perceived that it was Samuel, and he stooped with his face to the ground, and bowed himself.

And Samuel said to Saul, "Why hast thou disquieted me, to bring me up?"

And Saul answered, "I am sore distressed! For the Philistines make war against me, and God is departed from me and answereth me no more, neither by prophets, nor by dreams; therefore I have called thee, that thou mayest make known unto me what I shall do."

Then said Samuel, "Wherefore then dost thou ask of *me*, seeing THE LORD is departed from thee and is become thine enemy? And THE LORD hath done to him as he spake by me: for THE LORD hath rent the kingdom out of thine hand, and given it to thy neighbour, even to David, because thou obeyedst not the voice of THE LORD, nor executedst His fierce wrath upon Amalek. Therefore hath THE LORD done this thing unto thee this day. Moreover THE LORD will also deliver Israel with thee into the hand of the Philistines; and to morrow shalt thou and thy sons be <sup>1</sup>with me. THE LORD also shall deliver the host of Israel into the hand of the Philistines." *<sup>1</sup>dead*

Then Saul fell straightway all along on the earth, and was sore afraid because of the words of Samuel; and there was no strength in him, for he had eaten no bread all the day, nor all the night.

And the woman came unto Saul, and saw that he was sore troubled, and said unto him, "Behold, thine handmaid hath obeyed thy voice, and I have put my life in my hand, and have hearkened unto thy words which thou spakest unto me. Now therefore, I pray thee, hearken thou also unto the voice of thine handmaid, and let me set a morsel of bread before thee; and eat, that thou mayest have strength when thou goest on thy way."

But he refused, and said, "I will not eat."

But his servants, together with the woman, compelled him; and he hearkened unto their voice. So he arose from the earth, and sat upon the bed. And the woman had a fat calf in the house; and she hastened and killed it, and took flour, and kneaded it, and did bake unleavened bread thereof. And she brought it before Saul, and before his servants; and they did eat. Then they rose up, and went away that night.

Now, the Philistines gathered together all their armies to Aphek, and the Israelites pitched by a fountain which is in Jezreel. And the lords of the Philistines passed on by hundreds, and by thousands; but David and his men passed on in the rereward with Achish.

Then said the princes of the Philistines, "What do these Hebrews here?!"

And Achish said unto the princes of the Philistines, "Is not this David, the servant of Saul the king of Israel, which hath been with me these days, or these years, and I have found no fault in him since he fell unto me unto this day?"

And the princes of the Philistines were wroth with him; and the princes of the Philistines said unto him, "Make this fellow return, that he may go again to his place which thou hast appointed him, and let him not go down with us to battle, lest in the battle he be an adversary to us! For <sup>1</sup>wherewith should he reconcile himself unto his master? Should it not be with the heads of <sup>2</sup>these men?! Is not this David, of whom they sang one to another in dances saying, '*Saul slew his thousands, and David his ten thousands*'?!"

<sup>1</sup>what better way is there <sup>2</sup>our

Then Achish called David, and said unto him, "Surely, as THE LORD liveth, thou hast been upright, and thy going out and thy coming in with me in the host is good in my sight; for I have not found evil in thee since the day of thy coming unto me unto this day. Nevertheless, the lords favour thee not. Wherefore now return, and go in peace, that thou displease not the lords of the Philistines."

And David said unto Achish, "But what have I done? And what hast thou found in thy servant so long as I have been with thee unto this day that I may not go fight against the enemies of my lord the king?"

And Achish answered and said to David, "I know that thou art good in my sight - as an angel of God! Notwithstanding, the princes of the Philistines have said, '*He shall not go up with us to the battle.*' Wherefore now, rise up early in the morning with thy master's servants that are come with thee; and as soon as ye be up early in the morning, and have light, depart."

So David and his men rose up early to depart in the morning, to return into the land of the Philistines. And the Philistines went up to Jezreel. And it came to pass, when David and his men were come to Ziklag on the third day, <sup>1</sup>that the Amalekites had invaded the south and Ziklag, and smitten Ziklag, and burned it with fire; and had taken the women captives, that were therein. They slew not any, either great or small, but carried them away, and went on their way. So David and his men came to the city, and, behold, it was burned with fire; and their wives, and their sons, and their daughters, were taken captives. <sup>1</sup>discovered

Then David and the people that were with him lifted up their voice and wept, until they had no more power to weep. And David's two wives were taken captives - Ahinoam the Jezreelitess, and Abigail the wife of Nabal the Carmelite. And David was greatly distressed; for the people spake of stoning him because the soul of all the people was grieved, every man for his sons and for his daughters. But David encouraged himself in THE LORD his God.

And David said to Abiathar the priest, Ahimelech's son, "I pray thee, bring me hither the ephod."

And Abiathar brought thither the ephod to David. And David inquired at THE LORD, saying, "Shall I pursue after this troop? Shall I overtake them?"

And He answered him, "Pursue! For thou shalt surely overtake them and without fail recover all!"

So David went, he and the six hundred men that were with him, and came to the brook Besor where those that were left behind stayed. But David pursued, he and four hundred men; for two hundred abode behind which were so faint that they could not go over the brook Besor. And they found an Egyptian in the field and brought him to David, and gave him bread, and he did eat. And they made him drink water; and they gave him a piece of a cake of figs and two clusters of raisins. And when he had eaten, <sup>1</sup>his spirit came again to him; for he had eaten no bread, nor drunk any water, three days and three nights. *<sup>1</sup>he recuperated*

And David said unto him, "To whom belongest thou, and whence art thou?"

And he said, "I am a young man of Egypt, servant to an Amalekite; and my master left me because three days ago I fell sick. We made an invasion upon the south of the Cherethites, and upon the coast which belongeth to Judah, and upon the south of Caleb; and we burned Ziklag with fire."

And David said to him, "Canst thou bring me down to this company?"

And he said, "Swear unto me by God that thou wilt neither kill me, nor deliver me into the hands of my master, and I will bring thee down to this company."

And when he had brought him down, behold, they were spread abroad upon all the earth, eating and drinking, and dancing, because of all the great spoil that they had taken out of the land of the Philistines, and out of the land of Judah. And David smote them from the twilight even unto the evening of the next day; and there escaped not a man of them, save four hundred young men, which rode upon camels, and fled.

And David recovered all that the Amalekites had carried away, and David rescued his two wives. And there was nothing lacking to them, neither small nor great, neither sons nor daughters, neither spoil, nor any thing that they had taken to them. David recovered all.

And David took all the flocks and the herds which they drave before those other cattle, and said, "This is David's spoil."

And David came to the two hundred men which were so faint that they could not follow David, whom they had made also to abide at the brook Besor. And they went forth to meet David, and to meet the people that were with him; and when David came near to the people, he saluted them.

Then answered all the wicked men and men of Belial, of those that went with David, and said, "Because they went not with us, we will not give them ought of the spoil that we have recovered, save to every man his wife and his children, that they may lead them away, and depart."

Then said David, "Ye shall *not* do so, my brethren, with that which *THE LORD* hath given us, who hath preserved us, and delivered the company that came against us into our hand! For who will hearken unto you in this matter? But <sup>1</sup>as his part is that goeth down to the battle, so shall his part be that carrieth by the stuff; they shall <sup>2</sup>part alike. *<sup>1</sup>as equally as <sup>2</sup>have an equal share*

And it was so from that day forward, that he made it a statute and an ordinance for Israel unto this day.

And when David came to Ziklag, he sent of the spoil unto the elders of Judah, even to his friends, saying, "Behold a present for you of the spoil of the enemies of THE LORD - to them which were in Bethel, and to them which were in South Ramoth, and to them which were in Jattir, and to them which were in Aroer, and to them which were in Siphmoth, and to them which were in Eshtemoa, and to them which were in Rachal, and to them which were in the cities of the Jerahmeelites, and to them which were in the cities of the Kenites, and to them which were in Hormah, and to them which were in Chorashan, and to them which were in Athach, and to them which were in Hebron, and to all the places where David himself and his men were wont to haunt."

Now, the Philistines fought against Israel, and the men of Israel fled from before the Philistines and fell down slain in Mount Gilboa. And the Philistines followed hard upon Saul and upon his sons; and the Philistines slew Jonathan, and Abinadab, and Melchishua - Saul's sons.

And the battle went sore against Saul, and the archers hit him; and he was sore wounded of the archers.

Then said Saul unto his armourbearer, "Draw thy sword and thrust me through therewith; lest these <sup>1</sup>uncircumcised come and thrust me through and abuse me." *<sup>1</sup>heathen*

But his armourbearer would not; for he was sore afraid. Therefore Saul took a sword and fell upon it. And when his armourbearer saw that Saul was dead, he fell likewise upon his sword and died with him. So Saul died, and his three sons, and his armourbearer, and all his men, that same day together.

And when the men of Israel that were on the other side of the valley, and they that were on the other side Jordan, saw that the men of Israel fled, and that Saul and his sons were dead, they forsook the cities, and fled; and the Philistines came and dwelt in them.

And it came to pass on the morrow, when the Philistines came to strip the slain, that they found Saul and his three sons fallen in Mount Gilboa. And they cut off his head, and stripped off his armour, and sent into the land of the Philistines round about, to publish it in the house of their idols and among the people. And they put his armour in the <sup>1</sup>house of Ashtaroth and they fastened his body to the wall of Bethshan. *<sup>1</sup>temple*

And when the inhabitants of Jabesh-Gilead heard of that which the Philistines had done to Saul; all the valiant men arose, and went all night, and took the body of Saul and the bodies of his sons from the wall of Bethshan, and came to Jabesh, and burnt them there. And they took their bones, and buried them under a tree at Jabesh, and fasted seven days.

Now it came to pass after the death of Saul - when David was returned from the slaughter of the Amalekites, and David had abode two days in Ziklag - it came even to pass on the third day that, behold, a man came out of the camp from Saul with his clothes rent and earth upon his head; and so it was, when he came to David, that he fell to the earth and did obeisance.

And David said unto him, "From whence comest thou?"

And he said unto him, "Out of the camp of Israel am I escaped."

And David said unto him, "How went the matter? I pray thee, tell me!"

And he answered that the people are fled from the battle, and many of the people also are fallen and dead - and Saul and Jonathan his son are dead also.

And David said unto the young man that told him, "How knowest thou that Saul and Jonathan his son be dead?!"

And the young man that told him said, "As I happened by chance upon Mount Gilboa, behold, Saul leaned upon his spear; and, lo, the chariots and horsemen followed hard after him. And when he looked behind him, he saw me and called unto me. And I answered, '*Here am I*'. And he said unto me, '*Who art thou?*' And I answered him, '*I am an Amalekite*.' He said unto me again, '*Stand, I pray thee, upon me, and slay me; for anguish is come upon me, because my life is yet whole in me*.' So I stood upon him and slew him, because I was sure that he could not live after that he was fallen; and I took the crown that was upon his head and the bracelet that was on his arm, and have brought them hither unto my lord."

Then David took hold on his clothes and rent them, and likewise all the men that were with him. And they mourned and wept and fasted until even for Saul and for Jonathan his son and for the People of THE LORD and for the House of Israel, because they were fallen by the sword.

And David said unto the young man that told him, "Whence art thou?"

And he answered, "I am the son of a stranger, an Amalekite."

And David said unto him, "How wast thou not afraid to stretch forth thine hand to destroy THE LORD'S anointed?!"

And David called one of the young men, and said, "Go near, and fall upon him!"

And he smote him that he died. And David said unto him, "Thy blood be upon thy head! For thy mouth hath testified against thee, saying, '*I have slain THE LORD'S anointed!*'"

And David lamented with this lamentation over Saul and over Jonathan his son (also he bade them teach the children of Judah the use of the bow - behold, it is written in <sup>1</sup>the book of Jasher):

"The beauty of Israel is slain upon thy high places! How are the mighty fallen!  
Tell it not in Gath, publish it not in the streets of Askelon, lest the daughters of the Philistines rejoice,  
lest the daughters of the uncircumcised triumph.

Ye mountains of Gilboa, let there be no dew, neither let there be rain upon you, nor fields of offerings:  
for there the shield of the mighty is vilely cast away,  
the shield of Saul, as though he had not been anointed with oil.  
From the blood of the slain, from the fat of the mighty, the bow of Jonathan turned not back,  
and the sword of Saul returned not empty.

Saul and Jonathan were lovely and pleasant in their live and in their death they were not divided:  
they were swifter than eagles, they were stronger than lions.  
Ye daughters of Israel, weep over Saul, who clothed you in scarlet, with other delights,  
who put on ornaments of gold upon your apparel.  
How are the mighty fallen in the midst of the battle!

O Jonathan, thou wast slain in thine high places! I am distressed for thee, my brother Jonathan!  
Very pleasant hast thou been unto me - thy love to me was wonderful, <sup>1</sup>passing the love of women!  
How are the mighty fallen, and the weapons of war perished!"

<sup>1</sup>surpassing/greater than

And it came to pass after this that David inquired of THE LORD, saying, "Shall I go up into any of the cities of Judah?"

And THE LORD said unto him, "Go up."

And David said, "Whither shall I go up?"

And He said, "Unto Hebron."

So David went up thither and his two wives also - Ahinoam the Jezreelitess, and Abigail (Nabal's wife) the Carmelite. And his men that were with him did David bring up, every man with his household; and they dwelt in the cities of Hebron.

And the men of Judah came, and there they anointed David king over the House of Judah.

And they told David, saying that the men of Jabesh-Gilead were they that buried Saul. And David sent messengers unto the men of Jabeshgilead, and said unto them, "Blessed be ye of THE LORD, that ye have showed this kindness unto your lord, even unto Saul, and have buried him. And now THE LORD show kindness and truth unto you; and I also will <sup>1</sup>requite you this kindness, because ye have done this thing. Therefore now let your hands be strengthened, and be ye valiant; for your master Saul is dead, and also the House of Judah have anointed me king over them." *<sup>1</sup>repay*

But Abner the son of Ner, captain of Saul's host, took Ishbosheth the son of Saul and brought him over to Mahanaim and made him king over Gilead and over the Ashurites and over Jezreel and over Ephraim and over Benjamin and over all Israel. Ishbosheth, Saul's son, was forty years old when he began to reign over Israel, and reigned two years. But the House of Judah followed David.

And the time that David was king in Hebron over the House of Judah was seven years and six months.

And Abner the son of Ner, and the servants of Ishbosheth the son of Saul, went out from Mahanaim to Gibeon.

And Joab (the son of Zeruiah) and the servants of David went out and met together by the pool of Gibeon; and they sat down, the one on the one side of the pool, and the other on the other side of the pool.

And Abner said to Joab, "Let the young men now arise, and play before us."

And Joab said, "Let them arise."

Then there arose and went over by number twelve of Benjamin which pertained to Ishbosheth the son of Saul, and twelve of the servants of David. And they caught every one his fellow by the head, and thrust his sword in his fellow's side; so they fell down together. Wherefore that place was called Helkath-hazzurim, which is in Gibeon.

And there was a very sore battle that day; and Abner was beaten, and the men of Israel, before the servants of David. And there were three sons of Zeruiah there - Joab, and Abishai, and Asahel. And Asahel was as light of foot as a wild roe. And Asahel pursued after Abner; and in going he turned not to the right hand nor to the left from following Abner.

Then Abner looked behind him, and said, "Art thou Asahel?"

And he answered, "I am."

And Abner said to him, "Turn thee aside to thy right hand or to thy left, and lay thee hold on one of the young men, and take thee his armour."

But Asahel would not turn aside from following of him. And Abner said again to Asahel, "Turn thee aside from following me! Wherefore should I smite thee to the ground? How then should I hold up my face to Joab thy brother?"

Howbeit he refused to turn aside. Wherefore Abner with the hinder end of the spear smote him under the fifth rib, that the spear came out behind him; and he fell down there, and died in the same place. And it came to pass that, as many as came to the place where Asahel fell down and died, stood still.

Joab also and Abishai pursued after Abner; and the sun went down when they were come to the Hill of Ammah that lieth before Giah by the way of the wilderness of Gibeon. And the children of Benjamin gathered themselves together after Abner, and became one troop, and stood on the top of an hill.

Then Abner called to Joab, and said, "Shall the sword devour for ever? Knowest thou not that it will be bitterness in the latter end? How long shall it be then ere thou bid the people return from following their brethren?"

*'violent feud never end*

And Joab said, "As God liveth, unless thou hadst spoken, surely then in the morning the people had gone up every one from following his brother."

*'would have*

So Joab blew a trumpet, and all the people stood still, and pursued after Israel no more, neither fought they any more. And Abner and his men walked all that night through the plain, and passed over Jordan, and went through all Bithron, and they came to Mahanaim. And Joab returned from following Abner; and when he had gathered all the people together, there lacked of David's servants nineteen men and Asahel.

But the servants of David had smitten of Benjamin, and of Abner's men, so that three hundred and threescore men died.

And they took up Asahel, and buried him in the sepulchre of his father, which was in Bethlehem. And Joab and his men went all night, and they came to Hebron at break of day.

Now, there was long war between the House of Saul and the House of David; but David waxed stronger and stronger, and the House of Saul waxed weaker and weaker.

And unto David were sons born in Hebron:

- and his firstborn was Amnon, of Ahinoam the Jezreelitess;
- and his second, Chileab, of Abigail (the wife of Nabal) the Carmelite;
- and the third, Absalom, the son of Maacah (the daughter of Talmi, king of Geshur);
- and the fourth, Adonijah, the son of Haggith;
- and the fifth, Shephatiah, the son of Abital;
- and the sixth, Ithream, by Eglah, David's wife.

These were born to David in Hebron. And it came to pass, while there was war between the House of Saul and the House of David, that Abner made himself strong for the House of Saul. And Saul had a concubine, whose name was Rizpah, the daughter of Aiah.

And Ishbosheth said to Abner, "Wherefore hast thou gone in unto my father's concubine?"

*'had sex with*

Then was Abner very wroth for the words of Ishbosheth, and said, "Am I a dog's head - which, against Judah, do show kindness this day unto the House of Saul thy father, to his brethren, and to his friends, and have not delivered thee into the hand of David - that thou chargest me to day with a fault concerning this

woman?! So do God to Abner and more also, <sup>2</sup>except (as THE LORD hath sworn to David) even so I do to him, to <sup>3</sup>translate the kingdom from the House of Saul and to set up the throne of David over Israel and over Judah, from Dan even to Beersheba!" *<sup>1</sup>a leader or pimp of male whores <sup>2</sup>unless <sup>3</sup>transfer*

And he could not answer Abner a word again, because he feared him.

And Abner sent messengers to David on his behalf, saying, "Whose is the land?" saying also, "Make thy <sup>1</sup>league with me, and, behold, my hand shall be with thee, to bring about all Israel unto thee." *<sup>1</sup>treaty*

And he said, "<sup>1</sup>Well. I will make a league with thee; but one thing I require of thee - that is, thou shalt not see my face except thou first bring Michal, Saul's daughter, when thou comest to see my face." *<sup>1</sup>"very well"/"that sounds good to me"*

And David sent messengers to Ishbosheth, Saul's son, saying, "Deliver me my wife Michal, which I espoused to me for an hundred foreskins of the Philistines!"

And Ishbosheth sent, and took her from her husband, even from Phaltiel the son of Laish. And her husband went with her along, weeping behind her to Bahurim.

Then said Abner unto him, "Go, <sup>1</sup>return." And he <sup>1</sup>returned. *<sup>1</sup>return home*

And Abner had communication with the elders of Israel, saying, "Ye sought for David in times past to be king over you. Now then, do it! For THE LORD hath spoken of David, saying, '*By the hand of My servant David I will save My People Israel out of the hand of the Philistines and out of the hand of all their enemies*'."

And Abner also spake <sup>1</sup>in the ears of Benjamin and Abner went also to speak <sup>1</sup>in the ears of David in Hebron all that seemed good to Israel and that seemed good to the whole House of Benjamin. *<sup>1</sup>privately (from the idea of whispering in the ear)*

So Abner came to David to Hebron, and twenty men with him. And David made Abner and the men that were with him a feast.

And Abner said unto David, "I will arise and go, and will gather all Israel unto my lord the king, that they may make a league with thee, and that thou mayest reign over all that thine heart desireth."

And David sent Abner away; and he went in peace. And, behold, the servants of David and Joab came from pursuing a troop and brought in a great spoil with them; but Abner was not with David in Hebron, for he had sent him away and he was gone in peace.

When Joab and all the host that was with him were come, they told Joab, saying, "Abner the son of Ner came to the king, and he hath sent him away, and he is gone in peace."

Then Joab came to the king, and said, "What hast thou done?! Behold, *Abner* came unto thee?! Why is it that thou hast sent him away and he is quite gone? Thou knowest Abner the son of Ner - that he came to deceive thee, and to know thy going out and thy coming in, and to know all that thou doest!"

And when Joab <sup>1</sup>was come out from David, he sent messengers after Abner, which brought him again from the Well of Sirah. *<sup>1</sup>left the presence of*

But David knew it not. And when Abner was returned to Hebron, Joab took him aside in the gate to speak with him quietly, and smote him there under the fifth rib, that he died, for the <sup>1</sup>blood of Asahel his brother. *<sup>1</sup>murder*

And afterward when David heard it, he said, "I and my kingdom are guiltless before THE LORD for ever from the blood of Abner the son of Ner! Let it rest on the head of Joab and on all his father's House; and let there not fail from the House of Joab one that hath an issue, or that is a leper, or that <sup>1</sup>leaneth on a staff, or that falleth on the sword, or that lacketh bread!" *<sup>1</sup>are crippled*

So Joab and Abishai his brother slew Abner, because he had slain their brother Asahel at Gibeon in the battle.

And David said to Joab and to all the people that were with him, "Rend your clothes and gird you with sackcloth and mourn before Abner!"

And King David himself followed the <sup>1</sup>bier. And they buried Abner in Hebron, and the king lifted up his voice and wept at the grave of Abner; and all the people wept. *<sup>1</sup>a framework holding a coffin and body*

And the king lamented over Abner, and said "Died Abner as a fool dieth? Thy hands were not bound, nor thy feet put into fetters; as a man falleth before wicked men, so fellest thou!"

And all the people wept again over him. And when all the people came to cause David to eat meat while it was yet day, David sware, saying, "So do God to me, and more also, if I taste bread or ought else till the sun be down!"

And all the people took notice of it and it pleased them (as whatsoever the king did pleased all the people), for all the people and all Israel understood that day that it was not <sup>1</sup>of the king to slay Abner the son of Ner. *<sup>1</sup>of the will of King David*

And the king said unto his servants, "Know ye not that there is a prince and a great man fallen this day in Israel? And I am this day weak, though anointed king. And these men, the sons of Zeruah, be too <sup>1</sup>hard for me; THE LORD shall reward the doer of evil according to his wickedness!" *<sup>1</sup>harsh/hardhearted/cruel*

And when Saul's son heard that Abner was dead in Hebron, his hands were feeble, and all the Israelites were troubled. And Saul's son had two men that were captains of bands. The name of the one was Baanah, and the name of the other Rechab, the sons of Rimmon a Beerothite of the children of Benjamin (for Beeroth also <sup>1</sup>was reckoned to Benjamin, and the Beerothites fled to Gittaim, and were sojourners there until this day). *<sup>1</sup>a sept (a family branch by marriage or territory)*

And Jonathan, Saul's son, had a son that was lame of his feet (he was five years old when the tidings came <sup>1</sup>of Saul and Jonathan out of Jezreel, and his nurse took him up and fled; and it came to pass, as she made haste to flee, that he fell and became lame). And his name was Mephibosheth. *<sup>1</sup>of the death of*

And the sons of Rimmon the Beerothite, Rechab and Baanah, went and came about <sup>1</sup>the heat of the day to the house of <sup>2</sup>Ishbosheth, who lay on a bed at noon. *<sup>1</sup>midday <sup>2</sup>Saul's last surviving son*

And they came thither into the midst of the house as though they would have fetched wheat; and they smote him under the fifth rib, and Rechab and Baanah his brother escaped. For when they came into the house, he lay on his bed in his bedchamber, and they smote him, and slew him, and beheaded him, and took his head, and gat them away through the plain all night.

And they brought the head of Ishbosheth unto David to Hebron, and said to the king, "Behold the head of Ishbosheth the son of Saul thine enemy which sought thy life; and THE LORD hath avenged my lord the king this day of Saul, and of his seed!"

And David answered Rechab and Baanah his brother, the sons of Rimmon the Beerothite, and said unto them, "As THE LORD liveth who hath redeemed my soul out of all adversity - when one told me, saying, 'Behold, Saul is dead,' thinking to have brought good tidings, I took hold of him and slew him in Ziklag who thought that I would have given him a reward for his tidings! How much more - when wicked men have slain a righteous person in his own house upon his bed - shall I not therefore now require his blood of your hand and take you away from the earth?!"

And David commanded his young men, and they slew them and cut off their hands and their feet and hanged them up over the pool in Hebron. But they took the head of Ishbosheth, and buried it in the sepulchre of Abner in Hebron.

Then came all the tribes of Israel to David unto Hebron, and spake, saying, "Behold, we are <sup>1</sup>thy bone and thy flesh. Also in time past, when Saul was king over us, thou wast he that leddest out and broughtest in Israel, and THE LORD said to thee, 'Thou shalt feed My People Israel, and thou shalt be a captain over Israel.'" <sup>2</sup>your family/of the same blood

So all the elders of Israel came to the king <sup>1</sup>to Hebron; and King David made a league with them in Hebron before THE LORD, and they anointed David king over Israel. <sup>1</sup>in

David was thirty years old when he began to reign, and he reigned forty years:

- in Hebron he reigned over Judah seven years and six months, and,
- in Jerusalem he reigned thirty and three years over all Israel *and* Judah.

And the king and his men went to Jerusalem, unto the Jebusites, the inhabitants of the land, which spake unto David, saying, "Except thou take away the blind and the lame, thou shalt not come in hither" (thinking, "David cannot come in hither").

Nevertheless David took the strong hold of Zion (the same is the City of David).

And David said on that day, "Whosoever getteth up to the gutter and smiteth the Jebusites and the lame and the blind that are hated of David's soul, he shall be chief and captain!"

Wherefore they said, "The blind and the lame shall not come into the house."

So David dwelt in the fort, and called it the City of David. And David built round about from Millo and inward. And David went on, and grew great, and THE LORD God of Hosts was with him.

And Hiram, king of Tyre, sent messengers to David, and cedar trees, and carpenters, and masons; and they built David an house. And David perceived that THE LORD had established him king over Israel, and that He had exalted his kingdom for His People Israel's sake.

And David took him more concubines and wives out of Jerusalem after he was come from Hebron; and there were yet sons and daughters born to David. And these be the names of those that were born unto him in Jerusalem:

- Shammuah,
- and Shobab,
- and Nathan,
- and Solomon,
- Ibhar also,
- and Elishua,
- and Nepheg,

- and Japhia,
- and Elishama,
- and Eliada,
- and Eliphalet.

But when the Philistines heard that they had anointed David king over Israel, all the Philistines came up to seek David; and David heard of it, and went down to the hold. The Philistines also came and spread themselves in the Valley of Rephaim.

And David inquired of THE LORD, saying, "Shall I go up to the Philistines? Wilt Thou deliver them into mine hand?"

And THE LORD said unto David, "Go up; for I will doubtless deliver the Philistines into thine hand."

And David came to Baalperazim, and David smote them there, and said, "THE LORD hath broken forth upon mine enemies before me, as the breach of waters!"

Therefore he called the name of that place Baalperazim. And there they left their images, and David and his men burned them. And the Philistines came up yet again, and spread themselves in the Valley of Rephaim.

And when David inquired of THE LORD, He said, "Thou shalt *not* go up; but <sup>1</sup>fetch a compass behind them, and come upon them over against the mulberry trees. And let it be, when thou hearest the sound of a going in the tops of the mulberry trees, that then thou shalt bestir thyself - for then shall THE LORD go out before thee to smite the host of the Philistines."  
*<sup>1</sup>circle around behind them*

And David did so as THE LORD had commanded him and smote the Philistines from Geba until thou come to Gazer. Again, David gathered together all the chosen men of Israel, thirty thousand. And David arose and went with all the people that were with him from Baale of Judah, to bring up from thence the Ark of God whose name is called by the name of "THE LORD OF HOSTS THAT DWELLETH BETWEEN THE CHERUBIMS". And they set the Ark of God upon a new cart and brought it out of the house of Abinadab that was in Gibeah; and Uzzah and Ahio, the sons of Abinadab, drave the new cart.

And they brought it out of the house of Abinadab which was at Gibeah accompanying the Ark of God, and Ahio went before the Ark. And David and all the House of Israel played before THE LORD on all manner of instruments made of fir wood, even on harps, and on psalteries, and on timbrels, and on cornets, and on cymbals.

And when they came to Nachon's threshingfloor, Uzzah put forth his hand to the Ark of God, and took hold of it; for the oxen shook it. And the anger of THE LORD was kindled against Uzzah and God smote him there for his error; and there he died by the Ark of God. And David was displeased because THE LORD had made a breach upon Uzzah and he called the name of the place Perez-Uzzah to this day.

And David was afraid of THE LORD that day, and said, "How shall the Ark of THE LORD <sup>1</sup>come to me?"  
*<sup>1</sup>be brought*

So David would not remove the Ark of THE LORD unto him into the City of David; but David carried it aside into the house of Obededom the Gittite. And the Ark of THE LORD continued in the house of Obededom the Gittite three months; and THE LORD blessed Obededom and all his household.

And it was told King David, saying, "THE LORD hath blessed the house of Obededom and all that pertaineth unto him because of the Ark of God."

So David went and brought up the Ark of God from the house of Obbededom into the City of David with gladness. And it was so that, when they that bare the Ark of THE LORD had gone six paces, he sacrificed oxen and fatlings.

And David danced before THE LORD with all his might; and David was girded with a linen ephod. So David and all the House of Israel brought up the Ark of THE LORD with shouting and with the sound of the trumpet.

And as the Ark of THE LORD came into the city of David, Michal (Saul's daughter) looked through a window and saw King David leaping and dancing before THE LORD; and she despised him in her heart.

And they brought in the Ark of THE LORD and set it in his place in the midst of The Tabernacle that David had pitched for it; and David offered burnt offerings and peace offerings before THE LORD. And as soon as David had made an end of offering burnt offerings and peace offerings, he blessed the people in the name of THE LORD of Hosts.

And he dealt among all the people, even among the whole multitude of Israel, as well to the women as men, to every one a cake of bread and a good piece of <sup>1</sup>flesh and a <sup>2</sup>flagon of wine. So all the people departed every one to his house. *<sup>1</sup>meat <sup>2</sup>a large bulging short-necked bottle*

Then David returned to bless his household. And Michal, the daughter of Saul, came out to meet David and said, "How glorious was the king of Israel to day, who uncovered himself to day in the eyes of the handmaids of his servants, as one of the vain fellows shamelessly uncovereth himself!"

And David said unto Michal, "It was before *THE LORD* which chose me before thy father and before all his House to appoint me ruler over the People of THE LORD - over Israel! Therefore will I play before THE LORD! And I will yet be more vile than thus and will be base in mine own sight! And of the maidservants which thou hast spoken of, of them shall I be had in honour!"

Therefore Michal, the daughter of Saul, had no child unto the day of her death.

And it came to pass, when the king sat in his house, and THE LORD had given him rest round about from all his enemies, that the king said unto Nathan the prophet, "See now, I dwell in an house of cedar, but the Ark of God dwelleth within curtains!"

And Nathan said to the king, "Go, do all that is in thine heart; for THE LORD is with thee."

And it came to pass that night, that the Word of THE LORD came unto Nathan, saying, "Go and tell My servant David, 'Thus saith THE LORD: Shalt thou build Me an house for Me to dwell in? Whereas I have not dwelt in any house since the time that I brought up the Children of Israel out of Egypt, even to this day, but have walked in a tent and in a tabernacle. In all the places wherein I have walked with all the Children of Israel, <sup>1</sup>spake I a word with any of the tribes of Israel - whom I commanded to feed My People Israel - saying, '*Why build ye not Me an house of cedar?*'

"Now therefore so shalt thou say unto my servant David, 'Thus saith THE LORD of Hosts: I took thee from the shepcote, from following the sheep, to be ruler over My People, over Israel; and I was with thee whithersoever thou wentest, and have cut off all thine enemies out of thy sight, and have made thee a great name, like unto the name of the great men that are in the earth. Moreover I will appoint a place for My People Israel, and will plant them, that they may dwell in a place of their own, and move no more; neither shall the children of wickedness afflict them any more as beforetime, and as since the time that I commanded judges to be over My People Israel and have caused thee to rest from all thine enemies.

"Also THE LORD telleth *thee* that He will make *thee* an house. And when thy days be fulfilled and thou shalt sleep with thy fathers, I will set up thy <sup>2</sup>Seed after thee which shall proceed out of <sup>3</sup>thy bowels,

and I will establish *His* kingdom - *He* shall build an house for My name and I will stablish the throne of *His* kingdom for ever. I will be His Father, and He shall be My Son.

“If <sup>4</sup>he commit iniquity, I will chasten him with the rod of men and with the stripes of the children of men; but My mercy shall not depart away from him as I took it from Saul, whom I put away before thee. And thine house and thy kingdom shall be established for ever before thee; thy throne shall be established for ever.”

<sup>1</sup>did I ever request this <sup>2</sup>a reference to David's descendants, culminating in the Messiah <sup>3</sup>your own body <sup>4</sup>any of David's heirs who sit on the throne of Israel

According to all these words, and according to all this vision, so did Nathan speak unto David. Then went King David in and sat before THE LORD, and he said, “Who am I, O Lord GOD, and what is my House, that Thou hast brought me hitherto? And this was yet a small thing in Thy sight, O Lord GOD; but Thou hast spoken also of Thy servant's House for a great while to come. And is this the manner of man, O Lord GOD? And what can David say more unto Thee? For Thou, Lord GOD, knowest Thy servant. For Thy Word's sake, and according to Thine own heart, hast Thou done all these great things, to make Thy servant know them. Wherefore Thou art great, O LORD God! For there is none like Thee, neither is there any God beside Thee, according to all that we have heard with our ears. And what one nation in the earth is like Thy People – even like Israel - whom God went to redeem for a people to Himself, and to make Him a name, and to do for You great things and terrible, for Thy land, before Thy People, which Thou redeemedst to Thee from Egypt, from the nations and their gods?! For Thou hast confirmed to Thyself Thy People Israel to be a people unto Thee for ever! And Thou, LORD, art become their God! And now, O LORD God, the Word that Thou hast spoken concerning Thy servant and concerning His house - establish it for ever, and do as Thou hast said; and let Thy name be magnified for ever, saying, ‘*THE LORD of Hosts is the God over Israel!*’ And let the House of Thy servant David be established before Thee! For Thou, O LORD of Hosts, God of Israel, hast revealed to Thy servant, saying, ‘*I will build thee an House*’; therefore hath Thy servant found in his heart to pray this prayer unto Thee. And now, O Lord GOD, Thou art <sup>1</sup>that God, and Thy Words be true, and Thou hast promised this goodness unto Thy servant! Therefore now let it please Thee to bless the House of Thy servant, that it may continue for ever before Thee - for Thou, O Lord GOD, hast spoken it, and with Thy blessing let the House of thy servant be blessed for ever!”

<sup>1</sup>THE God (the one and only)

And after this it came to pass that David smote the Philistines and subdued them; and David took Methegammah out of the hand of the Philistines. And he smote Moab, and measured them with a line, casting them down to the ground; even with two lines measured he to put to death, and with one full line to keep alive. And so the Moabites became David's servants and brought <sup>1</sup>gifts.

<sup>1</sup>tribute

David smote also Hadadezer (the son of Rehob, king of Zobah), as he went to recover his border at the river Euphrates. And David took from him a thousand chariots, and seven hundred horsemen, and twenty thousand footmen; and David <sup>1</sup>houghed all the chariot horses, but reserved of them for an hundred chariots.

<sup>1</sup>hamstrung/mamed in the legs

And when the Syrians of Damascus came to <sup>1</sup>succour Hadadezer king of Zobah, David slew of the Syrians two and twenty thousand men.

<sup>1</sup>shelter/protect

Then David put garrisons in Syria of Damascus; and the Syrians became servants to David, and brought gifts. And THE LORD preserved David whithersoever he went. And David took the shields of gold that were on the servants of Hadadezer, and brought them to Jerusalem. And from Betah, and from Berothai, cities of Hadadezer, King David took exceeding much brass.

When Toi, king of Hamath, heard that David had smitten all the host of Hadadezer, then Toi sent Joram his son unto King David to salute him and to bless him, because he had fought against Hadadezer and smitten him (for Hadadezer had wars with Toi). And Joram brought with him vessels of silver, and vessels of gold, and vessels of brass, which also King David did dedicate unto THE LORD, with the silver and gold that he had

dedicated of all nations which he subdued - of Syria, and of Moab, and of the children of Ammon, and of the Philistines, and of Amalek, and of the spoil of Hadadezer (son of Rehob, king of Zobah). And David <sup>1</sup>gat him a name when he returned from smiting of the Syrians in the Valley of Salt, being eighteen thousand men.

*<sup>1</sup>became famous/"made a name for himself"*

And he put garrisons in Edom; throughout all Edom put he garrisons, and all they of Edom became David's servants. And THE LORD preserved David whithersoever he went. And David reigned over all Israel; and David executed judgment and justice unto all his people.

And Joab (the son of Zeruiah) was over the <sup>1</sup>host; and Jehoshaphat (the son of Ahilud) was recorder; and Zadok (the son of Ahitub) and Ahimelech (the son of Abiathar) were the priests; and Seraiah was the scribe; and Benaiah (the son of Jehoiada) was over both the Cherethites and the Pelethites; and David's sons were chief rulers.

*<sup>1</sup>multitude (the people in general or the armies)*

And David said, "Is there yet any that is left of the House of Saul, that I may show him kindness for Jonathan's sake?"

And there was of the House of Saul a servant whose name was Ziba. And when they had called him unto David, the king said unto him, "Art thou Ziba?"

And he said, "Thy servant is he."

And the king said, "Is there not yet any of the House of Saul, that I may show the kindness of God unto him?"

And Ziba said unto the king, "Jonathan hath yet a son, which is lame on his feet."

And the king said unto him, "Where is he?"

And Ziba said unto the king, "Behold, he is in the house of Machir, the son of Ammiel, in Lodebar."

Then King David sent, and fetched him out of the house of Machir, the son of Ammiel, from Lodebar. Now, when Mephibosheth (the son of Jonathan, the son of Saul) was come unto David, he fell on his face and did reverence.

And David said, "Mephibosheth!"

And he answered, "Behold thy servant!"

And David said unto him, "Fear not! For I will surely show thee kindness for Jonathan thy father's sake, and will restore thee all the land of Saul thy father; and thou shalt eat bread at my table continually!"

And he bowed himself and said, "What is thy servant that thou shouldest look upon such <sup>1</sup>a dead dog as I am?"

*<sup>1</sup>an utterly worthless creature*

Then the king called to Ziba, Saul's servant, and said unto him, "I have given unto thy master's son all that pertained to Saul and to all his House. Thou therefore, and thy sons, and thy servants, shall till the land for him, and thou shalt bring in the fruits, that thy master's son may have food to eat; but Mephibosheth thy master's son shall eat bread <sup>1</sup>alway at my table."

*<sup>1</sup>all ways and times in every way and time*

Now Ziba had fifteen sons and twenty servants. Then said Ziba unto the king, "According to all that my lord the king hath commanded his servant, so shall thy servant do!"

“As for Mephibosheth,” said the king, “he shall eat at my table, as one of the king's sons!”

And Mephibosheth had a young son whose name was:

- Micha.

And all that dwelt in the house of Ziba were servants unto Mephibosheth. So Mephibosheth dwelt in Jerusalem; for he did eat continually at the king's table, and was lame on both his feet.

And it came to pass after this that <sup>1</sup>the king of the children of Ammon died, and Hanun, his son, reigned in his stead. <sup>1</sup>*King Nahash*

Then said David, “I will show kindness unto Hanun the son of Nahash, as his father showed kindness unto me.”

And David sent to comfort him by the hand of his servants for his father. And David's servants came into the land of the children of Ammon.

And the princes of the children of Ammon said unto Hanun their lord, “Thinkest thou that David doth honour thy father, that he hath sent comforters unto thee? Hath not David rather sent his servants unto thee to search the city and to spy it out and to overthrow it?!”

Wherefore Hanun took David's servants and shaved off the one half of their beards and cut off their garments in the middle, even to their buttocks, and sent them away.

When they told it unto David, he <sup>1</sup>sent to meet them, because the men were greatly ashamed; and the king said, “Tarry at Jericho until your beards be grown, and then return.”

<sup>1</sup>*sent his representativess to them instead of coming in person*

And when the children of Ammon saw that they <sup>1</sup>stank before David, the children of Ammon sent and hired the Syrians of Bethrehob and the Syrians of Zoba, twenty thousand footmen, and of King Maacah a thousand men, and of Ishtob twelve thousand men. <sup>1</sup>*were odious/foul/offensive/loathsome*

And when David heard of it, he sent Joab and all the host of the mighty men.

And the children of Ammon came out and put the battle in array at <sup>1</sup>the entering in of the gate; and the Syrians of Zoba and of Rehob and Ishtob and Maacah were by themselves in the field.

<sup>1</sup>*the entrance at the main gate of the city*

When Joab saw that the front of the battle was against him before and behind, he chose of all the choice men of Israel and put them in array against the Syrians, and the rest of the people he delivered into the hand of Abishai his brother, that he might put them in array against the children of Ammon.

And he said, “If the Syrians be too strong for me, then thou shalt help me; but if the children of Ammon be too strong for thee, then I will come and help thee. Be of good courage, and let us <sup>1</sup>play the men for our people and for the cities of our God; and THE LORD do that which seemeth Him good!” <sup>1</sup>*be true/real men*

And Joab drew nigh, and the people that were with him, unto the battle against the Syrians; and they fled before him. And when the children of Ammon saw that the Syrians were fled, then fled they also before Abishai and entered into the city. So Joab returned from the children of Ammon, and came to Jerusalem.

And when the Syrians saw that they were smitten before Israel, they gathered themselves together. And Hadarezer sent and brought out the Syrians that were beyond the river, and they came to Helam; and Shobach the captain of the host of Hadarezer went before them.

And when it was told David, he gathered all Israel together, and passed over Jordan, and came to Helam. And the Syrians set themselves in array against David, and fought with him. And the Syrians fled before Israel; and David slew the men of seven hundred chariots of the Syrians, and forty thousand horsemen, and smote Shobach the captain of their host, who died there.

And when all the kings that were servants to Hadarezer saw that they were smitten before Israel, they made peace with Israel and served them. So the Syrians feared to help the children of Ammon any more.

And it came to pass, after the year was expired, at the time when kings go forth to battle, that David sent Joab and his servants with him and all Israel; and they destroyed the children of Ammon, and besieged Rabbah. But David tarried still at Jerusalem.

And it came to pass in an eveningtide, that David arose from off his bed and walked upon the roof of the <sup>1</sup>king's house. And from the roof he saw a woman washing herself; and the woman was very beautiful to look upon. *<sup>1</sup>palace*

And David sent and inquired after the woman. And one said, "Is not this Bathsheba, the daughter of Eliam, the wife of Uriah the Hittite?"

And David sent messengers and took her, and she came in unto him, and he lay with her (for she was purified from her <sup>1</sup>uncleanness). And she returned unto her house. *<sup>1</sup>monthly period/menstruation*

And the woman conceived, and sent and told David, and said, "I am with child!"

And David sent to Joab, saying, "Send me Uriah the Hittite."

And Joab sent Uriah to David. And when Uriah was come unto him, David demanded of him how Joab did, and how the people did, and how the war prospered.

And David said to Uriah, "Go down to thy house, and <sup>1</sup>wash thy feet." *<sup>1</sup>relax/be at ease*

And Uriah departed out of the king's house, and there followed him a mess of meat from the king. But Uriah slept at the door of the king's house with all the servants of his lord, and went not down to his house.

And when they had told David, saying, "Uriah went not down unto his house", David said unto Uriah, "Camest thou not from thy journey? Why then didst thou not go down unto thine house?"

And Uriah said unto David, "The <sup>1</sup>Ark, and Israel, and Judah, abide in tents; and my lord Joab and the servants of my lord are encamped in the open fields; shall I then go into mine house, to eat and to drink, and to lie with my wife? As thou livest, and as thy soul liveth, I will not do this thing." *<sup>1</sup>Ark of the Covenant*

And David said to Uriah, "Tarry here to day also, and to morrow I will let thee depart."

So Uriah abode in Jerusalem that day, and the morrow. And when David had called him, he did eat and drink before him; and he made him drunk. And at even he went out to lie on his bed with the servants of his lord, but went not down to his house. And it came to pass in the morning that David wrote a letter to Joab, and sent it by the hand of Uriah.

And he wrote in the letter, saying, "Set ye Uriah in the forefront of the hottest battle, and <sup>1</sup>retire ye from him, that he may be smitten and die."  
*<sup>1</sup>withdraw*

And it came to pass, when Joab observed the city, that he assigned Uriah unto a place where he knew that valiant men were. And the men of the city went out and fought with Joab; and there fell some of the people of the servants of David, and Uriah the Hittite died also.

Then Joab sent and told David all the things concerning the war; and charged the messenger, saying, "When thou hast made an end of telling the matters of the war unto the king, and if so be that the king's wrath arise, and he say unto thee, *'Wherefore approached ye so nigh unto the city when ye did fight? Knew ye not that they would shoot from the wall? Who smote Abimelech the son of Jerubbesheth? Did not a woman cast a piece of a millstone upon him from the wall, that he died in Thebez? Why went ye nigh the wall?'* then say thou, *'Thy servant Uriah the Hittite is dead also'.*"

So the messenger went and came and showed David all that Joab had sent him for. And the messenger said unto David, "Surely the men prevailed against us and came out unto us into the field, and we were upon them even unto the entering of the gate. And the shooters shot from off the wall upon thy servants; and some of the king's servants be dead... and thy servant Uriah the Hittite is dead also."

Then David said unto the messenger, "Thus shalt thou say unto Joab, *'Let not this thing displease thee, for the sword devoureth one as well as another; make thy battle more strong against the city, and overthrow it'*, and encourage thou him."

And when the wife of Uriah heard that Uriah her husband was dead, she mourned for her husband. And when the mourning was past, David sent and fetched her to his house, and she became his wife, and bare him a son.

But the thing that David had done displeased THE LORD. And THE LORD sent Nathan unto David. And he came unto him and said unto him, "There were two men in one city; the one rich and the other poor. The rich man had exceeding many flocks and herds; but the poor man had nothing, save one little ewe lamb which he had bought and nourished up. And it grew up together with him, and with his children; it did eat of his own meat, and drank of his own cup, and lay in his bosom, and was unto him as a daughter. And there came a traveller unto the rich man, and he <sup>1</sup>spared to take of his own flock and of his *own* herd to <sup>2</sup>dress for the wayfaring man that was come unto him, but took the poor man's lamb and dressed it for the man that was come to him."  
*<sup>1</sup>did not take <sup>2</sup>prepare*

And David's anger was greatly kindled against the man; and he said to Nathan, "As THE LORD liveth, the man that hath done this thing shall surely die! And he shall restore <sup>1</sup>the lamb fourfold, because he did this thing, and because he had no pity!"  
*<sup>1</sup>four lambs*

And Nathan said to David, "*Thou art the man!!* Thus saith THE LORD God of Israel: I anointed thee king over Israel and I delivered thee out of the hand of Saul, and I gave thee thy master's house, and thy master's wives into thy bosom, and gave thee the House of Israel and of Judah. And if <sup>1</sup>that had been too little, I would moreover have given unto thee such and such things. Wherefore hast thou despised the commandment of THE LORD, to do evil in His sight? Thou hast killed Uriah the Hittite with the sword and hast taken his wife to be thy wife, and hast slain him with the sword of the children of Ammon!! Now, therefore, the sword shall never depart from thine House because thou hast despised Me and hast taken the wife of Uriah the Hittite to be thy wife! Thus saith THE LORD: Behold, I will raise up evil against thee out of thine own House, and I will take thy wives before thine eyes and give them unto thy neighbour, and he shall lie with thy wives in <sup>2</sup>the sight of this sun! For thou didst it secretly, but I will do this thing before all Israel and <sup>2</sup>before the sun!"  
*<sup>1</sup>if that wasn't enough <sup>2</sup>in broad daylight/in the open*

And David said unto Nathan, "I have sinned against THE LORD!"

And Nathan said unto David, "THE LORD also hath put away thy sin. Thou shalt not <sup>1</sup>die. Howbeit, because by this deed thou hast given great occasion to the enemies of THE LORD to blaspheme, the child also that is born unto thee shall surely die." *<sup>1</sup>be put to death*

And Nathan departed unto his house.

And THE LORD struck the child that Uriah's wife bare unto David, and it was very sick. David therefore besought God for the child; and David fasted, and went in, and lay all night upon the earth. And the elders of his House arose and went to him, to raise him up from the earth, but he would not, neither did he eat bread with them.

And it came to pass on the Seventh Day that the child died. And the servants of David feared to tell him that the child was dead (for they said, "Behold, while the child was yet alive we spake unto him and he would not hearken unto our voice; how will he then vex himself if we tell him that the child is dead?").

But when David saw that his servants whispered, David perceived that the child was dead. Therefore David said unto his servants, "Is the child dead?"

And they said, "He is dead."

Then David arose from the earth and washed and anointed himself and changed his apparel and came into the House of THE LORD and worshipped; then he came to his own house. And when he required, they set bread before him, and he did eat.

Then said his servants unto him, "What thing is this that thou hast done? Thou didst fast and weep for the child while it was alive; but when the child was dead, thou <sup>1</sup>didst rise and eat bread.

*<sup>1</sup>in other words, behaved like nothing happened*

And he said, "While the child was yet alive I fasted and wept, for I said, '*Who can tell whether GOD will be gracious to me, that the child may live?*' But now he is dead. Wherefore should I fast? Can I bring him back again? I shall <sup>1</sup>go to him, but he shall not return to me." *<sup>1</sup>go to the grave with him (in due time)*

And David comforted Bathsheba his wife, and went in unto her, and lay with her; and she bare a son, and he called his name *Solomon*, and THE LORD loved him. And he sent by the hand of Nathan the prophet; and he <sup>1</sup>called his name *Jedidiah*, because of THE LORD. *<sup>1</sup>bestowed his Hebrew name (meaning "Loved by Jehovah")*

And Joab fought against Rabbah of the children of Ammon and took the royal city. And Joab sent messengers to David and said, "I have fought against Rabbah, and have taken the City of Waters. Now, therefore, gather the rest of the people together and encamp against the city and take it, lest I take the city and it be called after *my* name."

And David gathered all the people together and went to Rabbah and fought against it and took it. And he took their king's crown from off his head (the weight whereof was a talent of gold with the precious stones), and it was set on David's head. And he brought forth the spoil of the city in great abundance. And he brought forth the people that were therein, and put them under saws, and under harrows of iron, and under axes of iron, and made them pass through the brick kiln - and thus did he unto all the cities of the children of Ammon. So David and all the people returned unto Jerusalem.

And it came to pass after this that Absalom, the son of David, had a fair sister whose name was Tamar; and Amnon, the son of David, loved her. And Amnon was so vexed that he fell sick for his <sup>1</sup>sister Tamar; for she

was a virgin and Amnon thought it hard for him to do any thing to her. But Amnon had a friend, whose name was Jonadab, the son of Shimeah - David's brother. And Jonadab was a very subtle man. <sup>1</sup>half-sister

And <sup>1</sup>he said unto him, "Why art thou, being the king's son, <sup>2</sup>lean from day to day? Wilt thou not tell me?"  
<sup>1</sup>Jonadab <sup>2</sup>gangly, weakly (possibly "moping about")

And Amnon said unto him, "I love Tamar, my <sup>1</sup>brother Absalom's sister." <sup>1</sup>half-brother

And Jonadab said unto him, "Lay thee down on thy bed and make thyself sick; and when thy father cometh to see thee, say unto him, 'I pray thee, let my sister Tamar come and give me meat, and <sup>1</sup>dress the meat in my sight that I may see it and eat it at her hand.'" <sup>1</sup>prepare

So Amnon lay down and made himself sick; and when the king was come to see him, Amnon said unto the king, "I pray thee, let Tamar my sister come and make me a couple of cakes in my sight that I may eat at her hand."

Then David sent home to Tamar, saying, "Go now to thy brother Amnon's house, and dress him meat."

So Tamar went to her brother Amnon's house; and he was laid down. And she took flour and kneaded it, and made cakes in his sight, and did bake the cakes. And she took a pan and poured them out before him; but he refused to eat.

And Amnon said, "<sup>1</sup>Have out all men from me!" <sup>1</sup>"Everybody leave!"

And they went out every man from him.

And Amnon said unto Tamar, "Bring the meat into the chamber, that I may eat of thine hand."

And Tamar took the cakes which she had made and brought them into the chamber to Amnon her brother. And when she had brought them unto him to eat, he took hold of her and said unto her, "Come lie with me, my sister."

And she answered him, "Nay, my brother, do not <sup>1</sup>force me; for no such thing ought to be done in Israel! Do not thou this folly! And I, whither shall I cause my shame to go? And as for thee, thou shalt be as one of the fools in Israel. Now therefore, I pray thee, speak unto the king; for he will not withhold me from thee." <sup>1</sup>rape

Howbeit he would not hearken unto her voice; but, being stronger than she, forced her and lay with her.

Then Amnon hated her exceedingly so that the hatred wherewith he hated her was greater than the love wherewith he had loved her. And Amnon said unto her, "Arise, be gone!"

And she said unto him, "There is no cause! This evil in sending me away is greater than the other that thou didst unto me!"

But he would not hearken unto her. Then he called his servant that ministered unto him, and said, "Put now this woman out from me... and bolt the door after her!"

And she had a garment of <sup>1</sup>divers colours upon her; for, with such robes were the king's daughters that were virgins apparelled. Then his servant brought her out, and bolted the door after her. And Tamar put ashes on her head, and rent her garment of <sup>1</sup>divers colours that was on her, and laid her hand on her head and went on crying. <sup>1</sup>diverse/various

And Absalom her brother said unto her, "Hath Amnon thy brother been with thee? But <sup>1</sup>hold now thy peace, my sister. He is thy brother; regard not this thing." *<sup>1</sup>don't say anything about it*

So Tamar remained desolate in her brother Absalom's house. But when King David heard of all these things, he was very wroth. And Absalom spake unto his brother Amnon neither good nor bad; for Absalom hated Amnon, because he had forced his sister Tamar.

And it came to pass after two full years that Absalom had sheepshearers in Baalhazor which is beside Ephraim, and Absalom invited all the king's sons.

And Absalom came to the king and said, "Behold now, thy servant hath sheepshearers; let the king, I beseech thee, and his servants go with thy servant."

And the king said to Absalom, "Nay, my son, let us not all now go, lest we be chargeable unto thee."

And he pressed him; howbeit he would not go, but blessed him.

Then said Absalom, "If not, I pray thee, let my brother Amnon go with us."

And the king said unto him, "Why should *he* go with thee?"

But Absalom pressed him that he let Amnon and all the king's sons go with him.

Now Absalom had commanded his servants, saying, "Mark ye now when Amnon's heart is merry with wine, and when I say unto you, '*Smite Amnon*', then kill him. Fear not! Have not I commanded you? Be courageous, and be valiant."

And the servants of Absalom did unto Amnon as Absalom had commanded. Then all the king's sons arose, and every man gat him up upon his mule and fled. And it came to pass, while they were in the way, that tidings came to David, saying, "Absalom hath slain all the king's sons, and there is not one of them left."

Then the king arose, and <sup>1</sup>tare his garments and lay on the earth; and all his servants stood by with their clothes <sup>1</sup>rent. *<sup>1</sup>ripped/torn*

And Jonadab, the <sup>1</sup>son of Shimeah (David's brother), answered and said, "Let not my lord suppose that they have slain all the young men the king's sons. For Amnon only is dead; for by the appointment of Absalom this hath been determined from the day that he forced his sister Tamar. Now therefore let not my lord the king take the thing to his heart, to think that all the king's sons are dead - for Amnon only is dead." *<sup>1</sup>King David's nephew*

But Absalom fled. And the young man that kept the watch lifted up his eyes and looked and, behold, there came much people by the way of the hill side behind him.

And Jonadab said unto the king, "Behold, the king's sons come! <sup>1</sup>As thy servant said, so it is." *<sup>1</sup>I told you so*

And it came to pass as soon as he had made an end of speaking that, behold, the king's sons came and lifted up their voice and wept. And the king also and all his servants wept very sore. But Absalom fled and went to Talmai, the son of Ammihud, king of Geshur. And David mourned for his son every day.

So Absalom fled and went to Geshur, and was there three years. And the soul of King David longed to go forth unto Absalom; for he was comforted concerning Amnon, seeing he was dead.

Now Joab the son of Zeruah perceived that the king's heart was toward Absalom. And Joab sent to Tekoah and fetched thence a wise woman and said unto her, "I pray thee, <sup>1</sup>feign thyself to be a mourner, and put on now mourning apparel, and anoint not thyself with oil, but be as a woman that had a long time mourned for the dead; and come to the king, and speak on this manner unto him..." <sup>1</sup>pretend

So Joab put the words in her mouth. And when the woman of Tekoah spake to the king, she fell on her face to the ground and did obeisance, and said, "Help, O king!"

And the king said unto her, "What aileth thee?"

And she answered, "I am indeed a widow woman, and mine husband is dead. And thy handmaid had two sons, and they two strove together in the field and there was none to part them, but the one smote the other and slew him. And, behold, the whole family is risen against thine handmaid, and they said, '*Deliver him that smote his brother, that we may kill him for the life of his brother whom he slew; and we will destroy the heir also*'; and so they shall quench my coal which is left, and shall not leave to my husband neither name nor remainder upon the earth."

And the king said unto the woman, "Go to thine house, and I will give charge concerning thee."

And the woman of Tekoah said unto the king, "My lord, O king, the iniquity be on me and on my father's House, and the king and his throne be guiltless."

And the king said, "Whosoever <sup>1</sup>saith ought unto thee, bring him to me, and he shall not touch thee any more." <sup>1</sup>threatened/said these things unto you

Then said she, "I pray thee, let the king remember THE LORD thy God, that thou wouldest not suffer the revengers of blood to destroy any more, lest they destroy my son."

And he said, "As THE LORD liveth, there shall not one hair of thy son fall to the earth!"

Then the woman said, "Let thine handmaid, I pray thee, speak one word unto my lord the king."

And he said, "Say on."

And the woman said, "Wherefore then hast thou thought such a thing against the People of God? For the king doth speak this thing as one which is faulty, in that the king doth not fetch home again his banished. For we must needs die and are as water spilled on the ground which cannot be gathered up again. Neither doth God respect any person; yet doth He devise means, that His banished be not expelled from Him. Now therefore that I am come to speak of this thing unto my lord the king, it is because the people have made me afraid. And thy handmaid said, '*I will now speak unto the king; it may be that the king will perform the request of his handmaid. For the king will hear, to deliver his handmaid out of the hand of the man that would destroy me and my son together out of the inheritance of God*'. Then thine handmaid said, '*The word of my lord the king shall now be comfortable; for, as an angel of God, so is my lord the king to discern good and bad, therefore THE LORD thy God will be with thee*'."

Then the king answered and said unto the woman, "Hide not from me, I pray thee, the thing that I shall ask thee."

And the woman said, "Let my lord the king now speak."

And the king said, "Is not the hand of Joab with thee in all this?"

<sup>1</sup>are you in league with

And the woman answered and said, "As thy soul liveth, my lord the king, none can turn to the right hand or to the left from ought that my lord the king hath spoken. For thy servant Joab, he bade me, and he put all these words in the mouth of thine handmaid; to fetch about this form of speech hath thy servant Joab done this thing. And my lord is wise, according to the wisdom of an angel of God, to know all things that are in the earth."

And the king said unto Joab, "Behold now, I have done this thing. Go therefore, bring the young man Absalom again."

And Joab fell to the ground on his face, and bowed himself, and thanked the king; and Joab said, "To day thy servant knoweth that I have found grace in thy sight, my lord O king, in that the king hath fulfilled the request of his servant."

So Joab arose and went to Geshur, and brought Absalom to Jerusalem.

And the king said, "Let him turn to his own house, and <sup>1</sup>let him not see my face."

*<sup>1</sup>do not bring him before me/keep him away from me*

So Absalom returned to his own house and saw not the king's face. But in all Israel there was none to be so much praised as Absalom for his beauty; from the sole of his foot even to the crown of his head there was no blemish in him. And when he <sup>1</sup>polled his head (for it was at every year's end that he polled it; because the hair was heavy on him therefore he polled it), he weighed the hair of his head at <sup>2</sup>two hundred shekels after the king's weight.

*<sup>1</sup>shaved <sup>2</sup>approximately 2280 grams or 5.016 pounds*

And unto Absalom there were born three sons, and one daughter whose name was

- <sup>1</sup>Tamar - she was a woman of <sup>2</sup>a fair countenance.

*<sup>1</sup>named after Absalom's sister <sup>2</sup>great beauty*

So Absalom dwelt two full years in Jerusalem, and saw not the king's face. Therefore Absalom sent for Joab, to have sent him to the king; but he would not come to him. And when he sent again the second time, he would not come.

Therefore he said unto his servants, "See, Joab's field is near mine, and he hath barley there; go and set it on fire!"

And Absalom's servants set the field on fire.

Then Joab arose and came to Absalom unto his house, and said unto him, "Wherefore have thy servants set my field on fire?!"

And Absalom answered Joab, "Behold, I sent unto thee, saying, 'Come hither', that I may send thee to the king, to say, 'Wherefore am I come from Geshur? It had been good for me to have been there still!' Now therefore, let me see the king's face!! And if there be any iniquity in me, let him kill me!"

*<sup>1</sup>Why did I bother leaving Geshur?*

So Joab came to the king and told him. And when he had called for Absalom, he came to the king and bowed himself on his face to the ground before the king, and the king kissed Absalom.

And it came to pass after this that Absalom prepared him chariots and horses, and fifty men to run before him. And Absalom rose up early, and stood beside the way of the gate; and it was so that when any man that had a controversy came to the king for judgment, then Absalom called unto him, and said, "Of what city art thou?"

And he said, "Thy servant is of one of the tribes of Israel."

And Absalom said unto him, "See, <sup>1</sup>thy matters are good and right; but there is no man <sup>1</sup>deputed of the king to hear thee."  
*<sup>1</sup>you have a legitimate complaint <sup>2</sup>deputized/appointed by the king to hear your case*

Absalom said moreover, "Oh that I were made judge in the land, that every man which hath any suit or cause might come unto me, and I would do him justice!"

And it was so that when any man came nigh to him to do him obeisance, he put forth his hand, and took him, and kissed him. And on this manner did Absalom to all Israel that came to the king for judgment; <sup>1</sup>so Absalom stole the hearts of the men of Israel.  
*<sup>1</sup>like so/in this manner*

And it came to pass after forty years that Absalom said unto the king, "I pray thee, let me go and pay my vow (which I have vowed unto THE LORD) in Hebron. For thy servant vowed a vow while I abode at Geshur in Syria, saying, '*If THE LORD shall bring me again indeed to Jerusalem, then I will serve THE LORD.*'"

And the king said unto him, "Go in peace."

So he arose and went to Hebron. But Absalom sent spies throughout all the tribes of Israel, saying, "As soon as ye hear the sound of the trumpet, then ye shall say, '*Absalom reigneth in Hebron!*'"

And with Absalom went two hundred men out of Jerusalem that were called; and they went in their <sup>1</sup>simplicity, and they knew not any thing. And Absalom sent for Ahithophel the Gilonite (David's counselor) from his city even from Giloh, while he offered sacrifices. And the conspiracy was strong; for the people increased continually with Absalom.  
*<sup>1</sup>genuine ignorance*

And there came a messenger to David, saying, "The hearts of the men of Israel are after Absalom."

And David said unto all his servants that were with him at Jerusalem, "Arise, and let us flee; for we shall not else escape from Absalom! Make speed to depart, lest he overtake us suddenly and bring evil upon us, and smite the city with the edge of the sword."

And the king's servants said unto the king, "Behold, thy servants are ready to do whatsoever my lord the king shall appoint."

And the king went forth, and all his household after him. And the king left ten women, which were concubines, to keep the house. And the king went forth, and all the people after him, and tarried in a place that was far off. And all his servants passed on beside him; and all the Cherethites, and all the Pelethites, and all the Gittites - six hundred men which came <sup>1</sup>after him from Gath - passed on before the king.  
*<sup>1</sup>from behind*

Then said the king to Ittai the Gittite, "Wherefore goest thou also with us? Return to thy place, and abide with <sup>1</sup>the king; for thou art a stranger, and also an exile. Whereas thou camest but yesterday, should I this day make thee go up and down with us? Seeing I go whither I may, return thou, and take back thy brethren. Mercy and truth be with thee."  
*<sup>1</sup>your own king*

And Ittai answered the king and said, "As THE LORD liveth, and as my lord the king liveth, surely in what place my lord the king shall be, whether in death or life, even there also will thy servant be!"

And David said to Ittai, "Go and pass over."  
*<sup>1</sup>very well, you may go with us*

And Ittai the Gittite passed over, and all his men, and all the little ones that were with him. And all the country wept with a loud voice, and all the people passed over; the king also himself passed over the brook Kidron, and all the people passed over toward the way of the wilderness. And lo, Zadok also, and all the Levites were with him, bearing the Ark of the Covenant of God. And they set down the Ark of God; and Abiathar went up, until all the people had done passing out of the city.

And the king said unto Zadok, "Carry back the Ark of God into the city. If I shall find favour in the eyes of THE LORD, He will bring me again and show me both it and His habitation. But if He thus say, *'I have no delight in thee'*; behold, here am I. Let Him do to me as seemeth good unto Him."

The king said also unto Zadok the priest, "Art not thou a <sup>1</sup>seer? Return into the city in peace, and your two sons with you, Ahimaaz thy son, and Jonathan the son of Abiathar. See, I will tarry in the plain of the wilderness until there come word from you to certify me." <sup>1</sup>ancient word for prophet

Zadok therefore, and Abiathar, carried the Ark of God again to Jerusalem, and they tarried there.

And David went up by the ascent of <sup>1</sup>Mount Olivet, and wept as he went up, and had his head covered, and he went barefoot; and all the people that was with him covered every man his head and they went up, weeping as they went up. <sup>1</sup>Mount of Olives

And one told David, saying, "Ahithophel is among the conspirators with Absalom."

And David said, "O LORD, I pray thee, turn the counsel of Ahithophel into foolishness!"

And it came to pass that when David was come to the top of the mount where he worshipped God, behold, Hushai the Archite came to meet him with his coat rent and earth upon his head, unto whom David said, "If thou passest on with me, then thou shalt be a burden unto me; but if thou return to the city and say unto Absalom, *'I will be thy servant, O king; as I have been thy father's servant hitherto, so will I now also be thy servant'*"; then mayest thou for me defeat the counsel of Ahithophel. And hast thou not there with thee Zadok and Abiathar the priests? Therefore it shall be that what thing soever thou shalt hear out of the king's house, thou shalt tell it to Zadok and Abiathar the priests. Behold, they have there with them their two sons – Ahimaaz, Zadok's son, and Jonathan, Abiathar's son; and by them ye shall send unto me every thing that ye can hear."

So Hushai, David's friend, came into the city, and Absalom came into Jerusalem.

And when David was a little past the top of the hill, behold, Ziba the servant of Mephibosheth met him with a couple of asses saddled, and upon them two hundred loaves of bread, and an hundred bunches of raisins, and an hundred of summer fruits, and a bottle of wine.

And the king said unto Ziba, "What meanest thou by these?"

And Ziba said, "The asses be for the king's household to ride on; and the bread and summer fruit for the young men to eat; and the wine, that such as be faint in the wilderness may drink."

And the king said, "And where is thy master's son?"

And Ziba said unto the king, "Behold, he abideth at Jerusalem; for he said, *'To day shall the House of Israel restore me the kingdom of my father'*."

Then said the king to Ziba, "Behold, thine are all that pertained unto Mephibosheth!"

And Ziba said, "I humbly beseech thee that I may find grace in thy sight, my lord O king."

And when King David came to Bahurim, behold, thence came out a man of the family of the House of Saul whose name was Shimei, the son of Gera. He came forth and cursed still as he came, and he cast stones at David and at all the servants of king David; and all the people and all the mighty men were on his right hand and on his left.

And thus said Shimei when he cursed, "Come out, come out, thou bloody man, and thou man of Belial! THE LORD hath returned upon thee all the blood of the House of Saul, in whose stead thou hast reigned! And THE LORD hath delivered the kingdom into the hand of Absalom thy son, and, behold, thou art taken in thy mischief, because thou art a bloody man!"

Then said Abishai, the son of Zeruiah, unto the king, "Why should this dead dog curse my lord the king? Let me go over, I pray thee, and take off his head!"

And the king said, "What have I to do with you, ye sons of Zeruiah? So let him curse, because THE LORD hath said unto him, '*Curse David*'. Who shall then say, '*Wherefore hast thou done so?*'"

And David said to Abishai and to all his servants, "Behold; my son, which came forth of my bowels, seeketh my life! How much more now may *this* Benjamite do it?! Let him alone and let him curse; for THE LORD hath bidden him. It may be that THE LORD will look on mine affliction, and that THE LORD will <sup>1</sup>requite me good for his cursing this day." <sup>1</sup>avenge

And as David and his men went by the way, Shimei went along on the hill's side over against him and cursed as he went, and threw stones at him, and cast dust. And the king and all the people that were with him came weary, and refreshed themselves there.

And Absalom and all the people the men of Israel came to Jerusalem, and Ahithophel with him. And it came to pass, when Hushai the Archite (David's friend) was come unto Absalom, that Hushai said unto Absalom, "God save the king! God save the king!"

And Absalom said to Hushai, "Is this thy kindness to <sup>1</sup>thy friend? Why wentest thou not with thy friend?" <sup>1</sup>your friend David

And Hushai said unto Absalom, "Nay; but whom THE LORD and this People and all the men of Israel choose, his will I be, and with him will I abide. And <sup>1</sup>again, whom should I serve? Should I not serve in the presence of his son? As I have served in thy father's presence, so will I be in *thy* presence." <sup>1</sup>anyway

Then said Absalom to Ahithophel, "Give counsel among you what we shall do."

And Ahithophel said unto Absalom, "Go <sup>1</sup>in unto thy father's concubines which he hath left to keep the house; and all Israel shall hear that thou art abhorred of thy father. Then shall the hands of all that are with thee be strong." <sup>1</sup>have sex with

So they spread Absalom a tent upon the top of the house; and Absalom went in unto his father's concubines in the sight of all Israel. And the counsel of Ahithophel, which he counselled in those days, was <sup>1</sup>as if a man had inquired at the oracle of God. So was all the counsel of Ahithophel both with David and with Absalom. <sup>1</sup>was treated as if

Moreover Ahithophel said unto Absalom, "Let me now choose out twelve thousand men, and I will arise and pursue after David this night. And I will come upon him while he is weary and weak handed, and will make him afraid, and all the people that are with him shall flee. And I will smite the king only, and I will

bring back all the people unto thee. The man whom thou seekest is as if all returned. So all the people shall be in peace.”

And the saying pleased Absalom well, and all the elders of Israel.

Then said Absalom, “Call now Hushai the Archite also, and let us hear likewise what he saith.”

And when Hushai was come to Absalom, Absalom spake unto him, saying, “Ahithophel hath spoken after this manner. Shall we do after his saying? If not; speak thou.”

And Hushai said unto Absalom, “The counsel that Ahithophel hath given is not good at this time. For,” said Hushai, “thou knowest thy father and his men, that they be mighty men, and they be chafed in their minds, as a bear robbed of her whelps in the field. And thy father is a man of war, and will not lodge with the people. Behold, he is hid now in some pit, or in some other place. And it will come to pass, when some of them be overthrown at the first, that whosoever heareth it will say, *‘There is a slaughter among the people that follow Absalom!’* And he also that is valiant, whose heart is as the heart of a lion, shall utterly melt; for all Israel knoweth that thy father is a mighty man, and they which be with him are valiant men. Therefore I counsel that all Israel be generally gathered unto thee - from Dan even to Beersheba - as the sand that is by the sea for multitude; and that thou go to battle in <sup>1</sup>thine own person. So shall we come upon him in some place where he shall be found, and we will light upon him as the dew falleth on the ground. And of him and of all the men that are with him there shall not be left so much as one. Moreover, if he be gotten into a city, then shall all Israel bring ropes to that city, and we will <sup>2</sup>draw it into the river, until there be not one small stone found there.”

*<sup>1</sup>in person <sup>2</sup>drag/pull the city*

And Absalom and all the men of Israel said, “The counsel of Hushai the Archite is better than the counsel of Ahithophel! For THE LORD had appointed to defeat the good counsel of Ahithophel, to the intent that THE LORD might bring evil upon Absalom.”

Then said Hushai unto Zadok and to Abiathar the priests, “Thus and thus did Ahithophel counsel Absalom and the elders of Israel; and thus and thus have I counselled. Now therefore send quickly and tell David, saying, *‘Lodge not this night in the plains of the wilderness, but speedily pass over; lest the king be swallowed up, and all the people that are with him’.*”

Now Jonathan and Ahimaaz stayed by Enrogel; for they <sup>1</sup>might not be seen to come into the city, and a wench went and told them, and they went and told king David.

*<sup>1</sup>did not want to be*

Nevertheless a lad saw them and told Absalom; but they went both of them away quickly, and came to a man's house in Bahurim which had a well in his court whither they went <sup>1</sup>down.

*<sup>1</sup>down into it*

And the woman took and spread a covering over the well's mouth, and spread ground corn thereon; and the thing was not known.

And when Absalom's servants came to the woman to the house, they said, “Where is Ahimaaz and Jonathan?”

And the woman said unto them, “They be gone over the brook of water.”

And when they had sought and could not find them, they returned to Jerusalem. And it came to pass, after they were departed, that they came up out of the well, and went and told King David, and said unto David, “Arise, and pass quickly over the water! For thus hath Ahithophel counselled against you!”

Then David arose, and all the people that were with him, and they passed over Jordan; by the morning light there lacked not one of them that was not gone over Jordan.

And when Ahithophel saw that his counsel was not followed, he saddled his ass, and arose, and gat him home to his house, to his city, and put his household in order, and hanged himself and died, and was buried in the sepulchre of his father.

Then David came to Mahanaim. And Absalom passed over Jordan, he and all the men of Israel with him. And Absalom made Amasa captain of the host instead of Joab - <sup>1</sup>which Amasa was a man's son whose name was Ithra, an Israelite, that <sup>2</sup>went in to Abigail the daughter of Nahash, sister to Zeruiah (Joab's mother).

*<sup>1</sup>this particular man named Amasa <sup>2</sup>had sex with Abigail who was the daughter of Nahash and the sister of Joab's mother Zeruiah*

So Israel and Absalom pitched in the land of Gilead. And it came to pass, when David was come to Mahanaim, that Shobi the son of Nahash of Rabbah of the children of Ammon, and Machir the son of Ammiel of Lodebar, and Barzillai the Gileadite of Rogelim, brought beds, and basins, and earthen vessels, and wheat, and barley, and flour, and parched corn, and beans, and lentiles, and parched pulse, and honey, and butter, and sheep, and cheese of kine, for David and for the people that were with him, to eat (for they said, "The people is hungry, and weary, and thirsty, in the wilderness").

And David numbered the people that were with him, and set captains of thousands and captains of hundreds over them. And David sent forth a third part of the people under the hand of Joab, and a third part under the hand of Abishai the son of Zeruiah, Joab's brother, and a third part under the hand of Ittai the Gittite.

And the king said unto the people, "I will surely go forth with you myself also."

But the people answered, "Thou shalt not go forth; for if we flee away, they will not care for us; neither if half of us die will they care for us. But now thou art worth ten thousand of us! Therefore now it is better that thou <sup>1</sup>succour us out of the city."

*<sup>1</sup>shelter (also, escort us safely out)*

And the king said unto them, "What seemeth you best I will do."

And the king stood by the gate side, and all the people came out by hundreds and by thousands.

And the king commanded Joab and Abishai and Ittai, saying, "Deal gently, for my sake, with the young man, even with Absalom."

And all the people heard when the king gave all the captains charge concerning Absalom. So the people went out into the field against Israel; and the battle was in the wood of Ephraim, where the people of Israel were slain before the servants of David, and there was there a great slaughter that day of twenty thousand men. For the battle was there scattered over the face of all the country; and the wood devoured more people that day than the sword devoured.

And Absalom met the servants of David. And Absalom rode upon a mule, and the mule went under the thick boughs of a great oak, and his head <sup>1</sup>caught hold of the oak, and he was <sup>2</sup>taken up between the heaven and the earth; and the mule that was under him went away.

*<sup>1</sup>got caught in, got stuck in <sup>2</sup>hanging off the ground*

And a certain man saw it and told Joab and said, "Behold, I saw Absalom hanged in an oak!"

And Joab said unto the man that told him, "And, behold, thou sawest him - and why didst thou not smite him there to the ground?! And I would have given thee ten shekels of silver and a girdle!"

And the man said unto Joab, "Though I should receive *a thousand* shekels of silver in mine hand, yet would I not put forth mine hand against the king's son! For, in our hearing the king charged thee and Abishai and Ittai, saying, '*Beware that none touch the young man Absalom!*' Otherwise I should have wrought falsehood against mine own life! For there is no matter hid from the king, and *thou thyself* wouldest have set thyself against me."

Then said Joab, "I <sup>1</sup>may not tarry thus with thee."

*<sup>1</sup>will not waste my time standing here arguing with you*

And he took three darts in his hand and thrust them through the heart of Absalom while he was yet alive in the midst of the oak. And ten young men that bare Joab's armour compassed about and smote Absalom and slew him.

And Joab blew the trumpet and the people returned from pursuing after Israel, for Joab held back the people. And they took Absalom and cast him into a great pit in the wood and laid a very great heap of stones upon him; and all Israel fled every one to his tent.

Now Absalom in his lifetime had taken and reared up for himself a <sup>1</sup>pillar, which is in the king's dale; for he said, '*I have no son to keep my name in remembrance*'; and he called the pillar after his own name and it is called unto this day, "*Absalom's Place*". *<sup>1</sup>memorial pillar*

Then said Ahimaaz the son of Zadok, "Let me now run and bear the king tidings, how that THE LORD hath avenged him of his enemies!"

And Joab said unto him, "Thou shalt not bear tidings this day, but thou shalt bear tidings another day. But this day thou shalt bear no tidings, because the king's son is dead."

Then said Joab to Cushi, "Go tell the king what thou hast seen." And Cushi bowed himself unto Joab, and ran.

Then said Ahimaaz the son of Zadok yet again to Joab, "But howsoever, let me, I pray thee, also run after Cushi."

And Joab said, "Wherefore wilt thou run, my son, seeing that thou hast no tidings ready?"

"But howsoever," said he, "let me run."

And he said unto him, "Run."

Then Ahimaaz ran by the way of the plain, and <sup>1</sup>overran Cushi.

*<sup>1</sup>out ran*

And David sat between the two gates; and the watchman went up to the roof over the gate unto the wall, and lifted up his eyes, and looked, and behold a man running alone. And the watchman cried, and told the king.

And the king said, "If he be alone, there is tidings in his mouth." And he came apace, and drew near.

And the watchman saw another man running; and the watchman called unto the porter, and said, "Behold another man running alone."

And the king said, "He also bringeth tidings."

And the watchman said, "Me thinketh the running of the foremost is like the running of Ahimaaz the son of Zadok."

And the king said, "He is a good man, and cometh with good tidings."

And Ahimaaz called and said unto the king, "All is well!" And he fell down to the earth upon his face before the king and said, "Blessed be THE LORD thy God which hath delivered up the men that lifted up their hand against my lord the king."

And the king said, "Is the young man, Absalom, safe?"

And Ahimaaz answered, "When Joab sent the king's servant, and me thy servant, I saw a great tumult, but I knew not what it was."

And the king said unto him, "Turn aside, and stand here." And he turned aside and stood still.

And, behold, Cushie came; and Cushie said, "Tidings, my lord the king! For THE LORD hath avenged thee this day of all them that rose up against thee!"

And the king said unto Cushie, "Is the young man, Absalom, safe?"

And Cushie answered, "The enemies of my lord the king and all that rise against thee to do thee hurt <sup>1</sup>be as that young man is." *<sup>1</sup>are as dead as*

And the king was much moved and went up to the chamber over the gate and wept; and as he went, thus he said, "O my son Absalom! My son! My son, Absalom! Would God I had died for thee, O Absalom! My son, my son!"

And it was told Joab, "Behold, the king weepeth and mourneth for Absalom."

And the victory that day was turned into mourning unto all the people; for the people heard say that day how the king was grieved for his son.

And the people gat them by stealth that day into the city, as people being ashamed steal away when they flee in battle.

But the king covered his face, and the king cried with a loud voice, "O my son Absalom! O Absalom, my son! My son!"

And Joab came into the house to the king, and said, "Thou hast shamed this day the faces of all thy servants which this day have saved thy life and the lives of thy sons and of thy daughters and the lives of thy wives and the lives of thy concubines, in that thou lovest thine enemies and hatest thy friends! For thou hast declared this day that thou regardest neither princes nor servants; for this day I perceive that if Absalom had lived and *all we* had died this day, then it had pleased thee well! Now therefore arise! Go forth and speak <sup>1</sup>comfortably unto thy servants - for I swear by THE LORD, if thou go not forth, <sup>2</sup>there will not tarry one with thee this night, and that will be worse unto thee than all the evil that befell thee from thy youth until now!" *<sup>1</sup>with comfort <sup>2</sup>no one will stay here with you/no one will be on your side*

Then the king arose and sat in the gate. And they told unto all the people, saying, "Behold, the king doth sit in the gate!" And all the people came before the king; for Israel had fled, every man, to his tent.

And all the people were at strife throughout all the tribes of Israel, saying, "The king saved us out of the hand of our enemies, and he delivered us out of the hand of the Philistines; and now he is fled out of the land for Absalom. And Absalom, whom we anointed over us, is dead in battle. Now, therefore, why speak ye not a word of bringing the king back?!"

And King David sent to Zadok and to Abiathar the priests, saying, "Speak unto the elders of Judah, saying, 'Why are ye the last to bring the king back to his house, seeing the speech of all Israel is come to the king, even to his house?! Ye are my brethren, ye are my bones and my flesh! Wherefore then are ye the last to bring back the king?!'

"And say ye to Amasa, 'Art thou not of my bone and of my flesh? God do so to me (and more also!) if thou be not captain of the host before me continually in the <sup>1</sup>room of Joab'." <sup>1</sup>office/duties

And he <sup>1</sup>bowed the heart of all the men of Judah, even as the heart of one man, so that they sent this word unto the king, "Return thou, and all thy servants!" <sup>1</sup>humbled/shamed (by revealing their great error)

So the king returned and came to Jordan. And Judah came to Gilgal to go to meet the king, to conduct the king over Jordan. And Shimei the son of Gera, a Benjamite which was of Bahurim, hasted and came down with the men of Judah to meet King David. And there were a thousand men of Benjamin with him, and Ziba the servant of the House of Saul, and his fifteen sons and his twenty servants with him; and they went over Jordan before the king. And there went over a ferry boat to carry over the king's household, and to do what he thought good.

And Shimei the son of Gera fell down before the king as he was come over Jordan, and said unto the king, "Let not my lord impute iniquity unto me, neither do thou remember that which thy servant did perversely the day that my lord the king went out of Jerusalem, that the king should take it to his heart! For thy servant doth know that I have sinned! Therefore, behold, I am come the first this day of all the House of Joseph to go down to meet my lord the king."

But Abishai the son of Zeruiah answered and said, "Shall not Shimei be put to death for this, because he cursed THE LORD'S anointed?"

And David said, "What have I to do with you, ye sons of Zeruiah, that ye should this day be adversaries unto me? Shall there *any* man be put to death this day in Israel?! For, do not I know that I am this day king over Israel?" Therefore the king said unto Shimei, "Thou shalt *not* die;" and the king swore unto him.

And Mephibosheth, the son of Saul, came down to meet the king, and had neither dressed his feet, nor trimmed his beard, nor washed his clothes, from the day the king departed until the day he came again in peace.

And it came to pass, when he was come to Jerusalem to meet the king, that the king said unto him, "Wherefore wentest not thou with me, Mephibosheth?!"

And he answered, "My lord O king, my servant deceived me! For thy servant said, 'I will saddle me an ass, that I may ride thereon, and go to the king' (because thy servant is lame). And he hath slandered thy servant unto my lord the king! But my lord the king is as an angel of God; do therefore what is good in thine eyes. For all of my father's house were but dead men before my lord the king, yet didst thou set thy servant among them that did eat at thine own table. What right therefore have I yet to cry any more unto the king?"

And the king said unto him, "Why speakest thou any more of thy matters? I have said, 'Thou and Ziba divide the land'."

And Mephibosheth said unto the king, "Yea, let him take all, forasmuch as my lord the king is come again in peace unto his own house."

And Barzillai the Gileadite came down from Rogelim and went over Jordan with the king, to conduct him over Jordan. (Now Barzillai was a very aged man, even <sup>1</sup>fourscore years old; and he had provided the king of <sup>2</sup>sustenance while he lay at Mahanaim, for he was a very great man). <sup>180</sup> <sup>2</sup>necessities

And the king said unto Barzillai, "Come thou over with me, and I will feed thee with me in Jerusalem."

And Barzillai said unto the king, "How long have I to live that I should go up with the king unto Jerusalem? I am this day fourscore years old, and can I discern between good and evil? Can thy servant taste what I eat or what I drink? Can I hear any more the voice of singing men and singing women? Wherefore then should thy servant be yet a burden unto my lord the king? Thy servant will go a little way over Jordan with the king; and why should the king <sup>1</sup>recompense it me with such a reward? Let thy servant, I pray thee, turn back again, that I may die in mine own city and be buried by the grave of my father and of my mother. But behold thy servant Chimham; let *him* go over with my lord the king, and do to him what shall seem good unto thee." <sup>1</sup>pay me back so generously

And the king answered, "Chimham shall go over with me, and I will do to him that which shall seem good unto thee; and whatsoever thou shalt require of me, that will I do for thee."

And all the people went over Jordan. And when the king was come over, the king kissed Barzillai and blessed him; and he returned unto his own place. Then the king went on to Gilgal, and Chimham went on with him; and all the people of Judah conducted the king, and also half the people of Israel.

And, behold, all the men of Israel came to the king, and said unto the king, "Why have our brethren the men of Judah stolen thee away, and have brought the king and his household and all David's men with him over Jordan?"

And all the men of Judah answered the men of Israel, "Because the king is near of kin to us. Wherefore then be ye angry for this matter? Have we eaten at all of the king's cost, or hath he given us any gift?"

And the men of Israel answered the men of Judah and said, "We have <sup>1</sup>ten parts in the king, and we have also more right in David than ye! Why then did ye despise us, that our advice should not be first <sup>1</sup>had in bringing back our king?!" <sup>1</sup>we constitute 10 of the 12 tribes in this kingdom <sup>2</sup>sought

And the words of the men of Judah were fiercer than the words of the men of Israel. And there happened to be there a <sup>1</sup>man of Belial, whose name was Sheba the son of Bichri, a Benjamite. And he blew a trumpet and said, "We have no part in David, neither have we inheritance in the <sup>2</sup>son of Jesse! Every man to his tents, O Israel!" <sup>1</sup>worshiper of the god Belia/a wicked man <sup>2</sup>David

So every man of Israel <sup>1</sup>went up from after David, and followed Sheba the son of Bichri; but the men of Judah clave unto their king, from Jordan even to Jerusalem. <sup>1</sup>left/forsook/abandoned

And David came to his house at Jerusalem. <sup>1</sup>And the king took the ten women (his concubines whom he had left to keep the house) and put them in <sup>2</sup>ward, and fed them, but went not in unto them. So they were shut up unto the day of their death, living in widowhood.

*<sup>1</sup>NOTE: This was justified in that they had betrayed David by incestuous adultery with his son Absalom <sup>2</sup>hold/prison/a secured place*

Then said the king to Amasa, "Assemble me the men of Judah within three days, and be thou here present." So Amasa went to assemble the men of Judah; but he tarried longer than the set time which he had appointed him.

And David said to Abishai, "Now shall Sheba the son of Bichri do us more harm than did Absalom! Take thou thy lord's servants, and pursue after him, lest he get him fenced cities and escape us."

And there went out after him Joab's men, and the Cherethites, and the Pelethites, and all the mighty men; and they went out of Jerusalem to pursue after Sheba the son of Bichri. When they were at the great stone which is in Gibeon, Amasa went before them. And Joab's garment that he had put on was girded unto him, and upon it a <sup>1</sup>girdle with a sword fastened upon his loins in the sheath thereof; and as he went forth it fell out. <sup>1</sup>a sash (as tied or "girded" around the belly)

And Joab said to Amasa, "Art thou in health, my brother?"

And Joab took Amasa by the beard with the right hand to kiss him. But Amasa took no <sup>1</sup>heed to the sword that was in Joab's hand, so <sup>2</sup>he smote him therewith in the fifth rib and shed out his bowels to the ground and struck him not again; and he died. So Joab and Abishai his brother pursued after Sheba the son of Bichri. <sup>1</sup>notice <sup>2</sup>Joab stabbed Amasa

And one of Joab's men stood by him and said, "He that favoureth Joab and he that is for David, let him <sup>1</sup>go after Joab." <sup>1</sup>go with/follow after/join him

And Amasa wallowed in blood in the midst of the highway. And when the man saw that all the people <sup>1</sup>stood still, he removed Amasa out of the highway into the field and cast a cloth upon him when he saw that every one that came by him <sup>1</sup>stood still. When he was removed out of the highway, all the people went on after Joab to pursue after Sheba the son of Bichri. And he went through all the tribes of Israel unto Abel and to Bethmaachah and all the Berites, and they were gathered together and went also after him. <sup>1</sup>rubbernecking

And they came and besieged him in Abel of Bethmaachah, and they cast up a bank against the city and it stood in the trench; and all the people that were with Joab battered the wall to throw it down.

Then cried a wise woman out of the city, "Hear! Hear! Say, I pray you, unto Joab, '*Come near hither, that I may speak with thee!*'!"

And when he was come near unto her, the woman said, "Art thou Joab?"

And he answered, "I am he".

Then she said unto him, "Hear the words of thine handmaid."

And he answered, <sup>1</sup>"I do hear". <sup>1</sup>basically "I'm listening"

Then she spake, saying, <sup>1</sup>"They were wont to speak in old time, saying, '*They shall surely ask counsel at Abel*', and so they <sup>2</sup>ended the matter. I am one of them that are peaceable and faithful in Israel. Thou seekest to destroy a city and a mother in Israel. Why wilt thou swallow up the inheritance of THE LORD?" <sup>1</sup>it was a tradition in the old days to say <sup>2</sup>resolved the issue

And Joab answered and said, "Far be it! Far be it from me, that I should <sup>1</sup>swallow up or destroy! <sup>2</sup>The matter is not so! But a man of Mount Ephraim - Sheba the son of Bichri by name - hath lifted up his hand against the king, even against David. <sup>3</sup>Deliver him only, and I will depart from the city." <sup>1</sup>conquer <sup>2</sup>that's not why we are here <sup>3</sup>merely surrender him/just hand him over to us

And the woman said unto Joab, "Behold, his head shall be thrown to thee over the wall!"

Then the woman went unto all the people in her wisdom. And they cut off the head of Sheba the son of Bichri and cast it out to Joab. And he blew a trumpet and they retired from the city, every man to his tent. And Joab returned to Jerusalem unto the king.

Now Joab was over all the host of Israel, and Benaiah the son of Jehoiada was over the Cherethites and over the Pelethites, and Adoram was over the tribute, and Jehoshaphat the son of Ahilud was recorder, and Sheva was scribe, and Zadok and Abiathar were the priests; and Ira, also, the Jairite, was a chief ruler about David.

Then there was a famine in the days of David three years, year after year; and David inquired of THE LORD. And THE LORD answered, "It is for Saul, and for his bloody House, because he slew the Gibeonites."

And the king called the Gibeonites and said unto them... (now the Gibeonites were not of the Children of Israel but of the remnant of the Amorites, and the Children of Israel had <sup>1</sup>sworn unto them, and Saul sought to slay them in his zeal to the Children of Israel and Judah)... wherefore David said unto the Gibeonites, "What shall I do for you? And wherewith shall I make the atonement, that ye may bless the inheritance of THE LORD?"  
*<sup>1</sup>made an oath of peace*

And the Gibeonites said unto him, "We will have no silver nor gold of Saul, nor of his House; neither for us shalt thou kill any man in Israel."

And he said, "What ye shall say, that will I do for you."

And they answered the king, "The man that consumed us and that devised against us that we should be destroyed from remaining in any of the coasts of Israel, let seven men of his sons be delivered unto us, and we will hang them up unto THE LORD in Gibeah of Saul whom THE LORD did choose."

And the king said, "I will give them." But the king spared Mephibosheth, the son of Jonathan the son of Saul, because of THE LORD'S oath that was between them - between David and Jonathan (the son of Saul).

But the king took the two sons of Rizpah (the daughter of Aiah) whom she bare unto Saul - Armoni and <sup>1</sup>Mephibosheth - and the five sons of Michal (the daughter of Saul) whom she brought up for Adriel the son of Barzillai the Meholathite. And he delivered them into the hands of the Gibeonites, and they hanged them in the hill before THE LORD; and they <sup>2</sup>fell all seven together and were put to death in the days of harvest, in the first days, in the beginning of barley harvest. And Rizpah, the daughter of Aiah, took sackcloth and spread it for her upon the rock from the beginning of harvest until water dropped upon them out of heaven, and suffered neither the birds of the air to rest on them by day, nor the beasts of the field by night.

*<sup>1</sup>this is not the same Mephibosheth that David spared <sup>2</sup>cut down (like a tree)/slaughtered/killed*

And it was told David what Rizpah (the daughter of Aiah, the concubine of Saul) had done. And David went and took the bones of Saul and the bones of Jonathan his son from the men of Jabesh-Gilead (which had stolen them from the street of Bethshan where the Philistines had hanged them when the Philistines had slain Saul in Gilboa), and he brought up from thence the bones of Saul and the bones of Jonathan his son, and they gathered the bones of them that were hanged. And the bones of Saul and Jonathan his son buried they in the country of Benjamin in Zelah, in the sepulchre of Kish his father; and they performed all that the king commanded. And after that God was entreated for the land.

*<sup>1</sup>NOTE: it is not precisely known why these sons of Saul had to die, for the Law prohibits the sons from being punished for the sins of their father; however, it is possible that there can be a loophole to this Law when it comes to the heirs of king, so that they can never rise up to steal the throne in the name of their deposed father.*

Moreover the Philistines had yet war again with Israel; and David went down, and his servants with him, and fought against the Philistines, and David waxed faint.

And Ishbibenob which was of the sons of the giant (the weight of whose spear weighed three hundred shekels of brass in weight), he, being girded with a new sword, thought to have slain David. But Abishai the son of Zeruiah <sup>1</sup>succoured him and smote the Philistine and killed him. *<sup>1</sup>sheltered David*

Then the men of David swore unto him, saying, "Thou shalt go no more out with us to battle, that thou quench not the light of Israel!"

And it came to pass after this that there was again a battle with the Philistines at Gob; then Sibbechai the Hushathite slew Saph, which was of the sons of the giant.

And there was again a battle in Gob with the Philistines where Elhanan (the son of Jaareoregim, a Bethlehemite) slew the brother of Goliath the Gittite, the staff of whose spear was like a weaver's beam.

And there was yet a battle in Gath where was a man of great stature that had on every hand six fingers and on every foot six toes - four and twenty in number - and he also was born to the giant. And when he defied Israel, Jonathan the son of Shimeah (the brother of David) slew him. These four were born to the giant in Gath and fell by the hand of David and by the hand of his servants.

And David spake unto THE LORD the words of this song in the day that THE LORD had delivered him out of the hand of all his enemies and out of the hand of Saul. And he said,

"THE LORD is my Rock and my Fortress and my Deliverer; the God of my Rock, in Him will I trust!  
He is my Shield and the horn of my Salvation, my High Tower, and my Refuge, my Saviour;  
Thou savest me from violence.

I will call on THE LORD who is worthy to be praised; so shall I be saved from mine enemies.

When the waves of death compassed me, the floods of ungodly men made me afraid.

The sorrows of hell compassed me about; the snares of death prevented me.

In my distress I called upon THE LORD and cried to my God,

and He did hear my voice out of His Temple, and my cry did enter into His ears.

Then the earth shook and trembled; the foundations of heaven moved and shook, because He was wroth.

There went up a smoke out of His nostrils, and fire out of His mouth devoured - coals were kindled by it!

He bowed the heavens also and came down, and darkness was under His feet.

And He rode upon a cherub and did fly, and He was seen upon the wings of the wind.

And He made Darkness pavilions round about Him, dark waters, and thick clouds of the skies.

Through the brightness before Him were coals of fire kindled.

THE LORD thundered from heaven, and the Most High uttered His voice.

And He sent out arrows and scattered them; lightning, and discomfited them.

And the channels of the sea appeared, the foundations of the world were discovered  
at the rebuking of THE LORD, at the blast of the breath of His nostrils.

He sent from above, He took me; He drew me out of many waters;

He delivered me from my strong enemy and from them that hated me, for they were too strong for me.

They prevented me in the day of my calamity, but THE LORD was my stay.

He brought me forth also into a large place; He delivered me, because He delighted in me.

THE LORD rewarded me according to my righteousness,

according to the cleanness of my hands hath He recompensed me.

For I have kept the Ways of THE LORD and have not wickedly departed from my God.

For all His judgments were before me; and as for His statutes, I did not depart from them.

I was also upright before Him and have kept myself from mine iniquity.

Therefore THE LORD hath recompensed me according to my righteousness;  
according to my cleanness in His eye sight.

With the merciful Thou wilt show Thyself merciful,

and with the upright man Thou wilt show Thyself upright.

With the pure Thou wilt show Thyself pure; and with the froward Thou wilt show Thyself unsavoury.

And the afflicted people Thou wilt save,  
 but Thine eyes are upon the haughty, that Thou mayest bring them down.  
 For Thou art my Lamp, O LORD, and THE LORD will lighten my darkness.  
 For by Thee I have run through a troop; by my God have I leaped over a wall!  
 As for God, His Way is perfect; the Word of THE LORD is tried.  
 He is a buckler to all them that trust in Him.  
 For who is God, save THE LORD? And who is a Rock, save our God?  
 God is my Strength and Power, and He maketh my way perfect.  
 He maketh my feet like hinds' feet and setteth me upon my high places.  
 He teacheth my hands to war so that a bow of steel is broken by mine arms.  
 Thou hast also given me the Shield of thy Salvation, and thy Gentleness hath made me great.  
 Thou hast enlarged my steps under me so that my feet did not slip.  
 I have pursued mine enemies and destroyed them, and turned not again until I had consumed them.  
 And I have consumed them and wounded them that they could not arise;  
 yea, they are fallen under my feet.  
 For Thou hast girded me with strength to battle.  
 Them that rose up against me hast Thou subdued under me.  
 Thou hast also given me the necks of mine enemies that I might destroy them that hate me.  
 They looked, but there was none to save; even unto THE LORD, but He answered them not.  
 Then did I beat them as small as the dust of the earth,  
 I did stamp them as the mire of the street and did spread them abroad.  
 Thou also hast delivered me from the strivings of my people.  
 Thou hast kept Me to be head of the heathen - a people which I knew not shall serve Me.  
 Strangers shall submit themselves unto Me; as soon as they hear, they shall be obedient unto Me.  
 Strangers shall fade away, and they shall be afraid out of their close places.  
 THE LORD liveth and blessed be my Rock, and exalted be the God of the Rock of my Salvation!  
 It is God that avengeth me and that bringeth down the people under me,  
 And that bringeth me forth from mine enemies.  
 Thou also hast lifted me up on high above them that rose up against me.  
 Thou hast delivered me from the violent man.  
 Therefore I will give thanks unto Thee, O LORD, among the heathen, and I will sing praises unto Thy Name.  
 He is the Tower of Salvation for His King and showeth mercy to His Anointed,  
 unto David, and to his seed for evermore."

Now these be the last words of David. David the son of Jesse <sup>1</sup>said, and the man who was raised up on high, the anointed of the God of Jacob, and the sweet psalmist of Israel, said, "The Spirit of THE LORD spake by me, and His Word was in my tongue. The God of Israel <sup>1</sup>said; the Rock of Israel spake to me, *'He that ruleth over men must be just, ruling in the fear of God. And he shall be as the light of the morning when the sun riseth, even a morning without clouds; as the tender grass springing out of the earth by clear shining after rain'*. Although my House be not so with God, yet He hath made with *me* an everlasting covenant, ordered in all things, and sure; for this is all my salvation and all my desire, although He make it not to grow. But the sons of Belial shall be - all of them - as thorns thrust away, because they cannot be taken with hands. But the man that shall touch them must be fenced with iron and the staff of a spear; and they shall be utterly burned with fire in the same place." <sup>1</sup>did speak

These be the names of the mighty men whom David had:

- The Tachmonite that sat in the seat, chief among the captains; the same was Adino the Eznite. He lift up his spear against eight hundred, whom he slew at one time.
- And after him was Eleazar the son of Dodo the Ahohite, one of the three mighty men with David when they defied the Philistines that were there gathered together to battle and the men of

Israel were gone away. He arose and smote the Philistines until his hand was weary, and his hand clave unto the sword. And THE LORD wrought a great victory that day; and the people returned after him only to spoil.

- And after him was Shammah, the son of Agee the Hararite. And the Philistines were gathered together into a troop where was a piece of ground full of lentils; and the people fled from the Philistines. But he stood in the midst of the ground and defended it, and slew the Philistines, and THE LORD wrought a great victory. And three of the thirty chief went down and came to David in the harvest time unto the cave of Adullam, and the troop of the Philistines pitched in the valley of Rephaim. And David was then in an hold, and the garrison of the Philistines was then in Bethlehem. And David <sup>1</sup>longed, and said, "Oh that one would give me drink of the water of the well of Bethlehem which is by the gate!" And the three mighty men brake through the host of the Philistines, and drew water out of the well of Bethlehem that was by the gate, and took it, and brought it to David; nevertheless he would not drink thereof, but poured it out unto THE LORD. And he said, "Be it far from me, O LORD, that I should do this; is not this <sup>2</sup>the blood of the men that went in jeopardy of their lives?" Therefore he would not drink it.

*<sup>1</sup>desired greatly for a long time <sup>2</sup>obtained by the deaths*

These things did these three mighty men.

And Abishai (the brother of Joab, the son of Zeruiah) was chief among three. And he lifted up his spear against three hundred and slew them, and had the <sup>1</sup>name among three. Was he not most honourable of three? Therefore he was their captain; howbeit he attained not unto the first three. *<sup>1</sup>in a sense of 'fame'*

And Benaiah the son of Jehoiada (the son of a valiant man, of Kabzeel, who had done many acts, he slew two lionlike men of Moab), he went down also and slew a lion in the midst of a pit in time of snow. And he slew an Egyptian, a goodly man; and the Egyptian had a spear in his hand; but he went down to him with a staff, and plucked the spear out of the Egyptian's hand, and slew him with his own spear. These things did Benaiah the son of Jehoiada, and had the name among three mighty men. He was more honourable than the thirty, but he attained not to the first three. And David set him over his guard.

- Asahel the brother of Joab was one of the thirty,
- Elhanan, the son of Dodo of Bethlehem,
- Shammah the Harodite,
- Elikah the Harodite,
- Helez the Paltite,
- Ira, the son of Ikesh the Tekoite,
- Abiezer the Anethothite,
- Mebunnai the Hushathite,
- Zalmon the Ahohite,
- Maharai the Netophathite,
- Heleb the son of Baanah, a Netophathite,
- Ittai, the son of Ribai out of Gibeah of the children of Benjamin,
- Benaiah the Pirathonite,
- Hiddai of the brooks of Gaash,
- Abialbon the Arbathite,
- Azmaveth the Barhumite,
- Eliahba the Shaalbonite of the sons of Jashen,
- Jonathan,
- Shammah the Hararite,
- Ahiam the son of Sharar the Hararite,
- Eliphelet, the son of Ahasbai, the son of the Maachathite,

- Eliam, the son of Ahithophel the Gilonite,
- Hezrai the Carmelite,
- Paarai the Arbite,
- Igal, the son of Nathan of Zobah,
- Bani the Gadite,
- Zelek the Ammonite,
- Nahari the Beerothite, armourbearer to Joab the son of Zeruiah,
- Ira an Ithrite,
- Gareb an Ithrite,
- Uriah the Hittite.

Thirty and seven in all.

And again the anger of THE LORD was kindled against Israel, and He moved David against them to say, “Go, number Israel and Judah!”

For the king said to Joab the captain of the host which was with him, “Go now through all the tribes of Israel, from Dan even to Beersheba, and number ye the people, that I may know the number of the people.”

And Joab said unto the king, “Now THE LORD thy God add unto the people (how many soever they be) an hundredfold, and that the eyes of my lord the king may see it! But, why doth my lord the king delight in this thing?”

Notwithstanding the king's word prevailed against Joab, and against the captains of the host. And Joab and the captains of the host went out from the presence of the king to number the people of Israel. And they passed over Jordan, and pitched in Aroer, on the right side of the city that lieth in the midst of the river of Gad, and toward Jazer. Then they came to Gilead, and to the land of Tahtimhodshi; and they came to Danjaan, and about to Zidon, and came to the strong hold of Tyre, and to all the cities of the Hivites, and of the Canaanites; and they went out to the south of Judah, even to Beersheba.

So when they had gone through all the land, they came to Jerusalem at the end of nine months and twenty days. And Joab gave up the sum of the number of the people unto the king. And there were in Israel eight hundred thousand valiant men that drew the sword; and the men of Judah were five hundred thousand men.

And David's heart smote him after that he had numbered the people. And David said unto THE LORD, “I have <sup>1</sup>sinned greatly in that I have done! And now, I beseech thee, O LORD, take away the iniquity of thy servant; for I have done very foolishly.”

*<sup>1</sup>NOTE: It is not certain as to why it was a sin for David to count the people, but it is possible that David was trying to see if he had enough people for his army – trusting in the strength of men rather than trusting the Lord to fight for him regardless of the number of people he had for battle, as it is written “Not by strength nor by power but by My Spirit, says the Lord”.*

For when David was up in the morning, the Word of THE LORD came unto the prophet Gad, David's <sup>1</sup>seer, saying, “Go and say unto David, Thus saith THE LORD: I offer thee three things. Choose thee one of them, that I may do it unto thee.” *<sup>1</sup>prophet*

So Gad came to David and told him, and said unto him, “Shall seven years of famine come unto thee in thy land? Or, wilt thou flee three months before thine enemies while they pursue thee? Or, that there be three days' pestilence in thy land? Now advise, and see what answer I shall return to Him that sent me.”

And David said unto Gad, “I am <sup>1</sup>in a great strait! Let us fall now into the hand of THE LORD (for His mercies are great!) and let me not fall into the hand of man.” *<sup>1</sup>in other words, stuck between a rock and a hard place*

So THE LORD sent a pestilence upon Israel from the morning even to the time appointed. And there died of the people, from Dan even to Beersheba, seventy thousand men. And when the angel stretched out his hand upon Jerusalem to destroy it, THE LORD <sup>1</sup>repented Him of the evil and said to the angel that destroyed the people, "It is enough; stay now thine hand!" *<sup>1</sup>stopped and turn away from doing this punishment*

And the angel of THE LORD was by the threshingplace of Araunah the Jebusite.

And David spake unto THE LORD when he saw the angel that smote the people, and said, "Lo, I have sinned, and I have done wickedly! But these <sup>1</sup>sheep, what have *they* done? Let thine hand, I pray thee, be against *me* and against my father's House." *<sup>1</sup>referring to the people*

And Gad came that day to David and said unto him, "Go up, rear an altar unto THE LORD in the threshingfloor of Araunah the Jebusite."

And David, according to the saying of Gad, went up as THE LORD commanded. And Araunah looked and saw the king and his servants coming on toward him; and Araunah went out and bowed himself before the king on his face upon the ground.

And Araunah said, "Wherefore is my lord the king come to his servant?"

And David said, "To buy the threshingfloor of thee, to build an altar unto THE LORD, that the plague may be stayed from the people."

And Araunah said unto David, "Let my lord the king take and offer up what seemeth good unto him. Behold, here be oxen for burnt sacrifice, and threshing instruments and other instruments of the oxen for wood."

All these things did Araunah, <sup>1</sup>as a king, give unto the <sup>2</sup>king. And Araunah said unto the king, "THE LORD thy God accept thee." *<sup>1</sup>in the sense of 'with graciousness like a king' [this is an extremely high compliment from the Lord] <sup>2</sup>David*

And the king said unto Araunah, "Nay; but I will surely *buy* it of thee at a price. Neither will I offer burnt offerings unto THE LORD my God of that which doth cost me nothing." So David bought the threshingfloor and the oxen for fifty shekels of silver. And David built there an altar unto THE LORD, and offered burnt offerings and peace offerings. So THE LORD was entreated for the land, and the plague was stayed from Israel.

Now, King David was old and stricken in years; and they covered him with clothes, but he gat no heat.

Wherefore his servants said unto him, "Let there be sought for my lord the king a young virgin; and let her stand before the king, and let her cherish him, and let her lie in thy bosom, that my lord the king may get heat."

So they sought for a fair damsel throughout all the coasts of Israel and found Abishag, a Shunammite, and brought her to the king. And the damsel was very fair, and cherished the king, and ministered to him; but the king <sup>1</sup>knew her not. *<sup>1</sup>did not have sex with her*

Then Adonijah the son of <sup>1</sup>Haggith exalted himself, saying, "I will be king!" And he prepared him chariots and horsemen, and fifty men to run before him. And <sup>2</sup>his father had not displeased him at any time in saying, "Why hast thou done so?" And he also was a very goodly man; and his mother bare him <sup>3</sup>after Absalom. And he conferred with Joab the son of Zeruiah, and with Abiathar the priest; and they, following Adonijah, helped him. *<sup>1</sup>a wife of David <sup>2</sup>King David <sup>3</sup>after Absalom was born*

But Zadok the priest, and Benaiah the son of Jehoiada, and Nathan the prophet, and Shimei, and Rei, and the mighty men which belonged to David, were not <sup>1</sup>with Adonijah. <sup>1</sup>on the side of

And Adonijah slew sheep and oxen and fat cattle by the Stone of Zohelath, which is by Enrogel, and called all his brethren (the king's sons) and all the men of Judah the king's servants. But Nathan the prophet, and Benaiah, and the mighty men, and Solomon his brother, he called not.

Wherefore Nathan spake unto Bathsheba the mother of Solomon, saying, "Hast thou not heard that Adonijah the son of Haggith doth reign, and David our lord knoweth it not? Now therefore come, let me, I pray thee, give thee counsel, that thou mayest save thine own life, and the life of thy son Solomon. Go and get thee in unto King David and say unto him, '*Didst not thou, my lord O king, swear unto thine handmaid, saying, "Assuredly Solomon thy son shall reign after me, and he shall sit upon my throne"?*' Why then doth Adonijah reign?" Behold, while thou yet talkest there with the king, I also will come in after thee and confirm thy words."

And Bathsheba went in unto the king into the chamber. And the king was very old; and Abishag the Shunammite ministered unto the king. And Bathsheba bowed and did obeisance unto the king. And the king said, "What wouldest thou?"

And she said unto him, "My lord, thou swarest by THE LORD thy God unto thine handmaid, saying, '*Assuredly Solomon thy son shall reign after me, and he shall sit upon my throne.*' And now, behold, Adonijah reigneth! And now, my lord the king, thou knowest it not! And he hath slain oxen and fat cattle and sheep in abundance, and hath called all the sons of the king, and Abiathar the priest, and Joab the captain of the host. But Solomon thy servant hath he not called. And thou, my lord O king, the eyes of all Israel are upon thee, that thou shouldst tell them who shall sit on the throne of my lord the king after him. Otherwise it shall come to pass, when my lord the king shall sleep with his fathers, that I and my son Solomon shall be counted offenders."

And, lo, while she yet talked with the king, Nathan the prophet also came in. And <sup>1</sup>they told the king, saying, "Behold... Nathan the prophet." <sup>1</sup>servants announced to

And when he was come in before the king, he bowed himself before the king with his face to the ground. And Nathan said, "My lord O king, hast thou said, '*Adonijah shall reign after me, and he shall sit upon my throne*'? For he is gone down this day, and hath slain oxen and fat cattle and sheep in abundance, and hath called all the king's sons, and the captains of the host, and Abiathar the priest; and, behold, they eat and drink before him, and say, '*God save King Adonijah!*' But me, even me thy servant, and Zadok the priest, and Benaiah the son of Jehoiada, and thy servant Solomon, hath he not called. Is this thing done by my lord the king and thou hast not showed it unto thy servant who should sit on the throne of my lord the king after him?"

Then King David answered and said, <sup>1</sup>"Call me Bathsheba!" And she came into the king's presence, and stood before the king. <sup>1</sup>Bathsheba had stepped out to allow Nathan privacy with David and is here being called back in

And the king swore, and said, "As THE LORD liveth that hath redeemed my soul out of all distress - even as I swear unto thee by THE LORD God of Israel, saying, '*Assuredly Solomon thy son shall reign after me, and he shall sit upon my throne in my stead*' - even so will I certainly do this day!"

Then Bathsheba bowed with her face to the earth and did reverence to the king, and said, "Let my lord King David live for ever!"

And King David said, "Call me Zadok the priest and Nathan the prophet and Benaiah the son of Jehoiada!" And they came before the king.

The king also said unto them, "Take with you the servants of your lord, and cause Solomon my son to ride upon mine own mule, and bring him down to Gihon. And let Zadok the priest and Nathan the prophet anoint him there king over Israel! And blow ye with the trumpet, and say, '*God save King Solomon!*' Then ye shall come up after him, that he may come and sit upon my throne; for he shall be king in my stead. And I have appointed him to be ruler over Israel *and* over Judah."

And Benaiah the son of Jehoiada answered the king, and said, "Amen! THE LORD God of my lord the king say so, too! As THE LORD hath been with my lord the king, even so be He with Solomon, and make his throne greater than the throne of my lord King David."

So Zadok the priest, and Nathan the prophet, and Benaiah the son of Jehoiada, and the Cherethites, and the Pelethites, went down and caused Solomon to ride upon King David's mule and brought him to Gihon. And Zadok the priest took an horn of oil out of The Tabernacle and anointed Solomon. And they blew the trumpet; and all the people said, "God save King Solomon!"

And all the people came up after him, and the people piped with pipes, and rejoiced with great joy, so that the earth rent with the sound of them.

And Adonijah and all the guests that were with him heard it as they had made an end of eating. And when Joab heard the sound of the trumpet, he said, "Wherefore is this noise of the city being in an uproar...?"

And while he yet spake, behold, Jonathan the son of Abiathar the priest came; and Adonijah said unto him, "Come in! For thou art a valiant man and bringest good tidings!"

And Jonathan answered and said to Adonijah, "Verily our lord King David hath made *Solomon* king! And the king hath sent with him Zadok the priest, and Nathan the prophet, and Benaiah the son of Jehoiada, and the Cherethites, and the Pelethites, and they have caused him to ride upon the king's mule. And Zadok the priest and Nathan the prophet have anointed him king in Gihon; and they are come up from thence rejoicing, so that the city rang again! This is the noise that ye have heard. And also, Solomon sitteth on the throne of the kingdom. And moreover, the king's servants came to bless our lord King David, saying, '*God make the name of Solomon better than thy name, and make his throne greater than thy throne*'. And the king bowed himself upon the bed. And also thus said the king, '*Blessed be THE LORD God of Israel which hath given one to sit on my throne this day, mine eyes even seeing it*'."

And all the guests that were with Adonijah were afraid, and rose up, and went every man his way. And Adonijah feared because of Solomon, and arose, and went, and caught hold on the horns of the Altar.

And it was told Solomon, saying, "Behold, Adonijah feareth King Solomon; for, lo, he hath caught hold on the horns of the altar, saying, '*Let king Solomon swear unto me to day that he will not slay his servant with the sword*'."

And Solomon said, "If he will show himself a worthy man, there shall not an hair of him fall to the earth! But, if wickedness shall be found in him, he shall die."

So King Solomon sent, and they brought him down from the Altar. And he came and bowed himself to King Solomon; and Solomon said unto him, "Go to thine house."

Now, the days of David drew nigh that he should die; and he charged Solomon his son, saying, "I go the way of all the earth. Be thou strong therefore, and show thyself a man; and keep the charge of THE LORD thy

God, to walk in His ways, to keep His statutes, and His commandments, and His judgments, and His testimonies - as it is written in the Law of Moses - that thou mayest prosper in all that thou doest and whithersoever thou turnest thyself, that THE LORD may continue His Word which He spake concerning me, saying, *'If thy children take heed to their way, to walk before Me in truth with all their heart and with all their soul, there shall not fail thee,'* said He, *'a man on the throne of Israel.'* Moreover, thou knowest also what Joab the son of Zeruiah did to me, and what he did to the two captains of the hosts of Israel - unto Abner the son of Ner and unto Amasa the son of Jether, whom he slew and shed the blood of war in peace, and put the blood of war upon his girdle that was about his loins and in his shoes that were on his feet. Do therefore according to thy wisdom, and let not his <sup>1</sup>hoar head go down to the grave in peace. But show kindness unto the sons of Barzillai the Gileadite, and let them be of those that eat at thy table; for so they came to me when I fled because of Absalom thy brother. And, behold, thou hast with thee Shimei the son of Gera, a Benjamite of Bahurim, which cursed me with a grievous curse in the day when I went to Mahanaim; but he came down to meet me at Jordan and I swore to him by THE LORD, saying, *'I will not put thee to death with the sword'*. Now therefore hold him not guiltless; for thou art a wise man and knowest what thou oughtest to do unto him, but his <sup>1</sup>hoar head bring thou down to the grave with blood."

*<sup>1</sup>white haired, like the "hoar frost"*

So David slept with his fathers and was buried in the City of David. And the days that David reigned over Israel were forty years - seven years reigned he in Hebron, and thirty and three years reigned he in Jerusalem.

Then sat Solomon upon the throne of David his father; and his kingdom was established greatly.

And Adonijah the son of Haggith came to Bathsheba, the mother of Solomon. And she said, "Comest thou peaceably?"

And he said, "Peaceably." He said moreover, "I have somewhat to say unto thee."

And she said, "Say on."

And he said, "Thou knowest that the kingdom was mine, and that all Israel set their faces on me that I should reign. Howbeit the kingdom is turned about and is become my brother's, for it was his from THE LORD. And now I ask one petition of thee; deny me not."

And she said unto him, "Say on."

And he said, "Speak, I pray thee, unto Solomon the king (for he will not <sup>1</sup>say thee nay) that he give me <sup>2</sup>Abishag the Shunammite to wife."

*<sup>1</sup>say no to you <sup>2</sup>the young maiden that was chosen to lay with David to keep him warm and attend to his needs*

And Bathsheba said, "'Well; I will speak for thee unto the king."

*<sup>1</sup>very well*

Bathsheba therefore went unto King Solomon, to speak unto him for Adonijah. And the king rose up to meet her and bowed himself unto her, and sat down on his throne and caused a seat to be set for the king's mother; and she sat on his right hand.

Then she said, "I desire one small petition of thee; I pray thee, say me not nay."

And the king said unto her, "Ask on, my mother; for I will not say thee nay."

And she said, "Let Abishag the Shunammite be given to Adonijah thy brother to wife."

And King Solomon answered and said unto his mother, "And why dost thou ask Abishag the Shunammite for Adonijah?! Ask for him the kingdom also (for he is mine elder brother), even for him, and for Abiathar the priest, and for Joab the son of Zeruiah!"

Then king Solomon swore by THE LORD, saying, "God do so to me (and more also!) if Adonijah have not spoken this word against his own life! Now therefore, as THE LORD liveth which hath established me and set me on the throne of David my father, and who hath made me an House as He promised - Adonijah shall be put to death this day!"

*NOTE: It seems the general consensus among ancient and classical scholars that Adonijah was apparently seeking a way to become king through marrying Abishag, which is treason - an act which Solomon identified immediately, seeing that Adonijah had already once declared himself the king. Solomon pardoned him the first time, but would not do so a second time. As the Lord's anointed sovereign over Israel and Judah, Solomon was correct in ordering Adonijah's death.*

And King Solomon sent by the hand of Benaiah the son of Jehoiada; and he fell upon <sup>1</sup>him that he died.

*<sup>1</sup>Adonijah*

And unto Abiathar the priest said the king, "Get thee to Anathoth, unto thine own fields; for thou art worthy of death! But I will not at this time put thee to death, because thou barest the Ark of THE LORD GOD before David my father, and because thou hast been afflicted in all wherein my father was afflicted."

So Solomon thrust out Abiathar from being priest unto THE LORD, that he might fulfil the Word of THE LORD which He spake concerning the House of Eli in Shiloh.

Then tidings came to Joab (for Joab had turned after Adonijah, though he turned not after Absalom). And Joab fled unto The Tabernacle of THE LORD, and caught hold on the horns of the Altar. And it was told King Solomon that Joab was fled unto The Tabernacle of THE LORD, and, "Behold, he is by the Altar."

Then Solomon sent Benaiah the son of Jehoiada, saying, "Go, fall upon him!"

And Benaiah came to The Tabernacle of THE LORD and said unto him, "Thus saith the king, 'Come forth!'"

And he said, "Nay! But I will die here!"

And Benaiah brought the king word again, saying, "<sup>1</sup>Thus said Joab, and <sup>1</sup>thus he answered me."

*<sup>1</sup>Joab said such and such to me*

And the king said unto him, "Do as he hath said and fall upon him and bury him, that thou mayest take away the innocent blood, which Joab shed, from me and from the House of my father. And THE LORD shall return his blood upon his own head, who fell upon two men more righteous and better than he, and slew them with the sword (my father David not <sup>1</sup>knowing thereof - <sup>2</sup>to wit, Abner the son of Ner, captain of the host of Israel, and Amasa the son of Jether, captain of the host of Judah). Their blood shall therefore return upon the head of Joab and upon the head of his seed for ever. But upon David, and upon his seed, and upon his House, and upon his throne, shall there be peace for ever from THE LORD." *<sup>1</sup>authorizing it <sup>2</sup>namely/ that is to say*

So Benaiah the son of Jehoiada went up and fell upon him and slew him; and he was buried in his own house in the wilderness. And the king put Benaiah the son of Jehoiada in his <sup>1</sup>room over the host, and Zadok the priest did the king put in the <sup>1</sup>room of Abiathar.

*<sup>1</sup>rank, position, office*

And the king sent and called for Shimei and said unto him, "Build thee an house in Jerusalem, and dwell there, and go not forth thence any whither. For it shall be that on the day thou goest out and passest over the Brook Kidron, thou shalt know for certain that thou shalt surely die! Thy blood shall be upon thine own head!"

And Shimei said unto the king, "The saying is good. As my lord the king hath said, so will thy servant do." And Shimei dwelt in Jerusalem many days.

And it came to pass at the end of three years that two of the servants of Shimei ran away unto Achish son of Maachah king of Gath. And they told Shimei, saying, "Behold, thy servants be in Gath." And Shimei arose, and saddled his ass, and went to Gath to Achish to seek his servants; and Shimei went, and brought his servants from Gath. And it was told Solomon that Shimei had gone from Jerusalem to Gath, and was come again.

And the king sent and called for Shimei and said unto him, "Did I not make thee to swear by THE LORD and protested unto thee, saying, '*Know for a certain, on the day thou goest out and walkest abroad any whither, that thou shalt surely die*' and thou saidst unto me, '*The word that I have heard is good*'? Why then hast thou not kept the oath of THE LORD and the commandment that I have charged thee with?"

The king said moreover to Shimei, "Thou knowest all the wickedness which thine heart is privy to that thou didst to David my father. Therefore THE LORD shall return thy wickedness upon thine own head; and King Solomon shall be blessed, and the throne of David shall be established before THE LORD for ever."

So the king commanded Benaiah the son of Jehoiada, which went out and fell upon him that he died. And the kingdom was established in the hand of Solomon. And Solomon made affinity with Pharaoh king of Egypt, and took Pharaoh's daughter, and brought her into the City of David, until he had made an end of building his own house and the House of THE LORD and the wall of Jerusalem round about. Only, the people sacrificed in high places because there was no House built unto the name of THE LORD until those days.

And Solomon loved THE LORD, walking in the statutes of David his father. Only, he sacrificed and burnt incense in high places. And the king went to Gibeon to sacrifice there; for that was the great high place. A thousand burnt offerings did Solomon offer upon that altar.

In Gibeon THE LORD appeared to Solomon in a dream by night; and God said, "Ask what I shall give thee."

And Solomon said, "Thou hast showed unto Thy servant David my father great mercy, according as he walked before Thee in truth and in righteousness and in uprightness of heart with Thee. And Thou hast kept for him this great kindness - that Thou hast given him a son to sit on his throne, as it is this day. And now, O LORD my God, Thou hast made Thy servant king instead of David my father, and I am but a little child! I know not how to go out or come in. And Thy servant is in the midst of Thy people which Thou hast chosen, a great people that cannot be numbered nor counted for multitude. Give therefore Thy servant an understanding heart to judge Thy people, that I may discern between good and bad. For who is able to judge this Thy so great a people?"

And the speech pleased THE LORD, that Solomon had asked this thing. And God said unto him, "Because thou hast asked this thing, and hast not asked for thyself long life, neither hast asked riches for thyself, nor hast asked the life of thine enemies, but hast asked for thyself understanding to discern judgment - behold, I have done according to thy words. Lo, I have given thee a wise and an understanding heart so that there was none like thee before thee, neither after thee shall any arise like unto thee. And I have also given thee that which thou hast *not* asked - both riches and honour - so that there shall not be any among the kings like unto thee all thy days. And if thou wilt walk in My Ways, to keep My statutes and My commandments, as thy father David did walk, then I will lengthen thy days."

And Solomon awoke; and, behold, it was a dream. And he came to Jerusalem, and stood before the Ark of the Covenant of THE LORD, and offered up burnt offerings, and offered peace offerings, and made a feast to all his servants.

Then came there two women that were harlots unto the king and stood before him. And the one woman said, "O my lord, I and this woman dwell in one house; and I <sup>1</sup>was delivered of a child with her in the house. And it came to pass the third day after that I <sup>1</sup>was delivered, that this woman <sup>1</sup>was delivered also. And we were together; there was no stranger with us in the house, save we two in the house. And this woman's child died in the night because she <sup>2</sup>overlaid it. And she arose at midnight and took my son from beside me while thine handmaid slept, and laid it in her bosom, and laid her dead child in my bosom. And when I rose in the morning to give my child suck, behold, it was dead! But when I had considered it in the morning, behold, it was not my son which I did bear." <sup>1</sup>gave birth <sup>2</sup>rolled on top of

And the other woman said, "Nay; but the living is *my* son, and the dead is *thy* son!"

And this said, "No; but the dead is *thy* son, and the living is *my* son!"

Thus they spake before the king. Then said the king, "The one saith, '*This is my son that liveth, and thy son is the dead*', and the other saith, '*Nay; but thy son is the dead, and my son is the living*'."

And the king said, "Bring me a sword!" And they brought a sword before the king.

And the king said, "Divide the living child in two, and give half to the one, and half to the other!"

Then spake the woman <sup>1</sup>whose the living child was unto the king, for her bowels yearned upon her son, and she said, "O my lord, give her the living child and in no wise slay it!" <sup>1</sup>who was the true mother of the living child

But the other said, "Let it be neither mine nor thine, but divide it!"

Then the king answered and said, "Give <sup>1</sup>her the living child, and in no wise slay it; she is the mother thereof." <sup>1</sup>give the baby to the mother who pleaded for the baby's life

And all Israel heard of the judgment which the king had judged; and they feared the king, for they saw that the wisdom of God was in him to do judgment.

So King Solomon was king over all Israel. And these were the princes which he had:

- Azariah the son of Zadok the priest,
- Elihoreph and Ahiah, the sons of Shisha, scribes,
- Jehoshaphat the son of Ahilud, the recorder,
- and Benaiah the son of Jehoiada was over the host,
- and Zadok and Abiathar were the priests,
- and Azariah the son of Nathan was over the officers,
- and Zabud the son of Nathan was principal officer, and the king's friend,
- and Ahishar was over the household,
- and Adoniram the son of Abda was over the tribute.

And Solomon had twelve officers over all Israel, which provided victuals for the king and his household - each man, his month in a year, made provision.

And these are their names:

- <sup>1</sup>The son of Hur, in Mount Ephraim, <sup>1</sup>Ben Hur
- <sup>1</sup>the son of Dekar, in Makaz, and in Shaalbim, and Bethshemesh, and Elonbethhanan, <sup>1</sup>Ben Dekar
- the son of Heshed, in Aruboth (to him pertained Sochoh and all the land of Hopher),
- <sup>1</sup>the son of Abinadab, in all the region of Dor (which had Taphath the daughter of Solomon to wife), <sup>1</sup>Ben Abinadab

- <sup>1</sup>Baana the son of Ahilud (to him pertained Taanach and Megiddo, and all Bethshean, which is by Zartanah beneath Jezreel, from Bethshean to Abelmeholah, even unto the place that is beyond Jokneam), *<sup>1</sup>Baana ben Ahilud*
- <sup>1</sup>the son of Geber, in Ramothgilead (to him pertained the towns of Jair the son of Manasse which are in Gilead; to him also pertained the region of Argob which is in Bashan - <sup>2</sup>threescore great cities with walls and brazen bars), *<sup>1</sup>Ben Geber <sup>2</sup>60*
- <sup>1</sup>Ahinadab the son of Iddo had Mahanaim, *<sup>1</sup>Ahinadab Ben Iddo*
- Ahimaaz was in Naphtali (he also took Basmath the daughter of Solomon to wife),
- <sup>1</sup>Baanah the son of Hushai was in Asher and in Aloth, *<sup>1</sup>Baahah Ben Hushai*
- <sup>1</sup>Jehoshaphat the son of Paruah, in Issachar, *<sup>1</sup>Jehoshaphat Ben Paruah*
- <sup>1</sup>Shimei the son of Elah, in Benjamin, *<sup>1</sup>Shimei Ben Elah*
- <sup>1</sup>Geber the son of Uri was in the country of Gilead, in the country of Sihon king of the Amorites, and of Og king of Bashan (and he was the only officer which was in the land). *<sup>1</sup>Geber Ben Uri*

Judah and Israel were many, as the sand which is by the sea in multitude, eating and drinking, and making merry. And Solomon reigned over all kingdoms from The River unto the land of the Philistines, and unto the border of Egypt. They brought presents and served Solomon all the days of his life.

And Solomon's provision for one day was thirty measures of fine flour, and threescore measures of meal, ten fat oxen, and twenty oxen out of the pastures, and an hundred sheep, beside harts, and roebucks, and fallowdeer, and fatted fowl. For he had dominion over all the region on this side The River, from Tiphseh even to Azzah, over all the kings on this side The River; and he had peace on all sides round about him.

And Judah and Israel dwelt safely, every man under his vine and under his fig tree, from Dan even to Beersheba, all the days of Solomon.

And Solomon had forty thousand stalls of horses for his chariots, and twelve thousand horsemen.

And those officers provided victual for King Solomon and for all that came unto King Solomon's table, every man in his month; they lacked nothing.

Barley also, and straw, for the horses and dromedaries brought they unto the place where the officers were, every man according to his <sup>1</sup>charge. *<sup>1</sup>duty*

And God gave Solomon wisdom, and understanding exceeding much, and largeness of heart, even as the sand that is on the sea shore.

And Solomon's wisdom excelled the wisdom of all the children of the east country, and all the wisdom of Egypt. For he was wiser than all men - than Ethan the Ezrahite, and Heman, and Chalcol, and Darda, the sons of Mahol; and his fame was in all nations round about.

And he spake three thousand proverbs, and his songs were a thousand and five. And he spake of trees, from the cedar tree that is in Lebanon even unto the hyssop that springeth out of the wall. He spake also of beasts, and of fowl, and of creeping things, and of fishes.

And there came of all people to hear the wisdom of Solomon, from all kings of the earth, which had heard of his wisdom.

And Hiram, King of Tyre, sent his servants unto Solomon; for he had heard that they had anointed him king in the room of his father, for Hiram was ever a lover of David.

And Solomon sent to Hiram, saying, "Thou knowest how that David my father could not build an <sup>1</sup>House unto the name of THE LORD his God for the wars which were about him on every side, until THE LORD put them under the soles of his feet. But now THE LORD my God hath given me rest on every side, so that there is neither adversary nor evil occurrent. And, behold, I purpose to build an <sup>1</sup>House unto the name of THE LORD my God, as THE LORD spake unto David my father, saying, 'Thy son, whom I will set upon thy throne in thy room, he shall build an House unto My name'. Now, therefore, command thou that they hew me cedar trees out of Lebanon; and my servants shall be with thy servants. And unto thee will I give <sup>2</sup>hire for thy servants according to all that thou shalt appoint; for thou knowest that there is not among us any that can skill to hew timber like unto the <sup>3</sup>Sidonians."  
*<sup>1</sup>temple <sup>2</sup>salary wages <sup>3</sup>Zidonians*

And it came to pass, when Hiram heard the words of Solomon, that he rejoiced greatly, and said, "Blessed be THE LORD this day, which hath given unto David a wise son over this great people!"

And Hiram sent to Solomon, saying, "I have considered the things which thou sentest to me for, and I will do all thy desire concerning timber of cedar and concerning timber of fir. My servants shall bring them down from Lebanon unto the sea. And I will convey them by sea in floats unto the place that thou shalt appoint me, and will cause them to be discharged there, and thou shalt receive them; and thou shalt accomplish my desire in giving food for my household."

So Hiram gave Solomon cedar trees and fir trees according to all his desire. And Solomon gave Hiram twenty thousand measures of wheat for food to his household, and twenty measures of pure oil; thus gave Solomon to Hiram year by year.

And THE LORD gave Solomon wisdom, as He promised him; and there was peace between Hiram and Solomon, and they two made a <sup>1</sup>league together.  
*<sup>1</sup>treaty*

And King Solomon raised a <sup>1</sup>levy out of all Israel; and the levy was thirty thousand men.  
*<sup>1</sup>a tax in the form of required physical labor*

And he sent them to Lebanon, ten thousand a month by <sup>1</sup>courses; a month they were in Lebanon and two months at home, and Adoniram was over the levy.  
*<sup>1</sup>duty shift rotations*

And Solomon had <sup>1</sup>threescore and ten thousand that bare burdens, and <sup>2</sup>fourscore thousand hewers in the mountains - beside the chief of Solomon's officers which were over the work, three thousand and three hundred, which ruled over the people that wrought in the work.  
*<sup>1</sup>70,000 <sup>2</sup>80,000*

And the king commanded, and they brought great stones, costly stones, and hewed stones, to lay the foundation of the House. And Solomon's builders and Hiram's builders did hew them, and the <sup>1</sup>stonesquarer; so they prepared timber and stones to build the House.  
*<sup>1</sup>quary workers*

And it came to pass in the four hundred and eightieth year after the Children of Israel were come out of the land of Egypt, in the fourth year of Solomon's reign over Israel, in the month Zif, which is the second month, that he began to build the House of THE LORD.

And the House which King Solomon built for THE LORD:

- the length thereof was <sup>1</sup>threescore cubits,
- and the breadth thereof twenty cubits,
- and the height thereof thirty cubits.

*<sup>1</sup>60*

And the porch before the Temple of the House:

- twenty cubits was the length thereof, according to the breadth of the House;
- and ten cubits was the breadth thereof before the House.

And for the House he made windows of narrow lights.

And against the wall of the House he built chambers round about, against the walls of the House round about, both of the Temple and of the Oracle. And he made chambers round about:

- the nethermost chamber was five cubits broad,
- and the middle was six cubits broad,
- and the third was seven cubits broad (for without in the wall of the House he made narrowed rests round about, that the beams should not be fastened in the walls of the House).

And the House, when it was in building, was built of stone made ready before it was brought thither, so that there was neither hammer nor ax nor any tool of iron heard in the House while it was in building.

The door for the middle chamber was in the right side of the House, and they went up with winding stairs into the middle chamber, and out of the middle into the third.

So he built the House and finished it, and covered the House with beams and boards of cedar. And then he built chambers against all the House, five cubits high; and they rested on the House with timber of cedar.

And the Word of THE LORD came to Solomon, saying, "Concerning this House which thou art in building, if thou wilt walk in My statutes and execute My judgments and keep all My commandments to walk in them, then will I perform My Word with thee which I spake unto David thy father, and I will dwell among the Children of Israel and will not forsake My People Israel."

So Solomon built the House and finished it. And he built the walls of the House within with boards of cedar, both the floor of the House and the walls of the ceiling. And he covered them on the inside with wood, and covered the floor of the House with planks of fir.

And he built twenty cubits on the sides of the House, both the floor and the walls with boards of cedar. He even built them for it within, even for the Oracle, even for the Most Holy Place. And the House, that is, the Temple before it, was forty cubits long.

And the cedar of the House within was carved with knops and open flowers. All was cedar; there was no stone seen.

And the Oracle he prepared in the House within to set there the Ark of the Covenant of THE LORD. And the Oracle in the forepart was twenty cubits in length, and twenty cubits in breadth, and twenty cubits in the height thereof. And he overlaid it with pure gold; and so covered the Altar which was of cedar.

So Solomon overlaid the House within with pure gold; and he made a partition by the chains of gold before the Oracle, and he overlaid it with gold. And the whole House he overlaid with gold, until he had finished all the House. Also the whole Altar that was by the Oracle he overlaid with gold.

And within the Oracle he made two <sup>1</sup>cherubims of olive tree, each ten cubits high. And five cubits was the one wing of the cherub and five cubits the other wing of the cherub - from the uttermost part of the one wing unto the uttermost part of the other were ten cubits. And the other cherub was ten cubits; both the cherubims were of <sup>2</sup>one measure and <sup>2</sup>one size. The height of the one cherub was ten cubits, and so was it of the other cherub.

*<sup>1</sup>NOTE: Cherubim is the plural form of Cherub. These angels did not look like the winged children of medieval art (which were actually images of the pagan god Cupid) but, as we are told elsewhere in Scripture, they were mighty winged angels with the body and hands of a man, hooped legs like a cow, and had a head with four faces – one like an eagle, one like a man, one like a lion, and one like an ox.  
<sup>2</sup>the same/equal*

And he set the cherubims within the Inner House, and they stretched forth the wings of the cherubims so that the wing of the one touched the one wall, and the wing of the other cherub touched the other wall; and their wings touched one another in the midst of the house. And he overlaid the cherubims with gold.

And he carved all the walls of the House round about with carved figures of cherubims and palm trees and open flowers within and without.

And the floor of the House he overlaid with gold within and without.

And for the <sup>1</sup>entering of the Oracle he made doors of olive tree; the lintel and side posts were a fifth part of the wall. The two doors also were of olive tree; and he carved upon them carvings of cherubims and palm trees and open flowers, and overlaid them with gold, and spread gold upon the cherubims, and upon the palm trees. So also made he, for the door of the Temple, posts of olive tree, a fourth part of the wall. And the two doors were of fir tree - the two leaves of the one door were folding, and the two leaves of the other door were folding. And he carved thereon cherubims and palm trees and open flowers, and covered them with gold fitted upon the carved work. <sup>1</sup>entrance

And he built the Inner Court with three rows of hewed stone, and a row of cedar beams.

In the fourth year was the foundation of the House of THE LORD laid, in the month Zif. And in the eleventh year, in the month Bul (which is the eighth month), was the House finished throughout all the parts thereof, and according to all the fashion of it. So was he seven years in building it.

But Solomon was building his own house thirteen years, and he finished all his house. He built also the house <sup>1</sup>of the forest of Lebanon; the length thereof was an hundred cubits, and the breadth thereof fifty cubits, and the height thereof thirty cubits, upon four rows of cedar pillars, with cedar beams upon the pillars. And it was covered with cedar above upon the beams, that lay on forty five pillars, fifteen in a row. And there were windows in three rows, and light was against light in three ranks. And all the doors and posts were square, with the windows, and light was against light in three ranks. And he made a porch of pillars; the length thereof was fifty cubits, and the breadth thereof thirty cubits, and the porch was before them, and the other pillars and the thick beam were before them. Then he made a porch for the throne where he might judge, even the porch of judgment; and it was covered with cedar <sup>1</sup>with wood of the forest from one side of the floor to the other.

And his house where he dwelt had another court within the porch, which was of the like work. Solomon made also an house for Pharaoh's daughter, whom he had taken to wife, like unto this porch.

All these were of costly stones, according to the measures of hewed stones, sawed with saws, within and without, even from the foundation unto the coping, and so on the outside toward the great court. And the foundation was of costly stones, even great stones, stones of ten cubits, and stones of eight cubits. And above were costly stones, after the measures of hewed stones, and cedars.

And the great court round about was with three rows of hewed stones, and a row of cedar beams, both for the Inner court of the House of THE LORD, and for the porch of the House.

And King Solomon sent and fetched Hiram out of Tyre. He was a widow's son of the tribe of Naphtali, and his father was a man of Tyre, a worker in brass; and he was filled with wisdom, and understanding, and cunning to work all works in brass. And he came to King Solomon, and wrought all his work. For he cast two pillars of brass, of eighteen cubits high apiece, and a line of twelve cubits did compass either of them about.

And he made two <sup>1</sup>chapters of molten brass to set upon the tops of the pillars: the height of the one <sup>1</sup>chapter was five cubits, and the height of the other <sup>1</sup>chapter was five cubits. And nets of checker work and wreaths of chain work for the <sup>1</sup>chapters which were upon the top of the pillars; seven for the one <sup>1</sup>chapter, and seven for the other <sup>1</sup>chapter. *<sup>1</sup>capitol, the top and bottom of a pillar*

And he made the pillars, and two rows round about upon the one network, to cover the chapters that were upon the top, with pomegranates; and so did he for the other chapter. And the chapters that were upon the top of the pillars were of lily work in the porch, four cubits. And the chapters upon the two pillars had pomegranates also above, over against the belly which was by the network; and the pomegranates were two hundred in rows round about upon the other chapter. And he set up the pillars in the porch of the temple; and he set up the right pillar and called the name thereof "Jachin", and he set up the left pillar and called the name thereof "Boaz". And upon the top of the pillars was lily work. So was the work of the pillars finished.

And he made a <sup>1</sup>molten sea, ten cubits from the one brim to the other. It was round all about, and his height was five cubits, and a line of thirty cubits did compass it round about. *<sup>1</sup>large metal water basin*

And under the brim of it round about there were knops compassing it, ten in a cubit, compassing the sea round about; the knops were cast in two rows when it was cast. It stood upon twelve oxen, three looking toward the north, and three looking toward the west, and three looking toward the south, and three looking toward the east; and the sea was set above upon them, and all their hinder parts were inward. And it was an hand breadth thick, and the brim thereof was wrought like the brim of a cup, with flowers of lilies; it contained two thousand baths.

And he made ten bases of brass; four cubits was the length of one base, and four cubits the breadth thereof, and three cubits the height of it. And the work of the bases was on this manner: they had borders, and the borders were between the ledges, and on the borders that were between the ledges were lions, oxen, and cherubims; and upon the ledges there was a base above; and beneath the lions and oxen were certain additions made of thin work. And every base had four brazen wheels, and plates of brass, and the four corners thereof had undersetters; under the Laver were undersetters molten, at the side of every addition.

And the mouth of it within the chapter and above was a cubit, but the mouth thereof was round after the work of the base, a cubit and an half; and also upon the mouth of it were gravings with their borders, foursquare, not round. And under the borders were four wheels; and the axletrees of the wheels were joined to the base; and the height of a wheel was a cubit and half a cubit. And the work of the wheels was like the work of a chariot wheel; their axletrees, and their naves, and their felloes, and their spokes, were all molten. And there were four undersetters to the four corners of one base; and the undersetters were of the very base itself.

And in the top of the base was there a round compass of half a cubit high; and on the top of the base the ledges thereof and the borders thereof were of the same.

For on the plates of the ledges thereof, and on the borders thereof, he graved cherubims, lions, and palm trees, according to the proportion of every one, and additions round about. After this manner he made the ten bases; all of them had one casting, one measure, and one size.

Then made he ten Lavens of brass; one Laver contained forty baths, and every Laver was four cubits, and upon every one of the ten bases one Laver. And he put five bases on the right side of the house, and five on the left side of the House; and he set the sea on the right side of the House eastward over against the south. And Hiram made the Lavens, and the shovels, and the basins.

So Hiram made an end of doing all the work that he made King Solomon for the House of THE LORD:

- The two pillars,
- and the two bowls of the chapiters that were on the top of the two pillars,
- and the two networks to cover the two bowls of the chapiters which were upon the top of the pillars,
- and four hundred pomegranates for the two networks, even two rows of pomegranates for one network, to cover the two bowls of the chapiters that were upon the pillars,
- and the ten bases,
- and ten Lavers on the bases,
- and one sea,
- and twelve oxen under the sea,
- and the pots,
- and the shovels,
- and the basins.

And all these vessels, which Hiram made to King Solomon for the House of THE LORD, were of bright brass. In the plain of Jordan did the king cast them, in the clay ground between Succoth and Zarthan.

And Solomon left all the vessels unweighed, because they were exceeding many; neither was the weight of the brass found out. And Solomon made all the vessels that pertained unto the House of THE LORD:

- the altar of gold,
- and the table of gold, whereupon the Showbread was,
- and the Candlesticks of pure gold (five on the right side and five on the left) before the Oracle,
- with the flowers,
- and the lamps,
- and the tongs of gold,
- and the bowls,
- and the snuffers,
- and the basins,
- and the spoons,
- and the censers of pure gold,
- and the hinges of gold, both for the doors of the Inner House, the Most Holy Place, and for the doors of the House (to wit, of the Temple).

So was ended all the work that King Solomon made for the House of THE LORD. And Solomon brought in the things which David his father had dedicated; even the silver and the gold and the vessels did he put among the treasures of the House of THE LORD.

Then Solomon assembled the elders of Israel and all the heads of the tribes - the chief of the fathers of the Children of Israel - unto King Solomon in Jerusalem, that they might bring up the Ark of the Covenant of THE LORD out of the City of David, which is Zion.

And all the men of Israel assembled themselves unto King Solomon at the feast in the month Ethanim, which is the seventh month.

And all the elders of Israel came, and the priests took up the Ark. And they brought up the Ark of THE LORD and The Tabernacle of the Congregation and all the holy vessels that were in The Tabernacle - even those did the priests and the Levites bring up.

And King Solomon, and all the congregation of Israel that were assembled unto him, were with him before the Ark, sacrificing sheep and oxen that could not be told nor numbered for multitude. And the priests brought in the Ark of the Covenant of THE LORD unto his place, into the Oracle of the House, to the Most

Holy Place, even under the wings of the cherubims (for the cherubims spread forth their two wings over the place of the Ark, and the cherubims covered the Ark and the staves thereof above).

And they drew out the staves, that the ends of the staves were seen out in the Holy Place before the Oracle, and they were not seen without; and there they are unto this day.

There was nothing in the Ark save the <sup>1</sup>two tables of stone which Moses put there at <sup>2</sup>Horeb when THE LORD made a covenant with the Children of Israel, when they came out of the land of Egypt.

<sup>1</sup>tables of the law <sup>2</sup>Mt. Sinai

And it came to pass, when the priests were come out of the Holy Place, that the cloud filled the House of THE LORD so that the priests could not stand to minister because of the cloud - for the glory of THE LORD had filled the House of THE LORD.

Then spake Solomon, "THE LORD said that He would dwell in the thick darkness. I have surely built Thee an House to dwell in, a settled place for Thee to abide in for ever."

And the king turned his face about and blessed all the congregation of Israel (and all the congregation of Israel stood), and he said, "Blessed be THE LORD God of Israel which spake with His mouth unto David my father, and hath with His hand fulfilled it, saying, '*Since the day that I brought forth My People Israel out of Egypt I chose no city out of all the tribes of Israel to build an House that My name might be therein; but I chose David to be over My People Israel*'. And it was in the heart of David my father to build an House for the name of THE LORD God of Israel. And THE LORD said unto David my father, '*Whereas it was in thine heart to build an House unto My Name, thou didst well that it was in thine heart. Nevertheless thou shalt not build the House; but thy son that shall come forth out of thy loins, he shall build the House unto My Name*'. And THE LORD hath performed His Word that He spake, and I am risen up in the room of David my father and sit on the throne of Israel, as THE LORD promised, and have built an House for the name of THE LORD God of Israel. And I have set there a place for the Ark, wherein is the covenant of THE LORD which He made with our fathers when he brought them out of the land of Egypt."

And Solomon stood before the Altar of THE LORD in the presence of all the congregation of Israel, and spread forth his hands toward heaven. And he said, "LORD God of Israel, there is no God like Thee in heaven above or on earth beneath who keepest covenant and mercy with Thy servants that walk before Thee with all their heart, who hast kept with Thy servant David my father <sup>1</sup>that Thou promisedst him. Thou spakest also with Thy mouth and hast fulfilled it with Thine hand, as it is this day! Therefore now, LORD God of Israel, keep with Thy servant David my father <sup>1</sup>that Thou promisedst him, saying, '*There shall not fail thee a man in My sight to sit on the throne of Israel; so that thy children take heed to their way, that they walk before Me as thou hast walked before Me*'. And now, O God of Israel, let Thy Word, I pray thee, be verified, which Thou spakest unto Thy servant David my father. <sup>1</sup>that which

"But will God indeed dwell on the earth? Behold, the heaven and heaven of heavens cannot contain Thee! How much less this House that I have builded? Yet, have Thou respect unto the prayer of Thy servant and to his supplication, O LORD my God, to hearken unto the cry and to the prayer which Thy servant prayeth before Thee to day, that Thine eyes may be open toward this House night and day, even toward the place of which Thou hast said, '*My name shall be there*', that Thou mayest hearken unto the prayer which Thy servant shall make toward this place. And hearken Thou to the supplication of Thy servant, and of Thy people Israel, when they shall pray toward this place; and hear Thou in heaven Thy dwelling place - and when Thou hearest, forgive! If any man trespass against his neighbour, and an oath be laid upon him to cause him to swear, and the oath come before Thine Altar in this House, then hear Thou in heaven, and do, and judge thy servants, condemning the wicked, to bring his way upon his head; and justifying the righteous, to give him according to his righteousness.

"When Thy people Israel be smitten down before the enemy because they have sinned against Thee and shall turn again to Thee and confess Thy Name and pray and make supplication unto Thee in this

House - then hear Thou in heaven and forgive the sin of Thy people Israel and bring them again unto the land which Thou gavest unto their fathers.

“When heaven is shut up and there is no rain because they have sinned against Thee - if they pray toward this place and confess Thy Name and turn from their sin when Thou afflicted them, then hear Thou in heaven and forgive the sin of Thy servants and of Thy people Israel, that Thou teach them the good way wherein they should walk and give rain upon Thy land which Thou hast given to Thy people for an inheritance.

“If there be in the land famine, if there be pestilence, blasting, mildew, locust, or if there be caterpillar, if their enemy besiege them in the land of their cities - whatsoever plague, whatsoever sickness there be - what prayer and supplication soever be made by any man or by all thy people Israel which shall know every man the plague of his own heart and spread forth his hands toward this House, then hear Thou in heaven Thy dwelling place, and forgive, and do, and give to every man according to his ways, whose heart Thou knowest (for Thou, even Thou only, knowest the hearts of all the <sup>1</sup>children of men), that they may fear Thee all the days that they live in the land which Thou gavest unto our fathers. *literally “children of Adam”*

“Moreover concerning a stranger that is not of Thy people Israel, but cometh out of a far country for Thy name's sake (for they shall hear of Thy great name and of Thy strong hand and of Thy stretched out arm) - when he shall come and pray toward this House, hear Thou in heaven Thy dwelling place and do according to all that the stranger calleth to Thee for, that all people of the earth may know Thy name, to fear Thee, as do Thy People Israel; and that they may know that this House which I have builded is called by Thy name.

“If Thy People go out to battle against their enemy, whithersoever Thou shalt send them, and shall pray unto THE LORD toward the city which Thou hast chosen and toward the House that I have built for Thy name, then hear Thou in heaven their prayer and their supplication, and maintain their cause.

“If they sin against Thee (for there is no man that sinneth not) and Thou be angry with them and deliver them to the enemy so that they carry them away captives unto the land of the enemy far or near - yet if they shall bethink themselves in the land whither they were carried captives, and repent, and make supplication unto Thee in the land of them that carried them captives, saying, *‘We have sinned, and have done perversely, we have committed wickedness’*, and so return unto Thee with all their heart and with all their soul in the land of their enemies which led them away captive, and pray unto Thee toward their land which Thou gavest unto their fathers, the city which Thou hast chosen, and the House which I have built for Thy name - then hear Thou their prayer and their supplication in heaven Thy dwelling place, and maintain their cause, and forgive Thy people that have sinned against Thee, and all their transgressions wherein they have transgressed against Thee, and give them compassion before them who carried them captive that *they* may have compassion on them. For they be Thy people and Thine inheritance which Thou broughtest forth out of Egypt, from the midst of the furnace of iron, that Thine eyes may be open unto the supplication of Thy servant, and unto the supplication of Thy People Israel, to hearken unto them in all that they call for unto Thee. For Thou didst separate them from among all the people of the earth to be Thine inheritance, as Thou spakest by the hand of Moses Thy servant when Thou broughtest our fathers out of Egypt, O Lord GOD!”

And it was so that, when Solomon had made an end of praying all this prayer and supplication unto THE LORD, he arose from before the Altar of THE LORD, from kneeling on his knees with his hands spread up to heaven.

And he stood and blessed all the congregation of Israel with a loud voice, saying, “Blessed be THE LORD that hath given rest unto His People Israel according to all that He promised! There hath not failed one Word of all His good promise which He promised by the hand of Moses His servant! THE LORD our God be with us as He was with our fathers! Let Him not leave us, nor forsake us, that He may incline our hearts unto Him, to walk in all His ways and to keep His commandments, and His statutes, and His judgments, which He commanded our fathers! And let these my words, wherewith I have made supplication before THE LORD, be nigh unto THE LORD our God day and night, that He maintain the cause of His servant and the cause of His People Israel at all times, as the matter shall require; that all the people of the earth may know that THE

LORD is God and that there is none else! Let your heart therefore be perfect with THE LORD our God, to walk in His statutes and to keep His commandments, as at this day!"

And the king, and all Israel with him, offered sacrifice before THE LORD. And Solomon offered a sacrifice of peace offerings, which he offered unto THE LORD - two and twenty thousand oxen, and an hundred and twenty thousand sheep. So the king and all the Children of Israel dedicated the House of THE LORD.

The same day did the king hallow the middle of the court that was before the House of THE LORD (for there he offered burnt offerings and meat offerings and the fat of the peace offerings because the Brazen Altar that was before THE LORD was too little to receive the burnt offerings and meat offerings and the fat of the peace offerings).

And at that time Solomon held a feast, and all Israel with him, a great congregation, from the entering in of Hamath unto the river of Egypt, before THE LORD our God, seven days and seven days, even fourteen days. On the eighth day he sent the people away, and they blessed the king and went unto their tents joyful and glad of heart for all the goodness that THE LORD had done for David His servant, and for Israel His People.

And it came to pass, when Solomon had finished the building of the House of THE LORD and the king's house and all Solomon's desire which he was pleased to do, that THE LORD appeared to Solomon the second time as He had appeared unto him at Gibeon.

And THE LORD said unto him, "I have heard thy prayer and thy supplication that thou hast made before Me! I have hallowed this House which thou hast built, to put My Name there for ever; and Mine eyes and Mine heart shall be there perpetually. And if thou wilt walk before Me, as David thy father walked, in integrity of heart and in uprightness, to do according to all that I have commanded thee, and wilt keep My statutes and My judgments, then I will establish the throne of thy kingdom upon Israel for ever, as I promised to David thy father, saying, *'There shall not fail thee a man upon the throne of Israel'*.

"BUT, if ye shall at all turn from following Me, ye or your children, and will not keep My commandments and My statutes which I have set before you, but go and serve other gods and worship them, then will I cut off Israel out of the land which I have given them. And this House, which I have hallowed for My Name, will I cast out of My sight. And Israel shall be a proverb and a byword among all people. And at this House, which is high, every one that passeth by it shall be astonished and shall <sup>1</sup>hiss; and they shall say, *'Why hath THE LORD done thus unto this land, and to this house?'* And they shall answer, *'Because they forsook THE LORD their God who brought forth their fathers out of the land of Egypt, and have taken hold upon other gods and have worshipped them and served them; therefore hath THE LORD brought upon them all this evil'*."

<sup>1</sup>give a scornful 'tisk-tisk' or whistle

And it came to pass at the end of twenty years, when Solomon had built the two houses - the House of THE LORD, and the king's house (now, Hiram the king of Tyre had furnished Solomon with cedar trees and fir trees, and with gold, according to all his desire) - that then King Solomon gave Hiram twenty cities in the land of Galilee. And Hiram came out from Tyre to see the cities which Solomon had given him; and they pleased him not. And he said, "What cities are these which thou hast given me, my brother?"

And he called them "The Land of <sup>1</sup>Cabul" unto this day. And Hiram sent to the king <sup>2</sup>sixscore talents of gold.

<sup>1</sup>sterility/limitations <sup>2</sup>120

And this is the reason of the levy which king Solomon raised: for to build the House of THE LORD, and his own house, and <sup>1</sup>Millo, and the wall of Jerusalem, and Hazor, and Megiddo, and Gezer (for Pharaoh king of Egypt had gone up and taken Gezer, and burnt it with fire, and slain the Canaanites that dwelt in the city, and given it for a present unto his daughter, Solomon's wife). And Solomon built Gezer, and Bethhoron the Nether, and Baalath, and Tadmor in the wilderness in the land, and all the cities of <sup>2</sup>store that Solomon had,

and cities for his chariots, and cities for his horsemen, and that which Solomon desired to build in Jerusalem, and in Lebanon, and in all the land of his dominion.

<sup>1</sup>a citadel/fort in Jerusalem <sup>2</sup>store houses/national reserves

And all the people that were left of the Amorites, Hittites, Perizzites, Hivites, and Jebusites, which were not of the Children of Israel, their children that were left after them in the land whom the Children of Israel also were not able utterly to destroy - upon those did Solomon levy a tribute of bondservice unto this day.

But of the Children of Israel did Solomon make no bondmen, but they were men of war, and his servants, and his princes, and his captains, and rulers of his chariots, and his horsemen. These were the chief of the officers that were over Solomon's work, five hundred and fifty, which bare rule over the people that wrought in the work.

But Pharaoh's daughter came up out of the City of David unto her house which Solomon had built for her; then did he build Millo.

And three times in a year did Solomon offer burnt offerings and peace offerings upon the Altar which he built unto THE LORD, and he burnt incense upon the Altar that was before THE LORD. So he finished the House.

And King Solomon made a navy of ships in Ezion-Geber, which is beside Eloth on the shore of the Red sea, in the land of Edom. And Hiram sent in the navy his servants, shipmen that had knowledge of the sea, with the servants of Solomon.

And they came to **Ophir**, and fetched from thence gold, four hundred and twenty talents, and brought it to King Solomon.

The location of **Ophir**, named for a son of Joktan, is unknown, but historians have speculated a variety of places, such as the now-ruined Great Zimbabwe; or Sofala Mozambique; or Peru; or Abhira Pakistan; or along the African shore of the Red Sea of the Afar people of Ethiopia, Eritrea, and Djibouti; or Poovar India; or Yemen; or Mahd adh Dhahab of Arabia, or Solomon Islands, or Brazil, or even Australia or the east coast of America. It has even been speculated that Ophir, of which all stories claim was filled with gold, could have been the lost Atlantis itself. Some references say that S'ofir is the Coptic name of India; but much evidence also points to the Philippines.

And when the queen of Sheba heard of the fame of Solomon concerning the name of THE LORD, she came to prove him with hard questions.

And she came to Jerusalem with a <sup>1</sup>very great train, with camels that bare spices, and very much gold, and precious stones. And when she was come to Solomon, she communed with him of all that was in her heart. And Solomon told her all her questions;

there was not any thing hid from the king which he told her not. <sup>1</sup>a mighty and wealthy caravan

And when the queen of Sheba had seen all Solomon's wisdom, and the house that he had built, and the meat of his table, and the sitting of his servants, and the attendance of his ministers, and their apparel, and his cupbearers, and his ascent by which he went up unto the House of THE LORD, <sup>1</sup>there was no more spirit in her. <sup>1</sup>she was breathless

And she said to the king, "It was a true report that I heard in mine own land of thy acts and of thy wisdom! Howbeit I believed not the words until I came and mine eyes had seen it! And, behold, *the half* was not told me! Thy wisdom and prosperity exceedeth the fame which I heard! Happy are thy men, happy are these thy servants, which stand continually before thee and that hear thy wisdom. Blessed be THE LORD thy God, which delighted in thee, to set thee on the throne of Israel! Because THE LORD loved Israel for ever, therefore made He thee king, to do judgment and justice!"

GOLD TALENT  
A royal Israeli gold **talent** is equal to 150 U.S. pounds.  
150 pounds x 120 talents of gold is 18,000 pounds  
(or 28,800 ounces) of gold equivalent to  
U.S. \$432,000,000 in May 2011.  
This was the gift of Sheba's queen to Solomon.

And she gave the king an hundred and twenty **talents** of gold, and of spices very great store, and precious

stones; there came no more such abundance of spices as these which the queen of Sheba gave to king Solomon.

And the navy also of Hiram, that brought gold from Ophir, brought in from Ophir great plenty of <sup>1</sup>almug trees, and precious stones. And the king made of the almug trees pillars for the House of THE LORD, and for the king's house, harps also and psalteries for singers; there came no such almug trees, nor were seen unto this day. *<sup>1</sup>possibly the rare Red Sandalwood, but officially unknown*

And King Solomon gave unto the queen of Sheba all her desire, whatsoever she asked, beside that which Solomon gave her of his royal bounty. So she turned and went to her own country, she and her servants.

Now, the weight of gold that came to Solomon in one year was <sup>1</sup>six hundred threescore and six talents of gold - beside that he had of the merchantmen, and of the traffic of the spice merchants, and of all the kings of Arabia, and of the governors of the country.

*<sup>1</sup>666 royal gold talents = 99,900 U.S. pounds (1,598,400 ounces) of gold, equivalent to U.S. \$2,397,600,000 in May 2011*

And King Solomon made two hundred <sup>1</sup>targets of beaten gold; six hundred shekels of gold went to one target. And he made three hundred shields of beaten gold; three pound of gold went to one shield. And the king put them in the house <sup>2</sup>of the forest of Lebanon. *<sup>1</sup>sharp studded large shields <sup>2</sup>made of/constructed from*

Moreover the king made a great throne of ivory, and overlaid it with the best gold. The throne had six steps, and the top of the throne was round behind; and there were <sup>1</sup>stays on either side on the place of the seat, and two lions stood beside the stays. And twelve lions stood there on the one side and on the other upon the six steps - there was not the like made in any kingdom. *<sup>1</sup>possibly arm rests*

And all King Solomon's drinking vessels were of gold, and all the vessels of the house of the forest of Lebanon were of pure gold. None were of silver; it was nothing accounted of in the days of Solomon. For the king had at sea a navy of Tharshish with the navy of Hiram. Once in three years came the navy of Tharshish, bringing gold, and silver, ivory, and apes, and peacocks.

So King Solomon exceeded all the kings of the earth for riches and for wisdom. And all the earth sought to Solomon to hear his wisdom which God had put in his heart. And they brought every man his present - vessels of silver, and vessels of gold, and garments, and armour, and spices, horses and mules, a rate year by year.

And Solomon gathered together chariots and horsemen; and he had a thousand and four hundred chariots, and twelve thousand horsemen, whom he bestowed in the cities for chariots and with the king at Jerusalem.

And the king made silver to be in Jerusalem <sup>1</sup>as stones, and cedars made he to be <sup>1</sup>as the sycamore trees that are in the <sup>1</sup>vale, for abundance. *<sup>1</sup>as common as/as many as <sup>2</sup>valley*

And Solomon had horses brought out of Egypt, and linen yarn. The king's merchants received the linen yarn at a price. And a chariot <sup>1</sup>came up and went out of Egypt for six hundred shekels of silver, and an horse for an hundred and fifty; and so for all the kings of the Hittites and for the kings of Syria did they bring them out by their means. *<sup>1</sup>sold for*

But King Solomon loved many strange women, together with the daughter of Pharaoh - women of the Moabites, Ammonites, Edomites, Zidonians, and Hittites - of the nations concerning which THE LORD said unto the Children of Israel, *'Ye shall not go in to them, neither shall they come in unto you; for surely they will turn away your heart after their gods'*. Solomon clave unto these in love. And he had seven hundred wives (princesses), and three hundred concubines; and his wives turned away his heart. For it came to pass,

when Solomon was old, that his wives turned away his heart after other gods; and his heart was not perfect with THE LORD his God as was the heart of David his father. For Solomon went after Ashtoreth the goddess of the Zidonians, and after <sup>1</sup>Milcom the abomination of the Ammonites.

*<sup>1</sup>the idol Moloch and sacrifices associated with him*

And Solomon did evil in the sight of THE LORD, and went not fully after THE LORD as did David his father.

Then did Solomon build an <sup>1</sup>high place for Chemosh (the abomination of Moab) in the hill that is before Jerusalem, and for Molech (the abomination of the children of Ammon). *<sup>1</sup>place of worship for the god Kamish*

And likewise did he for all his strange wives, which burnt incense and sacrificed unto their gods.

And THE LORD was angry with Solomon because his heart was turned from THE LORD God of Israel which had appeared unto him twice and had commanded Him concerning this thing, that he should not go after other gods. But he kept not that which THE LORD commanded.

Wherefore THE LORD said unto Solomon, "Forasmuch as this is done of thee and thou hast not kept My covenant and My statutes which I have commanded thee, I will surely rend the kingdom from thee and will give it to thy servant! Notwithstanding, in *thy* days I will not do it - for David thy father's sake. But I will rend it out of the hand of thy son. Howbeit I will not rend away *all* the kingdom, but will give one tribe to thy son for David My servant's sake and for Jerusalem's sake which I have chosen."

And THE LORD stirred up an adversary unto Solomon - Hadad the Edomite. He was of the king's seed in Edom. For it came to pass, when David was in Edom, and Joab the captain of the host was gone up to bury the slain after he had smitten every male in Edom (for six months did Joab remain there with all Israel, until he had cut off every male in Edom), that Hadad fled, he and certain Edomites of his father's servants with him, to go into Egypt; Hadad being yet a little child. And they arose out of Midian and came to Paran; and they took men with them out of Paran and they came to Egypt, unto Pharaoh king of Egypt, which gave him an house, and appointed him victuals, and gave him land. And Hadad found great favour in the sight of Pharaoh so that he gave him to wife the sister of his own wife, the sister of Tahpenes the queen. And the sister of Tahpenes bare him Genubath his son, whom Tahpenes weaned in Pharaoh's house; and Genubath was in Pharaoh's household among the sons of Pharaoh.

And when Hadad heard in Egypt that David slept with his fathers and that Joab the captain of the host was dead, Hadad said to Pharaoh, "Let me depart, that I may go to mine own country."

Then Pharaoh said unto him, "But what hast thou lacked with me that, behold, thou seekest to go to thine own country?"

And he answered, "Nothing. Howbeit let me go in <sup>1</sup>any wise."

*<sup>1</sup>anyhow/anyway*

And God stirred Him up another adversary - Rezon the son of Eliadah, which fled from his lord Hadadezer king of Zobah. And he gathered men unto him, and became captain over a band, when David slew them of Zobah. And they went to Damascus and dwelt therein and reigned in Damascus. And he was an adversary to Israel all the days of Solomon, beside the mischief that Hadad did. And he abhorred Israel, and reigned over Syria.

And Jeroboam (the son of Nebat, an Ephrathite of Zereda, Solomon's servant, whose mother's name was Zeruah, a widow woman), even he lifted up his hand against the king. And this was the cause that he lifted up his hand against the king: Solomon built Millo and repaired the breaches of the City of David his father. And the man Jeroboam was a mighty man of valour. And Solomon, seeing the young man that he was industrious, he made him ruler over all the charge of the House of Joseph. And it came to pass at that time,

THE DIVIDED MONARCHY OF  
AFTER THE DEATH OF SOLOMON

ISRAEL	JUDAH
Jeroboam	Rehoboam Abijam/Abijah Asa
Nadab Baashah Elah Zimri Omri Ahab & Jezebel	Jehoshaphat
Ahaziah Jehoram (Joram)	Jehoram
Jehu	Ahaziah Queen Athaliah Joash
Jehoahaz Jehoash	Amaziah
Jeroboam II	Uzziah
Zechariah Shallum Menahem Pekahiah Pekah	Jotham
Hoshea	Ahaz
FALL OF ISRAEL TO ASSYRIA	Hezekiah Manasseh Amon Josiah Jehoahaz Jehoiakim Jehoiachin Zedekiah
	FALL OF JUDAH TO BABYLON
Medo-Persian occupation Greco-Seleucid occupation Roman occupation Ottoman occupation Independent State of Israel	

when Jeroboam went out of Jerusalem, that the prophet Ahijah the Shilonite found him in the way; and he had clad himself with a new garment; and they two were alone in the field. And Ahijah caught the new garment that was on him, and rent it in twelve pieces.

And he said to Jeroboam, "Take thee ten pieces. For thus saith THE LORD the God of Israel, 'Behold, I will rend the kingdom out of the hand of Solomon, and will give ten tribes to thee (but he shall have one tribe for my servant David's sake, and for Jerusalem's sake, the city which I have chosen out of all the tribes of Israel), because that they have forsaken Me and have worshipped Ashtoreth the goddess of the Zidonians, Chemosh the god of the Moabites, and Milcom the god of the children of Ammon, and have not walked in My ways to do that which is right in Mine eyes, and to keep My statutes and My judgments, as did David his father. Howbeit I will not take the whole kingdom out of his hand, but I will make him prince all the days of his life for David My servant's sake, whom I chose because he kept My commandments and My statutes. But I will take the kingdom out of his son's hand and will give it unto thee, even ten tribes. And unto his son will I give one tribe, that David My servant may have a light alway before Me in Jerusalem, the city which I have chosen Me to put My name there. And I will take thee, and thou shalt reign according to all that thy soul desireth, and shalt be king over Israel. And it shall be, if thou wilt hearken unto all that I command thee and wilt walk in My ways and do that is right in My sight, to keep My statutes and My commandments, as David My servant did, that I will be with thee and build thee a sure House, as I built for David, and will give Israel unto thee. And I will for this afflict the seed of David, but not for ever'."

Solomon sought therefore to kill Jeroboam. And Jeroboam arose and fled into Egypt, unto <sup>1</sup>Shishak king of Egypt, and was in Egypt until the death of Solomon.

*<sup>1</sup>It has been long held that this was Pharaoh Sheshonq I/Shoshenk I; but modern theorists have speculated his identity to be as varied as Thutmose III, Ramesses II, and Ramesses III.*

And the rest of the acts of Solomon, and all that he did, and his wisdom, are they not written in the <sup>1</sup>book of the acts of Solomon? <sup>1</sup>NOTE: not part of the canon of Scripture

And the time that Solomon reigned in Jerusalem over all Israel was forty years. And Solomon slept with his fathers, and was buried in the City of David his father, and Rehoboam his son reigned in his stead.

And Rehoboam went to Shechem, for all Israel were come to Shechem to make him king. And it came to pass, when Jeroboam the son of Nebat, who was yet in Egypt, heard of it

(for he was fled from the presence of king Solomon, and Jeroboam dwelt in Egypt) that they sent and called him.

And Jeroboam and all the congregation of Israel came and spake unto Rehoboam, saying, "Thy father made our yoke grievous. Now therefore make thou the grievous service of thy father, and his heavy yoke which he put upon us, lighter, and we will serve thee."

And he said unto them, "Depart yet for three days, then come again to me." And the people departed.

And king Rehoboam consulted with the old men that stood before Solomon his father while he yet lived, and said, "How do ye advise that I may answer this people?"

And they spake unto him, saying, "If thou wilt be a servant unto this people this day, and wilt serve them, and answer them, and speak good words to them, then they will be thy servants for ever."

But he forsook the counsel of the old men which they had given him, and consulted with the young men that were grown up with him, and which stood before him.

And he said unto them, "What counsel give ye that we may answer this people who have spoken to me, saying, '*Make the yoke which thy father did put upon us lighter?*'"

And the young men that were grown up with him spake unto him, saying, "Thus shalt thou speak unto this people that spake unto thee, saying, '*Thy father made our yoke heavy, but make thou it lighter unto us*'; thus shalt thou say unto them, '*My little finger shall be thicker than my father's loins! And now whereas my father did lade you with a heavy yoke, I will add to your yoke; my father hath chastised you with whips, but I will chastise you with scorpions!*'"

*'midsection of the torso, from the bottom of the rib cage to the top of the hips*

So Jeroboam and all the people came to Rehoboam the third day, as the king had appointed, saying, "Come to me again the third day."

And the king answered the people roughly, and forsook the old men's counsel that they gave him; and spake to them after the counsel of the young men, saying, "My father made your yoke heavy, and I will add to your yoke! My father also chastised you with whips, but I will chastise you with scorpions."

Wherefore the king hearkened not unto the people; for the cause was from THE LORD, that He might perform His saying which THE LORD spake by Ahijah the Shilonite unto Jeroboam the son of Nebat.

So when all Israel saw that the king hearkened not unto them, the people answered the king, saying, "What portion have we in David?! Neither have we inheritance in the son of Jesse! To your tents, O Israel! Now see to thine *own* House, David!" So Israel departed unto their tents. But as for the Children of Israel which dwelt in the cities of Judah, Rehoboam reigned over them.

Then King Rehoboam sent Adoram, who was over the tribute; and all Israel stoned him with stones, that he died. Therefore King Rehoboam made speed to get him up to his chariot, to flee to Jerusalem. So Israel rebelled against the House of David unto this day.

And it came to pass, when all Israel heard that Jeroboam was come again, that they sent and called him unto the congregation, and made him king over all Israel. There was none that followed the House of David but the tribe of Judah only.

And when Rehoboam was come to Jerusalem, he assembled all the House of Judah with the tribe of Benjamin, an hundred and fourscore thousand chosen men which were warriors, to fight against the House of Israel, to bring the kingdom again to Rehoboam the son of Solomon.

But the Word of God came unto Shemaiah the man of God, saying, "Speak unto Rehoboam the son of Solomon, king of Judah, and unto all the House of Judah and Benjamin, and to the remnant of the people, saying, 'Thus saith THE LORD: Ye shall *not* go up, nor fight against your brethren the Children of Israel! Return every man to his house; for this thing is from Me!'"

They hearkened therefore to the Word of THE LORD and returned to depart according to the Word of THE LORD. Then Jeroboam built Shechem in Mount Ephraim and dwelt therein, and went out from thence and built Penuel.

And Jeroboam said in his heart, "Now shall the kingdom return to the House of David. If this people go up to do sacrifice in the House of THE LORD at Jerusalem, then shall the heart of this people turn again unto their lord, even unto Rehoboam king of Judah, and they shall kill me and go again to Rehoboam king of Judah."

Whereupon the king took counsel and made two <sup>1</sup>calves of gold and said unto them, "It is too much for you to go up to Jerusalem. Behold thy gods, O Israel, which brought thee up out of the land of Egypt!" <sup>'Apis</sup>

And he set the one in Bethel, and the other put he in Dan. And this thing became a sin, for the people went to worship before the one, even unto Dan.

And he made an house of high places, and made priests of the lowest of the people which were not of the sons of Levi.

And Jeroboam ordained a feast in the eighth month, on the fifteenth day of the month, like unto the feast that is in Judah, and he offered upon the altar. So did he in Bethel, sacrificing unto the calves that he had made; and he placed in Bethel the priests of the high places which he had made.

So he offered upon the altar which he had made in Bethel the fifteenth day of the eighth month, even in the month which he had devised of his own heart; and ordained a feast unto the Children of Israel. And he offered upon the altar, and burnt incense.

And, behold, there came a man of God out of Judah by the Word of THE LORD unto Bethel, and Jeroboam stood by the altar to burn incense. And he cried against the altar in the Word of THE LORD, and said, "O altar! Altar! Thus saith THE LORD: Behold, a child shall be born unto the House of David - Josiah by name - and upon thee shall he offer the priests of the high places that burn incense upon thee, and men's bones shall be burnt upon thee!"

And he gave a sign the same day, saying, "This is the sign which THE LORD hath spoken: Behold, the altar shall be rent, and the ashes that are upon it shall be poured out!"

And it came to pass, when King Jeroboam heard the saying of the man of God which had cried against the altar in Bethel, that he put forth his hand from the altar, saying, "Lay hold on him!"

And <sup>1</sup>his hand which he put forth against him dried up so that he could not pull it in again to him. The altar also was rent and the ashes poured out from the altar according to the sign which the man of God had given by the Word of THE LORD. <sup>'the hand of the king</sup>

And the king answered and said unto the man of God, "Entreat now the face of THE LORD thy God, and pray for me, that my hand may be restored me again!"

And the man of God besought THE LORD, and the king's hand was restored him again and became as it was before.

And the king said unto the man of God, "Come home with me, and refresh thyself, and I will give thee a reward."

And the man of God said unto the king, "If thou wilt give me half thine house I will not go in with thee! Neither will I eat bread nor drink water in this place! For so was it charged me by the Word of THE LORD, saying, '*Eat no bread, nor drink water, nor turn again by the same way that thou camest*'."

So he went another way and returned not by the way that he came to Bethel.

Now, there dwelt an old prophet in Bethel; and his sons came and told him all the works that the man of God had done that day in Bethel - the words which he had spoken unto the king, them they told also to their father.

And their father said unto them, "What way went he?" (for his sons had seen what way the man of God went, which came from Judah).

And he said unto his sons, "Saddle me the ass!"

So they saddled him the ass, and he rode thereon and went after the man of God, and found him sitting under an oak. And he said unto him, "Art thou the man of God that camest from Judah?"

And he said, "I am."

Then he said unto him, "Come home with me, and eat bread."

And he said, "I may not return with thee, nor go in with thee, neither will I eat bread nor drink water with thee in this place. For it was said to me by the Word of THE LORD, '*Thou shalt eat no bread nor drink water there, nor turn again to go by the way that thou camest*'."

He said unto him, "I am a prophet also as thou art. And an angel spake unto me by the Word of THE LORD, saying, '*Bring him back with thee into thine house, that he may eat bread and drink water*'." But he lied unto him.

So he went back with him, and did eat bread in his house, and drank water.

And it came to pass, as they sat at the table, that the Word of THE LORD came unto the prophet that brought him back. And he cried unto the man of God that came from Judah, saying, "Thus saith THE LORD: Forasmuch as thou hast disobeyed the mouth of THE LORD and hast not kept the commandment which THE LORD thy God commanded thee, but camest back and hast eaten bread and drunk water in the place of the which THE LORD did say to thee, '*Eat no bread, and drink no water*' - thy carcase shall not come unto the sepulchre of thy fathers!"

And it came to pass after he had eaten bread and after he had drunk, that he saddled for him the ass, to wit, for the prophet whom he had brought back. And when he was gone, a lion met him by the way and slew him, and his carcase was cast in the way; and the ass stood by it. The lion also stood by the carcase. And, behold, men passed by and saw the carcase cast in the way, and the lion standing by the carcase. And they came and told it in the city where the old prophet dwelt.

And when the prophet that brought him back from the way heard thereof, he said, "It is the man of God who was disobedient unto the Word of THE LORD; therefore THE LORD hath delivered him unto the lion which hath torn him and slain him according to the Word of THE LORD which He spake unto him."

And he spake to his sons, saying, "Saddle me the ass." And they saddled him.

And he went and found his carcase cast in the way, and the ass and the lion standing by the carcase. The lion had not eaten the carcase, nor torn the ass. And the prophet took up the carcase of the man of God and laid it upon the ass and brought it back; and the old prophet came to the city, to mourn and to bury him.

And he laid his carcase in his own grave; and they mourned over him, saying, "Alas, my brother!"

And it came to pass after he had buried him, that he spake to his sons, saying, "When I am dead, then bury me in the sepulchre wherein the man of God is buried. Lay my bones beside his bones. For the saying which he cried by the Word of THE LORD against the altar in Bethel and against all the houses of the high places which are in the cities of Samaria shall surely come to pass!"

After this thing Jeroboam returned not from his evil way, but made again, of the lowest of the people, priests of the high places. Whosoever would, he consecrated him, and he became one of the priests of the high places. And this thing became sin unto the House of Jeroboam, even to cut it off and to destroy it from off the face of the earth.

At that time Abijah the son of Jeroboam fell sick. And Jeroboam said to his wife, "Arise, I pray thee, and disguise thyself that thou be not known to be the wife of Jeroboam, and get thee to Shiloh. Behold, there is Ahijah the prophet which told me that I should be king over this people. And take with thee ten loaves, and cracknels, and a cruse of honey, and go to him. He shall tell thee what shall become of the child."

And Jeroboam's wife did so, and arose, and went to Shiloh, and came to the house of Ahijah. But Ahijah could not see; for his eyes were set by reason of his age.

And THE LORD said unto Ahijah, "Behold, the wife of Jeroboam cometh to ask a thing of thee for her son; for he is sick. *Thus and thus* shalt thou say unto her; for it shall be, when she cometh in, that she shall feign herself to be another woman."

And it was so, when Ahijah heard the sound of her feet as she came in at the door, that he said, "Come in, thou wife of Jeroboam; why feignest thou thyself to be another? For I am sent to thee with heavy tidings. Go, tell Jeroboam, 'Thus saith THE LORD God of Israel: Forasmuch as I exalted thee from among the people and made thee prince over My People Israel and rent the kingdom away from the House of David and gave it thee - and yet thou hast not been as My servant David who kept My commandments and who followed Me with all his heart, to do that only which was right in Mine eyes, but hast done evil above all that were before thee - for thou hast gone and made thee other gods and molten images to provoke Me to anger, and hast cast Me behind thy back! Therefore, behold, I will bring evil upon the House of Jeroboam and will cut off from Jeroboam him that pisseth against the wall and him that is shut up and left in Israel, and will take away the remnant of the House of Jeroboam as a man taketh away dung till it be all gone! Him that dieth of Jeroboam in the city shall the dogs eat, and him that dieth in the field shall the fowls of the air eat; for THE LORD hath spoken it! Arise thou therefore, get thee to thine own house; and when thy feet enter into the city the child shall die. And all Israel shall mourn for him and bury him; for he only of Jeroboam shall come to the grave, because in him there is found some good thing toward THE LORD God of Israel in the House of Jeroboam. Moreover THE LORD shall raise him up a king over Israel who shall cut off the House of Jeroboam that day - but what? Even now! For THE LORD shall smite Israel as a reed is shaken in the water, and He shall root up Israel out of this good land which he gave to their fathers, and shall scatter them beyond <sup>1</sup>The

River, because they have made their <sup>2</sup>groves, provoking THE LORD to anger. And He shall give Israel up because of the sins of Jeroboam who did sin and who made Israel to sin!"

*<sup>1</sup>possibly referring to Euphrates <sup>2</sup>places of idol worship*

And Jeroboam's wife arose and departed and came to Tirzah; and when she came to the threshold of the door the child died. And they buried him, and all Israel mourned for him according to the Word of THE LORD which He spake by the hand of His servant Ahijah the prophet.

And the rest of the acts of Jeroboam, how he warred and how he reigned, behold, they are written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel. And the days which Jeroboam reigned were two and twenty years, and he slept with his fathers. And Nadab his son reigned in his stead.

And Rehoboam the son of Solomon reigned in Judah. Rehoboam was forty and one years old when he began to reign, and he reigned seventeen years in Jerusalem, the city which THE LORD did choose out of all the tribes of Israel to put his name there. And his mother's name was Naamah, an Ammonitess.

And Judah did evil in the sight of THE LORD, and they provoked Him to jealousy with their sins which they had committed above all that their fathers had done. For they also built them high places and images and groves on every high hill and under every green tree. And there were also <sup>1</sup>sodomites in the land; and they did according to all the abominations of the nations which THE LORD cast out before the Children of Israel.

<sup>1</sup>קדשימי *Khadeshim – as defined by Strong's Exhaustive Concordance, "a (quasi) sacred person, i.e. (technically) a (male) devotee (by prostitution) to licentious idolatry". Khadeshim ("sodomites") were priestly male temple prostitutes who engaged in sexual religious rites with both females and males (whether married or unmarried) for pagan fertility gods/goddesses. Not associated with "homosexual" identity, Khadeshim ("Sodomites") were not personally concerned with the gender of the sexual partner because they believed that, in their idolatrous worship of fertility gods and goddesses, sexual energies bordered spirituality and could be offered as a type of sacrifice - one type from a female and another type from a male. This is still practiced in many branches of modern witchcraft.*

And it came to pass in the fifth year of King Rehoboam, that Shishak king of Egypt came up against Jerusalem. And he took away the treasures of the House of THE LORD and the treasures of the king's house - he even took away *all* - and he took away all the shields of gold which Solomon had made.

And King Rehoboam made in their stead brazen shields, and committed them unto the hands of the chief of the guard which kept the door of the king's house. And it was so, when the king went into the House of THE LORD, that the guard bare them and brought them back into the guard chamber.

Now the rest of the acts of Rehoboam, and all that he did, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah?

And there was war between Rehoboam and Jeroboam all their days. And Rehoboam slept with his fathers, and was buried with his fathers in the City of David. And his mother's name was Naamah, an Ammonitess. And <sup>1</sup>Abijam his son reigned in his stead.

*<sup>1</sup>Abijah*

Now, in the eighteenth year of King Jeroboam (the son of Nebat) reigned Abijam over Judah. Three years reigned he in Jerusalem. And his mother's name was Maachah, the daughter of Abishalom. And he walked in all the sins of his father which he had done before him, and his heart was not perfect with THE LORD his God, as the heart of David his father. Nevertheless, for David's sake did THE LORD his God give him a lamp in Jerusalem, to set up his son after him, and to establish Jerusalem, because David did that which was right in the eyes of THE LORD and turned not aside from any thing that He commanded him all the days of his life (save only in the matter of Uriah the Hittite).

And there was war between Rehoboam and Jeroboam all the days of his life. Now the rest of the acts of Abijam, and all that he did, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah? And

there was war between Abijam and Jeroboam. And Abijam slept with his fathers; and they buried him in the City of David. And Asa his son reigned in his stead.

And in the twentieth year of Jeroboam king of Israel reigned Asa over Judah. And forty and one years reigned he in Jerusalem. And his mother's name was Maachah, the daughter of Abishalom. And Asa did that which was *right* in the eyes of THE LORD, as did David his father.

And he took away the <sup>1</sup>sodomites out of the land and removed all the idols that his fathers had made. And also Maachah his mother - even *her* he removed from being queen, because she had made an idol in a grove; and Asa destroyed her idol and burnt it by the brook Kidron. But the <sup>2</sup>high places were not removed; nevertheless Asa's heart was perfect with THE LORD all his days.

<sup>1</sup>קדשימו *Khadeshim* – see note on page 399. <sup>2</sup>idol shrines

And he brought in the things which his father had dedicated, and the things which himself had dedicated, into the House of THE LORD, silver and gold and vessels.

And there was war between Asa and Baasha king of Israel all their days. And Baasha king of Israel went up against Judah, and built Ramah, that he might not suffer any to go out or come in to Asa king of Judah.

Then Asa took all the silver and the gold that were left in the treasures of the House of THE LORD and the treasures of the king's house, and delivered them into the hand of his servants. And King Asa sent them to Benhadad (the son of Tabrimon, the son of Hezion) king of Syria that dwelt at Damascus, saying, "There is a <sup>1</sup>league between me and thee, and between my father and thy father. Behold, I have sent unto thee a present of silver and gold; come and break thy league with Baasha king of Israel, that he may depart from me."

<sup>1</sup>treaty

So Benhadad hearkened unto King Asa and sent the captains of the hosts which he had against the cities of Israel, and smote Ijon, and Dan, and Abel-bethMaachah, and all Cinneroth, with all the land of Naphtali.

And it came to pass, when Baasha heard thereof, that he left off building of Ramah and dwelt in Tirzah.

Then King Asa made a proclamation throughout all Judah. None was exempted. And they took away the stones of Ramah, and the timber thereof wherewith Baasha had builded; and King Asa built with them Geba of Benjamin, and Mizpah.

The rest of all the acts of Asa, and all his might and all that he did and the cities which he built, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah? Nevertheless in the time of his old age he was <sup>1</sup>diseased in his feet. And Asa slept with his fathers, and was buried with his fathers in the City of David his father. And Jehoshaphat his son reigned in his stead.

<sup>1</sup>probably the gout

And Nadab the son of Jeroboam began to reign over Israel in the second year of Asa king of Judah, and reigned over Israel two years. And he did evil in the sight of THE LORD and walked in the way of his father and in his sin wherewith he made Israel to sin.

And Baasha the son of Ahijah, of the House of Issachar, conspired against him; and Baasha smote him at Gibbethon which belonged to the Philistines; for Nadab and all Israel laid siege to Gibbethon. Even in the third year of Asa king of Judah did Baasha slay him, and reigned in his stead.

And it came to pass, when he reigned, that he smote all the House of Jeroboam. He left not to Jeroboam any that breathed until he had destroyed him according unto the saying of THE LORD which He spake by His servant Ahijah the Shilonite, because of the sins of Jeroboam which he sinned and which he made Israel sin by his provocation wherewith he provoked THE LORD God of Israel to anger.

Now the rest of the acts of Nadab, and all that he did, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel? And there was war between Asa and Baasha king of Israel all their days.

In the third year of Asa king of Judah began Baasha the son of Ahijah to reign over all Israel in Tirzah, twenty and four years. And he did evil in the sight of THE LORD and walked in the way of Jeroboam and in his sin wherewith he made Israel to sin.

Then the Word of THE LORD came to Jehu the son of Hanani against Baasha, saying, "Forasmuch as I exalted thee out of the dust and made thee prince over My People Israel, and thou hast walked in the way of Jeroboam and hast made My People Israel to sin to provoke Me to anger with their sins, behold, I will take away the posterity of Baasha and the posterity of his House, and will make thy House like the House of Jeroboam the son of Nebat. Him that dieth of Baasha in the city shall the dogs eat, and him that dieth of his in the fields shall the fowls of the air eat!"

Now the rest of the acts of Baasha, and what he did and his might, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel? So Baasha slept with his fathers and was buried in Tirzah. And Elah his son reigned in his stead.

And also by the hand of the prophet Jehu the son of Hanani came the Word of THE LORD against Baasha and against his House, even for all the evil that he did in the sight of THE LORD in provoking Him to anger with the work of his hands, in being like the House of Jeroboam, and because he killed him.

In the twenty and sixth year of Asa king of Judah began Elah the son of Baasha to reign over Israel in Tirzah, two years. And his servant Zimri, captain of half his chariots, conspired against him as he was in Tirzah, drinking himself drunk in the house of Arza (steward of his house in Tirzah). And Zimri went in and smote him, and killed him, in the twenty and seventh year of Asa king of Judah, and reigned in his stead.

And it came to pass when he began to reign - as soon as he sat on his throne - that he slew all the House of Baasha. He left him not one that pisseth against a wall, neither of his kinsfolks, nor of his friends.

Thus did Zimri destroy all the House of Baasha according to the Word of THE LORD which He spake against Baasha by Jehu the prophet - for all the sins of Baasha and the sins of Elah his son by which they sinned, and by which they made Israel to sin, in provoking THE LORD God of Israel to anger with their vanities.

Now the rest of the acts of Elah, and all that he did, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel?

In the twenty and seventh year of Asa king of Judah did Zimri reign seven days in Tirzah. And the people were encamped against Gibbethon, which belonged to the Philistines. And the people that were encamped heard say, "Zimri hath conspired, and hath also slain the king"; wherefore all Israel made Omri, the captain of the host, king over Israel that day in the camp.

And Omri went up from Gibbethon, and all Israel with him, and they besieged Tirzah. And it came to pass, when Zimri saw that the city was taken, that he went into the palace of the king's house and burnt the king's house over him with fire and died for his sins which he sinned in doing evil in the sight of THE LORD in walking in the way of Jeroboam, and in his sin which he did to make Israel to sin.

Now the rest of the acts of Zimri, and his treason that he wrought, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel?

Then were the people of Israel divided into two parts - half of the people followed Tibni the son of Ginath to make him king, and half followed Omri. But the people that followed Omri prevailed against the people that followed Tibni the son of Ginath. So Tibni died, and Omri reigned.

In the thirty and first year of Asa king of Judah began Omri to reign over Israel, twelve years. Six years reigned he in Tirzah. And he bought the hill *Samaria* of Shemer for two talents of silver, and built on the hill, and called the name of the city which he built after the name of Shemer, owner of the hill: *Samaria*.

But Omri wrought evil in the eyes of THE LORD and did worse than all that were before him. For he walked in all the way of Jeroboam the son of Nebat and in his sin wherewith he made Israel to sin to provoke THE LORD God of Israel to anger with their vanities.

Now the rest of the acts of Omri which he did, and his might that he showed, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel? So Omri slept with his fathers, and was buried in Samaria. And Ahab his son reigned in his stead.

And in the thirty and eighth year of Asa king of Judah began Ahab the son of Omri to reign over Israel; and Ahab the son of Omri reigned over Israel in Samaria twenty and two years. And Ahab the son of Omri did evil in the sight of THE LORD above all that were before him.

And it came to pass (as if it had been a light thing for him to walk in the sins of Jeroboam the son of Nebat) that he took to wife Jezebel, the daughter of Ethbaal king of the Zidonians, and went and served Baal and worshipped him. And he reared up an altar for Baal in the house of Baal which he had built in Samaria. And Ahab made a grove; and Ahab did more to provoke THE LORD God of Israel to anger than all the kings of Israel that were before him.

In his days did Hiel the Bethelite build Jericho. He laid the foundation thereof <sup>1</sup>in Abiram his firstborn, and set up the gates thereof <sup>1</sup>in his youngest son Segub, according to the Word of THE LORD which he spake by Joshua the son of Nun. *<sup>1</sup>resulting in the death of*

And Elijah the Tishbite (who was of the inhabitants of Gilead) said unto Ahab, "As THE LORD God of Israel liveth, before whom I stand, there shall not be dew nor rain these years but according to my word!"

And the Word of THE LORD came unto him, saying, "Get thee hence, and turn thee eastward, and hide thyself by the brook Cherith that is before Jordan. And it shall be that thou shalt drink of the brook; and I have commanded the ravens to feed thee there."

So he went and did according unto the Word of THE LORD; for he went and dwelt by the brook Cherith that is before Jordan. And the ravens brought him bread and <sup>1</sup>flesh in the morning, and bread and <sup>1</sup>flesh in the evening; and he drank of the brook. *<sup>1</sup>meat*

And it came to pass after a while that the brook dried up because there had been no rain in the land. And the Word of THE LORD came unto him, saying, "Arise, get thee to Zarephath <sup>1</sup>which belongeth to Zidon and dwell there. Behold, I have commanded a widow woman there to sustain thee." *<sup>1</sup>a part of/a city of*

So he arose and went to Zarephath. And when he came to the gate of the city, behold, the widow woman was there gathering of sticks. And he called to her and said, "Fetch me, I pray thee, a little water in a vessel, that I may drink."

And as she was going to fetch it, he called to her and said, "Bring me, I pray thee, a morsel of bread in thine hand."

And she said, "As THE LORD thy God liveth, I have not a cake, but an handful of meal in a barrel, and a little oil in a cruse; and, behold, I am gathering two sticks that I may go in and <sup>1</sup>dress it for me and my son, that we may eat it and <sup>2</sup>die." *<sup>1</sup>prepare it <sup>2</sup>then starve to death*

And Elijah said unto her, "Fear not. Go and do as thou hast said - but make me thereof a little cake first and bring it unto me; and after, make for thee and for thy son. For thus saith THE LORD God of Israel: The barrel of meal shall not waste, neither shall the cruse of oil fail, until the day that THE LORD sendeth rain upon the earth."

And she went and did according to the saying of Elijah; and she and he and her <sup>1</sup>house did eat many days. *<sup>1</sup>household*

And the barrel of meal wasted not, neither did the cruse of oil fail, according to the Word of THE LORD which He spake by Elijah.

And it came to pass after these things that the son of the woman, the mistress of the house, fell sick; and his sickness was so sore that there was no breath left in him.

And she said unto Elijah, "What have I to do with thee, O thou man of God? Art thou come unto me to call my sin to remembrance and to slay my son?"

And he said unto her, "Give me thy son."

And he took him out of her bosom and carried him up into a loft where he abode and laid him upon his own bed. And he cried unto THE LORD and said, "O LORD my God, hast Thou also brought evil upon the widow with whom I sojourn, by slaying her son?"

And he stretched himself upon the child three times and cried unto THE LORD, and said, "O LORD my God, I pray thee, let this child's <sup>1</sup>soul come into him again!" *<sup>1</sup>life*

And THE LORD heard the voice of Elijah; and the soul of the child came into him again, and he revived. And Elijah took the child and brought him down out of the chamber into the house, and delivered him unto his mother. And Elijah said, "See, thy son liveth."

And the woman said to Elijah, "Now by this I know that thou art a man of God, and that the Word of THE LORD in thy mouth is Truth!"

And it came to pass after many days that the Word of THE LORD came to Elijah in the third year, saying, "Go, show thyself unto Ahab and I will send rain upon the earth."

And Elijah went to show himself unto Ahab. And there was a sore famine in Samaria. And Ahab called Obadiah, which was the governor of his house. (Now Obadiah feared THE LORD greatly; for it was so, when Jezebel cut off the prophets of THE LORD, that Obadiah took an hundred prophets and hid them <sup>1</sup>by fifty in a cave, and fed them with bread and water). *<sup>1</sup>in groups of fifty*

And Ahab said unto Obadiah, "Go into the land, unto all fountains of water, and unto all brooks. <sup>1</sup>Peradventure we may find grass to save the horses and mules alive, that we lose not all the beasts." *<sup>1</sup>for perhaps*

So they divided the land between them to pass throughout it. Ahab went one way by himself, and Obadiah went another way by himself.

And as Obadiah was <sup>1</sup>in the way, behold, Elijah met him; and he knew him, and fell on his face, and said, "Art thou <sup>2</sup>that my lord Elijah? *<sup>1</sup>on the way/en route <sup>2</sup>are you he/are you that very same [person]*

And he answered him, "I am. Go, tell thy lord, 'Behold, Elijah is here!'"

And he said, "What have I sinned that thou wouldest deliver thy servant into the hand of Ahab to slay me?! As THE LORD thy God liveth, there is no nation or kingdom whither my lord hath not sent to seek thee - and when they said, '*He is not there*', he <sup>1</sup>took an oath of the kingdom and nation that they found thee not. And now thou sayest, '*Go tell thy lord, Behold, Elijah is here!*'? And it shall come to pass, as soon as I am gone from thee, that the Spirit of THE LORD shall carry thee whither I know not; and so when I come and tell Ahab and he cannot find thee, he shall slay me! But, I thy servant fear THE LORD from my youth. Was it not told my lord what I did when Jezebel slew the prophets of THE LORD, how I hid an hundred men of THE LORD's prophets by fifty in a cave, and fed them with bread and water? And now thou sayest, '*Go tell thy lord, Behold, Elijah is here!*'! And he shall slay me!" *<sup>1</sup>required them to swear/give their word/give their oath*

And Elijah said, "As THE LORD of Hosts liveth (before whom I stand), I will surely show myself unto him to day!"

So Obadiah went to meet Ahab and told him, and Ahab went to meet Elijah. And it came to pass, when Ahab saw Elijah, that Ahab said unto him, "Art thou he that troubleth Israel?!"

And he answered, "*I* have not troubled Israel - but *thou* and thy father's House, in that ye have forsaken the commandments of THE LORD, and thou hast followed Baalim! Now therefore send and gather to me all Israel unto Mount Carmel, and the prophets of Baal four hundred and fifty, and the prophets of the groves four hundred, which eat at Jezebel's table!"

So Ahab sent unto all the Children of Israel, and gathered the prophets together unto Mount Carmel.

And Elijah came unto all the people and said, "How long <sup>1</sup>halt ye between two opinions? If THE LORD be God, follow Him! But if Baal, then follow him!" *<sup>1</sup>dance or hop [around the issue]*

And the people answered him not a word. Then said Elijah unto the people, "I, even I only, remain a prophet of THE LORD; but Baal's prophets are four hundred and fifty men. Let them, therefore, give us two bullocks; and let them choose one bullock for themselves, and cut it in pieces, and lay it on wood, and put no fire under. And I will dress the other bullock, and lay it on wood, and put no fire under. And call ye on the name of your gods, and I will call on the name of THE LORD - and the God that answereth by fire, let him be God!"

And all the people answered and said, "It is well spoken."

And Elijah said unto the prophets of Baal, "Choose you one bullock for yourselves and dress it first, for ye are many; and call on the name of your gods, but put no fire under."

And they took the bullock which was given them, and they dressed it, and called on the name of Baal from morning even until noon, saying, "O Baal, hear us!" But there was no voice, nor any that answered. And they leaped upon the altar which was made.

And it came to pass at noon that Elijah mocked them, and said, "Cry <sup>1</sup>aloud! For he is a god; either he is talking, or he is pursuing, or he is in a journey, or peradventure he sleepeth and must be awaked!" *<sup>1</sup>louder*

And they cried aloud, and cut themselves after their manner with knives and lancets till the blood gushed out upon them. And it came to pass, when midday was past, and they prophesied until the time of the offering of the evening sacrifice, that there was neither voice, nor any to answer, nor any that regarded.

And Elijah said unto all the people, "Come near unto me."

And all the people came near unto him. And he repaired the Altar of THE LORD that was broken down. And Elijah took twelve stones according to the number of the tribes of the sons of Jacob unto whom the Word of THE LORD came, saying, *'Israel shall be thy name'*. And with the stones he built an altar in the name of THE LORD; and he made a trench about the altar, as great as would contain <sup>1</sup>two measures of seed.

*<sup>1</sup>13.04 bushels/70.48 liters*

And he put the wood in order, and cut the bullock in pieces and laid him on the wood, and said, "Fill four barrels with water, and pour it on the burnt sacrifice and on the wood!"

And he said, "Do it the second time!" And they did it the second time.

And he said, "Do it the third time!" And they did it the third time.

And the water ran round about the altar; and he filled the trench also with water. And it came to pass at the time of the offering of the evening sacrifice that Elijah the prophet came near and said, "LORD God of Abraham, Isaac, and of Israel, let it be known this day that THOU art God in Israel, and that I am Thy servant, and that I have done all these things at Thy Word. Hear me, O LORD, hear me, that this people may know that Thou art THE LORD God, and that Thou hast turned their heart back again!"

Then the fire of THE LORD fell and consumed the burnt sacrifice and the wood and the stones and the dust and licked up the water that was in the trench.

And when all the people saw it, they fell on their faces; and they said, "'THE LORD, He is the God! <sup>1</sup>THE LORD, He is the God!"

*<sup>1</sup>Jehovah/Yahweh*

And Elijah said unto them, "'Take the prophets of Baal! Let not one of them escape!"

*'arrest*

And they took them; and Elijah brought them down to the brook Kishon and slew them there.

And Elijah said unto Ahab, "Get thee up. Eat and drink; for there is a sound of abundance of rain."

So Ahab went up to eat and to drink. And Elijah went up to the top of Carmel; and he cast himself down upon the earth, and put his face between his knees, and said to his servant, "Go up now, look toward the sea."

And he went up and looked, and said, "There is nothing."

And he said, "Go again," seven times.

And it came to pass at the seventh time that he said, "Behold, there ariseth a little cloud out of the sea - like a man's hand!"

And he said, "Go up; say unto Ahab, 'Prepare thy chariot and get thee down, that the rain stop thee not.'"

And it came to pass in the mean while that the heaven was black with clouds and wind, and there was a great rain. And Ahab rode, and went to Jezreel.

And the hand of THE LORD was on Elijah; and he girded up his loins and ran before Ahab to the entrance of Jezreel.

And Ahab told Jezebel all that Elijah had done and withal how he had slain all the prophets with the sword.

Then Jezebel sent a messenger unto Elijah, saying, "So let the gods do to me (and more also!) if I make not thy life as the life of one of <sup>1</sup>them by to morrow about this time!" <sup>1</sup>*the dead prophets of Baal*

And when he saw that, he arose and <sup>1</sup>went for his life, and came to Beersheba which belongeth to Judah, and left his servant there. <sup>1</sup>*ran/escaped*

But he himself went a day's journey into the wilderness, and came and sat down under a juniper tree. And he requested for himself that he might die and said, "It is enough; now, O LORD, take away my life; for I am not better than my fathers!"

And as he lay and slept under a juniper tree, behold, then an angel touched him and said unto him, "Arise and eat!"

And he looked and, behold, there was a cake baken on the coals, and a cruse of water at his head. And he did eat and drink, and laid him down again. And the angel of THE LORD came again the second time and touched him and said, "Arise and eat, because the journey is too great for thee."

And he arose and did eat and drink, and went in the strength of that meat forty days and forty nights unto <sup>1</sup>Horeb, the Mount of God. <sup>1</sup>*Mount Sinai*

And he came thither unto a cave and lodged there; and, behold, the Word of THE LORD came to him, and He said unto him, "What doest thou here, Elijah?"

And he said, "I have been very jealous for THE LORD God of Hosts; for the Children of Israel have forsaken Thy covenant, thrown down Thine altars, and slain Thy prophets with the sword. And I, even I only, am left; and they seek my life to take it away."

And He said, "Go forth and stand upon the Mount before THE LORD."

And, behold, THE LORD passed by. And a great and strong wind rent the mountains and brake in pieces the rocks before THE LORD; but THE LORD was not in the wind. And after the wind an earthquake; but THE LORD was not in the earthquake. And after the earthquake a fire; but THE LORD was not in the fire

And after the fire, a still small Voice.

And it was so, when Elijah heard it, that he wrapped his face in his mantle and went out and stood in the <sup>1</sup>entering in of the cave. <sup>1</sup>*entrance*

And, behold, there came a Voice unto him, and said, "What doest thou here, Elijah?"

And he said, "I have been very jealous for THE LORD God of hosts because the Children of Israel have forsaken Thy covenant, thrown down Thine altars, and slain Thy prophets with the sword; and I, even I only, am left. And they seek my life to take it away."

And THE LORD said unto him, "Go. Return on thy way to the wilderness of Damascus. And when thou comest, anoint Hazael to be king over Syria. And Jehu the son of Nimshi shalt thou anoint to be king over

Israel. And Elisha the son of Shaphat of Abelmeholah shalt thou anoint to be prophet <sup>1</sup>in thy room. And it shall come to pass that him that escapeth the sword of Hazael shall Jehu slay, and him that escapeth from the sword of Jehu shall Elisha slay! Yet, I have left Me seven thousand in Israel, all the knees which have not bowed unto Baal, and every mouth which hath not kissed him.” *<sup>1</sup>to take your place*

So he departed thence and found Elisha the son of Shaphat who was plowing with twelve yoke of oxen before him, and he with the twelfth. And Elijah passed by him and cast his mantle upon him. And he left the oxen and ran after Elijah and said, “Let me, I pray thee, <sup>1</sup>kiss my father and my mother, and then I will follow thee.” *<sup>1</sup>kiss goodbye/say farewell*

And he said unto him, “Go back again; for what have I done to thee?”

And he returned back from him, and took a yoke of oxen, and slew them, and boiled their flesh with the instruments of the oxen, and gave unto the people, and they did eat. Then he arose, and went after Elijah, and ministered unto him.

And Benhadad the king of Syria gathered all his host together; and there were thirty and two kings with him, and horses, and chariots. And he went up and besieged Samaria, and warred against it. And he sent messengers to Ahab king of Israel into the city, and said unto him, “Thus saith Benhadad: Thy silver and thy gold is mine! Thy wives also and thy children, even the goodliest, are mine!”

And the king of Israel answered and said, “My lord O king, according to thy saying, I am thine, and all that I have.”

And the messengers came again and said, “Thus speaketh Benhadad, saying: Although I have sent unto thee, saying, *‘Thou shalt deliver me thy silver, and thy gold, and thy wives, and thy children’*; yet I will send my servants unto thee to morrow about this time, and they shall search thine house and the houses of thy servants; and it shall be, that whatsoever is pleasant in thine eyes, they shall put it in their hand and take it away.”

Then the king of Israel called all the elders of the land and said, “Mark, I pray you, and see how this man seeketh mischief; for he sent unto me for my wives, and for my children, and for my silver, and for my gold, and I denied him not.”

And all the elders and all the people said unto him, “Hearken not unto him, nor consent!”

Wherefore he said unto the messengers of Benhadad, “Tell my lord the king: All that thou didst send for to thy servant <sup>1</sup>at the first I will do - but <sup>2</sup>this thing I may *not* do.” *<sup>1</sup>the first time <sup>2</sup>this second demand I will not obey*

And the messengers departed, and brought him word again. And Benhadad sent unto him, and said, “The gods do so unto me (and more also!) if the dust of Samaria shall suffice for handfuls for all the people that follow me!”

And the king of Israel answered and said, “Tell him: Let not him <sup>1</sup>that girdeth on his harness boast himself as he <sup>2</sup>that putteth it off!” *<sup>1</sup>that goes to war <sup>2</sup>that comes back victorious*

And it came to pass, when Benhadad heard this message as he was drinking (he, and the kings in the pavilions), that he said unto his servants, “<sup>1</sup>Set yourselves in array!” *<sup>1</sup>Prepare for battle!*

And they set themselves in array against the city. And, behold, there came a prophet unto Ahab king of Israel, saying, “Thus saith THE LORD: Hast thou seen all this great multitude? Behold, I will deliver it into thine hand this day; and thou shalt *know* that I am THE LORD!”

And Ahab said, "By whom?"

<sup>1</sup>*with what army will you do this?*

And he said, "Thus saith THE LORD: Even by the young men of the princes of the provinces."

Then he said, "Who shall order the battle?"

And he answered, "Thou!"

Then he numbered the young men of the princes of the provinces, and they were two hundred and thirty two; and after them he numbered all the people, even all the Children of Israel, being seven thousand. And they went out at noon.

But Benhadad was drinking himself drunk in the pavilions, he and the kings (the thirty and two kings that helped him).

And the young men of the princes of the provinces went out first; and Benhadad sent out, and they told him, saying, "There are men come out of Samaria!"

And he said, "Whether they be come out for peace, take them alive; or whether they be come out for war, take them alive."

So these young men of the princes of the provinces came out of the city, and the army which followed them. And they slew every one his man, and the Syrians fled; and Israel pursued them, and Benhadad the king of Syria escaped on an horse with the horsemen.

And the king of Israel went out and smote the horses and chariots, and slew the Syrians with a great slaughter.

And the prophet came to the king of Israel and said unto him, "Go! Strengthen thyself, and mark, and see what thou doest; for, at the return of the year the king of Syria will come up against thee!"

And the servants of the king of Syria said unto him, "Their gods are gods of the hills; therefore they were stronger than we. But let us fight against them in the plain, and surely we shall be stronger than they! And do this thing: Take the kings away, every man out of his place, and put captains in their <sup>1</sup>rooms. And number thee an army, like the army that thou hast lost, horse for horse, and chariot for chariot; and we will fight against them in the plain, and surely we shall be stronger than they!" <sup>1</sup>*places*

And he hearkened unto their voice and did so. And it came to pass at the return of the year that Benhadad numbered the Syrians, and went up to Aphek to fight against Israel.

And the Children of Israel were numbered and were all present and went against them; and the Children of Israel pitched before them, like two little flocks of <sup>1</sup>kids; but the Syrians filled the country.

<sup>1</sup>*young goats or lambs*

And there came a man of God and spake unto the king of Israel and said, "Thus saith THE LORD: Because the Syrians have said, '*THE LORD is God of the hills, but He is not God of the valleys*', therefore will I deliver all this great multitude into thine hand, and ye shall know that I am THE LORD!"

And they pitched <sup>1</sup>one over against the other seven days. And so it was that in the Seventh Day the battle was joined; and the Children of Israel slew of the Syrians an hundred thousand footmen in one day. But the

rest fled to Aphek, into the city; and there a wall fell upon twenty and seven thousand of the men that were left.

*<sup>1</sup>the Syrian camp crossed the way from the camp of Israel for seven days*

And Benhadad fled and came into the city, into an inner chamber. And his servants said unto him, "Behold now, we have heard that the kings of the House of Israel are merciful kings. Let us, I pray thee, put sackcloth on our loins, and ropes upon our heads, and go out to the king of Israel; <sup>1</sup>peradventure he will <sup>2</sup>save thy life!"

*<sup>1</sup>perhaps <sup>2</sup>spare*

So they girded sackcloth on their loins, and put ropes on their heads, and came to the king of Israel and said, "Thy servant Benhadad saith, '*I pray thee, let me live!*'"

And he said, "Is he yet alive? <sup>1</sup>He is my 'brother'!"

*<sup>1</sup>I consider him to be*

Now the men did diligently observe whether <sup>1</sup>any thing would come from him, and did hastily <sup>2</sup>catch it. And they said, "<sup>3</sup>Thy brother... Benhadad."

*<sup>1</sup>he would say something like this (which they could use to their advantage) <sup>2</sup>play along with it <sup>3</sup>in other words, Um, ya... your 'brother'*

Then <sup>1</sup>he said, "Go ye, bring him!"

*<sup>1</sup>Ahab*

Then Benhadad came forth to him; and <sup>1</sup>he caused him to come up into the chariot. And Benhadad said unto him, "The cities, which my father took from thy father, I will restore; and thou shalt make streets for thee in Damascus, as my father made in Samaria."

*<sup>1</sup>Ahab*

Then said Ahab, "I will send thee away with this covenant."

So he made a covenant with him and sent him away. And a certain man of the sons of the prophets said unto his neighbour in the Word of THE LORD, "<sup>1</sup>Smite me, I pray thee!"

*<sup>1</sup>strike/punch/slap*

And the man refused to smite him.

Then said he unto him, "Because thou hast not obeyed the Voice of THE LORD, behold, as soon as thou art departed from me, a lion shall slay thee!"

And as soon as he was departed from him, a lion found him, and slew him.

Then he found another man, and said, "Smite me, I pray thee!"

And the man smote him, so that in smiting he wounded him. So the prophet departed, and waited for the king by the way, and disguised himself with ashes upon his face.

And as the king passed by, he cried unto the king, and he said, "Thy servant went out into the midst of the battle; and, behold, a man turned aside, and brought a man unto me, and said, '*Keep this man! If by any means he be missing, then shall thy life be for his life, or else thou shalt pay a talent of silver!*' And as thy servant was busy here and there, he was gone!"

And the king of Israel said unto him, "<sup>1</sup>So shall thy judgment be; thyself hast decided it."

*<sup>1</sup>suffer the consequences that you agreed to*

And he hasted and took the ashes away from his face; and the king of Israel discerned him that he was of the prophets.

And he said unto him, "Thus saith THE LORD: Because thou hast let go out of thy hand a man whom I appointed to utter destruction, therefore thy life <sup>1</sup>shall go for *his* life, and thy people for *his* people!" And the king of Israel went to his house heavy and displeased, and came to Samaria. *<sup>1</sup>shall be taken instead of*

And it came to pass after these things that Naboth the Jezreelite had a vineyard which was in Jezreel, <sup>1</sup>hard by the palace of Ahab king of Samaria. *<sup>1</sup>next to/very near/right up against*

And Ahab spake unto Naboth, saying, "Give me thy vineyard, that I may have it for a garden of herbs, because it is near unto my house. And I will give thee for it a better vineyard than it; or, if it seem good to thee, I will give thee the worth of it in money."

And Naboth said to Ahab, "THE LORD forbid it me that I should give the inheritance of my fathers unto thee!"

And Ahab came into his house heavy and displeased because of the word which Naboth the Jezreelite had spoken to him, for he had said, '*I will not give thee the inheritance of my fathers.*' And he laid him down upon his bed, and <sup>1</sup>turned away his face, and would eat no bread. *<sup>1</sup>moping*

But Jezebel his wife came to him, and said unto him, "Why is thy spirit so sad that thou eatest no bread?"

And he said unto her, "Because I spake unto Naboth the Jezreelite, and said unto him, '*Give me thy vineyard for money; or else, if it please thee, I will give thee another vineyard for it.*' And he answered, '*I will not give thee my vineyard.*'"

And Jezebel his wife said unto him, "Dost thou now govern the kingdom of Israel?! Arise and eat bread, and let thine heart be merry. *I will give thee the vineyard of Naboth the Jezreelite!*"

So she wrote letters in Ahab's name, and sealed them with his seal, and sent the letters unto the elders and to the nobles that were in his city dwelling with Naboth. And she wrote in the letters, saying, "Proclaim a fast, and set Naboth on high among the people. And set two men, sons of Belial, before him to bear witness against him saying, '*Thou didst blaspheme God and the king!*' And then carry him out and stone him, that he may die."

And the men of his city, even the elders and the nobles who were the inhabitants in his city, did as Jezebel had sent unto them and as it was written in the letters which she had sent unto them. They proclaimed a fast and set Naboth on high among the people. And there came in two men, children of Belial, and sat before him; and the men of Belial witnessed against him, even against Naboth, in the presence of the people, saying, "Naboth did blaspheme God and the king!" Then they carried him forth out of the city and stoned him with stones that he died.

Then they sent to Jezebel, saying, "Naboth is stoned and is dead."

And it came to pass, when Jezebel heard that Naboth was stoned and was dead, that Jezebel said to Ahab, "Arise! Take possession of the vineyard of Naboth the Jezreelite which he refused to give thee for money; for Naboth is not alive, but dead!"

And it came to pass, when Ahab heard that Naboth was dead, that Ahab rose up to go down to the vineyard of Naboth the Jezreelite, to take possession of it.

And the Word of THE LORD came to Elijah the Tishbite, saying, "Arise. Go down to meet Ahab king of Israel which is in Samaria. Behold, he is in the vineyard of Naboth whither he is gone down to possess it. And thou shalt speak unto him, saying, 'Thus saith THE LORD: Hast thou killed and also taken possession?' And thou

shalt speak unto him, saying, 'Thus saith THE LORD: In the place where dogs licked the blood of Naboth shall dogs lick *thy* blood - even thine!'"

And Ahab said to Elijah, "Hast thou found me, O mine enemy?"

And he answered, "I have found thee - because thou hast sold thyself to work evil in the sight of THE LORD! *'Behold, I will bring evil upon thee, and will take away thy posterity, and will cut off from Ahab him that pisseth against the wall, and him that is shut up and left in Israel, and will make thine House like the House of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, and like the House of Baasha the son of Ahijah, for the provocation wherewith thou hast provoked Me to anger and made Israel to sin!'* And of Jezebel also spake THE LORD, saying, *'The dogs shall eat Jezebel by the wall of Jezreel! Him that dieth of Ahab in the city the dogs shall eat; and him that dieth in the field shall the fowls of the air eat! But there was none like unto Ahab, which did sell himself to work wickedness in the sight of THE LORD, whom Jezebel his wife stirred up! And he did very abominably in following idols according to all things as did the Amorites whom THE LORD cast out before the Children of Israel!'*"

And it came to pass, when Ahab heard those words, that he rent his clothes and put sackcloth upon his flesh, and fasted, and lay in sackcloth, and went softly.

And the Word of THE LORD came to Elijah the Tishbite, saying, "Seest thou how Ahab humbleth himself before Me? Because he humbleth himself before Me I will not bring the evil in his days, but in his son's days will I bring the evil upon his House."

And they continued three years without war between Syria and Israel. And it came to pass in the third year that Jehoshaphat the king of Judah came down to the king of Israel.

And the king of Israel said unto his servants, "Know ye that Ramoth in Gilead is ours, and we <sup>1</sup>be still and take it not out of the hand of the king of Syria?" <sup>1</sup>*sit still/do nothing about it*

And he said unto Jehoshaphat, "Wilt thou go with me to battle to Ramoth-Gilead?"

And Jehoshaphat said to the king of Israel, "I am <sup>1</sup>as thou art, my people as thy people, my horses as thy horses." And Jehoshaphat said unto the king of Israel, "Inquire, I pray thee, at the Word of THE LORD to day." <sup>1</sup>*at your service*

Then the king of Israel gathered the prophets together, about four hundred men, and said unto them, "Shall I go against Ramoth-Gilead to battle, or shall I forbear?"

And they said, "Go up; for THE LORD shall deliver it into the hand of the king."

And Jehoshaphat said, "Is there not here a prophet of THE LORD <sup>1</sup>besides, that we might inquire of him?" <sup>1</sup>*other than these*

And the king of Israel said unto Jehoshaphat, "There is yet one man - Micaiah the son of Imlah, by whom we may inquire of THE LORD. But I hate him; for he doth not prophesy good concerning me, but evil."

And Jehoshaphat said, "<sup>1</sup>Let not the king say so." <sup>1</sup>*in other words, oh, my! Say it isn't so!*

Then the king of Israel called an officer, and said, "Hasten hither Micaiah the son of Imlah."

And the king of Israel and Jehoshaphat the king of Judah sat each on his throne, having put on their robes, in a void place in the entrance of the gate of Samaria; and all the prophets prophesied before them.

And Zedekiah the son of Chenaanah made him horns of iron and he said, "Thus saith THE LORD: With these shalt thou push the Syrians until thou have consumed them!"

And all the prophets prophesied so, saying, "Go up to Ramoth-Gilead and prosper; for THE LORD shall deliver it into the king's hand!"

And the messenger that was gone to call Micaiah spake unto him, saying, "Behold now, the words of the prophets declare good unto the king with one <sup>1</sup>mouth. Let *thy* word, I pray thee, be like the word of one of them, and speak that which is good." <sup>1</sup>accord

And Micaiah said, "As THE LORD liveth, what THE LORD saith unto me, that will I speak."

So he came to the king. And the king said unto him, "Micaiah, shall we go against Ramoth-Gilead to battle, or shall we forbear?"

And he <sup>1</sup>answered him, "Go, and prosper; for THE LORD shall deliver it into the hand of the king." <sup>1</sup>[apparently he says this sarcastically]

And the king said unto him, "How many times shall I adjure thee that thou tell me nothing but that which is true<sup>1</sup> in the name of THE LORD?!" <sup>1</sup>when speaking in the name of Yahweh (Jehovah)

And he <sup>1</sup>said, "I saw all Israel scattered upon the hills, as sheep that have not a shepherd. And THE LORD said: These have no master; let them return every man to his house in peace." <sup>1</sup>prophesied

And the king of Israel said unto Jehoshaphat, "Did I not tell thee that he would prophesy no good concerning me, but evil?!"

And <sup>1</sup>he said, "Hear thou therefore the Word of THE LORD! I saw THE LORD sitting on His throne, and all the host of heaven standing by Him on His right hand and on His left. And THE LORD said, "*Who shall persuade Ahab that he may go up and fall at Ramoth-Gilead?*" And one said on this manner, and another said on that manner. And there came forth a spirit and stood before THE LORD and said, '*I will persuade him!*' And THE LORD said unto him, '*Wherewith?*' And he said, '*I will go forth, and I will be a lying spirit in the mouth of all his prophets*'. And He said, '*Thou shalt persuade him, and prevail also - go forth and do so!*'

"Now therefore, behold, THE LORD hath put a lying spirit in the mouth of all these thy prophets, and THE LORD hath spoken evil concerning thee!" <sup>1</sup>Micaiah

But Zedekiah the son of Chenaanah went near and smote Micaiah on the cheek, and said, "<sup>1</sup>Which way went the spirit of THE LORD from me to speak unto *thee*?!"

<sup>1</sup>basically, "Oh yeah? And which spirit from God made me smack you in the face?"

And Micaiah said, "<sup>1</sup>Behold, thou shalt see in that day, when thou shalt go into an inner chamber to hide thyself!" <sup>1</sup>[basically, "You'll see, you coward!"]

And the king of Israel said, "Take Micaiah, and carry him back unto Amon the governor of the city, and to Joash the king's son, and say, '*Thus saith the king: Put this fellow in the prison, and feed him with bread of affliction and with water of affliction, until I come in peace!*'"

And Micaiah said, "If thou return at all in peace, THE LORD hath not spoken by me!"

And <sup>1</sup>he said, "Hearken, O people, every one of you!" <sup>1</sup>basically, The king said, "People, you heard what he said!"

So the king of Israel and Jehoshaphat the king of Judah went up to Ramothgilead.

And the king of Israel said unto Jehoshaphat, "I will disguise myself, and enter into the battle; but put thou on thy robes."

And the king of Israel disguised himself and went into the battle.

But the king of Syria commanded his thirty and two captains that had rule over his chariots, saying, "Fight neither with small nor great, save only with the king of Israel."

And it came to pass, when the captains of the chariots saw <sup>1</sup>Jehoshaphat, that they said, "Surely it is the king of Israel!" <sup>1</sup>the king of Judah

And they turned aside to fight against him, and Jehoshaphat <sup>1</sup>cried out.  
<sup>1</sup>possibly meaning that he shouted a command to the troops

And it came to pass, when the captains of the chariots perceived that it was *not* the king of Israel, that they turned back from pursuing him.

And a certain man <sup>1</sup>drew a bow at a venture, and smote the king of Israel between the joints of the harness. Wherefore <sup>1</sup>he said unto the driver of his chariot, "Turn thine hand, and carry me out of the host; for I am wounded!" <sup>1</sup>shot his bow randomly <sup>2</sup>the king of Israel

And the battle increased that day, and the king was stayed up in his chariot against the Syrians, and died at even, and the blood ran out of the wound into the midst of the chariot.

And there went a proclamation throughout the host about the going down of the sun, saying, "Every man to his city, and every man to his own country!"

So the king died and was brought to Samaria; and they buried the king in Samaria. And one washed the chariot in the pool of Samaria; and the dogs licked up his blood and they <sup>1</sup>washed his armour according unto the Word of THE LORD which He spake. <sup>1</sup>licked clean the blood off of

Now, the rest of the acts of Ahab, and all that he did, and the ivory house which he made, and all the cities that he built, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel? So Ahab slept with his fathers. And Ahaziah his son reigned in his stead.

And Jehoshaphat the son of Asa began to reign over Judah in the fourth year of Ahab king of Israel. Jehoshaphat was thirty and five years old when he began to reign; and he reigned twenty and five years in Jerusalem. And his mother's name was Azubah, the daughter of Shilhi. And he walked in all the ways of Asa his father; he turned not aside from it, doing that which was *right* in the eyes of THE LORD. Nevertheless the high places were not taken away; for the people offered and burnt incense yet in the high places. And Jehoshaphat made peace with the king of Israel.

Now the rest of the acts of Jehoshaphat, and his might that he showed, and how he warred, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah?

And the remnant of the <sup>1</sup>sodomites, which remained in the days of his father Asa, he took out of the land.  
<sup>1</sup>*Khadeshim - temple prostitutes who engage in sexual religious rites with both females and males for pagan fertility gods (see note on page 399).*

There was then no king in <sup>1</sup>Edom; a deputy was king. <sup>1</sup>at the southeast border of Judah

Jehoshaphat made ships of Tharshish to go to Ophir for gold; but they went not, for the ships were <sup>1</sup>broken at Ezion-Geber. <sup>1</sup>*possibly destroyed by storms*

Then said Ahaziah the son of Ahab unto Jehoshaphat, "Let my servants go with thy servants in the ships."

But Jehoshaphat <sup>1</sup>would not. <sup>1</sup>*would not allow it*

And Jehoshaphat slept with his fathers, and was buried with his fathers in the City of David his father. And Jehoram his son reigned in his stead.

Ahaziah the son of Ahab began to reign over Israel in Samaria the seventeenth year of Jehoshaphat king of Judah, and reigned two years over Israel. And he did evil in the sight of THE LORD, and walked in the way of his father, and in the way of his mother, and in the way of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, who made Israel to sin; for he served Baal and worshipped him and provoked to anger THE LORD God of Israel according to all that his father had done.

Then Moab rebelled against Israel after the death of Ahab. And Ahaziah fell down through a lattice in his upper chamber that was in Samaria and was sick. And he sent messengers and said unto them, "Go, inquire of Baalzebub the god of Ekron whether I shall recover of this disease."

But the angel of THE LORD said to Elijah the Tishbite, "Arise! Go up to meet the messengers of the king of Samaria and say unto them: Is it not because there is not a God in Israel that ye go to inquire of Baalzebub the god of Ekron?! Now therefore thus saith THE LORD: Thou shalt not come down from that bed on which thou art gone up, but shalt surely die!" And Elijah departed.

And when the messengers turned back unto <sup>1</sup>him, he said unto them, "Why are ye now turned back?" <sup>1</sup>*King Ahaziah*

And they said unto him, "There came a man up to meet us, and said unto us, '*Go, turn again unto the king that sent you and say unto him, Thus saith THE LORD: Is it not because there is not a God in Israel that thou sendest to inquire of Baalzebub the god of Ekron? Therefore thou shalt not come down from that bed on which thou art gone up, but shalt surely die.*'"

And he said unto them, "What manner of man was he which came up to meet you and told you these words?"

And they answered him, "He was an hairy man, and girt with a girdle of leather about his loins."

And he said, "It is Elijah the Tishbite!"

Then the king sent unto <sup>2</sup>him a captain-of-fifty with his <sup>1</sup>fifty. <sup>1</sup>*fifty soldiers* <sup>2</sup>*Elijah*

And <sup>1</sup>he went up to <sup>2</sup>him; and, behold, <sup>2</sup>he sat on the top of an hill. <sup>1</sup>*the captain* <sup>2</sup>*Elijah*

And he spake unto him, "Thou man of God, the king hath said, '*Come down*'."

And Elijah answered and said to the captain-of-fifty, "If I be a man of God, then let fire come down from heaven and consume thee and thy fifty!"

And there came down fire from heaven and consumed him and his fifty.

Again also he sent unto him another captain-of-fifty with his fifty. And he answered and said unto him, "O man of God, thus hath the king said, 'Come down quickly!'"

And Elijah answered and said unto them, "If I be a man of God, let fire come down from heaven and consume thee and thy fifty!"

And the fire of God came down from heaven and consumed him and his fifty.

And he sent again a captain of the third fifty with his fifty. And the third captain-of-fifty went up, and came and fell on his knees before Elijah, and besought him, and said unto him, "O man of God, I pray thee! Let my life, and the life of these fifty thy servants, be precious in thy sight! Behold, there came fire down from heaven and burnt up the two captains of the former fifties with their fifties! Therefore let my life now be precious in thy sight!"

And the angel of THE LORD said unto Elijah, "Go down with him; be not afraid of him." And he arose, and went down with him unto the king.

And <sup>1</sup>he said unto <sup>2</sup>him, "Thus saith THE LORD: Forasmuch as thou hast sent messengers to inquire of Baalzebub the god of Ekron, is it not because there is no God in Israel to inquire of *His* Word? Therefore thou shalt not come down off that bed on which thou art gone up, but shalt surely die!" *<sup>1</sup>Elijah <sup>2</sup>the king*

So he died according to the Word of THE LORD which Elijah had spoken. And <sup>1</sup>Jehoram reigned in his stead (in the second year of <sup>1</sup>Jehoram the son of Jehoshaphat king of Judah) because he had no son.

*<sup>1</sup>The king of Israel and the king of Judah both had the same name of Jehoram, though the king of Israel is also called by his shortened name of Joram in some of the Scriptures to help prevent confusion.*

Now, the rest of the acts of Ahaziah which he did, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel?

And it came to pass, when THE LORD would take up Elijah into heaven by a whirlwind, that Elijah went with Elisha from Gilgal.

And Elijah said unto Elisha, "Tarry here, I pray thee; for THE LORD hath sent me to Bethel."

And Elisha said unto him, "As THE LORD liveth, and as thy soul liveth, I will not leave thee!" So they went down to Bethel.

And the sons of the prophets that were at Bethel came forth to Elisha and said unto him, "Knowest thou that THE LORD will take away thy master from <sup>1</sup>thy head to day?" *<sup>1</sup>being your master*

And he said, "Yea, I know it; <sup>1</sup>hold ye your peace!" *<sup>1</sup>be quiet!*

And Elijah said unto him, "Elisha, tarry here, I pray thee; for THE LORD hath sent me to Jericho."

And he said, "As THE LORD liveth, and as thy soul liveth, I will not leave thee!" So they came to Jericho.

And the sons of the prophets that were at Jericho came to Elisha and said unto him, "Knowest thou that THE LORD will take away thy master from thy head to day?"

And he answered, "Yea, I know it; hold ye your peace!"

And Elijah said unto him, "Tarry, I pray thee, here; for THE LORD hath sent me to Jordan."

And he said, "As THE LORD liveth, and as thy soul liveth, I will not leave thee." And they two went on.

And fifty men of the sons of the prophets went and stood to view afar off, and they two stood by Jordan.

And Elijah took his mantle, and wrapped it together, and smote the waters, and they were divided hither and thither, so that they two went over on dry ground.

And it came to pass, when they were gone over, that Elijah said unto Elisha, "Ask what I shall do for thee before I be taken away from thee."

And Elisha said, "I pray thee, let a double portion of thy spirit be upon me!"

And he said, "Thou hast asked a hard thing! Nevertheless, if thou see me when I am taken from thee, it shall be so unto thee; but if not, it shall not be so."

And it came to pass, as they still went on, and talked, that, behold, there appeared a chariot of fire, and horses of fire, <sup>1</sup>and parted them both asunder; and Elijah went up by a whirlwind into heaven.

*<sup>1</sup>came between them/separated them*

And Elisha saw it, and he cried, "My father! My father! The Chariot of Israel! And the horsemen thereof...!"

And he saw him no more. And he took hold of his own clothes and rent them in two pieces.

He took up also the mantle of Elijah that fell from him, and went back, and stood by the bank of Jordan. And he took the mantle of Elijah that fell from him, and smote the waters, and said, "Where is THE LORD God of Elijah?"

And when he also had smitten the waters, they parted hither and thither, and Elisha went over.

And when the sons of the prophets which were to view at Jericho saw him, they said, "The spirit of Elijah doth rest on Elisha!"

And they came to meet him, and bowed themselves to the ground before him. And they said unto him, "Behold now, there be with thy servants fifty strong men. Let them go, we pray thee, and seek thy master; lest <sup>1</sup>peradventure the spirit of THE LORD hath taken him up, and cast him upon some mountain, or into some valley."

*<sup>1</sup>perhaps/perchance*

And he said, "Ye shall not <sup>1</sup>send."

*<sup>1</sup>send them*

And when they urged him till he was ashamed, he said, "Send."

They sent therefore fifty men; and they sought three days, but found him not.

And when they came again to him (for he tarried at Jericho), he said unto them, "Did I not say unto you, 'Go not'?"

And the men of the city said unto Elisha, "Behold, I pray thee, the situation of this city is pleasant, as my lord seeth; but <sup>1</sup>the water is nought, and the ground barren."

*<sup>1</sup>either "there is no water" or "the water is contaminated"*

And he said, "Bring me a new <sup>1</sup>cruse, and put salt therein."

*<sup>1</sup>vial or carafe*

And they brought it to him. And he went forth unto the spring of the waters, and cast the salt in there, and said, "Thus saith THE LORD: I have healed these waters; there shall not be from thence any more death or barren land."

So the waters were healed unto this day according to the saying of Elisha which he spake.

And he went up from thence unto Bethel; and as he was going up by the way, there came forth little children out of the city, and mocked him, and said unto him, "Go up, thou bald head! Go up, thou bald head!"

And he turned back, and looked on them, and cursed them in the name of THE LORD. And there came forth two she-bears out of the wood and tare forty and two children of them.

And he went from thence to Mount Carmel, and from thence he returned to Samaria.

Now Jehoram the son of Ahab began to reign over Israel in Samaria the eighteenth year of Jehoshaphat king of Judah, and reigned twelve years. And he wrought evil in the sight of THE LORD; but not like his father, and like his mother - for he put away the image of Baal that his father had made. Nevertheless he cleaved unto the sins of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, which made Israel to sin; he departed not therefrom.

And Mesha king of Moab was a sheepmaster, and rendered unto the king of Israel an hundred thousand lambs, and an hundred thousand rams, with the wool. But it came to pass, when Ahab was dead, that the king of Moab rebelled against the king of Israel.

And King Jehoram went out of Samaria the same time and numbered all Israel.

And he went and sent to Jehoshaphat the king of Judah, saying, "The king of Moab hath rebelled against me. Wilt thou go with me against Moab to battle?"

And he said, "I will go up. I am as thou art, my people as thy people, and my horses as thy horses."

And he said, "Which way shall we go up?"

And he answered, "The way through the wilderness of Edom."

So the king of Israel went, and the king of Judah, and the king of Edom; and they <sup>1</sup> fetched a compass of seven days' journey. And there was no water for the host and for the cattle that followed them.

*<sup>1</sup>traveled a particular path or circuit*

And the king of Israel said, "Alas! That THE LORD hath called these three kings together, to deliver them into the hand of Moab!"

But Jehoshaphat said, "Is there not here a prophet of THE LORD that we may inquire of THE LORD by him?"

And one of the king of Israel's servants answered and said, "<sup>1</sup>Here is Elisha the son of Shaphat, which <sup>2</sup>poured water on the hands of Elijah."

*<sup>1</sup>in this land <sup>2</sup>was the personal friend/servant/assistant of Elijah*

And Jehoshaphat said, "The Word of THE LORD is with him."

So the king of Israel and Jehoshaphat and the king of Edom went down to him.

And Elisha said unto the king of Israel, "What have I to do with thee?! Get thee to the prophets of thy father, and to the prophets of thy mother!"

And the king of Israel said unto him, "Nay! For THE LORD hath called these three kings together, to deliver them into the hand of Moab."

And Elisha said, "As THE LORD of Hosts liveth before whom I stand, surely were it not that I regard the presence of Jehoshaphat the king of Judah, I would not look toward thee nor see thee! But now bring me a minstrel."

And it came to pass when the minstrel played that the hand of THE LORD came upon him; and he said, "Thus saith THE LORD: Make this valley full of ditches. For thus saith THE LORD: Ye shall not see wind, neither shall ye see rain; yet that valley shall be filled with water that ye may drink - both ye and your cattle and your beasts. And this is but a <sup>1</sup>light thing in the sight of THE LORD! He will deliver the Moabites also into your hand. And ye shall smite every fenced city and every choice city and shall fell every good tree and stop all wells of water and mar every good piece of land with stones!" *<sup>1</sup>simple/easy*

And it came to pass in the morning, when the meat offering was offered, that, behold, there came water by the way of Edom and the country was filled with water.

And when all the Moabites heard that the kings were come up to fight against them, they gathered all that were <sup>1</sup>able to put on armour and upward, and stood in the border. *<sup>1</sup>old enough*

And they rose up early in the morning, and the sun shone upon the water and the Moabites <sup>1</sup>saw the water on the other side as red as blood. *<sup>1</sup>God created an optical illusion possibly with the morning sunlight shining on the water*

And they said, "This is blood! The kings are surely slain and they have smitten one another! Now therefore, Moab - <sup>1</sup>to the spoil!" *<sup>1</sup>let's go get their valuables/let's get the booty and spoils*

And when they came to the camp of Israel, the Israelites rose up and smote the Moabites so that they fled before them - but they went forward smiting the Moabites, even in their country. And they beat down the cities, and on every good piece of land cast every man his stone and filled it and they stopped all the wells of water and felled all the good trees; only in Kirharaseth left they the stones thereof (howbeit the slingers went about it and smote it).

And when the king of Moab saw that the battle was too sore for him, he took with him seven hundred men that drew swords, to break through even unto the king of Edom; but they could not.

Then he took his eldest son that should have reigned in his stead and offered him for a burnt offering upon the wall. And there was great indignation against Israel; and they departed from him, and returned to their own land.

Now, there cried a certain woman (of the wives of the sons of the prophets) unto Elisha, saying, "Thy servant my husband is dead; and thou knowest that thy servant did fear THE LORD. And the creditor is come to take unto him my two sons to be bondmen."

And Elisha said unto her, "What shall I do for thee? Tell me, what hast thou in the house?"

And she said, "Thine handmaid hath not any thing in the house, <sup>1</sup>save a pot of oil." *<sup>1</sup>except/only*

Then he said, "Go, borrow thee vessels abroad of all thy neighbours, even empty vessels; borrow <sup>1</sup>not a few. And when thou art come in thou shalt shut the door upon thee and upon thy sons and shalt pour out into all those vessels, and thou shalt set aside that which is full." <sup>1</sup>many

So she went from him and shut the door upon her and upon her sons who brought the vessels to her, and she poured out. And it came to pass, when the vessels were full, that she said unto her son, "Bring me <sup>1</sup>yet a vessel." <sup>1</sup>another

And he said unto her, "There is not a vessel more." And the oil <sup>1</sup>stayed. <sup>1</sup>stopped

Then she came and told the man of God. And he said, "Go, sell the oil and pay thy debt, and <sup>1</sup>live thou and thy children of the rest." <sup>1</sup>keep the rest for yourselves (to use or to sell for money)

And <sup>1</sup>it fell on a day that Elisha passed to Shunem where was a great woman; and she constrained him to eat bread. And so it was that as oft as he passed by, he turned in thither to eat bread. <sup>1</sup>a certain day came

And she said unto her husband, "Behold now, I perceive that this is an holy man of God which passeth by us continually. Let us make a little chamber, I pray thee, on the wall; and let us set for him there a bed, and a table, and a stool, and a Candlestick. And it shall be, when he cometh to us, that he shall turn in thither."

And it fell on a day that he came thither, and he turned into the chamber and lay there. And he said to Gehazi his servant, "Call this Shunammite."

And when <sup>1</sup>he had called her, she stood before <sup>1</sup>him. And he said unto him, "Say now unto her: Behold, thou hast been <sup>2</sup>careful for us with all this care; what is to be done for thee? Wouldest thou be spoken for to the king, or to the captain of the host?"

*<sup>1</sup>Elisha's servant (who was probably standing in the doorway of Elisha's room, which would have been proper decorum, rather than the married woman going into Elisha's room).<sup>2</sup>concerned/kind and generous to our needs*

And she answered, "I dwell among mine own people."

And he said, "What then is to be done for her?"

And Gehazi answered, "Verily she hath no child, and her husband is old."

And he said, "Call her." And when he had called her, she stood in the door.

And he said, "About this season, according to the time of life, thou shalt embrace a son."

And she said, "Nay, my lord thou man of God, do not lie unto thine handmaid."

And the woman conceived and bare a son at that season that Elisha had said unto her, according to the time of life. And when the child was grown, it fell on a day that he went out to his father to the reapers.

And he said unto his father, "My head! My head!"

And he said to a lad, "Carry him to his mother!"

And when he had taken him and brought him to his mother, he sat on her knees till noon and then died. And she went up and laid him on the bed of the man of God and shut the door upon him and went out.

And she called unto her husband and said, "Send me, I pray thee, one of the young men and one of the asses, that I may run to the man of God, and come again."

And he said, "Wherefore wilt thou go to him to day? It is neither new moon nor Sabbath."

And she said, "It shall be well."

Then she saddled an ass and said to her servant, "Drive and go forward; slack not thy riding for me except I bid thee!"

So she went and came unto the man of God, to Mount Carmel. And it came to pass when the man of God saw her afar off, that he said to Gehazi his servant, "Behold, yonder is that Shunammite. Run now, I pray thee, to meet her and say unto her, '*Is it well with thee? Is it well with thy husband? Is it well with the child?*'"

And she answered, "It is well."

And when she came to the man of God, to the hill, she caught him by the feet. But Gehazi came near to thrust her away. And the man of God said, "Let her alone. For her soul is vexed within her and THE LORD hath hid it from me and hath not told me."

Then she said, "Did I desire a son of my lord?! Did I not say, '*Do not deceive me*'?!"

Then he said to Gehazi, "Gird up thy loins and take my staff in thine hand and go thy way. If thou meet any man, salute him not; and if any salute thee, answer him not again. And lay my staff upon the face of the child."

And the mother of the child said, "As THE LORD liveth, and as thy soul liveth, I will not leave thee." And he arose and followed her.

And Gehazi passed on before them, and laid the staff upon the face of the child; but there was neither voice, nor hearing.

Wherefore he went again to meet <sup>1</sup>him, and told him, saying, "The child is not awaked."

<sup>1</sup>Elisha

And when Elisha was come into the house, behold, the child was dead and laid upon his bed. He went in therefore and shut the door upon them <sup>1</sup>twain and prayed unto THE LORD.

<sup>1</sup>both/the two of them

And he went up and lay upon the child, and put his mouth upon his mouth, and his eyes upon his eyes, and his hands upon his hands, and he stretched himself upon the child; and the flesh of the child waxed warm. Then he returned and walked in the house to and fro, and went up and stretched himself upon him - and the child sneezed seven times and the child opened his eyes.

And he called Gehazi and said, "Call this Shunammite."

So he called her. And when she was come in unto him, he said, "Take up thy son."

Then she went in and fell at his feet and bowed herself to the ground, and took up her son and went out.

And Elisha came again to Gilgal and there was a dearth in the land; and the sons of the prophets were sitting before him. And he said unto his servant, "Set on the great pot and seethe pottage for the sons of the prophets."

And one went out into the field to gather herbs and found a wild vine and gathered thereof wild gourds his lap full, and came and shred them into the pot of pottage (for they knew them not). So they poured out for the men to eat. And it came to pass, as they were eating of the pottage, that they cried out, and said, "O thou man of God, there is death in the pot!" And they could not eat thereof.

But he said, "Then bring meal." And he cast it into the pot and he said, "Pour out for the people, that they may eat." And there was no harm in the pot.

And there came a man from Baalshalisha and brought the man of God bread of the firstfruits, twenty loaves of barley, and full ears of corn in the husk thereof.

And he said, "Give unto the people that they may eat."

And his servitor said, "What, should I set this before an hundred men?!"

He said again, "Give the people, that they may eat. For thus saith THE LORD: They shall eat, and shall leave thereof."

So he set it before them and they did eat and left thereof according to the Word of THE LORD.

Now Naaman, captain of the host of the king of Syria, was a great man with his master, and honourable, because by him THE LORD had given deliverance unto Syria. He was also a mighty man in valour, but he was a leper.

And the Syrians had gone out by companies and had brought away captive (out of the land of Israel) a little maid, and she waited on Naaman's wife. And she said unto her mistress, "Would God <sup>1</sup>my lord were with the prophet that is in Samaria! For he would recover him of his leprosy." *<sup>1</sup>that my lord Naaman*

And one went in and told his lord, saying, "*Thus and thus* said the maid that is of the land of Israel."

And the king of Syria said, "Go to! Go, and I will send a letter unto the king of Israel."

And he departed and took with him ten talents of silver, and six thousand pieces of gold, and ten changes of raiment.

And he brought the letter to the king of Israel, saying, "Now when this letter is come unto thee, behold, I have therewith sent Naaman my servant to thee that thou mayest recover him of his leprosy."

And it came to pass, when the king of Israel had read the letter, that he rent his clothes, and said, "Am I God, to kill and to make alive, that this man doth send unto me to recover a man of his leprosy?! Wherefore consider, I pray you, and see how he seeketh a quarrel against me!"

And it was so, when Elisha the man of God had heard that the king of Israel had rent his clothes, that he sent to the king, saying, "Wherefore hast thou rent thy clothes?! Let him come now to me and he shall know that there is a prophet in Israel!"

So Naaman came with his horses and with his chariot, and stood at the door of the house of Elisha.

And Elisha sent a messenger unto him, saying, "Go and wash in Jordan seven times, and thy flesh shall come again to thee, and thou shalt be clean."

But Naaman was wroth and went away and said, “Behold, I thought he will surely come out to me and stand and call on the name of THE LORD his God and strike his hand over the place and <sup>1</sup>recover the leper. Are not Abana and Parpar - rivers of Damascus - better than all the waters of Israel? May I not wash in *them* and be clean?!”

*<sup>1</sup>heal the leprosy*

So he turned and went away in a rage. And his servants came near and spake unto him and said, “My father, if the prophet had bid thee do some great thing, wouldest thou not have done it? How much rather then when he saith to thee, ‘*Wash and be clean*’?!”

Then went he down and dipped himself seven times in Jordan according to the saying of the man of God; and his flesh came again like unto the flesh of a little child, and he was clean.

And he returned to the man of God, he and all his company, and came and stood before him. And he said, “Behold, now I know that there is no God in all the earth but in Israel! Now therefore, I pray thee, take a blessing of thy servant.”

But he said, “As THE LORD liveth (before whom I stand), I will receive none.” And he urged him to take it, but he refused.

And Naaman said, “Shall there not then, I pray thee, be given to thy servant two mules’ burden of earth? For thy servant will henceforth offer neither burnt offering nor sacrifice unto other gods, but unto THE LORD. In this thing THE LORD pardon thy servant: that, when my master goeth into the <sup>1</sup>house of Rimmon to worship there and he leaneth on my hand and I bow myself in the house of Rimmon - <sup>2</sup>when I bow down myself in the house of Rimmon, THE LORD pardon thy servant in this thing.”

*<sup>1</sup>temple of the god Ramanu/Baal <sup>2</sup>NOTE: The Apostle Paul speaks on this subject, that, for those who know that The Lord is the only true God, an idol is nothing and means nothing and is powerless, and therefore eating food that someone sacrificed to idols is, to them that love the Lord, merely food and nothing more or less. The situation for our faithful brother Naaman here is basically the same; in essence he is saying that he now knows in his heart that Jehovah is the only true God, and when he bows before Rimmon it is only in assistance to his pagan king as a servant. Elisha (in the next verse below) then grants him God’s pardon to do this. This is important because the 2<sup>nd</sup> commandment forbids bowing down to worship idols – yet here we see an example of how our liberality in Christ works. God looks upon the INTENT OF THE HEART, not just the letter of the Law. To Naaman, the physical action of bowing in front of this idol was no different to him than putting on his shoes, because he knew the idol was nothing but a stone and that only Jehovah is God. In his heart he was not bowing to worship the idol.*

And he said unto him, “Go in peace.” So he departed from him a little way.

But Gehazi, the servant of Elisha the man of God, <sup>1</sup>said, “Behold, my master hath spared Naaman this Syrian in not receiving at his hands that which he brought; but, as THE LORD liveth, I will run after him, and take somewhat of him.”

*<sup>1</sup>said to himself*

So Gehazi followed after Naaman. And when Naaman saw him running after him, he lighted down from the chariot to meet him, and said, “Is all well?”

And he said, “All is well. My master hath sent me, saying: Behold, even now there be come to me from Mount Ephraim two young men of the sons of the prophets. Give them, I pray thee, a talent of silver, and two changes of garments.”

And Naaman said, “Be content, take *two* talents! And he urged him, and bound two talents of silver in two bags, with two changes of garments, and laid them upon two of his servants; and they bare them before him. And when he came to the tower, he took them from their hand, and bestowed them in the house. And he let the men go, and they departed. But he went in and stood before his master.

And Elisha said unto him, “Whence comest thou, Gehazi?”

And he said, "Thy servant went no whither."

And he said unto him, "Went not mine heart with thee when the man turned again from his chariot to meet thee? Is it a time to receive money and to receive garments, and oliveyards, and vineyards, and sheep, and oxen, and menservants, and maidservants?! The leprosy therefore of Naaman shall cleave unto thee and unto thy seed for ever!"

And he went out from his presence a leper as white as snow.

And the sons of the prophets said unto Elisha, "Behold now, the place where we dwell with thee is too <sup>1</sup>strait for us. Let us go, we pray thee, unto Jordan, and take thence every man a beam, and let us make us a place there, where we may dwell." <sup>1</sup>*small/tight/cramped*

And he answered, "Go ye."

And one said, "Be content, I pray thee, and <sup>1</sup>go with thy servants." <sup>1</sup>*come with us*

And he answered, "I will go." So he went with them. And when they came to Jordan, they cut down wood.

But as one was felling a beam, the ax head fell into the water; and he cried and said, "Alas, master!" (for it was borrowed).

And the man of God said, "Where fell it?"

And he showed him the place. And he cut down a stick and cast it in thither - and the iron did swim!

Therefore said he, "Take it up to thee." And he put out his hand and took it.

Then the king of Syria warred against Israel, and took counsel with his servants, saying, "In *such and such* a place shall be my camp."

And the man of God sent unto the king of Israel, saying, "Beware that thou pass not such a place; for thither the Syrians are come down."

And the king of Israel sent to the place which the man of God told him and warned him of, and saved himself there, not once nor twice. Therefore the heart of the king of Syria was sore troubled for this thing; and he called his servants, and said unto them, "<sup>1</sup>Will ye not show me which of us is for the king of Israel?" <sup>1</sup>*which one of you is the traitor/which of you is in league with Israel?*

And one of his servants said, "None, my lord O king! But Elisha, the prophet that is in Israel, telleth the king of Israel the words that thou speakest in thy bedchamber!"

And he said, "Go and spy where he is, that I may send and fetch him."

And it was told him, saying, "Behold, he is in Dothan."

Therefore sent he thither horses, and chariots, and a great host; and they came by night and compassed the city about. And when the servant of the man of God was risen early and gone forth, behold, an host compassed the city both with horses and chariots. And his servant said unto him, "Alas, my master! How shall we do?!"

And he answered, "Fear not! For they that be with us are more than they that be with them!"

And Elisha prayed, and said, "LORD, I pray thee, open his eyes, that he may see."

And THE LORD opened the eyes of the young man. And he saw and – behold, the mountain was full of horses and chariots of fire round about Elisha! And when they came down to him, Elisha prayed unto THE LORD, and said, "Smite this people, I pray thee, with blindness!" And he smote them with blindness according to the word of Elisha.

And Elisha said unto them, "This is not the <sup>1</sup>way, neither is this the <sup>1</sup>city. Follow me, and I will bring you to the man whom ye seek." But he led them to Samaria. *<sup>1</sup>the way and the city that you seek*

And it came to pass, when they were come into Samaria, that Elisha said, "LORD, open the eyes of these men that they may see!" And THE LORD opened their eyes, and they saw; and, behold, they were in the midst of Samaria.

And the king of Israel said unto Elisha when he saw them, "<sup>1</sup>My father, shall I smite them?! Shall I smite them?!" *<sup>1</sup>an honorary title of sentiment to a senior, explicitly banned later by Christ in the Gospels*

And he answered, "Thou shalt *not* smite them! Wouldest thou smite those whom thou hast taken captive with thy sword and with thy bow? Set bread and water before them that they may eat and drink and go to their master."

And he prepared great provision for them; and when they had eaten and drunk, he sent them away, and they went to their master. So the bands of Syria came no more into the land of Israel.

And it came to pass after this that Benhadad king of Syria gathered all his host and went up and besieged Samaria. And there was a great famine in Samaria. And, behold, they besieged it, until an ass's head was sold for <sup>1</sup>fourscore pieces of silver, and the fourth part of a cab of dove's dung for five pieces of silver. <sup>180</sup>

And as the king of Israel was passing by upon the wall, there cried a woman unto him, saying, "Help, my lord O king!"

And he said, "If THE LORD do not help thee, whence shall I help thee? Out of the barnfloor, or out of the winepress??" And the king said unto her, "What aileth thee?"

And she answered, "This woman said unto me, '*Give thy son, that we may eat him to day, and we will eat my son to morrow*'. So we boiled my son and did eat him. And I said unto her on the next day, '*Give thy son, that we may eat him*'; and she hath hid her son."

And it came to pass, when the king heard the words of the woman, that he rent his clothes; and he passed by upon the wall, and the people looked, and, behold, he had sackcloth within upon his flesh.

Then he said, "God do so (and more also!) to me if the head of Elisha the son of Shaphat shall stand on him this day!"

But Elisha sat in his house, and the elders sat with him. And the king sent a man from before him; but ere the messenger came to him, he said to the elders, "See ye how this son of a murderer hath sent to take away mine head? Look, when the messenger cometh, shut the door, and hold him fast at the door. Is not the sound of his master's feet behind him?"

And while he yet talked with them, behold, the messenger came down unto him; and he said, "Behold, this evil is of THE LORD; what should I wait for THE LORD any longer?"

Then Elisha said, "Hear ye the Word of THE LORD! Thus saith THE LORD: To morrow about this time shall a 'measure of fine flour be sold for a shekel, and two measures of barley for a shekel, in the gate of Samaria."

*'in other words, prosperity will return so that food prices will be at fair costs again*

Then a lord (on whose hand the king leaned) answered the man of God and said, "Behold, if THE LORD would make windows in heaven, might this thing be?"

And he said, "Behold, thou shalt see it with thine eyes, but shalt not eat thereof!"

And there were four leprous men at the entering in of the gate; and they said one to another, "Why sit we here until we die? If we say, '*We will enter into the city*', then the famine is in the city and we shall die there; and if we sit still here we die also. Now therefore come, and let us fall unto the host of the Syrians. If they save us alive, we shall live; and if they kill us, we shall but die."

And they rose up in the twilight to go unto the camp of the Syrians. And when they were come to the uttermost part of the camp of Syria - behold, there was no man there! For THE LORD had made the host of the Syrians to hear a noise of chariots, and a noise of horses, even the noise of a great host, and they said one to another, "Lo, the king of Israel hath hired against us the kings of the Hittites and the kings of the Egyptians to come upon us!" Wherefore they arose and fled in the twilight and left their tents, and their horses, and their asses, even the camp as it was, and fled for their life.

And when these lepers came to the uttermost part of the camp, they went into one tent and did eat and drink, and carried thence silver, and gold, and raiment, and went and hid it; and came again, and entered into another tent, and carried thence also, and went and hid it.

Then they said one to another, "We do not well! This day is a day of good tidings and we hold our peace! If we tarry till the morning light, some mischief will come upon us. Now therefore come, that we may go and tell the king's household!"

So they came and called unto the porter of the city, and they told them, saying, "We came to the camp of the Syrians and, behold, there was no man there, neither voice of man, but horses tied, and asses tied, and the tents as they were!"

And he called the porters, and they told it to the king's house within.

And the king arose in the night and said unto his servants, "I will now show you what the Syrians have done to us. They know that we be hungry; therefore are they gone out of the camp to hide themselves in the field, saying, '*When they come out of the city, we shall catch them alive, and get into the city*'."

And one of his servants answered and said, "Let some take, I pray thee, five of the horses that remain, which are left in the city (behold, they are as all the multitude of Israel that are left in it - behold, I say, they are even as all the multitude of the Israelites that are consumed), and let us send and see."

They took therefore two chariot horses; and the king sent after the host of the Syrians, saying, "Go and see."

And they went after them unto Jordan. And, lo, all the way was full of garments and vessels which the Syrians had cast away in their haste. And the messengers returned and told the king, and the people went out and spoiled the tents of the Syrians. So a measure of fine flour was sold for a shekel and two measures of barley for a shekel according to the Word of THE LORD.

And the king appointed the lord (on whose hand he leaned) to have the charge of the gate, and the people <sup>1</sup>trode upon him in the gate and he died - as the man of God had said who spake when the king came down to him. And it came to pass as the man of God had spoken to the king, saying, *'Two measures of barley for a shekel, and a measure of fine flour for a shekel, shall be to morrow about this time in the gate of Samaria'*. And that lord answered the man of God, and said, *'Now, behold, if THE LORD should make windows in heaven, might such a thing be?'* And he said, *'Behold, thou shalt see it with thine eyes, but shalt not eat thereof.'* And so it fell out unto him; for the people <sup>1</sup>trode upon him in the gate, and he died.

<sup>1</sup>*stampeded and trampled*

Then spake Elisha unto the woman whose son he had restored to life, saying, "Arise and go, thou and thine household, and sojourn wheresoever thou canst sojourn; for THE LORD hath called for a famine, and it shall also come upon the land seven years."

And the woman arose and did after the saying of the man of God. And she went with her household and sojourned in the land of the Philistines seven years. And it came to pass at the seven years' end that the woman returned out of the land of the Philistines, and she went forth to cry unto the king <sup>1</sup>for her house and for her land.

<sup>1</sup>*for the return of*

And the king talked with Gehazi the servant of the man of God, saying, "Tell me, I pray thee, all the great things that Elisha hath done."

And it came to pass, as he was telling the king how he had restored a dead body to life, that, behold, the woman whose son he had restored to life cried to the king for her house and for her land.

And Gehazi said, "My lord O king, *this* is the woman, and *this* is her son whom Elisha restored to life!"

And when the king asked the woman, she told him. So the king appointed unto her a certain officer, saying, "Restore all that was hers, and all the fruits of the field since the day that she left the land even until now!"

And Elisha came to Damascus. And Benhadad the king of Syria was sick; and it was told him, saying, "The man of God is come hither!"

And the king said unto Hazael, "Take a present in thine hand and go; meet the man of God and inquire of THE LORD by him, saying, *'Shall I recover of this disease?'*"

So Hazael went to meet him and took a present with him, even of every good thing of Damascus - forty camels' burden - and came and stood before him and said, "Thy son, Benhadad king of Syria, hath sent me to thee, saying, *'Shall I recover of this disease?'*"

And Elisha said unto him, "Go say unto him, 'Thou mayest certainly recover; howbeit THE LORD hath showed me that he shall surely die.'"

And he settled his countenance stedfastly until he was ashamed, and the man of God wept.

And Hazael said, "Why weepeth my lord?"

And he answered, "Because I know the evil that thou wilt do unto the Children of Israel. Their strong holds wilt thou set on fire, and their young men wilt thou slay with the sword, and wilt dash their children, and rip up their women with child!"

And Hazael said, "But... *what?!* Is thy servant a dog that he should do this great thing?!"

And Elisha answered, "THE LORD hath showed me that *thou* shalt be king over Syria."

So he departed from Elisha and came to his master, who said to him, "What said Elisha to thee?"

And he answered, "He told me that thou shouldest surely recover."

And it came to pass on the morrow that he took a thick cloth and dipped it in water and spread it on his face so that he <sup>1</sup>died; and Hazael reigned in his stead. *<sup>1</sup>suffocated to death*

And in the fifth year of <sup>1</sup>Joram the son of Ahab king of Israel (Jehoshaphat being then king of Judah), Jehoram the son of Jehoshaphat king of Judah began to reign. Thirty and two years old was he when he began to reign; and he reigned eight years in Jerusalem. And he walked in the way of the kings of Israel, as did the house of Ahab - for the daughter of Ahab was his wife; and he did evil in the sight of THE LORD.

*<sup>1</sup>short form of 'Jehoram'*

Yet THE LORD would not destroy Judah, for David His servant's sake, as He promised him, to give him alway a light, and to his children.

In his days Edom revolted from under the hand of Judah and made a king over themselves. So Joram went over to Zair, and all the chariots with him. And he rose by night and smote the Edomites which compassed him about, and the captains of the chariots; and the people fled into their tents.

Yet Edom revolted from under the hand of Judah unto this day. Then Libnah revolted at the same time.

And the rest of the acts of Joram, and all that he did, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah? And Joram slept with his fathers, and was buried with his fathers in the City of David. And Ahaziah his son reigned in his stead.

In the twelfth year of Joram the son of Ahab king of Israel did Ahaziah the son of Jehoram king of Judah begin to reign. Two and twenty years old was Ahaziah when he began to reign; and he reigned one year in Jerusalem. And his mother's name was Athaliah, the daughter of Omri king of Israel. And he walked in the way of the House of Ahab and did evil in the sight of THE LORD as did the House of Ahab - for he was the son-in-law of the House of Ahab.

And he went with Joram the son of Ahab to the war against Hazael king of Syria in Ramothgilead; and the Syrians wounded Joram. And King Joram went back to be healed in Jezreel of the wounds which the Syrians had given him at Ramah when he fought against Hazael king of Syria. And Ahaziah the son of Jehoram king of Judah went down to see Joram the son of Ahab in Jezreel, because he was sick.

And Elisha the prophet called one of the children of the prophets and said unto him, "Gird up thy loins, and take this box of oil in thine hand, and go to Ramoth-Gilead. And when thou comest thither, <sup>1</sup>look out there Jehu the son of Jehoshaphat the son of Nimshi, and go in, and make him arise up from among his brethren, and carry him to an inner chamber. Then take the box of oil and pour it on his head, and say, '*Thus saith THE LORD: I have anointed thee king over Israel!*' Then open the door, and flee, and tarry not. *<sup>1</sup>seek out*

So the young man, even the young man the prophet, went to Ramoth-Gilead. And when he came, behold, the captains of the host were sitting; and he said, "I have an errand to thee, O captain."

And Jehu said, "Unto *which* of all us?"

And he said, "To thee, O captain."

And he arose and went into the house; and he poured the oil on his head and said unto him, "Thus saith THE LORD God of Israel: I have anointed thee king over the People of THE LORD, even over Israel. And thou shalt smite the House of Ahab thy master, that I may avenge the blood of My servants the prophets and the blood of all the servants of THE LORD at the hand of Jezebel. For the whole House of Ahab shall perish; and I will cut off from Ahab him that pisseth against the wall, and him that is shut up and left in Israel. And I will make the House of Ahab like the House of Jeroboam the son of Nebat and like the House of Baasha the son of Ahijah. And the dogs shall eat Jezebel in the portion of Jezreel, and there shall be none to bury her!" And he opened the door and fled.

Then Jehu came forth to the servants of his lord; and one said unto him, "Is all well? Wherefore came this <sup>1</sup>mad fellow to thee?" *1lunatic*

And he said unto them, "Ye know the man and his communication."

And they said, "It is false. Tell us now." *1that's not true/we do not*

And he said, "Thus and thus spake he to me, saying, 'Thus saith THE LORD: I have anointed thee king over Israel.'"

Then they hasted, and took every man his garment, and put it under him on the top of the stairs, and blew with trumpets, saying, "Jehu is king!"

So Jehu the son of Jehoshaphat the son of Nimshi conspired against Joram. (Now, Joram had kept Ramoth-Gilead - he and all Israel - because of Hazael king of Syria. But King Joram was returned to be healed in Jezreel of the wounds which the Syrians had given him when he fought with Hazael king of Syria.)

And Jehu said, "If it be your minds, then let none go forth nor escape out of the city to go to tell it in Jezreel."

So Jehu rode in a chariot and went to Jezreel (for Joram lay there). And Ahaziah king of Judah was come down to see Joram.

And there stood a watchman on the tower in Jezreel, and he spied the company of Jehu as he came, and said, "I see a company!"

And Joram said, "Take an horseman, and send to meet them, and let him say, <sup>1</sup>'Is it peace?'" *1Do you come in peace/bring a peaceful report*

So there went one on horseback to meet him, and said, "Thus saith the king: Is it peace?"

And Jehu said, "What hast thou to do with peace?! Turn thee behind me!"

And the watchman told, saying, "The messenger came to them, but he cometh not again."

Then he sent out a second on horseback, which came to them, and said, "Thus saith the king: Is it peace?"

And Jehu answered, "What hast thou to do with peace?! Turn thee behind me!"

And the watchman told, saying, "He came even unto them, and cometh not again; and the driving is like the driving of Jehu the son of Nimshi - for he driveth furiously!"

And Joram said, "Make ready." And his chariot was made ready.

And Joram king of Israel and Ahaziah king of Judah went out, each in his chariot, and they went out against Jehu and met him in the portion of Naboth the Jezreelite.

And it came to pass, when Joram saw Jehu, that he said, "Is it peace, Jehu?"

And he answered, "What 'peace', so long as the whoredoms of thy mother Jezebel and her witchcrafts are so many?!"

And Joram turned his hands, and fled, and said to Ahaziah, "There is treachery, O Ahaziah!"

And Jehu drew a bow with his full strength, and smote Jehoram between his arms, and the arrow went out at his heart, and he sunk down in his chariot.

Then said Jehu to Bidkar his captain, "Take up, and cast him in the portion of the field of Naboth the Jezreelite. For remember how that, when I and thou rode together after Ahab his father, THE LORD laid this burden upon him, *'Surely I have seen yesterday the blood of Naboth, and the blood of his sons, saith THE LORD; and I will requite thee in this 'plat, saith THE LORD.'* Now therefore take and cast him into the plat of ground according to the Word of THE LORD." *'plot of land (the vineyard that Naboth was murdered for)*

But when Ahaziah the king of Judah saw this, he fled by the way of the garden house. And Jehu followed after him and said, "Smite him also in the chariot!"

And they did so at the going up to Gur, which is by Ibleam. And he fled to Megiddo and died there. And his servants carried him in a chariot to Jerusalem, and buried him in his sepulchre with his fathers in the City of David. And <sup>1</sup>in the eleventh year of Joram the son of Ahab began Ahaziah to reign over Judah. *'it was in*

And when Jehu was come to Jezreel, Jezebel heard of it; and she painted her face, and <sup>1</sup>tired her head, and looked out at a window. *'attired*

And as Jehu entered in at the gate, she said, "Had Zimri peace, <sup>1</sup>who slew his master?" *'the one who*

And he lifted up his face to the window, and said, "Who is on my side?! *Who?!'*"

And there looked out to him two or three <sup>1</sup>eunuchs. *'men in charge of the bed chamber of nobility/chamberlain*

And he said, "Throw her down!!"

So they threw her down; and some of her blood was sprinkled on the wall and on the horses. And he trode her under foot.

And when he was come in, he did eat and drink, and said, "Go, see now this cursed woman, and bury her; for she is a king's daughter."

And they went to bury her; but they found no more of her than the skull and the feet and the palms of her hands. Wherefore they came again and told him.

And he said, "This <sup>1</sup>is the Word of THE LORD which He spake by His servant Elijah the Tishbite, saying: *In the portion of Jezreel shall dogs eat the flesh of Jezebel, and the carcase of Jezebel shall be as dung upon the face of the field in the portion of Jezreel so that they shall not say, 'This is Jezebel'.*" *'this is the fulfillment of*

And Ahab had seventy sons in Samaria. And Jehu wrote letters, and sent to Samaria, unto the rulers of Jezreel, to the elders and to them that brought up Ahab's children, saying, "Now, as soon as this letter cometh to you, seeing your master's sons are with you (and there are with you chariots and horses, a fenced city also, and armour), look even out the best and meetest of your master's sons, and set him on his father's throne, and fight for your master's House!"

But they were exceedingly afraid and said, "Behold, two kings <sup>1</sup>stood not before him! How then shall we stand?!" <sup>1</sup>could not defeat him

And he that was over the house, and he that was over the city, the elders also, and the bringers up of the children, sent to Jehu, saying, "We are thy servants and will do all that thou shalt bid us. We will not <sup>1</sup>make any king. Do thou that which is good in thine eyes." <sup>1</sup>crown/anoint/raise up

Then he wrote a letter the second time to them, saying, "*If ye be mine and if ye will hearken unto my voice, take ye the heads of the men (your master's sons) and come to me to Jezreel by to morrow this time.*"

Now the king's sons, being seventy persons, were with the great men of the city which brought them up. And it came to pass, when the letter came to them, that they took the king's sons, and slew seventy persons, and put their heads in baskets, and sent him them to Jezreel.

And there came a messenger, and told him, saying, "They have brought the heads of the king's sons."

And he said, "Lay ye them in two heaps at the entering in of the gate until the morning."

And it came to pass in the morning that he went out and stood and said to all the people, "Ye be righteous. Behold, I conspired against my master and slew him - but who slew all *these*? Know now that there shall fall unto the earth nothing of the Word of THE LORD which THE LORD spake concerning the House of Ahab; for THE LORD hath done that which He spake by His servant Elijah."

So Jehu slew all that remained of the House of Ahab in Jezreel, and all his great men, and his kinsfolks, and his priests, until he left him none remaining.

And he arose and departed and came to Samaria. And as he was at the shearing house in the way, Jehu met with the brethren of Ahaziah king of Judah, and said, "Who are ye?"

And they answered, "We are the brethren of Ahaziah, and we go down to salute the children of the <sup>1</sup>king and the children of the <sup>2</sup>queen." <sup>1</sup>Ahab <sup>2</sup>Jezebel

And he said, "Take them alive!"

And they took them alive, and slew them at the pit of the shearing house, even two and forty men; neither left he any of them.

And when he was departed thence, he <sup>1</sup>lighted on Jehonadab the son of Rechab coming to meet him. And he saluted him and said to him, "Is thine heart right, as my heart is with thy heart?" <sup>1</sup>came upon

And Jehonadab answered, "It is."

"If it be, give me thine hand."

And he gave him his hand; and he took him up to him into the chariot.

And he said, "Come with me and see my zeal for THE LORD."

So they made him ride in his chariot. And when he came to Samaria, he slew all that remained unto Ahab in Samaria till he had destroyed him according to the saying of THE LORD which He spake to Elijah.

And Jehu gathered all the people together and said unto them, "Ahab served Baal a little; but Jehu shall serve him much! Now therefore call unto me all the prophets of Baal, all his servants, and all his priests; let none be <sup>1</sup>wanting; for I have a great sacrifice to do to Baal. Whosoever shall be <sup>1</sup>wanting, he shall not live."

<sup>1</sup>missing

But Jehu did it in subtlety, to the intent that he might destroy the worshippers of Baal.

And Jehu said, "Proclaim a solemn assembly for Baal!" And they proclaimed it. And Jehu sent through all Israel, and all the worshippers of Baal came so that there was not a man left that came not. And they came into the <sup>1</sup>house of Baal; and the house of Baal was full from one end to another.

<sup>1</sup>temple

And he said unto him that was over the <sup>1</sup>vestry, "Bring forth <sup>2</sup>vestments for all the worshippers of Baal!"

<sup>1</sup>room of ceremonial garments <sup>2</sup>ceremonial garments

And he brought them forth vestments. And Jehu went, and Jehonadab the son of Rechab, into the house of Baal and said unto the worshippers of Baal, "Search, and look that there be here with you none of the servants of <sup>1</sup>THE LORD, but the worshippers of Baal only!"

<sup>1</sup>Jehovah/Yahweh

And when they went in to offer sacrifices and burnt offerings, Jehu appointed <sup>1</sup>fourscore men without, and said, "If any of the men whom I have brought into your hands escape, <sup>2</sup>he that letteth him go, his life shall be for the life of him."

<sup>1</sup>80 <sup>2</sup>whoever lets a Baal worshiper escape will pay with their own life

And it came to pass, as soon as he had made an end of offering the burnt offering, that Jehu said to the guard and to the captains, "Go in and slay them; let none come forth!"

And they smote them with the edge of the sword; and the guard and the captains cast them out, and went to the city of the house of Baal. And they brought forth the images out of the house of Baal, and burned them. And they brake down the image of Baal, and brake down the house of Baal, and made it a <sup>1</sup>draught house unto this day.

<sup>1</sup>out house/toilet

Thus Jehu destroyed Baal out of Israel. Howbeit, from the sins of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, who made Israel to sin, Jehu departed not from after them - to wit, the golden calves that were in Bethel and that <sup>1</sup>were in Dan.

<sup>1</sup>which were

And THE LORD said unto Jehu, "Because thou hast done well in executing that which is right in Mine eyes and hast done unto the House of Ahab according to all that was in Mine heart, thy children <sup>1</sup>of the fourth generation shall sit on the throne of Israel!"

<sup>1</sup>unto

But Jehu took no heed to walk in the Law of THE LORD God of Israel with all his heart; for he departed not from the sins of Jeroboam which made Israel to sin.

In those days THE LORD began to cut Israel short. And Hazael smote them in all the coasts of Israel from Jordan eastward - all the land of Gilead, the Gadites, and the Reubenites, and the Manassites - from Aroer which is by the river Arnon, even Gilead and Bashan.

Now the rest of the acts of Jehu, and all that he did and all his might, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel? And Jehu slept with his fathers, and they buried him in Samaria. And Jehoahaz his son reigned in his stead. And the time that Jehu reigned over Israel in Samaria was twenty and eight years.

And when Athaliah, the mother of Ahaziah, saw that her son was dead, she arose and destroyed all the <sup>1</sup>seed royal. <sup>1</sup>royal children

But Jehosheba, the daughter of King Joram, sister of Ahaziah, took Joash the son of Ahaziah, and stole him from among the king's sons which were slain; and they hid him - even him and his <sup>1</sup>nurse - in the bedchamber from Athaliah, so that he was not slain. And he was with her hid in the House of THE LORD six years. And Athaliah did reign over the land. <sup>1</sup>wetnurse or nanny

And the seventh year Jehoiada sent and fetched the rulers over hundreds, with the captains and the guard, and brought them to him into the House of THE LORD, and made a covenant with them, and took an oath of them in the House of THE LORD, and showed them the king's son.

And he commanded them, saying, "This is the thing that ye shall do: A third part of you that enter in on the Sabbath shall even be keepers of the watch of the king's house; and a third part shall be at the Gate of Sur; and a third part at the gate behind the guard. So shall ye keep the watch of the house, that it be not broken down. And two parts of all you that go forth on the Sabbath, even they shall keep the watch of the House of THE LORD about the king. And ye shall <sup>1</sup>compass the king round about, every man with his weapons in his hand. And he that cometh within the ranges, let him be slain; and be ye with the king as he goeth out and as he cometh in." <sup>1</sup>surround the king as bodyguards

And the captains over the hundreds did according to all things that Jehoiada the priest commanded. And they took every man his men that were to come in on the Sabbath, with them that should go out on the Sabbath, and came to Jehoiada the priest. And to the captains over hundreds did the priest give King David's spears and shields that were in the Temple of THE LORD. And the guard stood, every man with his weapons in his hand, round about the king, from the right corner of the Temple to the left corner of the Temple, along by the Altar and the Temple. And he brought forth the king's son, and put the crown upon him, and gave him the testimony; and they made him king, and anointed him; and they clapped their hands, and said, "God save the king!" <sup>1</sup>"long live the king!"

And when Athaliah heard the noise of the guard and of the people, she came to the people into the Temple of THE LORD. And when she looked, behold, the king stood by a pillar, as the <sup>1</sup>manner was, and the princes and the trumpeters by the king, and all the people of the land rejoiced, and blew with trumpets. And Athaliah rent her clothes and cried, "Treason!! Treason!!" <sup>1</sup>tradition

But Jehoiada the priest commanded the captains of the hundreds, the officers of the host, and said unto them, "<sup>1</sup>Have her forth without the ranges, and him that followeth her kill with the sword!" (for the priest had said, "Let her not be slain in the House of THE LORD"). <sup>1</sup>take her out to the horse ranges

And they laid hands on her; and she went by the way by the which the horses came into the king's house; and there was she slain.

And Jehoiada made a covenant between THE LORD and the king and the people, that they should be THE LORD'S People, between the king also and the people. And all the people of the land went into the house of Baal and brake it down; his altars and his images brake they in pieces thoroughly, and slew Mattan the priest of Baal before the altars. And the priest appointed officers over the House of THE LORD. And he took the rulers over hundreds, and the captains, and the guard, and all the people of the land; and they brought down the king from the House of THE LORD, and came by the way of the gate of the guard to the king's

house. And he sat on the throne of the kings. And all the people of the land rejoiced, and the city was in quiet; and they slew Athaliah with the sword beside the king's house.

Seven years old was Jehoash when he began to reign.

In the seventh year of Jehu, Jehoash began to reign; and forty years reigned he in Jerusalem. And his mother's name was Zibiah of Beersheba. And Jehoash did that which was *right* in the sight of THE LORD all his days wherein Jehoiada the priest instructed him. But the <sup>1</sup>high places were not taken away. The people still sacrificed and burnt incense in the <sup>1</sup>high places. *<sup>1</sup>shrines*

And Jehoash said to the priests, "All the money of the dedicated things that is brought into the House of THE LORD - even the money of every one that passeth the account, the money that every man is set at, and all the money that cometh into any man's heart to bring into the House of THE LORD - let the priests take it to them, every man of his acquaintance, and let them repair the <sup>1</sup>breaches of the House wheresoever any breach shall be found." *<sup>1</sup>damages to the Lord's Temple*

But it was so that in the three and twentieth year of King Jehoash the priests had not repaired the breaches of the House. Then King Jehoash called for Jehoiada the priest, and the other priests, and said unto them, "Why repair ye not the breaches of the House?! Now therefore receive no more money of your acquaintance, but deliver it for the breaches of the House!"

And the priests consented to receive no more money of the people, *neither* to repair the breaches of the House. But Jehoiada the priest took a chest and bored a hole in the lid of it and set it beside the Altar, on the right side as one cometh into the House of THE LORD. And the priests that kept the door put therein all the money that was brought into the house of THE LORD. And it was so, when they saw that there was much money in the chest, that the king's scribe and the High Priest came up, and they put up in bags, and <sup>1</sup>told the money that was found in the House of THE LORD. And they gave the money, being <sup>1</sup>told, into the hands of them that did the work that had the oversight of the House of THE LORD; and they laid it out to the carpenters and builders that wrought upon the House of THE LORD, and to masons, and hewers of stone, and to buy timber and hewed stone to repair the breaches of the House of THE LORD, and for all that was laid out for the House to repair it. *<sup>1</sup>tabulated/counted/added up*

Howbeit there were not made for the House of THE LORD bowls of silver, snuffers, basins, trumpets, any vessels of gold, or vessels of silver, of the money that was brought into the House of THE LORD, but they gave that to the workmen, and repaired therewith the House of THE LORD. Moreover they reckoned not with the men, into whose hand they delivered the money to be bestowed on workmen; for they dealt faithfully. The trespass money and sin money was not brought into the House of THE LORD; it <sup>1</sup>was the priests'. *<sup>1</sup>belongs to*

Then Hazael king of Syria went up and fought against Gath and took it; and Hazael set his face to go up to Jerusalem. And Jehoash king of Judah took all the hallowed things that Jehoshaphat, and Jehoram, and Ahaziah (his fathers, kings of Judah) had dedicated, and his own hallowed things, and all the gold that was found in the treasures of the House of THE LORD and in the king's house, and sent it to Hazael king of Syria; and he went away from Jerusalem.

And the rest of the acts of Joash, and all that he did, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah? And his servants arose and made a conspiracy, and slew Joash in the house of Millo which goeth down to Silla. For Jozachar the son of Shimeath, and Jehozabad the son of Shomer, his servants, smote him and he died; and they buried him with his fathers in the City of David. And Amaziah his son reigned in his stead.

In the three and twentieth year of Joash the son of Ahaziah king of Judah, Jehoahaz the son of Jehu began to reign over Israel in Samaria and reigned seventeen years. And he did that which was evil in the sight of THE LORD, and followed the sins of Jeroboam the son of Nebat which made Israel to sin; he departed not therefrom.

And the anger of THE LORD was kindled against Israel, and He delivered them into the hand of Hazael king of Syria, and into the hand of Benhadad the son of Hazael, all their days.

And Jehoahaz besought THE LORD, and THE LORD hearkened unto him; for He saw the oppression of Israel, because the king of Syria oppressed them. (And THE LORD gave Israel a saviour, so that they went out from under the hand of the Syrians; and the Children of Israel dwelt in their tents, as beforetime - nevertheless they departed not from the sins of the House of Jeroboam who made Israel sin, but walked therein, and there remained the grove also in Samaria.) Neither did he leave of the people, to Jehoahaz, but fifty horsemen and ten chariots and ten thousand footmen; for the king of Syria had destroyed them, and had made them like the dust by threshing.

Now the rest of the acts of Jehoahaz, and all that he did and his might, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel? And Jehoahaz slept with his fathers; and they buried him in Samaria. And Joash his son reigned in his stead.

In the thirty and seventh year of Joash king of Judah began Jehoash the son of Jehoahaz to reign over Israel in Samaria, and reigned sixteen years. And he did that which was evil in the sight of THE LORD; he departed not from all the sins of Jeroboam the son of Nebat who made Israel sin, but he walked therein.

And the rest of the acts of Joash, and all that he did, and his might wherewith he fought against Amaziah king of Judah, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel? And Joash slept with his fathers. And Jeroboam sat upon his throne. And Joash was buried in Samaria with the kings of Israel.

Now, Elisha was fallen sick of his sickness whereof he died. And Joash the king of Israel came down unto him, and wept over his face, and said, "O my father! My father! The chariot of Israel, and the horsemen thereof!"

And Elisha said unto him, "Take bow and arrows."

And he took unto him bow and arrows.

And he said to the king of Israel, "Put thine hand upon the bow."

And he put his hand upon it, and Elisha put his hands upon the king's hands.

And he said, "Open the window eastward."

And he opened it.

Then Elisha said, "Shoot!"

And he shot.

And he said, "The arrow of THE LORD'S deliverance, and the arrow of deliverance from Syria! For thou shalt smite the Syrians in Aphek till thou have consumed them!"

And he said, "Take the arrows."

And he took them.

And he said unto the king of Israel, "Smite upon the ground."

And he smote thrice, and stayed.

And the man of God was wroth with him, and said, "Thou shouldest have smitten five or six times; then hadst thou smitten Syria till thou hadst consumed it. Whereas *now* thou shalt smite Syria but thrice."

And Elisha died, and they buried him.

And the bands of the Moabites invaded the land at the coming in of the year.

And it came to pass, as they were burying a man, that, behold, they spied a band of men; and they cast the <sup>1</sup>man into the sepulchre of Elisha. And when the man was <sup>2</sup>let down and touched the bones of Elisha, he <sup>3</sup>revived and stood up on his feet! *<sup>1</sup>the man whom they were going to bury <sup>2</sup>dropped <sup>3</sup>resurrected*

But Hazael king of Syria oppressed Israel all the days of Jehoahaz.

And THE LORD was gracious unto them, and had compassion on them, and had respect unto them, because of His Covenant with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, and would not destroy them, neither cast He them from His presence as yet.

So Hazael king of Syria died; and Benhadad his son reigned in his stead.

And Jehoash, the son of Jehoahaz, took again out of the hand of Benhadad, the son of Hazael, the cities which he had taken out of the hand of Jehoahaz his father by war. Three times did Joash beat him, and recovered the cities of Israel.

In the second year of Joash, son of Jehoahaz king of Israel, reigned Amaziah the son of Joash king of Judah. He was twenty and five years old when he began to reign, and reigned twenty and nine years in Jerusalem. And his mother's name was Jehoaddan of Jerusalem. And he did that which was *right* in the sight of THE LORD - yet not like David his father. He did according to all things as Joash his father did.

Howbeit the high places were not taken away; as yet the people did sacrifice and burnt incense on the high places.

And it came to pass, as soon as the kingdom was confirmed in his hand, that he slew his servants which had slain the king his father. But the children of the murderers he slew not according unto that which is written in the book of the Law of Moses wherein THE LORD commanded, saying, "*The fathers shall not be put to death for the children, nor the children be put to death for the fathers; but every man shall be put to death for his own sin.*"

He slew of Edom in the Valley of Salt ten thousand, and took Selah by war, and called the name of it 'Joktheel' unto this day.

Then Amaziah sent messengers to Jehoash (the son of Jehoahaz son of Jehu, king of Israel), saying, "Come, let us look one another in the face!"

And Jehoash the king of Israel sent to Amaziah king of Judah, saying, "The thistle that was in Lebanon sent to the cedar that was in Lebanon, saying, 'Give thy daughter to my son to wife'. And there passed by a wild beast that was in Lebanon and trode down the thistle. Thou hast indeed smitten Edom, and thine heart hath lifted thee up. Glory of this, and tarry at home. For why shouldst thou meddle to thy hurt, that thou shouldst fall, even thou, and Judah with thee?"

But Amaziah would not hear. Therefore Jehoash king of Israel went up; and he and Amaziah king of Judah looked one another in the face at Bethshemesh, which belongeth to Judah. And Judah was put to the worse before Israel; and they fled every man to their tents.

And Jehoash king of Israel took Amaziah king of Judah (the son of Jehoash, the son of Ahaziah) at Bethshemesh and came to Jerusalem and brake down the wall of Jerusalem from the gate of Ephraim unto the corner gate, <sup>1</sup>four hundred cubits. *<sup>1</sup>7200 inches/600 feet*

And he took all the gold and silver and all the vessels that were found in the House of THE LORD and in the treasures of the king's house, and hostages, and returned to Samaria.

Now the rest of the acts of Jehoash which he did, and his might, and how he fought with Amaziah king of Judah, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel?

And Jehoash slept with his fathers and was buried in Samaria with the kings of Israel. And Jeroboam his son reigned in his stead.

And Amaziah the son of Joash king of Judah lived after the death of Jehoash son of Jehoahaz king of Israel fifteen years. And the rest of the acts of Amaziah, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah?

Now, they made a conspiracy against him in Jerusalem and he fled to Lachish; but they sent after him to Lachish and slew him there. And they brought him on horses, and he was buried at Jerusalem with his fathers in the City of David.

And all the people of Judah took Azariah, which was sixteen years old, and made him king instead of his father Amaziah.

He built Elath and restored it to Judah after that the king slept with his fathers.

In the fifteenth year of Amaziah the son of Joash king of Judah, Jeroboam the son of Joash king of Israel began to reign in Samaria, and reigned forty and one years.

And he did that which was evil in the sight of THE LORD. He departed not from all the sins of Jeroboam the son of Nebat who made Israel to sin.

He restored the coast of Israel from the entering of Hamath unto the sea of the plain according to the Word of THE LORD God of Israel which He spake by the hand of His servant Jonah the son of Amittai, the prophet, which was of Gath-Hepher. For THE LORD saw the affliction of Israel, that it was very bitter; for there was not any shut up, nor any left, nor any helper for Israel. And THE LORD said not that He would blot out the name of Israel from under heaven, but He saved them by the hand of Jeroboam the son of Joash.

Now the rest of the acts of Jeroboam, and all that he did and his might - how he warred, and how he recovered Damascus, and Hamath which belonged to Judah, for Israel - are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel?

And Jeroboam slept with his fathers, even with the kings of Israel. And Zachariah his son reigned in his stead.

In the twenty and seventh year of Jeroboam king of Israel began Azariah son of Amaziah king of Judah to reign. Sixteen years old was he when he began to reign, and he reigned two and fifty years in Jerusalem. And his mother's name was Jecholiah of Jerusalem. And he did that which was *right* in the sight of THE LORD according to all that his father Amaziah had done - <sup>1</sup>save that the high places were not removed. The people sacrificed and burnt incense still on the high places. <sup>1</sup>except

And THE LORD smote the king so that he was a leper unto the day of his death, and dwelt in a <sup>1</sup>several house. And Jotham the king's son was over the House, judging the people of the land. <sup>1</sup>separated house (sick house, like a hospital)

And the rest of the acts of Azariah, and all that he did, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah? So Azariah slept with his fathers; and they buried him with his fathers in the City of David. And Jotham his son reigned in his stead.

In the thirty and eighth year of Azariah king of Judah did Zachariah the son of Jeroboam reign over Israel in Samaria six months. And he did that which was evil in the sight of THE LORD, as his fathers had done. He departed not from the sins of Jeroboam the son of Nebat who made Israel to sin.

And Shallum the son of Jabesh conspired against him, and smote him before the people, and slew him, and reigned in his stead. And the rest of the acts of Zachariah, behold, they are written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel. This was the Word of THE LORD which He spake unto Jehu, saying, "Thy sons shall sit on the throne of Israel unto the fourth generation." And so it came to pass.

Shallum the son of Jabesh began to reign in the nine and thirtieth year of Uzziah king of Judah; and he reigned a full month in Samaria. For Menahem the son of Gadi went up from Tirzah and came to Samaria, and smote Shallum the son of Jabesh in Samaria, and slew him, and reigned in his stead. And the rest of the acts of Shallum, and his conspiracy which he made, behold, they are written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel.

Then Menahem smote Tiphshah and all that were therein and the coasts thereof from Tirzah. Because they opened not to him, therefore he smote it; and all the women therein that were with child he ripped up.

In the nine and thirtieth year of Azariah king of Judah began Menahem the son of Gadi to reign over Israel, and reigned ten years in Samaria. And he did that which was evil in the sight of THE LORD. He departed not all his days from the sins of Jeroboam the son of Nebat who made Israel to sin.

And Pul the king of Assyria came against the land, and Menahem gave Pul <sup>1</sup>a thousand talents of silver, that his hand might be with him to confirm the kingdom in his hand.

*<sup>1</sup>1 silver talent = \$384,000. Therefore 1000 silver talents = \$384 Million*

And Menahem <sup>1</sup>exacted the money of Israel, even of all the mighty men of wealth, of each man <sup>2</sup>fifty shekels of silver, to give to the king of Assyria. So the king of Assyria turned back, and stayed not there in the land.

*<sup>1</sup>extorted <sup>2</sup>1 silver shekel = \$128. Therefore 50 silver shekels = \$6,400*

And the rest of the acts of Menahem, and all that he did, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel? And Menahem slept with his fathers. And Pekahiah his son reigned in his stead.

In the fiftieth year of Azariah king of Judah, Pekahiah the son of Menahem began to reign over Israel in Samaria, and reigned two years. And he did that which was evil in the sight of THE LORD. He departed not

from the sins of Jeroboam the son of Nebat who made Israel to sin. But Pekah the son of Remaliah, a captain of his, conspired against him and smote him in Samaria, in the palace of the king's house, with Argob and Arieah and with him fifty men of the Gileadites. And he killed him, and reigned in his room. And the rest of the acts of Pekahiah, and all that he did, behold, they are written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel.

In the two and fiftieth year of Azariah king of Judah, Pekah the son of Remaliah began to reign over Israel in Samaria, and reigned twenty years. And he did that which was evil in the sight of THE LORD. He departed not from the sins of Jeroboam the son of Nebat who made Israel to sin.

In the days of Pekah king of Israel came Tiglathpileser king of Assyria, and took Ijon, and Abelbethmaachah, and Janoah, and Kedesh, and Hazor, and Gilead, and Galilee, all the land of Naphtali, and carried them captive to Assyria.

And Hoshea the son of Elah made a conspiracy against Pekah the son of Remaliah, and smote him, and slew him, and reigned in his stead, in the twentieth year of Jotham the son of Uzziah. And the rest of the acts of Pekah, and all that he did, behold, they are written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel.

In the second year of Pekah the son of Remaliah king of Israel began Jotham the son of Uzziah king of Judah to reign. Five and twenty years old was he when he began to reign, and he reigned sixteen years in Jerusalem. And his mother's name was Jerusha, the daughter of Zadok. And he did that which was *right* in the sight of THE LORD. He did according to all that his father Uzziah had done. Howbeit the high places were not removed. The people sacrificed and burned incense still in the high places. He built the higher gate of the House of THE LORD.

Now the rest of the acts of Jotham, and all that he did, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah?

In those days THE LORD began to send, against Judah, Rezin the king of Syria and Pekah the son of Remaliah.

And Jotham slept with his fathers and was buried with his fathers in the City of David his father. And Ahaz his son reigned in his stead. In the seventeenth year of Pekah the son of Remaliah, Ahaz the son of Jotham king of Judah began to reign.

Twenty years old was Ahaz when he began to reign, and reigned sixteen years in Jerusalem, and did not that which was *right* in the sight of THE LORD his God, like David his father. But he walked in the way of the kings of Israel, yea, and <sup>1</sup>made his son to pass through the fire according to the abominations of the heathen whom THE LORD cast out from before the Children of Israel. And he sacrificed and burnt incense in the high places, and on the hills, and under every green tree. <sup>1</sup>*sacrificed his son to idols (most likely Ba'al or Dagon)*

Then Rezin king of Syria and Pekah son of Remaliah king of Israel came up to Jerusalem to war; and they besieged Ahaz, but could not overcome him.

At that time Rezin king of Syria recovered Elath to Syria, and drove the Jews from Elath; and the Syrians came to Elath and dwelt there unto this day.

So Ahaz sent messengers to Tiglathpileser king of Assyria, saying, "I am thy servant and thy son. Come up and save me out of the hand of the king of Syria and out of the hand of the king of Israel which rise up against me!"

And Ahaz took the silver and gold that was found in the House of THE LORD and in the treasures of the king's house and sent it for a present to the king of Assyria. And the king of Assyria hearkened unto him; for the king of Assyria went up against Damascus and took it and carried the people of it captive to Kir, and slew Rezin.

And King Ahaz went to Damascus to meet Tiglathpileser king of Assyria, and saw an altar that was at Damascus. And king Ahaz sent to Urijah the priest the <sup>1</sup>fashion of the altar and the pattern of it according to all the workmanship thereof. *<sup>1</sup>blueprints*

And Urijah the priest built an altar according to all that King Ahaz had sent from Damascus; so Urijah the priest made it <sup>1</sup>against king Ahaz came from Damascus. *<sup>1</sup>built it in anticipation of the king's return*

And when the king was come from Damascus the king saw the altar, and the king approached to the altar and offered thereon. And he burnt his burnt offering and his meat offering and poured his drink offering and sprinkled the blood of his peace offerings upon the altar.

And he brought also the Brazen Altar, which was before THE LORD, from the forefront of the House, from between the Altar and the House of THE LORD, and put it on the north side of the altar.

And King Ahaz commanded Urijah the priest, saying, "Upon the great altar burn the morning burnt offering, and the evening meat offering, and the king's burnt sacrifice, and his meat offering, with the burnt offering of all the people of the land, and their meat offering, and their drink offerings; and sprinkle upon it all the blood of the burnt offering, and all the blood of the sacrifice. And the Brazen Altar shall be for me to <sup>1</sup>inquire by." *<sup>1</sup>seek answers either from God, or, to perform divinations (calling upon false gods)*

Thus did Urijah the priest according to all that king Ahaz commanded.

And king Ahaz cut off the borders of the bases, and removed the Laver from off them; and took down the sea from off the brazen oxen that were under it, and put it upon a pavement of stones.

And the <sup>1</sup>covert for the Sabbath that they had built in the House, and the king's entry without, turned he from the House of THE LORD for the king of Assyria. *<sup>1</sup>covering*

Now the rest of the acts of Ahaz which he did, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah? And Ahaz slept with his fathers and was buried with his fathers in the City of David. And Hezekiah his son reigned in his stead.

In the twelfth year of Ahaz king of Judah began Hoshea the son of Elah to reign in Samaria over Israel nine years. And he did that which was evil in the sight of THE LORD, but not as the kings of Israel that were before him.

Against him came up Shalmaneser king of Assyria; and Hoshea became his servant, and gave him presents. And the king of Assyria found conspiracy in Hoshea - for he had sent messengers to So, <sup>1</sup>king of Egypt, and brought no present to the king of Assyria as he had done year by year. Therefore the king of Assyria shut him up, and bound him in prison. *<sup>1</sup>Pharaoh*

Then the king of Assyria came up throughout all the land and went up to Samaria and besieged it three years. In the ninth year of Hoshea the king of Assyria took Samaria, and carried Israel away into Assyria, and placed them in Halah and in Habor by the river of Gozan, and in the cities of the Medes.

For so it was that the Children of Israel had sinned against THE LORD their God which had brought them up out of the land of Egypt, from under the hand of Pharaoh king of Egypt, and had feared other gods and walked in the statutes of the heathen whom THE LORD cast out from before the Children of Israel, and of the kings of Israel, which they had made. And the Children of Israel did secretly those things that were not right against THE LORD their God, and they built them high places in all their cities, from the tower of the watchmen to the fenced city. And they set them up images and groves in every high hill, and under every green tree; and there they burnt incense in all the high places as did the heathen whom THE LORD carried away before them, and wrought wicked things to provoke THE LORD to anger - for they served idols whereof THE LORD had said unto them, "Ye shall not do this thing!"

Yet THE LORD testified against Israel and against Judah by all the prophets and by all the seers, saying, "Turn ye from your evil ways, and keep My commandments and My statutes according to all the Law which I commanded your fathers, and which I sent to you by My servants the prophets."

Notwithstanding they would not hear, but hardened their necks like to the neck of their fathers that did not believe in THE LORD their God. And they rejected His statutes and His covenant that He made with their fathers, and His testimonies which He testified against them; and they followed vanity, and became vain, and went after the heathen that were round about them concerning whom THE LORD had charged them that they should not do like them. And they left all the commandments of THE LORD their God, and made them molten images, even two calves, and made a grove, and worshipped all the <sup>1</sup>host of heaven, and served Baal. And they caused their sons and their daughters to pass through the fire, and used divination and enchantments, and sold themselves to do evil in the sight of THE LORD, to provoke Him to anger.

*<sup>1</sup>sun, moon and stars*

Therefore THE LORD was very angry with Israel and removed them out of His sight. There was none left but the tribe of Judah only. Also Judah kept not the commandments of THE LORD their God, but walked in the statutes of Israel which they made.

And THE LORD rejected all the seed of Israel, and afflicted them, and delivered them into the hand of spoilers, until He had cast them out of His sight. For He <sup>1</sup>rent Israel from the House of David; and they made Jeroboam the son of Nebat king, and Jeroboam drave Israel from following THE LORD, and made them sin a great sin.

*<sup>1</sup>ripped away*

For the Children of Israel walked in all the sins of Jeroboam which he did; they departed not from them until THE LORD removed Israel out of His sight as He had <sup>1</sup>said by all His servants the prophets. So was Israel carried away out of their own land to Assyria unto this day.

*<sup>1</sup>forewarned*

And the king of Assyria brought men from Babylon, and from Cuthah, and from Ava, and from Hamath, and from Sepharvaim, and placed *them* in the cities of Samaria <sup>1</sup>instead of the Children of Israel; and they possessed Samaria, and dwelt in the cities thereof.

*<sup>1</sup>in place of/in stead of*

And so it was at the beginning of their dwelling there, that they feared not THE LORD; therefore THE LORD sent lions among them, which slew some of them.

Wherefore they spake to the king of Assyria, saying, "The nations which thou hast removed and placed in the cities of Samaria know not the manner of the God of the land! Therefore He hath sent lions among them, and, behold, they slay them, because they know not the manner of the God of the land!"

Then the king of Assyria commanded, saying, "Carry thither one of the priests whom ye brought from thence; and let them go and dwell there, and let him teach them the manner of the God of the land."

Then one of the priests whom they had carried away from Samaria came and dwelt in Bethel and taught them how they should fear THE LORD. Howbeit, every nation made gods of their own and put them in the houses of the high places which the Samaritans had made, every nation in their cities wherein they dwelt. And the men of Babylon made Succothbenoth, and the men of Cuth made Nergal, and the men of Hamath made Ashima, and the Avites made Nibhaz and Tartak, and the Sepharvites burnt their children in fire to <sup>1</sup>Adrammelech and Anammelech, the gods of Sepharvaim. <sup>1</sup>*sun god and moon goddess*

So they feared THE LORD and made unto themselves of the lowest of them priests of the high places, which sacrificed for them in the houses of the high places. They feared THE LORD *and* served their own gods, after the manner of the nations whom they carried away from thence.

Unto this day they do after the former manners. They fear not THE LORD, neither do they after their statutes, or after their ordinances, or after the Law and commandment which THE LORD commanded the children of Jacob (whom He named Israel) with whom THE LORD had made a covenant and charged them, saying, "Ye shall not fear other gods, nor bow yourselves to them, nor serve them, nor sacrifice to them; but THE LORD, who brought you up out of the land of Egypt with great power and a stretched out arm, Him shall ye fear and Him shall ye worship and to Him shall ye do sacrifice. And the statutes, and the ordinances, and the Law, and the commandment, which He wrote for you, ye shall observe to do for evermore; and ye shall not fear other gods. And the covenant that I have made with you ye shall not forget; neither shall ye fear other gods. But THE LORD your God ye shall fear; and He shall deliver you out of the hand of all your enemies."

Howbeit they did not hearken, but they did after their former manner. So these nations feared THE LORD *and* served their graven images, both their children, and their children's children; as did their fathers, so do they unto this day.

Now it came to pass, in the third year of Hoshea son of Elah king of Israel, that Hezekiah the son of Ahaz king of Judah began to reign. Twenty and five years old was he when he began to reign; and he reigned twenty and nine years in Jerusalem. His mother's name also was Abi, the daughter of Zachariah. And he did that which was *right* in the sight of THE LORD, according to all that David his father did. He removed the high places, and brake the images, and cut down the groves, and brake in pieces the brazen serpent that Moses had made - for unto those days the Children of Israel did burn incense to it; and he called it <sup>1</sup>Nehushtan. <sup>1</sup>*"copper serpents"*

He trusted in THE LORD God of Israel so that after him was none like him among all the kings of Judah, nor any that were before him. For he <sup>1</sup>clave to THE LORD, and departed not from following Him, but kept His commandments which THE LORD commanded Moses. <sup>1</sup>*adhere, clung*

And THE LORD was with him; and he prospered whithersoever he went forth. And he rebelled against the king of Assyria and served him not. He smote the Philistines even unto Gaza and the borders thereof, from the tower of the watchmen to the fenced city.

And it came to pass in the fourth year of King Hezekiah (which was the seventh year of Hoshea son of Elah king of Israel) that Shalmaneser king of Assyria came up against Samaria and besieged it. And at the end of three years they took it, even in the sixth year of Hezekiah (that is, the ninth year of Hoshea king of Israel) Samaria was taken. And the king of Assyria did carry away Israel unto Assyria and put them in Halah and in Habor by the <sup>1</sup>river of Gozan and in the cities of the Medes - because they obeyed not the voice of THE LORD their God, but transgressed His covenant and all that Moses the servant of THE LORD commanded, and would not hear them, nor do them. <sup>1</sup>*NOTE: this river is located in northern Afghanistan and central Asia*

Now, in the fourteenth year of King Hezekiah did Sennacherib king of Assyria come up against all the fenced cities of Judah and took them.

And Hezekiah king of Judah sent to the king of Assyria to Lachish, saying, "I have offended. Return from me. That which thou putteth on me will I bear."

And the king of Assyria appointed unto Hezekiah king of Judah <sup>1</sup>three hundred talents of silver and thirty talents of gold. And Hezekiah gave him all the silver that was found in the House of THE LORD and in the treasures of the king's house. At that time did Hezekiah cut off the gold from the doors of the Temple of THE LORD and from the pillars which Hezekiah king of Judah had overlaid, and gave it to the king of Assyria.

And the king of Assyria sent Tartan and Rabsaris and Rabshakeh from Lachish to King Hezekiah with a great host against Jerusalem. And they went up and came to Jerusalem. And when they were come up, they came and stood by the conduit of the upper pool, which is in the highway of the Fuller's Field.

And when they had called to the king, there came out to them <sup>1</sup>Eliakim the son of Hilkiah which was over the household, and Shebna the scribe, and Joah the son of Asaph the recorder.

<sup>1</sup>NOTE: "Eliakim the son Hilkiah" literally translates as "The Resurrecting God, the son of A Portion of God" and this name is used again later in a prophecy regarding the Messiah

And Rabshakeh said unto them, "Speak ye now to Hezekiah, 'Thus saith the great king, the king of Assyria: What confidence is this wherein thou trustest? Thou sayest (but they are but vain words) *'I have counsel and strength for the war.'* Now, on *whom* dost thou trust, that thou rebellest against me? Now, behold, thou trustest upon the staff of this bruised reed - even upon Egypt - *on* which if a man lean, it will go into his hand and pierce it - so is Pharaoh king of Egypt unto all that trust on him!

"But, if ye say unto me, *'We trust in THE LORD our God'*, <sup>1</sup>is not that He whose high places and whose altars Hezekiah hath taken away and hath said to Judah and Jerusalem, *'Ye shall worship before this altar in Jerusalem?'* Now therefore, I pray thee, give pledges to my lord the king of Assyria, and I will deliver thee two thousand horses, if thou be able on thy part to set riders upon them. How then wilt thou turn away the face of one captain of the least of my master's servants and put thy trust on Egypt for chariots and for horsemen? Am I now come up without THE LORD against this place to destroy it? THE LORD said to me, *'Go up against this land, and destroy it.'*" <sup>1</sup>isn't He the one

Then said Eliakim the son of Hilkiah and Shebna and Joah unto Rabshakeh, "Speak, I pray thee, to thy servants in the Syrian language, for we understand it; and talk not with us in <sup>1</sup>the Jews' language <sup>2</sup>in the ears of the people that are on the wall." <sup>1</sup>Hebrew <sup>2</sup>within earshot/hearing

But Rabshakeh said unto them, "Hath my master sent me *to thy master and to thee* to speak these words? Hath he not sent me to the men which sit on the wall, that they may eat their own dung and drink their own piss with you?!"

Then Rabshakeh stood and cried with a loud voice in the Jews' language, and spake, saying, "Hear the word of the great king - the king of Assyria! Thus saith the king: Let not Hezekiah deceive you! For he shall not be able to deliver you out of his hand! Neither let Hezekiah make you trust in THE LORD, saying, *'THE LORD will surely deliver us, and this city shall not be delivered into the hand of the king of Assyria.'* Harken not to Hezekiah! For thus saith the king of Assyria: Make an agreement with me by a <sup>1</sup>present and come out to me, and then eat ye, every man, of his own vine and every one of his fig tree and drink ye every one the waters of his cistern until I come and take you away to a land like your own land, a land of corn and wine, a land of bread and vineyards, a land of oil olive and of honey, that ye may live and not die - and hearken not unto Hezekiah when he persuadeth you, saying, *'THE LORD will deliver us'*. Hath any of the gods of the nations delivered at all his land out of the hand of the king of Assyria? Where are the gods of Hamath, and of Arpad? Where are the gods of Sepharvaim, Hena, and Ivah? Have they delivered Samaria out of mine hand? Who are they among all the gods of the countries that have delivered their country out of mine hand, that THE LORD should deliver Jerusalem out of mine hand?!" <sup>1</sup>bribe/gifts

But the people held their peace and answered him not a word. For the king's commandment was, saying, "Answer him not!"

Then came Eliakim the son of Hilkiah which was over the household, and Shebna the scribe, and Joah the son of Asaph the recorder, to Hezekiah with their clothes rent, and told him the words of Rabshakeh.

And it came to pass, when king Hezekiah heard it, that he rent his clothes and covered himself with sackcloth and went into the House of THE LORD. And he sent Eliakim, which was over the household, and Shebna the scribe, and the elders of the priests, covered with sackcloth, to Isaiah the prophet, the son of Amoz.

And they said unto him, "Thus saith Hezekiah: This day is a day of trouble and of rebuke and blasphemy! For the children are come to the birth, and there is not strength to bring forth! It may be THE LORD thy God will hear all the words of Rabshakeh whom the king of Assyria his master hath sent to reproach the living God, and will reprove the words which THE LORD thy God hath heard. Wherefore lift up thy prayer for the remnant that are left!"

So the servants of King Hezekiah came to Isaiah. And Isaiah said unto them, "Thus shall ye say to your master, 'Thus saith THE LORD: Be not afraid of the words which thou hast heard, with which the servants of the king of Assyria have blasphemed Me. Behold, I will send a blast upon him, and he shall hear a rumour and shall return to his own land; and I will cause him to fall by the sword in his own land.'"

So Rabshakeh returned and found the king of Assyria warring against Libnah, for he had heard that he was departed from Lachish. And when he heard say of Tirhakah king of Ethiopia, "Behold, he is come out to fight against thee", he sent messengers again unto Hezekiah, saying, "Thus shall ye speak to Hezekiah king of Judah, saying: Let not thy God in whom thou trustest deceive thee, saying, '*Jerusalem shall not be delivered into the hand of the king of Assyria.*' Behold, thou hast heard what the kings of Assyria have done to all lands, by destroying them utterly. And shalt *thou* be delivered?! Have the gods of the nations delivered them which my fathers have destroyed - as Gozan, and Haran, and Rezep, and the children of Eden which were in Thelasar? Where is the king of Hamath, and the king of Arpad, and the king of the city of Sepharvaim, of Hena, and Ivah?!"

And Hezekiah received the letter of the hand of the messengers and read it. And Hezekiah went up into the House of THE LORD and spread it before THE LORD. And Hezekiah prayed before THE LORD and said, "O LORD God of Israel which dwellest between the cherubims, Thou art the God - even Thou alone - of all the kingdoms of the earth! Thou hast made heaven and earth! LORD, bow down Thine ear and hear! Open, LORD, Thine eyes and see! And hear the words of Sennacherib, which hath sent him to reproach the living God. Of a truth, LORD, the kings of Assyria *have* destroyed the nations and their lands, and have cast their gods into the fire; for they were no gods, but the work of men's hands, wood and stone - therefore they have destroyed them. Now therefore, O LORD our God, I beseech Thee, save Thou us out of his hand, that all the kingdoms of the earth may know that Thou art THE LORD God, even Thou only!"

Then Isaiah the son of Amoz sent to Hezekiah, saying, "Thus saith THE LORD God of Israel: That which thou hast prayed to Me against Sennacherib king of Assyria I have heard.

"This is the Word that THE LORD hath spoken concerning him: The virgin, the daughter of Zion, hath despised thee and laughed thee to scorn; the daughter of Jerusalem hath shaken her head at thee. *Whom* hast thou reproached and blasphemed? And against *whom* hast thou exalted thy voice, and lifted up thine eyes on high? Even against the Holy One of Israel! By thy messengers thou hast reproached THE LORD and hast said, '*With the multitude of my chariots I am come up to the height of the mountains, to the sides of Lebanon, and will cut down the tall cedar trees thereof, and the choice fir trees thereof; and I will enter into the lodgings of his borders, and into the forest of his Carmel. I have digged and drunk strange waters,*

*and with the sole of my feet have I dried up all the rivers of besieged places.* Hast thou not heard long ago how *I* have done it, and of ancient times that *I* have formed it? Now have I brought it to pass that thou shouldest be to lay waste fenced cities into ruinous heaps. Therefore their inhabitants were of small power, they were dismayed and confounded; they were as the grass of the field, and as the green herb, as the grass on the house tops, and as corn blasted before it be grown up. But I know thy abode, and thy going out, and thy coming in, and thy rage against Me. Because thy rage against Me and thy tumult is come up into Mine ears, therefore I will put My hook in thy nose and My bridle in thy lips and I will turn thee back by the way by which thou camest!! And this shall be a sign unto thee: Ye shall eat this year such things as grow of themselves. And in the second year that which springeth of the same. And in the third year, sow ye, and reap, and plant vineyards, and eat the fruits thereof. And the remnant that is escaped of the House of Judah shall yet again take root downward and bear fruit upward.

“For out of Jerusalem shall go forth a remnant and they that escape out of Mount Zion. The zeal of THE LORD of Hosts shall do this!

“Therefore thus saith THE LORD concerning the king of Assyria: He shall not come into this city, nor shoot an arrow there, nor come before it with shield, nor cast a bank against it. By the way that he came, by the same shall he return, and shall not come into this city,” saith THE LORD. “For I will defend this city, to save it - for *Mine Own* sake and for My servant David’s sake.”

And it came to pass that night that the angel of THE LORD went out and smote in the camp of the Assyrians <sup>1</sup>an hundred fourscore and five thousand; and when they arose early in the morning, behold, they were all dead corpses.

<sup>1</sup>5,180 <sup>2</sup>the survivors and/or the people <sup>3</sup>the Assyrians

So Sennacherib king of Assyria departed and went and returned and dwelt at Nineveh. And it came to pass, as he was worshipping in the house of Nisroch his god, that Adrammelech and Sharezer his sons smote him with the sword, and they escaped into the land of Armenia. And Esarhaddon his son reigned in his stead.

In those days was Hezekiah sick unto death. And the prophet Isaiah the son of Amoz came to him and said unto him, “Thus saith THE LORD: Set thine house in order, for thou shalt die and not live.”

Then he turned his face to the wall and prayed unto THE LORD, saying, “I beseech thee, O LORD, remember now how I have walked before Thee in truth and with a perfect heart, and have done that which is good in Thy sight!” And Hezekiah wept <sup>1</sup>sore.

<sup>1</sup>with extreme sorrow

And it came to pass, <sup>1</sup>before Isaiah was gone out into the middle court, that the Word of THE LORD came to him, saying, “Turn again and tell Hezekiah, the captain of My People ‘Thus saith THE LORD, the God of David thy father: I have heard thy prayer, I have seen thy tears. Behold, I will heal thee; on the third day thou shalt go up unto the House of THE LORD. And I will add unto thy days fifteen years; and I will deliver thee and this city out of the hand of the king of Assyria, and I will defend this city for Mine Own sake and for My servant David’s sake.”

<sup>1</sup>before

And Isaiah said, “Take a lump of figs.” And they took and laid it on the boil, and he recovered.

And Hezekiah said unto Isaiah, “What shall be the sign that THE LORD will heal me, and that I shall go up into the House of THE LORD the third day?”

And Isaiah said, “This sign shalt thou have of THE LORD that THE LORD will do the thing that he hath spoken: Shall the <sup>1</sup>shadow go forward ten degrees, or go back ten degrees?”

<sup>1</sup>sun’s shadow of the sundial

And Hezekiah answered, “It is a light thing for the shadow to go down ten degrees! Nay, but let the shadow return backward ten degrees.”

And Isaiah the prophet cried unto THE LORD, and He brought the shadow ten degrees backward by which it had gone down in the Dial of Ahaz.

**SCIENTIFIC THOUGHTS ON THE MOVING OF THE DIAL**

A miraculous event has just been performed by God for King Hezekiah. God has moved back the shadow on the sundial as verification that the king will live an extra 15 years. When the shadow moved, was it an illusion by God, or did God cause a true astronomical event? The fact that the king claims that going forward on the dial would be an easy thing, implying that going *back* on the dial would be difficult, indicates that a true event – not an illusion – would occur. Remembering that the earth goes around the sun, in order for the shadow on a dial to go backward (the equivalent of the hands on your watch suddenly spinning backwards) means that either God literally stopped the earth's rotation and caused it to spin backwards 10 degrees, or, God moved the sun 10 degrees. This is a mighty deed by the Almighty God who has power over all things.

At that time Berodach-Baladan, the son of Baladan, king of Babylon, sent letters and a present unto Hezekiah, for he had heard that Hezekiah had been sick.

And Hezekiah hearkened unto <sup>1</sup>them, and showed them all the house of his precious things, the silver, and the gold, and the spices, and the precious ointment, and all the house of his armour, and all that was found in his treasures. There was nothing in his house, nor in all his dominion, that Hezekiah showed them not.

*<sup>1</sup>the ambassadors*

Then came Isaiah the prophet unto King Hezekiah and said unto him, "What said these men? And from whence came they unto thee?"

And Hezekiah said, "They are come from a far country, even from Babylon."

And he said, "What have they seen in thine house?"

And Hezekiah answered, "All the things that are in mine house have they seen; there is nothing among my treasures that I have not showed them."

And Isaiah said unto Hezekiah, "Hear the Word of THE LORD! Behold, the days come that all that is in thine house, and that which thy fathers have laid up in store unto this day, shall be carried into Babylon! Nothing shall be left," saith THE LORD. "And of thy sons that shall issue from thee, which thou shalt beget, shall they take away; and they shall be eunuchs in the palace of the king of Babylon."

Then said Hezekiah unto Isaiah, "Good is the Word of THE LORD which thou hast spoken." And he said, "Is it not good if peace and truth be in my days?"

And the rest of the acts of Hezekiah, and all his might, and how he made a pool, and a conduit, and brought water into the city, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah? And Hezekiah slept with his fathers. And Manasseh his son reigned in his stead.

Manasseh was twelve years old when he began to reign, and reigned fifty and five years in Jerusalem. And his mother's name was Hephzibah. And he did that which was evil in the sight of THE LORD, after the abominations of the heathen whom THE LORD cast out before the Children of Israel. For he built up again the high places which Hezekiah his father had destroyed; and he reared up altars for Baal and made a grove as did Ahab king of Israel; and worshipped all the host of heaven and served them. And he built altars in the House of THE LORD, of which THE LORD said, "*In Jerusalem will I put My name.*" And he built altars for all the host of heaven in the two courts of the House of THE LORD.

And he made his son pass through the fire, and observed times, and used enchantments, and dealt with familiar spirits and wizards. He wrought much wickedness in the sight of THE LORD to provoke Him to anger. And he set a graven image of the grove that he had made in the House (of which THE LORD said to David, and to Solomon his son, "*In this House and in Jerusalem, which I have chosen out of all tribes of Israel, will I*

*put My Name for ever. Neither will I make the feet of Israel move any more out of the land which I gave their fathers - only if they will observe to do according to all that I have commanded them, and according to all the Law that My servant Moses commanded them.”)*

But they hearkened not, and Manasseh seduced them to do *more* evil than did the nations whom THE LORD destroyed before the Children of Israel.

And THE LORD spake by His servants the prophets, saying, “Because Manasseh king of Judah hath done these abominations and hath done wickedly above all that the Amorites did which were before him, and hath made Judah also to sin with his idols, therefore thus saith THE LORD God of Israel: Behold, I am bringing such evil upon Jerusalem and Judah that, whosoever heareth of it, both his ears shall tingle! And I will stretch over Jerusalem the line of Samaria, and the plummet of the House of Ahab. And I will wipe Jerusalem as a man wipeth a dish, wiping it and turning it upside down. And I will forsake the remnant of Mine inheritance and deliver them into the hand of their enemies; and they shall become a prey and a spoil to all their enemies because they have done that which was evil in My sight and have provoked Me to anger since the day their fathers came forth out of Egypt, even unto this day!”

Moreover, Manasseh shed innocent blood very much till he had filled Jerusalem from one end to another, <sup>1</sup>beside his sin wherewith he made Judah to sin, in doing that which was evil in the sight of THE LORD.

*<sup>1</sup>in addition to*

Now the rest of the acts of Manasseh, and all that he did, and his sin that he sinned, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah? And Manasseh slept with his fathers, and was buried in the garden of his own house, in the garden of Uzza. And Amon his son reigned in his stead.

Amon was twenty and two years old when he began to reign, and he reigned two years in Jerusalem. And his mother's name was Meshullemeth, the daughter of Haruz of Jotbah. And he did that which was evil in the sight of THE LORD as his father Manasseh did. And he walked in all the way that his father walked in, and served the idols that his father served, and worshipped them; and he forsook THE LORD God of his fathers and walked not in the Way of THE LORD.

And the servants of Amon conspired against him and slew the king in his own house. And the people of the land slew all them that had conspired against king Amon. And the people of the land made Josiah his son king in his stead.

Now the rest of the acts of Amon which he did, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah? And he was buried in his sepulchre in the garden of Uzza. And Josiah his son reigned in his stead.

Josiah was eight years old when he began to reign, and he reigned thirty and one years in Jerusalem. And his mother's name was Jedidah, the daughter of Adaiah of Boscath. And he did that which was *right* in the sight of THE LORD, and walked in all the way of David his father, and turned not aside to the right hand or to the left.

And it came to pass in the eighteenth year of King Josiah that the king sent Shaphan the son of Azaliah, the son of Meshullam, the scribe, to the House of THE LORD, saying, “Go up to Hilkiah the High Priest, that he may sum the silver which is brought into the House of THE LORD which the keepers of the door have gathered of the people, and let them deliver it into the hand of the doers of the work that have the oversight of the House of THE LORD. And let them give it to the doers of the work which is in the House of THE LORD to repair the breaches of the House - unto carpenters, and builders, and masons, and to buy timber and hewn stone to repair the House.”

Howbeit there was no reckoning made with them of the money that was delivered into their hand, because they dealt faithfully.

And Hilkiah the High Priest said unto Shaphan the scribe, "I have found the Book of the Law in the House of THE LORD!" And Hilkiah gave the book to Shaphan, and he read it.

And Shaphan the scribe came to the king and brought the king word again, and said, "Thy servants have gathered the money that was found in the House and have delivered it into the hand of them that do the work, that have the oversight of the House of THE LORD."

And Shaphan the scribe showed the king, saying, "Hilkiah the priest hath delivered me a Book."

And Shaphan read it before the king. And it came to pass, when the king had heard the Words of the Book of the Law, that he rent his clothes.

And the king commanded Hilkiah the priest, and Ahikam the son of Shaphan, and Achbor the son of Michaiah, and Shaphan the scribe, and Asahiah a servant of the king's, saying, "Go ye, inquire of THE LORD for me, and for the people, and for all Judah, concerning the Words of this Book that is found! For great is the wrath of THE LORD that is kindled against us because our fathers have not hearkened unto the Words of this Book to do according unto all that which is written concerning us!"

So Hilkiah the priest, and Ahikam, and Achbor, and Shaphan, and Asahiah, went unto Huldah the prophetess, the wife of Shallum the son of Tikvah, the son of Harhas, keeper of the wardrobe (now, she dwelt in Jerusalem in the college) and they communed with her.

And she said unto them, "Thus saith THE LORD God of Israel: Tell the man that sent you to me...

"Thus saith THE LORD: Behold, I will bring evil upon this place, and upon the inhabitants thereof, even all the Words of the Book which the king of Judah hath read, because they have forsaken Me and have burned incense unto other gods that they might provoke Me to anger with all the works of their hands; therefore My wrath shall be kindled against this place and shall not be quenched. But to the king of Judah which sent you to inquire of THE LORD, thus shall ye say to him...

"Thus saith THE LORD God of Israel: As touching the Words which thou hast heard, because thine heart was tender and thou hast humbled thyself before THE LORD when thou heardest what I spake against this place and against the inhabitants thereof, that they should become a desolation and a curse, and hast rent thy clothes and wept before Me, I also have heard thee," saith THE LORD. "Behold therefore, I will gather thee unto thy fathers and thou shalt be gathered into thy grave in peace; and thine eyes shall not see all the evil which I will bring upon this place."

And they brought the king word again. And the king sent, and they gathered unto him all the elders of Judah and of Jerusalem. And the king went up into the House of THE LORD, and all the men of Judah and all the inhabitants of Jerusalem with him, and the priests, and the prophets, and all the people, both small and great. And he read in their ears all the Words of the Book of the Covenant which was found in the House of THE LORD.

And the king stood by a pillar, and made a covenant before THE LORD, to walk after THE LORD and to keep His commandments and His testimonies and His statutes with all their heart and all their soul, to perform the Words of this covenant that were written in this Book. And all the people stood to the covenant.

And the king commanded Hilkiah the High Priest, and the priests of the second order, and the keepers of the door, to bring forth out of the Temple of THE LORD all the vessels that were made for Baal, and for the grove, and for all the host of heaven. And he burned them <sup>1</sup>without Jerusalem in the fields of Kidron, and carried the ashes of them unto Bethel.

<sup>1</sup>outside

And he put down the idolatrous priests whom the kings of Judah had ordained to burn incense in the high places in the cities of Judah, and in the places round about Jerusalem, them also that burned incense unto Baal, to the sun, and to the moon, and to the planets, and to all the host of heaven.

And he brought out the <sup>1</sup>grove from the House of THE LORD, without Jerusalem, unto the brook Kidron, and burned it at the brook Kidron, and stamped it small to powder and cast the powder thereof upon the graves of the children of the people.

*<sup>1</sup>image of the fertility goddess Asteroth/Astare/Ashera*

And he brake down the houses of the <sup>1</sup>sodomites that were by the House of THE LORD where the women wove hangings for the grove.

*<sup>1</sup>Khadeshim – male temple prostitutes who engaged in sexual religious rites with both females and males for pagan fertility gods, see note on page 399.*

And he brought all the priests out of the cities of Judah and defiled the high places where the priests had burned incense - from Geba to Beersheba - and brake down the high places of the gates that were in the entering in of the gate of Joshua the governor of the city, which were on a man's <sup>1</sup>left hand at the gate of the city.

*<sup>1</sup>left side/on the left*

Nevertheless the priests of the high places came not up to the Altar of THE LORD in Jerusalem, but they did eat of the <sup>1</sup>unleavened bread among their brethren.

*<sup>1</sup>the Passover Matzah/bread of the Lord's Supper*

And he defiled Topheth, which is in the Valley of the Children of Hinnom, that no man might make his son or his daughter to pass through the fire to Molech.

And he took away the horses that the kings of Judah had given to the sun at the entering in of the House of THE LORD by the chamber of Nathanmelech the chamberlain, which was in the suburbs, and burned the chariots of the sun with fire.

And the altars that were on the top of the upper chamber of Ahaz which the kings of Judah had made and the altars which Manasseh had made in the two courts of the House of THE LORD did the king beat down, and brake them down from thence, and cast the dust of them into the brook Kidron.

And the high places that were before Jerusalem which were on the right hand of the Mount of Corruption which Solomon the king of Israel had builded for Ashtoreth (the abomination of the Zidonians) and for Chemosh (the abomination of the Moabites) and for Milcom (the abomination of the children of Ammon) did the king defile. And he brake in pieces the images, and cut down the groves, and filled their places with the bones of men.

Moreover the altar that was at Bethel and the high place which Jeroboam (the son of Nebat who made Israel to sin) had made - both that altar and the high place - he brake down and burned the high place and stamped it small to powder and burned the grove.

And as Josiah turned himself, he spied the sepulchres that were there in the mount, and sent and took the bones out of the sepulchres and burned them upon the altar and polluted it according to the Word of THE LORD which the man of God proclaimed, who proclaimed these words.

Then he said, "What <sup>1</sup>title is that that I see?"

*<sup>1</sup>inscription on the tomb*

And the men of the city told him, "It is the sepulchre of the man of God which came from Judah and proclaimed these things that thou hast done against the altar of Bethel."

And he said, "Let him alone; let no man move his bones." So they let his bones alone, with the bones of the prophet that came out of Samaria.

And all the houses also of the high places that were in the cities of Samaria, which the kings of Israel had made to provoke THE LORD to anger, Josiah took away and did to them according to all the acts that he had done in Bethel. And he slew all the priests of the high places that were there upon the altars, and burned men's bones upon them, and returned to Jerusalem.

And the king commanded all the people, saying, "Keep the Passover unto THE LORD your God, as it is written in the Book of this Covenant!"

Surely there was not <sup>1</sup>holden such a Passover from the days of the judges that judged Israel, nor in all the days of the kings of Israel, nor of the kings of Judah, but in the eighteenth year of king Josiah wherein this Passover was holden to THE LORD in Jerusalem. <sup>1</sup>held/kept/celebrated

Moreover the workers with familiar spirits, and the wizards, and the images, and the idols, and all the abominations that were spied in the land of Judah and in Jerusalem, did Josiah put away, that he might perform the Words of the Law which were written in the Book that Hilkiah the priest found in the House of THE LORD.

And like unto him was there no king before him that turned to THE LORD with all his heart, and with all his soul, and with all his might, according to all the Law of Moses; neither after him arose there any like him.

Notwithstanding THE LORD turned not from the fierceness of His great wrath wherewith His anger was kindled against Judah because of all the provocations that Manasseh had provoked Him withal.

And THE LORD said, "I will remove Judah also out of My sight as I have removed Israel, and will cast off this city Jerusalem which I have chosen, and the house of which I said, *My name shall be there.*"

Now the rest of the acts of Josiah, and all that he did, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah? In his days Pharaoh-Nechoh king of Egypt went up against the king of Assyria to the River Euphrates. And King Josiah went against him; and <sup>1</sup>he slew <sup>2</sup>him at <sup>3</sup>Megiddo when he had seen him. And his servants carried him in a chariot dead from Megiddo, and brought him to Jerusalem, and buried him in his own sepulchre. And the people of the land took Jehoahaz the son of Josiah, and anointed him, and made him king in his father's stead. <sup>1</sup>Pharaoh <sup>2</sup>Josiah <sup>3</sup>Plain of Megiddo/Har-Megiddon/Armageddon

Jehoahaz was twenty and three years old when he began to reign; and he reigned three months in Jerusalem. And his mother's name was Hamutal, the daughter of Jeremiah of Libnah. And he did that which was evil in the sight of THE LORD according to all that his fathers had done.

And Pharaoh-Nechoh put him in bands at Riblah in the land of Hamath, that he might not reign in Jerusalem; and put the land to a tribute of an hundred talents of silver and a talent of gold.

And Pharaoh-Nechoh made Eliakim, the son of Josiah, king in the <sup>1</sup>room of Josiah his father, and turned his name to Jehoiakim, and took Jehoahaz away; and he came to Egypt, and died there. <sup>1</sup>office

And Jehoiakim gave the silver and the gold to Pharaoh - but he taxed the land to give the money according to the commandment of Pharaoh. He exacted the silver and the gold of the people of the land, of every one according to his taxation, to give it unto Pharaoh-Nechoh.

Jehoiakim was twenty and five years old when he began to reign; and he reigned eleven years in Jerusalem. And his mother's name was Zebudah, the daughter of Pedaiah of Rumah. And he did that which was evil in the sight of THE LORD according to all that his fathers had done.

In his days Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon came up, and Jehoiakim became his servant three years. Then he turned and rebelled against him. And THE LORD sent against him <sup>1</sup>bands of the Chaldees, and bands of the Syrians, and bands of the Moabites, and bands of the children of Ammon, and sent them against Judah to destroy it according to the Word of THE LORD which He spake by His servants the prophets.

*<sup>1</sup>bands of army troops*

Surely at the commandment of THE LORD came this upon Judah to remove them out of His sight for the sins of Manasseh according to all that he did; and also for the innocent blood that he shed - for he filled Jerusalem with innocent blood, which THE LORD would not pardon.

Now the rest of the acts of Jehoiakim, and all that he did, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah? So Jehoiakim slept with his fathers. And Jehoiachin his son reigned in his stead.

And the king of Egypt came not again any more out of his land, for the king of Babylon had taken from the river of Egypt unto the river Euphrates all that pertained to the king of Egypt.

Jehoiachin was eighteen years old when he began to reign, and he reigned in Jerusalem three months. And his mother's name was Nehushta, the daughter of Elnathan of Jerusalem. And he did that which was evil in the sight of THE LORD according to all that his father had done.

At that time the servants of Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon came up against Jerusalem, and the city was besieged. And Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon came against the city, and his servants did besiege it.

And Jehoiachin the king of Judah went out to the king of Babylon - he, and his mother, and his servants, and his princes, and his officers. And the king of Babylon took him in the eighth year of his reign. And he carried out thence all the treasures of the House of THE LORD and the treasures of the king's house, and cut in pieces all the vessels of gold which Solomon king of Israel had made in the Temple of THE LORD, as THE LORD had said. And he carried away all Jerusalem, and all the princes, and all the mighty men of valour, even ten thousand captives, and all the craftsmen and smiths. None remained, save the poorest sort of the people of the land.

And he carried away Jehoiachin to Babylon, and the king's mother, and the king's wives, and his officers, and the mighty of the land; those carried he into captivity from Jerusalem to Babylon.

And all the men of might, even seven thousand, and craftsmen and smiths a thousand, all that were strong and apt for war, even them the king of Babylon brought captive to Babylon.

And the king of Babylon made Mattaniah, his father's brother, king in his stead, and changed his name to Zedekiah. Zedekiah was twenty and one years old when he began to reign, and he reigned eleven years in Jerusalem. And his mother's name was Hamutal, the daughter of Jeremiah of Libnah. And he did that which was evil in the sight of THE LORD according to all that Jehoiakim had done.

For, through the anger of THE LORD it came to pass in Jerusalem and Judah, until he had cast them out from His presence, that Zedekiah rebelled against the king of Babylon. And it came to pass in the ninth year of his reign, in the tenth month, in the tenth day of the month, that Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon came - he and all his host - against Jerusalem, and pitched against it. And they built forts against it round about. And the city was besieged unto the eleventh year of King Zedekiah.

And on the ninth day of the fourth month the famine prevailed in the city, and there was no bread for the people of the land. And the city was broken up, and all the men of war fled by night by the way of the gate between two walls, which is by the king's garden (now, the Chaldees were against the city round about) and the king went the way toward the plain.

And the army of the Chaldees pursued after the king, and overtook him in the plains of Jericho; and all his army were scattered from him. So they took the king and brought him up to the king of Babylon to Riblah; and they gave judgment upon him. And they slew the sons of Zedekiah before his eyes, and put out the eyes of Zedekiah, and bound him with fetters of brass, and carried him to Babylon.

And in the fifth month, on the seventh day of the month (which is the nineteenth year of King Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon) came Nebuzaradan, captain of the guard, a servant of the king of Babylon, unto Jerusalem. And he burnt the House of THE LORD and the king's house and all the houses of Jerusalem, and every great man's house burnt he with fire. And all the army of the Chaldees that were with the captain of the guard brake down the walls of Jerusalem round about.

Now, the rest of the people that were left in the city, and the fugitives that fell away to the king of Babylon, with the remnant of the multitude, did Nebuzaradan the captain of the guard carry away. But the captain of the guard left of the poor of the land to be vinedressers and husbandmen.

And the pillars of brass that were in the House of THE LORD, and the bases, and the brazen sea that was in the House of THE LORD, did the Chaldees break in pieces and carried the brass of them to Babylon. And the pots, and the shovels, and the snuffers, and the spoons, and all the vessels of brass wherewith they ministered, took they away. And the firepans, and the bowls, and such things as were of gold, in gold, and of silver, in silver, the captain of the guard took away.

The two pillars, one sea, and the bases which Solomon had made for the House of THE LORD (the brass of all these vessels was without weight). The height of the one pillar was eighteen cubits, and the chapter upon it was brass, and the height of the chapter three cubits; and the wreathen work, and pomegranates upon the chapter round about, all of brass. And like unto these had the second pillar with wreathen work.

And the captain of the guard took Seraiah the chief priest, and Zephaniah the second priest, and the three keepers of the door. And out of the city he took an officer that was set over the men of war, and five men of them that were in the king's presence which were found in the city, and the principal scribe of the host which mustered the people of the land, and <sup>1</sup>threescore men of the people of the land that were found in the city. '60

And Nebuzaradan captain of the guard took these and brought them to the king of Babylon to Riblah. And the king of Babylon smote them, and slew them at Riblah in the land of Hamath.

So Judah was carried away out of their land. And as for the people that remained in the land of Judah, whom Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon had left, even over them he made Gedaliah the son of Ahikam, the son of Shaphan, ruler.

And when all the captains of the armies, they and their men, heard that the king of Babylon had made Gedaliah governor, there came to Gedaliah to Mizpah, even Ishmael the son of Nethaniah, and Johanan the son of Careah, and Seraiah the son of Tanhumeth the Netophathite, and Jaazaniah the son of a Maachathite, they and their men.

And Gedaliah sware to them and to their men and said unto them, "Fear not to be the servants of the Chaldees. Dwell in the land and serve the king of Babylon, and it shall be well with you."

But it came to pass in the seventh month that Ishmael, the son of Nethaniah, the son of Elishama, of the seed royal, came, and ten men with him, and smote Gedaliah that he died, and the Jews and the Chaldees that were with him at Mizpah. And all the people, both small and great, and the captains of the armies, arose and came to Egypt, for they were afraid of the Chaldees.

And it came to pass in the seven and thirtieth year of the captivity of Jehoiachin king of Judah, in the twelfth month, on the seven and twentieth day of the month, that Evilmerodach king of Babylon in the year that he began to reign did lift up the head of Jehoiachin king of Judah out of prison. And he spake kindly to him and set his throne above the throne of the kings that were with him in Babylon; and changed his prison garments, and he did eat bread continually before him all the days of his life. And his allowance was a continual allowance given him of the king, a daily rate for every day, all the days of his life.

- Adam,
- Sheth,
- Enosh,
- Kenan,
- Mahalaleel,
- Jered,
- Henoch,
- Methuselah,
- Lamech,
- Noah,
- Shem, Ham, and Japheth.

The sons of Japheth:

- **Gomer,**
- and Magog,
- and Madai,
- and **Javan,**
- and Tubal,
- and Meshech,
- and Tiras.

And the sons of Gomer:

- Ashchenaz,
- and Riphath,
- and Togarmah.

And the sons of Javan:

- Elishah,
- and Tarshish,
- Kittim,
- and Dodanim.

The sons of Ham:

- **Cush,**
- and **Mizraim,**
- Put,
- and **Canaan.**

And the sons of **Cush:**

- Seba,
- and Havilah,

- and Sabta,
- and **Raamah**,
- and Sabtecha.

And the sons of **Raamah**:

- Sheba,
- and Dedan.

And Cush begat:

- <sup>1</sup>Nimrod - he began to be mighty upon the earth.

*<sup>1</sup>the founder of Babylon*

And Mizraim begat:

- Ludim,
- and Anamim,
- and Lehabim,
- and Naphtuhim,
- and Pathrusim,
- and Casluhim (of whom came the Philistines),
- and Caphthorim.

And **Canaan** begat:

- Zidon, his firstborn
- and Heth,
- the Jebusite also,
- and the Amorite,
- and the Girgashite,
- and the Hivite,
- and the Arkite,
- and the Sinite,
- and the Arvadite,
- and the Zemarite,
- and the Hamathite.

The sons of Shem:

- Elam,
- and Asshur,
- and **Arphaxad**,
- and Lud,
- and Aram,
- and Uz,
- and Hul,
- and Gether,
- and Meshech.

And **Arphaxad** begat:

- **Shelah**

And **Shelah** begat:

- **Eber**.

And unto **Eber** were born two sons:

- the name of the one was Peleg (because in his days the earth was divided),
- and his brother's name was **Joktan**.

And **Joktan** begat:

- Almodad,
- and Sheleph,
- and Hazarmaveth,
- and Jerah,
- Hadoram also,
- and Uzal,
- and Diklah,
- and Ebal,
- and Abimael,
- and Sheba,
- and Ophir,
- and Havilah,
- and Jobab.

All these were the sons of Joktan.

Shem,  
 Arphaxad,  
 Shelah,  
 Eber,  
 Peleg,  
 Reu,  
 Serug,  
 Nahor,  
 Terah,  
 Abram (the same is Abraham).

The sons of Abraham:

- Isaac,
- and Ishmael.

These are their generations:

The firstborn of Ishmael:

- Nebaioth;
- then Kedar,
- and Adbeel,
- and Mibsam,
- Mishma,
- and Dumah,
- Massa,
- Hadad,
- and Tema,
- Jetur,
- Naphish, and
- Kedemah.

These are the sons of Ishmael.

Now the sons of Keturah, Abraham's concubine, she bare:

- Zimran,
- and **Jokshan**,

- and Medan,
- and **Midian**,
- and Ishbak,
- and Shuah.

And the sons of **Jokshan**:

- Sheba,
- and Dedan.

And the sons of **Midian**:

- Ephah,
- and Epher,
- and Henoah,
- and Abida,
- and Eldaah.

All these are the sons of Keturah.

And Abraham begat:

- **Isaac**.

The sons of **Isaac**:

- **Esau**
- and Israel.

The sons of **Esau**:

- **Eliphaz**,
- **Reuel**,
- and Jeush,
- and Jaalam,
- and Korah.

The sons of **Eliphaz**:

- Teman,
- and Omar,
- Zephi,
- and Gatam,
- Kenaz,
- and Timna,
- and Amalek.

The sons of **Reuel**:

- Nahath,
- Zerah,
- Shammah,
- and Mizzah.

And the sons of Seir:

- **Lotan**,
- and **Shobal**,
- and **Zibeon**,
- and **Anah**,
- and **Dishon**,
- and **Ezar**,
- and **Dishan**.

And the sons of **Lotan**:

- Hori,

- and Homam:

And Timna was Lotan's sister.

The sons of **Shobal**:

- Alian,
- and Manahath,
- and Ebal,
- Shephi,
- and Onam.

And the sons of **Zibeon**:

- Aiah,
- and Anah.

The sons of **Anah**:

- Dishon.

And the sons of **Dishon**:

- Amram,
- and Eshban,
- and Ithran,
- and Cheran.

The sons of **Ezer**:

- Bilhan,
- and Zavan,
- and Jakan.

The sons of **Dishan**:

- Uz,
- and Aran.

Now these are the kings that reigned in the land of Edom before any king reigned over the Children of Israel:

- Bela the son of Beor; and the name of his city was Dinhabah. And when Bela was dead:
- Jobab the son of Zerah of Bozrah reigned in his stead. And when Jobab was dead:
- Husham of the land of the Temanites reigned in his stead. And when Husham was dead:
- Hadad the son of Bedad, which smote Midian in the field of Moab, reigned in his stead; and the name of his city was Avith. And when Hadad was dead:
- Samlah of Masrekah reigned in his stead. And when Samlah was dead:
- Shaul of Rehoboth by the river reigned in his stead. And when Shaul was dead:
- Baalhanan the son of Achbor reigned in his stead. And when Baalhanan was dead:
- Hadad reigned in his stead; and the name of his city was Pai, and his wife's name was Mehetabel, the daughter of Matred, the daughter of Mezahab. Hadad died also.

And the dukes of Edom were:

- duke Timnah,
- duke Aliah,
- duke Jetheth,
- duke Aholibamah,
- duke Elah,
- duke Pinon,
- duke Kenaz,
- duke Teman,
- duke Mibzar,

- duke Magdiel,
- duke Iram.

These are the dukes of Edom.

These are the sons of Israel:

- Reuben,
- Simeon,
- Levi,
- and **Judah**,
- Issachar,
- and Zebulun,
- Dan,
- Joseph,
- and Benjamin,
- Naphtali,
- Gad,
- and Asher.

The sons of **Judah**:

- Er,
- and Onan,
- and Shelah

-which three were born unto him of the daughter of Shua the Canaanitess.

And Er, the firstborn of Judah, was evil in the sight of THE LORD and He slew him.

And Tamar <sup>1</sup>his daughter in law bare <sup>1</sup>him:

*<sup>1</sup>Judah's*

- Pharez
- and Zerah.

-all the sons of Judah were five.

The sons of Pharez:

- Hezron,
- and Hamul.

And the sons of Zerah:

- <sup>1</sup>Zimri,
- and Ethan,
- and Heman,
- and Calcol,
- and Dara:

*<sup>1</sup>Zabdi*

*<sup>1</sup>Darda*

-five of them in all.

And the sons of <sup>1</sup>Carmi:

*<sup>1</sup>brother of Pharez and Zerah*

- Achar, the troubler of Israel, who transgressed in the thing accursed.

And the sons of Ethan:

- Azariah.

The sons also of Hezron that were born unto him:

- Jerahmeel,

- and Ram,
- and Chelubai.

And Ram begat:

- Amminadab; and Amminadab begat:
- Nahshon, prince of the children of Judah; and Nahshon begat:
- Salma; and Salma begat:
- Boaz; and Boaz begat
- Obed; and Obed begat:
  - Jesse.

And Jesse begat:

- his firstborn Eliab,
- and Abinadab the second,
- and Shimma the third,
- Nethaneel the fourth,
- Raddai the fifth,
- Ozem the sixth,
- David the seventh,

whose sisters were:

- Zeruiah,
- and Abigail.

And the sons of Zeruiah:

- Abishai,
- and Joab,
- and Asahel -three.

And Abigail bare:

- Amasa (and the father of Amasa was Jether the Ishmaelite)

And Caleb the son of Hezron begat children of Azubah his wife, and of Jerioth. Her sons are these:

- Jeshur,
- and Shobab,
- and Ardon.

And when Azubah was dead, Caleb took unto him Ephrath, which bare him:

- Hur; and Hur begat:
  - Uri; and Uri begat:
    - Bezaleel.

And afterward Hezron went in to the daughter of Machir (the father of Gilead), whom he married when he was <sup>1</sup>threescore years old, and she bare him: 160

- Segub; and Segub begat:
  - Jair, who had three and twenty cities in the land of Gilead.

And he took Geshur and Aram, with the towns of Jair, from them, with Kenath, and the towns thereof, even threescore cities. All these belonged to the sons of Machir, the father of Gilead.

And after that Hezron was dead in Caleb-Ephratah, then Abiah (Hezron's wife) bare him:

- Ashur, the father of Tekoa.

And the sons of Jerahmeel the firstborn of Hezron were:

- Ram the firstborn,
- and Bunah,
- and Oren,
- and Ozem,
- and Ahijah.

Jerahmeel had also another wife, whose name was Atarah; she was the mother of:

- Onam.

And the sons of Ram the firstborn of Jerahmeel were:

- Maaz,
- and Jamin,
- and Eker.

And the sons of Onam were:

- Shammai,
- and Jada.

And the sons of Shammai:

- Nadab,
- and Abishur.

And the name of the wife of Abishur was Abihail, and she bare him:

- Ahban,
- and Molid.

And the sons of Nadab:

- Seled,
- and Appaim

(but Seled died without children).

And the sons of Appaim:

- Ishi.

And the sons of Ishi:

- Sheshan.

And the children of Sheshan:

- Ahlai.

And the sons of Jada the brother of Shammai:

- Jether,
- and Jonathan

(and Jether died without children).

And the sons of Jonathan:

- Peleth,
- and Zaza.

These were the sons of Jerahmeel.

Now, Sheshan had no sons, but daughters. And Sheshan had a servant, an Egyptian, whose name was Jarha. And Sheshan gave his daughter to Jarha, his servant, to wife; and she bare him:

- Attai;

and Attai begat:

- Nathan;
- and Nathan begat:

- Zabad;

and Zabad begat:

- Ephlal;

and Ephlal begat:

- Obed;

and Obed begat:

- Jehu;

and Jehu begat:

- Azariah;

and Azariah begat:

- Helez;

and Helez begat:

- Eleasah;

and Eleasah begat:

- Sisamai;

and Sisamai begat:

- Shallum;

and Shallum begat:

- Jekamiah;

and Jekamiah begat:

- Elishama.

Now the sons of Caleb, the brother of Jerahmeel, were:

- Mesha his firstborn,
- which was the father of Ziph;
  - and the sons of Mareshah the father of Hebron.

And the sons of Hebron:

- Korah,
- and Tappuah,
- and Rekem,
- and Shema.

And Shema begat:

- Raham, the father of:
  - Jorkoam.

And Rekem begat:

- Shammai.

And the son of Shammai was:

- Maon.

And Maon was the father of:

- Bethzur.

And Ephah, Caleb's concubine, bare:

- Haran,
- and Moza,
- and Gazez:

and Haran begat:

- Gazez.

And the sons of Jahdai:

- Regem,
- and Jotham,
- and Gesham,
- and Pelet,

- and Ephah,
- and Shaaph.

Maachah, Caleb's concubine, bare:

- Sheber,
- and Tirhanah.

She bare also

- Shaaph the father of:
- Madmannah,
- Sheva the father of:
- Machbenah,

and the father of:

- Gibeah:

and the daughter of Caleb was:

- Achsa.

These were the sons of Caleb the son of Hur, the firstborn of Ephratah:

- Shobal, the father of:
  - Kirjathjearim,
- Salma, the father of:
  - Bethlehem,
- Hareph, the father of:
  - Bethgader.

And Shobal the father of Kirjathjearim had sons:

- Haroeh,
- and half of the Manahethites.

And the families of Kirjathjearim:

- the Ithrites,
- and the Puhites,
- and the Shumathites,
- and the Mishraites;

of them came:

- the Zareathites,
- and the Eshtaulites.

The sons of Salma:

- Bethlehem,
- and the Netophathites,
- Ataroth,
- the house of Joab,
- and half of the Manahethites,
- the Zorites.

And the families of the scribes which dwelt at Jabez:

- the Tirathites,

- the Shimeathites,
- and Suchathites.

These are the Kenites that came of Hemath, the father of the house of Rechab.

Now these were the sons of David, which were born unto him in Hebron:

- the firstborn, Amnon, of Ahinoam the Jezreelitess;
- the second, Daniel, of Abigail the Carmelitess'
- the third, Absalom, the son of Maachah the daughter of Talmai king of Geshur;
- the fourth, Adonijah the son of Haggith;
- the fifth, Shephatiah of Abital;
- the sixth, Ithream by Eglah his wife.

These six were born unto him in Hebron; and there he reigned seven years and six months. And in Jerusalem he reigned thirty and three years, and these were born unto him in Jerusalem:

- Shimea,
- and Shobab,
- and Nathan,
- and Solomon -four, of <sup>1</sup>Bathshua the daughter of Ammiel.
- Ibhar also,
- and <sup>2</sup>Elishama,
- and <sup>2</sup>Eliphelet,
- and Nogah,
- and Nepheg,
- and Japhia,
- and <sup>2</sup>Elishama,
- and Eliada,
- and <sup>2</sup>Eliphelet -nine.

These were all the sons of David, beside the sons of the concubines, and Tamar their sister.

*<sup>1</sup>Bathsheba <sup>2</sup>NOTE: As to why Elishama and Eliphelet are named twice, this quote from the Jamieson-Fausset-Brown Bible Commentary might be of help. "They were [possibly] the children of different mothers, and had probably some title or epithet appended by which the one was distinguished from the other. Or, it might be, that the former two were dead, and their names had been given to sons afterwards born to preserve their memories."*

And Solomon's son was:

- Rehoboam,
- Abia his son,
- Asa his son,
- Jehoshaphat his son,
- Joram his son,
- Ahaziah his son,
- Joash his son,
- Amaziah his son,
- Azariah his son,
- Jotham his son,
- Ahaz his son,
- Hezekiah his son,
- Manasseh his son,
- Amon his son,
- Josiah his son.

And the sons of Josiah were:

- the firstborn Johanan,
- the second Jehoiakim,

- the third Zedekiah,
- the fourth Shallum.

And the sons of Jehoiakim:

- Jeconiah his son,
- Zedekiah his son.

And the sons of Jeconiah:

- Assir,
- Salathiel his son,
- Malchiram also,
- and Pedaiah,
- and Shenazar,
- Jecamiah,
- Hoshama,
- and Nedabiah.

And the sons of Pedaiah were:

- Zerubbabel,
- and Shimei.

And the sons of Zerubbabel:

- Meshullam,
- and Hananiah,
- and Shelomith, their sister,
- and Hashubah,
- and Ohel,
- and Berechiah,
- and Hasadiah,
- Jushabhesed -five.

And the sons of Hananiah:

- Pelatiah,
- and Jesaiah,
- the sons of Rephaiah,
- the sons of Arnan,
- the sons of Obadiah,
- the sons of Shechaniah.

And the sons of Shechaniah:

- Shemaiah.

And the sons of Shemaiah:

- Hattush,
- and Igeal,
- and Bariah,
- and Neariah,
- and Shaphat -six.

And the sons of Neariah:

- Elioenai,
- and Hezekiah,
- and Azrikam -three.

And the sons of Elioenai were:

- Hodaiah,
- and Eliashib,
- and Pelaiah,
- and Akkub,
- and Johanan,
- and Dalaiah,
- and Anani -seven.

The sons of Judah:

- Pharez,
- Hezron,
- and Carmi,
- and Hur,
- and Shobal.
  - And Reaiah the son of Shobal begat:
    - Jahath,
    - and Jahath begat:
      - Ahumai,
      - and Lahad.

These are the families of the Zorathites.

And these were of the father of:

- Etam:
  - Jezreel,
  - and Ishma,
  - and Idbash,
  - and the name of their sister was Hazelelponi,
  - and Penuel, the father of:
    - Gedor,
  - and Ezer, the father of:
    - Hushah.

These are the sons of Hur, the firstborn of Ephratah, the father of:

- Bethlehem.

And Ashur the father of Tekoa had two wives, Helah and Naarah.

And Naarah bare him:

- Ahuzam,
  - and Hopher,
  - and Temeni,
  - and Haahashtari.
- These were the sons of Naarah.

And the sons of Helah were:

- Zereth,

- and Jezoar,
- and Ethnan.

And Coz begat:

- Anub,
- and Zobebah,
- and the families of Aharhel the son of Harum.

And Jabez was more honourable than his brethren, and his mother called his name *Jabez*, saying, "Because I bare him with sorrow".

And Jabez called on the God of Israel, saying, "Oh that thou wouldest bless me indeed, and enlarge my coast, and that Thine hand might be with me, and that Thou wouldest keep me from evil, that it may not grieve me!" And God granted him that which he requested.

And Chelub the brother of Shuah begat:

- Mehir, which was the father of:
  - Eshton.

And Eshton begat:

- Bethrapha,
- and Paseah,
- and Tehinnah the father of:
  - Irrahash.

-These are the men of Rechah.

And the sons of Kenaz:

- Othniel,
- and Seraiah.

And the sons of Othniel;

- Hathath.
- And Meonothai begat:

- Ophrah

And Seraiah begat:

- Joab, the father of the valley of Charashim (for they were craftsmen).

And the sons of Caleb the son of Jephunneh:

- Iru,
- Elah,
- and Naam.

And the sons of Elah:

- even Kenaz.

And the sons of Jehaleleel:

- Ziph,
- and Ziphah,
- Tiria,
- and Asareel.

And the sons of Ezra were:

- Jether,
- and Mered,
- and Epher,
- and Jalon - and she bare:
  - Miriam,
  - and Shammai,
  - and Ishbah, the father of:
    - Eshtemoa - and his wife Jehudijah bare:
      - Jered, the father of:
        - Gedor,
        - and Heber, the father of:
          - Socho,
          - and Jekuthiel, the father of:
            - Zanoah.

And these are the sons of Bithiah the daughter of Pharaoh, which Mered took. And the sons of his wife Hodiah the sister of Naham, the father of:

- Keilah the Garmite,
- and Eshtemoa the Maachathite.

And the sons of Shimon were:

- Amnon,
- and Rinnah,
- Benhanan,
- and Tilon.

And the sons of Ishi were:

- Zoheth,
- and <sup>1</sup>Benzoheth.

<sup>1</sup>meaning "son of Zoheth", therefore it is unclear whether Benzoheth is the son or brother of Zoheth

The sons of Shelah the son of Judah were:

- Er the father of:
  - Lecah,
- and Laadah the father of:
  - Mareshah (and the families of the House of them that wrought fine linen) of the House of:
  - Ashbea,
  - and Jokim,
  - and the men of Chozeba,
  - and Joash,
  - and Saraph (who had the dominion in Moab),
  - and Jashubilehem.

And these are ancient things. These were the potters and those that dwelt among plants and hedges; there they dwelt with the king for his work.

The sons of Simeon were:

- Nemuel,
- and Jamin,
- Jarib,

- Zerah,
- and Shaul:
  - Shallum his son,
  - Mibsam his son,
  - Mishma his son.

And the sons of Mishma:

- Hamuel his son,
- Zacchur his son,
- Shimei his son.

And Shimei had sixteen sons and six daughters; but his brethren had not many children, neither did all their family multiply, like to the children of Judah. And they dwelt at Beersheba, and Moladah, and Hazarshual, and at Bilhah, and at Ezem, and at Tolad, and at Bethuel, and at Hormah, and at Ziklag, and at Bethmarcaboth, and Hazarsusim, and at Bethbirei, and at Shaaraim. These were their cities unto the reign of David. And their villages were Etam, and Ain, Rimmon, and Tochen, and Ashan - five cities, and all their villages that were round about the same cities, unto Baal. These were their habitations and their genealogy.

And Meshobab, and Jamlech, and Joshah (the son of Amaziah), and Joel, and Jehu (the son of Josibiah, the son of Seraiah, the son of Asiel), and Elioenai, and Jaakobah, and Jeshohaiah, and Asaiah, and Adiel, and Jesimiel, and Benaiah, and Ziza (the son of Shiphi, the son of Allon, the son of Jedaiah, the son of Shimri, the son of Shemaiah) - these mentioned by their names were princes in their families; and the House of their fathers increased greatly.

And they went to the entrance of Gedor, even unto the east side of the valley, to seek pasture for their flocks. And they found fat pasture and good, and the land was wide, and quiet, and peaceable; for they of Ham had dwelt there of old. And these written by name came in the days of Hezekiah king of Judah and smote their tents and the habitations that were found there and destroyed them utterly unto this day, and dwelt in their rooms, because there was pasture there for their flocks. And some of them, even of the sons of Simeon, five hundred men, went to Mount Seir, having for their captains Pelatiah, and Neariah, and Rephaiah, and Uzziel, the sons of Ishi. And they smote the rest of the Amalekites that were escaped, and dwelt there unto this day.

Now the sons of Reuben the firstborn of Israel (for he was the firstborn; but, forasmuch as he defiled his father's bed, his birthright was given unto the sons of Joseph the son of Israel: and the genealogy is **not** to be reckoned after the birthright. For Judah prevailed above his brethren, and of him came the chief ruler; but the birthright was Joseph's).

The sons, I say, of Reuben the firstborn of Israel were:

- Hanoch,
- and Pallu,
- Hezron,
- and Carmi.
- The sons of Joel:
  - Shemaiah his son,
  - Gog his son,
  - Shimei his son,
  - Micah his son,
  - Reaia his son,
  - Baal his son,
  - Beerah his son, whom Tilgathpilneser king of Assyria carried away captive; he was prince of the Reubenites.

And his brethren by their families, when the genealogy of their generations was reckoned, were the chief: Jeiel, and Zechariah, and Bela the son of Azaz, the son of Shema, the son of Joel, who dwelt in Aroer, even unto Nebo and Baalmeon. And eastward he inhabited unto the entering in of the wilderness from the river Euphrates, because their cattle were multiplied in the land of Gilead.

And in the days of Saul they made war with the Hagarites, who fell by their hand; and they dwelt in their tents throughout all the east land of Gilead. And the children of Gad dwelt over against them, in the land of Bashan unto Salcah: Joel the chief, and Shapham the next, and Jaanai, and Shaphat in Bashan.

And their brethren of the house of their fathers were Michael, and Meshullam, and Sheba, and Jorai, and Jachan, and Zia, and Heber - seven.

These are the children of Abihail the son of Huri, the son of Jaroah, the son of Gilead, the son of Michael, the son of Jeshishai, the son of Jahdo, the son of Buz: Ahi the son of Abdiel, the son of Guni, chief of the house of their fathers.

And they dwelt in Gilead in Bashan, and in her towns, and in all the suburbs of Sharon, upon their borders.

All these were reckoned by genealogies in the days of Jotham king of Judah, and in the days of Jeroboam king of Israel.

The sons of Reuben, and the Gadites, and half the tribe of Manasseh, of valiant men, men able to bear buckler and sword, and to shoot with bow, and skilful in war, were four and forty thousand seven hundred and threescore, that went out to the war. And they made war with the Hagarites, with Jetur, and Nephish, and Nodab. And they were helped against them, and the Hagarites were delivered into their hand, and all that were with them; for they cried to God in the battle, and He was entreated of them because they put their trust in Him. And they took away their cattle; of their camels fifty thousand, and of sheep two hundred and fifty thousand, and of asses two thousand, and of men an hundred thousand. For there fell down many slain, because the war was of God. And they dwelt in their steads until the captivity.

And the children of the half tribe of Manasseh dwelt in the land; they increased from Bashan unto Baalhermon and Senir, and unto Mount Hermon.

And these were the heads of the house of their fathers, even Epher, and Ishi, and Eliel, and Azriel, and Jeremiah, and Hodaviah, and Jahdiel - mighty men of valour, famous men, and heads of the house of their fathers. And they transgressed against the God of their fathers, and went a whoring after the gods of the people of the land whom God destroyed before them.

And the God of Israel stirred up the spirit of Pul king of Assyria and the spirit of Tilgathpilneser king of Assyria, and He carried them away, even the Reubenites, and the Gadites, and the half tribe of Manasseh, and brought them unto Halah, and Habor, and Hara, and to the river Gozan, unto this day.

The sons of Levi:

- Gershon,
- Kohath,
- and Merari.

And the sons of Kohath:

- Amram,
- Izhar,
- and Hebron,

- and Uzziel.
- And the children of Amram:
- Aaron,
  - and Moses,
  - and Miriam.

The sons also of Aaron:

- Nadab,
- and Abihu,
- Eleazar,
- and Ithamar.

Eleazar begat:

- Phinehas; Phinehas begat:
  - Abishua; and Abishua begat:
    - Bukki; and Bukki begat:
      - Uzzi; and Uzzi begat:
        - Zerahiah; and Zerahiah begat:
          - Meraioth; Meraioth begat:
            - Amariah; and Amariah begat:
              - Ahitub; and Ahitub begat:
                - Zadok; and Zadok begat:
                  - Ahimaaz, and Ahimaaz begat:

Azariah; and Azariah begat:

- Johanan; and Johanan begat:
  - Azariah (he it is that executed the priest's office in the Temple that Solomon built in Jerusalem); and Azariah begat:
    - Amariah; and Amariah begat:
      - Ahitub; and Ahitub begat:
        - Zadok; and Zadok begat:
          - Shallum; and Shallum begat:
            - Hilkiah; and Hilkiah begat:
              - Azariah; and Azariah begat:
                - Seraiah; and Seraiah begat:
                  - Jehozadak.

And Jehozadak went into captivity when THE LORD carried away Judah and Jerusalem by the hand of Nebuchadnezzar.

The sons of Levi:

- Gershom,
- Kohath,
- and Merari.

And these be the names of the sons of Gershom:

- Libni,
- and Shimei.

And the sons of Kohath were:

- Amram,
- and Izhar,

- and Hebron,
- and Uzziel.

The sons of Merari:

- Mahli,
- and Mushi.

And these are the families of the Levites according to their fathers.

Of Gershom:

- Libni his son,
  - Jahath his son,
    - Zimmah his son,
      - Joah his son,
        - Iddo his son,
          - Zerah his son,
            - Jeaterai his son.

The sons of Kohath:

- Amminadab his son,
  - Korah his son,
    - Assir his son,
      - Elkanah his son,
        - and Ebiasaph his son,
          - and Assir his son,
            - Tahath his son,
              - Uriel his son,
                - Uziah his son,
                  - and Shaul his son.

And the sons of Elkanah:

- Amasai,
- and Ahimoth.

As for Elkanah, the sons of Elkanah:

- Zophai his son,
  - and Nahath his son,
    - Eliab his son,
      - Jeroham his son,
        - Elkanah his son,
        - and the sons of Samuel:
          - the firstborn Vashni,
          - and Abiah.

The sons of Merari:

- Mahli,
  - Libni his son,
    - Shimei his son,
      - Uzza his son,
        - Shimea his son,
          - Haggiah his son,
            - Asaiah his son.

And these are they whom David set over the service of song in the House of THE LORD after that the Ark had rest. And they ministered before the dwelling place of The Tabernacle of the Congregation with singing, until Solomon had built the House of THE LORD in Jerusalem; and then they waited on their office according to their order. And these are they that waited with their children. Of the sons of the Kohathites:

Heman, a singer,  
the son of Joel,  
the son of Shemuel,  
the son of Elkanah,  
the son of Jeroham,  
the son of Eliel,  
the son of Toah,  
the son of Zuph,  
the son of Elkanah,  
the son of Mahath,  
the son of Amasai,  
the son of Elkanah,  
the son of Joel,  
the son of Azariah,  
the son of Zephaniah,  
the son of Tahath,  
the son of Assir,  
the son of Ebiasaph,  
the son of Korah,  
the son of Izhar,  
the son of Kohath,  
the son of Levi,  
the son of Israel.

And his brother Asaph, who stood on his right hand, even Asaph the son of Berachiah,

the son of Shimea,  
the son of Michael,  
the son of Baaseiah,  
the son of Malchiah,  
the son of Ethni,  
the son of Zerah,  
the son of Adaiah,  
the son of Ethan,  
the son of Zimmah,  
the son of Shimei,  
the son of Jahath,  
the son of Gershom,  
the son of Levi.

And their brethren the sons of Merari stood on the left hand:

Ethan -  
the son of Kishi,  
the son of Abdi,  
the son of Malluch,  
the son of Hashabiah,  
the son of Amaziah,  
the son of Hilkiyah,



Unto the sons of Merari were given by lot, throughout their families, out of the tribe of Reuben, and out of the tribe of Gad, and out of the tribe of Zebulun, twelve cities.

And the Children of Israel gave to the Levites these cities with their suburbs. And they gave by lot out of the tribe of the children of Judah, and out of the tribe of the children of Simeon, and out of the tribe of the children of Benjamin, these cities, which are called by their names. And the residue of the families of the sons of Kohath had cities of their coasts out of the tribe of Ephraim.

And they gave unto them, of the cities of refuge:

- Shechem in Mount Ephraim with her suburbs;
- they gave also Gezer with her suburbs,
- and Jokmeam with her suburbs,
- and Bethhoron with her suburbs,
- and Aijalon with her suburbs,
- and Gathrimmon with her suburbs:

And out of the half tribe of Manasseh:

- Aner with her suburbs,
- and Bileam with her suburbs, for the family of the remnant of the sons of Kohath.

Unto the sons of Gershom were given out of the family of the half tribe of Manasseh:

- Golan in Bashan with her suburbs,
- and Ashtaroth with her suburbs.

And out of the tribe of Issachar:

- Kedesh with her suburbs,
- Daberath with her suburbs,
- and Ramoth with her suburbs,
- and Anem with her suburbs.

And out of the tribe of Asher:

- Mashal with her suburbs,
- and Abdon with her suburbs,
- and Hukok with her suburbs,
- and Rehob with her suburbs.

And out of the tribe of Naphtali:

- Kedesh in Galilee with her suburbs,
- and Hammon with her suburbs,
- and Kirjathaim with her suburbs.

Unto the rest of the children of Merari were given out of the tribe of Zebulun:

- Rimmon with her suburbs,
- Tabor with her suburbs.

And on the other side Jordan by Jericho, on the east side of Jordan, were given them out of the tribe of Reuben:

- Bezer in the wilderness with her suburbs,
- and Jahzah with her suburbs,
- Kedemoth also with her suburbs,
- and Mephaath with her suburbs.

And out of the tribe of Gad:

- Ramoth in Gilead with her suburbs,
- and Mahanaim with her suburbs,
- and Heshbon with her suburbs,
- and Jazer with her suburbs.

Now the sons of Issachar were:

- Tola,
- and Puah,
- Jashub,
- and Shimrom -four.

And the sons of Tola:

- Uzzi,
- and Rephaiah,
- and Jeriel,
- and Jahmai,
- and Jibsam,
- and Shemuel,

-heads of their father's house, to wit, of Tola; they were valiant men of might in their generations whose number was in the days of David two and twenty thousand and six hundred.

And the sons of Uzzi:

- Izrahiah; and the sons of Izrahiah:
  - Michael,
  - and Obadiah,
  - and Joel,
  - Ishiah -five; all of them chief men.

And with them, by their generations, after the house of their fathers, were bands of soldiers for war, six and thirty thousand men; for they had many wives and sons. And their brethren among all the families of Issachar were valiant men of might, reckoned in all by their genealogies fourscore and seven thousand.

*'7,080*

The sons of Benjamin:

- Bela,
- and Becher,
- and Jediael -three.

And the sons of Bela:

- Ezbon,
- and Uzzi,
- and Uzziel,
- and Jerimoth,

and Iri -five; heads of the house of their fathers, mighty men of valour, and were reckoned by their genealogies twenty and two thousand and thirty and four.

And the sons of Becher:

- Zemira,
- and Joash,
- and Eliezer,
- and Elioenai,

- and Omri,
- and Jerimoth,
- and Abiah,
- and Anathoth,
- and Alameth.

All these are the sons of Becher. And the number of them, after their genealogy by their generations, heads of the house of their fathers, mighty men of valour, was twenty thousand and two hundred.

The sons also of Jediael:

- Bilhan; and the sons of Bilhan:
  - Jeush,
  - and Benjamin,
  - and Ehud,
  - and Chenaanah,
  - and Zethan,
  - and Tharshish,
  - and Ahishahar.

All these the sons of Jediael, by the heads of their fathers, mighty men of valour, were seventeen thousand and two hundred soldiers, fit to go out for war and battle.

Shuppim also, and Huppim, the children of Ir.  
And Hushim, the sons of Aher.

The sons of Naphtali:

- Jahziel,
- and Guni,
- and Jezer,
- and Shallum,
- the sons of Bilhah.

The sons of Manasseh:

- Ashriel, whom she bare.

But his concubine the Aramitess bare:

- Machir, the father of:
  - Gilead.

And Machir took to wife the sister of Huppim and Shuppim (whose sister's name was Maachah) and the name of the second was Zelophehad, and Zelophehad had daughters. And Maachah the wife of Machir bare a son, and she called his name:

- Peresh;
- and the name of his brother was Sheresh; and his sons were:
  - Ulam
  - and Rakem.

And the sons of Ulam:

- Bedan.

These were the sons of Gilead, the son of Machir, the son of Manasseh.

And his sister Hammoleketh bare:

- Ishod,
- and Abiezer,
- and Mahalah.

And the sons of Shemidah were:

- Ahian,
- and Shechem,
- and Likhi,
- and Aniam.

And the sons of Ephraim:

- Shuthelah,
  - and Bered his son,
    - and Tahath his son,
      - and Eladah his son,
        - and Tahath his son,
          - and Zabad his son,
            - and Shuthelah his son,
            - and Ezer,
            - and Elead,

-whom the men of Gath that were born in that land slew, because they came down to take away their cattle. And Ephraim their father mourned many days, and his brethren came to comfort him.

And when he went in to his wife, she conceived, and bare a son, and he called his name:

- Beriah, because it went evil with his House.
- And his daughter was Sherah, who built Bethhoron the nether and the upper, and Uzzensherah.
- And Rephah was his son,
- also Resheph,
  - and Telah his son,
    - and Tahan his son,
      - Laadan his son,
        - Ammihud his son,
          - Elishama his son,
            - Non his son,
              - Jehoshuah his son.

And their possessions and habitations were:

- Bethel and the towns thereof,
- and eastward Naaran,
- and westward Gezer, with the towns thereof;
- Shechem also and the towns thereof,
- unto Gaza and the towns thereof:

And by the borders of the children of Manasseh:

- Bethshean and her towns,
- Taanach and her towns,
- Megiddo and her towns,
- Dor and her towns.

In these dwelt the children of Joseph the son of Israel.

The sons of Asher:

- Imnah,
- and Isuah,
- and Ishuai,
- and Beriah,
- and Serah their sister.

And the sons of Beriah:

- Heber,
- and Malchiel, who is the father of:
  - Birzavith.

And Heber begat:

- Japhlet,
- and Shomer,
- and Hotham,
- and Shua their sister.

And the sons of Japhlet:

- Pasach,
- and Bimhal,
- and Ashvath.

These are the children of Japhlet.

And the sons of Shamer:

- Ahi,
- and Rohgah,
- Jehubbah,
- and Aram.

And the sons of his brother Helem:

- Zophah,
- and Imna,
- and Shelesh,
- and Amal.

The sons of Zophah:

- Suah,
- and Harnepher,
- and Shual,
- and Beri,
- and Imrah,
- Bezer,
- and Hod,
- and Shamma,
- and Shilshah,
- and Ithran,
- and Beera.

And the sons of Jether:

- Jephunneh,
- and Pispah,
- and Ara.

And the sons of Ulla:

- Arah,
- and Haniel,

- and Rezia.

All these were the children of Asher, heads of their father's house, choice and mighty men of valour, chief of the princes. And the number throughout the genealogy of them that were apt to the war and to battle was twenty and six thousand men.

Now Benjamin begat:

- Bela his firstborn,
- Ashbel the second,
- and Aharah the third,
- Nohah the fourth,
- and Rapha the fifth.

And the sons of Bela were:

- Addar,
- and Gera,
- and Abihud,
- and Abishua,
- and Naaman,
- and Ahoah,
- and Gera,
- and Shephuphan,
- and Hiram.

And these are the sons of Ehud. These are the heads of the fathers of the inhabitants of Geba, and they removed them to Manahath; and Naaman, and Ahiah, and Gera, he removed them, and begat:

- Uzza,
- and Ahihud.

And Shaharaim begat children in the country of Moab, after he had sent them away; Hushim and Baara were his wives. And he begat of Hodesh his wife:

- Jobab,
- and Zibia,
- and Mesha,
- and Malcham,
- and Jeuz,
- and Shachia,
- and Mirma.

These were his sons, heads of the fathers.

And of Hushim he begat:

- Abitub,
- and Elpaal.

The sons of Elpaal:

- Eber,
- and Misham,
- and Shamed, who built Ono and Lod, with the towns thereof,
- Beriah also,
- and Shema, who were heads of the fathers of the inhabitants of Aijalon, who drove away the inhabitants of Gath,

- and Ahio,
- Shashak,
- and Jeremoth,
- and Zebadiah,
- and Arad,
- and Ader,
- and Michael,
- and Ispah,
- and Joha,
- the sons of Beriah;
- and Zebadiah,
- and Meshullam,
- and Hezeki,
- and Heber,
- Ishmerai also,
- and Jezliah,
- and Jobab,
- the sons of Elpaal;
- and Jakim,
- and Zichri,
- and Zabdi,
- and Elienai,
- and Zilthai,
- and Eliel,
- and Adaiah,
- and Beraiah,
- and Shimrath,
- the sons of Shimhi;
- and Ishpan,
- and Heber,
- and Eliel,
- and Abdon,
- and Zichri,
- and Hanan,
- and Hananiah,
- and Elam,
- and Antothijah,
- and Iphedeiah,
- and Penuel,
- the sons of Shashak;
- and Shamsherai,
- and Shehariah,
- and Athaliah,
- and Jaresiah,
- and Eliah,
- and Zichri,
- the sons of Jeroham.

These were heads of the fathers, by their generations, chief men. These dwelt in Jerusalem.

And at Gibeon dwelt the father of Gibeon whose wife's name was Maachah; and his firstborn son:

- Abdon,
- and Zur,
- and Kish,
- and Baal,
- and Nadab,
- and Gedor,
- and Ahio,
- and Zacher.

And Mikloth begat:

- Shimeah.

And these also dwelt with their brethren in Jerusalem, over against them.

And Ner begat:

- Kish; and Kish begat:
  - Saul; and Saul begat:
    - Jonathan,
    - and Malchishua,
    - and Abinadab,
    - and Eshbaal.

And the son of Jonathan was:

- Meribbaal; and Meribbaal begat:
  - Micah. And the sons of Micah were:
    - Pithon,
    - and Melech,
    - and Tarea,
    - and Ahaz; and Ahaz begat:
      - Jehoadah; and Jehoadah begat:
        - Alemeth,
        - and Azmaveth,
        - and Zimri; and Zimri begat:
          - Moza; and Moza begat:
            - Binea;
              - Rapha was his son,
              - Eleasah his son,
              - Azel his son.

And Azel had six sons, whose names are these:

- Azrikam,
- Bocheru,
- and Ishmael,
- and Sheariah,
- and Obadiah,
- and Hanan.

All these were the sons of Azel.

And the sons of Eshek his brother were:

- Ulam his firstborn,
- Jehush the second,
- and Eliphelet the third.

And the sons of Ulam were mighty men of valour, archers, and had many sons, and sons' sons, an hundred and fifty. All these are of the sons of Benjamin.

So all Israel were reckoned by genealogies; and, behold, they were written in the book of the kings of Israel and Judah, who were carried away to Babylon for their transgression.

Now the first inhabitants that dwelt in their possessions in their cities were,

- the Israelites,
- the priests,
- Levites,
- and the Nethinims.

And in Jerusalem dwelt of the children of Judah, and of the children of Benjamin, and of the children of Ephraim, and Manasseh:

- Uthai the son of Ammihud, the son of Omri, the son of Imri, the son of Bani, of the children of Pharez the son of Judah.

And of the Shilonites:

- Asaiah the firstborn, and his sons.

And of the sons of Zerah:

- Jeuel, and their brethren, six hundred and ninety.

And of the sons of Benjamin:

- Sallu the son of Meshullam, the son of Hodaviah, the son of Hasenuah,
- and Ibneiah the son of Jeroham,
- and Elah the son of Uzzi, the son of Michri,
- and Meshullam the son of Shephathiah, the son of Reuel, the son of Ibnijah; and their brethren, according to their generations, nine hundred and fifty and six.

All these men were chief of the fathers in the House of their fathers.

And of the priests:

- Jedaiah,
- and Jehoiarib,
- and Jachin,
- and Azariah the son of Hilkiyah, the son of Meshullam, the son of Zadok, the son of Meraioth, the son of Ahitub, the ruler of the House of God;
- and Adaiah the son of Jeroham, the son of Pashur, the son of Malchijah, and Maasiai the son of Adiel, the son of Jahzerah, the son of Meshullam, the son of Meshillemith, the son of Immer; and their brethren, heads of the House of their fathers, a thousand and seven hundred and threescore; very able men for the work of the service of the House of God.

And of the Levites:

- Shemaiah the son of Hasshub, the son of Azrikam, the son of Hashabiah, of the sons of Merari,
- and Bakbakkar,
- Heresh,
- and Galal,
- and Mattaniah the son of Micah, the son of Zichri, the son of Asaph,
- and Obadiah the son of Shemaiah, the son of Galal, the son of Jeduthun,
- and Berechiah the son of Asa, the son of Elkanah, that dwelt in the villages of the Netophathites.

And the porters were:

- Shallum,
- and Akkub,
- and Talmon,
- and Ahiman, and their brethren,
- Shallum was the chief, who hitherto waited in the king's gate eastward.

They were porters in the companies of the children of Levi.

And Shallum the son of Kore, the son of Ebiasaph, the son of Korah, and his brethren of the House of his father, the Korahites, were over the work of the service, keepers of the gates of The Tabernacle; and their fathers, being over the host of THE LORD, were keepers of the entry. And Phinehas the son of Eleazar was the ruler over them in time past, and THE LORD was with him.

And Zechariah the son of Meshelemiah was porter of the door of The Tabernacle of the congregation.

All these which were chosen to be porters in the gates were two hundred and twelve. These were reckoned by their genealogy in their villages whom David and Samuel the seer did ordain in their set office.

So they and their children had the oversight of the gates of the House of THE LORD, namely, the House of The Tabernacle, by wards. In four quarters were the porters, toward the east, west, north, and south.

And their brethren, which were in their villages, were to come after seven days from time to time with them. For these Levites, the four chief porters, were in their set office, and were over the chambers and treasuries of the House of God.

And they lodged round about the House of God, because the charge was upon them, and the opening thereof every morning pertained to them.

And certain of them had the charge of the ministering vessels, that they should bring them in and out by <sup>1</sup>tale. *'series of accounts*

Some of them also were appointed to oversee the vessels and all the instruments of the sanctuary, and the fine flour, and the wine, and the oil, and the frankincense, and the spices. And some of the sons of the priests made the ointment of the spices.

And Mattithiah, one of the Levites, who was the firstborn of Shallum the Korahite, had the set office over the things that were made in the pans.

And other of their brethren, of the sons of the Kohathites, were over the Showbread, to prepare it every Sabbath.

And these are the singers, chief of the fathers of the Levites, who remaining in the chambers were free, for they were employed in that work day and night. These chief fathers of the Levites were chief throughout their generations; these dwelt at Jerusalem.

And in Gibeon dwelt the father of Gibeon - Jehiel, whose wife's name was Maachah:

- and his firstborn son Abdon,
- then Zur,
- and Kish,
- and Baal,
- and Ner,
- and Nadab,

- and Gedor,
- and Ahio,
- and Zechariah,
- and Mikloth.

And Mikloth begat:

- Shimeam.

And they also dwelt with their brethren at Jerusalem, over against their brethren.

And Ner begat:

- Kish; and Kish begat:
  - Saul; and Saul begat:
    - Jonathan,
    - and Malchishua,
    - and Abinadab,
    - and Eshbaal.

And the son of Jonathan was:

- Meribbaal, and Meribbaal begat:
  - Micah.

And the sons of Micah were:

- Pithon,
- and Melech,
- and Tahrea,
- and Ahaz.

And Ahaz begat:

- Jarah; and Jarah begat
  - Alemeth,
  - and Azmaveth,
  - and Zimri; and Zimri begat:
    - Moza; and Moza begat:
      - Binea;
        - and Rephaiah his son,
        - Eleasah his son,
        - Azel his son.

And Azel had six sons, whose names are these:

- Azrikam,
  - Bocheru,
  - and Ishmael,
  - and Sheariah,
  - and Obadiah,
  - and Hanan
- these were the sons of Azel.

Now the Philistines fought against Israel; and the men of Israel fled from before the Philistines, and fell down slain in Mount Gilboa.

And the Philistines followed hard after Saul, and after his sons; and the Philistines slew Jonathan, and Abinadab, and Malchishua, the sons of Saul.

And the battle went sore against Saul, and the archers hit him, and he was wounded of the archers.

Then said Saul to his armourbearer, "Draw thy sword, and thrust me through therewith; lest these uncircumcised come and abuse me."

But his armourbearer would not; for he was sore afraid. So Saul took a sword, and fell upon it. And when his armourbearer saw that Saul was dead, he fell likewise on the sword, and died.

So Saul died, and his three sons, and all his house died together.

And when all the men of Israel that were in the valley saw that they fled, and that Saul and his sons were dead, then they forsook their cities, and fled; and the Philistines came and dwelt in them.

And it came to pass on the morrow, when the Philistines came to strip the slain, that they found Saul and his sons fallen in Mount Gilboa. And when they had stripped him, they took his head, and his armour, and sent into the land of the Philistines round about, to carry tidings unto their idols, and to the people.

And they put his armour in the house of their gods, and fastened his head in the temple of Dagon.

And when all Jabesh-Gilead heard all that the Philistines had done to Saul, they arose, all the valiant men, and took away the body of Saul and the bodies of his sons, and brought them to Jabesh and buried their bones under the oak in Jabesh, and fasted seven days.

So Saul died for his transgression which he committed against THE LORD, even against the Word of THE LORD, which he kept not, and also for asking counsel of one that had a familiar spirit, to inquire of it, and inquired not of THE LORD - therefore He slew him and turned the kingdom unto David the son of Jesse.

Then all Israel gathered themselves to David unto Hebron, saying, "Behold, we are <sup>1</sup>thy bone and thy flesh. And moreover in time past, even when Saul was king, thou wast he that leddest out and broughtest in Israel; and THE LORD thy God said unto thee, *'Thou shalt feed My People Israel, and thou shalt be ruler over My People Israel.'* "

Therefore came all the elders of Israel to the king to Hebron; and David made a covenant with them in Hebron before THE LORD; and they anointed David king over Israel according to the Word of THE LORD by Samuel.

And David and all Israel went to Jerusalem, which <sup>1</sup>is Jebus; where the Jebusites were, the inhabitants of the land.

<sup>1</sup>was also once called Jebus

And the inhabitants of Jebus said to David, "Thou shalt not come hither!"

Nevertheless David took the castle of Zion (which is the City of David). And David said, "Whosoever smiteth the Jebusites first shall be chief and captain."

So Joab the son of Zeruiah went first up, and was chief. And David dwelt in the castle; therefore they called it the City of David. And he built the city round about, even from Millo round about; and Joab repaired the rest of the city.

So David waxed greater and greater, for THE LORD of Hosts was with him.

These also are the chief of the mighty men whom David had, who strengthened themselves with him in his kingdom, and with all Israel, to make him king according to the Word of THE LORD concerning Israel. And this is the number of the mighty men whom David had:

- Jashobeam, an Hachmonite, the chief of the captains. (He lifted up his spear against three hundred slain by him at one time).
- And after him was Eleazar the son of Dodo, the Ahohite, who was one of the three mighties. (He was with David at Pasdammim, and there the Philistines were gathered together to battle, where was a parcel of ground full of barley; and the people fled from before the Philistines. And they set themselves in the midst of that parcel, and delivered it, and slew the Philistines; and THE LORD saved them by a great deliverance. Now three of the thirty captains went down to the Rock to David, into the cave of Adullam; and the host of the Philistines encamped in the valley of Rephaim. And David was then in the hold, and the Philistines' garrison was then at Bethlehem. And David longed, and said, "Oh that one would give me drink of the water of the well of Bethlehem, that is at the gate!" And the three brake through the host of the Philistines, and drew water out of the well of Bethlehem, that was by the gate, and took it, and brought it to David; but David would not drink of it, but poured it out to THE LORD, and said, "My God forbid it me that I should do this thing. Shall I drink the blood of these men that have put their lives in jeopardy? For with the jeopardy of their lives they brought it." Therefore he would not drink it. These things did these three mightiest).
- And Abishai the brother of Joab, he was chief of the three; for lifting up his spear against three hundred, he slew them, and had a name among the three. Of the three, he was more honourable than the two; for he was their captain. Howbeit he attained not to the first three.
- Benaiah the son of Jehoiada, the son of a valiant man of Kabzeel, who had done many acts; he slew two lionlike men of Moab. Also he went down and slew a lion in a pit in a snowy day. And he slew an Egyptian, a man of great stature, five cubits high; and in the Egyptian's hand was a spear like a weaver's beam; and he went down to him with a staff, and plucked the spear out of the Egyptian's hand, and slew him with his own spear. These things did Benaiah the son of Jehoiada, and had the name among the three mighties. Behold, he was honourable among the thirty, but attained not to the first three; and David set him over his guard.

Also the valiant men of the armies were:

- Asahel the brother of Joab,
- Elhanan the son of Dodo of Bethlehem,
- Shammoth the Harorite,
- Helez the Pelonite,
- Ira the son of Ikkesh the Tekoite,
- Abiezer the Antothite,
- Sibbecai the Hushathite,
- Ilai the Ahohite,
- Maharai the Netophathite,
- Heled the son of Baanah the Netophathite,
- Ithai the son of Ribai of Gibeah (that pertained to the children of Benjamin),
- Benaiah the Pirathonite,
- Hurai of the brooks of Gaash,
- Abiel the Arbathite,
- Azmaveth the Baharumite,
- Eliahba the Shaalbonite,
- the sons of Hashem the Gizonite,
- Jonathan the son of Shage the Hararite,
- Ahiam the son of Sacar the Hararite,

- Eliphai the son of Ur,
- Hephher the Mecherathite,
- Ahijah the Pelonite,
- Hezro the Carmelite,
- Naarai the son of Ezbai,
- Joel the brother of Nathan,
- Mibhar the son of Haggeri,
- Zelek the Ammonite,
- Naharai the Berothite (the armourbearer of Joab the son of Zeruah),
- Ira the Ithrite,
- Gareb the Ithrite,
- Uriah the Hittite,
- Zabadi the son of Ahlai,
- Adina the son of Shiza the Reubenite (a captain of the Reubenites) and thirty with him,
- Hanan the son of Maachah,
- and Joshaphat the Mithnite,
- Uzzia the Asherathite,
- Shama and Jehiel the sons of Hothan the Aroerite,
- Jedaiel the son of Shimri,
- and Joha his brother,
- the Tizite,
- Eliel the Mahavite,
- and Jeribai,
- and Joshaviah (the sons of Elnaam),
- and Ithmah the Moabite,
- Eliel,
- and Obed,
- and Jasiel the Mesobaite.

Now these are they that came to David to Ziklag, while he yet kept himself close because of Saul the son of Kish, and they were among the mighty men, helpers of the war. They were armed with bows, and could use both the right hand and the left in hurling stones and shooting arrows out of a bow, even of Saul's brethren of Benjamin.

The chief was Ahiezer, then Joash (the sons of Shemaah the Gibeathite);

- and Jeziel, and Pelet (the sons of Azmaveth),
- and Berachah,
- and Jehu the Antothite,
- and Ismaiah the Gibeonite (a mighty man among the thirty, and over the thirty),
- and Jeremiah,
- and Jahaziel,
- and Johanan,
- and Josabad the Gederathite,
- Eluzai,
- and Jerimoth,
- and Bealiah,
- and Shemariah,
- and Shephatiah the Haruphite,
- Elkanah,

- and Jesiah,
- and Azareel,
- and Joezer,
- and Jashobeam (the Korhites),
- and Joelah,
- and Zebadiah (the sons of Jeroham of Gedor).

And of the Gadites there separated themselves unto David, into the hold to the wilderness - men of might and men of war fit for the battle that could handle shield and buckler, whose faces were like the faces of lions, and were as swift as the roes upon the mountains:

- Ezer the first,
- Obadiah the second,
- Eliab the third,
- Mishmannah the fourth,
- Jeremiah the fifth,
- Attai the sixth,
- Eliel the seventh,
- Johanan the eighth,
- Elzabad the ninth,
- Jeremiah the tenth,
- Machbanai the eleventh.

These were of the sons of Gad, captains of the host - one of the least was over an hundred, and the greatest over a thousand. These are they that went over Jordan in the first month, when it had overflowed all his banks; and they put to flight all them of the valleys, both toward the east, and toward the west.

And there came of the children of Benjamin and Judah to the hold unto David. And David went out to meet them, and answered and said unto them, "If ye be come peaceably unto me to help me, mine heart shall be knit unto you; but if ye be come to betray me to mine enemies, seeing there is no wrong in mine hands, the God of our fathers look thereon, and rebuke it!"

Then the spirit came upon Amasai, who was chief of the captains, and he said, "Thine are we, David; and on thy side, thou son of Jesse. Peace, peace be unto thee, and peace be to thine helpers; for thy God helpeth thee!" Then David received them, and made them captains of the band. *'we are yours*

And there fell some of <sup>1</sup>Manasseh to David, when he came with the Philistines against Saul to battle; but they helped them not, for the lords of the Philistines upon advisement sent him away, saying, "He will fall to his master Saul to the jeopardy of our heads!" *'the tribe of Manasseh*

As he went to Ziklag, there fell to him of Manasseh:

- Adnah,
- and Jozabad,
- and Jediael,
- and Michael,
- and Jozabad,
- and Elihu,
- and Zilthai - captains of the thousands that were of Manasseh.

And they helped David against the band of the rovers; for they were all mighty men of valour, and were captains in the host. For at that time day by day there came to David to help him, until it was a great host, like the host of God.

And these are the numbers of the bands that were ready armed to the war and came to David to Hebron to turn the kingdom of Saul to him according to the Word of THE LORD. The children of Judah that bare shield and spear were six thousand and eight hundred, ready armed to the war.

- Of the children of Simeon, mighty men of valour for the war, seven thousand and one hundred.
- Of the children of Levi four thousand and six hundred.
- And Jehoiada was the leader of the Aaronites, and with him were three thousand and seven hundred.
- And Zadok, a young man mighty of valour, and of his father's house twenty and two captains.
- And of the children of Benjamin, the kindred of Saul, three thousand; for hitherto the greatest part of them had kept the ward of the House of Saul.
- And of the children of Ephraim twenty thousand and eight hundred, mighty men of valour, famous throughout the House of their fathers.
- And of the half tribe of Manasseh eighteen thousand, which were expressed by name, to come and make David king.
- And of the children of Issachar, which were men that had understanding of the times, to know what Israel ought to do; the heads of them were two hundred; and all their brethren were at their commandment.
- Of Zebulun, such as went forth to battle, expert in war, with all instruments of war, fifty thousand, which could keep rank - they were not of double heart.
- And of Naphtali a thousand captains, and with them with shield and spear thirty and seven thousand.
- And of the Danites expert in war twenty and eight thousand and six hundred.
- And of Asher, such as went forth to battle, expert in war, forty thousand.

And on the other side of Jordan:

- of the Reubenites, and the Gadites, and of the half tribe of Manasseh, with all manner of instruments of war for the battle, an hundred and twenty thousand.

All these men of war, that could keep rank, came with a perfect heart to Hebron, to make David king over all Israel; and all the rest also of Israel were of one heart to make David king.

And there they were with David three days, eating and drinking; for their brethren had prepared for them. Moreover they that were nigh them (even <sup>1</sup>unto Issachar and Zebulun and Naphtali) brought bread on asses, and on camels, and on mules, and on oxen, and meat, meal, cakes of figs, and bunches of raisins, and wine, and oil, and oxen, and sheep abundantly; for there was joy in Israel. *<sup>1</sup>as far away as the territory of*

And David consulted with the captains of thousands and hundreds, and with every leader. And David said unto all the congregation of Israel, "If it seem good unto you, and that it be of THE LORD our God, let us send abroad unto our brethren every where that are left in all the land of Israel, and with them also to the priests and Levites which are in their cities and suburbs, that they may gather themselves unto us. And let us bring again the Ark of our God to us; for we inquired not at it in the days of Saul."

And all the congregation said that they would do so, for the thing was right in the eyes of all the people. So David gathered all Israel together, from Sihor of Egypt even unto the entering of Hemath, to bring the Ark of God from Kirjathjearim.

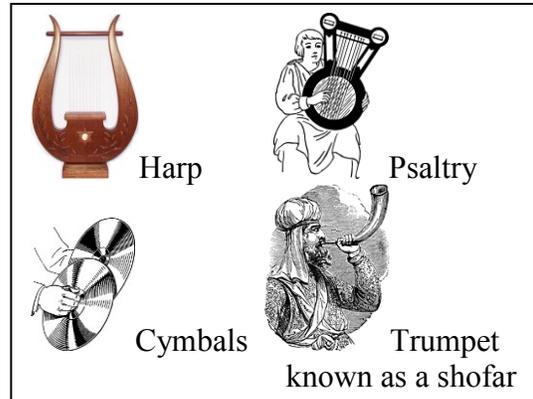
And David went up, and all Israel, to Baalah (that is, to Kirjathjearim), which belonged <sup>1</sup>to Judah, to bring up thence the Ark of God THE LORD that dwelleth between the cherubims, whose name is called on it. And they carried the Ark of God in a new cart out of the house of Abinadab, and Uzza and Ahio drave the cart.

*<sup>1</sup>to the tribe/territory of*

And David and all Israel played before God with all their might, and with singing, and with harps, and with psalteries, and with timbrels, and with cymbals, and with trumpets.

And when they came unto the <sup>1</sup>threshingfloor of Chidon, Uzza put forth his hand to hold the Ark; for the oxen stumbled. And the anger of THE LORD was kindled against Uzza, and He smote him, because he put his hand to the Ark; and there he died before God.

<sup>1</sup>*the place where they thresh the husk from wheat*



And David was displeased, because THE LORD had made a breach upon Uzza; wherefore that place is called <sup>1</sup>Perez-Uzza to this day. And David was afraid of God that day, saying, “How shall I bring the Ark of God home to me?” So David brought not the Ark home to himself to the city of David, but carried it aside into the house of Obededom the Gittite. And the Ark of God remained with the family of Obededom in his house three months. And THE LORD blessed the house of Obededom, and all that he had.

<sup>1</sup>*The Breach of Uzza*

Now Hiram king of Tyre sent messengers to David, and timber of cedars, with masons and carpenters, to build him an house. And David perceived that THE LORD had confirmed him king over Israel, for his kingdom was lifted up on high, because of His People Israel.

And David took more wives at Jerusalem, and David begat more sons and daughters. Now these are the names of his children which he had in Jerusalem:

- ☞ Shammua,
- ☞ and Shobab,
- ☞ Nathan,
- ☞ and Solomon,
- ☞ and Ibhar,
- ☞ and Elishua,
- ☞ and Elpalet,
- ☞ and Nogah,
- ☞ and Nepheg,
- ☞ and Japhia,
- ☞ and Elishama,
- ☞ and Beeliada,
- ☞ and Eliphalet.

And when the Philistines heard that David was anointed king over all Israel, all the Philistines went up to seek David. And David heard of it, and went out against them. And the Philistines came and spread themselves in the valley of Rephaim.

And David inquired of God, saying, “Shall I go up against the Philistines? And wilt Thou deliver them into mine hand?”

And THE LORD said unto him, “Go up; for I will deliver them into thine hand.”

So they came up to Baal-Perazim; and David smote them there. Then David said, “God hath broken in upon mine enemies by mine hand like the breaking forth of waters” (therefore they called the name of that place Baal-Perazim).

And when <sup>1</sup>they had left their gods there, David gave a commandment, and they were burned with fire.

<sup>1</sup>The Philistines

And the Philistines yet again spread themselves abroad in the valley. Therefore David inquired again of God; and God said unto him, "Go not up after them; turn away from them, and come upon them <sup>1</sup>over against the mulberry trees. And it shall be, when thou shalt hear a sound of going in the tops of the mulberry trees, that then thou shalt go out to battle; for God is gone forth before thee to smite the host of the Philistines."

<sup>1</sup>across the way from

David therefore did as God commanded him; and they smote the host of the Philistines, from Gibeon even to Gazer. And the fame of David went out into all lands; and THE LORD brought the fear of him upon all nations. And David made him houses in the City of David, and prepared a place for the Ark of God, and pitched for it a tent.

Then David said, "None ought to carry the Ark of God but the Levites; for them hath THE LORD chosen to carry the Ark of God and to minister unto Him for ever."

And David gathered all Israel together to Jerusalem, to bring up the Ark of THE LORD unto his place which he had prepared for it.

And David assembled the children of Aaron, and the Levites:

Of the sons of Kohath: Uriel the chief, and his brethren an hundred and twenty.

Of the sons of Merari: Asaiah the chief, and his brethren two hundred and twenty.

Of the sons of Gershon: Joel the chief, and his brethren an hundred and thirty.

Of the sons of Elizaphan: Shemaiah the chief, and his brethren two hundred.

Of the sons of Hebron: Eliel the chief, and his brethren <sup>1</sup>fourscore.

<sup>1</sup>80

Of the sons of Uzziel: Amminadab the chief, and his brethren an hundred and twelve.

And David called for Zadok and Abiathar the priests, and for the Levites, for Uriel, Asaiah, and Joel, Shemaiah, and Eliel, and Amminadab; and said unto them, "Ye are the chief of the fathers of the Levites; sanctify yourselves, both ye and your brethren, that ye may bring up the Ark of THE LORD God of Israel unto the place that I have prepared for it. For because ye did it not at the first, THE LORD our God made a breach upon us, for that we sought Him not after the due order."

So the priests and the Levites sanctified themselves to bring up the Ark of THE LORD God of Israel. And the children of the Levites bare the Ark of God upon their shoulders with the staves thereon, as Moses commanded according to the Word of THE LORD.

And David spake to the chief of the Levites to appoint their brethren to be the singers with instruments of music - psalteries and harps and cymbals - sounding, by lifting up the voice with joy.

So the Levites appointed:



Heman the son of Joel;



and of his brethren - Asaph the son of Berechiah;



and, of the sons of Merari (their brethren) - Ethan the son of Kushaiah.

And with them their brethren of the second degree:



Zechariah, Ben,



and Ja-Aziel,



and Shemiramoth,



and Jehiel,



and Unni,



Eliab,



and Benaiah,



and Maaseiah,



and Mattithiah,



and Elipheleh,



and Mikneiah,



and Obededom,



and Jeiel (the porters).

So the singers - Heman, Asaph, and Ethan, were appointed to sound with cymbals of brass.

And Zechariah, and Aziel, and Shemiramoth, and Jehiel, and Unni, and Eliab, and Maaseiah, and Benaiah, with psalteries on \*Alamoth.

And Mattithiah, and Elipheleh, and Mikneiah, and Obededom, and Jeiel, and Azariah, with harps on the °Sheminith to excel.

And Chenaniah, chief of the Levites, was for <sup>1</sup>song; he instructed about the song, because he was skilful.

<sup>1</sup>music & lyrics

And Berechiah and Elkanah were doorkeepers for the Ark.

**\*The Alamoth**

*from "alma" meaning "a virgin"- after the virgin manner; a soprano key in music, like the voice of virgins, that is, young maidens. Others interpret it an instrument played on by virgins, like our old English "virginal" stringed instrument*

**°The Sheminith**

*the lowest of the three keys of the human voice, an octave or eighth below the treble; the bass sung by men; as "on alamoth" answers to the treble or female voice; it also indicates the time measured according to the number eight*



And Shebaniah,



and Jehoshaphat,



and Nethaneel,



and Amasai,



and Zechariah,



and Benaiah,



and Eliezer,

- the priests, did blow with the trumpets before the Ark of God.

And Obedom and Jehiah were doorkeepers for the Ark.

So David, and the elders of Israel, and the captains over thousands, went to bring up the Ark of the Covenant of THE LORD out of the house of Obedom with joy. And it came to pass, when God helped the Levites that bare the Ark of the Covenant of THE LORD, that they offered seven bullocks and seven rams.

And David was clothed with a robe of fine linen, and all the Levites that bare the Ark, and the singers, and Chenaniah the master of the song with the singers. David also had upon him an ephod of linen.

Thus all Israel brought up the Ark of the Covenant of THE LORD with shouting, and with sound of the cornet, and with trumpets, and with cymbals, making a noise with psalteries and harps.

And it came to pass, as the Ark of the Covenant of THE LORD came to the City of David, that Michal the daughter of Saul looking out at a window saw King David dancing and playing and she despised him in her heart.

So they brought the Ark of God, and set it in the midst of the tent that David had pitched for it; and they offered burnt sacrifices and peace offerings before God. And when David had made an end of offering the burnt offerings and the peace offerings, he blessed the people in the name of THE LORD. And he dealt to every one of Israel - both man and woman - to every one a loaf of bread, and a good piece of <sup>'</sup>flesh, and a flagon of wine. *'meat*

And he appointed certain of the Levites to minister before the Ark of THE LORD, and to record, and to thank and praise THE LORD God of Israel:

- Asaph the chief,
- and next to him Zechariah,
- Jeiel,
- and Shemiramoth,
- and Jehiel,
- and Mattithiah,

- and Eliab,
- and Benaiah,
- and Obbededom;

(and Jeiel with psalteries and with harps; but Asaph made a sound with cymbals; Benaiah also and Jahaziel the priests with trumpets continually before the Ark of the Covenant of God). Then on that day David delivered first this psalm, to thank THE LORD, into the hand of Asaph and his brethren:

Give thanks unto THE LORD, call upon His name, make known His deeds among the people.  
 Sing unto Him, sing psalms unto Him, talk ye of all His wondrous works.  
 Glory ye in His holy name! Let the heart of them rejoice that seek THE LORD.  
 Seek THE LORD and His strength, seek His face continually.  
 Remember His marvellous works that He hath done, His wonders, and the judgments of His mouth;  
 O ye seed of Israel His servant - ye children of Jacob, His chosen ones.  
 He is THE LORD our God; His judgments are in all the earth.  
 Be ye mindful always of His Covenant - the Word which He commanded to a thousand generations;  
 Even of the Covenant which He made with Abraham, and of His oath unto Isaac;  
 and hath confirmed the same to Jacob for a Law, and to Israel for an everlasting Covenant,  
 saying, Unto thee will I give the land of Canaan, the lot of your inheritance;  
 When ye were but few, even a few, and strangers in it.  
 And when they went from nation to nation, and from one kingdom to another people  
 He suffered no man to do them wrong - yea, He reprov'd kings for their sakes,  
 saying, Touch not Mine Anointed, and do My Prophets no harm.  
 Sing unto THE LORD, all the earth! Show forth from day to day His salvation!  
 Declare His glory among the heathen - His marvellous works among all nations.  
 For great is THE LORD, and greatly to be praised! He also is to be feared above all gods.  
 For all the gods of the people are idols: but THE LORD made the heavens!  
 Glory and honour are in His presence; strength and gladness are in His place.  
 Give unto THE LORD - ye kindreds of the people - give unto THE LORD glory and strength.  
 Give unto THE LORD the glory due unto His name!  
 Bring an offering, and come before Him - worship THE LORD in the beauty of holiness.  
 Fear before Him, all the earth: the world also shall be stable, that it be not moved.  
 Let the heavens be glad, and let the earth rejoice; and let men say among the nations, THE LORD reigneth!  
 Let the sea roar, and the fulness thereof; let the fields rejoice, and all that is therein.  
 Then shall the trees of the wood sing out at the presence of THE LORD, because He cometh to judge the earth.  
 O give thanks unto THE LORD; for He is good; for His mercy endureth for ever!  
 And say ye, Save us, O God of our salvation, and gather us together, and deliver us from the heathen,  
 that we may give thanks to Thy holy name, and glory in Thy praise.  
 Blessed be THE LORD God of Israel for ever and ever!!

And all the people said, "Amen!", and praised THE LORD.

So he left there before the Ark of the Covenant of THE LORD:

- Asaph and his brethren, to minister before the Ark continually as every day's work required,
- and Obbededom with their brethren, <sup>1</sup>threescore and eight,
- Obbededom also the son of Jeduthun and Hosah to be porters,
- and Zadok the priest and his brethren the priests, before The Tabernacle of THE LORD in the high place that was at Gibeon to offer burnt offerings unto THE LORD upon the altar of the burnt offering continually morning and evening and to do according to all that is written in the Law of THE LORD which He commanded Israel;
- and with them Heman and Jeduthun, and the rest that were chosen, who were expressed by name, to give thanks to THE LORD, because His mercy endureth for ever;
- and with them Heman and Jeduthun with trumpets and cymbals for those that should make a sound, and with musical instruments of God.

- And the sons of Jeduthun were porters.

And all the people departed every man to his house, and David returned to bless his house.

Now it came to pass, as David sat in his house, that David said to Nathan the prophet, “Lo, I dwell in an house of cedars, but the Ark of the Covenant of THE LORD remaineth under curtains.”

Then Nathan said unto David, “Do all that is in thine heart; for God is with thee.”

And it came to pass the same night that the Word of God came to Nathan, saying, “Go and tell David My servant, Thus saith THE LORD: Thou shalt **not** build Me an House to dwell in! For I have not dwelt in an House since the day that I brought up Israel unto this day but have gone from tent to tent, and from one tabernacle to another. Wheresoever I have walked with all Israel, <sup>1</sup>spake I a word to any of the judges of Israel whom I commanded to feed My people, saying, ‘*Why have ye not built Me an House of cedars?*’ Now therefore thus shalt thou say unto My servant David, Thus saith THE LORD of Hosts: I took thee from the <sup>2</sup>sheepcote, even from following the sheep, that thou shouldst be ruler over My People Israel; and I have been with thee whithersoever thou hast walked, and have cut off all thine enemies from before thee, and have made thee a name like the name of the great men that are in the earth. Also I will ordain a place for My People Israel and will plant them, and they shall dwell in their place and shall be moved no more; neither shall the children of wickedness waste them any more, as at the beginning and since the time that I commanded judges to be over My People Israel. Moreover I will subdue all thine enemies. Furthermore, I tell thee that THE LORD will build *thee* an House! And it shall come to pass, when thy days be expired that thou must go to be with thy fathers, that I will raise up thy Seed after thee, which shall be of thy sons; and I will establish His kingdom. *He* shall build Me an House, and I will stablish His throne for ever. I will be His Father, and He shall be My Son; and I will not take My mercy away from Him, as I took it from <sup>3</sup>him that was before thee - but I will settle Him in Mine House and in My kingdom for ever, and His throne shall be established for evermore.”

<sup>1</sup>*did I ever speak a word about* <sup>2</sup>*sheepfold/shepherding* <sup>3</sup>*Saul*

According to all these Words and according to all this vision, so did Nathan speak unto David. And David the king came and sat before THE LORD, and said, “Who am I, O LORD God, and what is mine House, that Thou hast brought me hitherto? And yet this was a small thing in Thine eyes, O God; for Thou hast also spoken of Thy servant's House for a great while to come, and hast regarded me according to the estate of a man of high degree, O LORD God. What can David speak more to Thee for the honour of Thy servant? For Thou knowest Thy servant. O LORD, for Thy servant's sake, and according to Thine own heart, hast Thou done all this greatness in making known all these great things. O LORD, there is none like Thee, neither is there any God beside Thee, according to all that we have heard with our ears!! And what one nation in the earth is like Thy People Israel, whom God went to redeem to be His own people, to make Thee a name of greatness and terribleness by driving out nations from before Thy People whom Thou hast redeemed out of Egypt? Therefore now, LORD, let the thing that Thou hast spoken concerning Thy servant and concerning his House be established for ever, and do as Thou hast said. Let it even be established, that Thy name may be magnified for ever, saying, “THE LORD of Hosts is the God of Israel, even a God *to* Israel! And let the House of David Thy servant be established before Thee. For Thou, O my God, hast told Thy servant that Thou wilt build him an House; therefore Thy servant hath found in his heart to pray before Thee. And now, LORD, Thou art God, and hast promised this goodness unto Thy servant! Now therefore let it please Thee to bless the House of Thy servant, that it may be before Thee for ever. For Thou blessest, O LORD, and it shall be blessed for ever!”

Now after this it came to pass that David smote the Philistines, and subdued them, and took Gath and her towns out of the hand of the Philistines. And he smote Moab; and the Moabites became David's servants, and brought gifts. And David smote Hadarezer king of Zobah unto Hamath, as he went to stablish his dominion by the River Euphrates.

And David took from him a thousand chariots, and seven thousand horsemen, and twenty thousand footmen. David also <sup>1</sup>hocked all the chariot horses, but reserved of them an hundred chariots.

<sup>1</sup>debated meaning: *either to cut the hamstrings or possibly even slaughter*

And when the Syrians of Damascus came to help Hadarezer king of Zobah, David slew of the Syrians two and twenty thousand men. Then David put garrisons in Syriadamascus; and the Syrians became David's servants, and brought gifts. Thus THE LORD preserved David whithersoever he went.

And David took the shields of gold that were on the servants of Hadarezer, and brought them to Jerusalem. Likewise from Tibhath, and from Chun, cities of Hadarezer, brought David very much brass (wherewith Solomon <sup>1</sup>made the brazen sea, and the pillars, and the vessels of brass). <sup>1</sup>*will later make*

Now when Tou, king of Hamath, heard how David had smitten all the host of Hadarezer king of Zobah he sent Hadoram his son to king David, to inquire of his welfare, and to congratulate him, because he had fought against Hadarezer and smitten him (for Hadarezer had war with Tou) and with him all manner of vessels of gold and silver and brass. Them also king David dedicated unto THE LORD, with the silver and the gold that he brought from all these nations - from Edom, and from Moab, and from the children of Ammon, and from the Philistines, and from Amalek.

Moreover Abishai the son of Zeruiah slew of the Edomites in the Valley of Salt eighteen thousand. And he put garrisons in Edom; and all the Edomites became David's servants. Thus THE LORD preserved David whithersoever he went.

So David reigned over all Israel, and executed judgment and justice among all his people:

- and Joab the son of Zeruiah was over the host,
- and Jehoshaphat the son of Ahilud, recorder,
- and Zadok the son of Ahitub,
- and Abimelech the son of Abiathar, were the priests;
- and Shavsha was scribe;
- and Benaiah the son of Jehoiada was over the Cherethites and the Pelethites;
- and the sons of David were chief about the king.

Now, it came to pass after this that Nahash the king of the children of Ammon died, and his son reigned in his stead. And David said, "I will show kindness unto Hanun the son of Nahash, because his father showed kindness to me."

And David sent messengers to comfort him concerning his father. So the servants of David came into the land of the children of Ammon to Hanun, to comfort him. But the princes of the children of Ammon said to Hanun, "Thinkest thou that David doth honour thy father, that he hath sent comforters unto thee? Are not his servants come unto thee for to search, and to overthrow, and to spy out the land?"

Wherefore Hanun took David's servants, and shaved them, and cut off their garments in the midst <sup>1</sup>hard by their buttocks, and sent them away. <sup>1</sup>*up against*

Then there went <sup>1</sup>certain and told David how the men were <sup>2</sup>served. And he sent to meet them; for the men were greatly ashamed. And the king said, "Tarry at Jericho until your beards be grown, and then return."

<sup>1</sup>*certain people* <sup>2</sup>*treated*

And when the children of Ammon saw that they had made themselves odious to David, Hanun and the children of Ammon sent a thousand talents of silver to hire them chariots and horsemen out of Mesopotamia, and out of Syria-Maachah, and out of Zobah. So they hired thirty and two thousand chariots,

and the king of Maachah and his people; who came and pitched before Medeba. And the children of Ammon gathered themselves together from their cities, and came to battle.

And when David heard of it, he sent Joab and all the host of the mighty men. And the children of Ammon came out, and put the battle in array before the gate of the city; and the kings that were come were by themselves in the field.

Now, when Joab saw that the battle was set against him before and behind, he chose out of all the <sup>1</sup>choice of Israel, and put them in array against the Syrians. And the rest of the <sup>2</sup>people he delivered unto the hand of Abishai his brother, and they set themselves in array against the children of Ammon.

*<sup>1</sup>choicest/best soldiers <sup>2</sup>soldiershe put under the command of*

And he said, "If the Syrians be too strong for me, then thou shalt help me; but if the children of Ammon be too strong for thee, then I will help thee. Be of good courage, and let us behave ourselves valiantly for our People, and for the cities of our God; and let THE LORD do that which is good in His sight!"

So Joab and the people that were with him drew nigh before the Syrians unto the battle; and they fled before him. And when the children of Ammon saw that the Syrians were fled, they likewise fled before Abishai his brother, and entered into the city. Then Joab came to Jerusalem.

And when the Syrians saw that they were put to the worse before Israel, they sent messengers and drew forth the Syrians that were beyond the river, and Shophach the captain of the host of Hadarezer went before them.

And it was told David; and he gathered all Israel and passed over Jordan and came upon them and set the battle in array against them. So when David had put the battle in array against the Syrians, they fought with him. But the Syrians fled before Israel; and David slew of the Syrians seven thousand men which fought in chariots, and forty thousand footmen, and killed Shophach the captain of the host.

And when the servants of Hadarezer saw that they were put to the worse before Israel, they made peace with David and became his servants; neither would the Syrians help the children of Ammon any more.

And it came to pass that after the year was expired, at the time that kings go out to battle, Joab led forth the power of the army and wasted the country of the children of Ammon and came and besieged Rabbah. But David tarried at Jerusalem. And Joab smote Rabbah, and destroyed it.

And David took the crown of their king from off his head, and found it to weigh <sup>1</sup>a talent of gold, and there were precious stones in it; and it was set upon David's head, and he brought also exceeding much spoil out of the city. And he brought out the people that were in it, and cut them with saws, and with harrows of iron, and with axes. Even so dealt David with all the cities of the children of Ammon. And David and all the people returned to Jerusalem.

*<sup>1</sup>approx. \$6-7 Million*

And it came to pass after this, that there arose war at Gezer with the Philistines; at which time Sibbechai the Hushathite slew Sippai, that was of the children of the giant, and they were subdued.

And there was war again with the Philistines; and Elhanan the son of Jair slew Lahmi the brother of Goliath the Gittite, whose spear staff was like a weaver's beam.

And yet again there was war at Gath, where was a man of great stature whose fingers and toes were four and twenty, six on each hand, and six on each foot; and he also was the son of the giant. But when he defied Israel, Jonathan the son of Shimea (David's brother) slew him. These were born unto the giant in Gath; and they fell by the hand of David, and by the hand of his servants.

And Satan stood up against Israel, and provoked David to number Israel. And David said to Joab and to the rulers of the people, "Go, number Israel from Beersheba even to Dan; and bring the number of them to me, that I may know it."

And Joab answered, "THE LORD make His People an hundred times so many more as they be! But, my lord the king, are they not all my lord's servants? Why then doth my lord require this thing? Why will 'he be a cause of trespass to Israel?" *<sup>1</sup>you make yourself to be*

Nevertheless the king's word prevailed against Joab. Wherefore Joab departed, and went throughout all Israel, and came to Jerusalem. And Joab gave the sum of the number of the people unto David. And all they of Israel were a thousand thousand and an hundred thousand men that drew sword, and Judah was four hundred threescore and ten thousand men that drew sword. But Levi and Benjamin counted he not among them; for the king's word was abominable to Joab. And God was displeased with this thing; therefore he smote Israel.

And David said unto God, "I have sinned greatly because I have done this thing! But now, I beseech Thee, do away the iniquity of thy servant; for I have done very foolishly."

And THE LORD spake unto Gad, David's <sup>1</sup>seer, saying, "Go and tell David, saying, 'Thus saith THE LORD: I offer thee three things. Choose thee one of them, that I may do it unto thee'." *<sup>1</sup>prophet*

So Gad came to David and said unto him, "Thus saith THE LORD, Choose thee either:

- three years' famine;
- or three months to be destroyed before thy foes, while that the sword of thine enemies overtaketh thee;
- or else three days the sword of THE LORD, even the pestilence, in the land, and the angel of THE LORD destroying throughout all the coasts of Israel.

Now therefore advise thyself what word I shall bring again to Him that sent me."

And David said unto Gad, "I am <sup>1</sup>in a great strait! Let me fall now into the hand of THE LORD - for very great are His mercies; but let me not fall into the hand of man." *<sup>1</sup>stuck between a rock and a hard place/in a tight spot*

So THE LORD sent pestilence upon Israel and there fell of Israel seventy thousand men. And God sent an angel unto Jerusalem to destroy it; and as he was destroying, THE LORD beheld, and He <sup>1</sup>repented Him of <sup>2</sup>the evil and said to the angel that destroyed, "It is enough; stay now thine hand!" And the angel of THE LORD stood by the threshingfloor of Ornan the Jebusite. *<sup>1</sup>changed His mind/turned from <sup>2</sup>affliction, calamity*

And David lifted up his eyes and saw the angel of THE LORD stand between the earth and the heaven, having a drawn sword in his hand stretched out over Jerusalem. Then David and the elders of Israel, who were clothed in sackcloth, fell upon their faces.

And David said unto God, "Is it not I that commanded the people to be numbered? Even I it is that have sinned and done evil indeed; but as for these sheep, what have *they* done? Let Thine hand, I pray thee O LORD my God, be on me and on my father's house - but not on Thy People, that they should be plagued!"

Then the angel of THE LORD commanded Gad to say to David that David should go up and set up an altar unto THE LORD in the threshingfloor of Ornan the Jebusite. And David went up at the saying of Gad which he spake in the name of THE LORD.

And Ornan turned back and saw the angel; and his four sons with him hid themselves. Now Ornan was threshing wheat, and, as David came to Ornan, Ornan looked and saw David and went out of the threshingfloor and bowed himself to David with his face to the ground.

Then David said to Ornan, "Grant me the place of this threshingfloor, that I may build an altar therein unto THE LORD (thou shalt grant it me for the full price) that the plague may be stayed from the people."

And Ornan said unto David, "Take it to thee, and let my lord the king do that which is good in his eyes. Lo, I give thee the oxen also for burnt offerings, and the threshing instruments for wood, and the wheat for the meat offering - I give it all."

And King David said to Ornan, "Nay; but I will verily buy it for the full price; for I will not take that which is thine for THE LORD, nor offer burnt offerings without cost."

So David gave to Ornan for the place six hundred shekels of gold by weight. And David built there an altar unto THE LORD, and offered burnt offerings and peace offerings, and called upon THE LORD. And He answered him from heaven by fire upon the altar of burnt offering. And THE LORD commanded the angel; and he put up his sword again into the sheath thereof.

At that time, when David saw that THE LORD had answered him in the threshingfloor of Ornan the Jebusite, then he sacrificed there (for The Tabernacle of THE LORD which Moses made in the wilderness, and the altar of the burnt offering, were at that season in the high place at Gibeon; but David could not go before it to inquire of God, for he was afraid because of the sword of the angel of THE LORD).

Then David said, "This is the House of THE LORD God, and this is the altar of the burnt offering for Israel."

And David commanded to gather together the strangers that were in the land of Israel; and he set masons to hew wrought stones to build the House of God. And David prepared iron in abundance for the nails for the doors of the gates, and for the joinings; and brass in abundance without weight; also cedar trees in abundance (for the Zidonians and they of Tyre brought much cedar wood to David).

And David said, "Solomon my son is young and tender, and the House that is to be builded for THE LORD must be exceeding magnificent, of fame and of glory throughout all countries. I will therefore now make preparation for it."

So David prepared abundantly before his death. Then he called for Solomon his son, and charged him to build an House for THE LORD God of Israel. And David said to Solomon, "My son, as for me, it was in my mind to build an House unto the name of THE LORD my God; but the Word of THE LORD came to me, saying, 'Thou hast shed blood abundantly and hast made great wars; thou shalt not build an House unto My name, because thou hast shed much blood upon the earth in My sight. Behold, a son shall be born to thee who shall be a man of rest and I will give him rest from all his enemies round about; for his name shall be *'Solomon, and I will give peace and quietness unto Israel in his days. He shall build an House for My name; and he shall be My son, and I will be his Father; and I will establish the throne of his kingdom over Israel for ever'*. Now, my son, THE LORD be with thee and prosper thou, and build the House of THE LORD thy God as He hath said of thee. Only, THE LORD give thee wisdom and understanding, and give thee charge concerning Israel, that thou mayest keep the Law of THE LORD thy God. Then shalt thou prosper if thou takest heed to fulfil the statutes and judgments which THE LORD charged Moses with concerning Israel. Be strong, and of good courage! Dread not, nor be dismayed! Now, behold, in my trouble I have prepared for the House of THE LORD an hundred thousand talents of gold, and a thousand thousand talents of silver; and of brass and iron without weight (for it is in abundance); timber also and stone have I prepared; and thou mayest add thereto. Moreover there are workmen with thee in abundance, hewers and workers of stone and timber, and all manner of cunning men for every manner of work. Of the gold, the silver, and the brass, and the iron, there is no number. Arise therefore, and be doing, and THE LORD be with thee."

*'Shlomo/Shalom (meaning "man of peace")*

David also commanded all the princes of Israel to help Solomon his son, saying, "Is not THE LORD your God with you? And hath He not given you rest on every side? For He hath given the inhabitants of the land into mine hand; and the land is subdued before THE LORD and before His People. Now set your heart and your soul to seek THE LORD your God; arise therefore, and build ye the Sanctuary of THE LORD God, to bring the Ark of the Covenant of THE LORD and the holy vessels of God into the House that is to be built to the name of THE LORD."

So when David was old and full of days, he made Solomon his son king over Israel. And he gathered together all the princes of Israel, with the priests and the Levites. Now the Levites were numbered from the age of thirty years and upward; and their number by their polls, man by man, was thirty and eight thousand - of which, twenty and four thousand were to set forward the work of the House of THE LORD and six thousand were officers and judges.

Moreover four thousand were porters; and four thousand praised THE LORD "with the instruments which I made," said David, "to praise therewith."

And David divided them into courses among the sons of Levi, namely:

- Gershon,
- Kohath,
- and Merari.

Of the Gershonites were:

- Laadan,
- and Shimei.

The sons of Laadan:

- the chief was Jehiel,
- and Zetham,
- and Joel..... <sup>1</sup>three.

<sup>1</sup>these three

The sons of Shimei:

- Shelomith,
- and Haziël,
- and Haran..... <sup>1</sup>three.

<sup>1</sup>these three

These were the chief of the fathers of Laadan. And the sons of Shimei were:

- Jahath,
- Zina,
- and Jeush,
- and Beriah.

These four were the sons of Shimei.

And Jahath was the chief, and Zizah the second: but Jeush and Beriah had not many sons; therefore they were in one reckoning, according to their father's house.

The sons of Kohath:

- Amram,
- Izhar,
- Hebron,
- and Uzziel ..... <sup>1</sup>four.

<sup>1</sup>these four

The sons of Amram:

- Aaron
- and Moses.

And Aaron was separated, that he should sanctify the most holy things - he and his sons for ever - to burn incense before THE LORD, to minister unto Him, and to bless in His name for ever. Now concerning Moses the man of God, his sons were named of the tribe of Levi. The sons of Moses were:

- Gershom,
- and Eliezer.

Of the sons of Gershom:

- Shebuel was the chief.

And the sons of Eliezer were:

- Rehabiah the chief (and Eliezer had none other sons; but the sons of Rehabiah were very many).

Of the sons of Izhar:

- Shelomith the chief.

Of the sons of Hebron:

- Jeriah the first,
- Amariah the second,
- Jahaziel the third,
- and Jekameam the fourth.

Of the sons of Uzziel:

- Micah the first,
- and Jesiah the second.

The sons of Merari:

- Mahli,
- and Mushi.

The sons of Mahli:

- Eleazar,
- and Kish.

And Eleazar died, and had no sons, but daughters; and their brethren the sons of Kish took them.

The sons of Mushi:

- Mahli,
- and Eder,
- and Jeremoth..... <sup>1</sup>three.

<sup>1</sup>these three

These were the sons of Levi after the House of their fathers; even the chief of the fathers, as they were counted by number of names by their polls, that did the work for the service of the House of THE LORD, from the age of twenty years and upward. For David said, "THE LORD God of Israel hath given rest unto His People, that they may dwell in Jerusalem for ever. And also unto the Levites - they shall no more carry The Tabernacle, nor any vessels of it for the service thereof."

For by the last words of David the Levites were numbered from twenty years old and above, because their office was to:

- wait on the sons of Aaron for the service of the House of THE LORD, in the courts and in the chambers and in the purifying of all holy things,

- and the work of the service of the House of God, both for the Showbread, and for the fine flour for meat offering, and for the unleavened cakes, and for that which is baked in the pan, and for that which is fried, and for all manner of measure and size,
- and to stand every morning to thank and praise THE LORD, and likewise at even,
- and to offer all burnt sacrifices unto THE LORD in the Sabbaths, in the new moons, and on the set feasts, by number, according to the order commanded unto them, continually before THE LORD,
- and that they should keep the charge of The Tabernacle of the congregation and the charge of the Holy Place and the charge of the sons of Aaron their brethren in the service of the House of THE LORD.

Now these are the divisions of the sons of Aaron. The sons of Aaron:

- Nadab,
- and Abihu,
- Eleazar,
- and Ithamar.

But Nadab and Abihu died before their father, and had no children: therefore Eleazar and Ithamar executed the priest's office.

And David distributed them - both Zadok of the sons of Eleazar, and Ahimelech of the sons of Ithamar - according to their offices in their service. And there were more chief men found of the sons of Eleazar than of the sons of Ithamar; and thus were they divided. Among the sons of Eleazar there were sixteen chief men of the House of their fathers, and eight among the sons of Ithamar according to the House of their fathers. Thus were they divided by lot, one sort with another; for the governors of the Sanctuary and governors of the House of God were of the sons of Eleazar and of the sons of Ithamar.

And Shemaiah the son of Nethaneel the scribe, one of the Levites, wrote them before the king and the princes and Zadok the priest and Ahimelech the son of Abiathar and before the chief of the fathers of the priests and Levites - one principal household being taken for Eleazar, and one taken for Ithamar. Now the

- ❖ first lot came forth to Jehoiarib,
- ❖ the second to Jedaiah,
- ❖ The third to Harim,
- ❖ the fourth to Seorim,
- ❖ the fifth to Malchijah,
- ❖ the sixth to Mijamin,
- ❖ the seventh to Hakkoz,
- ❖ the eighth to Abijah,
- ❖ the ninth to Jeshuah,
- ❖ the tenth to Shecaniah,
- ❖ the eleventh to Eliashib,
- ❖ the twelfth to Jakim,
- ❖ the thirteenth to Huppah,
- ❖ the fourteenth to Jeshebeab,
- ❖ the fifteenth to Bilgah,
- ❖ the sixteenth to Immer,
- ❖ the seventeenth to Hezir,
- ❖ the eighteenth to Aphses,
- ❖ the nineteenth to Pethahiah,
- ❖ the twentieth to Jehezkel,
- ❖ the one and twentieth to Jachin,
- ❖ the two and twentieth to Gamul,
- ❖ the three and twentieth to Delaiah,
- ❖ the four and twentieth to Maaziah.

These were the orderings of them in their service to come into the House of THE LORD, according to their manner, under Aaron their father, as THE LORD God of Israel had commanded him.

And the rest of the sons of Levi were these:

- Of the sons of Amram: Shubael;
- of the sons of Shubael; Jehdeiah.

Concerning Rehabiah:

- of the sons of Rehabiah, the first was Isshiah.

Of the Izharites: Shelomoth;

- of the sons of Shelomoth: Jahath.

And the sons of Hebron:

- Jeriah the first,
- Amariah the second,
- Jahaziel the third,
- Jekameam the fourth.

Of the sons of Uzziel: Michah;

- of the sons of Michah: Shamir.

The brother of Michah was Isshiah;

- of the sons of Isshiah: Zechariah.

The sons of Merari were:

- Mahli,
  - and Mushi:
- the sons of Jaaziah: Beno.

The sons of Merari by Jaaziah:

- Beno,
- and Shoham,
- and Zaccur,
- and Ibri.

Of Mahli came:

- Eleazar, who had no sons.

Concerning Kish, the son of Kish was:

- Jerahmeel.

The sons also of Mushi:

- Mahli,
- and Eder,
- and Jerimoth.

These were the sons of the Levites after the house of their fathers. These likewise cast lots over against their brethren the sons of Aaron in the presence of David the king, and Zadok, and Ahimelech, and the chief of the fathers of the priests and Levites, even the principal fathers over against their younger brethren.

Moreover David and the captains of the host separated to the service of the sons of Asaph, and of Heman, and of Jeduthun, who should prophesy with harps, with psalteries, and with cymbals; and the number of the workmen according to their service was:

- Of the sons of Asaph:
  - Zaccur,
  - and Joseph,
  - and Nethaniah,

- and Asarelah,
- the sons of Asaph under the hands of Asaph, which prophesied according to the order of the king.

Of Jeduthun:

- the sons of Jeduthun;
  - Gedaliah,
  - and Zeri,
  - and Jeshaiiah,
  - Hashabiah,
  - and Mattithiah,

-six, under the hands of their father Jeduthun, who prophesied with a harp to give thanks and to praise THE LORD.

Of Heman:

- the sons of Heman;
  - Bukkiah,
  - Mattaniah,
  - Uzziel,
  - Shebuel,
  - and Jerimoth,
  - Hananiah,
  - Hanani,
  - Eliathah,
  - Giddalti, and
  - Romamtiezer,
  - Joshbekashah,
  - Mallothi,
  - Hothir,
  - and Mahazioth:

All these were the sons of Heman the king's seer in the words of God, to lift up the horn. And God gave to Heman fourteen sons and three daughters.

All these were under the hands of their father for song in the house of THE LORD, with cymbals, psalteries, and harps, for the service of the house of God, according to the king's order to Asaph, Jeduthun, and Heman.

So the number of them, with their brethren that were instructed in the songs of THE LORD, even all that were cunning, was two hundred fourscore and eight. And they cast lots, ward against ward, as well the small as the great, the teacher as the scholar. Now:

- ❖ The first lot came forth for Asaph to Joseph
- ❖ The second to Gedaliah, who with his brethren and sons were twelve
- ❖ The third to Zaccur, he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve
- ❖ The fourth to Izri, he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve
- ❖ The fifth to Nethaniah, he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve
- ❖ The sixth to Bukkiah, he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve
- ❖ The seventh to Jesharelah, he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve
- ❖ The eighth to Jeshaiiah, he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve
- ❖ The ninth to Mattaniah, he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve
- ❖ The tenth to Shimei, he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve
- ❖ The eleventh to Azareel, he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve
- ❖ The twelfth to Hashabiah, he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve
- ❖ The thirteenth to Shubael, he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve
- ❖ The fourteenth to Mattithiah, he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve
- ❖ The fifteenth to Jeremoth, he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve

- ❖ The sixteenth to Hananiah, he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve
- ❖ The seventeenth to Joshbekashah, he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve
- ❖ The eighteenth to Hanani, he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve
- ❖ The nineteenth to Mallothi, he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve
- ❖ The twentieth to Eliathah, he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve
- ❖ The one and twentieth to Hothir, he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve
- ❖ The two and twentieth to Giddalti, he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve
- ❖ The three and twentieth to Mahazioth, he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve
- ❖ The four and twentieth to Romantiezer, he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve.

Concerning the divisions of the porters:

- Of the Korhites was Meshelemiah the son of Kore, of the sons of Asaph.
  - And the sons of Meshelemiah were,
    - Zechariah the firstborn,
    - Jediael the second,
    - Zebadiah the third,
    - Jathniel the fourth,
    - Elam the fifth,
    - Jehohanan the sixth,
    - Elioenai the seventh.

Moreover the sons of Obededom were:

- Shemaiah the firstborn,
- Jehozabad the second,
- Joah the third,
- and Sacar the fourth,
- and Nethaneel the fifth,
- Ammiel the sixth,
- Issachar the seventh,
- Peulthai the eighth.

For God blessed him. Also unto Shemaiah his son were sons born that ruled throughout the House of their father, for they were mighty men of valour.

The sons of Shemaiah:

- Othni,
- and Rephael,
- and Obed,
- Elzabad (whose brethren were strong men),
- Elihu,
- and Semachiah.

- all these of the sons of Obededom. They and their sons and their brethren, able men for strength for the service, were <sup>1</sup>threescore and two of Obededom. 162

And Meshelemiah had sons and brethren, strong men - eighteen.

Also Hosah, of the children of Merari, had sons:

- Simri the chief (for though he was not the firstborn, yet his father made him the chief),
- Hilkiyah the second,
- Tebaliah the third,
- Zechariah the fourth;
- all the sons and brethren of Hosah were thirteen.

Among these were the divisions of the porters, even among the chief men, having wards one against another, to minister in the House of THE LORD. And they cast lots, as well the small as the great, according to the House of their fathers, for every gate. And the lot eastward fell to Shelemiah. Then for Zechariah his son, a wise counsellor, they cast lots; and his lot came out northward. To Obededom southward; and to his sons the House of Asuppim. To Shuppim and Hosah the lot came forth westward, with the gate Shallecheth, by the causeway of the going up, ward against ward. Eastward were six Levites, northward four a day, southward four a day, and toward Asuppim two and two. At Parbar westward, four at the causeway, and two at Parbar.

These are the divisions of the porters among the sons of Kore, and among the sons of Merari.

And of the Levites, Ahijah was over the treasures of the House of God, and over the treasures of the dedicated things.

As concerning the sons of Laadan; the sons of the Gershonite Laadan, chief fathers, even of Laadan the Gershonite, were Jehieli.

The sons of Jehieli; Zetham, and Joel his brother, which were over the treasures of the House of THE LORD.

Of the Amramites, and the Izharites, the Hebronites, and the Uzzielites, and Shebuel the son of Gershom (the son of Moses), was ruler of the treasures.

And his brethren by Eliezer:

- Rehabiah his son,
  - and Jeshaiiah his son,
    - and Joram his son,
      - and Zichri his son,
        - and Shelomith his son

- which Shelomith and his brethren were over all the treasures of the dedicated things, which David the king and the chief fathers, the captains over thousands and hundreds, and the captains of the host, had dedicated. Out of the spoils won in battles did they dedicate to maintain the House of THE LORD, and all that Samuel the seer, and Saul the son of Kish, and Abner the son of Ner, and Joab the son of Zeruiah, had dedicated; and whosoever had dedicated any thing, it was under the hand of Shelomith and of his brethren.

Of the Izharites, Chenaniah and his sons were for the outward business over Israel, for officers and judges.

And of the Hebronites, Hashabiah and his brethren, men of valour, a thousand and seven hundred, were officers among them of Israel on this side Jordan westward in all the business of THE LORD and in the service of the king.

Among the Hebronites was Jerijah the chief, even among the Hebronites, according to the generations of his fathers. In the fortieth year of the reign of David they were sought for, and there were found among them mighty men of valour at Jazer of Gilead.

And his brethren, men of valour, were two thousand and seven hundred chief fathers, whom King David made rulers over the Reubenites, the Gadites, and the half tribe of Manasseh, for every matter pertaining to God and affairs of the king.

Now the Children of Israel after their number (to wit, the chief fathers and captains of thousands and hundreds, and their officers that served the king in any matter of the courses, which came in and went out month by month throughout all the months of the year of every <sup>1</sup>course) were twenty and four thousand.

- ❖ Over the first course for the first month was Jashobeam the son of Zabdiel; and in his course were twenty and four thousand. Of the children of Perez was the chief of all the captains of the host for the first month.
- ❖ And over the course of the second month was Dodai an Ahohite, and of his course was Mikloth also the ruler; in his course likewise were twenty and four thousand.
- ❖ The third captain of the host for the third month was Benaiah the son of Jehoiada, a chief priest; and in his course were twenty and four thousand. This is that Benaiah who was mighty among the thirty, and above the thirty; and in his course was Ammizabad his son.
- ❖ The fourth captain for the fourth month was Asahel the brother of Joab, and Zebadiah his son after him; and in his course were twenty and four thousand.
- ❖ The fifth captain for the fifth month was Shamhuth the Izrahite; and in his course were twenty and four thousand.
- ❖ The sixth captain for the sixth month was Ira the son of Ikkesh the Tekoite; and in his course were twenty and four thousand.
- ❖ The seventh captain for the seventh month was Helez the Pelonite, of the children of Ephraim; and in his course were twenty and four thousand.
- ❖ The eighth captain for the eighth month was Sibbecai the Hushathite, of the Zarhites; and in his course were twenty and four thousand.
- ❖ The ninth captain for the ninth month was Abiezer the Anetothite, of the Benjamites; and in his course were twenty and four thousand.
- ❖ The tenth captain for the tenth month was Maharai the Netophathite, of the Zarhites; and in his course were twenty and four thousand.
- ❖ The eleventh captain for the eleventh month was Benaiah the Pirathonite, of the children of Ephraim; and in his course were twenty and four thousand.
- ❖ The twelfth captain for the twelfth month was Heldai the Netophathite, of Othniel; and in his course were twenty and four thousand.

Furthermore over the tribes of Israel:

- the ruler of the Reubenites was Eliezer the son of Zichri
- of the Simeonites: Shephatiah the son of Maachah
- of the Levites: Hashabiah the son of Kemuel
- of the Aaronites: Zadok
- of Judah: Elihu, one of the brethren of David
- of Issachar: Omri the son of Michael
- of Zebulun: Ishmaiah the son of Obadiah
- of Naphtali: Jerimoth the son of Azriel
- of the children of Ephraim: Hoshea the son of Azaziah
- of the half tribe of Manasseh: Joel the son of Pedaiiah
- of the half tribe of Manasseh in Gilead: Iddo the son of Zechariah
- of Benjamin: Jaasiel the son of Abner
- of Dan: Azareel the son of Jeroham.

These were the princes of the tribes of Israel. But David took not the number of them from twenty years old and under because THE LORD had said He would increase Israel like to the stars of the heavens.

Joab the son of Zeruiah began to number, but he finished not because there fell wrath for it against Israel; neither was the number put in the account of the chronicles of King David.

And over the king's treasures was:

- Azmaveth the son of Adiel.

And over the storehouses in the fields, in the cities, and in the villages, and in the castles, was:

- Jehonathan the son of Uzziah.

And over them that did the work of the field for tillage of the ground was:

- Ezri the son of Chelub.

And over the vineyards was:

- Shimei the Ramathite.

Over the increase of the vineyards for the wine cellars was:

- Zabdi the Shiphmite.

And over the olive trees and the sycamore trees that were in the low plains was:

- Baalhanan the Gederite.

And over the cellars of oil was:

- Joash.

And over the herds that fed in Sharon was:

- Shitrai the Sharonite.

And over the herds that were in the valleys was:

- Shaphat the son of Adlai.

Over the camels also was:

- Obil the Ishmaelite.

And over the asses was:

- Jehdeiah the Meronothite.

And over the flocks was:

- Jaziz the Hagerite.

All these were the rulers of the substance which was King David's.

Also Jonathan, David's uncle, was a counsellor, a wise man, and a scribe.

And Jehiel the son of Hachmoni was with the king's sons.

And Ahithophel was the king's counselor.

And Hushai the Archite was the king's companion.

And after Ahithophel was Jehoiada the son of Benaiah, and Abiathar.

And the general of the king's army was Joab.

And David assembled all the princes of Israel, the princes of the tribes, and the captains of the companies that ministered to the king by course, and the captains over the thousands, and captains over the hundreds, and the stewards over all the substance and possession of the king, and of his sons, with the officers, and with the mighty men, and with all the valiant men, unto Jerusalem.

Then David the king stood up upon his feet and said, "Hear me, my brethren, and my people! As for me, I had in mine heart to build an House of rest for the Ark of the Covenant of THE LORD, and for the footstool of our God, and had made ready for the building. But God said unto me, '*Thou shalt not build an House for My name, because thou hast been a man of war and hast shed blood*'. Howbeit THE LORD God of Israel chose me before all the House of my father to be king over Israel for ever, for He hath chosen Judah to be the ruler - and of the House of Judah, the House of my father. And among the sons of my father He liked me, to make me king over all Israel, and of all my sons (for THE LORD hath given me many sons). He hath chosen Solomon my son to sit upon the throne of the kingdom of THE LORD over Israel. And He said unto me, '*Solomon thy son, he shall build My House and My courts; for I have chosen him to be My son and I will be his Father. Moreover I will establish his kingdom for ever if he be constant to do My commandments and My judgments, as at this day*'. Now therefore, in the sight of all Israel - the congregation of THE LORD - and in the audience of our God, keep and seek for all the commandments of THE LORD your God, that ye may possess this good land and leave it for an inheritance for your children after you for ever. And thou, Solomon my son, know thou the God of thy father and serve Him with a perfect heart and with a willing mind - for THE LORD searcheth all hearts and understandeth all the imaginations of the thoughts. If thou seek Him, He will be found of thee. But, if thou forsake Him, He will cast thee off for ever. Take heed now; for THE LORD hath chosen thee to build an House for the Sanctuary. Be strong and do it!"

Then David gave to Solomon his son the pattern of the porch, and of the houses thereof, and of the treasuries thereof, and of the upper chambers thereof, and of the inner parlours thereof, and of the place of the Mercy Seat, and the pattern of all that he had by the Spirit, of the courts of the House of THE LORD, and of all the chambers round about, of the treasuries of the House of God, and of the treasuries of the dedicated things. Also for the courses of the priests and the Levites, and for all the work of the service of the House of THE LORD, and for all the vessels of service in the House of THE LORD.

He gave of gold by weight for things of gold, for all instruments of all manner of service; silver also for all instruments of silver by weight, for all instruments of every kind of service; even the weight for the Candlesticks of gold, and for their lamps of gold, by weight for every Candlestick, and for the lamps thereof; and for the Candlesticks of silver by weight, both for the Candlestick, and also for the lamps thereof, according to the use of every Candlestick. And by weight he gave gold for the tables of Showbread, for every table; and likewise silver for the tables of silver. Also pure gold for the fleshhooks, and the bowls, and the cups; and for the golden basins he gave gold by weight for every basin; and likewise silver by weight for every basin of silver. And for the Altar of incense refined gold by weight; and gold for the pattern of the chariot of the cherubims, that spread out their wings, and covered the Ark of the Covenant of THE LORD. "All this," said David, "THE LORD made me understand in writing by His hand upon me, even all the works of this pattern."

And David said to Solomon his son, "Be strong and of good courage, and do it! Fear not, nor be dismayed; for THE LORD God, even my God, will be with thee. He will not fail thee, nor forsake thee, until thou hast finished all the work for the service of the House of THE LORD. And, behold, the courses of the priests and the Levites, even they shall be with thee for all the service of the House of God; and there shall be with thee for all manner of workmanship every willing skilful man, for any manner of service. Also the princes and all the people will be 'wholly at thy commandment.'"

*'completely/fully/wholey*

Furthermore David the king said unto all the congregation, "Solomon my son, whom alone God hath chosen, is yet young and tender, and the work is great - for the palace is not for man, but for THE LORD God. Now, I have prepared with all my might for the House of my God the gold for things to be made of gold, and the silver for things of silver, and the brass for things of brass, the iron for things of iron, and wood for things of wood; onyx stones, and stones to be set, glistening stones, and of divers colours, and all manner of precious stones, and marble stones in abundance. Moreover, because I have set my affection to the House of my God, I have of mine own proper good, of gold and silver, which I have given to the House

of my God, over and above all that I have prepared for the Holy House, even three thousand talents of gold of the gold of Ophir, and seven thousand talents of refined silver, to overlay the walls of the houses withal - the gold for things of gold, and the silver for things of silver, and for all manner of work to be made by the hands of artificers. And who then is willing to consecrate his service this day unto THE LORD?"

Then the chief of the fathers and princes of the tribes of Israel, and the captains of thousands and of hundreds, with the rulers of the king's work, offered willingly, and gave for the service of the House of God of gold five thousand talents and ten thousand drams, and of silver ten thousand talents, and of brass eighteen thousand talents, and one hundred thousand talents of iron. And they with whom precious stones were found gave them to the treasure of the House of THE LORD by the hand of Jehiel the Gershonite.

Then the people rejoiced, for that they offered willingly, because with perfect heart they offered willingly to THE LORD; and David the king also rejoiced with great joy. Wherefore David blessed THE LORD before all the congregation, and David said, "Blessed be Thou, LORD God of Israel our Father, for ever and ever! Thine, O LORD, is the greatness and the power and the glory and the victory and the majesty; for all that is in the heaven and in the earth is Thine! Thine is the kingdom, O LORD, and Thou art exalted as Head above all. Both riches and honour come of Thee, and Thou reignest over all; and in Thine hand is power and might; and in Thine hand it is to make great, and to give strength unto all. Now therefore, our God, we thank Thee, and praise Thy glorious name. But who am I, and what is my people, that we should be able to offer so willingly after this sort? For all things come of *Thee* and of Thine *'own* have we given Thee. For we are strangers before Thee, and sojourners, as were all our fathers. Our days on the earth are as a shadow, and there is none abiding. O LORD our God, all this store that we have prepared to build thee an House for Thine holy name cometh of Thine hand, and is all Thine own! I know also, my God, that Thou triest the heart, and hast pleasure in uprightness. As for me, in the uprightness of mine heart I have willingly offered all these things. And now have I seen with joy Thy People, which are present here, to offer willingly unto Thee. O LORD God of Abraham, Isaac, and of Israel, our fathers, keep this for ever in the imagination of the thoughts of the heart of Thy People, and prepare their heart unto Thee. And give unto Solomon my son a perfect heart, to keep Thy commandments, Thy testimonies, and Thy statutes, and to do all these things, and to build the Palace for the which I have made provision." *'own property*

And David said to all the congregation, "Now bless THE LORD your God!" And all the congregation blessed THE LORD God of their fathers, and bowed down their heads, and worshipped THE LORD, and the king. And they sacrificed sacrifices unto THE LORD, and offered burnt offerings unto THE LORD, on the morrow after that day, even a thousand bullocks, a thousand rams, and a thousand lambs, with their drink offerings, and sacrifices in abundance for all Israel, and did eat and drink before THE LORD on that day with great gladness. And they made Solomon, the son of David, king the second time and anointed him unto THE LORD to be the chief governor, and Zadok to be priest.

Then Solomon sat on the throne of THE LORD as king instead of David his father, and prospered; and all Israel obeyed him. And all the princes, and the mighty men, and all the sons likewise of King David, submitted themselves unto Solomon the king. And THE LORD magnified Solomon exceedingly in the sight of all Israel, and bestowed upon him such royal majesty as had not been on any king before him in Israel.

Thus David the son of Jesse reigned over all Israel. And the time that he reigned over Israel was forty years; seven years reigned he in Hebron, and thirty and three years reigned he in Jerusalem. And he died in a good old age, full of days, riches, and honour. And Solomon his son reigned in his stead.

Now the acts of David the king, first and last, behold, they are written in the book of Samuel the seer, and in the book of Nathan the prophet, and in the book of Gad the seer, with all his reign and his might, and the times that went over him, and over Israel, and over all the kingdoms of the countries.

And Solomon, the son of David, was strengthened in his kingdom, and THE LORD his God was with him and magnified him exceedingly.

Then Solomon spake unto all Israel, to the captains of thousands and of hundreds, and to the judges, and to every governor in all Israel, the chief of the fathers.

So Solomon, and all the congregation with him, went to the high place that was at Gibeon; for there was The Tabernacle of the Congregation of God, which Moses the servant of THE LORD had made in the wilderness. But the Ark of God had David brought up from Kirjathjearim to the place which David had prepared for it; for he had pitched a tent for it at Jerusalem.

Moreover, the Brazen Altar that Bezaleel (the son of Uri, the son of Hur) had made, he put before The Tabernacle of THE LORD; and Solomon and the congregation sought unto it. And Solomon went up thither to the Brazen Altar before THE LORD, which was at The Tabernacle of the Congregation, and offered a thousand burnt offerings upon it.

In that night did God appear unto Solomon and said unto him, "Ask what I shall give thee."

And Solomon said unto God, "Thou hast showed great mercy unto David my father, and hast made me to reign in his stead. Now, O LORD God, let Thy promise unto David my father be established - for Thou hast made me king over a people like the dust of the earth in multitude. Give me now wisdom and knowledge, that I may go out and come in before this people - for who can judge this Thy People that is so great?"

And God said to Solomon, "Because *this* was in thine heart, and thou hast not asked riches, wealth, or honour, nor the life of thine enemies, neither yet hast asked long life, but hast asked wisdom and knowledge for thyself that thou mayest judge My People over whom I have made thee king - wisdom and knowledge is granted unto thee! And I will give thee riches, and wealth, and honour, such as none of the kings have had that have been before thee, neither shall there any after thee have the like!"

Then Solomon came from his journey to the high place that was at Gibeon to Jerusalem, from before The Tabernacle of the Congregation, and reigned over Israel.

And Solomon gathered chariots and horsemen: and he had a thousand and four hundred chariots, and twelve thousand horsemen, which he placed in the chariot cities, and with the king at Jerusalem.

And the king made silver and gold at Jerusalem as plenteous as stones, and cedar trees made he as the sycamore trees that are in the vale for abundance. And Solomon had horses brought out of Egypt, and linen yarn; the king's merchants received the linen yarn at a price.

And they fetched up and brought forth out of Egypt a chariot for six hundred shekels of silver, and an horse for an hundred and fifty; and so brought they out horses for all the kings of the Hittites, and for the kings of Syria, by their means.

And Solomon determined to build an House for the name of THE LORD and an house for his kingdom. And Solomon told out <sup>1</sup>threescore and ten thousand men to bear burdens, and <sup>2</sup>fourscore thousand to hew in the mountain, and three thousand and six hundred to oversee them. <sup>1</sup>70,000 <sup>2</sup>80,000

And Solomon sent to Hiram the king of Tyre, saying, "As thou didst deal with David my father, and didst send him cedars to build him an house to dwell therein, even so deal with me. Behold, I build an House to the name of THE LORD my God, to dedicate it to Him and to burn before Him sweet incense and for the continual Showbread and for the burnt offerings morning and evening, on the Sabbaths, and on the new moons, and on the solemn feasts of THE LORD our God. This is an ordinance for ever to Israel. And the

House which I build is great - for great is our God above all gods. But who is able to build Him an House, seeing the heaven and heaven of heavens cannot contain Him? Who am I then, that I should build Him an House, save only to burn sacrifice before Him? Send me now therefore a man cunning to work in gold, and in silver, and in brass, and in iron, and in purple, and in crimson, and blue, and that can skill to <sup>1</sup>grave with the cunning men that are with me in Judah and in Jerusalem, whom David my father did provide. Send me also cedar trees, fir trees, and algum trees, out of Lebanon; for I know that thy servants can skill to cut timber in Lebanon. And, behold, my servants shall be with thy servants, even to prepare me timber in abundance - for the House which I am about to build shall be wonderful great. And, behold, I will give to thy servants, the hewers that cut timber, twenty thousand measures of beaten wheat, and twenty thousand measures of barley, and twenty thousand baths of wine, and twenty thousand baths of oil. <sup>1</sup>engrave

Then Hiram the king of Tyre answered in writing, which he sent to Solomon, "Because THE LORD hath loved His people, He hath made thee king over them!" Hiram said moreover, "Blessed be THE LORD God of Israel that made heaven and earth, who hath given to David the king a wise son, endued with prudence and understanding, that might build an House for THE LORD and an House for His kingdom! And now I have sent a cunning man, endued with understanding, of Hiram my father's - the son of a woman of the daughters of Dan, and his father was a man of Tyre, skilful to work in gold, and in silver, in brass, in iron, in stone, and in timber, in purple, in blue, and in fine linen, and in crimson; also to grave any manner of graving, and to find out every device which shall be put to him, with thy cunning men, and with the cunning men of my lord David thy father. Now therefore the wheat, and the barley, the oil, and the wine, which my lord hath spoken of, let him send unto his servants; and we will cut wood out of Lebanon as much as thou shalt need, and we will bring it to thee in floats by sea to Joppa and thou shalt carry it up to Jerusalem."

And Solomon numbered all the strangers that were in the land of Israel, after the numbering wherewith David his father had numbered them; and they were found an hundred and fifty thousand and three thousand and six hundred. And he set threescore and ten thousand of them to be bearers of burdens, and fourscore thousand to be hewers in the mountain, and three thousand and six hundred overseers to set the people a work.

Then Solomon began to build the House of THE LORD at Jerusalem in Mount Moriah where THE LORD appeared unto David his father, in the place that David had prepared in the threshingfloor of Ornan the Jebusite.

And he began to build in the second day of the second month, in the fourth year of his reign.

Now, these are the things wherein Solomon was instructed for the building of the House of God: the length by cubits after the first measure was threescore cubits, and the breadth twenty cubits. And the porch that was in the front of the house: the length of it was according to the breadth of the house - twenty cubits, and the height was an hundred and twenty. And he overlaid it within with pure gold.

And the greater House he ceiled with fir tree, which he overlaid with fine gold, and set thereon palm trees and chains. And he garnished the House with precious stones for beauty; and the gold was gold of Parvaim. He overlaid also the House, the beams, the posts, and the walls thereof, and the doors thereof, with gold; and graved cherubims on the walls.

And he made the Most <sup>1</sup>Holy House, the length whereof was according to the breadth of the house, twenty cubits, and the breadth thereof twenty cubits; and he overlaid it with fine gold, amounting to six hundred talents. And the weight of the nails was fifty shekels of gold. And he overlaid the upper chambers with gold. And in the Most Holy House he made two cherubims of image work, and overlaid them with gold. And the wings of the cherubims were twenty cubits long - one wing of the one cherub was five cubits reaching to the wall of the House, and the other wing was likewise five cubits reaching to the wing of the other cherub. And one wing of the other cherub was five cubits reaching to the wall of the house, and the other wing was

five cubits also, joining to the wing of the other cherub. The wings of these cherubims spread themselves forth twenty cubits, and they stood on their feet, and their faces were inward. <sup>1</sup>*Holy of Holies*

And he made the veil of blue, and purple, and crimson, and fine linen, and wrought cherubims thereon.

Also he made before the house two pillars of thirty and five cubits high, and the <sup>1</sup>chapter that was on the top of each of them was five cubits. <sup>1</sup>*capitol*

And he made chains, as in the oracle, and put them on the heads of the pillars; and made an hundred pomegranates, and put them on the chains. And he reared up the pillars before the Temple, one on the right hand and the other on the left, and called the name of that on the right hand *Jachin* and the name of that on the left *Boaz*.

Moreover he made an altar of brass, twenty cubits the length thereof, and twenty cubits the breadth thereof, and ten cubits the height thereof.

Also he made a <sup>1</sup>molten sea of ten cubits from brim to brim, round in compass, and five cubits the height thereof; and a line of thirty cubits did compass it round about. And under it was the similitude of oxen, which did compass it round about - ten in a cubit, compassing the sea round about. Two rows of oxen were cast when it was cast. It stood upon twelve oxen, three looking toward the north, and three looking toward the west, and three looking toward the south, and three looking toward the east; and the sea was set above upon them, and all their hinder parts were inward. And the thickness of it was an hand-breadth, and the brim of it like the work of the brim of a cup, with flowers of lilies, and it received and held <sup>2</sup>three thousands baths. <sup>1</sup>*massive round tub of brass at 15 feet across by 7½ feet deep* <sup>2</sup>*1 bath = 6 gallons (3,000 baths = 18,000 gallons of water)*

He made also ten <sup>1</sup>Lavers, and put five on the right hand, and five on the left, to wash in them (such things as they offered for the burnt offering they washed in them; but the <sup>2</sup>sea was for the priests to wash in).

<sup>1</sup>*a baptism font* <sup>2</sup>*molten sea*

And he made ten <sup>1</sup>Candlesticks of gold according to their form, and set them in the Temple - five on the right hand, and five on the left. <sup>1</sup>*Menorahs*

He made also ten tables and placed them in the Temple - five on the right side and five on the left.

And he made an hundred basins of gold.

Furthermore he made the court of the priests, and the great court, and doors for the court, and overlaid the doors of them with brass.

And he set the sea on the right side of the east end, over against the south.

And Hiram made the pots, and the shovels, and the basins. And Hiram finished the work that he was to make for King Solomon for the House of God (to wit - the two pillars, and the pommels, and the chapters which were on the top of the two pillars, and the two wreaths to cover the two pommels of the chapters which were on the top of the pillars, and four hundred pomegranates on the two wreaths, two rows of pomegranates on each wreath to cover the two pommels of the chapters which were upon the pillars. He made also bases, and Lavers made he upon the bases; one sea, and twelve oxen under it. The pots also and the shovels and the fleshhooks and all their instruments did Hiram his father make to King Solomon for the House of THE LORD of bright brass. In the plain of Jordan did the king cast them, in the clay ground between Succoth and Zeredathah).

Thus Solomon made all these vessels in great abundance, <sup>1</sup>for the weight of the brass could not be found out. *<sup>1</sup>they had so much that it could not be weighed*

And Solomon made all the vessels that were for the House of God, the golden Altar also, and the tables whereon the Showbread was set. Moreover the Candlesticks with their lamps, that they should burn after the manner before the oracle, of pure gold; and the flowers, and the lamps, and the tongs, made he of gold, and that perfect gold; and the snuffers, and the basins, and the spoons, and the censers, of pure gold; and the entry of the House, the inner doors thereof for the Most Holy Place, and the doors of the House of the Temple, were of gold.

Thus all the work that Solomon made for the House of THE LORD was finished, and Solomon brought in all the things that David his father had dedicated and the silver and the gold and all the instruments put he among the treasures of the House of God.

Then Solomon assembled the elders of Israel and all the heads of the tribes - the chief of the fathers of the Children of Israel - unto Jerusalem, to bring up the Ark of the Covenant of THE LORD out of the City of David, which is Zion. Wherefore, all the men of Israel assembled themselves unto the king in the feast which was in the seventh month. And all the elders of Israel came; and the Levites took up the Ark.

And they brought up the Ark, and The Tabernacle of the Congregation, and all the holy vessels that were in The Tabernacle, these did the priests and the Levites bring up.

Also King Solomon and all the congregation of Israel that were assembled unto him before the Ark sacrificed sheep and oxen which could not be told nor numbered for multitude.

And the priests brought in the Ark of the Covenant of THE LORD unto his place, to the oracle of the House, into the <sup>1</sup>Most Holy Place, even under the wings of the cherubims; for the cherubims spread forth their wings over the place of the Ark, and the cherubims covered the Ark and the staves thereof above.

*<sup>1</sup>Holy of Holies*

And they drew out the staves of the Ark that the ends of the staves were seen from the Ark before the oracle; but they were not seen without. And there it is unto this day.

There was nothing in the Ark save the <sup>1</sup>two tables which Moses put therein at Horeb when THE LORD made a covenant with the Children of Israel when they came out of Egypt. *<sup>1</sup>stone tablets of the Ten Commandments*

And it came to pass when the priests were come out of the Holy Place (for all the priests that were present were sanctified and did not then wait by course; also, the Levites which were the singers - all of them of Asaph, of Heman, of Jeduthun, with their sons and their brethren, being arrayed in white linen, having cymbals and psalteries and harps - stood at the east end of the Altar, and with them an hundred and twenty priests sounding with trumpets); it came even to pass, as the trumpeters and singers were as one to make one sound to be heard in praising and thanking THE LORD and when they lifted up their voice with the trumpets and cymbals and instruments of music, and praised THE LORD, saying, "For He is good; for His mercy endureth for ever!" that then the House was filled with a cloud, even the House of THE LORD, so that the priests could not stand to minister by reason of the cloud, for the glory of THE LORD had filled the House of God!

Then said Solomon, "THE LORD hath said that He would dwell in the thick darkness. But I have built an House of habitation for Thee, and a place for Thy dwelling for ever."

And the king turned his face and blessed the whole congregation of Israel, and all the congregation of Israel stood. And he said, "Blessed be THE LORD God of Israel who hath with His hands fulfilled that which He

Spake with His mouth to my father David, saying, *'Since the day that I brought forth My People out of the land of Egypt I chose no city among all the tribes of Israel to build an House in that My name might be there; neither chose I any man to be a ruler over My People Israel. But I have chosen Jerusalem, that My name might be there; and have chosen David to be over My People Israel.'* Now, it was in the heart of David my father to build an House for the name of THE LORD God of Israel. But THE LORD said to David my father, *'Forasmuch as it was in thine heart to build an House for My name, thou didst well in that it was in thine heart. Notwithstanding, thou shalt not build the House, but thy son which shall come forth out of thy loins, he shall build the House for My name.'* THE LORD therefore hath performed His Word that He hath spoken, for I am risen up in the <sup>1</sup>room of David my father and am set on the throne of Israel as THE LORD promised, and have built the House for the name of THE LORD God of Israel. And in it have I put the Ark wherein is the Covenant of THE LORD that He made with the Children of Israel." <sup>1</sup>*office/position/title/rank/throneroom*

And he stood before the Altar of THE LORD in the presence of all the congregation of Israel and spread forth his hands - for Solomon had made a brazen scaffold of five cubits long and five cubits broad and three cubits high, and had set it in the midst of the court, and upon it he stood and kneeled down upon his knees before all the congregation of Israel and spread forth his hands toward heaven and said, "O LORD God of Israel, there is no God like Thee in the heaven nor in the earth which keepest covenant and showest mercy unto Thy servants that walk before Thee with all their hearts - Thou which hast kept with Thy servant David my father that which Thou hast promised him and spakest with Thy mouth, and hast fulfilled it with Thine hand, as it is this day. Now therefore, O LORD God of Israel, keep with Thy servant David my father that which Thou hast promised him, saying, *'There shall not fail thee a man in My sight to sit upon the throne of Israel; yet so that thy children take heed to their way to walk in My Law as thou hast walked before me'*. Now then, O LORD God of Israel, let Thy Word be verified which Thou hast spoken unto thy servant David. But will God in very deed dwell with men on the earth? Behold, heaven and the heaven of heavens cannot contain Thee; how much less this House which I have built! Have respect therefore to the prayer of Thy servant, and to his supplication, O LORD my God, to hearken unto the cry and the prayer which thy servant prayeth before Thee, that Thine eyes may be open upon this House day and night, upon the place whereof Thou hast said that Thou wouldest put Thy name there, to hearken unto the prayer which Thy servant prayeth toward this place. Hearken therefore unto the supplications of Thy servant, and of Thy people Israel, which they shall make toward this place. Hear Thou from Thy dwelling place, even from heaven; and when Thou hearest - forgive!!

"If a man sin against his neighbour, and an oath be laid upon him to make him swear, and the oath come before Thine Altar in this house - then hear Thou from heaven, and do, and judge Thy servants, by requiting the wicked, by recompensing his way upon his own head, and by justifying the righteous, by giving him according to his righteousness. And if Thy People Israel be put to the worse before the enemy because they have sinned against Thee, and shall return and confess Thy name and pray and make supplication before Thee in this House - then hear Thou from the heavens, and forgive the sin of Thy People Israel, and bring them again unto the land which Thou gavest to them and to their fathers. When the heaven is shut up and there is no rain because they have sinned against Thee, yet, if they pray toward this place and confess Thy name and turn from their sin when Thou dost afflict them, then hear Thou from heaven and forgive the sin of Thy servants and of Thy People Israel when Thou hast taught them the good way wherein they should walk; and send rain upon Thy land which Thou hast given unto Thy People for an inheritance.

"If there be dearth in the land, if there be pestilence, if there be blasting, or mildew, locusts, or caterpillars; if their enemies besiege them in the cities of their land; whatsoever sore or whatsoever sickness there be; then, what prayer or what supplication soever shall be made of any man or of all Thy people Israel, when every one shall know his own sore and his own grief, and shall spread forth his hands in this House, then hear Thou from heaven Thy dwelling place, and forgive and render unto every man according unto all his ways, whose heart Thou knowest (for Thou only knowest the hearts of the children of men) that they may <sup>1</sup>fear Thee, to walk in Thy ways, so long as they live in the land which Thou gavest unto our fathers. <sup>1</sup>*have absolute respect for*

"Moreover concerning the stranger which is not of Thy people Israel but is come from a far country for Thy great name's sake and Thy mighty hand and Thy stretched out arm... If they come and pray in this

House, then hear Thou from the heavens, even from Thy dwelling place, and do according to all that the stranger calleth to Thee for, that all people of the earth may know Thy name and fear Thee, as doth Thy People Israel, and may know that this House which I have built is called by Thy name.

"If Thy people go out to war against their enemies by the way that Thou shalt send them and they pray unto Thee toward this city which Thou hast chosen and the House which I have built for Thy name, then hear Thou from the heavens their prayer and their supplication and maintain their cause.

"If they sin against Thee (for there is no man which sinneth not) and Thou be angry with them and deliver them over before their enemies and they carry them away captives unto a land far off or near - yet if they bethink themselves in the land whither they are carried captive and turn and pray unto Thee in the land of their captivity, saying, "We have sinned, we have done amiss, and have dealt wickedly!" - if they return to Thee with all their heart and with all their soul in the land of their captivity whither they have carried them captives and pray toward their land which Thou gavest unto their fathers and toward the City which Thou hast chosen and toward the House which I have built for Thy name, then hear Thou from the heavens, even from Thy dwelling place, their prayer and their supplications and maintain their cause and forgive Thy People which have sinned against Thee.

"Now, my God, let, I beseech Thee, Thine eyes be open, and let Thine ears be attent unto the prayer that is made in this place. Now therefore arise, O LORD God, into Thy resting place, Thou, and the <sup>1</sup>Ark of Thy strength. Let Thy priests, O LORD God, be clothed with salvation, and let Thy <sup>2</sup>saints rejoice in goodness. O LORD God, turn not away the face of Thine <sup>3</sup>Anointed! Remember the mercies of David thy servant!"

*<sup>1</sup>NOTE: Solomon is inviting the Lord to "move in" to the Temple that he has just built and to set Himself down upon the Ark of the Covenant like a throne. The word "ark" literally means "coffin", and it is significant in every sense that the tablets of the Law were placed inside this "coffin" and that the lid of it is called God's Mercy Seat (that is, the seat of power from which the judgments of mercy emanates in opposition to the judgments of condemnations of the Law within the Ark/coffin). After noting that all men sin and thereby break the Law of God, Solomon asks the Lord to come and sit upon this Mercy Seat. <sup>2</sup>meaning "they who are sanctified", i.e. all who believe on the Lord. <sup>3</sup>Messiah*

Now when Solomon had made an end of praying, the fire came down from heaven and consumed the burnt offering and the sacrifices and the glory of THE LORD filled the House. And the priests could not enter into the House of THE LORD because the glory of THE LORD had filled THE LORD'S House. And when all the Children of Israel saw how the fire came down and the glory of THE LORD upon the House, they bowed themselves with their faces to the ground upon the pavement, and worshipped, and praised THE LORD, saying, "For He is good!! For His mercy endureth for ever!!" Then the king and all the people offered sacrifices before THE LORD. And King Solomon offered a sacrifice of twenty and two thousand oxen and an hundred and twenty thousand sheep; <sup>1</sup>so the king and all the people dedicated the House of God.

*<sup>1</sup>like so/in this manner*

And the priests <sup>1</sup>waited on their offices. The Levites also, with instruments of music of THE LORD which David the king had made to praise THE LORD (because His mercy endureth for ever) when David praised by their ministry; and <sup>2</sup>the priests sounded trumpets before them, and all Israel stood.

*<sup>1</sup>attended to <sup>2</sup>NOTE: In other words, as the priests walked and came forth they played their instruments, as a marching band; this naturally would get everyone's attention. Jesus used this verse as an example regarding how we should NOT behave when we do good deeds, "do not sound a trumpet before you like the hypocrites do in the synagogues and in the streets so that they can be praised by men." It is from this that we get the saying "don't toot your own horn" in reference to bragging.*

Moreover Solomon <sup>1</sup>hallowed the middle of the court that was before the House of THE LORD, for there he offered burnt offerings and the fat of the peace offerings because the Brazen Altar which Solomon had made was not <sup>2</sup>able to receive the burnt offerings and the meat offerings and the fat.

*<sup>1</sup>to make sacred/holy <sup>2</sup>large enough*

Also at the same time Solomon kept the feast seven days and all Israel with him, a very great congregation, from the <sup>1</sup>entering in of Hamath unto the river of Egypt.

*<sup>1</sup>entrance*

And in the eighth day they made a solemn assembly (for they kept the dedication of the Altar seven days, and the feast seven days). And on the three and twentieth day of the seventh month he sent the people away into their tents, glad and merry in heart for the goodness that THE LORD had showed unto David and to Solomon and to Israel His People.

Thus Solomon finished the <sup>1</sup>House of THE LORD and the king's <sup>2</sup>house, and all that came into Solomon's heart to make in the House of THE LORD, and in his own house, he prosperously effected. <sup>1</sup>temple <sup>2</sup>palace

And THE LORD appeared to Solomon by night, and said unto him, "I have heard thy prayer, and have chosen this place to Myself for an House of sacrifice. If I shut up heaven that there be no rain, or if I command the locusts to devour the land, or if I send pestilence among My People - if My People, which are called by My name, shall humble themselves and pray and seek My face and turn from their wicked ways, then will I hear from heaven and will forgive their sin and will heal their land. Now Mine eyes shall be open and Mine ears attent unto the prayer that is made in this place. For now have I chosen and sanctified this House that My name may be there for ever, and Mine eyes and Mine heart shall be there perpetually.

"And as for thee... if thou wilt walk before Me as David thy father walked, and do according to all that I have commanded thee, and shalt observe My statutes and My judgments, then will I stablish the throne of thy kingdom according as I have covenanted with David thy father, saying, *'There shall not fail thee a man to be ruler in Israel.'*

"But, if ye turn away and forsake My statutes and My commandments which I have set before you, and shall go and serve other gods and worship them, then will I pluck them up by the roots out of My land which I have given them; and this House, which I have sanctified for My name, will I cast out of My sight and will make it to be a proverb and a byword among all nations. And this House, which is high, shall be an astonishment to every one that passeth by it so that he shall say, *'Why hath THE LORD done thus unto this land and unto this House?'* And it shall be answered, *'Because they forsook THE LORD God of their fathers which brought them forth out of the land of Egypt and laid hold on other gods and worshipped them and served them; therefore hath He brought all this evil upon them.'*"

And it came to pass at the end of twenty years wherein Solomon had built the House of THE LORD and his own house, that the cities which Hiram had restored to Solomon, Solomon built them, and caused the Children of Israel to dwell there.

And Solomon went to Hamath-Zobah, and prevailed against it.

And he built Tadmor in the wilderness, and all the store cities, which he built in Hamath.

Also he built Beth-Horon the Upper, and Beth-Horon the Nether (fenced cities with walls, gates, and bars), and Baalath, and all the store cities that Solomon had, and all the chariot cities, and the cities of the horsemen, and all that Solomon desired to build in Jerusalem, and in Lebanon, and throughout all the land of his dominion.

As for all the people that were left of the Hittites, and the Amorites, and the Perizzites, and the Hivites, and the Jebusites, which were not of Israel but of their children who were left after them in the land, whom the Children of Israel consumed not - them did Solomon make to pay tribute until this day.

But of the Children of Israel did Solomon make no servants for his work; but they were men of war, and chief of his captains, and captains of his chariots and horsemen. And these were the chief of King Solomon's officers, even two hundred and fifty, that bare rule over the people.

And Solomon brought up the daughter of Pharaoh out of the City of David unto the house that he had built for her (for he said, "My wife shall not dwell in the house of David king of Israel, because the places are holy whereunto the Ark of THE LORD hath come").

Then Solomon offered burnt offerings unto THE LORD on the Altar of THE LORD which he had built before the porch, even after a certain rate every day (offering according to the commandment of Moses), on the Sabbaths, and on the new moons, and on the solemn feasts, three times in the year, even in the Feast of Unleavened Bread, and in the Feast of Weeks, and in the Feast of Tabernacles.

And he appointed, according to the order of David his father, the <sup>1</sup>courses of the priests to their service, and the Levites to their charges, to praise and minister before the priests, as the duty of every day required; the porters also by their <sup>1</sup>courses at every gate. For so had David the man of God commanded.

*<sup>1</sup>daily cycles of routine schedules*

And they departed not from the commandment of the king unto the priests and Levites concerning any matter, or concerning the treasures.

Now all the work of Solomon was prepared unto the day of the foundation of the House of THE LORD, and until it was finished. So the House of THE LORD was perfected. Then went Solomon to Ezion-Geber and to Eloth at the sea side in the land of Edom.

And Hiram sent him, by the hands of his servants, ships and servants that had knowledge of the sea; and they went with the servants of Solomon to Ophir, and took thence four hundred and fifty talents of gold, and brought them to King Solomon.

And when the queen of Sheba heard of the fame of Solomon, she came to prove Solomon with hard questions at Jerusalem, with a very great company, and camels that bare spices, and gold in abundance, and precious stones; and when she was come to Solomon, she communed with him of all that was in her heart.

And Solomon told her all her questions; and there was nothing hid from Solomon which he told her not. And when the queen of Sheba had seen the wisdom of Solomon, and the house that he had built, and the meat of his table, and the sitting of his servants, and the attendance of his ministers, and their apparel, his cupbearers also, and their apparel, and his ascent by which he went up into the House of THE LORD, <sup>1</sup>there was no more spirit in her.

*<sup>1</sup>the sight knocked the wind out of her/left her breathless*

And she said to the king, "It was a true report which I heard in mine own land of thine acts, and of thy wisdom! Howbeit I believed not their words until I came and mine eyes had seen it! And, behold, the one half of the greatness of thy wisdom was not told me! For thou exceedest the fame that I heard! Happy are thy men, and happy are these thy servants, which stand continually before thee and hear thy wisdom. Blessed be THE LORD thy God which delighted in thee to set thee on His throne to be king for THE LORD thy God. Because thy God loved Israel, to establish them for ever, therefore made He thee king over them, to do judgment and justice."

And she gave the king an hundred and twenty talents of gold, and of spices great abundance, and precious stones; neither was there any such spice <sup>1</sup>as the queen of Sheba gave King Solomon. *<sup>1</sup>like/similar to/as great as*

And the servants also of Hiram, and the servants of Solomon, which brought gold from Ophir, brought algum trees and precious stones. And the king made of the algum trees terraces to the House of the LORD and to the king's palace, and harps and psalteries for singers; and there were none such seen before in the land of Judah.

And King Solomon gave to the queen of Sheba all her desire, whatsoever she asked, beside that which she had brought unto the king. So she turned and went away to her own land, she and her servants.

Now, the weight of gold that came to Solomon in one year was six hundred and threescore and six talents of gold; beside that which <sup>1</sup>chapmen and merchants brought. <sup>1</sup>peddlers

And all the kings of Arabia and governors of the country brought gold and silver to Solomon. And King Solomon made two hundred <sup>1</sup>targets of beaten gold - six hundred shekels of beaten gold went to one target! And three hundred shields made he of beaten gold - three hundred shekels of gold went to one shield! And the king put them in the house <sup>2</sup>of the forest of Lebanon.

<sup>1</sup>shields <sup>2</sup>made of the wood of the forest of Lebanon

Moreover the king made a great throne of ivory and overlaid it with pure gold. And there were six steps to the throne, with a footstool of gold which were fastened to the throne, and stays on each side of the sitting place, and two lions standing by the stays. And twelve lions stood there on the one side and on the other upon the six steps. There was not the like made in any kingdom.

And all the drinking vessels of King Solomon were of gold, and all the vessels of the house of the forest of Lebanon were of pure gold. None were of silver; it was not any thing accounted of in the days of Solomon. For the king's ships went to Tarshish with the servants of Hiram; every three years once came the ships of Tarshish bringing gold, and silver, ivory, and apes, and peacocks.

And King Solomon passed all the kings of the earth in riches and wisdom. And all the kings of the earth sought the presence of Solomon, to hear his wisdom that God had put in his heart. And they brought every man his present - vessels of silver, and vessels of gold, and raiment, harness, and spices, horses, and mules, a rate year by year.

And Solomon had four thousand stalls for horses and chariots, and twelve thousand horsemen, whom he bestowed in the chariot cities and with the king at Jerusalem. And he reigned over all the kings from the river even unto the land of the Philistines, and to the border of Egypt.

And the king made silver in Jerusalem as stones, and cedar trees made he as the sycomore trees that are in the low plains in abundance. And they brought unto Solomon horses out of Egypt, and out of all lands.

Now the rest of the acts of Solomon, first and last, are they not written in the book of Nathan the prophet, and in the prophecy of Ahijah the Shilonite, and in the visions of Iddo the seer against Jeroboam the son of Nebat?

And Solomon reigned in Jerusalem over all Israel forty years. And Solomon slept with his fathers, and he was buried in the City of David his father. And Rehoboam his son reigned in his stead.

And Rehoboam went to Shechem; for to Shechem were all Israel come to make him king. And it came to pass, when Jeroboam the son of Nebat (who was in Egypt whither he had fled from the presence of Solomon the king) heard it, that Jeroboam returned out of Egypt. And they sent and called him.

So Jeroboam and all Israel came and spake to Rehoboam, saying, "Thy father made our yoke grievous. Now therefore ease thou somewhat the grievous servitude of thy father, and his heavy yoke that he put upon us, and we will serve thee."

And he said unto them, "Come again unto me after three days." And the people departed.

And King Rehoboam took counsel with the old men that had stood before Solomon his father while he yet lived, saying, "What counsel give ye me to return answer to this people?"

And they spake unto him, saying, "If thou be kind to this people and please them and speak good words to them, they will be thy servants for ever."

But he forsook the counsel which the old men gave him, and took counsel with the young men that were brought up with him, that stood before him. And he said unto them, "What advice give ye that we may return answer to this people which have spoken to me, saying, '*Ease somewhat the yoke that thy father did put upon us*'?"

And the young men that were brought up with him spake unto him, saying, "Thus shalt thou answer the people that spake unto thee, saying, '*Thy father made our yoke heavy, but make thou it somewhat lighter for us*' - thus shalt thou say unto them, 'My little finger shall be thicker than my father's <sup>1</sup>loins. For whereas my father put a heavy yoke upon you, I will put more to your yoke! My father chastised you with whips, but I will chastise you with scorpions!'"

*<sup>1</sup>waist area from just below the ribcage to just above the waist*

So Jeroboam and all the people came to Rehoboam on the third day, as the king bade, saying, '*Come again to me on the third day*'. And the king answered them roughly; and king Rehoboam forsook the counsel of the old men and answered them after the advice of the young men, saying, "My father made your yoke heavy, but I will add thereto! My father chastised you with whips, but I will chastise you with scorpions!"

So the king hearkened not unto the people, for the cause was of God that the LORD might perform His Word which He spake by the hand of Ahijah the Shilonite to Jeroboam the son of Nebat.

And when all Israel saw that the king would not hearken unto them, the people answered the king, saying, "What portion have we in David?! And we have none inheritance in the son of Jesse! Every man to your tents, O Israel! And now, David, see to thine *own* house!" So all Israel went to their tents.

But as for the children of Israel that dwelt in the cities of Judah, Rehoboam reigned over them. Then King Rehoboam sent Hadoram that was <sup>1</sup>over the tribute; and the children of Israel stoned him with stones that he died. But King Rehoboam made speed to get him up to his chariot, to flee to Jerusalem. And Israel rebelled against the House of David unto this day.

*<sup>1</sup>in charge of*

And when Rehoboam was come to Jerusalem, he gathered of the House of Judah and Benjamin an hundred and fourscore thousand chosen men, which were warriors, to fight against Israel, that he might bring the kingdom again to Rehoboam.

But the Word of the LORD came to Shemaiah the man of God, saying, "Speak unto Rehoboam the son of Solomon, king of Judah, and to all Israel in Judah and Benjamin, saying, "Thus saith the LORD: Ye shall *not* go up, nor fight against your brethren! Return, every man, to his house - for this thing is done of *Me*!"

And they obeyed the Words of the LORD and returned from going against Jeroboam.

And Rehoboam dwelt in Jerusalem and built cities for defence in Judah. He built even Bethlehem, and Etam, and Tekoa, and Bethzur, and Shoco, and Adullam, And Gath, and Mareshah, and Ziph, and Adoraim, and Lachish, and Azekah, And Zorah, and Aijalon, and Hebron (which are in Judah and in Benjamin - fenced cities). And he fortified the strong holds, and put captains in them, and store of victual, and of oil and wine. And <sup>1</sup>in every several city he put shields and spears, and made them exceeding strong, having Judah and Benjamin on his side.

*<sup>1</sup>"in every several" = in each and all*

And the priests and the Levites that were in all Israel resorted to him out of all their coasts. For the Levites left their suburbs and their possession and came to Judah and Jerusalem - for Jeroboam and his sons had cast them off from executing the priest's office unto the LORD, and he ordained him priests for the high places, and for the devils, and for the calves which he had made.

And after <sup>1</sup>them, out of all the tribes of Israel, <sup>2</sup>such as set their hearts to seek the LORD God of Israel came to Jerusalem, to sacrifice unto the LORD God of their fathers. So they strengthened the kingdom of Judah, and made Rehoboam the son of Solomon strong, three years; for three years they walked in the way of David and Solomon.

<sup>1</sup>the Levites <sup>2</sup>all of the people who

And Rehoboam took him:

- Mahalath, the daughter of Jerimoth (the son of David) to wife,
- and Abihail, the daughter of <sup>1</sup>Eliab (the son of Jesse);

<sup>1</sup>David's brother

Which bare him children:

- Jeush,
- and Shamariah,
- and Zaham.

And after her, he took

- Maachah, the daughter of <sup>1</sup>Absalom;

<sup>1</sup>David's son

which bare him:

- Abijah,
- and Attai,
- and Ziza,
- and Shelomith.

And Rehoboam loved Maachah the daughter of Absalom above all his wives and his concubines (for he took eighteen wives, and <sup>1</sup>threescore concubines; and begat twenty and eight sons, and <sup>1</sup>threescore daughters).

<sup>1</sup>60

And Rehoboam made Abijah, the son of Maachah, the chief, to be ruler among his brethren; for he thought to make him king. And he dealt wisely, and dispersed of all his children throughout all the countries of Judah and Benjamin, unto every fenced city; and he gave them victual in abundance. And he desired many wives.

And it came to pass, when Rehoboam had established the kingdom and had strengthened himself, he forsook the Law of the LORD, and all Israel with him.

And it came to pass that, in the fifth year of King Rehoboam, Shishak king of Egypt came up against Jerusalem (because they had transgressed against the LORD) with twelve hundred chariots, and <sup>1</sup>threescore thousand horsemen; and the people were without number that came with him out of Egypt - <sup>2</sup>the Lubims, the Sukkiims, and the Ethiopians. And he took the fenced cities which pertained to Judah, and came to Jerusalem.

<sup>1</sup>60,000 <sup>2</sup>which included

Then came Shemaiah the prophet to Rehoboam and to the princes of Judah that were gathered together to Jerusalem because of Shishak, and said unto them, "Thus saith the LORD: Ye have forsaken Me, and therefore have I also left you in the hand of Shishak!"

Whereupon the princes of Israel and the king humbled themselves; and they said, "THE LORD is righteous!"

And when THE LORD saw that they humbled themselves, the Word of THE LORD came to Shemaiah, saying, "They have humbled themselves. Therefore I will not destroy them, but I will grant them some deliverance; and My wrath shall not be poured out upon Jerusalem by the hand of Shishak. Nevertheless they shall be his servants, that they may know My service and the service of the kingdoms of the countries."

So Shishak king of Egypt came up against Jerusalem and took away the treasures of the House of THE LORD and the treasures of the king's house. He took all. He carried away also the shields of gold which Solomon

had made - <sup>1</sup>instead of which King Rehoboam made shields of brass, and committed them to the hands of the chief of the guard that kept the entrance of the king's house. <sup>1</sup>*in place of*

And when the king entered into the House of THE LORD, the guard came and fetched <sup>1</sup>them, and brought them again into the guard chamber. <sup>1</sup>*the brass shields*

And when he humbled himself the wrath of THE LORD turned from him, that He would not destroy him altogether; and also in Judah things went well.

So King Rehoboam strengthened himself in Jerusalem and reigned, for Rehoboam was one and forty years old when he began to reign, and he reigned seventeen years in Jerusalem, the city which THE LORD had chosen out of all the tribes of Israel to put His name there.

And his mother's name was Naamah, an Ammonitess. And he did evil, because he prepared not his heart to seek THE LORD.

Now the acts of Rehoboam, first and last, are they not written in the book of Shemaiah the prophet, and of Iddo the seer concerning genealogies?

And there were wars between Rehoboam and Jeroboam continually.

And Rehoboam slept with his fathers, and was buried in the City of David. And Abijah his son reigned in his stead.

Now, in the eighteenth year of <sup>1</sup>King Jeroboam began Abijah to reign over <sup>2</sup>Judah.

<sup>1</sup>*up in the northern kingdom of Israel* <sup>2</sup>*down in the southern kingdom of Judah*

He reigned three years in Jerusalem. His mother's name also was Michaiah the daughter of Uriel of Gibeah. And there was war between Abijah and Jeroboam.

And Abijah set the battle in array with an army of valiant men of war, even four hundred thousand chosen men. Jeroboam also set the battle in array against him with eight hundred thousand chosen men, being mighty men of valour.

And Abijah stood up upon Mount Zemaraim, which is in Mount Ephraim, and said, "Hear me, thou Jeroboam, and all Israel! Ought ye not to know that THE LORD God of Israel gave <sup>1</sup>the kingdom over Israel to David for ever, even to him and to his sons by a covenant of salt? Yet Jeroboam the son of Nebat, the servant of Solomon the son of David, is risen up and hath rebelled against his lord. And there are gathered unto him vain men, the children of Belial, and have strengthened themselves against Rehoboam the son of Solomon, when Rehoboam was young and tenderhearted, and could not withstand them. And now ye think to withstand the kingdom of THE LORD in the hand of the sons of David; and ye be a great multitude, and there are with you golden calves, which Jeroboam made you for gods! Have ye not cast out the priests of THE LORD - the sons of Aaron, and the Levites - and have made you priests after the manner of the nations of other lands? So that <sup>2</sup>whosoever cometh to consecrate himself with a young bullock and seven rams, the same may be a priest of <sup>3</sup>them that are no gods! But as for us, THE LORD is our God, and we have not forsaken Him; and the priests, which minister unto THE LORD, are the sons of Aaron, and the Levites wait upon their business, and they burn unto THE LORD every morning and every evening burnt sacrifices and sweet incense. The Showbread also set they in order upon the pure table; and the Candlestick of gold with the lamps thereof, to burn every evening - for we keep the charge of THE LORD our God! But ye have forsaken Him!

<sup>1</sup>*the king-ship* <sup>2</sup>*anyone at all* <sup>3</sup>*idols*

“And, behold, God Himself is with us for our Captain, and His priests with sounding trumpets to cry alarm against you! O Children of Israel, fight ye not against THE LORD God of your fathers; for ye shall not prosper!”

But Jeroboam caused an ambushment to come about behind them; so they were before Judah, and the ambushment was behind them. And when Judah looked back, behold, the battle was before *and* behind. And they cried unto THE LORD, and the priests sounded with the trumpets.

Then the men of Judah gave a shout; and as the men of Judah shouted, it came to pass that God smote Jeroboam and all Israel before Abijah and Judah. And the Children of Israel fled before Judah, and God delivered them into their hand. And Abijah and his people slew them with a great slaughter; so there fell down slain of Israel five hundred thousand chosen men. Thus the Children of Israel were brought under at that time, and the children of Judah prevailed because they relied upon THE LORD God of their fathers.

And Abijah pursued after Jeroboam and took cities from him - Bethel with the towns thereof, and Jeshanah with the towns thereof, and Ephraim with the towns thereof.

Neither did Jeroboam recover strength again in the days of Abijah; and THE LORD struck him and he died. But Abijah waxed mighty, and married fourteen wives, and begat twenty and two sons and sixteen daughters. And the rest of the acts of Abijah, and his ways, and his sayings, are written in the story of the prophet Iddo.

So Abijah slept with his fathers, and they buried him in the City of David. And Asa his son reigned in his stead. In his days the land was quiet ten years.

And Asa did that which was *good* and *right* in the eyes of THE LORD his God, for he took away the altars of the strange gods, and the high places, and brake down the images, and cut down the groves, and commanded Judah to seek THE LORD God of their fathers, and to do the Law and the Commandment. Also he took away out of all the cities of Judah the high places and the images; and the kingdom was quiet before him. And he built fenced cities in Judah, for the land had rest and he had no war in those years because THE LORD had given him rest.

Therefore he said unto Judah, “Let us build these cities, and make about them walls, and towers, gates, and bars, while the land is yet before us; because we have sought THE LORD our God, we have sought Him, and He hath given us rest on every side.” So they built and prospered.

And Asa had an army of men that bare <sup>1</sup>targets and spears:

- out of Judah three hundred thousand;
- and out of Benjamin, that bare shields and drew bows, two hundred and fourscore thousand.

All these were mighty men of valour.

<sup>1</sup>*shields*

And there came out against them Zerah the Ethiopian with an host of a thousand thousand, and three hundred chariots; and came unto Mareshah. Then Asa went out against him, and they set the battle in array in the valley of Zephathah at Mareshah.

And Asa cried unto THE LORD his God, and said, “LORD, it is <sup>1</sup>nothing with Thee to help, whether with many or with them that have no power. Help us, O LORD our God! For we rest on Thee, and in Thy name we go against this multitude. O LORD, Thou art our God; let not man prevail against Thee!” *an easy/simple thing*

So THE LORD smote the Ethiopians before Asa and before Judah, and the Ethiopians fled. And Asa and the people that were with him pursued them unto Gerar, and the Ethiopians were overthrown that they could not recover themselves - for they were destroyed before THE LORD and before His <sup>1</sup>host; and they carried

away very much spoil. And they smote all the cities round about Gerar; for the fear of THE LORD came upon them. And they spoiled all the cities; for there was exceeding much spoil in them. They smote also the tents of cattle, and carried away sheep and camels in abundance, and returned to Jerusalem.

*<sup>1</sup>multitude of people, often referring to military troops*

And the Spirit of God came upon Azariah the son of Oded. And he went out to meet Asa and said unto him, "Hear ye me, Asa, and all Judah and Benjamin! THE LORD is with you while ye be with Him. And if ye seek Him, He will be found of you - but if ye forsake Him, He will forsake you. Now, for a long season Israel hath been without the True God and without a teaching priest and without law. But when they in their trouble did turn unto THE LORD God of Israel and sought Him, He was found of them. And in those times there was no peace to him that went out, nor to him that came in, but great vexations were upon all the inhabitants of the countries. And nation was destroyed of nation, and city of city (for God did vex them with all adversity). Be ye strong therefore, and let not your hands be weak; for your work shall be rewarded!"

And when Asa heard these words, and the prophecy of Oded the prophet, he took courage and put away the abominable idols out of all the land of Judah and Benjamin and out of the cities which he had taken from Mount Ephraim, and renewed the Altar of THE LORD that was before the porch of THE LORD.

And he gathered all Judah and Benjamin and the strangers with them out of Ephraim and Manasseh and out of Simeon - for they fell to him out of Israel in abundance when they saw that THE LORD his God was with him.

So they gathered themselves together at Jerusalem in the third month, in the fifteenth year of the reign of Asa. And they offered unto THE LORD the same time (of the spoil which they had brought) seven hundred oxen and seven thousand sheep. And they entered into a covenant to seek THE LORD God of their fathers with all their heart and with all their soul, that whosoever would not seek THE LORD God of Israel should be put to death, whether small or great, whether man or woman. And they swore unto THE LORD with a loud voice, and with shouting, and with <sup>1</sup>trumpets, and with <sup>2</sup>cornets.

*<sup>1</sup>"Khatzar" in Hebrew, with the sense of "trumpeters trumpeting on trumpets" <sup>2</sup>"Shofar" in Hebrew, a trumpet made of a ram's horn*

And all Judah rejoiced at the oath, for they had sworn with all their heart and sought Him with their whole desire - and He was found of them. And THE LORD gave them rest round about.

And also concerning Maachah, the mother of Asa the king, he removed her from being queen because she had made an idol in a grove. And Asa cut down her idol and stamped it and burnt it at the brook Kidron. But the high places were not taken away out of Israel; nevertheless the heart of Asa was perfect all his days.

And he brought into the House of God the things that his father had dedicated and that he himself had dedicated - silver, and gold, and vessels. And there was no more war unto the five and thirtieth year of the reign of Asa.

In the six and thirtieth year of the reign of Asa, Baasha king of Israel came up against Judah and built Ramah, to the intent that he might let none go out or come in to Asa king of Judah.

Then Asa brought out silver and gold out of the treasures of the House of THE LORD and of the king's house, and sent to Benhadad king of Syria that dwelt at Damascus, saying, "There is a league between me and thee, as there was between my father and thy father. Behold, I have sent thee silver and gold; go, break thy league with Baasha king of Israel, that he may depart from me."

And Benhadad hearkened unto King Asa and sent the captains of his armies against the cities of Israel; and they smote Ijon, and Dan, and Abelmaim, and all the store cities of Naphtali. And it came to pass, when Baasha heard it, that he left off building of Ramah, and let his work cease. Then Asa the king took all Judah,

and they carried away the stones of Ramah and the timber thereof wherewith Baasha was building; and he built therewith Geba and Mizpah.

And at that time Hanani the seer came to Asa king of Judah and said unto him, "Because thou hast relied on the king of Syria and not relied on THE LORD thy God, therefore is the host of the king of Syria escaped out of thine hand. Were not the Ethiopians and the Lubims a huge host with very many chariots and horsemen? Yet, because thou didst rely on THE LORD, He delivered *them* into thine hand. For the eyes of THE LORD run to and fro throughout the whole earth to show Himself strong in the behalf of them whose heart is perfect toward Him. Herein thou hast done foolishly! Therefore from henceforth thou shalt have wars."

Then Asa was <sup>1</sup>wroth with the seer and put him in a prison house, for he was in a rage with him because of this thing. And Asa oppressed some of the people the same time. *<sup>1</sup>wrathful/furious*

And, behold, the acts of Asa, first and last, lo, they are written in the book of the kings of Judah and Israel. And Asa in the thirty and ninth year of his reign was diseased in his feet, until his disease was exceeding great - yet in his disease he sought not to THE LORD, but to the physicians.

And Asa slept with his fathers, and died in the one and fortieth year of his reign. And they buried him in his own sepulchres which he had made for himself in the City of David, and laid him in the bed which was filled with sweet odours and divers kinds of spices prepared by the apothecaries' art; and they made a very great <sup>1</sup>burning for him. *<sup>1</sup>funeral pyre (cremation fire)*

And Jehoshaphat his son reigned in his stead, and strengthened himself against Israel. And he placed forces in all the fenced cities of Judah, and set garrisons in the land of Judah, and in the cities of Ephraim, which Asa his father had taken.

And THE LORD was with Jehoshaphat because he walked in the first ways of his father David, and sought not unto <sup>1</sup>Baalim but sought to THE LORD God of his father, and walked in His commandments, and not after the doings of Israel. Therefore THE LORD stablished the kingdom in his hand; and all Judah brought to Jehoshaphat presents, and he had riches and honour in abundance. *<sup>1</sup>idols/false gods/devils*

And his heart was lifted up in the Ways of THE LORD. Moreover he took away the high places and groves out of Judah. Also in the third year of his reign he sent to his princes - even to Benhail and to Obadiah and to Zechariah and to Nethaneeel and to Michaiiah - to teach in the cities of Judah. And with them he sent Levites - even Shemaiah and Nethaniah and Zebadiah and Asahel and Shemiramoth and Jehonathan and Adonijah and Tobijah and Tobadonijah, Levites - and with them Elishama and Jehoram, priests.

And they taught in Judah, and had the Book of the Law of THE LORD with them, and went about throughout all the cities of Judah, and taught the people. And the fear of THE LORD fell upon all the kingdoms of the lands that were round about Judah so that they made no war against Jehoshaphat. Also some of the *Philistines* brought Jehoshaphat presents and tribute silver! And the Arabians brought him flocks - seven thousand and seven hundred rams, and seven thousand and seven hundred he goats!

And Jehoshaphat waxed great exceedingly; and he built in Judah castles and cities of store. And he had much business in the cities of Judah: and the men of war, mighty men of valour, were in Jerusalem. And these are the numbers of them according to the House of their fathers:

- Of Judah, the captains of thousands; Adnah the chief, and with him mighty men of valour three hundred thousand. And next to him was Jehohanan the captain, and with him two hundred and fourscore thousand. And next him was Amasiah the son of Zichri, who willingly offered himself unto THE LORD; and with him two hundred thousand mighty men of valour.
- And of Benjamin; Eliada a mighty man of valour, and with him armed men with bow and shield two hundred thousand. And next him was Jehozabad, and with him an hundred and fourscore thousand

ready prepared for the war. These waited on the king, beside those whom the king put in the fenced cities throughout all Judah.

Now Jehoshaphat had riches and honour in abundance, and joined affinity with Ahab. And after certain years he went <sup>1</sup>down to Ahab <sup>2</sup>to Samaria. And Ahab killed sheep and oxen for him in abundance, and for the people that he had with him, and persuaded him to go up with him to Ramoth-Gilead.

<sup>1</sup>NOTE: technically Samaria is "up" (north of) Judah, but in this use of "down" it refers to Jehoshaphat going down from his throne (down from his "high place" or government seat) <sup>2</sup>in Samaria

And Ahab king of Israel said unto Jehoshaphat king of Judah, "Wilt thou go with me to Ramoth-Gilead?"

And he answered him, "I am as thou art, and my people as thy people; and we will be with thee in the war."

And Jehoshaphat said unto the king of Israel, "Inquire, I pray thee, at the Word of THE LORD to day."

Therefore the king of Israel gathered together of prophets four hundred men and said unto them, "Shall we go to Ramoth-Gilead to battle, or shall I forbear?"

And they said, "Go up; for God will deliver it into the king's hand."

But Jehoshaphat said, "Is there not here a prophet of THE LORD <sup>1</sup>besides, that we might inquire of him?"  
*<sup>1</sup>in addition to these other prophets*

And the king of Israel said unto Jehoshaphat, "There is yet one man by whom we may inquire of THE LORD. But I hate him; for he never prophesied good unto me, but always evil! The same is Micaiah the son of Imla."

And Jehoshaphat said, "Let not the king say so!"

And the king of Israel called for one of his officers, and said, "Fetch quickly Micaiah the son of Imla."

And the king of Israel and Jehoshaphat king of Judah sat either of them on his throne, clothed in their robes, and they sat in a void place at the entering in of the gate of Samaria; and all the prophets prophesied before them.

And Zedekiah the son of Chenaanah had made him horns of iron, and said, "Thus saith THE LORD: With these thou shalt push Syria until they be consumed."

And all the prophets prophesied so, saying, "Go up to Ramothgilead and prosper, for THE LORD shall deliver it into the hand of the king."

And the messenger that went to call Micaiah spake to him, saying, "Behold, the words of the prophets declare good to the king with one assent. Let thy word therefore, I pray thee, be like one of theirs, and speak thou good."

And Micaiah said, "As THE LORD liveth - even what my God saith, that will I speak!"

And when he was come to the king, the king said unto him, "Micaiah, shall we go to Ramoth-Gilead to battle, or shall I forbear?"

And he <sup>1</sup>said, "Go ye up, and prosper, and they shall be delivered into your hand."  
*<sup>1</sup>sarcastically said*

And the king said to him, "How many times shall I adjure thee that thou say nothing but the truth to me in the name of THE LORD?!"

Then he said, "I did see all Israel scattered upon the mountains, as sheep that have no shepherd. And THE LORD said: *These have no master; let them return therefore every man to his house in peace.*"

And the king of Israel said to Jehoshaphat, "Did I not tell thee that he would not prophesy good unto me, but evil?!"

Again he said, "Therefore hear the Word of THE LORD. I saw THE LORD sitting upon His throne, and all the host of heaven standing on His right hand and on His left. And THE LORD said, '*Who shall entice Ahab king of Israel that he may go up and fall at Ramoth-Gilead?*' And one spake saying after this manner, and another saying after that manner. Then there came out a spirit and stood before THE LORD, and said, '*I will entice him!*' And THE LORD said unto him, '*Wherewith?*' And he said, '*I will go out and be a lying spirit in the mouth of all his prophets.*' And THE LORD said, '*Thou shalt entice him and thou shalt also prevail! Go out and do even so.*' Now therefore, behold, THE LORD hath put a lying spirit in the mouth of these thy prophets, and THE LORD hath spoken evil against thee."

Then Zedekiah the son of Chenaanah came near and smote Micaiah upon the cheek, and <sup>1</sup>said, "Which way went the Spirit of THE LORD from me to speak unto thee?" *<sup>1</sup>said sarcastically*

And Micaiah said, "Behold, <sup>1</sup>thou shalt see on that day when thou shalt go into an inner chamber to hide thyself!" *<sup>1</sup>in essence he called him a coward*

Then the king of Israel said, "Take ye Micaiah and carry him back to Amon the governor of the city and to Joash the king's son and say, 'Thus saith the king: Put this fellow in the prison, and feed him with bread of affliction and with water of affliction, until I return in peace!'"

And Micaiah said, "If thou certainly return in peace, then hath not THE LORD spoken by me!" And he said, "Hearken, all ye people!"

So the king of Israel and Jehoshaphat the king of Judah went up to Ramoth-Gilead. And the king of Israel said unto Jehoshaphat, "I will disguise myself, and will go to the battle; but put thou on thy <sup>1</sup>robes." *<sup>1</sup>royal garments*

So the king of Israel disguised himself; and they went to the battle.

Now, the king of Syria had commanded the captains of the chariots that were with him, saying, "Fight ye not with small or great, save only with the king of Israel!"

And it came to pass, when the captains of the chariots saw Jehoshaphat, that they said, "It is the king of Israel!" Therefore they compassed about him to fight; but Jehoshaphat cried out and the LORD helped him, and God moved them to depart from him. For it came to pass that, when the captains of the chariots perceived that it was *not* the king of Israel, they turned back again from pursuing him.

And a certain man drew a bow at <sup>1</sup>a venture, and smote the king of Israel between the joints of the harness. Therefore he said to his chariot man, "<sup>2</sup>Turn thine hand, that thou mayest carry me out of the <sup>3</sup>host; for I am wounded." *<sup>1</sup>random <sup>2</sup>change course <sup>3</sup>mass of people/army troops*

And the battle increased that day; howbeit the king of Israel <sup>1</sup>stayed himself up in his chariot against the Syrians until the even. And about the time of the sun going down, he died. *<sup>1</sup>propped*

And Jehoshaphat the king of Judah returned to his house in peace to Jerusalem. And Jehu, the son of Hanani, the <sup>1</sup>seer, went out to meet him and said to King Jehoshaphat, "Shouldest thou help the ungodly, and love them that hate the LORD? Therefore is wrath upon thee from before the LORD! Nevertheless there are good things found in thee, in that thou hast taken away the <sup>2</sup>groves out of the land, and hast prepared thine heart to seek God."  
*<sup>1</sup>prophet <sup>2</sup>idols of Ashteroth*

And Jehoshaphat dwelt at Jerusalem; and he went out again through the people from Beer-sheba to Mount Ephraim, and brought them back unto the LORD God of their fathers. And he set judges in the land throughout all the fenced cities of Judah, city by city, and said to the judges, "Take heed what ye do! For ye judge not for man, but for the LORD, who is with you in the judgment. Wherefore now, let the fear of the LORD be upon you! Take heed and do it - for there is no iniquity with the LORD our God, nor respect of persons, nor taking of <sup>1</sup>gifts."  
*<sup>1</sup>bribes*

Moreover, in Jerusalem did Jehoshaphat set of the Levites, and of the priests, and of the chief of the fathers of Israel, for the judgment of the LORD, and for controversies, when they returned to Jerusalem. And he charged them, saying, "Thus shall ye do in the fear of the LORD, faithfully and with a perfect heart. And what cause soever shall come to you of your brethren that dwell in their cities, between blood and blood, between law and commandment, statutes and judgments, ye shall even warn them that they trespass not against the LORD, and <sup>1</sup>so wrath come upon you and upon your brethren. This do, and ye shall not trespass. And, behold, Amariah the <sup>2</sup>chief priest is over you in all matters of the LORD; and Zebadiah the son of Ishmael, the ruler of the House of Judah, for all the king's matters. Also, the Levites shall be officers before you. Deal courageously, and the LORD shall be with the good."  
*<sup>1</sup>prevent <sup>2</sup>high*

It came to pass after this also that the children of Moab and the children of Ammon, and with them other beside the Ammonites, came against Jehoshaphat to battle. Then there came some that told Jehoshaphat, saying, "There cometh a great multitude against thee from beyond the sea on this side Syria; and, behold, they be in Hazazon-tamar, which is En-gedi!"

And Jehoshaphat feared, and set himself to seek the LORD, and proclaimed a fast throughout all Judah. And Judah gathered themselves together to ask help of the LORD, even out of all the cities of Judah they came to seek the LORD.

And Jehoshaphat stood in the congregation of Judah and Jerusalem, in the House of the LORD before the new court, and said, "O LORD God of our fathers, art not Thou God in heaven? And rulest not Thou over all the kingdoms of the heathen? And in Thine hand is there not power and might so that none is able to withstand Thee? Art not Thou our God who didst drive out the inhabitants of this land before Thy People Israel, and gavest it to the seed of Abraham Thy friend for ever? And they dwelt therein, and have built Thee a sanctuary therein for Thy name, saying, '*If (when evil cometh upon us, as the sword, judgment, or pestilence, or famine) we stand before this House and in Thy presence (for Thy name is in this House), and cry unto Thee in our affliction, then Thou wilt hear and help*'. And now, behold, the children of Ammon and Moab and Mount Seir (whom Thou wouldest not let Israel invade when they came out of the land of Egypt, but <sup>1</sup>they turned from them and destroyed them not); behold, I say, how they reward us, to come to cast us out of Thy possession which Thou hast given us to inherit! O our God, wilt Thou not judge them? For we have no might against this great company that cometh against us; neither know we what to do! But our eyes are upon Thee!"  
*<sup>1</sup>Israel*

And all Judah stood before the LORD with their little ones, their wives, and their children.

Then upon Jahaziel (the son of Zechariah, the son of Benaiah, the son of Jeiel, the son of Mattaniah, a Levite of the sons of Asaph) came the Spirit of the LORD in the midst of the congregation; and he said, "Hearken ye, all Judah, and ye inhabitants of Jerusalem, and thou King Jehoshaphat! Thus saith the LORD unto you: Be not afraid nor dismayed by reason of this great multitude! For the battle is not yours, but God's! To morrow go

ye down against them. Behold, they come up by the Cliff of Ziz; and ye shall find them at the end of the brook before the wilderness of Jeruel. Ye shall not need to fight in this battle. Set yourselves, stand ye still - and see the salvation of the LORD with you, O Judah and Jerusalem! Fear not, nor be dismayed; to morrow go out against them. For the LORD will be with you!”

And Jehoshaphat bowed his head with his face to the ground; and all Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem fell before the LORD, worshipping the LORD. And the Levites, of the children of the Kohathites, and of the children of the Korhites, stood up to praise the LORD God of Israel with a loud voice on high.

And they rose early in the morning, and went forth into the wilderness of Tekoa. And as they went forth, Jehoshaphat stood and said, “Hear me, O Judah, and ye inhabitants of Jerusalem! Believe in the LORD your God; so shall ye be established! Believe His prophets; so shall ye prosper!”

And when he had consulted with the people, he appointed singers unto the LORD and that should praise the beauty of holiness as they went out before the army, and to say, “Praise the LORD! For His mercy endureth for ever!!!”

And when they began to sing and to praise, the LORD set <sup>1</sup>ambushments against the children of Ammon, Moab, and Mount Seir, which were come against Judah; and they were smitten. For the children of Ammon and Moab stood up against the inhabitants of Mount Seir, utterly to slay and destroy them; and when they had made an end of the inhabitants of Seir, every one helped to destroy another. And when Judah came toward the watch tower in the wilderness, they looked unto the multitude, and, behold, they were dead bodies fallen to the earth, and none escaped. <sup>1</sup>ambushes

And when Jehoshaphat and his people came to take away the <sup>1</sup>spoil of them, they found among them in abundance, both riches with the dead bodies, and precious jewels, which they stripped off for themselves - more than they could carry away! And they were three days in gathering of the spoil, it was so much! <sup>1</sup>loot

And on the fourth day they assembled themselves in the Valley of Berachah; for there they blessed the LORD. Therefore the name of the same place was called *The Valley of Berachah* unto this day.

Then they returned, every man of Judah and Jerusalem, and Jehoshaphat in the forefront of them, to go again to Jerusalem with joy; for the LORD had made them to rejoice over their enemies. And they came to Jerusalem with psalteries and harps and trumpets unto the house of the LORD. And the fear of God was on all the kingdoms of those countries when they had heard that the LORD fought against the enemies of Israel. So the realm of Jehoshaphat was quiet; for his God gave him rest round about.

And Jehoshaphat reigned over Judah. He was thirty and five years old when he began to reign, and he reigned twenty and five years in Jerusalem. And his mother’s name was Azubah the daughter of Shilhi. And he walked in the way of Asa his father, and departed not from it, doing that which was right in the sight of the LORD. (Howbeit the <sup>1</sup>high places were not taken away; for as yet the people had not prepared their hearts unto the God of their fathers). <sup>1</sup>places of idol worship

Now the rest of the acts of Jehoshaphat, first and last, behold, they are written in the book of Jehu the son of Hanani, who is mentioned in the book of the kings of Israel.

And after this did Jehoshaphat king of Judah join himself with Ahaziah king of Israel, who did very wickedly. And he joined himself with him to make ships to go to <sup>1</sup>Tarshish. And they made the ships in Ezion-geber. *<sup>1</sup>an unknown location, disputed to be either Tarsus in Cilicia, Cadiz in Spain, or the beaches of Tyre in Lebanon. “Tarshish” is also a word that means “oar”, implying that tarshish in this verse may not indicate an actual place, but might refer to ships with rowing ability. All of these are plausible. However, the next verse seems to indicate that Tarshish is an actual place.*

Then Eliezer the son of Dodavah of Mareshah prophesied against Jehoshaphat, saying, “Because thou hast joined thyself with Ahaziah, the LORD hath broken thy works.” And the ships were broken, that they were not able to go to Tarshish.

Now Jehoshaphat slept with his fathers, and was buried with his fathers in the city of David. And Jehoram, his son, reigned in his stead. And he had brethren (the sons of Jehoshaphat):

- <sup>1</sup>Azariah, and
- Jehiel, and
- Zechariah, and
- <sup>1</sup>Azariah, and
- Michael, and
- Shephatiah:

all these were the sons of Jehoshaphat king of Israel.

*It is not known why Jehoshaphat gave two sons the same name, unless one died and he gave the name to another son, or, the second use of the name comes from a variant spelling of the first but means the same to us in English. Both were common practices of the day.*

And their father gave them great gifts of silver, and of gold, and of precious things, with fenced cities in Judah; but the kingdom gave he to Jehoram because he was the firstborn.



Now, when Jehoram was risen up to the kingdom of his father, he strengthened himself, and slew all his brethren with the sword, and divers also of the princes of Israel.

Jehoram was thirty and two years old when he began to reign, and he reigned eight years in Jerusalem. And he walked in the way of the kings of Israel, like as did the House of Ahab (for he had the daughter of Ahab to wife); and he wrought that which was evil in the eyes of the LORD. Howbeit, the LORD would not destroy the House of David because of the covenant that He had made with David, and as He promised to give a Light to him and to his sons for ever.

In his days the <sup>1</sup>Edomites revolted from under the dominion of Judah, and made themselves a king. Then Jehoram went forth with his princes, and all his chariots with him; and he rose up by night, and smote the Edomites which compassed him in, and the captains of the chariots. So the Edomites revolted from under the hand of Judah unto this day.

*<sup>1</sup>descendants of Esau*

The same time also did Libnah revolt from under his hand; because he had forsaken the LORD God of his fathers.

Moreover, he made high places in the mountains of Judah, and caused the inhabitants of Jerusalem to commit fornication, and compelled Judah thereto.

And there came a writing to him from Elijah the prophet, saying, “Thus saith the LORD God of David thy father: Because thou hast not walked in the ways of Jehoshaphat thy father nor in the ways of Asa king of Judah, but hast walked in the way of the kings of Israel and hast made Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem to go a whoring like to the whoredoms of the House of Ahab, and also hast slain thy brethren of thy father’s House (which were better than thyself!)... Behold, with a great plague will the LORD smite thy people, and thy children, and thy wives, and all thy goods. And thou shalt have great sickness by disease of thy bowels, until thy bowels fall out by reason of the sickness day by day!”

Moreover, the LORD stirred up against Jehoram the spirit of the Philistines and of the <sup>1</sup>Arabians that were near the Ethiopians. And they came up into Judah, and brake into it, and carried away all the substance that was found in the king's house, and his sons also, and his wives; so that there was never a son left him, save Jehoahaz, the youngest of his sons.

<sup>1</sup>NOTE: This may support the belief that Ethiopia was the land of "Sheba" of the famous queen, which stretched from Ethiopia across the Red Sea to present day Yemen, which is below Saudi Arabia.

And after all this, the LORD smote him in his bowels with an incurable disease.

And it came to pass that in process of time, after the end of two years, his bowels fell out by reason of his sickness, so he died of sore diseases. And his people made no burning for him, <sup>1</sup>like the burning of his fathers. Thirty and two years old was he when he began to reign, and he reigned in Jerusalem eight years, and departed without being desired. Howbeit, they buried him in the City of David, but not in the sepulchres of the kings. <sup>1</sup>with the same dignities (it was common practice of the time to cremate the body on a funeral pyre)

And the inhabitants of Jerusalem made Ahaziah, his youngest son, king in his stead; for the band of men that came with the Arabians to the camp had slain all the eldest. So Ahaziah, the son of Jehoram, king of Judah, reigned. Forty and two years old was Ahaziah when he began to reign, and he reigned one year in Jerusalem. His mother's name also was Athaliah, the daughter of Omri. He also walked in the ways of the House of Ahab; for his mother was his counsellor to do wickedly. Wherefore he did evil in the sight of the LORD like the House of Ahab; for they were his counsellors after the death of his father, to his destruction. He walked also after their counsel, and went with <sup>1</sup>Jehoram, the son of Ahab king of Israel, to war against Hazael king of Syria at Ramoth-gilead; and the Syrians smote <sup>2</sup>Joram.

<sup>1</sup>not to be confused with his father Jehoram, who had the same name <sup>2</sup>variant spelling of Jehoram

And he returned to be healed in Jezreel because of the wounds which were given him at Ramah when he fought with Hazael king of Syria. And Azariah the son of Jehoram king of Judah went down to see Jehoram the son of Ahab at Jezreel, because he was sick. And the destruction of Ahaziah was of God by coming to Joram; for, when he was come, he went out with Jehoram against Jehu the son of Nimshi, whom the LORD had anointed to cut off the House of Ahab.

And it came to pass that, when Jehu was executing judgment upon the House of Ahab, and found the princes of Judah and the sons of the brethren of Ahaziah that ministered to Ahaziah, he slew them. And he sought Ahaziah; and they caught him (for he was hid in Samaria) and brought him to Jehu. And when they had slain him, they buried him, "Because," said they, "he is the son of Jehoshaphat who sought the LORD with all his heart." So the House of Ahaziah had no power to keep still the kingdom.

But when Athaliah, the mother of Ahaziah, saw that her son was dead, she arose and destroyed all the seed royal of the House of Judah.

But Jehoshabeath, the daughter of the king, took Joash the son of Ahaziah, and stole him from among the king's sons that were slain, and put him and his nurse in a bedchamber. So Jehoshabeath, the daughter of King Jehoram, the wife of Jehoiada the priest (for she was the sister of Ahaziah) hid him from Athaliah, so that she slew him not. And he was with them, hid in the House of God, six years; and Athaliah reigned over the land.

And in the seventh year Jehoiada strengthened himself, and took the captains of hundreds, Azariah the son of Jeroham, and Ishmael the son of Jehohanan, and Azariah the son of Obed, and Maaseiah the son of Adaiah, and Elishaphat the son of Zichri, into covenant with him. And they went about in Judah and gathered the Levites out of all the cities of Judah, and the chief of the fathers of Israel, and they came to

Jerusalem.

And all the congregation made a covenant with the king in the House of God. And he said unto them, "Behold, the king's son shall reign, as the LORD hath said of the sons of David. This is the thing that ye shall do: A third part of you, entering on the Sabbath, of the priests and of the Levites, shall be porters of the doors. And a third part shall be at the king's house. And a third part at the gate of the foundation. And all the people shall be in the courts of the House of the LORD. But let none come into the House of the LORD, save the priests and they that minister of the Levites. *They* shall go in, for they are holy. But all the people shall keep the watch of the LORD. And the Levites shall compass the king round about, every man with his weapons in his hand; and whosoever else cometh into the house, he shall be put to death. But be ye with the king when he cometh in, and when he goeth out."

So the Levites and all Judah did according to all things that Jehoiada the priest had commanded, and took every man his men, that were to come in on the Sabbath, with them that were to go out on the Sabbath; for Jehoiada the priest dismissed not the <sup>1</sup>courses. *<sup>1</sup>required priestly duties*

Moreover, Jehoiada the priest delivered to the Captains of Hundreds spears, and bucklers, and shields, that had been King David's, which were in the House of God. And he set all the people, every man having his weapon in his hand, from the right side of the Temple to the left side of the Temple, along by the Altar and the Temple, by the king round about.

Then they brought out the king's son, and put upon him the crown, and gave him the testimony, and made him king. And Jehoiada and his sons anointed him, and said, "God save the king!" *<sup>1</sup>literally "Viva!", or, "Long Live the King!"*

Now, when Athaliah heard the noise of the people running and praising the king, she came to the people into the House of the LORD. And she looked, and, behold, the king stood at his pillar at the entering in, and the princes and the trumpets by the king; and all the people of the land rejoiced, and sounded with trumpets, also the singers with instruments of musick, and such as taught to sing praise.

Then Athaliah rent her clothes, and said, "Treason! Treason!"

Then Jehoiada the priest brought out the Captains of Hundreds that were set over the host, and said unto them, "Have her forth of the ranges! And whoso followeth her, let him be slain with the sword!" (For the priest said, "Slay her not in the House of the LORD"). *<sup>1</sup>haul her out to the horse pastures*

So they laid hands on her; and when she was come to the entering of the horse gate by the king's house, they slew her there.

And Jehoiada made a covenant between him and between all the people and between the king, that they should be the LORD's People.

Then all the people went to the <sup>1</sup>house of Baal and brake it down, and brake his altars and his images in pieces, and slew Mattan the priest of Baal before the altars. *<sup>1</sup>temple of the idol Baal*

Also Jehoiada appointed the offices of the House of the LORD by the hand of the priests the Levites, whom David had distributed in the House of the LORD, to offer the burnt offerings of the LORD as it is written in the Law of Moses, with rejoicing and with singing, as it was ordained by David. And he set the porters at the gates of the House of the LORD, that none which was unclean in any thing should enter in. And he took the Captains of Hundreds, and the nobles, and the governors of the people, and all the people of the land, and brought down the king from the House of the LORD. And they came through the high gate into the king's house, and set the king upon the throne of the kingdom. And all the people of the land rejoiced; and the

city was quiet after that they had slain Athaliah with the sword.

Joash was seven years old when he began to reign, and he reigned forty years in Jerusalem. His mother's name also was Zibiah of Beer-sheba. And Joash did that which was *right* in the sight of the LORD all the days of Jehoiada the priest. And Jehoiada took for him two wives; and he begat sons and daughters.

And it came to pass after this that Joash was minded to repair the House of the LORD. And he gathered together the priests and the Levites, and said to them, "Go out unto the cities of Judah and gather, of all Israel, money to repair the House of your God from year to year - and see that ye <sup>1</sup>hasten the matter!"

*<sup>1</sup>do this with all speed/quickly*

Howbeit the Levites hastened it not. And the king called for Jehoiada the chief and said unto him, "Why hast thou not required of the Levites to bring in out of Judah and out of Jerusalem the collection, according to the commandment of Moses the servant of the LORD and of the congregation of Israel, for the Tabernacle of Witness?!" (For the sons of Athaliah, that wicked woman, had broken up the House of God; and also all the dedicated things of the House of the LORD did they bestow upon <sup>1</sup>Baalim).

*<sup>1</sup>servants of Baal*

And, at the king's commandment, they made a chest, and set it without at the gate of the House of the LORD. And they made a proclamation through Judah and Jerusalem, to bring in to the LORD the collection that Moses the servant of God laid upon Israel in the wilderness. And all the princes and all the people rejoiced, and brought in, and cast into the chest, until they had made an end.

Now, it came to pass, that, at what time the chest was brought unto the king's office by the hand of the Levites and when they saw that there was much money, the king's scribe and the high priest's officer came and emptied the chest and took it and carried it to his place again. Thus they did day by day, and gathered money in abundance.

And the king and Jehoiada gave it to such as did the work of the service of the House of the LORD, and hired masons and carpenters to repair the House of the LORD, and also such as wrought iron and brass to mend the House of the LORD.

So the workmen wrought, and the work was perfected by them, and they set the House of God in <sup>1</sup>his state, and strengthened it.

*<sup>1</sup>proper condition*

And when they had finished it, they brought the rest of the money before the king and Jehoiada, whereof were made vessels for the House of the LORD, even vessels to minister, and to offer withal, and spoons, and vessels of gold and silver. And they offered burnt offerings in the House of the LORD continually all the days of Jehoiada.

But Jehoiada waxed old, and was full of days when he died - an hundred and thirty years old was he when he died. And they buried him in the City of David among the kings, because he had done good in Israel, both toward God, and toward His House.

Now, after the death of Jehoiada came the princes of Judah and made obeisance to the king. Then the king hearkened unto them. And they left the House of the LORD God of their fathers, and served <sup>1</sup>groves and idols; and Wrath came upon Judah and Jerusalem for this their trespass.

*<sup>1</sup>images and idols of the sex and genital mutilation goddess Ashteroth/Ishtar/Atargatis*

Yet He sent prophets to them, to bring them again unto the LORD; and they testified against them - but they would not give ear. And the Spirit of God came upon Zechariah, the son of Jehoiada the priest, which stood above the people and said unto them, "Thus saith God: Why transgress ye the commandments of the LORD, that ye cannot prosper? Because ye have forsaken the LORD, He hath also forsaken *you!*"

And they conspired against him, and stoned him with stones at the commandment of the king in the court of the House of the LORD. Thus Joash the king remembered not the kindness which Jehoiada his father had done to him, but slew his son. And when <sup>1</sup>he died, he said, "The LORD look upon <sup>2</sup>it, and <sup>3</sup>require it!"

*<sup>1</sup>Zechariah <sup>2</sup>this act of murder <sup>3</sup>avenge*

And it came to pass at the end of the year, that the host of Syria came up against <sup>1</sup>him; and they came to Judah and Jerusalem and destroyed all the princes of the people from among the people, and sent all the spoil of them unto the king of Damascus. For the army of the Syrians came with a small company of men, and the LORD delivered a very great host into their hand, because <sup>2</sup>they had forsaken the LORD God of their fathers. So they executed judgment against Joash.

*<sup>1</sup>King Joash <sup>2</sup>the people of Judah*

And when they were departed from him (for they left him in great diseases), his own servants conspired against him for the blood of the sons of Jehoiada the priest, and slew him on his bed, and he died. And they buried him in the City of David, but they buried him not in the sepulchres of the kings.

And these are they that conspired against him:

- Zabad, the son of Shimeath, an <sup>1</sup>Ammonitess,
- and Jehozabad, the son of Shimrith, a <sup>1</sup>Moabitess.

*<sup>1</sup>descendants of Ammon and Moab, the sons of Abraham's nephew Lot and his daughters*

Now concerning his sons, and the greatness of the burdens laid upon him, and the repairing of the House of God, behold, they are written in the story of the book of the kings.

And Amaziah, his son, reigned in his stead. Amaziah was twenty and five years old when he began to reign, and he reigned twenty and nine years in Jerusalem. And his mother's name was Jehoaddan of Jerusalem. And he did that which was *right* in the sight of the LORD - but not with a perfect heart.

Now it came to pass, when the kingdom was established to him, that he slew his servants that had killed the king his father. But he slew not their children, but did as it is written in the Law in the Book of Moses where the LORD commanded, saying, '*The fathers shall not die for the children, neither shall the children die for the fathers, but every man shall die for his own sin*'.

Moreover, Amaziah gathered Judah together and made them Captains over Thousands, and Captains over Hundreds, according to the Houses of their fathers throughout all Judah and Benjamin. And he numbered them from twenty years old and above, and found them three hundred thousand choice men, able to go forth to war, that could handle spear and shield. He hired also an hundred thousand mighty men of valour out of Israel for an hundred talents of silver.

But there came a man of God to him, saying, "O king, let not the army of Israel go with thee; for the LORD is not with Israel - to wit, with all the children of Ephraim. But if thou *wilt* go do it, <sup>1</sup>be strong for the battle; <sup>2</sup>God shall make thee fall before the enemy, for God hath power to help *and* to cast down!"

*<sup>1</sup>you'd better be strong enough <sup>2</sup>because God*

And Amaziah said to the man of God, "But what shall we do <sup>1</sup>for the hundred talents which I have <sup>2</sup>given to the army of Israel?"

*<sup>1</sup>in regard to <sup>2</sup>already paid*

And the man of God answered, "The LORD is able to give thee much *more* than this!"

Then Amaziah separated them - <sup>1</sup>to wit, <sup>2</sup>the army that was come to him out of Ephraim - to go home again. Wherefore their anger was greatly kindled against Judah, and they returned home in great anger.

*<sup>1</sup>specifically <sup>2</sup>the army of Israel*

And Amaziah strengthened himself and led forth his people, and went to the Valley of Salt, and smote of the children of Seir ten thousand. And other ten thousand, left alive, did the children of Judah carry away captive and brought them unto the top of the rock, and cast them down from the top of the rock that they all were broken in pieces.

But the soldiers of the army which Amaziah sent back, that they should not go with him to battle, fell upon the cities of Judah, from Samaria even unto Beth-Horon, and smote three thousand of them, and took much spoil.

Now it came to pass, after that Amaziah was come from the slaughter of the Edomites, that he brought the gods of the children of Seir and set them up to be *his* gods, and bowed down himself before them and burned incense unto them. Wherefore the anger of the LORD was kindled against Amaziah, and He sent unto Him a prophet which said unto him, “Why hast thou sought after the gods of the people which could not deliver their *own* people out of thine hand?”

And it came to pass, as he talked with him, that the king said unto him, “<sup>1</sup>Art thou made of the king’s counsel?! <sup>2</sup>Forbear: <sup>3</sup>why shouldest thou be smitten?!”

*<sup>1</sup>Did I make you one of my royal advisors?! <sup>2</sup>beware and be quiet/withdraw/step back/hold back/hold your tongue <sup>3</sup>why give me a reason to strike/kill you*

Then the prophet forbore, and said, “I know that God hath determined to destroy thee, because thou hast done this, and hast not hearkened unto my counsel.”

Then Amaziah king of Judah took advice, and sent to Joash (the son of Jehoahaz, the son of Jehu, king of Israel), saying, “Come, let us see one another <sup>1</sup>in the face!” *<sup>1</sup>face to face/in person*

And Joash king of Israel sent to Amaziah king of Judah, saying, “The thistle that was in Lebanon sent to the cedar that was in Lebanon, saying, ‘Give thy daughter to my son to wife’; and there passed by a wild beast that was in Lebanon and trode down the thistle! Thou sayest, Lo, thou hast smitten the Edomites; and thine heart lifteth thee up to boast: abide now at home; why shouldest thou meddle to thine hurt, that thou shouldest fall, even thou, and Judah with thee?”

*<sup>1</sup>NOTE: King Joash is saying that he believes that King Amaziah’s invitation to meet with each other is only so he can brag about winning the war that he wouldn’t let them participate in, and is warning him not to rub it in their face and avoid war between them.*

But Amaziah would not hear; for it came of God, that He might deliver them into the hand of their enemies, because they sought after the gods of Edom. So Joash the king of Israel went up; and they saw one another in the face, both he and Amaziah king of Judah, at Beth-shemesh (which belongeth to Judah). And Judah was put to the worse before Israel, and they fled every man to his tent.

And Joash the king of Israel took Amaziah king of Judah (the son of Joash, the son of Jehoahaz) at Beth-shemesh, and brought him to Jerusalem, and brake down the wall of Jerusalem from the gate of Ephraim to the corner gate, <sup>1</sup>four hundred cubits. And he took all the gold and the silver, and all the vessels that were found in the House of God with <sup>1</sup>Obed-Edom, and the treasures of the king’s house, the hostages also, and returned to Samaria. *<sup>1</sup>guard of the Temple treasury*

And Amaziah, the son of Joash king of Judah, lived after the death of Joash, son of Jehoahaz king of Israel, fifteen years. Now the rest of the acts of Amaziah, first and last, behold, are they not written in the book of the kings of Judah and Israel?

Now, after the time that Amaziah did turn away from following the LORD, they made a conspiracy against him in Jerusalem; and he fled to Lachish; but they sent to Lachish after him, and slew him there. And they brought him upon horses, and buried him with his fathers in the city of Judah.

Then all the people of Judah took Uzziah, who was sixteen years old, and made him king in the <sup>1</sup>room of his father Amaziah. *<sup>1</sup>throne room/office/position*

He built Eloth and restored it to Judah after that the king slept with his fathers. Sixteen years old was Uzziah when he began to reign, and he reigned fifty and two years in Jerusalem. His mother's name also was Jecoliah of Jerusalem. And he did that which was right in the sight of the LORD, according to all that his father Amaziah did. And he sought God in the <sup>1</sup>days of Zechariah, who had understanding in the visions of God; and as long as he sought the LORD, God made him to prosper. *<sup>1</sup>time of the biblical prophet Zechariah*

And he went forth and warred against the Philistines, and brake down the wall of Gath, and the wall of Jabneh, and the wall of Ashdod, and built cities about Ashdod, and among the Philistines. And God helped him against the Philistines, and against the Arabians that dwelt in Gur-baal, and the Mehunims.

And the Ammonites gave gifts to Uzziah; and his name spread abroad even to the <sup>1</sup>entering in of Egypt; for he strengthened himself exceedingly. *<sup>1</sup>border*

Moreover, Uzziah built towers in Jerusalem at the corner gate, and at the valley gate, and at the <sup>1</sup>turning of the wall, and fortified them. *<sup>1</sup>curvature or corner*

Also he built towers in the desert, and digged many wells; for he had much cattle, both in the low country and in the plains; husbandmen also, and vine dressers in the mountains, and in Carmel (for he loved <sup>1</sup>husbandry). *<sup>1</sup>crop cultivation*

Moreover Uzziah had an host of fighting men that went out to war by bands (according to the number of their account by the hand of Jeiel the scribe and Maaseiah the ruler, under the hand of Hananiah, one of the king's captains). The whole number of the chief of the fathers of the mighty men of valour were two thousand and six hundred. And under their hand was an army, three hundred thousand and seven thousand and five hundred, that made war with mighty power to help the king against the enemy. And Uzziah prepared for them throughout all the <sup>1</sup>host shields, and spears, and helmets, and habergeons, and bows, and slings to cast stones. *<sup>1</sup>a mass of troops*

And he made in Jerusalem <sup>1</sup>engines, invented by cunning men, to be on the towers and upon the bulwarks, to shoot arrows and great stones withal. *<sup>1</sup>catapults and the like*

And his name spread far abroad; for he was marvellously helped, till he was strong. But when he was strong, his heart <sup>1</sup>was lifted up to his destruction; for he transgressed against the LORD his God and went into the Temple of the LORD to burn incense upon the Altar of Incense. *<sup>1</sup>became arrogant*

And Azariah the priest went in after him, and with him <sup>1</sup>fourscore priests of the LORD that were valiant men. And they withstood Uzziah the king, and said unto him, "It <sup>2</sup>appertaineth not unto thee, Uzziah, to burn incense unto the LORD, but to the priests the sons of Aaron that are consecrated to burn incense! Go out of the Sanctuary; for thou hast trespassed! Neither shall it be for thine honour from the LORD God!" *<sup>1</sup>80 <sup>2</sup>it is not your place/right/authority*

Then Uzziah was <sup>1</sup>wroth, and had a censer in his hand to burn incense; and while he was wroth with the priests, the leprosy even rose up in his forehead before the priests in the House of the LORD from beside the Incense Altar. And Azariah the chief priest, and all the priests, looked upon him, and, behold, he was leprous in his forehead; and they thrust him out from thence (yea, himself hastened also to go out, because the LORD had smitten him). *<sup>1</sup>wrathful/furious*

And Uzziah the king was a leper unto the day of his death, and dwelt in a <sup>1</sup>several house, being a leper; for he was cut off from the House of the LORD. And Jotham, his son, was over the king's house, judging the

people of the land.

*<sup>1</sup>that which is severed from the rest/separate/alone*

Now, the rest of the acts of Uzziah, first and last, did Isaiah the prophet, the son of Amoz, write. So Uzziah slept with his fathers, and they buried him with his fathers in the field of the burial which belonged to the kings; for they said, "He is a leper". And Jotham his son reigned in his stead.

Jotham was twenty and five years old when he began to reign, and he reigned sixteen years in Jerusalem. His mother's name also was Jerushah, the daughter of Zadok. And he did that which was *right* in the sight of the LORD, according to all that his father Uzziah did - howbeit he entered not into the Temple of the LORD.

And the people <sup>1</sup>did yet corruptly.

*<sup>1</sup>still behaved*

He built the high gate of the House of the LORD, and on the wall of Ophel he built much. Moreover, he built cities in the mountains of Judah, and in the forests he built castles and towers.

He fought also with the king of the Ammonites, and prevailed against them. And the children of Ammon gave him, the same year, <sup>1</sup>an hundred talents of silver, and ten thousand measures of wheat, and ten thousand of barley. So much did the children of Ammon pay unto him, both the second year, and the third. So Jotham became mighty, because he prepared his ways before the LORD his God. *<sup>1</sup>6,600 pounds in weight*

Now the rest of the acts of Jotham, and all his wars, and his ways, lo, they are written in the book of the kings of Israel and Judah. He was five and twenty years old when he began to reign, and reigned sixteen years in Jerusalem. And Jotham slept with his fathers, and they buried him in the City of David. And Ahaz his son reigned in his stead.

Ahaz was twenty years old when he began to reign, and he reigned sixteen years in Jerusalem. But he did not that which was right in the sight of the LORD, like David his father. For he walked in the ways of the kings of Israel, and made also molten images for Baalim. Moreover, he burnt incense in the Valley of the son of Hinnom, and burnt his children in the fire <sup>1</sup>after the abominations of the heathen whom the LORD had cast out before the children of Israel. He sacrificed also and burnt incense in the high places, and on the hills, and under every green tree. *<sup>1</sup>in the custom/similar to/in the style or way of*

Wherefore the LORD his God delivered him into the hand of the king of Syria; and they smote him and carried away a great multitude of them captives, and brought them to Damascus. And he was also delivered into the hand of the king of Israel, who smote him with a great slaughter (for Pekah, the son of Remaliah, slew in Judah an hundred and twenty thousand in one day, which were all valiant men), because they had forsaken the LORD God of their fathers.

And Zichri (a mighty man of Ephraim) slew Maaseiah the king's son, and Azrikam the governor of the house, and Elkanah that was next to the king. And the children of Israel carried away captive of their brethren two hundred thousand, women, sons, and daughters, and took also away much spoil from them, and brought the spoil to Samaria.

But a prophet of the LORD was there, whose name was Oded. And he went out before the host that came to Samaria, and said unto them, "Behold! Because the LORD God of your fathers was wroth with Judah He hath delivered them into your hand - and ye have slain them in a rage that reacheth up unto heaven! And *now* ye purpose to keep under the children of Judah and Jerusalem for bondmen and bondwomen unto you! But are there not with you, even with *you*, sins against the LORD your God?! Now hear me therefore, and <sup>1</sup>deliver the captives again which ye have taken captive of your brethren - for the fierce wrath of the LORD is upon you!" *<sup>1</sup>set your captives free*

Then certain of the heads of the children of Ephraim (Azariah the son of Johanan, Berechiah the son of

Meshillemoth, and Jehizkiah the son of Shallum, and Amasa the son of Hadlai) stood up against them that came from the war and said unto them, "Ye *shall not* bring in the captives hither! For, whereas we have offended against the LORD already, ye intend to add more to our sins and to our trespass! For our trespass is great, and there is fierce wrath against Israel!"

So the armed men left the captives and the spoil before the princes and all the congregation. And the men (which were expressed by name) rose up and took the captives, and, with the spoil, clothed all that were naked among them, and arrayed them, and shod them, and gave them to eat and to drink, and anointed them, and carried all the feeble of them upon asses, and brought them to Jericho, the city of palm trees, to their brethren; then they returned to Samaria.

At that time did King Ahaz send unto the kings of Assyria to help him. For again the Edomites had come and smitten Judah, and carried away captives. The Philistines also had invaded the cities of the low country, and of the south of Judah, and had taken Beth-shemesh, and Ajalon, and Gederoth, and Shocho with the villages thereof, and Timnah with the villages thereof, Gimzo also and the villages thereof; and they dwelt there (for the LORD brought Judah low because of Ahaz king of Israel; for he made Judah naked and transgressed sore against the LORD).

And Tilgath-Pilneser, king of Assyria, came unto him and distressed him, but strengthened him not. For Ahaz took away a portion out of the House of the LORD and out of the house of the king, and of the princes, and gave it unto the king of Assyria. But he helped him not. And in the time of his distress did he trespass yet more against the LORD - this is *that* king Ahaz. *this is that very King Ahaz which famously sinned against the Lord*

For he sacrificed unto the gods of Damascus, which smote him. And he said, "Because the gods of the kings of Syria help *them*, therefore will I sacrifice to them that they may help *me*." But they were the ruin of him, and of all Israel. And Ahaz gathered together the vessels of the House of God, and cut in pieces the vessels of the House of God, and shut up the doors of the House of the LORD, and he made him altars in every corner of Jerusalem. And in every several city of Judah he made high places to burn incense unto other gods, and provoked to anger the LORD God of his fathers.

Now the rest of his acts and of all his ways, first and last, behold, they are written in the book of the kings of Judah and Israel. And Ahaz slept with his fathers, and they buried him in the city, even in Jerusalem; but they brought him not into the sepulchres of the kings of Israel. And Hezekiah his son reigned in his stead.

Hezekiah began to reign when he was five and twenty years old, and he reigned nine and twenty years in Jerusalem. And his mother's name was Abijah, the daughter of Zechariah. And he did that which was *right* in the sight of the LORD, according to all that David his father had done.

He, in the first year of his reign, in the first month, opened the doors of the House of the LORD, and repaired them. And he brought in the priests and the Levites, and gathered them together into the east street and said unto them, "Hear me, ye Levites! Sanctify now yourselves, and sanctify the House of the LORD God of your fathers, and carry forth the filthiness out of the Holy Place! For our fathers have trespassed and done that which was evil in the eyes of the LORD our God, and have forsaken Him, and have turned away their faces from the habitation of the LORD, and turned their backs! Also they have shut up the doors of the porch, and put out the lamps, and have not burned incense nor offered burnt offerings in the Holy Place unto the God of Israel! Wherefore the wrath of the LORD was upon Judah and Jerusalem, and He hath delivered them to trouble, to astonishment, and to hissing, as ye see with your eyes - for, lo, our fathers have fallen by the sword, and our sons and our daughters and our wives are in captivity for this! Now, it is in mine heart to make a covenant with the LORD God of Israel, that His fierce wrath may turn away from us. My sons, be not now negligent; for the LORD hath chosen you to stand before Him, to serve Him, and that ye should minister unto Him, and burn incense."

Then the Levites arose - Mahath the son of Amasai and Joel the son of Azariah, of the sons of the Kohathites; and of the sons of Merari, Kish the son of Abdi and Azariah the son of Jehalelel; and of the Gershonites, Joah the son of Zimmah and Eden the son of Joah; and of the sons of Elizaphan, Shimri and Jeiel; and of the sons of Asaph, Zechariah and Mattaniah; and of the sons of Heman, Jehiel and Shimei; and of the sons of Jeduthun, Shemaiah and Uzziel. And they gathered their brethren, and sanctified themselves, and came, according to the commandment of the king, by the Words of the LORD, to cleanse the House of the LORD.

And the priests went into the inner part of the House of the LORD, to cleanse it, and brought out all the uncleanness that they found in the Temple of the LORD into the court of the House of the LORD. And the Levites took it, to carry it out abroad into the brook Kidron.

Now, they began on the first day of the first month to sanctify, and on the eighth day of the month came they to the porch of the LORD. So they sanctified the House of the LORD in eight days; and in the <sup>1</sup>sixteenth day of the first month they made an end. <sup>1</sup>during Passover

Then they went in to Hezekiah the king, and said, "We have cleansed all the House of the LORD, and the Altar of Burnt Offering, with all the vessels thereof, and the Shewbread Table, with all the vessels thereof. Moreover, all the vessels, which King Ahaz in his reign did cast away in his transgression, have we prepared and sanctified, and, behold, they are before the Altar of the LORD."

Then Hezekiah the king rose early, and gathered the rulers of the city, and went up to the House of the LORD. And they brought seven bullocks, and seven rams, and seven lambs, and seven he goats, for a sin offering for the kingdom and for the Sanctuary and for Judah. And he commanded the priests the sons of Aaron to offer them on the Altar of the LORD.

So they killed the bullocks, and the priests received the blood, and sprinkled it on the Altar. Likewise, when they had killed the rams, they sprinkled the blood upon the Altar. They killed also the lambs, and they sprinkled the blood upon the Altar. And they brought forth the he goats for the sin offering before the king and the congregation; and they laid their hands upon them. And the priests killed them, and they made reconciliation with their blood upon the Altar, to make an atonement for all Israel (for the king commanded that the burnt offering and the sin offering should be made for <sup>1</sup>all Israel).

*<sup>1</sup>for both the southern Kingdom of Judah, and for the northern Kingdom of Israel (which separated from Judah in the days of the reign of Solomon's son) - for both are the children of Israel.*

And he set the Levites in the House of the LORD with cymbals, with psalteries, and with harps, according to the commandment of David and of Gad the king's seer and Nathan the prophet (for so was <sup>1</sup>the commandment of the LORD <sup>2</sup>by his prophets). And the Levites stood with the instruments of David, and the priests with the trumpets. <sup>1</sup>this <sup>2</sup>spoken by

And Hezekiah commanded to offer the burnt offering upon the Altar. And when the burnt offering began, the song of the LORD began also with the trumpets and with the instruments ordained by David king of Israel. And all the congregation worshipped, and the singers sang, and the trumpeters sounded; and all this continued until the burnt offering was finished. And when they had made an end of offering, the king and all that were present with him bowed themselves and worshipped.

Moreover, Hezekiah the king and the princes commanded the Levites to sing praise unto the LORD with the words of David and of Asaph the seer. And they sang praises with gladness, and they bowed their heads and worshipped.

Then Hezekiah answered and said, "Now ye have consecrated yourselves unto the LORD; come near and bring sacrifices and thank offerings into the House of the LORD!" And the congregation brought in sacrifices

and thank offerings; and as many, as were of a free heart, burnt offerings. And the number of the burnt offerings which the congregation brought was <sup>1</sup>threescore and ten bullocks, an hundred rams, and two hundred lambs - all these were for a burnt offering to the LORD. <sup>2</sup>And the consecrated things were six hundred oxen and three thousand sheep. <sup>170</sup> <sup>2</sup>And, for the consecrated things, were sacrificed

But the priests were too few, so that they could not flay all the burnt offerings; wherefore their brethren, the Levites, did help them till the work was ended, and until the other priests had sanctified themselves (for the Levites were more upright in heart to sanctify themselves than the priests). And also the burnt offerings were in abundance, with the fat of the peace offerings, and the drink offerings for every burnt offering.

So the service of the House of the LORD was set in order. And Hezekiah rejoiced, and all the people, that God had prepared the people (for the thing was done suddenly).

And Hezekiah sent to all Israel and Judah, and wrote letters also <sup>1</sup>to Ephraim and Manasseh, that they should come to the House of the LORD at Jerusalem, to keep the Passover unto the LORD God of Israel (for the king had taken counsel, and his princes, and all the congregation in Jerusalem, to keep the Passover in the <sup>2</sup>second month; for they could not keep it at <sup>3</sup>that time, because the priests had not sanctified themselves sufficiently, neither had the people gathered themselves together to Jerusalem).

*<sup>1</sup>the tribes/lands of <sup>2</sup>Passover was to be celebrated on the 14th day of the first month <sup>3</sup>the biblically commanded time*

And the thing pleased the king and all the congregation. So they established a decree to make proclamation throughout all Israel, from Beer-sheba even to Dan, that they should come to keep the Passover unto the LORD God of Israel at Jerusalem; for they had not done it of a long time in such sort as it was Written.

So the posts went with the letters from the king and his princes throughout all Israel and Judah, and according to the commandment of the king, saying:

“Ye Children of Israel,

Turn again unto the LORD God of Abraham, Isaac, and Israel, and He will return to the remnant of you that are escaped out of the hand of the kings of Assyria. And be not ye like your fathers and like your brethren which trespassed against the LORD God of their fathers, who therefore gave them up to desolation, as ye see.

Now, be ye not stiffnecked as your fathers were, but yield yourselves unto the LORD and enter into His Sanctuary, which He hath sanctified for ever; and serve the LORD your God, that the fierceness of His wrath may turn away from you. For, if ye turn again unto the LORD, your brethren and your children shall find compassion before them that lead them captive, so that they shall come again into this land; for the LORD your God is gracious and merciful and will not turn away his face from you, *if ye return unto Him.*”

So, the posts passed from city to city through the country of Ephraim and Manasseh even unto Zebulun.

But they laughed them to scorn, and mocked them. Nevertheless, <sup>1</sup>divers of Asher and Manasseh and of Zebulun humbled themselves, and came to Jerusalem. Also in Judah the hand of God was to give them one heart to do the commandment of the king and of the princes, by the Word of the LORD. <sup>1</sup>various people

And there assembled at Jerusalem much people to keep the Feast of Unleavened Bread in the *second* month, a very great congregation. And they arose and took away the <sup>1</sup>altars that were in Jerusalem, and all the <sup>1</sup>altars for incense took they away, and cast them into the brook Kidron. <sup>1</sup>pagan altars

Then they killed the Passover on the fourteenth day of the *second* month; and the priests and the Levites were ashamed, and sanctified themselves, and brought in the burnt offerings into the House of the LORD. And they stood in their place after their manner, according to the Law of Moses the man of God; the priests sprinkled the blood, which they received of the hand of the Levites (for there were many in the

congregation that were not sanctified; therefore the Levites had the charge of the killing of the Passovers for every one that was not clean, to sanctify them unto the LORD; for a multitude of the people, even many of Ephraim, and Manasseh, Issachar, and Zebulun, had not cleansed themselves, yet did they eat the Passover otherwise than it was written).

But Hezekiah prayed for them, saying, "The good LORD pardon every one that prepareth his heart to seek God, the LORD God of his fathers, though he be not cleansed according to <sup>1</sup>the purification of the Sanctuary."  
*<sup>1</sup>the laws for*

And the LORD hearkened to Hezekiah, and healed the people. And the children of Israel that were present at Jerusalem kept the Feast of Unleavened Bread seven days with great gladness; and the Levites and the priests praised the LORD day by day, singing with loud instruments unto the LORD.

And Hezekiah spake <sup>1</sup>comfortably unto all the Levites that taught the good knowledge of the LORD: and they did eat throughout the Feast seven days, offering peace offerings, and making confession to the LORD God of their fathers.  
*<sup>1</sup>with comforting words*

And the whole assembly took counsel to keep <sup>1</sup>other seven days: and they kept <sup>1</sup>other seven days with gladness.  
*<sup>1</sup>an additional*

For Hezekiah king of Judah did give to the congregation a thousand bullocks and seven thousand sheep; and the princes gave to the congregation a thousand bullocks and ten thousand sheep; and a great number of priests sanctified themselves. And all the congregation of Judah, with the priests and the Levites, and all the congregation that came out of Israel, and the strangers that came out of the land of Israel and that dwelt in Judah, rejoiced. So there was great joy in Jerusalem; for, since the time of Solomon the son of David king of Israel, there was not <sup>1</sup>the like in Jerusalem.  
*<sup>1</sup>a great Passover celebration like it*

Then the priests the Levites arose and blessed the people; and their voice was heard, and their prayer came up to His Holy dwelling place - even unto heaven.

Now when all this was finished, all Israel that were present went out to the cities of Judah and brake the <sup>1</sup>images in pieces and cut down the groves and threw down the high places and the altars out of all Judah and Benjamin, in Ephraim also, and Manasseh, until they had utterly destroyed them all. Then all the children of Israel returned, every man to his possession, into their own cities.  
*<sup>1</sup>graven pagan images*

And Hezekiah appointed the courses of the priests and the Levites after their courses, every man according to his service - the priests and Levites for burnt offerings and for peace offerings, to minister and to give thanks and to praise in the gates of the tents of the LORD.

He appointed also the king's portion of his substance for the burnt offerings, to wit, for the morning and evening burnt offerings, and the burnt offerings for the Sabbaths, and for the new moons, and for the set feasts, as it is written in the Law of the LORD.

Moreover, he commanded the people that dwelt in Jerusalem to give <sup>1</sup>the portion of the priests and the Levites, that they might be encouraged in the Law of the LORD.  
*<sup>1</sup>their salary and all that they need*

And as soon as the commandment came abroad, the children of Israel brought in abundance the firstfruits of corn, wine, and oil, and honey, and of all the increase of the field; and the <sup>1</sup>tithe of all things brought they in abundantly.  
*<sup>1</sup>10%*

And, concerning the children of Israel and Judah that dwelt in the cities of Judah, they also brought in the tithe of oxen and sheep, and the tithe of holy things which were consecrated unto the LORD their God, and

laid them <sup>1</sup>by heaps. In the third month they began to lay the foundation of the heaps, and finished them in the seventh month. And when Hezekiah and the princes came and saw the heaps, they blessed the LORD, and His people Israel. <sup>1</sup>*in heaps/massive piles*

Then Hezekiah questioned with the priests and the Levites concerning the heaps. And Azariah the chief priest of the House of Zadok answered him, and said, “Since the people began to bring the offerings into the House of the LORD, we have had enough to eat, and have left plenty; for the LORD hath blessed His people; and that which <sup>1</sup>is left is this great store.”

<sup>1</sup>*that which they had left over from their abundance is what you see stored up here in great quantity*

Then Hezekiah commanded to prepare chambers in the House of the LORD. And they prepared them, and brought in the offerings and the tithes and the dedicated things faithfully (over which Cononiah the Levite was ruler, and Shimei his brother was the next). And Jehiel, and Azariah, and Nahath, and Asahel, and Jerimoth, and Jozabad, and Eliel, and Ismachiah, and Mahath, and Benaiah, were overseers under the hand of Cononiah and Shimei his brother, at the commandment of Hezekiah the king and Azariah the ruler of the House of God.

And Kore the son of Imnah the Levite, the porter toward the east, was over the freewill offerings of God, to distribute the oblations of the LORD, and the most holy things. And <sup>1</sup>next him were Eden, and Miniamin, and Jeshua, and Shemaiah, Amariah, and Shecaniah, in the cities of the priests, in their set office, to give to their brethren by courses, as well to the great as to the small; beside their genealogy of males, from three years old and upward, even unto every one that entereth into the House of the LORD, his daily portion for their service in their charges according to their courses; both to the genealogy of the priests by the House of their fathers, and the Levites from twenty years old and upward in their charges by their courses; and to the genealogy of all their little ones, their wives, and their sons, and their daughters, through all the congregation (for in their set office they sanctified themselves in holiness); also of the sons of Aaron the priests, which were in the fields of the suburbs of their cities, in every several city, the men that were expressed by name, to give portions to all the males among the priests, and to all that were reckoned by genealogies among the Levites. <sup>1</sup>*after*

And thus did Hezekiah throughout all Judah, and wrought that which was good and right and truth before the LORD his God. And in every work that he began in the service of the House of God and in the Law and in the commandments, to seek his God, he did it with all his heart and prospered.

After these things, and the establishment thereof, Sennacherib king of Assyria came and entered into Judah, and encamped against the fenced cities, and thought to win them for himself. And when Hezekiah saw that Sennacherib was come and that <sup>1</sup>he was purposed to fight against Jerusalem, he took counsel with his princes and his mighty men to stop the waters of the fountains which were without the city; and they did help him. <sup>1</sup>*his purpose/goal*

So there was gathered much people together, who stopped all the fountains and the brook that ran through the midst of the land, saying, “Why should the kings of Assyria come and find much water?”

Also he strengthened himself, and built up all the wall that was broken, and raised it up to the towers, and <sup>1</sup>another wall without, and repaired <sup>2</sup>Millo in the city of David, and made darts and shields in abundance. <sup>1</sup>*second/double* <sup>2</sup>*the exact meaning is unknown but may be a type of battlement*

And he set captains of war over the people, and gathered them together to him in the street of the gate of the city, and spake comfortably to them, saying, “Be strong and courageous! Be not afraid nor dismayed for the king of Assyria, nor for all the multitude that is with him! For there be more with us than with him! With *him* is an arm of flesh; but with *us* is the LORD our God, to help us and to fight our battles!”

And the people rested themselves upon the words of Hezekiah king of Judah.

After this did Sennacherib king of Assyria send his servants to Jerusalem (but he himself laid siege against Lachish, and all his power with him) unto Hezekiah king of Judah, and unto all Judah that were at Jerusalem, saying, "Thus saith Sennacherib king of Assyria: "Whereon do ye trust, that ye abide in the siege in Jerusalem? Doth not Hezekiah persuade you to give over yourselves to die by famine and by thirst, saying, *The LORD our God shall deliver us out of the hand of the king of Assyria*?! Hath not the same Hezekiah taken away his <sup>1</sup>high places and his altars, and commanded Judah and Jerusalem, saying, *Ye shall worship before one Altar, and burn incense upon it*? Know ye not what I and my fathers have done unto all the people of other lands? Were the gods of the nations of those lands any ways able to deliver their lands out of mine hand? Who was there among all the gods, of those nations that my fathers utterly destroyed, that could deliver his people out of mine hand, that *your* God should be able to deliver *you* out of mine hand?! Now therefore, let not Hezekiah deceive you nor persuade you on this manner, neither yet believe him - for no god of any nation or kingdom was able to deliver his people out of mine hand and out of the hand of my fathers! How much less shall *your* God deliver you out of mine hand?!"

And his servants spake yet more against the LORD God, and against his servant Hezekiah. He wrote also letters to rail on the LORD God of Israel, and to speak against Him, saying, "As the gods of the nations of other lands have not delivered their people out of mine hand, so shall not the God of Hezekiah deliver *his* people out of mine hand!!"

Then they cried with a loud voice in <sup>1</sup>the Jews' speech unto the people of Jerusalem that were on the wall, to affright them, and to trouble them; that they might take the city. And they spake against the God of Jerusalem as against the gods of the people of the earth which were the work of the hands of man. And for this cause Hezekiah the king, and the prophet Isaiah the son of Amoz, prayed and cried to heaven.

*<sup>1</sup>the Hebrew language*

And the LORD sent an angel, which cut off all the mighty men of valour, and the leaders and captains in the camp of the king of Assyria. So <sup>1</sup>he returned with shame of face to his own land. And when he was come into the house of his god, <sup>2</sup>they that came forth of his own bowels slew him there with the sword. Thus the LORD saved Hezekiah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem from the hand of Sennacherib the king of Assyria, and from the hand of all other, and guided them on every side. And many brought gifts unto the LORD to Jerusalem, and presents to Hezekiah king of Judah, so that he was magnified in the sight of all nations from thenceforth.

*<sup>1</sup>King Sennacherib <sup>2</sup>his own children*

In those days Hezekiah was sick to the death, and prayed unto the LORD; and He spake unto him, and He gave him a sign. But Hezekiah rendered not again according to the benefit done unto him, for his heart was <sup>1</sup>lifted up; therefore there was wrath upon him, and upon Judah and Jerusalem.

*<sup>1</sup>proud/arrogant*

Notwithstanding, Hezekiah humbled himself for the pride of his heart, both he and the inhabitants of Jerusalem, so that the wrath of the LORD came not upon them in the days of Hezekiah.

And Hezekiah had exceeding much riches and honour; and he made himself treasuries for silver, and for gold, and for precious stones, and for spices, and for shields, and for all manner of pleasant jewels; storehouses also for the increase of corn, and wine, and oil; and stalls for all manner of beasts, and <sup>1</sup>cotes for flocks.

*<sup>1</sup>coop, cage or pen for animals*

Moreover, he provided him cities, and possessions of flocks and herds in abundance, for God had given him substance very much. This same Hezekiah also stopped the upper watercourse of <sup>1</sup>Gihon, and brought it straight down to the west side of the City of David. And Hezekiah prospered in all his works.

*<sup>1</sup>River Gihon*

Howbeit, in the business of the ambassadors of the princes of Babylon, who sent unto him to inquire of the wonder that was done in the land, God left him, to try him, that He might know all that was in his heart.

Now the rest of the acts of Hezekiah, and his goodness, behold, they are written in the <sup>1</sup>vision of Isaiah the prophet, the son of Amoz, and in the book of the kings of Judah and Israel. And Hezekiah slept with his fathers, and they buried him in the chiefest of the sepulchres of the sons of David; and all Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem did him honour at his death. And Manasseh his son reigned in his stead.

*<sup>1</sup>book of the prophecies of*

Manasseh was twelve years old when he began to reign, and he reigned fifty and five years in Jerusalem, but did that which was evil in the sight of the LORD, like unto the abominations of the heathen whom the LORD had cast out before the children of Israel. For he built again the <sup>1</sup>high places which Hezekiah his father had broken down, and he reared up altars for Baalim, and made groves, and worshipped all the <sup>2</sup>host of heaven, and served them. Also he built altars in the House of the LORD whereof the LORD had said, '*In Jerusalem shall My name be for ever*'. And he built altars for all the host of heaven in the two courts of the House of the LORD.

*<sup>1</sup>pagan idol worship sites <sup>2</sup>multitude (the stars/celestial bodies)*

And he caused his children to <sup>1</sup>pass through the fire in the Valley of the son of Hinnom; also he <sup>2</sup>observed times, and used enchantments, and used witchcraft, and dealt with a familiar spirit, and with wizards. He wrought much evil in the sight of the LORD, to provoke Him to anger.

*<sup>1</sup>be burned alive in sacrifice <sup>2</sup>possibly horoscopes*

And he set a carved image, the idol which he had made, in the House of God of which God had said to David and to Solomon his son, "*In this House and in Jerusalem, which I have chosen before all the tribes of Israel, will I put My name for ever; neither will I any more remove the foot of Israel from out of the land which I have appointed for your fathers, so that they will take heed to do all that I have commanded them, according to the whole Law and the statutes and the ordinances by the hand of Moses.*"

So Manasseh made Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem to err, and to do *worse* than the heathen whom the LORD had destroyed before the children of Israel. And the LORD spake to Manasseh and to his people; but they would not hearken. Wherefore the LORD brought upon them the captains of the host of the king of Assyria, which took Manasseh among the thorns, and bound him with fetters, and carried him to Babylon. And when he was in affliction, he besought the LORD his God, and humbled himself greatly before the God of his fathers, and prayed unto Him; and He was <sup>1</sup>intreated of him, and heard his supplication, and brought him again to Jerusalem into his kingdom. Then Manasseh knew that the LORD, He was God.

*<sup>1</sup>emotionally moved/touched and accepted*

Now after this he built a wall <sup>1</sup>without the City of David, on the west side of Gihon, in the valley, even to the entering in at the fish gate, and compassed about Ophel, and raised it up a very great height, and put captains of war in all the fenced cities of Judah.

*<sup>1</sup>outside/surrounding*

And he took away the strange gods and the idol out of the House of the LORD, and all the altars that he had built in the Mount of the House of the LORD, and in Jerusalem, and cast them out of the city. And he repaired the Altar of the LORD, and sacrificed thereon peace offerings and thank offerings, and commanded Judah to serve the LORD God of Israel.

Nevertheless the people did sacrifice still in the high places – yet, unto the LORD their God only.

Now the rest of the acts of Manasseh, and his prayer unto his God, and the words of the <sup>1</sup>seers that spake to him in the name of the LORD God of Israel, behold, they are written in the book of the kings of Israel. His prayer also, and how God was intreated of him, and all his sin, and his trespass, and the places wherein he built high places, and set up groves and graven images, before he was humbled; behold, they are written

among the sayings of the <sup>1</sup>seers.

<sup>1</sup>prophets

So Manasseh slept with his fathers, and they buried him in his own house. And Amon his son reigned in his stead.

Amon was two and twenty years old when he began to reign, and reigned two years in Jerusalem. But he did that which was evil in the sight of the LORD, as did Manasseh his father; for Amon sacrificed unto all the carved images which Manasseh his father had made, and served them; and humbled not himself before the LORD as Manasseh his father had humbled himself; but Amon trespassed more and more. And his servants conspired against him, and slew him in his own house. But the people of the land slew all them that had conspired against King Amon; and the people of the land made Josiah, his son, king in his stead.

Josiah was eight years old when he began to reign, and he reigned in Jerusalem one and thirty years. And he did that which was *right* in the sight of the LORD, and walked in the ways of David his <sup>1</sup>father, and declined neither to the right hand, nor to the left. For, <sup>2</sup>in the eighth year of his reign, while he was yet young, he began to seek after the God of David his <sup>1</sup>father. And <sup>3</sup>in the twelfth year he began to purge Judah and Jerusalem from the high places, and the groves, and the carved images, and the molten images. And they brake down the altars of Baalim in his presence; and the images, that were on high above them, he cut down; and the groves, and the carved images, and the molten images, he brake in pieces and made dust of them and <sup>4</sup>strowed it upon the graves of them that had sacrificed unto them. And he burnt the bones of the priests upon their altars, and cleansed Judah and Jerusalem. And so did he in the cities of Manasseh, and Ephraim, and Simeon, even unto Naphtali, with their <sup>5</sup>mattocks round about.

*<sup>1</sup>ancestral forefather <sup>2</sup>at 16 years old <sup>3</sup>at 20 years old <sup>4</sup>spread out as you would straw <sup>5</sup>swords*

And when he had broken down the altars and the groves, and had beaten the graven images into powder, and cut down all the idols throughout all the land of Israel, he returned to Jerusalem.

Now, <sup>1</sup>in the eighteenth year of his reign, when he had purged the land, and the House, he sent Shaphan the son of Azaliah, and Maaseiah the governor of the city, and Joah the son of Joahaz the recorder, to repair the House of the LORD his God.

*<sup>1</sup>at the age of 26*

And when they came to Hilkiyah the high priest, they delivered the money that was brought into the House of God, which the Levites that kept the doors had gathered of the hand of Manasseh and Ephraim, and of all the remnant of Israel, and of all Judah and Benjamin; and they returned to Jerusalem. And they put it in the hand of the workmen that had the oversight of the House of the LORD, and they gave it to the workmen that wrought in the House of the LORD, to repair and amend the House; even to the artificers and builders gave they it, to buy hewn stone, and timber for couplings, and to floor the houses which the kings of Judah had destroyed.

And the men did the work faithfully. And the overseers of them were Jahath and Obadiah, the Levites of the sons of Merari; and Zechariah and Meshullam, of the sons of the Kohathites, to set it forward; and other of the Levites, all that could skill of instruments of musick. Also they were over the bearers of burdens, and were overseers of all that wrought the work in any manner of service; and of the Levites there were scribes, and officers, and porters.

And when they brought out the money that was brought into the House of the LORD, Hilkiyah the priest found a Book of the Law of the LORD given by Moses. And Hilkiyah answered and said to Shaphan the scribe, "I have found the Book of the Law in the House of the LORD!" And Hilkiyah delivered the book to Shaphan. And Shaphan carried the book to the king, and brought the king word back again, saying, "All that was committed to thy servants, they do it. And they have gathered together the money that was found in the House of the LORD, and have delivered it into the hand of the overseers, and to the hand of the workmen."

Then Shaphan the scribe told the king, saying, "Hilkiah the priest hath given me a Book."

And Shaphan read it before the king. And it came to pass, when the king had heard the words of the Law, that he rent his clothes. And the king commanded Hilkiah, and Ahikam the son of Shaphan, and Abdon the son of Micah, and Shaphan the scribe, and Asaiah a servant of the king's, saying, "Go, inquire of the LORD for me and for them that are left in Israel and in Judah concerning the words of the Book that is found! For great is the wrath of the LORD that is poured out upon us, because our fathers have not kept the Word of the LORD, to do after all that is written in this Book."

And Hilkiah, and they that the king had appointed, went to Huldah the prophetess (the wife of Shallum the son of Tikvath, the son of Hasrah, keeper of the wardrobe).

Now, she dwelt in Jerusalem in the college; and they spake to her to that effect. And she answered them, *"Thus saith the LORD God of Israel – (tell ye the man that sent you to me) - Thus saith the LORD: Behold, I will bring evil upon this place and upon the inhabitants thereof, even all the curses that are written in the Book which they have read before the king of Judah; because they have forsaken Me and have burned incense unto other gods, that they might provoke Me to anger with all the works of their hands. Therefore My wrath shall be poured out upon this place, and shall not be quenched!*

*"And as for the king of Judah who sent you to inquire of the LORD, so shall ye say unto him: Thus saith the LORD God of Israel concerning the words which thou hast heard: Because thine heart was tender and thou didst humble thyself before God when thou heardest His Words against this place and against the inhabitants thereof, and humbledst thyself before Me and didst rend thy clothes and weep before Me - I have even heard thee also, saith the LORD. Behold, I will gather thee to thy fathers, and thou shalt be gathered to thy grave in peace, neither shall thine eyes see all the evil that I will bring upon this place, and upon the inhabitants of the same'."*

So they brought the king word again. Then the king sent and gathered together all the elders of Judah and Jerusalem. And the king went up into the House of the LORD, and all the men of Judah, and the inhabitants of Jerusalem, and the priests, and the Levites, and all the people, great and small. And he read in their ears all the words of the Book of the Covenant that was found in the House of the LORD.

And the king stood in his place and made a covenant before the LORD, to walk after the LORD and to keep His commandments, and His testimonies, and His statutes, with all his heart and with all his soul, to perform the words of the covenant which are written in this Book. And he caused all that were present in Jerusalem and Benjamin to stand to it. And the inhabitants of Jerusalem did according to the covenant of God, the God of their fathers.

And Josiah took away all the abominations out of all the countries that pertained to the children of Israel, and made all that were present in Israel to serve, even to serve the LORD their God. And all his days they departed not from following the LORD, the God of their fathers.

Moreover, Josiah kept a Passover unto the LORD in Jerusalem; and they killed the <sup>1</sup>Passover on the fourteenth day of the first month.

*<sup>1</sup>Passover lamb*

And he set the priests in their charges, and encouraged them to the service of the House of the LORD, and said unto the Levites that taught all Israel, which were holy unto the LORD, "Put the <sup>1</sup>Holy Ark in the House which Solomon, the son of David king of Israel, did build. It shall not be a burden upon your shoulders; serve now the LORD your God and His people Israel, and prepare yourselves by the Houses of your fathers, after your courses, according to the writing of David king of Israel, and according to the writing of Solomon his son. And stand in the Holy Place according to the divisions of the families of the fathers of your brethren the people, and after the division of the families of the Levites. So kill the Passover, and sanctify yourselves, and

prepare your brethren, that they may do according to the Word of the LORD by the hand of Moses.”

*<sup>1</sup>Ark of the Covenant*

And Josiah gave to the people, of the flock, lambs and kids, all for the Passover offerings, for all that were present, to the number of thirty thousand, and three thousand bullocks. These were of the king's substance. And his princes gave willingly unto the people, to the priests, and to the Levites. Hilkiah and Zechariah and Jehiel, rulers of the House of God, gave unto the priests for the Passover offerings two thousand and six hundred small cattle, and three hundred oxen.

Conaniah also, and Shemaiah and Nethaneel, his brethren, and Hashabiah and Jeiel and Jozabad, chief of the Levites, gave unto the Levites for Passover offerings five thousand small cattle, and five hundred oxen.

So the service was prepared, and the priests stood in their place, and the Levites in their courses, according to the king's commandment. And they killed the Passover, and the priests sprinkled the blood from their hands, and the Levites flayed them. And they removed the burnt offerings, that they might give according to the divisions of the families of the people, to offer unto the LORD, as it is written in the Book of Moses. And so did they with the oxen. And they roasted the Passover with fire according to the ordinance; but the other holy offerings <sup>1</sup>sod they in pots, and in caldrons, and in pans, and divided them speedily among all the people.

*<sup>1</sup>"to soak" - boiled*

And afterward they made ready for themselves and for the priests, because the priests, the sons of Aaron, were busied in offering of burnt offerings and the fat until night. Therefore the Levites prepared for themselves *and* for the priests, the sons of Aaron.

And the singers (the sons of Asaph) were in their place according to the commandment of David and Asaph and Heman and Jeduthun the king's seer. And the porters waited at every gate <sup>1</sup>they might not depart from their service; for their brethren the Levites <sup>2</sup>prepared for them.

*<sup>1</sup>so that they <sup>2</sup>prepared a Passover meal*

So, all the service of the LORD was prepared the same day to keep the Passover and to offer burnt offerings upon the Altar of the LORD according to the commandment of King Josiah. And the children of Israel that were present kept the Passover at that time and the Feast of Unleavened Bread seven days. And there was no passover like to that kept in Israel <sup>1</sup>from the days of Samuel the prophet; neither did all the kings of Israel keep such a Passover as Josiah kept, and the priests, and the Levites, and all Judah and Israel that were present, and the inhabitants of Jerusalem. <sup>2</sup>In the eighteenth year of the reign of Josiah was this Passover kept.

*<sup>1</sup>since <sup>2</sup>at the age of 26*

After all this, when Josiah had prepared the Temple, Necho king of Egypt came up to fight against Carchemish <sup>1</sup>by Euphrates; and Josiah went out against him.

*<sup>1</sup>by the Euphrates River*

But <sup>1</sup>he sent ambassadors to <sup>2</sup>him, saying, “What have I to do with thee, thou king of Judah? I come not against *thee* this day, but against the House wherewith I have war. For God commanded me to make haste. <sup>3</sup>Forbear thee from meddling with God who is with me, that He destroy thee not.”

*<sup>1</sup>King Necho <sup>2</sup>King Josiah <sup>3</sup>Withdraw/back off/withhold yourself*

Nevertheless Josiah would not turn his face from him, but disguised himself that he might fight with him, and hearkened not unto the words of Necho from the mouth of God, and came to fight in the Valley of <sup>1</sup>Megiddo.

*<sup>1</sup>Armagedon/harMegiddon*

And the archers shot at king Josiah; and the king said to his servants, “Have me away; for I am sore wounded”

His servants therefore took him out of that chariot, and put him in the second chariot that he had; and they brought him to Jerusalem, and he died, and was buried in one of the sepulchres of his fathers. And all Judah and Jerusalem mourned for Josiah. And Jeremiah lamented for Josiah; and all the singing men and the singing women spake of Josiah in their lamentations to this day, and made them an ordinance in Israel; and, behold, they are written in <sup>1</sup>the Lamentations. *<sup>1</sup>Jeremiah's Book of Lamentations*

Now the rest of the acts of Josiah, and his goodness according to that which was written in the Law of the LORD, and his deeds, first and last, behold, they are written in the book of the kings of Israel and Judah.

Then the people of the land took Jehoahaz, the son of Josiah, and made him king in his father's stead in Jerusalem. Jehoahaz was twenty and three years old when he began to reign, and he reigned three months in Jerusalem. And the king of Egypt put him down at Jerusalem, and condemned the land in an hundred talents of silver and a talent of gold.

And the king of Egypt made Eliakim his brother king over Judah and Jerusalem, and <sup>1</sup>turned his name to Jehoiakim. And Necho took Jehoahaz his brother, and carried him to Egypt. *<sup>1</sup>changed*

Jehoiakim was twenty and five years old when he began to reign, and he reigned eleven years in Jerusalem; and he did that which was evil in the sight of the LORD his God. Against him came up <sup>1</sup>Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, and bound him in fetters, to carry him to Babylon. *<sup>1</sup>pronounced Ne-boo-khad-nez-zar*

Nebuchadnezzar also carried of the vessels of the House of the LORD to Babylon, and put them in his temple at Babylon.

Now the rest of the acts of Jehoiakim, and his abominations which he did, and that which was found in him, behold, they are written in the book of the kings of Israel and Judah. And Jehoiachin, his son, reigned in his stead.

Jehoiachin was eight years old when he began to reign, and he reigned three months and ten days in Jerusalem; and he did that which was evil in the sight of the LORD.

And when the year was expired, king Nebuchadnezzar sent and brought him to Babylon with the goodly vessels of the House of the LORD, and made Zedekiah his brother king over Judah and Jerusalem.

Zedekiah was one and twenty years old when he began to reign, and reigned eleven years in Jerusalem. And he did that which was evil in the sight of the LORD his God, and humbled not himself before Jeremiah the prophet speaking from the mouth of the LORD.

And he also rebelled against King Nebuchadnezzar, who had made him <sup>1</sup>swear by God; but he stiffened his neck and hardened his heart from turning unto the LORD God of Israel. *<sup>1</sup>swear loyalty*

Moreover, all the chief of the priests and the people transgressed very much after all the abominations of the heathen; and polluted the House of the LORD which He had <sup>1</sup>hallowed in Jerusalem. *<sup>1</sup>made holy/sacred/sanctified*

And The LORD God of their fathers sent to them by His messengers, rising up <sup>1</sup>betimes and sending, because He had compassion on His people and on His dwelling place. But they mocked the messengers of God and despised His Words and misused His prophets until the wrath of the LORD arose against His people till <sup>2</sup>there was no remedy. *<sup>1</sup>sending them again and again/repeatedly <sup>2</sup>they were incurably beyond being helped or rescued*

Therefore He brought upon them the king of the <sup>1</sup>Chaldees who slew their young men with the sword in the House of their Sanctuary, and had no compassion upon young man or maiden, old man, or him that stooped

for age - He gave them *all* into his hand. And all the vessels of the House of God, great and small, and the treasures of the House of the LORD, and the treasures of the king, and of his princes - all these he brought to Babylon. And they burnt the House of God, and brake down the wall of Jerusalem, and burnt all the palaces thereof with fire, and destroyed all the goodly vessels thereof! <sup>1</sup>NOTE: the original homeland of Abraham and Sarah

And them that had escaped from the sword carried he away to Babylon where they were servants to him and his sons until the reign of the kingdom of Persia, to fulfil the Word of the LORD by the mouth of Jeremiah, <sup>1</sup>until the land had enjoyed her Sabbaths - for as long as she lay desolate she kept Sabbath, to fulfil <sup>2</sup>threescore and ten years.

<sup>1</sup>the Law of God required that the land must have a year-long Sabbath every seven years, with nothing harvested <sup>2</sup>70 years, to make up for the 70 Sabbath years that the land was deprived of

Now, in the first year of Cyrus king of Persia (that the Word of the LORD spoken by the mouth of Jeremiah might be accomplished) the LORD stirred up the spirit of Cyrus king of Persia that he made a proclamation throughout all his kingdom, and put it also in writing, saying, "Thus saith Cyrus king of Persia: All the kingdoms of the earth hath the LORD God of heaven given me; and He hath charged me to build Him an House in Jerusalem, which is in Judah. Who is there among you of all His people? The LORD his God be with him, and let him go up...."

<sup>1</sup>Now, in the first year of Cyrus king of Persia (that the Word of the LORD spoken by the mouth of Jeremiah might be accomplished), the LORD stirred up the spirit of Cyrus king of Persia, that he made a proclamation throughout all his kingdom, and put it also in writing, saying, "Thus saith Cyrus king of Persia: All the kingdoms of the earth hath the LORD God of heaven given me; and He hath charged me to build Him an House in Jerusalem, which is in Judah. Who is there among you of all His people? The LORD his God be with him, and let him go up to Jerusalem, which is in Judah, and build the House of the LORD God of Israel (He is the God!) which is in Jerusalem. And whosoever remaineth in any place where he sojourneth, let the men of his place help him with silver, and with gold, and with goods, and with beasts, beside the freewill offering for the House of God that is in Jerusalem."

<sup>1</sup>NOTE: This repeated paragraph is **not** an error. The previous paragraph was the last words of the 2<sup>nd</sup> Book of Chronicles. But the repeated paragraph here is the beginning of the Book of Ezra, who picked up and continued the narrative where 2<sup>nd</sup> Chronicles ended by command of the Spirit of the Lord.

Then rose up the chief of the fathers of Judah and Benjamin, and the priests, and the Levites, with all them whose spirit God had raised, to go up to build the House of the LORD which is in Jerusalem. And all they that were about them strengthened their hands with vessels of silver, with gold, with goods, and with beasts, and with precious things, beside all that was willingly offered.

Also, Cyrus the king brought forth the vessels of the House of the LORD which Nebuchadnezzar had brought forth out of Jerusalem and had put them in the house of his gods - even *those* did Cyrus king of Persia bring forth by the hand of Mithredath the treasurer, and numbered them unto Sheshbazzar, the prince of Judah.

And this is the number of them:

- thirty chargers of gold,
- a thousand chargers of silver,
- nine and twenty knives,
- thirty basons of gold,
- silver basons of a second sort, four hundred and ten,
- and other vessels, a thousand.

All the vessels of gold and of silver were five thousand and four hundred. All these did Sheshbazzar bring up with them of the captivity that were brought up from Babylon unto Jerusalem.

Now these are the children of the province that went up out of the captivity, of those which had been carried away, whom Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon had carried away unto Babylon, and came again unto Jerusalem and Judah, every one unto his city which came with Zerubbabel:

- Jeshua,
- Nehemiah,
- Seraiah,
- Reelaiah,
- Mordecai,
- Bilshan,
- Mispar,
- Bigvai,
- Rehum,
- Baanah.

The number of the men of the people of Israel:

- The children of Parosh, two thousand an hundred seventy and two.
- The children of Shephatiah, three hundred seventy and two.
- The children of Arah, seven hundred seventy and five.
- The children of Pahath-moab of the children of Jeshua and Joab, two thousand eight hundred and twelve.
- The children of Elam, a thousand two hundred fifty and four.
- The children of Zattu, nine hundred forty and five.
- The children of Zaccai, seven hundred and threescore.
- The children of Bani, six hundred forty and two.
- The children of Bebai, six hundred twenty and three.
- The children of Azgad, a thousand two hundred twenty and two.
- The children of Adonikam, six hundred sixty and six.
- The children of Bigvai, two thousand fifty and six.
- The children of Adin, four hundred fifty and four.
- The children of Ater of Hezekiah, ninety and eight.
- The children of Bezai, three hundred twenty and three.
- The children of Jorah, an hundred and twelve.
- The children of Hashum, two hundred twenty and three.
- The children of Gibbar, ninety and five.
- The children of Beth-lehem, an hundred twenty and three.
- The men of Netophah, fifty and six.
- The men of Anathoth, an hundred twenty and eight.
- The children of Azmaveth, forty and two.
- The children of Kirjath-arim, Chephirah, and Beeroth, seven hundred and forty and three.
- The children of Ramah and Geba, six hundred twenty and one.
- The men of Michmas, an hundred twenty and two.
- The men of Beth-el and Ai, two hundred twenty and three.
- The children of Nebo, fifty and two.
- The children of Magbish, an hundred fifty and six.
- The children of the other Elam, a thousand two hundred fifty and four.
- The children of Harim, three hundred and twenty.
- The children of Lod, Hadid, and Ono, seven hundred twenty and five.
- The children of Jericho, three hundred forty and five.
- The children of Senaah, three thousand and six hundred and thirty.

The priests:

- The children of Jedaiah of the house of Jeshua, nine hundred seventy and three.
- The children of Immer, a thousand fifty and two.
- The children of Pashur, a thousand two hundred forty and seven.
- The children of Harim, a thousand and seventeen.

The Levites:

- The children of Jeshua and Kadmiel of the children of Hodaviah, seventy and four.

The singers:

- The children of Asaph, an hundred twenty and eight.

The children of the porters:

- The children of Shallum,
- The children of Ater,
- The children of Talmon,
- The children of Akkub,
- The children of Hatita,
- The children of Shobai - in all, an hundred thirty and nine.

The Nethinims:

- The children of Ziha,
- The children of Hasupha,
- The children of Tabbaoth,
- The children of Keros,
- The children of Siaha,
- The children of Padon,
- The children of Lebanah,
- The children of Hagabah,
- The children of Akkub,
- The children of Hagab,
- The children of Shalmai,
- The children of Hanan,
- The children of Giddel,
- The children of Gahar,
- The children of Reaiah,
- The children of Rezin,
- The children of Nekoda,
- The children of Gazzam,
- The children of Uzza,
- The children of Paseah,
- The children of Besai,
- The children of Asnah,
- The children of Mehunim,
- The children of Nephusim,
- The children of Bakbuk,
- The children of Hakupha,
- The children of Harhur,
- The children of Bazluth,
- The children of Mehida,

- The children of Harsha,
- The children of Barkos,
- The children of Sisera,
- The children of Thamah,
- The children of Neziah,
- The children of Hatipha.

The children of Solomon's servants:

- The children of Sotai,
- The children of Sophereth,
- The children of Peruda,
- The children of Jaalah,
- The children of Darkon,
- The children of Giddel,
- The children of Shephatiah,
- The children of Hattil,
- The children of Pochereth of Zebaim,
- The children of Ami.

All the Nethinims, and the children of Solomon's servants, were three hundred ninety and two.

And these were they which went up from Tel-melah, Tel-harsa, Cherub, Addan, and Immer (but they could not shew their father's House, and their seed, whether they were of Israel): *<sup>1</sup>prove their lineage*

- The children of Delaiah,
- The children of Tobiah,
- The children of Nekoda - six hundred fifty and two.

And of the children of the priests:

- The children of Habaiah,
- The children of Koz,
- The children of Barzillai (which took a wife of the daughters of Barzillai the Gileadite, and was called after their name).

These sought their register among those that were reckoned by genealogy, but they were not found; therefore were they, as polluted, put from the priesthood. And the Tirshatha said unto them that they should not eat of the most holy things, till there stood up a priest with <sup>1</sup>Urim and with Thummim.

*<sup>1</sup>two precious stones upon the vesture of the high priest representing "yes" and "no", which glowed by the Spirit of God for all the people to see, to indicate a yes or no answer to a question put to God.*

The whole congregation together was <sup>1</sup>forty and two thousand three hundred and threescore (beside their servants and their maids, of whom there were seven thousand three hundred thirty and seven; and there were among them two hundred singing men and singing women). *<sup>1</sup>42,360*

Their horses were seven hundred thirty and six. Their mules - two hundred forty and five. Their camels - four hundred thirty and five. Their asses - six thousand seven hundred and twenty.

And some of the chief of the fathers, when they came to the House of the LORD which is at Jerusalem, offered freely for the House of God to set it up in his place. They gave after their ability unto the treasure of the work <sup>1</sup>threescore and one thousand <sup>2</sup>drams of gold, and five thousand pound of silver, and one hundred priests' garments. *<sup>1</sup>61,000 <sup>2</sup>a dram is approximately 4 grams or 0.141095 ounces X 61,000 = 8,607 pounds of gold*

So the priests, and the Levites, and some of the people, and the singers, and the porters, and the Nethinims, dwelt in their cities, and all Israel in their cities. And when the seventh month was come, and the children of

Israel were in the cities, the people gathered themselves together as one man to Jerusalem. Then stood up Jeshua the son of Jozadak, and his brethren the priests, and Zerubbabel the son of Shealtiel, and his brethren, and builded the Altar of the God of Israel to offer burnt offerings thereon as it is written in the Law of Moses the man of God.

And they set the Altar upon his bases (for fear was upon them because of the people of those countries), and they offered burnt offerings thereon unto the LORD, even burnt offerings morning and evening.

They kept also the Feast of Tabernacles (as it is written) and offered the daily burnt offerings by number according to the custom, as the duty of every day required. And, afterward, offered the continual burnt offering, both of the new moons, and of all the set feasts of the LORD that were consecrated, and of every one that willingly offered a freewill offering unto the LORD. From the first day of the seventh month began they to offer burnt offerings unto the LORD. But the foundation of the Temple of the LORD was not yet laid.

They gave money also unto the masons and to the carpenters; and meat, and drink, and oil, unto them of Zidon, and to them of Tyre, to bring cedar trees from Lebanon to the sea of Joppa, according to the grant that they had of Cyrus king of Persia.

Now, in the second year of their coming unto the House of God at Jerusalem, in the second month, began Zerubbabel the son of Shealtiel, and Jeshua the son of Jozadak, and the remnant of their brethren the priests and the Levites, and all they that were come out of the captivity unto Jerusalem; and appointed the Levites, from twenty years old and upward, to set forward the work of the House of the LORD.

Then stood Jeshua with his sons and his brethren, Kadmiel and his sons, the sons of Judah, together, to set forward the workmen in the House of God; the sons of Henadad, with their sons and their brethren the Levites. And when the builders laid the foundation of the Temple of the LORD, they set the priests in their apparel with trumpets, and the Levites the sons of Asaph with cymbals, to praise the LORD after the ordinance of David king of Israel. And they sang together by course in praising and giving thanks unto the LORD, because He is good, for His mercy endureth for ever toward Israel. And all the people shouted with a great shout when they praised the LORD, because the foundation of the House of the LORD was laid. But many of the priests and Levites and chief of the fathers (who were ancient men that had seen the first House), when the foundation of this House was laid before their eyes, wept with a loud voice; and many shouted aloud for joy so that the people could not discern the noise of the shout of joy from the noise of the weeping of the people - for the people shouted with a loud shout, and the noise was heard afar off.

Now, when the adversaries of Judah and Benjamin heard that the children of the captivity builded the Temple unto the LORD God of Israel, then they came to Zerubbabel and to the chief of the fathers and said unto them, "Let us build with you. For we seek your God as ye do, and we do sacrifice unto Him since the days of Esar-haddon, king of Assur, which brought us up hither."

## RULERS OF PERSIA

1. Phraortes
2. Madea
3. Cyaxares
4. Astyages
  
5. Cyrus II The Great
6. Cambyses
7. Bardiya Pharaoh Tanyoxarces
8. Darius I
9. Xerxes I [Ahasuerus?]
10. Artaxerxes I
11. Xerxes II Artaxerxes
12. Sogdianus
13. Darius II Ochus
14. Artaxerxes II Arsaces
15. Artaxerxes III Ochus
16. Artaxerxes IV
17. Darius III
18. Artaxerxes V
  
19. Alexander the Great
20. Philip Arrhidaeus
21. Alexander II Egus
22. Perdicas
23. Peithon
24. Arrhidaeus
25. Antipater
26. Polysperchon
27. Olympias
28. Antigonus Monophthalmus
  
29. Seleucus I Nicator
30. Antiochus I Soter
31. Antiochus II Theos
32. Seleucus II Callinicus
33. Seleucus III Soter Ceraunus
34. Antiochus III Megas
35. Seleucus IV Philopator
36. Antiochus IV Epiphanes
37. Antiochus V Eupator
38. Demetrius I Soter
39. Alexander III Balas Theopator
40. Demetrius II Nicator
41. Antiochus VII Euergetes Sidetes

But Zerubbabel and Jeshua and the rest of the chief of the fathers of Israel said unto them, "Ye have nothing to do with us to build an House unto our God; but we ourselves together will build unto the LORD God of Israel - as King Cyrus, the King of Persia, hath commanded us."

Then the people of the land weakened the hands of the people of Judah and troubled them in building and hired counsellors against them to frustrate their purpose, all the days of Cyrus king of Persia, even <sup>1</sup>until the reign of Darius king of Persia.

*<sup>1</sup>Cyrus the Great died in 530 BC and Darius I began to reign 8 years later, in 522 BC*

And in the reign of <sup>1</sup>Ahasuerus, in the beginning of his reign, wrote they unto him an accusation against the inhabitants of Judah and Jerusalem.

*<sup>1</sup>believed to be King Xerxes I (possible husband of Esther) who ruled after Darius I*

And in the days of <sup>1</sup>Artaxerxes wrote Bishlam, Mithredath, Tabeel, and the rest of their companions, unto Artaxerxes king of Persia; and the writing of the letter was written in the Syrian tongue and interpreted in the Syrian tongue. Rehum the chancellor and Shimshai the scribe wrote a letter against Jerusalem to Artaxerxes the king in this sort.

*<sup>1</sup>Artaxerxes I ruled after Xerxes I*

Then wrote Rehum the chancellor, and Shimshai the scribe, and the rest of their companions - the Dinaites, the Apharsathchites, the Tarpelites, the Apharsites, the Archevites, the Babylonians, the Susanchites, the Dehavites, and the Elamites, and the rest of the nations whom the great and noble Asnappar brought over, and set in the cities of Samaria, and the rest that are on this side the river, and at such a time. This is the copy of the letter that they sent unto him, even unto Artaxerxes the king:

"Thy servants the men on this side the river, and at such a time:

Be it known unto the king that the Jews which came up from thee to us are come unto Jerusalem, building the rebellious and the bad city, and have set up the walls thereof, and joined the foundations.

Be it known now unto the king that if this city be builded and the walls set up again, then will they not pay toll, tribute, and custom, and so thou shalt endamage the revenue of the kings.

Now, because we have <sup>1</sup>maintenance from the king's palace and it was not meet for us to see the king's dishonour, therefore have we sent and certified the king that search may be made in the book of the records of thy fathers. So shalt thou find in the book of the records and know that this city is a rebellious city, and hurtful unto

kings and provinces, and that they have moved sedition within the same of old time (*for* which cause was this city destroyed). We certify the king that if this city be builded again and the walls thereof set up, by this means thou shalt have no portion on this side the river."

*<sup>1</sup>a budget*

Then sent the king an answer unto Rehum the chancellor, and to Shimshai the scribe, and to the rest of their companions that dwell in Samaria, and unto the rest beyond the river:

“Peace, and at such a time:

The letter which ye sent unto us hath been plainly read before me. And I commanded, and search hath been made, and it is found that this city of old time *hath* made insurrection against kings, and that rebellion and sedition have been made therein.

There have been mighty kings also over Jerusalem, which have ruled over all countries beyond the river; and toll, tribute, and custom, was paid unto them. Give ye now commandment to cause these men to cease, and that this city be not builded, until another commandment shall be given from me.

Take heed now that ye fail not to do this. Why should damage grow to the hurt of the kings?”

Now, when the copy of King Artaxerxes’ letter was read before Rehum, and Shimshai the scribe, and their companions, they went up in haste to Jerusalem unto the Jews, and made them to cease by force and power. Then ceased the work of the House of God which is at Jerusalem. So it ceased unto the second year of the reign of Darius king of Persia.

Then the prophets, Haggai the prophet, and Zechariah the son of Iddo, prophesied unto the Jews that were in Judah and Jerusalem in the name of the God of Israel, even unto them.

Then rose up Zerubbabel the son of Shealtiel, and Jeshua the son of Jozadak, and began to build the House of God which is at Jerusalem; and with them were the prophets of God helping them.

At the same time came to them Tatnai, governor on this side the river, and Shethar-boznai, and their companions, and said thus unto them, “Who hath commanded you to build this House, and to make up this wall?!”

Then said we unto them after this manner, “What are the names of the men that make this building?”

But the eye of their God was upon the elders of the Jews, that they could not cause them to cease, till the matter came to <sup>1</sup>Darius; and then they returned answer by letter concerning this matter. The copy of the letter that Tatnai, governor on this side the river, and Shethar-boznai, and his companions the Apharsachites which were on this side the river, sent unto <sup>1</sup>Darius the king.

*<sup>1</sup>possibly King Darius II which reigned two years after Artaxerxes I*

They sent a letter unto him, wherein was written thus:

“Unto Darius The King all peace:

Be it known unto the king that we went into the province of Judea, to the House of the Great God, which is builded with great stones, and timber is laid in the walls, and this work goeth fast on, and prospereth in their hands.

Then asked we those elders and said unto them thus, ‘*Who commanded you to build this House and to make up these walls?!*’ We asked their names also, to certify thee, that we might write the names of the men that were the chief of them.

And thus they returned us answer, saying, ‘*We are the servants of the God of heaven and earth and build the House that was builded these many years ago, which a great king of Israel builded and set up. But, after that our fathers had provoked the God of heaven unto wrath, He gave them into the hand of Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon, the Chaldean, who destroyed this House and carried the people away into Babylon. But in the first year of Cyrus the king of Babylon the same King Cyrus made a decree to build this House of God. And the vessels also of gold and silver of the House of God which Nebuchadnezzar took out of the Temple that was in Jerusalem and brought them into the temple of Babylon, those did Cyrus the king take out of the temple of Babylon and they were delivered unto one whose name was Sheshbazzar, whom he had made governor and said unto him: Take these vessels, go, carry them into the Temple that is in Jerusalem, and let the House of God be builded in his place.*

Then came the same Sheshbazzar and laid the foundation of the House of God which is in Jerusalem; and since that time even until now hath it been in building, and yet it is not finished.

Now, therefore, if it seem good to the king, let there be search made in the king's treasure house which is there at Babylon, whether it be so that a decree was made of Cyrus the king to build this House of God at Jerusalem, and let the king send his pleasure to us concerning this matter."

Then Darius the king made a decree, and search was made in the house of the rolls where the treasures were laid up in Babylon. And there was found at Achmetha, in the palace that is in the province of the Medes, a roll, and therein was a record thus written:

*In the first year of Cyrus the king, the same Cyrus the king made a decree concerning the House of God at Jerusalem: Let the House be builded, the place where they offered sacrifices, and let the foundations thereof be strongly laid; the height thereof threescore cubits, and the breadth thereof threescore cubits; with three rows of great stones, and a row of new timber; and let the expences be given out of the king's house. And also let the golden and silver vessels of the House of God, which Nebuchadnezzar took forth out of the Temple which is at Jerusalem and brought unto Babylon, be restored and brought again unto the Temple which is at Jerusalem, every one to his place, and place them in the House of God.*

"Now therefore, Tatnai, governor beyond the river, Shethar-boznai, and your companions the Apharsachites, which are beyond the river - be ye far from thence! Let the work of this House of God alone! Let the governor of the Jews and the elders of the Jews build this House of God in his place! Moreover I make a decree what ye shall do to the elders of these Jews for the building of this House of God: that, of the king's goods, even of the tribute beyond the river, forthwith expences be given unto these men, that they be not hindered. And that which they have need of, both young bullocks, and rams, and lambs, for the burnt offerings of the God of heaven, wheat, salt, wine, and oil, according to the appointment of the priests which are at Jerusalem, let it be given them day by day without fail; that they may offer sacrifices of sweet savours unto the God of heaven and pray for the life of the king and of his sons. Also I have made a decree, that whosoever shall alter this word, let timber be pulled down from his house, and being set up, let him be hanged thereon; and let his house be made a dunghill for this! And the God, that hath caused His name to dwell there, destroy all kings and people that shall put to their hand to alter and to destroy this House of God which is at Jerusalem.

I, Darius, have made a decree; let it be done with speed!"

Then Tatnai, governor on this side the river, Shethar-boznai, and their companions, according to that which Darius the king had sent, so they did speedily. And the elders of the Jews builded, and they prospered through the prophesying of Haggai the prophet and Zechariah the son of Iddo. And they builded, and finished it, according to the commandment of the God of Israel and according to the commandment of Cyrus and Darius and Artaxerxes king of Persia. And this House was finished on the third day of the month Adar, which was in the sixth year of the reign of Darius the king.

And the children of Israel, the priests, and the Levites, and the rest of the children of the captivity, kept the dedication of this House of God with joy and offered at the dedication of this House of God an hundred bullocks, two hundred rams, four hundred lambs; and for a sin offering for all Israel, twelve he goats, according to the number of the tribes of Israel.

And they set the priests in their divisions, and the Levites in their courses, for the service of God which is at Jerusalem, as it is written in the Book of Moses.

And the children of the captivity kept the Passover upon the fourteenth day of the first month. For the priests and the Levites were purified together, all of them were pure, and killed the Passover for all the children of the captivity, and for their brethren the priests, and for themselves.

And the children of Israel which were come again out of captivity, and all such as had separated themselves unto them from the filthiness of the heathen of the land, to seek the LORD God of Israel, did eat and kept the Feast of Unleavened Bread seven days with joy - for the LORD had made them joyful, and turned the

heart of the king of Assyria unto them to strengthen their hands in the work of the House of God - the God of Israel.

Now after these things, in the reign of Artaxerxes king of Persia, Ezra

- the son of Seraiah,
- the son of Azariah,
- the son of Hilkiah,
- the son of Shallum,
- the son of Zadok,
- the son of Ahitub,
- the son of Amariah,
- the son of Azariah,
- the son of Meraioth,
- the son of Zerahiah,
- the son of Uzzi,
- the son of Bukki,
- the son of Abishua,
- the son of Phinehas,
- the son of Eleazar,
- the son of Aaron the chief priest:

This Ezra went up from Babylon; and he was a ready scribe in the Law of Moses which the LORD God of Israel had given; and the king granted him all his request according to the hand of the LORD his God upon him.

And there went up some of the children of Israel, and of the priests, and the Levites, and the singers, and the porters, and the Nethinims, unto Jerusalem, in the seventh year of Artaxerxes the king.

And he came to Jerusalem in the fifth month, which was in the seventh year of the king. For, upon the first day of the first month began he to go up from Babylon, and on the first day of the fifth month came he to Jerusalem according to the good hand of his God upon him. For Ezra had prepared his heart to seek the Law of the LORD, and to do it, and to teach in Israel statutes and judgments.

Now, this is the copy of the letter that the king Artaxerxes gave unto Ezra the priest, the scribe, even a scribe of the words of the commandments of the LORD and of His statutes to Israel:

“Artaxerxes king of kings-

-unto Ezra the priest, a scribe of the Law of the God of heaven, perfect peace, and at such a time.

I make a decree that all they of the people of Israel and of his priests and Levites in my realm which are minded of their own freewill to go up to Jerusalem, go with thee. Forasmuch as thou art sent of the king and of his seven counsellors, to inquire concerning Judah and Jerusalem according to the Law of thy God which is in thine hand, and to carry the silver and gold which the king and his counsellors have freely offered unto the God of Israel whose habitation is in Jerusalem, and all the silver and gold that thou canst find in all the province of Babylon, with the freewill offering of the people and of the priests, offering willingly for the House of their God which is in Jerusalem; that thou mayest buy speedily with this money bullocks, rams, lambs, with their meat offerings and their drink offerings, and offer them upon the Altar of the House of your God which is in Jerusalem.

And whatsoever shall seem good to thee and to thy brethren to do with the rest of the silver and the gold, that do after the will of your God. The vessels also that are given thee for the service of the House of thy God, those deliver thou before the God of Jerusalem. And whatsoever more shall be needful for the House of thy God which thou shalt have occasion to bestow, bestow it out of the king's treasure house.

And I - even I, Artaxerxes the king - do make a decree to all the treasurers which are beyond the

river that whatsoever Ezra the priest, the scribe of the Law of the God of heaven, shall require of you, it be done speedily, unto an hundred talents of silver and to an hundred measures of whea, and to an hundred baths of wine and to an hundred baths of oil and salt without prescribing how much. Whatsoever is commanded by the God of heaven, let it be diligently done for the House of the God of heaven - for why should there be wrath against the realm of the king and his sons?

Also we certify you, that, touching any of the priests and Levites, singers, porters, Nethinims, or ministers of this House of God, it shall not be lawful to impose toll, tribute, or custom, upon them. And thou, Ezra, after the wisdom of thy God that is in thine hand, set magistrates and judges which may judge all the people that are beyond the river, all such as know the Laws of thy God; and teach ye them that know them not. And whosoever will not do the Law of thy God and the law of the king, let judgment be executed speedily upon him, whether it be unto death or to banishment or to confiscation of goods or to imprisonment.”

Blessed be the LORD God of our fathers which hath put such a thing as this in the king’s heart, to beautify the House of the LORD which is in Jerusalem; and hath extended mercy unto me before the king and his counsellors and before all the king’s mighty princes! And I was strengthened as the hand of the LORD my God was upon me, and I gathered together out of Israel chief men to go up with me.

These are now the chief of their fathers, and this is the genealogy of them that went up with me from Babylon in the reign of Artaxerxes the king.

- Of the sons of Phinehas, Gershom.
- Of the sons of Ithamar, Daniel.
- Of the sons of David, Hattush.
- Of the sons of Shechaniah of the sons of Pharosh, Zechariah (and with him were reckoned, by genealogy of the males, an hundred and fifty).
- Of the sons of Pahath-moab, Elihoenai the son of Zerachiah (and with him two hundred males).
- Of the sons of Shechaniah, the son of Jahaziel (and with him three hundred males).
- Of the sons also of Adin, Ebed the son of Jonathan (and with him fifty males).

And,

- Of the sons of Elam, Jeshaiiah the son of Athaliah (and with him seventy males).

And,

- Of the sons of Shephatiah, Zebadiah the son of Michael (and with him fourscore males).
- Of the sons of Joab, Obadiah the son of Jehiel (and with him two hundred and eighteen males).

And

- Of the sons of Shelomith, the son of Josiphiah (and with him an hundred and threescore males). And,
- Of the sons of Bebai, Zechariah the son of Bebai (and with him twenty and eight males).

And,

- Of the sons of Azgad, Johanan the son of Hakkatan (and with him an hundred and ten males).

And,

- Of the last sons of Adonikam, whose names are these:
  - Eliphelet,
  - Jeiel, and
  - Shemaiah (and with them threescore males).
- Of the sons also of Bigvai, Uthai and Zabbud (and with them seventy males).

And I gathered them together to the river that runneth to Ahava; and there abode we in tents three days. And I viewed the people and the priests, and found there none of the sons of Levi. Then sent I for Eliezer, for Ariel, for Shemaiah, and for Elnathan, and for Jarib, and for Elnathan, and for Nathan, and for Zechariah, and for Meshullam - chief men. Also for Joiarib, and for Elnathan - men of understanding. And I sent them with commandment unto Iddo the chief at the place Casiphia, and I told them what they should say unto Iddo and to his brethren the Nethinims, at the place Casiphia, that they should bring unto us ministers for the House of our God. And by the good hand of our God upon us they brought us a man of understanding of

the sons of Mahli, the son of Levi, the son of Israel; and Sherebiah with his sons and his brethren, eighteen; and Hashabiah, and with him Jeshaiiah of the sons of Merari, his brethren and their sons, twenty; also of the Nethinims whom David and the princes had appointed for the service of the Levites, two hundred and twenty Nethinims - all of them were expressed by name.

Then I proclaimed a fast there at the river of Ahava that we might afflict ourselves before our God, to seek of Him a right way for us, and for our little ones, and for all our substance. For I was ashamed to require of the king a band of soldiers and horsemen to help us against the enemy in the way, because we had spoken unto the king, saying, "The hand of our God is upon all them for good that seek Him; but His power and His wrath is against all them that forsake Him." So, we fasted and besought our God for this; and He was intreated of us.

Then I separated twelve of the chief of the priests - Sherebiah, Hashabiah, and ten of their brethren with them - and weighed unto them the silver, and the gold, and the vessels, even the offering of the House of our God which the king and his counsellors and his lords and all Israel there present had offered. I even weighed unto their hand six hundred and fifty talents of silver, and silver vessels an hundred talents, and of gold an hundred talents; also twenty basons of gold, of a thousand drams; and two vessels of fine copper, precious as gold.

And I said unto them, "Ye are holy unto the LORD. The vessels are holy also. And the silver and the gold are a freewill offering unto the LORD God of your fathers. Watch ye, and keep them, until ye weigh them before the chief of the priests and the Levites and chief of the fathers of Israel at Jerusalem, in the chambers of the House of the LORD."

So took the priests and the Levites the weight of the silver, and the gold, and the vessels, to bring them to Jerusalem unto the House of our God. Then we departed from the river of Ahava on the twelfth day of the first month to go unto Jerusalem; and the hand of our God was upon us, and He delivered us from the hand of the enemy and of such as lay in wait by the way. And we came to Jerusalem, and abode there three days.

Now, on the fourth day was the silver and the gold and the vessels weighed in the House of our God by the hand of Meremoth the son of Uriah the priest. And with him was Eleazar the son of Phinehas. And with them was Jozabad the son of Jeshua, and Noadiah the son of Binnui - Levites; by number and by weight of every one, and all the weight was written at that time.

Also, the children of those that had been carried away, which were come out of the captivity, offered burnt offerings unto the God of Israel twelve bullocks for all Israel, ninety and six rams, seventy and seven lambs, twelve he goats for a sin offering. All this was a burnt offering unto the LORD. And they delivered the king's commissions unto the king's lieutenants, and to the governors on this side the river; and they furthered the people and the House of God.

Now, when these things were done, the princes came to me, saying, "The people of Israel, and the priests, and the Levites, have not separated themselves from the people of the lands, doing according to their abominations, even of the Canaanites, the Hittites, the Perizzites, the Jebusites, the Ammonites, the Moabites, the Egyptians, and the Amorites. For they have taken of their daughters for themselves and for their son, so that the Holy Seed have mingled themselves with the people of those lands - yea, the hand of the princes and rulers hath been chief in this trespass!"

And when I heard this thing I rent my garment and my mantle, and plucked off the hair of my head and of my beard, and sat down astonished. Then were assembled unto me every one that trembled at the Words of the God of Israel because of the transgression of those that had been carried away; and I sat astonished until the evening sacrifice.

And at the evening sacrifice I arose up from my heaviness. And, having rent my garment and my mantle, I fell upon my knees and spread out my hands unto the LORD my God, and said, "O my God, I am ashamed, and blush to lift up my face to Thee, my God! For our iniquities are increased over our head, and our trespass is grown up unto the heavens! Since the days of our fathers have we been in a great trespass unto this day; and for our iniquities have we, our kings, and our priests, been delivered into the hand of the kings of the lands, to the sword, to captivity, and to a spoil, and to confusion of face, as it is this day! And now, for a little space grace hath been shewed from the LORD our God, to leave us a remnant to escape and <sup>1</sup>to give us a nail in his holy place, that our God may lighten our eyes and give us a little reviving in our bondage. For we were <sup>2</sup>bondmen; yet our God hath not forsaken us in our bondage but hath extended mercy unto us in the sight of the kings of Persia, to give us a reviving, to set up the House of our God, and to repair the desolations thereof, and to give us a wall in Judah and in Jerusalem! And now, O our God, what shall we say after *this*? For we have forsaken Thy commandments which Thou hast commanded by Thy servants the prophets, saying, *'The land, unto which ye go to possess it, is an unclean land with the filthiness of the people of the lands, with their abominations, which have filled it from one end to another with their uncleanness. Now, therefore, give not your daughters unto their sons, neither take their daughters unto your sons, nor seek their peace or their wealth for ever, that ye may be strong and eat the good of the land and leave it for an inheritance to your children for ever.'*

"And after all that is come upon us for our evil deeds and for our great trespass - seeing that Thou our God hast punished us less than our iniquities deserve and hast given us such deliverance as this - should we again break Thy commandments and join in affinity with the people of these abominations?! Wouldest not Thou be angry with us till Thou hadst consumed us so that there should be no remnant nor escaping? O LORD God of Israel! Thou art righteous! For we remain yet escaped, as it is this day. Behold, we are before Thee in our trespasses; for we cannot stand before Thee because of this!" <sup>1</sup>unmoveably anchored

Now, when Ezra had prayed, and when he had confessed, weeping and casting himself down before the House of God, there assembled unto him out of Israel a very great congregation of men and women and children - for the people wept <sup>1</sup>very sore. <sup>1</sup>with great anguish

And Shechaniah the son of Jehiel, one of the sons of Elam, answered and said unto Ezra, "We have trespassed against our God and have taken strange wives of the people of the land! Yet... now there is hope in Israel concerning this thing. Now, therefore, let us make a covenant with our God to <sup>1</sup>put away all the wives and such as are born of them, according to the counsel of my lord and of those that tremble at the commandment of our God; and let it be done according to the Law. Arise; for this matter belongeth unto thee. We also will be with thee. Be of good courage and do it." <sup>1</sup>divorce

Then arose Ezra and made the chief priests, the Levites, and all Israel, to swear that they should do according to this <sup>1</sup>word. And they <sup>2</sup>swore. <sup>1</sup>agreement <sup>2</sup>swore to it

Then Ezra rose up from before the House of God and went into the chamber of Johanan the son of Eliashib. And when he came thither he did eat no bread, nor drink water; for he mourned because of the transgression of them that had been carried away.

And they made proclamation throughout Judah and Jerusalem unto all the children of the captivity that they should gather themselves together unto Jerusalem; and that whosoever would not come within three days according to the counsel of the princes and the elders, all his <sup>1</sup>substance should be forfeited and himself separated from the congregation of those that had been carried away. <sup>1</sup>possessions

Then all the men of Judah and Benjamin gathered themselves together unto Jerusalem within three days. It was the ninth month, on the twentieth day of the month; and all the people sat in the street of the House of God, trembling because of this matter, and for the great rain.

And Ezra the priest stood up and said unto them, "Ye have transgressed and have taken strange wives to increase the trespass of Israel! Now, therefore, make confession unto the LORD God of your fathers and do His pleasure, and separate yourselves from the people of the land and from the strange wives!"

Then all the congregation answered and said with a loud voice, "As thou hast said, so must we do! But the people are many, and it is a time of much rain, and we are not able to stand without, neither is this a work of one day or two - for we are many that have transgressed in this thing! Let now our rulers of all the congregation stand, and let all them which have taken strange wives in our cities come at appointed times, and with them the elders of every city, and the judges thereof, until the fierce wrath of our God for this matter be turned from us."

Only Jonathan (the son of Asahel) and Jahaziah (the son of Tikvah) were employed about this matter; and Meshullam and Shabbethai the Levite helped them. And the children of the captivity did so. And Ezra the priest, with certain chief of the fathers, after the House of their fathers, and all of them by their names, were separated, and sat down in the first day of the tenth month to examine the matter. And they <sup>1</sup>made an end with all the men that had taken strange wives by the first day of the first month. *<sup>1</sup>finally finished*

And among the sons of the priests there were found that had taken strange wives; namely, of the sons of Jeshua the son of Jozadak and his brethren:

- Maaseiah, and
- Eliezer, and
- Jarib, and
- Gedaliah.

And they gave their <sup>1</sup>hands that they would put away their wives; and being guilty, they offered a ram of the flock for their trespass. *<sup>1</sup>to swear, as raising your hand in court*

And of the sons of Immer:

- Hanani and
- Zebadiah.

And of the sons of Harim:

- Maaseiah, and
- Elijah,
- and Shemaiah, and
- Jehiel, and
- Uzziah.

And of the sons of Pashur:

- Elioenai,
- Maaseiah,
- Ishmael,
- Nethaneel,
- Jozabad, and
- Elasa.

Also of the Levites:

- Jozabad, and
- Shimei, and
- Kelaiah (the same is Kelita),
- Pethahiah,
- Judah, and
- Eliezer.

Of the singers also:

- Eliashib.

And of the porters:

- Shallum, and
- Telem, and
- Uri.

Moreover, of Israel...

Of the sons of Parosh:

- Ramiah, and
- Jeziah, and
- Malchiah, and
- Miamin, and
- Eleazar, and
- Malchijah, and
- Benaiah.

And of the sons of Elam:

- Mattaniah,
- Zechariah, and
- Jehiel, and
- Abdi, and
- Jeremoth, and
- Eliah.

And of the sons of Zattu:

- Elioenai,
- Eliashib,
- Mattaniah, and
- Jeremoth, and
- Zabad, and
- Aziza.

Of the sons also of Bebai:

- Jehohanan,
- Hananiah,
- Zabbai, and
- Athlai.

And of the sons of Bani:

- Meshullam,
- Malluch, and
- Adaiah,
- Jashub, and
- Sheal, and
- Ramoth.

And of the sons of Pahath-moab:

- Adna, and
- Chelal,
- Benaiah,
- Maaseiah,
- Mattaniah,
- Bezaleel, and
- Binnui, and
- Manasseh.

And of the sons of Harim:

- Eliezer,
- Ishijah,
- Malchiah,
- Shemaiah,
- Shimeon,
- Benjamin,
- Malluch, and
- Shemariah.

Of the sons of Hashum:

- Mattenai,
- Mattathah,
- Zabad,
- Eliphelet,
- Jeremai,
- Manasseh, and
- Shimei.

Of the sons of Bani:

- Maadai,
- Amram, and
- Uel,
- Benaiah,
- Bedeiah,
- Chelluh,
- Vaniah,
- Meremoth,
- Eliashib,
- Mattaniah,
- Mattenai, and
- Jaasau, and
- Bani, and
- Binnui,
- Shimei, and
- Shelemiah, and
- Nathan, and
- Adaiah,
- Machnadebai,
- Shashai,
- Sharai,
- Azareel, and
- Shelemiah,
- Shemariah,
- Shallum,
- Amariah, and
- Joseph.

Of the sons of Nebo:

- Jeiel,
- Mattithiah,
- Zabad,

- Zebina,
- Jadau, and
- Joel,
- Benaiah.

All these had taken strange wives; and some of them had wives by whom they had children.

The words of Nehemiah the son of Hachaliah.

And it came to pass in the month Chisleu, in the twentieth year, as I was in <sup>1</sup>Shushan the palace, that Hanani, one of my brethren, came, he and certain men of Judah; and I asked them concerning the Jews that had escaped, which were left of the captivity, and concerning Jerusalem. <sup>1</sup>Palace of Susa, capital of Persia

And they said unto me, "The Remnant that are left of the captivity there in the province are in great affliction and reproach; the wall of Jerusalem also is broken down, and the gates thereof are burned with fire."

And it came to pass, when I heard these words, that I sat down and wept and mourned certain days and fasted and prayed before the God of heaven, and said, "I beseech thee, O LORD God of heaven, the great and terrible God that keepeth covenant and mercy for them that love Him and observe His commandments! Let Thine ear now be attentive, and Thine eyes open, that Thou mayest hear the prayer of Thy servant which I pray before Thee now, day and night, for the children of Israel Thy servants, and confess the sins of the children of Israel which we have sinned against Thee - both I and my father's House have sinned! We have dealt very corruptly against Thee and have not kept the commandments, nor the statutes, nor the judgments, which Thou commandedst Thy servant Moses. Remember (I beseech Thee!) the Word that Thou commandedst Thy servant Moses, saying, *'If ye transgress, I will scatter you abroad among the nations; but if ye turn unto Me and keep My commandments and do them - though there were of you cast out unto the uttermost part of the heaven - yet will I gather them from thence and will bring them unto the place that I have chosen to set My name there.'*

"Now, these are Thy servants and Thy people whom Thou hast redeemed by Thy great power and by Thy strong hand. O Lord, I beseech Thee, let now Thine ear be attentive to the prayer of Thy servant, and to the prayer of Thy servants who *desire* to fear Thy name! And prosper (I pray Thee!) Thy servant this day, and grant Him mercy in the sight of this <sup>1</sup>man!" (For I was the king's cupbearer). <sup>1</sup>King Artaxerxes

And it came to pass, in the month Nisan, in the twentieth year of Artaxerxes the king, that wine was before him; and I took up the wine and gave it unto the king. Now, I had not been beforetime sad in his presence. Wherefore the king said unto me, "Why is thy countenance sad, seeing thou art not sick? This is nothing else but sorrow of heart!"

Then I was very sore afraid and said unto the king, "Let the king live for ever! Why should not my countenance be sad, when the city - the place of my fathers' sepulchres - <sup>1</sup>lieth waste and the gates thereof are consumed with fire?" <sup>1</sup>lay wasted/destroyed/lay in ruins

Then the king said unto me, "For what dost thou make request?"

So I prayed to the God of heaven. And I said unto the king, "If it please the king, and if thy servant have found favour in thy sight, that thou wouldest send me unto Judah, unto the city of my fathers' sepulchres, that I may build it."

And the king said unto me (the queen also sitting by him), "For how long shall thy journey be? And when

wilt thou return?" So it pleased the king to send me; and I <sup>1</sup>set him a time.

*<sup>1</sup>gave him a timeframe*

Moreover I said unto the king, "If it please the king, let letters be given me to the governors beyond the river, that they may convey me over till I come into Judah; and a letter unto Asaph, the Keeper of the King's Forest, that he may give me timber to make beams for the gates of the palace which appertained to the House, and for the wall of the city, and for the house that I shall enter into."

And the king granted me, according to the good hand of my God upon me. Then I came to the governors beyond the river and gave them the king's letters.

Now, the king had sent captains of the army and horsemen with me. When Sanballat the Horonite, and Tobiah the servant, the Ammonite, heard of it, it grieved them exceedingly that there was come a man to seek the welfare of the children of Israel.

So I came to Jerusalem and was there three days. And I arose in the night, I and some few men with me; neither told I any man what my God had put in my heart to do at Jerusalem, neither was there any beast with me, save the beast that I rode upon. And I went out by night by the gate of the valley, even before the dragon well and to the dung port, and viewed the walls of Jerusalem which were broken down and the gates thereof were consumed with fire. Then I went on to the gate of the fountain and to the king's pool; but there was no place for the beast that was under me to pass. Then went I up in the night by the brook and viewed the wall, and turned back and entered by the gate of the valley, and so returned. And the rulers knew not whither I went or what I did; neither had I as yet told it to the Jews, nor to the priests, nor to the nobles, nor to the rulers, nor to the rest that did the work.

Then said I unto them, "Ye see the distress that we are in, how Jerusalem lieth waste and the gates thereof are burned with fire. Come, and let us build up the wall of Jerusalem, that we be no more a reproach."

Then I told them of the hand of my God which was good upon me, as also the king's words that he had spoken unto me. And they said, "Let us rise up and build!" So they strengthened their hands for this good work.

But when Sanballat the Horonite, and Tobiah the servant, the Ammonite, and Geshem the Arabian, heard it, they laughed us to scorn and despised us and said, "What is this thing that ye do? Will ye rebel against the king?"

Then answered I them, and said unto them, "The God of heaven, *He* will prosper us! Therefore we His servants will arise and build - but ye have no portion, nor right, nor memorial, in Jerusalem!"

Then Eliashib the high priest rose up with his brethren the priests, and they builded the sheep gate; they sanctified it and set up the doors of it, even unto the tower of Meah they sanctified it, unto the tower of Hananeel.

- And next unto him builded the men of Jericho.
- And next to them builded Zaccur, the son of Imri.
- But the fish gate did the sons of Hassenaah build, who also laid the beams thereof, and set up the doors thereof, the locks thereof, and the bars thereof.
- And next unto them repaired Meremoth, the son of Urijah the son of Koz.
- And next unto them repaired Meshullam, the son of Berechiah the son of Meshezabeel.
- And next unto them repaired Zadok, the son of Baana.
- And next unto them the Tekoites repaired (but their nobles put not their necks to the work of their Lord).
- Moreover the old gate repaired Jehoiada, the son of Paseah, and Meshullam, the son of Besodeiah; they laid the beams thereof, and set up the doors thereof, and the locks thereof, and the bars thereof.

- And next unto them repaired Melatiah the Gibeonite, and Jadon the Meronothite, the men of Gibeon, and of Mizpah, unto the throne of the governor on this side the river.
- Next unto him repaired Uzziel the son of Harhaiah, of the goldsmiths.
- Next unto him also repaired Hananiah, the son of one of the apothecaries, and they fortified Jerusalem unto the broad wall.
- And next unto them repaired Rephaiah, the son of Hur, the ruler of the half part of Jerusalem.
- And next unto them repaired Jedaiah, the son of Harumaph, even over against his house.
- And next unto him repaired Hattush, the son of Hashabniah.
- Malchijah, the son of Harim, and Hashub, the son of Pahath-moab, repaired the other piece, and the tower of the furnaces.
- And next unto him repaired Shallum, the son of Haloresh, the ruler of the half part of Jerusalem, he and his daughters.
- The valley gate repaired Hanun, and the inhabitants of Zanoah; they built it, and set up the doors thereof, the locks thereof, and the bars thereof, and a thousand cubits on the wall unto the dung gate.
- But the dung gate repaired Malchiah the son of Rechab, the ruler of part of Beth-haccerem; he built it, and set up the doors thereof, the locks thereof, and the bars thereof.
- But the gate of the fountain repaired Shallun the son of Col-hozeh, the ruler of part of Mizpah; he built it, and covered it, and set up the doors thereof, the locks thereof, and the bars thereof, and the wall of the pool of Siloah by the king's garden, and unto the stairs that go down from the city of David.
- After him repaired Nehemiah, the son of Azbuk, the ruler of the half part of Beth-zur, unto the place over against the sepulchres of David and to the pool that was made, and unto the house of the mighty.
- After him repaired the Levites – Rehum, the son of Bani.
- Next unto him repaired Hashabiah, the ruler of the half part of Keilah, in his part.
- After him repaired their brethren, Bavai, the son of Henadad, the ruler of the half part of Keilah.
- And next to him repaired Ezer, the son of Jeshua, the ruler of Mizpah, another piece over against the going up to the armoury at the turning of the wall.
- After him Baruch, the son of Zabbai, earnestly repaired the other piece, from the turning of the wall unto the door of the house of Eliashib the high priest.
- After him repaired Meremoth, the son of Urijah the son of Koz, another piece, from the door of the house of Eliashib even to the end of the house of Eliashib.
- And after him repaired the priests, the men of the plain.
- After him repaired Benjamin and Hashub over against their house.
- After him repaired Azariah, the son of Maaseiah the son of Ananiah, by his house.
- After him repaired Binnui, the son of Henadad, another piece, from the house of Azariah unto the turning of the wall, even unto the corner.
- Palal, the son of Uzai, over against the turning of the wall, and the tower which lieth out from the king's high house, that was by the court of the prison.
- After him Pedaiah, the son of Parosh.
- Moreover the Nethinims dwelt in Ophel, unto the place over against the water gate toward the east, and the tower that lieth out.
- After them the Tekoites repaired another piece, over against the great tower that lieth out, even unto the wall of Ophel. From above the horse gate repaired the priests, every one over against his house.
- After them repaired Zadok, the son of Immer, over against his house.
- After him repaired also Shemaiah, the son of Shechaniah, the keeper of the east gate.
- After him repaired Hananiah, the son of Shelemiah, and Hanun, the sixth son of Zalaph, another piece.
- After him repaired Meshullam, the son of Berechiah, over against his chamber.
- After him repaired Malchiah, the goldsmith's son, unto the place of the Nethinims, and of the merchants, over against the gate Miphkad, and to the going up of the corner. And between the going up of the corner unto the sheep gate repaired the goldsmiths and the merchants.

*NOTE: "over against" means "across the way from"*

But it came to pass that, when Sanballat heard that we build the wall, he was wroth and took great indignation and mocked the Jews. And he spake before his brethren and the army of Samaria, and said, "What do these feeble Jews? Will they fortify themselves? Will they sacrifice? Will they make an end in a day? Will they revive the stones out of the heaps of the rubbish which are burned?"

Now, Tobiah the Ammonite was by him, and he said, "Even that which they build, <sup>1</sup>if a fox go up he shall even break down their stone wall!"

*<sup>1</sup>if even something as small as*

Hear, O our God! For we are despised! And turn their reproach upon their own head, and give them for a prey in the land of captivity, and cover not their iniquity, and let not their sin be blotted out from before Thee - for they have provoked Thee to anger before the builders!

So built we the wall; and all the wall was joined together unto the half thereof (for the people had a mind to work). But it came to pass that, when Sanballat, and Tobiah, and the Arabians, and the Ammonites, and the Ashdodites, heard that the walls of Jerusalem were made up and that the breaches began to be stopped, then they were very wroth, and conspired all of them together to come and to fight against Jerusalem, and to hinder it. Nevertheless, we made our prayer unto our God, and set a watch against them day and night, because of them.

And Judah said, "The <sup>1</sup>strength of the bearers of burdens is decayed and there is much rubbish, so that we are not able to build the wall. And our adversaries said, '*They shall not know, neither see, till we come in the midst among them, and slay them, and cause the work to cease!*'"

*<sup>1</sup>the workers who carry away the debris are out of energy/strength and can't continue*

And it came to pass that when the Jews which dwelt by them came, they said unto us ten times, "From all places whence ye shall return unto us, <sup>1</sup>they will be upon you."

*<sup>1</sup>the enemy*

Therefore set I, in the lower places behind the wall and on the higher places, I even set the people after their families with their swords, their spears, and their bows.

And I looked, and rose up, and said unto the nobles and to the rulers and to the rest of the people, "Be not ye afraid of them! Remember the Lord, which is great and terrible; and fight for your brethren, your sons, and your daughters, your wives, and your houses!"

And it came to pass, when our enemies heard that <sup>1</sup>it was known unto us and God had brought their counsel to nought, that we returned all of us to the wall, every one unto his work.

*<sup>1</sup>we knew that they were going to attack us*

And it came to pass from that time forth, that the half of my servants wrought in the work, and the other half of them held both the spears, the shields, and the bows, and the habergeons; and the rulers were behind all the House of Judah. They which builded on the wall, and they that bare burdens, with those that laded, every one with one of his hands wrought in the work and with the other hand held a weapon. For the builders, every one had his sword girded by his side, and so builded. And he that sounded the trumpet was by me.

And I said unto the nobles and to the rulers and to the rest of the people, "The work is great and large, and we are separated upon the wall, one far from another. In what place therefore ye hear the sound of the trumpet, resort ye thither unto us. Our God shall fight for us!"

So we laboured in the work; and half of them held the spears from the rising of the morning till the stars appeared.

Likewise at the same time said I unto the people, "Let every one with his servant lodge within Jerusalem, that in the night they may be a guard to us, and labour on the day."

So neither I, nor my brethren, nor my servants, nor the men of the guard which followed me, *none* of us put off our clothes, saving that every one put them off for washing. And there was a great cry of the people and of their wives against their brethren the Jews. For there were <sup>1</sup>that said, "We, our sons, and our daughters, are many; therefore we take up corn for them, that we may eat, and live!" Some also there were <sup>1</sup>that said, "We have mortgaged our lands, vineyards, and houses, that we might buy corn, because of the <sup>2</sup>dearth!" There were also <sup>1</sup>that said, "We have borrowed money for the king's tribute, and *that* upon our lands and vineyards! Yet now our flesh is as the flesh of our brethren, our children as their children; and, lo, we bring into bondage our sons and our daughters to be servants, and some of our daughters are brought unto bondage already! Neither is it in our power to redeem them; for other men have our lands and vineyards!"

*<sup>1</sup>those who said <sup>2</sup>famine*

And I was very angry when I heard their cry and these words. Then I consulted with myself, and I rebuked the nobles, and the rulers, and said unto them, "<sup>1</sup>Ye exact usury, every one, of his brother?!"

*<sup>1</sup>You all dare to charge your own brethren interest fees for the things they mortgaged to you?*

And I set a great assembly against them. And I said unto them, "We, <sup>1</sup>after our ability, have redeemed our brethren the Jews which were sold unto the heathen; and will ye even sell your *brethren*?! Or shall they be sold unto us?!"

*<sup>1</sup>based on/according to*

Then held they their peace, and found nothing to answer. Also I said, "It is not good that ye do!! Ought ye not to walk in the fear of our God because of the reproach of the heathen our enemies?! I, likewise, and my brethren, and my servants, might exact of them money and corn. I pray you, let us leave off this usury! Restore, I pray you, to them - even *this day* - their lands, their vineyards, their oliveyards, and their houses, also the hundredth part of the money, and of the corn, the wine, and the oil, that ye exact of them!"

Then said they, "We will restore them, and will require nothing of them; so will we do as thou sayest."

Then I called the priests and took an oath of them that they should do according to this promise. Also I <sup>1</sup>shook my lap, and said, "So God shake out every man from his house and from his labour that performeth not this promise - even *thus* be he shaken out and emptied!"

*<sup>1</sup>a figure of speech, meaning that he took the front of his garments over the groin area and shook them hard*

And all the congregation said, "Amen!" and praised the LORD. And the people did according to this promise.

Moreover, from the time that I was appointed to be their governor in the land of Judah, from the twentieth year even unto the two and thirtieth year of Artaxerxes the king (that is, twelve years), I and my brethren have not eaten the bread of the governor. But the former governors that had been before me were <sup>1</sup>chargeable unto the people, and had taken of them bread and wine, beside forty shekels of silver; yea, even their servants bare rule over the people! But so did not I, because of the fear of God. *<sup>1</sup>in debt*

Yea, also I continued in the work of this wall, neither bought we any land; and all my servants were gathered thither unto the work. Moreover, there were, <sup>1</sup>at my table, an hundred and fifty of the Jews and rulers, beside those that came unto us from among the heathen that are about us.

*<sup>1</sup>people whom I gave food to out of my own supply*

Now, that which was prepared for me daily was one ox and six choice sheep; also fowls were prepared for me, and, once in ten days, store of all sorts of wine. Yet, for all this <sup>1</sup>required not I the bread of the governor, because the bondage was heavy upon this people. *<sup>1</sup>I did not need to beg for*

Think upon me, my God, for good, according to all that I have done for this people.

Now, it came to pass, when Sanballat, and Tobiah, and Geshem the Arabian, and the rest of our enemies, heard that I had builded the wall and that there was no breach left therein (though at that time I had not set up the doors upon the gates), that Sanballat and Geshem sent unto me, saying, "Come! Let us meet together in some one of the villages in the plain of Ono."

But they thought to do me mischief. And I sent messengers unto them, saying, "I am doing a great work, so that I cannot come down. Why should the work cease whilst I leave it and come down to you?"

Yet they sent unto me four times after this sort; and I answered them after the same manner. Then sent Sanballat his servant unto me in like manner the fifth time with an open letter in his hand, wherein was written, "It is reported among the heathen (and Gashmu saith it) that thou and the Jews think to rebel - for which cause thou buildest the wall that thou mayest be their king, according to these words. And thou hast also appointed prophets to preach of thee at Jerusalem, saying, '*There is a king in Judah*'. And now shall it be reported to the king according to these words. Come now, therefore, and let us take counsel together."

Then I sent unto him, saying, "There are no such things done as thou sayest, but <sup>1</sup>thou feignest them out of thine own heart."  
*<sup>1</sup>you made that up*

For they all made us afraid, saying, "Their hands shall be weakened from the work, that it be not done!"

Now therefore, O God, strengthen my hands!

Afterward I came unto the house of Shemaiah, the son of Delaiah the son of Mehetabeel, who was <sup>1</sup>shut up; and he said, "Let us meet together in the House of God within the Temple, and let us shut the doors of the Temple; for they will come to slay thee; yea, in the night will they come to slay thee."

*<sup>1</sup>shut in, probably from illness or weakness*

And I said, "Should such a man as I flee? And who is there, that, being as I am, would go into the Temple to save his life? I will *not* go in." And, lo, I perceived that God had not <sup>1</sup>sent him, but that he pronounced this prophecy against me; for Tobiah and Sanballat had hired him. Therefore was he hired, that I should be afraid, and do so, and sin, and that they might have matter for an evil report, that they might reproach me.

*<sup>1</sup>given him this warning for me*

My God, think Thou upon Tobiah and Sanballat according to these their works, and on the prophetess Noadiah, and the rest of the prophets, that would have put me in fear!

So the wall was finished in the twenty and fifth day of the month Elul, in fifty and two days. And it came to pass that, when all our enemies heard thereof and all the heathen that were about us saw these things, they were much cast down in their own eyes; for they perceived that this work was wrought of our God.

Moreover in those days the nobles of Judah sent many letters unto Tobiah, and the letters of Tobiah came unto them. For there were many in Judah sworn unto him, because he was the son in law of <sup>1</sup>Shechaniah the son of Arah; and his son Johanan had taken the daughter of <sup>1</sup>Meshullam the son of Berechiah. Also they reported his good deeds before me, and uttered my words to him. And Tobiah sent letters to put me in fear.  
*there* *<sup>1</sup>important men*

Now it came to pass, when the wall was built and I had set up the doors and the porters and the singers and the Levites were appointed, that I gave my brother Hanani and Hananiah the ruler of the palace, charge over Jerusalem; for he was a faithful man, and feared God above many. And I said unto them, "Let not the gates of Jerusalem be opened until the sun be hot; and while they stand by, let them shut the doors, and

bar them; and appoint watches of the inhabitants of Jerusalem, every one in his watch, and every one to be over against his house.”

Now, the city was large and great, but the people were few therein, and the houses were not builded. And my God put into mine heart to gather together the nobles, and the rulers, and the people, that they might be reckoned by genealogy. And I found a register of the genealogy of them which came up at the first, and found written therein, “These are the children of the province, that went up out of the captivity, of those that had been carried away, whom Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon had carried away, and came again to Jerusalem and to Judah, every one unto his city, who came with Zerubbabel, Jeshua, Nehemiah, Azariah, Raamiah, Nahamani, Mordecai, Bilshan, Mispereth, Bigvai, Nehum, Baanah. The number, I say, of the men of the people of Israel was this:

- The children of Parosh, two thousand an hundred seventy and two.
- The children of Shephatiah, three hundred seventy and two.
- The children of Arah, six hundred fifty and two.
- The children of Pahath-moab, of the children of Jeshua and Joab, two thousand and eight hundred and eighteen.
- The children of Elam, a thousand two hundred fifty and four.
- The children of Zattu, eight hundred forty and five.
- The children of Zaccai, seven hundred and threescore.
- The children of Binnui, six hundred forty and eight.
- The children of Bebai, six hundred twenty and eight.
- The children of Azgad, two thousand three hundred twenty and two.
- The children of Adonikam, six hundred threescore and seven.
- The children of Bigvai, two thousand threescore and seven.
- The children of Adin, six hundred fifty and five.
- The children of Ater of Hezekiah, ninety and eight.
- The children of Hashum, three hundred twenty and eight.
- The children of Bezai, three hundred twenty and four.
- The children of Hariph, an hundred and twelve.
- The children of Gibeon, ninety and five.
- The men of Beth-lehem and Netophah, an hundred fourscore and eight.
- The men of Anathoth, an hundred twenty and eight.
- The men of Beth-azmaveth, forty and two.
- The men of Kirjath-jearim, Chephirah, and Beeroth, seven hundred forty and three.
- The men of Ramah and Geba, six hundred twenty and one.
- The men of Michmas, an hundred and twenty and two.
- The men of Beth-el and Ai, an hundred twenty and three.
- The men of the other Nebo, fifty and two.
- The children of the other Elam, a thousand two hundred fifty and four.
- The children of Harim, three hundred and twenty.
- The children of Jericho, three hundred forty and five.
- The children of Lod, Hadid, and Ono, seven hundred twenty and one.
- The children of Senaah, three thousand nine hundred and thirty.

The priests:

- The children of Jedaiah, of the house of Jeshua, nine hundred seventy and three.
- The children of Immer, a thousand fifty and two.
- The children of Pashur, a thousand two hundred forty and seven.
- The children of Harim, a thousand and seventeen.

The Levites:

- The children of Jeshua, of Kadmiel, and of the children of Hodevah, seventy and four.

The singers:

- The children of Asaph, an hundred forty and eight.

The porters:

- The children of Shallum,
- The children of Ater,
- The children of Talmon,
- The children of Akkub,
- The children of Hatita,
- The children of Shobai - an hundred thirty and eight.

The Nethinims:

- The children of Ziha,
- The children of Hashupha,
- The children of Tabbaoth,
- The children of Keros,
- The children of Sia,
- The children of Padon,
- The children of Lebana,
- The children of Hagaba,
- The children of Shalmal,
- The children of Hanan,
- The children of Giddel,
- The children of Gahar,
- The children of Reaiah,
- The children of Rezin,
- The children of Nekoda,
- The children of Gazzam,
- The children of Uzza,
- The children of Phaseah,
- The children of Besai,
- The children of Meunim,
- The children of Nephishesim,
- The children of Bakbuk,
- The children of Hakupha,
- The children of Harhur,
- The children of Bazlith,
- The children of Mehida,
- The children of Harsha,
- The children of Barkos,
- The children of Sisera,
- The children of Tamah,
- The children of Neziah,
- The children of Hatipha.

The children of Solomon's servants:

- The children of Sotai,
- The children of Sophereth,
- The children of Perida,
- The children of Jaala,

- The children of Darkon,
- The children of Giddel,
- The children of Shephatiah,
- The children of Hattil,
- The children of Pochereth of Zebaim,
- The children of Amon
  - all the Nethinims, and the children of Solomon's servants, were three hundred ninety and two. And these were they which went up also from Tel-melah, Tel-haresha, Cherub, Addon, and Immer (but they could not shew their father's house, nor their seed, whether they were of Israel):
- The children of Delaiah,
- The children of Tobiah,
- The children of Nekoda
  - six hundred forty and two.

And of the priests:

- The children of Habaiah,
- The children of Koz,
- The children of Barzillai (which took one of the daughters of Barzillai the Gileadite to wife, and was called after their name).

These sought their register among those that were reckoned by genealogy, but it was not found; therefore were they, as polluted, put from the priesthood. And the <sup>1</sup>Tirshatha said unto them that they should not eat of the most holy things, till there stood up a priest with Urim and Thummim.

*<sup>1</sup>governor*

The whole congregation together was forty and two thousand three hundred and threescore, beside their manservants and their maidservants, of whom there were seven thousand three hundred thirty and seven; and they had two hundred forty and five singing men and singing women. Their horses, seven hundred thirty and six; their mules, two hundred forty and five; their camels, four hundred thirty and five; six thousand seven hundred and twenty asses. And some of the chief of the fathers gave unto the work. The Tirshatha gave to the treasure a thousand drams of gold, fifty basons, five hundred and thirty priests' garments. And some of the chief of the fathers gave to the treasure of the work twenty thousand drams of gold, and two thousand and two hundred pound of silver. And that which the rest of the people gave was twenty thousand drams of gold, and two thousand pound of silver, and threescore and seven priests' garments.

So the priests, and the Levites, and the porters, and the singers, and some of the people, and the Nethinims, and all Israel, dwelt in their cities; and when the seventh month came, the children of Israel were in their cities.

And all the people gathered themselves together as one man into the street that was before the water gate; and they spake unto Ezra the scribe to bring the Book of the Law of Moses which the LORD had commanded to Israel.

And Ezra the priest brought the Law before the congregation both of men and women, and all that could hear with understanding, upon the first day of the seventh month. And he read therein before the street that was before the water gate from the morning until midday, before the men and the women, and those that could understand; and the ears of all the people were attentive unto the Book of the Law. And Ezra the scribe stood upon a pulpit of wood which they had made for the purpose; and beside him stood Mattithiah, and Shema, and Anaiah, and Urijah, and Hilkiyah, and Maaseiah, on his right hand; and on his left hand, Pedaiah, and Mishael, and Malchiah, and Hashum, and Hashbadana, Zechariah, and Meshullam. And Ezra opened the Book in the sight of all the people (for he was above all the people); and when he opened it, all the people stood up. And Ezra blessed the LORD, the great God. And all the people answered, "Amen!"

Amen!" with lifting up their hands; and they bowed their heads and worshipped the LORD with their faces to the ground.

Also Jeshua, and Bani, and Sherebiah, Jamin, Akkub, Shabbethai, Hodijah, Maaseiah, Kelita, Azariah, Jozabad, Hanan, Pelaiah, and the Levites, caused the people to understand the Law, and the people stood in their place. So they read in the Book in the Law of God distinctly, and gave the <sup>1</sup>sense, and caused them to understand the reading. <sup>1</sup>explanations

And Nehemiah, which is the <sup>1</sup>Tirshatha, and Ezra the priest the scribe, and the Levites that taught the people, said unto all the people, "This day is holy unto the LORD your God; mourn not, nor weep!" (For all the people wept when they heard the Words of the Law). <sup>1</sup>governor

Then he said unto them, "Go your way, eat the <sup>1</sup>fat, and drink the sweet, and send portions unto them for whom nothing is prepared; for this day is holy unto our Lord. Neither be ye sorry; for the joy of the LORD is your strength."

*'a figure of speech meaning "the best", as when our modern young people of the Hip Hop culture say "That's phat", meaning "that's good/right/cool/awesome"*

So the Levites stilled all the people, saying, "Hold your peace, for the day is holy; neither be ye grieved."

And all the people went their way to eat, and to drink, and to send portions, and to make great mirth, because they had understood the Words that were declared unto them.

And on the second day were gathered together the chief of the fathers of all the people, the priests, and the Levites, unto Ezra the scribe, even to understand the Words of the Law. And they found written in the Law, which the LORD had commanded by Moses, that the children of Israel should dwell in booths in the <sup>1</sup>feast of the seventh month, and that they should publish and proclaim in all their cities and in Jerusalem, saying, "Go forth unto the mount, and fetch olive branches, and pine branches, and myrtle branches, and palm branches, and branches of thick trees, to make booths, as it is written." <sup>1</sup>Feast of Tabernacles

So the people went forth and brought them and made themselves booths, every one upon the roof of his house, and in their courts, and in the courts of the House of God, and in the street of the water gate, and in the street of the gate of Ephraim. And all the congregation of them that were come again out of the captivity made booths, and sat under the booths; for, since the days of <sup>1</sup>Jeshua the son of Nun unto that day had not the children of Israel done so. And there was very great gladness. <sup>1</sup>Joshua

Also, day by day, from the first day unto the last day, he read in the Book of the Law of God. And they kept the Feast seven days; and on the eighth day was a solemn assembly, according unto the manner.

Now, in the twenty and fourth day of this month the children of Israel were assembled with fasting, and with sackclothes, and earth upon them. And the seed of Israel separated themselves from all strangers, and stood and confessed their sins, and the iniquities of their fathers. And they stood up in their place, and read in the Book of the Law of the LORD their God one fourth part of the day; and another fourth part they confessed, and worshipped the LORD their God; then stood up upon the stairs, of the Levites (Jeshua, and Bani, Kadmiel, Shebaniah, Bunni, Sherebiah, Bani, and Chenani), and cried with a loud voice unto the LORD their God.

Then the Levites (Jeshua, and Kadmiel, Bani, Hashabniah, Sherebiah, Hodijah, Shebaniah, and Pethahiah), said, "Stand up and bless the LORD your God for ever and ever! And blessed be Thy glorious name which is exalted above all blessing and praise! Thou, even Thou, art LORD alone! Thou hast made heaven, the heaven of heavens, with all their host, the earth, and all things that are therein, the seas, and all that is therein, and Thou preservest them all; and the host of heaven worshippeth Thee! Thou art the LORD, the God, who didst

choose Abram and broughtest him forth out of Ur of the Chaldees and gavest him the name of Abraham; and foundest his heart faithful before Thee, and madest a covenant with him to give the land of the Canaanites, the Hittites, the Amorites, and the Perizzites, and the Jebusites, and the Girgashites, to give it, I say, to his seed, and hast performed Thy Words - for Thou art righteous - and didst see the affliction of our fathers in Egypt, and heardest their cry by the Red sea; and shewedst signs and wonders upon Pharaoh, and on all his servants, and on all the people of his land; for Thou knewest that they dealt proudly against them. So didst Thou get Thee a name, as it is this day! And thou didst divide the sea before them so that they went through the midst of the sea on the dry land; and their persecutors Thou threwest into the deeps, as a stone into the mighty waters!

“Moreover, Thou leddest them in the day by a cloudy pillar, and in the night by a pillar of fire, to give them light in the way wherein they should go! Thou camest down also upon Mount Sinai and spakest with them from heaven, and gavest them right judgments, and true laws, good statutes and commandments; and madest known unto them Thy Holy Sabbath, and commandedst them precepts, statutes, and laws, by the hand of Moses Thy servant! And gavest them Bread from heaven for their hunger, and broughtest forth Water for them out of the Rock for their thirst, and promisedst them that they should go in to possess the land which Thou hadst sworn to give them. But they and our fathers dealt proudly, and hardened their necks, and hearkened not to Thy commandments and *refused* to obey, neither were mindful of Thy wonders that Thou didst among them, but hardened their necks; and in their rebellion appointed a <sup>1</sup>captain to return to their bondage. But Thou art a God ready to pardon, Gracious and Merciful, slow to anger, and of great kindness, and forsookest them not! Yea, when they had made them a molten calf, and said, ‘*This is thy God that brought thee up out of Egypt*’, and had wrought great provocations; yet Thou, in Thy manifold mercies, forsookest them not in the wilderness - the pillar of the cloud departed not from them by day, to lead them in the way; neither the pillar of fire by night, to shew them light, and the way wherein they should go! Thou gavest also Thy Good Spirit to instruct them, and withheldst not Thy manna from their mouth, and gavest them water for their thirst! Yea, forty years didst Thou sustain them in the wilderness so that they lacked nothing; their clothes waxed not old, and their feet swelled not. <sup>1</sup>leader

“Moreover, Thou gavest them kingdoms and nations, and didst divide them into corners; so they possessed the land of Sihon, and the land of the king of Heshbon, and the land of Og king of Bashan! Their children also multipliedst Thou as the stars of heaven, and broughtest them into the land concerning which Thou hadst promised to their fathers, that they should go in to possess it. So the children went in and possessed the land, and Thou subduedst before them the inhabitants of the land, the Canaanites, and gavest them into their hands, with their kings, and the people of the land, that they might do with them as they would. And they took strong cities, and a fat land, and possessed houses full of all goods, wells digged, vineyards, and oliveyards, and fruit trees in abundance. So they did eat, and were filled, and became fat, and delighted themselves in Thy great goodness. Nevertheless they were disobedient and rebelled against Thee, and cast Thy Law behind their backs, and slew Thy prophets which testified against them to turn them to Thee, and they wrought great provocations. Therefore Thou deliveredst them into the hand of their enemies, who vexed them; and in the time of their trouble, when they cried unto Thee, Thou heardest them from heaven; and according to Thy manifold mercies Thou gavest them <sup>1</sup>saviours, who saved them out of the hand of their enemies. <sup>1</sup>deliverers

“But after they had rest, they did evil again before Thee; therefore leftest Thou them in the hand of their enemies, so that they had the dominion over them. Yet, when they returned and cried unto Thee, Thou heardest them from heaven; and many times didst Thou deliver them according to Thy mercies; and testifiedst against them, that Thou mightest bring them again unto Thy Law. Yet they dealt proudly, and hearkened not unto Thy commandments, but sinned against Thy judgments (which if a man do, he shall live in them) and withdrew the shoulder, and hardened their neck, and would not hear. Yet many years didst Thou forbear them, and testifiedst against them by Thy Spirit in thy prophets; yet would they not give ear. Therefore gavest Thou them into the hand of the people of the lands. Nevertheless, for Thy great mercies’ sake Thou didst not utterly consume them, nor forsake them; for Thou art a gracious and merciful God. Now therefore, our God - the Great, the Mighty, and the Terrible God who keepest covenant and mercy, let not all the trouble seem little before Thee that hath come upon us, on our kings, on our princes, and on our priests, and on our prophets, and on our fathers, and on all Thy people since the time of the kings of Assyria

unto this day. Howbeit Thou art just in all that is brought upon us - for Thou hast done right, but we have done wickedly. Neither have our kings, our princes, our priests, nor our fathers, kept Thy Law; nor hearkened unto Thy commandments and Thy testimonies, wherewith Thou didst testify against them. For they have not served Thee in their kingdom, and in Thy great goodness that Thou gavest them, and in the large and fat land which Thou gavest before them, neither turned they from their wicked works.

“Behold, we are servants this day! And for the land that Thou gavest unto our fathers to eat the fruit thereof and the good thereof, behold, we are servants in it! And it yieldeth much increase unto the kings whom Thou hast set over us because of our sins. Also, they have dominion over our bodies and over our cattle, at their pleasure, and we are in great distress. And because of all this we make a sure covenant, and write it; and our princes, Levites, and priests, seal unto it.”

Now, those that sealed were:

- Nehemiah the Tirshatha, the son of Hachaliah,
- and Zidkijah,
- Seraiah,
- Azariah,
- Jeremiah,
- Pashur,
- Amariah,
- Malchijah,
- Hattush,
- Shebaniah,
- Malluch,
- Harim,
- Meremoth,
- Obadiah,
- Daniel,
- Ginnethon,
- Baruch,
- Meshullam,
- Abijah,
- Mijamin,
- Maaziah,
- Bilgai,
- Shemaiah.

These were the priests.

And the Levites:

- both Jeshua the son of Azaniah,
- Binnui of the sons of Henadad,
- Kadmiel; and their brethren:
- Shebaniah,
- Hodijah,
- Kelita,
- Pelaiah,
- Hanan,
- Micha,
- Rehob,
- Hashabiah,
- Zaccur,

- Sherebiah,
- Shebaniah,
- Hodijah,
- Bani,
- Beninu.

The chief of the people:

- Parosh,
- Pahath-moab,
- Elam,
- Zatthu,
- Bani,
- Bunni,
- Azgad,
- Bebai,
- Adonijah,
- Bigvai,
- Adin,
- Ater,
- Hizkijah,
- Azzur,
- Hodijah,
- Hashum,
- Bezai,
- Hariph,
- Anathoth,
- Nebai,
- Magpiash,
- Meshullam,
- Hezir,
- Meshezabeel,
- Zadok,
- Jaddua,
- Pelatiah,
- Hanan,
- Anaiah,
- Hoshea,
- Hananiah,
- Hashub,
- Hallohesh,
- Pileha,
- Shobek,
- Rehum,
- Hashabnah,
- Maaseiah, and
- Ahijah,
- Hanan,
- Anan,
- Malluch,
- Harim,

- Baanah.

And the rest of the people - the priests, the Levites, the porters, the singers, the Nethinims, and all they that had separated themselves from the people of the lands unto the Law of God, their wives, their sons, and their daughters, every one having knowledge, and having understanding - they <sup>1</sup>clave to their brethren, their nobles, and entered into a curse and into an oath to walk in God's Law which was given by Moses the servant of God, and to observe and do all the commandments of the LORD our Lord and His judgments and His statutes, and that we would not give our daughters unto the people of the land, nor take their daughters for our sons; and, if the people of the land bring <sup>2</sup>ware or any victuals on the Sabbath Day to sell, that we would not buy it of them on the Sabbath or on the Holy Day; and that we would <sup>3</sup>leave the seventh year and <sup>4</sup>the exaction of every debt.

*<sup>1</sup>cleaved to/joined with <sup>2</sup>wares/merchandise <sup>3</sup>leave the ground to rest and not require any payment of debt during every 7<sup>th</sup> year*

Also we made ordinances for us, to charge ourselves yearly with the third part of a shekel for the service of the House of our God - for the shewbread, and for the continual meat offering and for the continual burnt offering, of the Sabbaths, of the new moons, for the set Feasts and for the holy things, and for the sin offerings to make an atonement for Israel, and for all the work of the House of our God. And we <sup>1</sup>cast the lots among the priests, the Levites, and the people, for the wood offering, to bring it into the House of our God, after the Houses of our fathers, at times appointed year by year, to burn upon the Altar of the LORD our God, as it is written in the Law; and to bring the firstfruits of our ground, and the firstfruits of all fruit of all trees, year by year, unto the House of the LORD.

*<sup>1</sup>cast our vote*

Also the firstborn of our sons and of our cattle, as it is written in the Law, and the firstlings of our herds and of our flocks, to bring to the House of our God, unto the priests that minister in the House of our God; and that we should bring the firstfruits of our dough, and our offerings, and the fruit of all manner of trees, of wine and of oil, unto the priests, to the chambers of the House of our God; and the <sup>1</sup>tithes of our ground unto the Levites, that the same Levites might have the tithes in all the cities of our tillage.

*<sup>1</sup>10% of everything that grows from the ground*

And the priest, the son of Aaron, shall be with the Levites, when the Levites take tithes; and the Levites shall bring up <sup>1</sup>the tithes of the tithes unto the House of our God, to the chambers, into the treasure house. For the children of Israel and the children of Levi shall bring the offering of the corn, of the new wine, and the oil, unto the chambers where are the vessels of the Sanctuary, and the priests that minister, and the porters, and the singers; and we will not forsake the House of our God.

*<sup>1</sup>10% of the 10% given by the people*

And the rulers of the people dwelt at Jerusalem. The rest of the people also <sup>1</sup>cast lots, to bring one <sup>2</sup>of ten to dwell in Jerusalem, the holy city, and nine parts to dwell in other cities. And the people blessed all the men that willingly offered themselves to dwell at Jerusalem.

*<sup>1</sup>cast their votes <sup>2</sup>one of every ten persons*

Now, these are the chief of the province that dwelt in Jerusalem (but in the cities of Judah dwelt every one in his possession in their cities, to wit, Israel), the priests, and the Levites, and the Nethinims, and the children of Solomon's servants.

And at Jerusalem dwelt certain of the children of Judah and of the children of Benjamin.

Of the children of Judah:

- Athaiah, the son of Uziah, the son of Zechariah, the son of Amariah, the son of Shephatiah, the son of Mahalaleel, of the children of Perez; and
- Maaseiah the son of Baruch, the son of Col-hozeh, the son of Hazaiah, the son of Adaiah, the son of Joarib, the son of Zechariah, the son of Shiloni. All the sons of Perez that dwelt at Jerusalem were

four hundred threescore and eight valiant men.

And these are the sons of Benjamin:

- Sallu, the son of Meshullam, the son of Joed, the son of Pedaiah, the son of Kolaiah, the son of Maaseiah, the son of Ithiel, the son of Jesaiah. And after him:
  - Gabbai,
  - Sallai.

Nine hundred twenty and eight. And Joel, the son of Zichri, was their overseer; and Judah, the son of Senuah, was second over the city.

Of the priests:

- Jedaiah, the son of Joiarib, Jachin.
- Seraiah the son of Hilkiyah, the son of Meshullam, the son of Zadok, the son of Meraioth, the son of Ahitub, was the ruler of the House of God.

And their brethren that did the work of the House were eight hundred twenty and two; and,

- Adaiah the son of Jeroham, the son of Pelaliah, the son of Amzi, the son of Zechariah, the son of Pashur, the son of Malchiah, and his brethren, chief of the fathers, two hundred forty and two;
- and Amashai the son of Azareel, the son of Ahasai, the son of Meshillemoth, the son of Immer, and their brethren, mighty men of valour, an hundred twenty and eight; and their overseer was Zabdiel, the son of one of the great men.

Also of the Levites:

- Shemaiah the son of Hashub, the son of Azrikam, the son of Hashabiah, the son of Bunni,
- and Shabbethai
- and Jozabad,

of the chief of the Levites, had the oversight of the outward business of the House of God.

- And Mattaniah, the son of Micha, the son of Zabdi, the son of Asaph, was the principal to begin the Thanksgiving in prayer;
- and Bakbukiah, the second among his brethren,
- and Abda the son of Shammua, the son of Galal, the son of Jeduthun.

All the Levites in the holy city were <sup>1</sup>two hundred fourscore and four.

<sup>2</sup>84

Moreover the porters:

- Akkub,
  - Talmon,
- and their brethren that kept the gates, were an hundred seventy and two.

And the residue of Israel, of the priests, and the Levites, were in all the cities of Judah, every one in his inheritance. But the Nethinims dwelt in Ophel; and Ziha and Gispah were over the Nethinims.

The overseer, also of the Levites at Jerusalem, was Uzzi, the son of Bani, the son of Hashabiah, the son of Mattaniah, the son of Micha.

Of the sons of Asaph, the singers were over the business of the House of God. For it was the king's commandment concerning them that a certain portion should be for the singers, due for every day.

And Pethahiah, the son of Meshezabeel of the children of Zerah the son of Judah, was at the king's hand in all matters concerning the people.

And for the villages with their fields, some of the children of Judah dwelt at:

- Kirjath-arba and in the villages thereof,

- and at Dibon and in the villages thereof,
- and at Jekabzeel and in the villages thereof,
- and at Jeshua,
- and at Moladah,
- and at Beth-phelet,
- and at Hazar-shual,
- and at Beer-sheba and in the villages thereof,
- and at Ziklag,
- and at Mekonah and in the villages thereof,
- and at En-rimmon,
- and at Zareah,
- and at Jarmuth,
- Zanoah,
- Adullam and in their villages,
- at Lachish and the fields thereof,
- at Azekah, and in the villages thereof.

And they dwelt from Beer-sheba unto the Valley of Hinnom.

The children also of Benjamin from Geba dwelt at:

- Michmash,
- and Aija,
- and Beth-el and in their villages,
- and at Anathoth,
- Nob,
- Ananiah,
- Hazor,
- Ramah,
- Gittaim,
- Hadid,
- Zeboim,
- Neballat,
- Lod,
- and Ono, the valley of craftsmen.

And of the Levites were divisions in Judah and in Benjamin.

Now, these are the priests and the Levites that went up with Zerubbabel the son of Shealtiel, and Jeshua:

- Seraiah,
- Jeremiah,
- Ezra,
- Amariah,
- Malluch,
- Hattush,
- Shechaniah,
- Rehum,
- Meremoth,
- Iddo,
- Ginnetho,
- Abijah,
- Miamin,

- Maadiah,
- Bilgah,
- Shemaiah, and
- Joiarib,
- Jedaiah,
- Sallu,
- Amok,
- Hilkiyah,
- Jedaiah.

These were the chief of the priests and of their brethren in the days of Jeshua.

Moreover, the Levites:

- Jeshua,
- Binnui,
- Kadmiel,
- Sherebiah,
- Judah, and
- Mattaniah, which was over the thanksgiving, he and his brethren. Also Bakbukiah and Unni, their brethren, were over against them in the watches.

And Jeshua begat Joiakim,  
 Joiakim also begat Eliashib, and  
 Eliashib begat Joiada, and  
 Joiada begat Jonathan, and  
 Jonathan begat Jaddua.

And in the days of Joiakim were priests, the chief of the fathers:

- of Seraiah, Meraiah;
- of Jeremiah, Hananiah;
- of Ezra, Meshullam;
- of Amariah, Jehohanan;
- of Melicu, Jonathan;
- of Shebaniah, Joseph;
- of Harim, Adna;
- of Meraioth, Helkai;
- of Iddo, Zechariah;
- of Ginnethon, Meshullam;
- of Abijah, Zichri;
- of Miniamin of Moadiah, Piltai;
- of Bilgah, Shammua;
- of Shemaiah, Jehonathan; and
- of Joiarib, Mattenai;
- of Jedaiah, Uzzi;
- of Sallai, Kallai;
- of Amok, Eber;
- of Hilkiyah, Hashabiah;
- of Jedaiah, Nethaneel.

The Levites in the days of Eliashib - Joiada, and Johanan, and Jaddua were recorded chief of the fathers; also the priests - to the reign of Darius the Persian. The sons of Levi, the chief of the fathers, were written in the

book of the chronicles, even until the days of Johanan the son of Eliashib.

And the chief of the Levites - Hashabiah, Sherebiah, and Jeshua the son of Kadmiel, with their brethren over against them - to praise and to give thanks according to the commandment of David the man of God, ward over against ward.

Mattaniah, and Bakbukiah, Obadiah, Meshullam, Talmon, Akkub, were porters keeping the ward at the thresholds of the gates.

These were in the days of Joiakim the son of Jeshua the son of Jozadak, and in the days of Nehemiah the Governor and of Ezra the priest, the scribe.

And, at the dedication of the wall of Jerusalem, they sought the Levites out of all their places, to bring them to Jerusalem to keep the dedication with gladness, both with thanksgivings, and with singing, with cymbals, psalteries, and with harps.

And the sons of the singers gathered themselves together, both out of the plain country round about Jerusalem, and from the villages of Netophathi; also from the House of Gilgal, and out of the fields of Geba and Azmaveth (for the singers had builded them villages round about Jerusalem).

And the priests and the Levites purified themselves, and purified the people, and the gates, and the wall. Then I brought up the princes of Judah upon the wall, and appointed two great companies of them that gave thanks, whereof one went on the right hand upon the wall toward the dung gate. And after them went:

- Hoshaiiah,
- and half of the princes of Judah,
- and Azariah,
- Ezra,
- and Meshullam,
- Judah,
- and Benjamin,
- and Shemaiah,
- and Jeremiah.

And certain of the priests' sons with trumpets; namely:

- Zechariah the son of Jonathan, the son of Shemaiah, the son of Mattaniah, the son of Michaiah, the son of Zaccur, the son of Asaph; and his brethren:
- Shemaiah,
- and Azarael,
- Milalai,
- Gilalai,
- Maai,
- Nethaneel,
- and Judah,
- Hanani,

with the musical instruments of David the man of God, and Ezra the scribe before them.

And at the fountain gate, which was over against them, they went up by the stairs of the city of David, at the going up of the wall, above the house of David, even unto the water gate eastward.

And the other company of them that gave thanks went over against them, and I after them, and the half of the people upon the wall, from beyond the tower of the furnaces even unto the broad wall, and from above

the gate of Ephraim and above the old gate, and above the fish gate, and the tower of Hananeel, and the tower of Meah, even unto the sheep gate; and they stood still in the prison gate.

So stood the two companies of them that gave thanks in the House of God, and I, and the half of the rulers with me, and the priests:

- Eliakim,
- Maaseiah,
- Miniamin,
- Michaiah,
- Elioenai,
- Zechariah,
- and Hananiah - with trumpets;
- And Maaseiah,
- and Shemaiah,
- and Eleazar,
- and Uzzi,
- and Jehohanan,
- and Malchijah,
- and Elam,
- and Ezer.

And the singers sang loud, with Jezrahiah their overseer.

Also that day they offered great sacrifices, and rejoiced; for God had made them rejoice with great joy (the wives also and the children rejoiced), so that the joy of Jerusalem was heard even afar off.

And at that time were some appointed over the chambers for the treasures, for the offerings, for the firstfruits, and for the tithes, to gather into them out of the fields of the cities the portions of the Law for the priests and Levites; for Judah rejoiced for the priests and for the Levites that waited.

And both the singers and the porters kept the ward of their God, and the ward of the purification, according to the commandment of David and of Solomon his son.

For in the days of David and Asaph of Old there were chief of the singers, and songs of praise and thanksgiving unto God. And all Israel in the days of Zerubbabel, and in the days of Nehemiah, gave the portions of the singers and the porters every day his portion, and they sanctified holy things unto the Levites; and the Levites sanctified them unto the children of Aaron.

On that day they read in the Book of Moses in the audience of the people; and therein was found written that the Ammonite and the Moabite should not come into the congregation of God for ever, because they met not the children of Israel with bread and with water, but hired Balaam against them that he should curse them. Howbeit our God turned the curse into a blessing.

Now, it came to pass, when they had heard the Law, that they separated from Israel all the mixed multitude.

And before this, Eliashib the priest, having the oversight of the chamber of the House of our God, was allied unto Tobiah. And he had prepared for him a great chamber where aforetime they laid the meat offerings, the frankincense, and the vessels, and the tithes of the corn, the new wine, and the oil - which was commanded to be given to the Levites and the singers and the porters - and the offerings of the priests. But in all this time was not I at Jerusalem; for, in the two and thirtieth year of Artaxerxes king of Babylon came I

unto the king, and after certain days obtained I leave of the king. And I came to Jerusalem, and understood of the evil that Eliashib did for Tobiah, in preparing him a chamber in the courts of the House of God. And it grieved me sore. Therefore I cast forth all the household stuff of Tobiah out of the chamber. Then I commanded, and they cleansed the chambers; and thither brought I again the vessels of the House of God, with the meat offering and the frankincense. *that time period*

And I perceived that the portions of the Levites had not been given them; for the Levites and the singers that did the work were fled every one to his field. Then contended I with the rulers, and said, "Why is the House of God forsaken?!" And I gathered them together, and set them in their place.

Then brought all Judah the tithes of the corn and the new wine and the oil unto the treasuries. And I made treasurers over the treasuries:

- Shelemiah the priest,
- and Zadok the scribe.

And of the Levites:

- Pedaiah.

And next to them was:

- Hanan the son of Zaccur, the son of Mattania.

For they were counted faithful, and their office was to distribute unto their brethren.

Remember me, O my God, concerning this, and wipe not out my good deeds that I have done for the House of my God and for the offices thereof!

In those days saw I in Judah some treading wine presses on the Sabbath, and bringing in sheaves, and lading asses, as also wine, grapes, and figs, and all manner of burdens, which they brought into Jerusalem on the Sabbath Day. And I testified against them in the day wherein they sold victuals. There dwelt men of Tyre also therein, which brought fish and all manner of ware, and sold on the Sabbath unto the children of Judah and in Jerusalem. Then I contended with the nobles of Judah and said unto them, "What evil thing is this that ye do, and profane the Sabbath Day?! Did not your fathers thus, and did not our God bring all this evil upon us and upon this city? Yet ye bring *more* wrath upon Israel by profaning the Sabbath!"

And it came to pass that when the gates of Jerusalem began to be dark before the Sabbath, I commanded that the gates should be shut, and charged that they should not be opened till after the Sabbath. And some of my servants set I at the gates, that there should no burden be brought in on the Sabbath Day. So the merchants and sellers of all kind of ware lodged without Jerusalem once or twice.

Then I testified against them, and said unto them, "Why lodge ye about the wall?! If ye do so again, I will lay hands on you!!!" From that time forth came they no more on the Sabbath.

And I commanded the Levites that they should cleanse themselves, and that they should come and keep the gates, to sanctify the Sabbath Day.

Remember me, O my God, concerning this also, and spare me according to the greatness of Thy mercy!

In those days also saw I Jews that had married wives of Ashdod, of Ammon, and of Moab. And their children spake half in the speech of Ashdod, and could not speak in the Jews' language, but according to the language of each people. And I contended with them, and cursed them, and smote certain of them, and plucked off their hair, and made them swear by God, saying, "Ye *shall not* give your daughters unto their sons, nor take their daughters unto your sons, or for yourselves! Did not Solomon king of Israel sin by these things?! Yet among many nations was there no king like him who was beloved of his God, and God made him king over all Israel - nevertheless even him did outlandish women cause to sin! Shall we then hearken

unto you to do all this great evil, to transgress against our God in marrying strange wives?!!”

And one of the sons of Joiada, the son of Eliashib the high priest, was son-in-law to Sanballat the Horonite; therefore I chased him from me.

Remember them, O my God, because they have defiled the priesthood, and the covenant of the priesthood, and of the Levites!

Thus cleansed I them from all strangers, and appointed the wards of the priests and the Levites, every one in his business. And for the wood offering, at times appointed, and for the firstfruits.

Remember me, O my God, for good!

Now, it came to pass in the days of Ahasuerus (this is Ahasuerus which reigned from India even unto Ethiopia, over an hundred and seven and twenty provinces), that in those days, when the king Ahasuerus sat on the throne of his kingdom which was in Shushan the palace in the third year of his reign, he made a feast unto all his princes and his servants - the power of Persia and Media, the nobles and princes of the provinces, being before him - when he shewed the riches of his glorious kingdom and the honour of his excellent majesty many days, even an hundred and fourscore days. And when these days were expired, the king made a feast unto all the people that were present in Shushan the palace, both unto great and small, seven days, in the court of the garden of the king's palace where were white, green, and blue hangings fastened with cords of fine linen and purple to silver rings and pillars of marble. The <sup>1</sup>beds were of gold and silver upon a pavement of red and blue and white and black marble. <sup>1</sup>couches/seats

And they gave them drink in vessels of gold (the vessels being diverse one from another) and royal wine in abundance, according to the state of the king. And the drinking was according to the Law - <sup>1</sup>none did compel; for so the king had appointed to all the officers of his house that they should do according to every man's pleasure. <sup>1</sup>noone forced them

Also Vashti the Queen made a feast for the women in the royal house which belonged to King Ahasuerus.

On the seventh day, when the heart of the king was merry with wine, he commanded Mehuman, Biztha, Harbona, Bigtha, and Abagtha, Zethar, and Carcas - the seven chamberlains that served in the presence of Ahasuerus the king - to bring Vashti the Queen before the king with the crown royal, to shew the people and the princes her beauty. For she was fair to look on. But the Queen Vashti refused to come at the king's commandment by his chamberlains; therefore was the king very wroth, and his anger burned in him.

Then the king said to the wise men, which knew the times (for so was the king's manner toward all that knew law and judgment); and the next unto him was Carshena, Shethar, Admatha, Tarshish, Meres, Marsena, and Memucan, the seven princes of Persia and Media, which saw the king's face, and which sat the first in the kingdom, “What shall we do unto the Queen Vashti according to law, because she hath not performed the commandment of the King Ahasuerus by the chamberlains?”

And Memucan answered before the king and the princes, “Vashti the Queen hath not done wrong to the king only, but also to all the princes, and to all the people that are in all the provinces of the King Ahasuerus. For this deed of the queen shall come abroad unto all women, so that they shall despise their husbands in their eyes when it shall be reported, *‘The king Ahasuerus commanded Vashti the Queen to be brought in before him, but she came not’*. Likewise shall the ladies of Persia and Media say this day unto all the king's princes, which have heard of the deed of the queen. Thus shall there arise too much contempt and wrath. If it please the king, let there go a royal commandment from him, and let it be written among the laws of the Persians and the Medes, that it be not altered, that Vashti come no more before King Ahasuerus; and let the

king give her royal estate unto another that is better than she. And when the king's decree, which he shall make, shall be published throughout all his empire (for it is great), all the wives shall give to their husbands honour, both to great and small."

And the saying pleased the king and the princes, and the king did according to the word of Memucan; for he sent letters into all the king's provinces, into every province according to the writing thereof, and to every people after their language, that every man should bear rule in his own house, and that it should be published according to the language of every people.

After these things, when the wrath of King Ahasuerus was appeased, he remembered Vashti and what she had done and what was decreed against her. Then said the king's servants that ministered unto him, "Let there be fair young virgins sought for the king; and let the king appoint officers in all the provinces of his kingdom, that they may gather together all the fair young virgins unto Shushan the palace to the House of the Women, unto the custody of Hege the king's chamberlain, keeper of the women; and let their things for purification be given them. And let the maiden which pleaseth the king be queen instead of Vashti." And the thing pleased the king; and he did so.

Now in Shushan the palace there was a certain Jew whose name was Mordecai, the son of Jair, the son of Shimei, the son of Kish, a Benjamite, who had been carried away from Jerusalem with the captivity which had been carried away with Jeconiah king of Judah, whom Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon had carried away. And he brought up Hadassah (that is, Esther), <sup>1</sup>his uncle's daughter; for she had neither father nor mother, and the maid was fair and beautiful; whom Mordecai, when her father and mother were dead, took for his own daughter. *<sup>1</sup>Mordecai and Esther were first cousins (Mordecai's father was the brother of Esther's father)*

So it came to pass, when the king's commandment and his decree was heard, and when many maidens were gathered together unto Shushan the palace to the custody of Hegai, that Esther was brought also unto the king's house to the custody of Hegai, keeper of the women. And the maiden pleased him, and she obtained kindness of him; and he speedily gave her her things for purification, with such things as belonged to her, and seven maidens which were <sup>1</sup>meet to be given her out of the king's house; and he preferred her and her maids unto the <sup>1</sup>best place of the House of the Women. *<sup>1</sup>fit/proper*

Esther had not <sup>1</sup>shewed her people nor her kindred; for Mordecai had charged her that she should not <sup>1</sup>shew it. *<sup>1</sup>told anyone of her Hebrew heritage*

And Mordecai walked every day before the court of the Women's House, to know how Esther did, and what should become of her.

Now, when every maid's turn was come to go in to King Ahasuerus, after that she had been twelve months according to the manner of the women (for so were the days of their purifications accomplished, to wit, six months with oil of myrrh, and six months with sweet odours, and with other things for the purifying of the women), then thus came every maiden unto the king; whatsoever she desired was given her to go with her out of the House of the Women unto the king's house. In the evening she went, and on the morrow she returned into the second House of the Women, to the custody of Shaashgaz the king's chamberlain, which kept the concubines. She came in unto the king no more, except the king delighted in her, and that she were called by name.

Now when the turn of Esther (the daughter of Abihail - the uncle of Mordecai who had taken her for his daughter) was come to go in unto the king, she required nothing but what Hegai the king's chamberlain, the keeper of the women, appointed. And Esther obtained favour in the sight of all them that looked upon her.

So Esther was taken unto King Ahasuerus into his House Royal in the tenth month, which is the month

Tebeth, in the seventh year of his reign.

And the king loved Esther above all the women, and she obtained grace and favour in his sight more than all the virgins; so that he set the royal crown upon her head, and made her Queen instead of Vashti.

Then the king made a great feast unto all his princes and his servants, even Esther's Feast; and he made a release to the provinces, and gave gifts according to the state of the king.

And when the virgins were gathered together the second time, then Mordecai sat in the king's gate. Esther had not yet shewed her kindred nor her people as Mordecai had charged her; for Esther did the commandment of Mordecai, like as when she was brought up with him.

In those days, while Mordecai sat in the king's gate, two of the king's chamberlains, Bigthan and Teresh, of those which kept the door, were wroth and sought to lay hand on the King Ahasuerus. And the thing was known to Mordecai, who told it unto Esther the Queen; and Esther certified the king thereof in Mordecai's name. And when inquisition was made of the matter, it was found out; therefore <sup>1</sup>they were both hanged on a tree, and it was written in the book of the chronicles before the king. *<sup>1</sup>Bigthan and Teresh*

After these things did king Ahasuerus promote Haman, the son of Hammedatha the Agagite, and advanced him, and set his seat above all the princes that were with him. And all the king's servants that were in the king's gate bowed, and revered Haman; for the king had so commanded concerning him. But Mordecai bowed not, nor did him reverence.

Then the king's servants which were in the king's gate, said unto Mordecai, "Why transgressest thou the king's commandment?"

Now it came to pass, when they spake daily unto him and he hearkened not unto them, that they told Haman, to see whether Mordecai's matters would stand; for he had told them that he was a <sup>1</sup>Jew. *<sup>1</sup>and therefore would bow to none but God*

And when Haman saw that Mordecai bowed not, nor did him reverence, then was Haman full of wrath. And he <sup>1</sup>thought scorn to lay hands <sup>2</sup>on Mordecai alone. For they had shewed him the <sup>3</sup>people of Mordecai; wherefore Haman sought to destroy *all* the Jews that were throughout the whole kingdom of Ahasuerus, even the people of Mordecai. *<sup>1</sup>thought it foolish <sup>2</sup>only on Mordecai <sup>3</sup>heritage/nationality*

In the first month (that is, the month Nisan), in the twelfth year of king Ahasuerus, they cast Pur (that is, <sup>1</sup>the lot) before Haman from day to day, and from month to month, to the twelfth month, that is, the month Adar. *<sup>1</sup>their votes*

And Haman said unto king Ahasuerus, "There is a certain people scattered abroad and dispersed among the people in all the provinces of thy kingdom; and their laws are diverse from all people, neither keep they the king's laws; therefore it is not for the king's profit to <sup>1</sup>suffer them. If it please the king, let it be written that they may be destroyed; and I will pay ten thousand talents of silver to the hands of those that have the charge of the business, to bring it into the king's treasuries." *<sup>1</sup>tolerate*

And the king took his ring from his hand and gave it unto Haman the son of Hammedatha the Agagite - the Jews' enemy. And the king said unto Haman, "The silver is given to thee, the people also, to do with them as it seemeth good to thee."

Then were the king's scribes called on the thirteenth day of the first month, and there was written

according to all that Haman had commanded unto the king's lieutenants, and to the governors that were over every province, and to the rulers of every people of every province according to the writing thereof, and to every people after their language; in the name of king Ahasuerus was it written, and sealed with the king's ring. And the letters were sent by posts into all the king's provinces, to destroy, to kill, and to cause to perish, all Jews, both young and old, little children and women, in one day, even upon the thirteenth day of the twelfth month, which is the month Adar, and to take the spoil of them for a prey. The copy of the writing for a commandment to be given in every province was published unto all people, that they should be ready against that day.

The posts went out, being hastened by the king's commandment, and the decree was given in Shushan the palace. And the king and Haman sat down to drink; but the city Shushan was perplexed.

When Mordecai perceived all that was done, Mordecai rent his clothes and put on sackcloth with ashes, and went out into the midst of the city and cried with a loud and a bitter cry, and came even before the king's gate (for none might enter into the king's gate clothed with sackcloth). And in every province, whithersoever the king's commandment and his decree came, there was great mourning among the Jews, and fasting, and weeping, and wailing; and many lay in sackcloth and ashes. So Esther's maids and her chamberlains came and told it her.

Then was the queen exceedingly grieved; and she sent raiment to clothe Mordecai, and to take away his sackcloth from him; but he received it not. Then called Esther for Hatach, one of the king's chamberlains whom he had appointed to attend upon her, and gave him a commandment to Mordecai, to know what it was, and why it was.

So Hatach went forth to Mordecai unto the street of the city which was before the king's gate. And Mordecai told him of all that had happened unto him, and of the sum of the money that Haman had promised to pay to the king's treasuries for the Jews, to destroy them. Also he gave him the copy of the writing of the decree that was given at Shushan to destroy them, to shew it unto Esther and to declare it unto her, and to charge her that she should go in unto the king to make supplication unto him and to make request before him for her people. And Hatach came and told Esther the words of Mordecai.

Again Esther spake unto Hatach and gave him commandment unto Mordecai: "All the king's servants and the people of the king's provinces do know that whosoever, whether man or woman, shall come unto the king into the inner court who is not called, there is one law of his: to put him to death, *except* such to whom the king shall hold out the golden sceptre that he may live. But I have not been called to come in unto the king these thirty days."

And they told to Mordecai Esther's words. Then Mordecai commanded to answer Esther: "Think not with thyself that thou shalt escape in the king's house more than all the Jews! For if thou altogether holdest thy peace at this time, then shall there enlargement and deliverance arise to the Jews from another place - but thou and thy father's house shall be destroyed. And, who knoweth whether thou art come to the kingdom for such a time as this?"

Then Esther bade them return Mordecai this answer: "Go, gather together all the Jews that are present in Shushan, and fast ye for me, and neither eat nor drink three days, night or day. I also and my maidens will fast likewise; and so will I go in unto the king, which is not according to the law. And if I perish, I perish."

So Mordecai went his way and did according to all that Esther had commanded him.

Now, it came to pass on the third day that Esther put on her royal apparel and stood in the inner court of the king's house <sup>1</sup>over against the king's house; and the king sat upon his royal throne in the royal house <sup>1</sup>over against the gate of the house.

*<sup>1</sup>across the way from but in front of*

And it was so, when the king saw Esther the queen standing in the court, that she obtained favour in his sight. And the king held out to Esther the golden sceptre that was in his hand. So Esther drew near, and touched the top of the sceptre.

Then said the king unto her, "What wilt thou, Queen Esther? And what is thy request? It shall be even given thee to the half of the kingdom!"

And Esther answered, "If it seem good unto the king, let the king and Haman come this day unto the banquet that I have prepared for him."

Then the king said, "Cause Haman to make haste, that he may do as Esther hath said." So the king and Haman came to the banquet that Esther had prepared.

And the king said unto Esther at the banquet of wine, "What is thy petition? And it shall be granted thee. And what is thy request? Even to the half of the kingdom it shall be performed."

Then answered Esther and said, "My petition and my request is: if I have found favour in the sight of the king and if it please the king to grant my petition and to perform my request, let the king and Haman come to the banquet that I shall prepare for them, and I will do to morrow as the king hath said."

Then went Haman forth that day joyful and with a glad heart; but when Haman saw Mordecai in the king's gate, that he stood not up nor moved for him, he was full of indignation against Mordecai. Nevertheless Haman refrained himself; and when he came home he sent and called for his friends, and Zeresh his wife. And Haman told them of the glory of his riches, and the multitude of his children, and all the things wherein the king had promoted him, and how he had advanced him above the princes and servants of the king. Haman said moreover, "Yea, Esther the Queen did let no man come in with the king unto the banquet that she had prepared but myself; and to morrow am I invited unto her also with the king. Yet, all this availeth me nothing so long as I see Mordecai the Jew sitting at the king's gate!"

Then said Zeresh his wife and all his friends unto him, "Let a gallows be made of fifty cubits high, and to morrow speak thou unto the king that Mordecai may be hanged thereon. Then go thou in merrily with the king unto the banquet." And the thing pleased Haman; and he caused the gallows to be made.

On that night could not the king sleep; and he commanded to bring the book of records of the chronicles, and they were read before the king. And it was found written that Mordecai had told of Bigthana and Teresh, two of the king's chamberlains, the keepers of the door, who sought to lay hand on the king Ahasuerus.

And the king said, "What honour and dignity hath been done to Mordecai for this?"

Then said the king's servants that ministered unto him, "There is nothing done for him."

And the king said, "Who is in the court?" Now Haman was come into the outward court of the king's house, to speak unto the king to hang Mordecai on the gallows that he had prepared for him.

*basically, the king has suddenly noticed that someone is standing in the court and is asking who it is*

And the king's servants said unto him, "Behold, Haman standeth in the court."

And the king said, "Let him come in!"

So Haman came in. And the king said unto him, "What shall be done unto the man whom the king

delighteth to honour?" (Now Haman thought in his heart, "To whom would the king delight to do honour more than to *myself*?")

And Haman answered the king, "For the man whom the king delighteth to honour, let the royal apparel be brought which the king useth to wear, and the horse that the king rideth upon, and the crown royal which is set upon his head. And let this apparel and horse be delivered to the hand of one of the king's most noble princes that they may array the man withal whom the king delighteth to honour, and bring him on horseback through the street of the city, and proclaim before him, '*Thus shall it be done to the man whom the king delighteth to honour!*'"

Then the king said to Haman, "Make haste, and take the apparel and the horse, as thou hast said, and do even so... to *Mordecai* the Jew that sitteth at the king's gate. Let nothing fail of all that thou hast spoken!"

Then took Haman the apparel and the horse, and arrayed Mordecai, and brought him on horseback through the street of the city, and proclaimed before him, "Thus shall it be done unto the man whom the king delighteth to honour!"

And Mordecai came again to the king's gate; but Haman hastened to his house, mourning, and having his head covered. And Haman told Zeresh his wife and all his friends every thing that had befallen him.

Then said his wise men and Zeresh his wife unto him, "If Mordecai be of the seed of the Jews, before whom thou hast begun to fall, thou shalt not prevail against him but shalt surely fall before him!"

And while they were yet talking with him came the king's chamberlains, and hastened to bring Haman unto the banquet that Esther had prepared.

So the king and Haman came to banquet with Esther the queen. And the king said again unto Esther on the second day at the banquet of wine, "What is thy petition, Queen Esther? And it shall be granted thee! And what is thy request? And it shall be performed, even to the half of the kingdom!"

Then Esther the queen answered and said, "If I have found favour in thy sight, O king, and if it please the king, let my life be given me at my petition, and my people at my request. For we are sold - I and my people - to be destroyed, to be slain, and to perish! But if we <sup>1</sup>had been sold for bondmen and bondwomen, I had held my tongue, although the enemy could not countervail the king's damage." *<sup>1</sup>had merely only been sold*

Then the king Ahasuerus answered and said unto Esther the queen, "Who is he, and *where* is he, that durst presume in his heart to do so?!"

And Esther said, "The adversary and enemy is... *this wicked Haman!*"

Then Haman was afraid before the king and the queen.

And the king, arising from the banquet of wine in his wrath, went into the palace garden; and Haman stood up to make request for his life to Esther the queen, for he saw that there was evil determined against him by the king.

Then the king returned out of the palace garden into the place of the banquet of wine; and Haman was fallen upon the bed whereon Esther was. Then said the king, "Will he <sup>1</sup>force the queen also before me in the house?!!" *<sup>1</sup>rape*

As the word went out of the king's mouth, they covered Haman's face. And Harbonah, one of the chamberlains, said before the king, "Behold also the gallows fifty cubits high which Haman had made for

Mordecai (who had spoken good for the king) standeth in the house of Haman!

Then the king said, "Hang him thereon!!" So they hanged Haman on the gallows that he had prepared for Mordecai. Then was the king's wrath pacified.

On that day did the King Ahasuerus give the house of Haman, the Jews' enemy, unto Esther the Queen. And Mordecai came before the king (for Esther had told what he was unto her). And the king took off his ring, which he had taken from Haman, and gave it unto Mordecai. And Esther set Mordecai over the house of Haman.

And Esther spake yet again before the king, and fell down at his feet and besought him with tears to put away the mischief of Haman the Agagite and his device that he had devised against the Jews. Then the king held out the golden sceptre toward Esther; so Esther arose and stood before the king, and said, "If it please the king and if I have found favour in his sight and the thing seem right before the king and I be pleasing in his eyes... let it be written to reverse the letters devised by Haman the son of Hammedatha the Agagite, which he wrote to destroy the Jews which are in all the king's provinces. For how can I endure to see the evil that shall come unto my people? Or how can I endure to see the destruction of my kindred?"

Then the king Ahasuerus said unto Esther the queen and to Mordecai the Jew, "Behold, I have given Esther the house of Haman, and him they have hanged upon the gallows because he laid his hand upon the Jews. Write ye also for the Jews as it liketh you, in the king's name, and seal it with the king's ring!" (for the writing which is written in the king's name and sealed with the king's ring may no man reverse).

Then were the king's scribes called at that time in the third month, that is, the month Sivan, on the three and twentieth day thereof; and it was written according to all that Mordecai commanded unto the Jews, and to the lieutenants, and the deputies and rulers of the provinces which are from India unto Ethiopia, an hundred twenty and seven provinces, unto every province according to the writing thereof, and unto every people after their language, and to the Jews according to their writing, and according to their language. And he wrote in the King Ahasuerus' name and sealed it with the king's ring, and sent letters by posts on horseback, and riders on mules, camels, and young dromedaries, <sup>1</sup>wherein the king granted the Jews which were in every city to gather themselves together and to stand for their life, to destroy, to slay, and to cause to perish *all* the power of the people and province that would assault them, both little ones and women, and to take the spoil of them for a prey, upon one day in all the provinces of King Ahasuerus - namely, upon the thirteenth day of the twelfth month, which is the month Adar. The copy of the writing for a commandment to be given in every province was published unto all people, and that the Jews should be ready against that day to avenge themselves on their enemies. *<sup>1</sup>in which/in the letters*

So the posts that rode upon mules and camels went out, being hastened and pressed on by the king's commandment. And the decree was given at Shushan the palace. And Mordecai went out from the presence of the king in royal apparel of blue and white, and with a great crown of gold, and with a garment of fine linen and purple; and the city of Shushan rejoiced and was glad. The Jews had light, and gladness, and joy, and honour. And in every province and in every city - whithersoever the king's commandment and his decree came - the Jews had joy and gladness, a feast and a good day. And many of the people of the land became Jews, for the fear of the Jews fell upon them.

Now in the twelfth month, that is, the month Adar, on the thirteenth day of the same, when the king's commandment and his decree drew near to be put in execution, in the day that the enemies of the Jews hoped to have power over them (though it was turned to the contrary, that the Jews had rule over them that hated them), the Jews gathered themselves together in their cities throughout all the provinces of the king Ahasuerus to lay hand on such as sought their hurt; and no man could withstand them, for the fear of them fell upon all people. And all the rulers of the provinces, and the lieutenants, and the deputies, and officers of the king, helped the Jews because the fear of Mordecai fell upon them, for Mordecai was great in

the king's house, and his fame went out throughout all the provinces; for this man Mordecai waxed greater and greater. Thus the Jews smote all their enemies with the stroke of the sword, and slaughter, and destruction, and did what they would unto those that hated them. And in Shushan the palace the Jews slew and destroyed five hundred men. And Parshandatha, and Dalphon, and Aspatha, and Poratha, and Adalia, and Aridatha, and Parmashta, and Arisai, and Aridai, and Vajezatha (the ten sons of Haman the son of Hammedatha - the enemy of the Jews) slew they; but on the spoil laid they not their hand.

On that day the number of those that were slain in Shushan the palace was brought before the king. And the king said unto Esther the queen, "The Jews have slain and destroyed five hundred men in Shushan the palace, and the ten sons of Haman. What have they done in the *rest* of the king's provinces? Now, what is thy petition? And it shall be granted thee! Or what is thy request further? And it shall be done!"

Then said Esther, "If it please the king, let it be granted to the Jews which are in Shushan to do to morrow also according unto this day's decree, and let Haman's ten sons be hanged upon the gallows."

And the king commanded it so to be done; and the decree was given at Shushan, and they hanged Haman's ten sons. For the Jews that were in Shushan gathered themselves together on the fourteenth day also, of the month Adar, and slew three hundred men at Shushan; but on the prey they laid not their hand.

But the other Jews that were in the king's provinces gathered themselves together, and <sup>1</sup>stood for their lives, and had rest from their enemies, and slew of their foes seventy and five thousand (but they laid not their hands on the prey) on the thirteenth day of the month Adar. And on the fourteenth day of the same rested they, and made it a day of feasting and gladness. *<sup>1</sup>stood up to defend themselves against the enemy*

But the Jews that were at Shushan assembled together on the thirteenth day thereof, and on the fourteenth thereof; and on the fifteenth day of the same they rested, and made it a day of feasting and gladness. Therefore the Jews of the villages that dwelt in the unwalled towns made the fourteenth day of the month Adar a day of gladness and feasting, and a good day, and of sending portions one to another. And Mordecai wrote these things, and sent letters unto all the Jews that were in all the provinces of the King Ahasuerus both nigh and far, to stablish this among them that they should <sup>1</sup>keep the fourteenth day of the month Adar, and the fifteenth day of the same, yearly, as the days wherein the Jews rested from their enemies, and the month which was turned unto them from sorrow to joy, and from mourning into a good day; that they should make them days of feasting and joy, and of sending portions one to another, and gifts to the poor. *<sup>1</sup>this is the creation of the Feast of Purim*

And the Jews undertook to do as they had begun and as Mordecai had written unto them, because Haman the son of Hammedatha the Agagite - the enemy of all the Jews - had devised against the Jews to destroy them, and had cast Pur, (that is, the lot) to consume them and to destroy them. But when Esther came before the king, he commanded by letters that his wicked device which he devised against the Jews should return upon his own head, and that he and his sons should be hanged on the gallows. Wherefore they called these days *Purim* after the name of Pur. Therefore for all the words of this letter, and of that which they had seen concerning this matter, and which had come unto them, the Jews ordained and took upon them and upon their seed and upon all such as joined themselves unto them, so as it should not fail, that they would keep these two days according to their writing, and according to their appointed time every year. And that these days should be remembered and kept throughout every generation, every family, every province, and every city; and that these days of Purim should not fail from among the Jews, nor the memorial of them perish from their seed.

Then Esther the Queen the daughter of Abihail, and Mordecai the Jew, wrote with all authority to confirm this second letter of Purim. And he sent the letters unto all the Jews, to the hundred twenty and seven provinces of the kingdom of Ahasuerus, with words of peace and truth, to confirm these days of Purim in their times appointed, according as Mordecai the Jew and Esther the Queen had enjoined them, and as they

had decreed for themselves and for their seed, the matters of the fastings and their cry. And the decree of Esther confirmed these matters of Purim; and it was written in the book. And the king Ahasuerus laid a tribute upon the land, and upon the isles of the sea. And all the acts of his power and of his might, and the declaration of the greatness of Mordecai whereunto the king advanced him, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Media and Persia? For Mordecai the Jew was next unto King Ahasuerus, and great among the Jews, and accepted of the multitude of his brethren, seeking the wealth of his people, and speaking peace to all his seed.

There was a man in the <sup>1</sup>land of Uz whose name was Job; and that man was perfect and upright, and one that feared God, and esche wed evil. And there were born unto him seven sons and three daughters. His substance also was seven thousand sheep, and three thousand camels, and five hundred yoke of oxen, and five hundred she asses, and a very great household; so that this man was the greatest of all the men of the east.

*<sup>1</sup>The Book of Lamentations by the prophet Jeremiah refers to a land of Uz in Edom which is at the intersection of present day Israel, Jordan and Saudi Arabia. However, one of the Dead Sea Scrolls notes a land of Uz beyond the River Euphrates, which could refer to present day Uzbekistan (north of Shushan where Esther was made a queen).*

And his sons went and feasted in their houses, every one his day; and sent and called for their three sisters to eat and to drink with them. And it was so, when the days of their feasting were gone about, that Job sent and sanctified them, and rose up early in the morning, and offered burnt offerings according to the number of them all; for Job said, "It may be that my sons have sinned, and cursed God in their hearts." Thus did Job continually.

Now, there was a day when the <sup>1</sup>sons of God came to present themselves before the LORD, and Satan came also among them.

*<sup>1</sup>a term used here for the angels*

And the LORD said unto Satan, "Whence comest thou?"

Then Satan answered the LORD, and said, "From going to and fro in the earth, and from walking up and down in it."

And the LORD said unto Satan, "Hast thou considered My servant Job, that there is none like him in the earth, a perfect and an upright man, one that feareth God, and escheweth evil?"

Then Satan answered the LORD, and said, "Doth Job fear God for nought? Hast not Thou made an hedge about him, and about his house, and about all that he hath on every side? Thou hast blessed the work of his hands, and his substance is increased in the land. But put forth Thine hand now and touch all that he hath, and he will curse Thee to Thy face."

And the LORD said unto Satan, "Behold, all that he hath is in thy power – only, upon himself put not forth thine hand."

So Satan went forth from the presence of the LORD.

And there was a day when his sons and his daughters were eating and drinking wine in their eldest brother's house. And there came a messenger unto Job, and said, "The oxen were plowing, and the asses feeding beside them; and the Sabeans fell upon them, and took them away! Yea, they have slain the servants with the edge of the sword, and I only am escaped alone to tell thee!"

While he was yet speaking, there came also another, and said, "The fire of God is fallen from heaven and hath burned up the sheep, and the servants, and consumed them; and I only am escaped alone to tell

thee!”

While he was yet speaking, there came also another, and said, “The Chaldeans made out three bands, and fell upon the camels and have carried them away! Yea, and slain the servants with the edge of the sword; and I only am escaped alone to tell thee!”

While he was yet speaking, there came also another, and said, “Thy sons and thy daughters were eating and drinking wine in their eldest brother’s house. And, behold, there came a great wind from the wilderness and smote the four corners of the house, and it fell upon the young men and they are dead; and I only am escaped alone to tell thee!”

Then Job arose, and rent his mantle, and shaved his head, and fell down upon the ground, and worshipped, and said, “Naked came I out of my mother’s womb, and naked shall I return thither! The LORD gave, and the LORD hath taken away; blessed be the name of the LORD!” In all this Job sinned not, nor charged God foolishly.

Again there was a day when the sons of God came to present themselves before the LORD, and Satan came also among them to present himself before the LORD. And the LORD said unto Satan, “From whence comest thou?”

And Satan answered the LORD, and said, “From going to and fro in the earth, and from walking up and down in it.”

And the LORD said unto Satan, “Hast thou considered My servant Job, that there is none like him in the earth, a perfect and an upright man, one that feareth God, and escheweth evil? And still he holdeth fast his integrity, although thou movedst Me against him, to destroy him without cause.”

And Satan answered the LORD, and said, “Skin for skin, yea, all that a man hath will he give for his life. But put forth Thine hand now and touch his bone and his flesh, and he will curse Thee to Thy face.”

And the LORD said unto Satan, “Behold, he is in thine hand - but save his life.”

So went Satan forth from the presence of the LORD and smote Job with sore boils from the sole of his foot unto his crown. And he took him a potsherd to scrape himself withal; and he sat down among the ashes.

Then said his wife unto him, “Dost thou still retain thine integrity? Curse God, and die!”

But he said unto her, “Thou speakest as one of the foolish women speaketh! What? Shall we receive good at the hand of God, and shall we not receive evil?” In all this did not Job sin with his lips.

Now when Job’s three friends heard of all this evil that was come upon him, they came every one from his own place - Eliphaz the Temanite, and Bildad the Shuhite, and Zophar the Naamathite (for they had made an appointment together to come to mourn with him and to comfort him). And when they lifted up their eyes afar off, and <sup>1</sup>knew him not, they lifted up their voice, and wept; and they rent every one his mantle, and sprinkled dust upon their heads toward heaven. So they sat down with him upon the ground seven days and seven nights, and none spake a word unto him; for they saw that his grief was very great.

*couldn’t even recognize him*

After this opened Job his mouth, and cursed his day. And Job spake, and said, “Let the day perish wherein I was born, and the night in which it was said, *There is a man child conceived*. Let that day be darkness; let not God regard it from above, neither let the light shine upon it. Let darkness and the shadow of death stain it; let a cloud dwell upon it; let the blackness of the day terrify it. As for that night, let darkness seize upon

it; let it not be joined unto the days of the year, let it not come into the number of the months. Lo, let that night be solitary, let no joyful voice come therein. Let them curse it that curse the day, who are ready to raise up their mourning. Let the stars of the twilight thereof be dark; let it look for light, but have none; neither let it see the dawning of the day. Because it shut not up the doors of my mother's womb, nor hid sorrow from mine eyes. Why died I not from the womb? Why did I not give up the ghost when I came out of the belly? Why did the knees prevent me? Or why the breasts that I should suck? For now should I have lain still and been quiet, I should have slept; then had I been at rest with kings and counsellors of the earth, which built desolate places for themselves; or with princes that had gold, who filled their houses with silver; or as an hidden untimely birth I had not been; as infants which never saw light. There the wicked cease from troubling; and there the weary be at rest. There the prisoners rest together; they hear not the voice of the oppressor. The small and great are there; and the servant is free from his master. Wherefore is light given to him that is in misery, and life unto the bitter in soul which long for death, but it cometh not; and dig for it more than for hid treasures; which rejoice exceedingly and are glad when they can find the grave? Why is light given to a man whose way is hid, and whom God hath hedged in. For my sighing cometh before I eat, and my roarings are poured out like the waters. For the thing which I greatly feared is come upon me, and that which I was afraid of is come unto me. I was not in safety, neither had I rest, neither was I quiet; yet trouble came."

Then Eliphaz the Temanite answered and said, "If we assay to commune with thee, wilt thou be grieved? But who can withhold himself from speaking? Behold, thou hast instructed many, and thou hast strengthened the weak hands. Thy words have upholden him that was falling, and thou hast strengthened the feeble knees. But now it is come upon *thee*, and thou faintest; it toucheth thee, and thou art troubled. Is not this thy fear, thy confidence, thy hope, and the uprightness of thy ways? Remember, I pray thee, who ever perished, being innocent? Or where were the righteous cut off? Even as I have seen, they that plow iniquity and sow wickedness reap the same. By the blast of God they perish, and by the breath of His nostrils are they consumed. The roaring of the lion, and the voice of the fierce lion, and the teeth of the young lions, are broken. The old lion perisheth for lack of prey, and the stout lion's whelps are scattered abroad. Now a thing was secretly brought to me, and mine ear received a little thereof. In thoughts from the visions of the night, when deep sleep falleth on men, fear came upon me, and trembling, which made all my bones to shake. Then a spirit passed before my face; the hair of my flesh stood up. It stood still, but I could not discern the form thereof; an image was before mine eyes, there was silence, and I heard a voice, saying, '*Shall mortal man be more just than God? Shall a man be more pure than his Maker?*' Behold, He put no trust in His servants; and His angels he charged with folly. How much less in them that dwell in houses of clay, whose foundation is in the dust, which are crushed before the moth? They are destroyed from morning to evening; they perish for ever without any regarding it. Doth not their excellency which is in them go away? They die, even without wisdom.

"Call now, if there be any that will answer thee; and to which of the saints wilt thou turn? For wrath killeth the foolish man, and envy slayeth the silly one. I have seen the foolish taking root; but suddenly I cursed his habitation. His children are far from safety, and they are crushed in the gate, neither is there any to deliver them. Whose harvest the hungry eateth up, and taketh it even out of the thorns, and the robber swalloweth up their substance. Although affliction cometh not forth of the dust, neither doth trouble spring out of the ground. Yet man is born unto trouble, as the sparks fly upward. I would seek unto God, and unto God would I commit my cause, which doeth great things and unsearchable; marvellous things without number, who giveth rain upon the earth, and sendeth waters upon the fields, to set up on high those that be low; that those which mourn may be exalted to safety. He disappointeth the devices of the crafty, so that their hands cannot perform their enterprise. He taketh the wise in their own craftiness, and the counsel of the froward is carried headlong. They meet with darkness in the daytime, and grope in the noonday as in the night. But He saveth the poor from the sword, from their mouth, and from the hand of the mighty. So the poor hath hope, and iniquity stoppeth her mouth. Behold, happy is the man whom God correcteth; therefore, despise not thou the chastening of the Almighty. For He maketh sore, and bindeth up; He woundeth, and His hands make whole. He shall deliver thee in six troubles: yea, in seven there shall no evil touch thee. In famine He shall redeem thee from death; and in war, from the power of

the sword. Thou shalt be hid from the scourge of the tongue: neither shalt thou be afraid of destruction when it cometh. At destruction and famine thou shalt laugh; neither shalt thou be afraid of the beasts of the earth. For thou shalt be in league with the stones of the field; and the beasts of the field shall be at peace with thee. And thou shalt know that thy tabernacle shall be in peace; and thou shalt visit thy habitation, and shalt not sin. Thou shalt know also that thy seed shall be great, and thine offspring as the grass of the earth. Thou shalt come to thy grave in a full age, like as a shock of corn cometh in, in his season. Lo this, we have searched it, so it is; hear it, and know thou it for thy good."

But Job answered and said, "Oh that my grief were thoroughly weighed, and my calamity laid in the balances together! For now it would be heavier than the sand of the sea! Therefore my words are swallowed up. For the arrows of the Almighty are within me, the poison whereof drinketh up my spirit; the terrors of God do set themselves in array against me.

"Doth the wild ass bray when he hath grass? Or loweth the ox over his fodder? Can that which is unsavoury be eaten without salt? Or is there any taste in the white of an egg? The things that my soul refused to touch are as my sorrowful meat. Oh that I might have my request; and that God would grant me the thing that I long for! Even that it would please God to destroy me; that He would let loose His hand and cut me off! Then should I yet have comfort; yea, I would harden myself in sorrow. Let Him not spare; for I have not concealed the Words of the Holy One.

"What is my strength, that I should hope? And what is mine end, that I should prolong my life? Is my strength the strength of stones? Or is my flesh of brass? Is not my help in me? And is wisdom driven quite from me? To him that is afflicted, pity should be shewed from his friend; but he forsaketh the fear of the Almighty.

My brethren have dealt deceitfully as a brook, and as the stream of brooks they pass away; which are blackish by reason of the ice, and wherein the snow is hid; what time they wax warm they vanish; when it is hot, they are consumed out of their place. The paths of their way are turned aside; they go to nothing, and perish. The troops of Tema looked, the companies of Sheba waited for them. They were confounded because they had hoped; they came thither, and were ashamed. For now ye are nothing; ye see my casting down, and are afraid. Did I say, '*Bring unto me?*' or '*Give a reward for me of your substance?*' or '*Deliver me from the enemy's hand?*' or '*Redeem me from the hand of the mighty?*' Teach me, and I will hold my tongue; and cause me to understand wherein I have erred. How forcible are right words! But what doth *your* arguing reprove? Do ye imagine to reprove words, and the speeches of one that is desperate, which are as wind? Yea, ye overwhelm the fatherless, and ye dig a pit for your friend.

"Now therefore be content, look upon me; for it is evident unto you if I lie. Return, I pray you, let it not be iniquity; yea, return again, my righteousness is in it. Is there iniquity in my tongue? Cannot my taste discern perverse things? Is there not an appointed time to man upon earth? Are not his days also like the days of an hireling? As a servant earnestly desireth the shadow, and as an hireling looketh for the reward of his work, so am I made to possess months of vanity, and wearisome nights are appointed to me. When I lie down, I say, '*When shall I arise, and the night be gone?*' and I am full of tossings to and fro unto the dawning of the day. My flesh is clothed with worms and clods of dust; my skin is broken, and become loathsome. My days are swifter than a weaver's shuttle, and are spent without hope. O remember that my life is wind! Mine eye shall no more see good. The eye of him that hath seen me shall see me no more; thine eyes are upon me, and I am not. As the cloud is consumed and vanisheth away, so he that goeth down to the grave shall come up no more. He shall return no more to his house, neither shall his place know him any more. Therefore I will *not* refrain my mouth; I will speak in the anguish of my spirit; I will complain in the bitterness of my soul! Am I a sea, or a whale, that thou settest a watch over me? When I say, '*My bed shall comfort me, my couch shall ease my complaint*', then thou scarest me with dreams, and terrifiest me through visions, so that my soul chooseth strangling, and death rather than my life. I loathe it! I would not live always. Let me alone; for my days are vanity.

"What is man, that Thou shouldest magnify him? And that Thou shouldest set Thine heart upon him? And that Thou shouldest visit him every morning, and try him every moment? How long wilt Thou not depart from me, nor let me alone till I swallow down my spittle? I have sinned; what shall I do unto Thee, O Thou preserver of men? Why hast Thou set me as a mark against Thee, so that I am a burden to myself?

And why dost Thou not *pardon* my transgression, and take away mine iniquity? For now shall I sleep in the dust; and Thou shalt seek me in the morning, but I shall not be.”

Then answered Bildad the Shuhite, and said, “How long wilt thou speak these things? And how long shall the words of thy mouth be like a strong wind? Doth God pervert judgment? Or doth the Almighty pervert justice? If thy children have sinned against Him, and He have cast them away for their transgression; if thou wouldest seek unto God betimes, and make thy supplication to the Almighty; if thou wert pure and upright; surely now He would awake for thee, and make the habitation of thy righteousness prosperous. Though thy beginning was small, yet thy latter end should greatly increase. For inquire, I pray thee, of the former age, and prepare thyself to the search of their fathers (for we are but of yesterday, and know nothing, because our days upon earth are a shadow). Shall not they teach thee, and tell thee, and utter words out of their heart. Can the rush grow up without mire? Can the flag grow without water? Whilst it is yet in his greenness and not cut down, it withereth before any other herb. So are the paths of all that forget God; and the hypocrite’s hope shall perish, whose hope shall be cut off, and whose trust shall be a spider’s web. He shall lean upon his house, but it shall not stand; he shall hold it fast, but it shall not endure. He is green before the sun, and his branch shooteth forth in his garden. His roots are wrapped about the heap, and seeth the place of stones. If He destroy him from his place, then it shall deny him, saying, ‘*I have not seen thee*’. Behold, this is the joy of his way, and out of the earth shall others grow. Behold, God will not cast away a perfect man, neither will he help the evil doers, till He fill thy mouth with laughing, and thy lips with rejoicing. They that hate thee shall be clothed with shame; and the dwelling place of the wicked shall come to nought.”

Then Job answered and said, “I know it is so, of a truth. But how should man be just with God? If he will contend with Him, he cannot answer Him one of a thousand! He is wise in heart, and mighty in strength; who hath hardened himself against Him and hath prospered? Which removeth the mountains, and they know not; which overturneth them in His anger. Which shaketh the earth out of her place, and the pillars thereof tremble. Which commandeth the sun, and it riseth not; and sealeth up the stars. Which alone spreadeth out the heavens, and treadeth upon the waves of the sea. Which maketh Arcturus, Orion, and Pleiades, and the chambers of the south. Which doeth great things past finding out; yea, and wonders without number. Lo, He goeth by me, and I see Him not; He passeth on also, but I perceive Him not. Behold, He taketh away, who can hinder Him? Who will say unto Him, ‘*What doest Thou?*’ If God will not withdraw His anger, the proud helpers do stoop under Him. How much less shall I answer Him, and choose out my words to reason with Him? Whom, though I were righteous, yet would I not answer, but I would make supplication to my Judge.

“If I had called, and He had answered me; yet would I not believe that He had hearkened unto my voice. For He breaketh me with a tempest, and multiplieth my wounds without cause. He will not suffer me to take my breath, but filleth me with bitterness. If I speak of strength, lo, He is strong; and if of judgment, who shall set me a time to plead? If I justify myself, mine own mouth shall condemn me; if I say, I am perfect, it shall also prove me perverse. Though I were perfect, yet would I not know my soul; I would despise my life.

“This is one thing, therefore I said it, “He destroyeth the perfect *and* the wicked.” If the scourge slay suddenly, He will laugh at the trial of the innocent. The earth is given into the hand of the wicked; He covereth the faces of the judges thereof; if not, where and who is He? Now my days are swifter than a post; they flee away, they see no good. They are passed away as the swift ships, as the eagle that hasteth to the prey. If I say, ‘*I will forget my complaint*’, I will leave off my heaviness, and comfort myself. I am afraid of all my sorrows, I know that Thou wilt not hold me innocent. If I be wicked, why then labour I in vain? If I wash myself with snow water and make my hands never so clean; yet shalt Thou plunge me in the ditch, and mine own clothes shall abhor me. For He is not a man, as I am, that I should answer Him and we should come together in judgment. Neither is there any <sup>1</sup>daysman betwixt us, that might lay His hand upon us both. Let Him take His rod away from me, and let not His fear terrify me. Then would I speak, and not fear Him; but it is not so with me.

<sup>1</sup>mediator

“My soul is weary of my life; I will leave my complaint upon myself; I will speak in the bitterness of

my soul. I will say unto God, 'Do not condemn me; shew me wherefore Thou contendest with me. Is it good unto Thee that Thou shouldest oppress, that Thou shouldest despise the work of Thine hands, and shine upon the counsel of the wicked? Hast Thou eyes of flesh? Or seest Thou as man seeth? Are Thy days as the days of man? Are Thy years as man's days, that thou inquirest after mine iniquity, and searchest after my sin? Thou *knowest* that I am not wicked; and there is none that can deliver out of Thine hand. Thine hands have made me and fashioned me together round about; yet Thou dost destroy me. Remember, I beseech Thee, that thou hast made me as the clay; and wilt Thou bring me into dust again? Hast thou not poured me out as milk, and curdled me like cheese? Thou hast clothed me with skin and flesh, and hast fenced me with bones and sinews. Thou hast granted me life and favour, and Thy visitation hath preserved my spirit. And these things hast Thou hid in Thine heart - I know that this is with Thee.

"If I sin, then Thou markest me, and Thou wilt not acquit me from mine iniquity. If I be wicked, woe unto me! And if I be righteous, yet will I not lift up my head. I am full of confusion; therefore see Thou mine affliction, for it increaseth. Thou huntest me as a fierce lion; and again Thou shewest Thyself marvellous upon me. Thou renewest Thy witnesses against me and increasest Thine indignation upon me; changes and war are against me. Wherefore, then, hast Thou brought me forth out of the womb?! Oh that I had given up the ghost, and no eye had seen me! I should have been as though I had *not* been; I should have been carried from the womb to the grave! Are not my days few? Cease then, and let me alone, that I may take comfort a little before I go whence I shall not return, even to the land of darkness and the shadow of death - land of darkness, as darkness itself; and of the shadow of death, without any order, and where the light is as darkness."

Then answered Zophar the Naamathite, and said, "Should not the multitude of words be answered? And should a man full of talk be justified? Should thy lies make men hold their peace? And when thou mockest, shall no man make thee ashamed? For thou hast said, '*My doctrine is pure, and I am clean in Thine eyes*'. But, oh that God would speak and open His lips against thee! And that He would shew thee the secrets of wisdom, that they are double to that which is! Know therefore that God exacteth of thee less than thine iniquity deserveth! Canst thou, by searching, find out God? Canst thou find out the Almighty unto perfection? It is as high as heaven! What canst thou do? Deeper than <sup>1</sup>hell! What canst thou know? The measure thereof is longer than the earth, and broader than the sea! If He cut off, and <sup>2</sup>shut up, or gather together, then who can hinder Him? For He knoweth vain men; He seeth wickedness also; will He not then consider it? For vain man would be wise, though man be born like a wild ass's colt! If thou prepare thine heart and stretch out thine hands toward him... if iniquity be in thine hand, put it far away, and let not wickedness dwell in thy tabernacles! For then shalt thou lift up thy face without spot; yea, thou shalt be stedfast and shalt not fear, because thou shalt forget thy misery and remember it as waters that pass away. And thine age shall be clearer than the noonday; thou shalt shine forth, thou shalt be as the morning. And thou shalt be secure, because there is hope; yea, thou shalt dig about thee, and thou shalt take thy rest in safety. Also thou shalt lie down, and none shall make thee afraid; yea, many shall make suit unto thee. But the eyes of the wicked shall fail, and they shall not escape, and their hope shall be as the giving up of the ghost."

<sup>1</sup>the grave <sup>2</sup>close up/shut in

And Job answered and said, "No doubt <sup>1</sup>but ye are the people and wisdom shall die with you. But *I* have understanding as well as you. I am not inferior to you, yea, who knoweth not such things as these?! I am as one mocked of his neighbour, who calleth upon God, and He answereth him; the just upright man is laughed to scorn.

<sup>1</sup>(sarcastically) "you're all a pack of geniuses"

"He that is ready to slip with his feet is as a lamp despised in the thought of him that is at ease. The tabernacles of robbers prosper, and they that provoke God are secure; into whose hand God bringeth abundantly. But ask now the beasts, and they shall teach thee; and the fowls of the air, and they shall tell thee; or speak to the earth, and it shall teach thee; and the fishes of the sea shall declare unto thee. Who knoweth not in all these that the hand of the LORD hath wrought this? (in whose hand is the soul of every living thing, and the breath of all mankind). Doth not the ear try words? And the mouth taste his meat? With the ancient is wisdom; and in length of days understanding. With Him is wisdom and strength, He hath counsel and understanding. Behold, He breaketh down, and it cannot be built again; He shutteth up a man,

and there can be no opening. Behold, He withholdeth the waters, and they dry up; also He sendeth them out, and they overturn the earth. With Him is strength and wisdom; the deceived *and* the deceiver are His. He leadeth counsellors away spoiled, and maketh the judges fools. He looseth the bond of kings, and girdeth their loins with a girdle. He leadeth princes away spoiled, and overthroweth the mighty. He removeth away the speech of the trusty, and taketh away the understanding of the aged. He poureth contempt upon princes, and weakeneth the strength of the mighty. He discovereth deep things out of darkness, and bringeth out to light the shadow of death. He increaseth the nations, and destroyeth them; He enlargeth the nations, and straiteneth them again. He taketh away the heart of the chief of the people of the earth, and causeth them to wander in a wilderness where there is no way. They grope in the dark without light, and He maketh them to stagger like a drunken man. Lo, mine eye hath seen all this, mine ear hath heard and understood it. What ye know, the same do I know also; I am not inferior unto you! Surely I would speak to the Almighty, and I desire to reason with God! But ye are forgers of lies, ye are all physicians of no value. O that ye would altogether hold your peace - and *it* should be your wisdom! Hear now my reasoning, and hearken to the pleadings of my lips. Will ye speak wickedly for God? And talk deceitfully for Him? Will ye accept His person? Will ye contend for God? Is it *good* that He should search you out? Or, as one man mocketh another, do ye so mock *Him*? He will surely reprove you, if ye do secretly accept persons. Shall not His excellency make you afraid? And His dread fall upon you? Your remembrances are like unto ashes, your bodies to bodies of clay. Hold your peace, let me alone, that I may speak, and let come on me what will. Wherefore do I take my flesh in my teeth, and put my life in mine hand?

“Though He *slay* me, yet will I trust in Him!! But I will maintain mine own ways before Him. He also shall be my Salvation, for an hypocrite shall not come before Him. Hear diligently my speech and my declaration with your ears. Behold now, I have ordered my cause; I *know* that I shall be justified. Who is he that will plead with me? For now, if I hold my tongue, I shall give up the ghost! Only, do not two things unto me - then will I not hide myself from Thee: Withdraw thine hand far from me, and, let not Thy dread make me afraid. Then, call Thou, and I will answer; or, let *me* speak, and answer Thou *me*. How many are mine iniquities and sins? Make me to know my transgression and my sin. Wherefore hidest Thou thy face and holdest me for Thine enemy? Wilt Thou break a leaf driven to and fro? And wilt Thou pursue the dry stubble? For, Thou writest bitter things against me, and makest me to possess the iniquities of my youth. Thou puttest my feet also in the stocks, and lookest narrowly unto all my paths; thou settest a print upon the heels of my feet. And He, <sup>1</sup>as a rotten thing, consumeth, <sup>1</sup>as a garment that is moth eaten. <sup>1</sup>as with

“Man that is born of a woman is of few days, and full of trouble. He cometh forth like a flower, and is cut down; he fleeth also as a shadow, and continueth not. And dost thou open thine eyes upon such an one, and bringest *me* into judgment with thee? Who can bring a clean thing out of an unclean? Not one! Seeing his days are determined, the number of his months are with Thee, Thou hast appointed his bounds that he cannot pass; turn from him, that he may rest, till he shall accomplish, as an hireling, his day. For there is hope of a tree, if it be cut down, that it will sprout again, and that the tender branch thereof will not cease. Though the root thereof wax old in the earth and the stock thereof die in the ground, yet through the scent of water it will bud, and bring forth boughs like a plant!

“But *man* dieth, and wasteth away; yea, man giveth up the ghost, and where is he? As the waters fail from the sea and the flood decayeth and drieth up; so man lieth down, and riseth not. Till the heavens be no more, they shall not awake, nor be raised out of their sleep. O that Thou wouldest hide me in the grave, that Thou wouldest keep me secret until <sup>1</sup>Thy wrath be past, that Thou wouldest appoint me a set time and remember me! If a man die, shall he live again? All the days of my appointed time will I wait, <sup>2</sup>till my change come. Thou shalt call, and I will answer thee; Thou wilt have a desire to the work of Thine hands.

<sup>1</sup>NOTE: Here Job references the End Times Tribulation of God's wrath upon the earth <sup>2</sup>here Job references the resurrection of believers at the return of Christ when, as Paul tells us, “we shall be changed, in a moment, in the twinkling of an eye, at the Last Trump – for this mortal [body] must put on immortality... and the dead in Christ will rise first”

“For now Thou numberest my steps; dost Thou not watch over my sin? My transgression is sealed up in a bag, and Thou sewest up mine iniquity. And surely the mountain, falling, cometh to nought, and the rock is removed out of his place. The waters <sup>1</sup>wear the stones; Thou wastest away the things which grow out of the dust of the earth; and Thou destroyest the hope of man. Thou prevailedst for ever against him, and he passeth; Thou changest his countenance, and sendest him away. His sons come to honour, <sup>1</sup>and he

knoweth it not; and they are brought low, but he perceiveth it not of them. But his flesh upon him shall have pain, and his soul within him shall mourn.”

*<sup>1</sup>NOTE: This confirms King Solomon’s words, that, “The dead know not anything; neither hath he a portion in ANYTHING that is done under the sun”. Job here confirms that, once a man dies, he ceases to exist until called forth into life again in the resurrection at the end of time, after the wrath of God has swept the earth of evil.*

Then answered Eliphaz the Temanite, and said, “Should a wise man utter vain knowledge, and fill his belly with the east wind? Should he reason with unprofitable talk? Or with speeches wherewith he can do no good? Yea, thou castest off fear, and restrainest prayer before God! For thy mouth uttereth thine iniquity, and thou choosest the tongue of the crafty. Thine own mouth condemneth thee, and not I; yea, thine own lips testify against thee! Art *thou* the first man that was born? Or wast *thou* made before the hills? Hast *thou* heard the secret of God? And dost *thou* restrain wisdom to thyself? What knowest thou that we know not?! What understandest thou, which is not in us?! With us are both the grayheaded and very aged men, much elder than thy father! Are the consolations of God small with thee? Is there any secret thing with thee? Why doth thine heart carry thee away? And what do thy eyes wink at, that thou turnest thy spirit against God, and lettest such words go out of thy mouth?! What is man, that he should be clean? And he which is born of a woman, that he should be righteous? Behold, He putteth no trust in His saints; yea, the *heavens* are not clean in His sight! How much more abominable and filthy is *man*, which drinketh iniquity like water?!

“I will shew thee. Hear me; and that which I have seen I will declare, which wise men have told from their fathers and have not hid it, unto whom alone the earth was given and no stranger passed among them.

“The wicked man travaileth with pain all his days, and the number of years is hidden to the oppressor. A dreadful sound is in his ears; in prosperity the destroyer shall come upon him. He believeth not that he shall return out of darkness, and he is waited for of the sword. He wandereth abroad for bread, saying, *Where is it?* He knoweth that the day of darkness is ready at his hand. Trouble and anguish shall make him afraid; they shall prevail against him, as a king ready to the battle. For he stretcheth out his hand against God, and strengtheneth himself against the Almighty. He runneth upon him, even on his neck, upon the thick bosses of his bucklers, because he covereth his face with his fatness, and maketh collops of fat on his flanks. And he dwelleth in desolate cities, and in houses which no man inhabiteth, which are ready to become heaps. He shall not be rich, neither shall his substance continue, neither shall he prolong the perfection thereof upon the earth. He shall not depart out of darkness; the flame shall dry up his branches, and by the breath of his mouth shall he go away.

“Let not him that is deceived trust in vanity; for vanity shall be his recompence. It shall be accomplished before his time, and his branch shall not be green. He shall shake off his unripe grape as the vine, and shall cast off his flower as the olive. For the congregation of hypocrites shall be desolate, and fire shall consume the tabernacles of bribery. They conceive mischief, and bring forth vanity, and their belly prepareth deceit.”

Then Job answered and said, “I have heard many such things. Miserable comforters are ye all! Shall vain words have an end? Or what emboldeneth thee that thou answerest? I also could speak as ye do; if your soul were in my soul’s stead, I could heap up words against you, and shake mine head at you! <sup>1</sup>But I would strengthen you with my mouth, and the moving of my lips should assuage your grief.

*<sup>1</sup>In other words, I COULD say those same unfriendly things to you, but what I would really do is*

“Though I speak, my grief is not asswaged; and though I forbear, what am I eased? But now He hath made me weary; thou hast made desolate all my company! And thou hast filled me with wrinkles, which is a witness against me; and my leanness rising up in me beareth witness to my face.

<sup>1</sup>“He teareth me in his wrath, who hateth me: he gnasheth upon me with his teeth; mine enemy sharpeneth his eyes upon me. They have gaped upon me with their mouth; they have smitten me upon the cheek reproachfully; they have gathered themselves together against me. God hath delivered me to the ungodly, and turned me over into the hands of the wicked. *<sup>1</sup>this is a prophecy pertaining to Messiah*

“I was at ease, but He hath broken me asunder; He hath also taken me by my neck, and shaken me to pieces, and set me up for His <sup>1</sup>mark. His archers compass me round about, He cleaveth my reins asunder,

and doth not spare; He poureth out my gall upon the ground. He breaketh me with breach upon breach, He runneth upon me like a giant. I have sewed sackcloth upon my skin, and defiled my horn in the dust. My face is foul with weeping, and on my eyelids is the shadow of death - not for any injustice in *mine* hands; also my prayer is pure. O earth, cover not thou my blood, and let my cry have no place. Also now, behold, my witness is in heaven, and my record is on high! My friends scorn me; but mine eye poureth out tears unto God. O <sup>2</sup>that one might plead for a man with God, as a man pleadeth for his neighbour! When a few years are come, then I shall go the way whence I shall not return.

<sup>1</sup>target <sup>2</sup>a prophecy of Messiah, that Christ is become the Mediator between man and God

“My breath is corrupt, my days are extinct, the graves are ready for me. Are there not mockers with me? And doth not mine eye continue in their provocation? Lay down now, put me in a surety with Thee; who is he that will strike hands with me? For Thou hast hid their heart from understanding; therefore shalt Thou not exalt them. He that speaketh flattery to his friends, even the eyes of his children shall fail. He hath made me also a byword of the people; and aforetime I was as a <sup>1</sup>tabret.

<sup>1</sup>tamborine

“Mine eye also is dim by reason of sorrow, and all my members are as a shadow. Upright men shall be astonished at this, and the innocent shall stir up himself against the hypocrite. The righteous also shall hold on his way, and he that hath clean hands shall be stronger and stronger.

“But as for *you* all, do ye return, and come now; for I cannot find one wise man among you! My days are past, my purposes are broken off, even the thoughts of my heart. They change the night into day; the light is short because of darkness. If I wait, the grave is mine house; I have made my bed in the darkness. I have said to corruption, *Thou art my father*; to the worm, *Thou art my mother, and my sister*. And where is now my hope? As for my hope, who shall see it? They shall go down to the bars of the pit, when our rest together is in the dust.”

Then answered Bildad the Shuhite, and said, “How long will it be ere ye make an end of words?! Mark, and afterwards we will speak. Wherefore are we counted as beasts, and reputed vile in your sight?! He teareth himself in his anger; shall the earth be forsaken for thee? And shall the rock be removed out of his place? Yea, the light of the wicked shall be put out, and the spark of his fire shall not shine. The light shall be dark in his tabernacle, and his candle shall be put out with him. The steps of his strength shall be straitened, and his own counsel shall cast him down. For he is cast into a net by his own feet, and he walketh upon a snare. The gin shall take him by the heel, and the robber shall prevail against him. The snare is laid for him in the ground, and a trap for him in the way. Terrors shall make him afraid on every side, and shall drive him to his feet. His strength shall be hungerbitten, and destruction shall be ready at his side. It shall devour the strength of his skin; even the firstborn of death shall devour his strength. His confidence shall be rooted out of his tabernacle, and it shall bring him to the king of terrors. It shall dwell in his tabernacle, because it is none of his; brimstone shall be scattered upon his habitation. His roots shall be dried up beneath, and above shall his branch be cut off. His remembrance shall perish from the earth, and he shall have no name in the street. He shall be driven from light into darkness, and chased out of the world. He shall neither have son nor nephew among his people, nor any remaining in his dwellings. They that come after him shall be astonished at his day, as they that went before were affrighted. Surely such are the dwellings of the wicked, and this is the place of him that knoweth not God!”

Then Job answered and said, “How long will ye vex my soul, and break me in pieces with words? These ten times have ye reproached me; ye are not ashamed that ye make yourselves strange to me. And be it indeed that I have erred, mine error remaineth with myself. If indeed ye will magnify yourselves against me, and plead against me my reproach; know now that God hath overthrown me, and hath compassed me with His net. Behold, I cry out of wrong, but I am not heard; I cry aloud, but there is no judgment. He hath fenced up my way that I cannot pass, and He hath set darkness in my paths. He hath stripped me of my glory, and taken the crown from my head. He hath destroyed me on every side, and I am gone; and mine hope hath He removed like a tree.

“He hath also kindled His wrath against me, and He counteth me unto Him as one of his enemies. His troops come together, and raise up their way against me, and encamp round about my tabernacle. He hath put my brethren far from me, and mine acquaintance are verily estranged from me. My kinsfolk have

failed, and my familiar friends have forgotten me. They that dwell in mine house, and my maids, count me for a stranger. I am an alien in their sight. I called my servant, and he gave me no answer; I intreated him with my mouth. My breath is strange to my wife, though I intreated for the children's sake of mine own body. Yea, young children despised me; I arose, and they spake against me. All my inward friends abhorred me, and they whom I loved are turned against me. My bone cleaveth to my skin and to my flesh, and I am escaped with the skin of my teeth.

*[much of this section is prophecy about Messiah]*

"Have pity upon me, have pity upon me, O ye my friends! For the hand of God hath touched me. Why do ye persecute me as God, and are not satisfied with my flesh? Oh that my words were now written! Oh that they were printed in a book! That they were graven with an iron pen and lead in the rock for ever!

"For I know that my Redeemer liveth, and that He shall stand at the latter day upon the earth! And though after my skin-worms destroy this body, yet in my flesh shall I see God - whom I shall see for myself, and mine eyes shall behold, and not another; though my reins be consumed within me!

"But ye should say, 'Why persecute we him, seeing the root of the matter is found in me?' Be ye afraid of the sword; for wrath bringeth the punishments of the sword, that ye may know there is a judgment!"

Then answered Zophar the Naamathite, and said, "Therefore do my thoughts cause me to answer, and for this I make haste. I have heard the check of my reproach, and the spirit of my understanding causeth me to answer:

"Knowest thou not this of old, since man was placed upon earth, that the triumphing of the wicked is short, and the joy of the hypocrite but for a moment? Though his excellency mount up to the heavens and his head reach unto the clouds, yet he shall perish for ever like his own dung; they which have seen him shall say, *Where is he?* He shall fly away as a dream, and shall not be found; yea, he shall be chased away as a vision of the night. The eye also which saw him shall see him no more; neither shall his place any more behold him.

"His children shall seek to please the poor, and his hands shall restore their goods. His bones are full of the sin of his youth, which shall lie down with him in the dust. Though wickedness be sweet in his mouth, though he hide it under his tongue, though he spare it, and forsake it not; but keep it still within his mouth; yet his meat in his bowels is turned, it is the gall of asps within him.

"He hath swallowed down riches, and he shall vomit them up again; God shall cast them out of his belly. He shall suck the poison of asps; the viper's tongue shall slay him. He shall not see the rivers, the floods, the brooks of honey and butter. That which he laboured for shall he restore, and shall not swallow it down; according to his substance shall the restitution be, and he shall not rejoice therein. Because he hath oppressed and hath forsaken the poor, because he hath violently taken away an house which he builded not, surely he shall not feel quietness in his belly, he shall not save of that which he desired.

"There shall none of his meat be left; therefore shall no man look for his goods. In the fulness of his sufficiency he shall be in straits; every hand of the wicked shall come upon him. When he is about to fill his belly, God shall cast the fury of His wrath upon him, and shall rain it upon him while he is eating. He shall flee from the iron weapon, and the bow of steel shall strike him through. It is drawn, and cometh out of the body; yea, the glittering sword cometh out of his gall. Terrors are upon him. All darkness shall be hid in his secret places; a fire not blown shall consume him; it shall go ill with him that is left in his tabernacle. The heaven shall reveal his iniquity; and the earth shall rise up against him. The increase of his house shall depart, and his goods shall flow away in the day of his wrath. *This* is the portion of a wicked man from God, and the heritage appointed unto him by God."

But Job answered and said, "Hear diligently my speech, and let this be your consolations. Suffer me that I may speak; and after that I have spoken, mock on!

"As for me, is my complaint to man? And if it were so, why should not my spirit be troubled? Mark me, and be astonished, and lay your hand upon your mouth. Even when I remember I am afraid, and trembling taketh hold on my flesh. Wherefore do the wicked live, become old, yea, are mighty in power? Their seed is established in their sight with them, and their offspring before their eyes. Their houses are safe from fear, neither is the rod of God upon them. Their bull gendereth, and faileth not; their cow calveth, and

casteth not her calf. They send forth their little ones like a flock, and their children dance. They take the timbrel and harp, and rejoice at the sound of the organ. They spend their days in wealth, and in a moment go down to the grave. Therefore they say unto God, *'Depart from us; for we desire not the knowledge of thy ways. What is the Almighty, that we should serve Him? And what profit should we have if we pray unto Him?'*

"Lo, their good is not in their hand; the counsel of the wicked is far from me. How oft is the candle of the wicked put out! And how oft cometh their destruction upon them! God distributeth sorrows in His anger. They are as stubble before the wind, and as chaff that the storm carrieth away. God layeth up his iniquity for his children; He rewardeth him and he shall know it. His eyes shall see his destruction, and he shall drink of the wrath of the Almighty. For what pleasure hath he in his house after him, when the number of his months is cut off in the midst? Shall any teach God knowledge? Seeing He judgeth those that are high! One dieth in his full strength, being wholly at ease and quiet. His breasts are full of milk, and his bones are moistened with marrow. And another dieth in the bitterness of his soul, and never eateth with pleasure. They shall lie down alike in the dust, and the worms shall cover them.

"Behold, I know your thoughts, and the devices which ye wrongfully imagine against me. For ye say, *'Where is the house of the prince? And where are the dwelling places of the wicked?'* Have ye not asked them that go by the way? And do ye not know their tokens, that the wicked is reserved to the day of destruction? They shall be brought forth to the Day of Wrath. Who shall declare his way to his face? And who shall repay him what he hath done?

"Yet shall he be brought to the grave, and shall remain in the tomb. The clods of the valley shall be sweet unto him, and every man shall draw after him, as there are innumerable before him. How then comfort ye me in vain, seeing in your answers there remaineth falsehood?!"

Then Eliphaz the Temanite answered and said, "Can a man be profitable unto God, as he that is wise may be profitable unto himself? Is it any pleasure to the Almighty that thou art righteous? Or is it gain to him that thou makest thy ways perfect? Will he reprove thee for fear of thee? Will he enter with thee into judgment? Is not thy wickedness great and thine iniquities infinite? For, thou hast taken a pledge from thy brother for nought, and stripped the naked of their clothing. Thou hast not given water to the weary to drink, and thou hast withholden bread from the hungry. But as for the mighty man, he had the earth; and the honourable man dwelt in it. Thou hast sent widows away empty, and the arms of the fatherless have been broken. Therefore snares are round about thee, and sudden fear troubleth thee; or darkness, that thou canst not see; and abundance of waters cover thee.

"Is not God in the height of heaven? And, behold the height of the stars, how high they are! And thou sayest, *'How doth God know? Can He judge through the dark cloud? Thick clouds are a covering to Him that He seeth not; and He walketh in the circuit of heaven'*. Hast thou marked the old way which wicked men have trodden? Which were cut down out of time, whose foundation was overflown with a flood, which said unto God, *'Depart from us!'* and what can the Almighty do for them? Yet he filled their houses with good things, *'but the counsel of the wicked is far from Me'*. The righteous see it, and are glad; and the innocent laugh them to scorn. Whereas our substance is not cut down, but the remnant of them the fire consumeth.

"Acquaint now thyself with Him, and be at peace: thereby good shall come unto thee. Receive, I pray thee, the Law from His mouth, and lay up His Words in thine heart. If thou return to the Almighty, thou shalt be built up, thou shalt put away iniquity far from thy tabernacles. Then shalt thou lay up gold as dust, and the gold of Ophir as the stones of the brooks. Yea, the Almighty shall be thy defence, and thou shalt have plenty of silver. For then shalt thou have thy delight in the Almighty, and shalt lift up thy face unto God. Thou shalt make thy prayer unto Him, and He shall hear thee, and thou shalt pay thy vows. Thou shalt also decree a thing, and it shall be established unto thee; and the light shall shine upon thy ways. When men are cast down, then thou shalt say, *'There is lifting up!'* and he shall save the humble person. He shall deliver the island of the innocent; and it is delivered by the pureness of thine hands."

Then Job answered and said, "Even to day is my complaint bitter; my stroke is heavier than my groaning. Oh that I knew where I might find Him! That I might come even to His seat! I would order my cause before Him,

and fill my mouth with arguments. I would know the words which He would answer me, and understand what He would say unto me. Will he plead against me with His great power? No; but He would put *strength* in me. There the righteous might dispute with Him; so should I be delivered for ever from my judge.

“Behold, I go forward, but He is not there; and backward, but I cannot perceive Him. On the left hand, where He doth work, but I cannot behold Him. He hideth Himself on the right hand, that I cannot see Him. But He knoweth the way that I take. When He hath tried me, I shall come forth as gold. My foot hath held His steps, His Way have I kept, and not declined. Neither have I gone back from the commandment of His lips; I have esteemed the Words of His mouth more than my necessary food. But He is in one mind, and who can turn Him? And what His soul desireth, even that He doeth. For He performeth the thing that is appointed for me; and many such things are with Him.

“Therefore am I troubled at His presence; when I consider, I am afraid of Him. For God maketh my heart soft, and the Almighty troubleth me. Because I was not cut off before the darkness, neither hath He covered the darkness from my face.

“Why (seeing times are not hidden from the Almighty) do they that know Him not see His days? Some remove the landmarks; they violently take away flocks, and feed thereof. They drive away the ass of the fatherless, they take the widow’s ox for a pledge. They turn the needy out of the Way; the poor of the earth hide themselves together. Behold, as wild asses in the desert, go they forth to their work; rising betimes for a prey; the wilderness yieldeth food for them and for their children. They reap every one his corn in the field; and they gather the vintage of the wicked. They cause the naked to lodge without clothing, that they have no covering in the cold. They are wet with the showers of the mountains, and embrace the rock for want of a shelter. They pluck the fatherless from the breast, and take a pledge of the poor. They cause him to go naked without clothing, and they take away the sheaf from the hungry; which make oil within their walls, and tread their winepresses, and suffer thirst.

“Men groan from out of the city, and the soul of the wounded crieth out - yet God layeth not folly to them. They are of those that rebel against the Light; they know not the ways thereof, nor abide in the paths thereof. The murderer, rising with the light, killeth the poor and needy, and in the night is as a thief. The eye also of the adulterer waiteth for the twilight, saying, ‘*No eye shall see me*’, and disguiseth his face.

“In the dark they dig through houses which they had marked for themselves in the daytime; they know not the Light. For the morning is to them even as the shadow of death; if one know them, they are in the terrors of the shadow of death. He is swift as the waters; their portion is cursed in the earth; he beholdeth not the way of the vineyards.

“Drought and heat consume the snow waters; so doth the grave those which have sinned. The womb shall forget him; the worm shall feed sweetly on him; he shall be no more remembered; and wickedness shall be broken as a tree. He evil entreateth the barren that beareth not; and doeth not good to the widow. He draweth also the mighty with his power; he riseth up, and no man is sure of life. Though it be given him to be in safety, whereon he resteth; yet his eyes are upon their ways. They are exalted for a little while, but are gone and brought low; they are taken out of the way as all other, and cut off as the tops of the ears of corn. And if it be not so now, who will make me a liar, and make my speech nothing worth?”

Then answered Bildad the Shuhite, and said, “Dominion and fear are with Him, He maketh peace in his high places. Is there any number of His armies? And upon whom doth not His Light arise? How then can man be justified with God? Or how can he be clean that is born of a woman? Behold even to the moon, and it shineth not; yea, the stars are not pure in His sight. How much less man, that is a worm? And the son of man, which is a worm?”

But Job answered and said, “How hast thou helped him that is without power? How savest thou the arm that hath no strength? How hast thou counselled him that hath no wisdom? And how hast thou plentifully declared the thing as it is? To whom hast thou uttered words? And whose spirit came from thee? Dead things are formed from under the waters, and the inhabitants thereof. Hell is naked before Him, and destruction hath no covering. He stretcheth out the north over the empty place, and hangeth the earth upon nothing! He bindeth up the waters in His thick clouds; and the cloud is not rent under them. He holdeth back the face of His throne, and spreadeth His cloud upon it. He hath compassed the waters with

bounds, until the day and night come to an end. The pillars of heaven tremble and are astonished at His reproof. He divideth the sea with His power, and by His understanding He smiteth through the proud. By His spirit He hath garnished the heavens; His hand hath formed the crooked serpent. Lo, these are parts of His Ways; but how little a portion is heard of Him? But the thunder of His power, who can understand?"

Moreover Job continued his parable, and said, "As God liveth, who hath taken away my judgment, and the Almighty, who hath vexed my soul. All the while my breath is in me, and the <sup>1</sup>spirit of God is in my nostrils. My lips shall not speak wickedness, nor my tongue utter deceit. God forbid that I should justify you; till I die I will not remove mine integrity from me! My righteousness I hold fast, and will not let it go; my heart shall not reproach me so long as I live. Let mine enemy be as the wicked, and he that riseth up against me as the unrighteous. For what is the hope of the hypocrite, though he hath gained, when God taketh away his soul? Will God hear his cry when trouble cometh upon him? Will he delight himself in the Almighty? Will he always call upon God?

<sup>1</sup>רוּחַ (*Ruach*) the breath of life

"I will teach you by the hand of God: that which is with the Almighty will I not conceal. Behold, all ye yourselves have seen it; why then are ye thus altogether vain? This is the portion of a wicked man with God, and the heritage of oppressors, which they shall receive of the Almighty. If his children be multiplied, it is for the sword; and his offspring shall not be satisfied with bread. Those that remain of him shall be buried in death; and his widows shall not weep. Though he heap up silver as the dust, and prepare raiment as the clay; he may prepare it, but the *just* shall put it on, and the innocent shall divide the silver. He buildeth his house as a moth, and as a booth that the keeper maketh. The rich man shall lie down, but he shall not be gathered. He openeth his eyes, and he is not. Terrors take hold on him as waters, a tempest stealeth him away in the night. The east wind carrieth him away, and he departeth; and as a storm hurleth him out of his place. For God shall cast upon him, and not spare; he would fain flee out of his hand. Men shall clap their hands at him, and shall hiss him out of his place. Surely there is a vein for the silver, and a place for gold where they fine it. Iron is taken out of the earth, and brass is molten out of the stone. He setteth an end to darkness and searcheth out all perfection: the stones of darkness, and the shadow of death. The flood breaketh out from the inhabitant; even the waters forgotten of the foot; they are dried up, they are gone away from men.

"As for the earth, out of it cometh bread; and under it is turned up as it were fire. The stones of it are the place of sapphires; and it hath dust of gold. There is a path which no fowl knoweth, and which the vulture's eye hath not seen. The lion's whelps have not trodden it, nor the fierce lion passed by it. He putteth forth His hand upon the rock; He overturneth the mountains by the roots. He cutteth out rivers among the rocks; and His eye seeth every precious thing. He bindeth the floods from overflowing; and the thing that is hid bringeth He forth to light.

"But where shall wisdom be found? And where is the place of understanding? Man knoweth not the price thereof; neither is it found in the land of the living. The depth saith, "It is not in me", and the sea saith, "It is not with me." It cannot be gotten for gold, neither shall silver be weighed for the price thereof. It cannot be valued with the gold of Ophir, with the precious onyx, or the sapphire. The gold and the crystal cannot equal it; and the exchange of it shall not be for jewels of fine gold. No mention shall be made of coral, or of pearls; for the price of wisdom is above rubies. The topaz of Ethiopia shall not equal it, neither shall it be valued with pure gold.

"Whence then cometh wisdom? And where is the place of understanding? Seeing it is hid from the eyes of all living, and kept close from the fowls of the air. Destruction and death say, 'We have heard the fame thereof with our ears'. God understandeth the way thereof, and He knoweth the place thereof. For He looketh to the ends of the earth and seeth under the whole heaven, to make the weight for the winds; and he weigheth the waters by measure. When He made a decree for the rain and a way for the lightning of the thunder, then did He see it, and declare it; He prepared it, yea, and searched it out. And unto man He said, 'Behold! The fear of the Lord - that is wisdom. And, to depart from evil is understanding.'

Moreover Job continued his parable, and said, "Oh that I were as in months past, as in the days when God preserved me; when His candle shined upon my head, and when, by His Light, I walked through darkness; as

I was in the days of my youth, when the secret of God was upon my tabernacle; when the Almighty was yet with me, when my children were about me; when I washed my steps with butter, and the rock poured me out rivers of oil; when I went out to the gate through the city, when I prepared my seat in the street! The young men saw me and hid themselves, and the aged arose and stood up. The princes refrained talking and laid their hand on their mouth. The nobles held their peace, and their tongue cleaved to the roof of their mouth. When the ear heard me, then it blessed me; and when the eye saw me, it gave witness to me, because I delivered the poor that cried, and the fatherless, and him that had none to help him.

“The blessing of him that was ready to perish came upon me; and I caused the widow’s heart to sing for joy. I put on righteousness, and it clothed me; my judgment was as a robe and a diadem. I was eyes to the blind, and feet was I to the lame. I was a father to the poor; and the cause which I knew not I searched out. And I brake the jaws of the wicked, and plucked the spoil out of his teeth. Then I said, ‘I shall die in my nest, and I shall multiply my days as the sand.’ My root was spread out by the waters, and the dew lay all night upon my branch. My glory was fresh in me, and my bow was renewed in my hand. Unto me men gave ear, and waited, and kept silence at my counsel. After my words they spake not again; and my speech dropped upon them. And they waited for me as for the rain; and they opened their mouth wide as for the latter rain. If I laughed on them, they believed it not; and the light of my countenance they cast not down. I chose out their way, and sat chief, and dwelt as a king in the army, as one that comforteth the mourners.

“But now they that are younger than I have me in derision, whose fathers I would have disdained to have set with the dogs of my flock. Yea, whereto might the strength of their hands profit me, in whom old age was perished? For want and famine they were solitary; fleeing into the wilderness in former time desolate and waste; who cut up mallows by the bushes, and juniper roots for their meat. They were driven forth from among men (they cried after them as after a thief), to dwell in the cliffs of the valleys, in caves of the earth, and in the rocks. Among the bushes they brayed; under the nettles they were gathered together. They were children of fools, yea, children of base men - they were viler than the earth. And now am I their song, yea, I am their byword.

“They abhor me, they flee far from me, and spare not to spit in my face. Because he hath loosed my cord, and afflicted me, they have also let loose the bridle before me. Upon my right hand rise the youth; they push away my feet, and they raise up against me the ways of their destruction. They mar my path, they set forward my calamity, they have no helper. They came upon me as a wide breaking in of waters; in the desolation they rolled themselves upon me.

“Terrors are turned upon me; they pursue my soul as the wind; and my welfare passeth away as a cloud. And now my soul is poured out upon me; the days of affliction have taken hold upon me. My bones are pierced in me in the night season; and my sinews take no rest. By the great force of my disease is my garment changed; it bindeth me about as the collar of my coat. He hath cast me into the mire, and I am become like dust and ashes. I cry unto thee, and thou dost not hear me; I stand up, and thou regardest me not. Thou art become cruel to me; with thy strong hand thou opposest thyself against me. Thou liftest me up to the wind; thou causest me to ride upon it, and dissolvest my substance. For I know that thou wilt bring me to death, and to the house appointed for all living. Howbeit he will not stretch out his hand to the grave, though they cry in his destruction. Did not I weep for him that was in trouble? Was not my soul grieved for the poor? When I looked for good, then evil came unto me; and when I waited for light, there came darkness. My bowels boiled, and rested not; the days of affliction prevented me. I went mourning without the sun; I stood up, and I cried in the congregation. I am a brother to dragons, and a companion to owls. My skin is black upon me, and my bones are burned with heat. My harp also is turned to mourning, and my organ into the voice of them that weep. I made a covenant with mine eyes; why then should I think upon a maid? For what portion of God is there from above? And what inheritance of the Almighty from on high? Is not destruction to the wicked? And a strange punishment to the workers of iniquity? Doth not he see my ways, and count all my steps? If I have walked with vanity, or if my foot hath hastened to deceit; let me be weighed in an even balance, that God may know mine integrity. If my step hath turned out of the way, and mine heart walked after mine eyes, and if any blot hath cleaved to mine hands; then let me sow, and let another eat; yea, let my offspring be rooted out.

“If mine heart have been deceived by a woman, or if I have laid wait at my neighbour’s door; then

let my wife grind unto another, and let others bow down upon her. For this is an heinous crime; yea, it is an iniquity to be punished by the judges. For it is a fire that consumeth to destruction, and would root out all mine increase. If I did despise the cause of my manservant or of my maidservant when they contended with me, what then shall I do when God riseth up? And when He visiteth, what shall I answer Him? Did not He that made me in the womb make <sup>1</sup>him? And did not One fashion us in the womb? If I have withheld the poor from their desire, or have caused the eyes of the widow to fail, or have eaten my morsel myself alone and the fatherless hath not eaten thereof (for from my youth he was brought up with me, as with a father, and I have guided her from my mother's womb), if I have seen any perish for want of clothing or any poor without covering, if his <sup>2</sup>loins have not blessed me and if he were not warmed with the fleece of my sheep, if I have lifted up my hand against the fatherless when I saw my help in the gate - then let mine arm fall from my shoulder blade, and mine arm be broken from the bone!

*<sup>1</sup>my servant also <sup>2</sup>hug*

"For destruction from God was a terror to me, and by reason of His highness I could not endure. If I have made gold my hope or have said to the fine gold, 'Thou art my confidence', if I rejoiced because my wealth was great and because mine hand had gotten much, if I beheld the sun when it shined or the moon walking in brightness and my heart hath been secretly enticed or my mouth hath kissed my hand (this also were an iniquity to be punished by the judge; for I should have denied the God that is above), if I rejoiced at the destruction of him that hated me, or lifted up myself when evil found him; neither have I suffered my mouth to sin by wishing a curse to his soul. If the men of my tabernacle said not '*Oh that we had of his flesh!*' we cannot be satisfied. The stranger did not lodge in the street, but I opened my doors to the traveller.

"If I covered my transgressions as Adam, by hiding mine iniquity in my bosom. Did I fear a great multitude, or did the contempt of families terrify me, that I kept silence, and went not out of the door? Oh that one would hear me!

"Behold, my desire is that the Almighty would answer me, and that mine adversary had written a book. Surely I would take it upon my shoulder, and bind it as a crown to me. I would declare unto him the number of my steps; as a prince would I go near unto him. If my land cry against me, or that the furrows likewise thereof complain; if I have eaten the fruits thereof without money, or have caused the owners thereof to lose their life; let thistles grow instead of wheat, and cockle instead of barley. The words of Job are ended.

*'NOTE for the last three pages: Though Job was speaking of himself in this last defense against his friends, he also made several prophesies concerning the rejection of Messiah by mankind; and for this reason the pronouns (such as he/him/his/my/mine/etc) have not been capitalized, so that the Holy Spirit alone may impart to the reader discernment in understanding what belongs to Job and what belongs to Christ.*

So these three men ceased to answer Job, because he was righteous in his own eyes. Then was kindled the wrath of Elihu the son of Barachel the Buzite, of the kindred of Ram. Against Job was his wrath kindled, because he justified himself rather than God. Also against his three friends was his wrath kindled, because they had found no <sup>1</sup>answer, and yet had condemned Job.

*<sup>1</sup>cause or solution*

Now Elihu had waited till Job had spoken, because they were elder than he. When Elihu saw that there was no answer in the mouth of these three men, then his wrath was kindled.

And Elihu the son of Barachel the Buzite answered and said, "I am young, and ye are very old; wherefore I was afraid, and durst not shew you mine opinion. I said, <sup>1</sup>Days should speak, and multitude of years should teach wisdom. But, there is a spirit in man, and the inspiration of the Almighty giveth them understanding. Great men are not always wise; neither do the aged understand judgment.

"Therefore I said, '*Hearken to me; I also will shew mine opinion*'. Behold, I waited for your words; I gave ear to your reasons whilst ye searched out what to say. Yea, I attended unto you, and, behold, there was none of you that <sup>2</sup>convinced Job, or that answered his words, lest ye should say, '*We have found out wisdom; God thrusteth him down, not man*'.  
*<sup>1</sup>those who have lived many days <sup>2</sup>convicted*

"Now, he hath not directed his words against me; neither will I answer him with your speeches. They were amazed, they answered no more: they left off speaking. When I had waited (for they spake not, but stood still, and answered no more), I said, I will answer also my part, I also will shew mine opinion. For I

am full of matter, the spirit within me constraineth me. Behold, my belly is as wine which hath no vent; it is ready to burst like new bottles. I will speak, that I may be refreshed; I will open my lips and answer. Let me not, I pray you, accept any man's person, neither let me give flattering titles unto man. For I know not to give flattering titles; in so doing my Maker would soon take me away. Wherefore, Job, I pray thee, hear my speeches, and hearken to all my words. Behold, now I have opened my mouth, my tongue hath spoken in my mouth. My words shall be of the uprightness of my heart; and my lips shall utter knowledge clearly.

"The Spirit of God hath made me, and the breath of the Almighty hath given me life. If thou canst answer me, set thy words in order before me, stand up. Behold, I am, according to thy wish, in God's stead; I also am formed out of the clay. Behold, my terror shall not make thee afraid, neither shall my hand be heavy upon thee. Surely thou hast spoken in mine hearing, and I have heard the voice of thy words, saying, *'I am clean without transgression, I am innocent; neither is there iniquity in me. Behold, He findeth occasions against me, He counteth me for His enemy, He putteth my feet in the stocks, He marketh all my paths'*.

"Behold, in this thou art not just. I will answer thee that God is greater than man. Why dost thou strive against Him? For He giveth not account of any of His matters. For God speaketh once, yea twice, yet man perceiveth it not. In a dream, in a vision of the night, when deep sleep falleth upon men in slumberings upon the bed, then He openeth the ears of men and sealeth their instruction, that He may withdraw man from His purpose, and hide pride from man. He keepeth back his soul from the pit, and his life from perishing by the sword. He is chastened also with pain upon his bed, and the multitude of his bones with strong pain, so that his life abhorreth bread; and his soul, dainty meat. His flesh is consumed away, that it cannot be seen; and his bones that were not seen stick out. Yea, his soul draweth near unto the grave, and his life to the destroyers. If there be a messenger with him, an interpreter, one among a thousand, to shew unto man His uprightness, then He is gracious unto him, and saith, *'Deliver him from going down to the pit; I have found a ransom'*. His flesh shall be fresher than a child's; he shall return to the days of his youth. He shall pray unto God, and He will be favourable unto him; and he shall see His face with joy; for He will render unto man His righteousness.

"He looketh upon men, and if any say, *'I have sinned and perverted that which was right, and it profited me not'*, He will deliver his soul from going into the pit, and his life shall see the Light. Lo, all these things worketh God oftentimes with man, to bring back his soul from the pit, to be enlightened with the Light of the living. Mark well, O Job, hearken unto me! Hold thy peace, and I will speak. If thou hast any thing to say, answer me; speak, for I desire to justify thee. If not, hearken unto me; hold thy peace, and I shall teach thee wisdom.

Furthermore Elihu answered and said, "Hear my words, O ye wise men; and give ear unto me, ye that have knowledge! For the ear trieth words, as the mouth tasteth meat. Let us choose to us judgment; let us know among ourselves what is good. For Job hath said, *'I am righteous; and God hath taken away my judgment. Should I lie against my right? My wound is incurable without transgression'*. What man is like Job, who drinketh up scorning like water? Which goeth in company with the workers of iniquity, and walketh with wicked men. For he hath said, *'It profiteth a man nothing that he should delight himself with God'*.

"Therefore hearken unto me, ye men of understanding! Far be it from God, that He should do wickedness; and from the Almighty, that he should commit iniquity! For the work of a man shall He render unto him, and cause every man to find according to his ways. Yea, surely God will not do wickedly, neither will the Almighty pervert judgment! Who hath given Him a charge over the earth? Or, who hath disposed the whole world? If He set His heart upon man, if he gather unto Himself His spirit and his breath, all flesh shall perish together and man shall turn again unto dust!

"If now thou hast understanding, hear this. Harken to the voice of my words. Shall even he that hateth right govern? And wilt thou condemn him that is most just? Is it fit to say to a king, *'Thou art wicked'*? and to princes, *'Ye are ungodly'*? How much less to Him that accepteth not the persons of princes, nor regardeth the rich more than the poor? For they *all* are the work of His hands. In a moment shall they die, and the people shall be troubled at midnight, and pass away; and the mighty shall be taken away without hand. For His eyes are upon the ways of man, and He seeth all his goings. There is no darkness, nor shadow of death, where the workers of iniquity may hide themselves. For He will not lay upon man more than right; that he should enter into judgment with God. He shall break in pieces mighty men without

number, and set others in their stead. Therefore He knoweth their works, and He overturneth them in the night, so that they are destroyed. He striketh them as wicked men in the open sight of others, because they turned back from Him and would not consider any of His Ways, so that they cause the cry of the poor to come unto Him, and He heareth the cry of the afflicted.

“When He giveth quietness, who then can make trouble? And when He hideth His face, who then can behold Him? Whether it be done against a nation, or against a man only, that the hypocrite reign not, lest the people be ensnared. Surely it is meet to be said unto God, *‘I have borne chastisement, I will not offend any more; that which I see not, teach Thou me; if I have done iniquity, I will do no more’*.

“Should it be according to thy mind? He will recompense it, whether thou refuse or whether thou choose; and not I. Therefore speak what thou knowest! Let men of understanding tell me, and let a wise man hearken unto me. Job hath spoken without knowledge, and his words were without wisdom. My desire is that Job may be tried unto the end because of his answers for wicked men. For he addeth rebellion unto his sin, he clappeth his hands among us, and multiplieth his words against God.”

Elihu spake moreover and said, “Thinkest thou this to be right that thou saidst, *‘My righteousness is more than God’s?’* For thou saidst, *‘What advantage will it be unto thee?’* and *‘What profit shall I have if I be cleansed from my sin?’*

“I will answer thee and thy companions with thee. Look unto the heavens, and see; and behold the clouds which are higher than thou. If thou sinnest, what doest thou against Him? Or, if thy transgressions be multiplied, what doest thou unto Him? If thou be righteous, what givest thou Him? Or, what receiveth He of thine hand? Thy wickedness may hurt a man as thou art; and thy righteousness may profit the son of man. By reason of the multitude of oppressions they make the oppressed to cry; they cry out by reason of the arm of the mighty. But none saith, *‘Where is God my Maker who giveth songs in the night, who teacheth us more than the beasts of the earth, and maketh us wiser than the fowls of heaven?’*

“There they cry, but none giveth answer, because of the pride of evil men. Surely God will not hear vanity, neither will the Almighty regard it. Although thou sayest thou shalt not see Him, yet judgment is before Him; therefore trust thou in Him. But now, because it is not so, He hath visited in His anger; yet He knoweth it not in great extremity. Therefore doth Job open his mouth in vain; he multiplieth words without knowledge.”

Elihu also proceeded, and said, “Suffer me a little, and I will shew thee that I have yet to speak on God’s behalf. I will fetch my knowledge from afar, and will ascribe righteousness to my Maker. For truly my words shall not be false; He that is perfect in knowledge is with thee. Behold, God is mighty and despiseth not any; He is mighty in strength and wisdom. He preserveth not the life of the wicked, but giveth right to the poor. He withdraweth not His eyes from the righteous; but with kings are they on the throne; yea, He doth establish them for ever, and they are exalted. And if they be bound in fetters, and be holden in cords of affliction; then He sheweth them their work, and their transgressions that they have exceeded. He openeth also their ear to discipline, and commandeth that they return from iniquity. If they obey and serve Him, they shall spend their days in prosperity, and their years in pleasures. But if they obey not, they shall perish by the sword, and they shall die without knowledge. But the hypocrites in heart heap up wrath; they cry not when He bindeth them. They die in youth, and their life is among the unclean. He delivereth the poor in his affliction, and openeth their ears in oppression.

“Even so would He have removed thee out of the strait into a broad place, where there is no straitness; and that which should be set on thy table should be full of fatness. But thou hast fulfilled the judgment of the wicked; judgment and justice take hold on thee. Because there is wrath, beware lest He take thee away with His stroke - then a great ransom cannot deliver thee! Will He esteem thy riches? No, not gold, nor all the forces of strength. Desire not the night, when people are cut off in their place. Take heed, regard not iniquity; for this hast thou chosen rather than affliction. Behold, God exalteth by His power; who teacheth like Him? Who hath enjoined Him His Way? Or, who can say, *‘Thou hast wrought iniquity’?* Remember that thou magnify His work, which men behold. Every man may see it; man may behold it afar off. Behold, God is great, and we know Him not, neither can the number of His years be searched out. For He maketh small the drops of water; they pour down rain according to the vapour thereof

which the clouds do drop and distil upon man abundantly. Also, can any understand the spreadings of the clouds, or the noise of his tabernacle? Behold, He spreadeth His Light upon it, and covereth the bottom of the sea. For by them judgeth He the people; He giveth meat in abundance. With clouds He covereth the light; and commandeth it not to shine by the cloud that cometh betwixt. The noise thereof sheweth concerning it, the cattle also concerning the vapour.

“At this also my heart trembleth, and is moved out of his place. Hear attentively the noise of His voice, and the sound that goeth out of His mouth. He directeth it under the whole heaven, and His lightning unto the ends of the earth. After it a voice roareth; He thundereth with the voice of His excellency; and He will not stay them when His voice is heard. God thundereth marvellously with His voice; great things doeth He, which we cannot comprehend. For He saith to the snow, *‘Be thou on the earth’*; likewise to the small rain, and to the great rain of His strength. He sealet up the hand of every man; that all men may know His work. Then the beasts go into dens, and remain in their places. Out of the south cometh the whirlwind; and cold out of the north. By the breath of God frost is given, and the breadth of the waters is straitened. Also by watering He wearieth the thick cloud; He scattereth His bright cloud, and it is turned round about by His counsels, that they may do whatsoever He commandeth them upon the face of the world in the earth. He causeth it to come, whether for correction, or for His land, or for mercy.

“Hearken unto this, O Job! Stand still and consider the wondrous works of God. Dost thou know when God disposed them, and caused the light of His cloud to shine? Dost thou know the balancings of the clouds, the wondrous works of Him which is perfect in knowledge? How thy garments are warm, when he quieteth the earth by the south wind? Hast thou with Him spread out the sky, which is strong, and as a molten looking glass? Teach us what we shall say unto Him; for we cannot order our speech by reason of darkness. Shall it be told him that I speak? If a man speak, surely he shall be swallowed up. And now men see not the bright light which is in the clouds; but the wind passeth, and cleanseth them. Fair weather cometh out of the north. With God is terrible majesty. <sup>1</sup>Touching the Almighty, we cannot find Him out. He is excellent in power, and in judgment, and in plenty of justice. He will not afflict. Men do therefore fear Him. He respecteth not any that are wise of heart.” *<sup>1</sup>concerning/in regard to*

Then the LORD answered Job out of the whirlwind, and said, “Who is *this* that darkeneth counsel by words without knowledge?! Gird up now thy loins like a man. For I will demand of thee - and answer thou Me! Where wast thou when I laid the foundations of the earth? Declare, if thou hast understanding! Who hath laid the measures thereof, if thou knowest? Or, who hath stretched the line upon it? Whereupon are the foundations thereof fastened? Or, who laid the corner stone thereof when the morning stars sang together and all the sons of God shouted for joy? Or who shut up the sea with doors when it brake forth as if it had issued out of the womb, when I made the cloud the garment thereof, and thick darkness a swaddlingband for it, and brake up for it My decreed place, and set bars and doors, and said, *‘Hitherto shalt thou come but no further, and here shall thy proud waves be stayed’*?

“Hast *thou* commanded the morning since thy days, and caused the dayspring to know his place that it might take hold of the ends of the earth, that the wicked might be shaken out of it? It is turned as clay to the seal; and they stand as a garment. And from the wicked their light is withholden, and the high arm shall be broken.

“Hast *thou* entered into the springs of the sea? Or hast *thou* walked in the search of the depth? Have the gates of death been opened unto *thee*? Or hast *thou* seen the doors of the shadow of death? Hast *thou* perceived the breadth of the earth? Declare if thou knowest it all!

“Where is the way where light dwelleth? And as for darkness, where is the place thereof, that thou shouldest take it to the bound thereof, and that thou shouldest know the paths to the house thereof? Knowest thou it, because thou wast then born or because the number of thy days is great? Hast *thou* entered into the treasures of the snow? Or hast *thou* seen the treasures of the hail which I have reserved against the time of trouble, against the day of battle and war?

“By what way is the light parted, which scattereth the east wind upon the earth? Who hath divided a watercourse for the overflowing of waters, or a way for the lightning of thunder to cause it to rain on the earth where no man is; on the wilderness, wherein there is no man, to satisfy the desolate and waste ground and to cause the bud of the tender herb to spring forth?

"Hath the rain a father? Or who hath begotten the drops of dew? Out of whose womb came the ice? And the <sup>1</sup>hoary frost of heaven, who hath gendered it? The waters are hid as with a stone, and the face of the deep is frozen. <sup>1</sup>white

"Canst *thou* bind the sweet influences of <sup>1</sup>Pleiades or loose the bands of <sup>1</sup>Orion? Canst *thou* bring forth <sup>1</sup>Mazzaroth in his season? Or canst *thou* guide <sup>1</sup>Arcturus with his sons? Knowest *thou* the ordinances of heaven? Canst *thou* set the dominion thereof in the earth? Canst *thou* lift up thy voice to the clouds that abundance of waters may cover thee? Canst *thou* send lightnings that they may go, and say unto thee, '*Here we are*'? <sup>1</sup>constellations

"Who hath put wisdom in the inward parts? Or who hath given understanding to the heart? Who can number the clouds in wisdom? Or who can stay the bottles of heaven when the dust groweth into hardness and the clods cleave fast together? Wilt *thou* hunt the prey for the lion? Or fill the appetite of the young lions, when they couch in their dens and abide in the covert to lie in wait? Who provideth for the raven his food? When his young ones cry unto God, they wander for lack of meat.

"Knowest *thou* the time when the wild goats of the rock bring forth? Or canst *thou* mark when the hinds do calve? Canst *thou* number the months that they fulfil? Or knowest *thou* the time when they bring forth? They bow themselves, they bring forth their young ones, they cast out their sorrows. Their young ones are in good liking, they grow up with corn; they go forth, and return not unto them.

"Who hath sent out the wild ass free? Or who hath loosed the bands of the wild ass - whose house I have made the wilderness, and the barren land his dwellings? He scorneth the multitude of the city, neither regardeth he the crying of the driver. The range of the mountains is his pasture, and he searcheth after every green thing.

"Will the <sup>1</sup>unicorn be willing to serve *thee* or abide by thy crib? Canst *thou* bind the unicorn with his band in the furrow? Or will he harrow the valleys after *thee*? Wilt thou trust him, because his strength is great? Or wilt thou leave thy labour to him? Wilt thou believe him that he will bring home thy seed, and gather it into thy barn?

*<sup>1</sup>Any one-horned living or extinct creature with a single horn such as the Asian and Indian Rhinoceros (which is Greek for "nose horn").*

"Gavest *thou* the goodly wings unto the peacocks? Or wings and feathers unto the ostrich? - which leaveth her eggs in the earth, and warmeth them in dust, and forgetteth that the foot may crush them, or that the wild beast may break them. She is hardened against her young ones, as though they were not hers; her labour is in vain without fear; because God hath deprived her of wisdom, neither hath He imparted to her understanding. What time she lifteth up herself on high, she scorneth the horse and his rider.

"Hast *thou* given the horse strength? Hast *thou* clothed his neck with thunder? Canst *thou* make him afraid as a grasshopper? The glory of his nostrils is terrible. He paweth in the valley, and rejoiceth in his strength; he goeth on to meet the armed men. He mocketh at fear, and is not affrighted; neither turneth he back from the sword. The quiver rattleth against him, the glittering spear and the shield. He swalloweth the ground with fierceness and rage; neither believeth he that it is the sound of the trumpet. He saith among the trumpets, *Ha! Ha!* and he smelleth the battle afar off, the thunder of the captains, and the shouting.

"Doth the hawk fly by *thy* wisdom, and stretch her wings toward the south? Doth the eagle mount up at *thy* command, and make her nest on high? She dwelleth and abideth on the rock, upon the crag of the rock, and the strong place. From thence she seeketh the prey, and her eyes behold afar off. Her young ones also suck up blood; and where the slain are, there is she.

Moreover the LORD answered Job and said, "Shall he that contendeth with the Almighty instruct Him? He that reproveth God, let him answer it!"

Then Job answered the LORD and said, "Behold, I am vile! What shall I answer Thee? I will lay mine hand upon my mouth! Once have I spoken; but I will not answer! Yea, twice; but I will proceed no further!"

Then answered the LORD unto Job out of the whirlwind and said, "Gird up thy loins now like a man. I will demand of thee, and declare thou unto Me! Wilt thou also disannul My judgment? Wilt *thou* condemn *Me*, that thou mayest be righteous? Hast *thou* an arm like God? Or canst *thou* thunder with a voice like Him?

Deck thyself now with majesty and excellency, and array thyself with glory and beauty! Cast abroad the rage of thy wrath - and behold every one that is proud and abase him! Look on every one that is proud, and bring him low; and tread down the wicked in their place. Hide them in the dust together; and bind their faces in secret. *Then* will I also confess unto thee that *thine own* right hand can save thee! Behold now <sup>1</sup>behemoth, which I made with thee; he eateth grass as an ox. Lo now, his strength is in his loins, and his force is in the navel of his belly. He moveth his tail like a cedar; the sinews of his <sup>2</sup>stones are wrapped together. His bones are as strong pieces of brass; his bones are like bars of iron. He is the chief of the ways of God. He that made him can make His sword to approach unto him. Surely the mountains bring him forth food, where all the beasts of the field play. He lieth under the shady trees, in the covert of the reed, and fens. The shady trees cover him with their shadow; the willows of the brook compass him about. Behold, he drinketh up a river, and hasteth not; he trusteth that he can draw up <sup>3</sup>Jordan into his mouth. He taketh it with his eyes; his nose pierceth through snares.

<sup>1</sup>a great long-tailed dinosaur like a brachiosaurus <sup>2</sup>testicles <sup>3</sup>Jordan River

“Canst *thou* draw out <sup>1</sup>leviathan with an hook? Or his tongue with a cord which thou lettest down? Canst *thou* put an hook into his nose? Or bore his jaw through with a thorn? Will he make many supplications unto thee? Will he speak soft words unto thee? Will he make a covenant with thee? Wilt thou take him for a servant for ever? Wilt thou play with him as with a bird? Or wilt thou bind him for thy maidens? Shall the companions make a banquet of him? Shall they part him among the merchants? Canst thou fill his skin with barbed irons? Or his head with fish spears? Lay thine hand upon him, remember the battle, do no more. Behold, the hope of him is in vain. Shall not one be cast down even at the sight of him? None is so fierce that dare stir him up - who then is able to stand before Me? Who hath prevented me, that I should repay him? Whatsoever is under the whole heaven is Mine! I will not conceal his parts, nor his power, nor his comely proportion. Who can discover the face of his garment? Or who can come to him with his double bridle? Who can open the doors of his face? His teeth are terrible round about. His scales are his pride, shut up together as with a close seal. One is so near to another that no air can come between them. They are joined one to another, they stick together, that they cannot be sundered. By his <sup>2</sup>neesings a light doth shine, and his eyes are like the eyelids of the morning. Out of his mouth go burning lamps, and sparks of fire leap out. Out of his nostrils goeth smoke, as out of a seething pot or caldron. His breath kindleth coals, and a flame goeth out of his mouth. In his neck remaineth strength, and sorrow is turned into joy before him. The flakes of his flesh are joined together, they are firm in themselves; they cannot be moved. His heart is as firm as a stone; yea, as hard as a piece of the nether millstone. When he raiseth up himself, the mighty are afraid; by reason of breakings they purify themselves. The sword of him that layeth at him cannot hold - the spear, the dart, nor the habergeon. He esteemeth iron as straw, and brass as rotten wood. The arrow cannot make him flee; slingstones are turned with him into stubble. Darts are counted as stubble; he laugheth at the shaking of a spear. Sharp stones are under him; he spreadeth sharp pointed things upon the mire. He maketh the deep to boil like a pot; he maketh the sea like a pot of ointment. He maketh a path to shine after him (one would think the deep to be <sup>3</sup>hoary). Upon earth there is not his like, who is made without fear. He beholdeth all high things; he is a king over all the children of pride.”

<sup>1</sup>a great sea dinosaur. Note: In 2008, researchers from the Natural History Museum of Rotterdam discovered in South America the remains of an extinct carnivorous whale called Leviathan Melvillei that was large enough to make a snack of a blue whale – the largest living creature on earth today [AOLnews] <sup>2</sup>sneezing/nose blasts <sup>3</sup>white

Then Job answered the LORD, and said, “I know that thou canst do every thing, and that no thought can be withholden from Thee. Who is he that hideth counsel without knowledge? Therefore have I uttered that I understood not; things too wonderful for me, which I knew not. Hear, I beseech Thee, and I will speak. I will demand of Thee, and declare Thou unto me. I have heard of thee by the hearing of the ear. But now mine eye seeth thee. Wherefore I abhor myself, and repent in dust and ashes.”

And it was so that, after the LORD had spoken these words unto Job, the LORD said to Eliphaz the Temanite, “My wrath is kindled against thee, and against thy two friends! For ye have not spoken of Me the thing that is right, as My servant Job hath. Therefore take unto you now seven bullocks and seven rams, and go to My servant Job, and offer up for yourselves a burnt offering; and My servant Job shall pray for you - for *him* will I accept, lest I deal with you after your folly, in that ye have not spoken of Me the thing which is right, like

My servant Job!"

So Eliphaz the Temanite and Bildad the Shuhite and Zophar the Naamathite went and did according as the LORD commanded them. The LORD also accepted Job. And the LORD turned the captivity of Job, when he prayed for his friends. Also, the LORD gave Job *twice* as much as he had before. Then came there unto him all his brethren, and all his sisters, and all they that had been of his acquaintance before, and did eat bread with him in his house; and they bemoaned him and comforted him over all the evil that the LORD had brought upon him. Every man also gave him a piece of money, and every one an earring of gold. So the LORD blessed the latter end of Job more than his beginning - for he had fourteen thousand sheep, and six thousand camels, and a thousand yoke of oxen, and a thousand she asses. He had also seven sons and three daughters.

- And he called the name of the first, Jemima;
- and the name of the second, Kezia;
- and the name of the third, Keren-happuch.

And in all the land were no women found so fair as the daughters of Job; and their father gave them inheritance among their brethren. After this lived Job an hundred and forty years, and saw his sons, and his sons' sons - even four generations. So Job died, being old and full of days.

Blessed is the man that walketh not in the counsel of the ungodly, nor standeth in the way of sinners, nor sitteth in the seat of the scornful. But his delight is in the Law of the LORD; and in His Law doth he meditate day and night. And he shall be like a tree planted by the rivers of water that bringeth forth his fruit in his season; his leaf also shall not wither, and whatsoever he doeth shall prosper. The ungodly are not so, but are like the chaff which the wind driveth away. Therefore the ungodly shall not stand in the Judgment, nor sinners in the Congregation of the Righteous. For the LORD knoweth the way of the righteous; but the way of the ungodly shall perish.

Why do the heathen rage, and the people imagine a vain thing? The kings of the earth set themselves and the rulers take counsel together against the LORD and against His <sup>1</sup>Anointed, saying, "Let us break Their bands asunder and cast away Their cords from us!" He that sitteth in the heavens shall laugh; the Lord shall have them in derision. Then shall He speak unto them in His wrath, and vex them in His sore displeasure. Yet have I set My King upon My Holy Hill of Zion. I will declare the decree! The LORD hath said unto Me: Thou art My Son, this day have I begotten Thee! Ask of Me, and I shall give Thee the heathen for Thine inheritance, and the uttermost parts of the earth for Thy possession. Thou shalt break them with a rod of iron; Thou shalt dash them in pieces like a potter's vessel. Be wise now therefore, O ye kings! Be instructed, ye judges of the earth! Serve the LORD with fear, and rejoice with trembling. Kiss the Son, lest He be angry and ye perish from the way when His wrath is kindled but a little. Blessed are all they that put their trust in Him!

*<sup>1</sup>Messiah*

(A Psalm of David, when he fled from Absalom his son)

LORD, how are they increased that trouble me! Many are they that rise up against me! Many there be which say of my soul, "There is no help for him in God!" [<sup>1</sup>Selah]. But Thou, O LORD, art a Shield for me - my Glory and the Lifter-Up of mine head. I cried unto the LORD with my voice and He heard me out of His Holy Hill. [Selah]. I laid me down and slept; I awaked - for the LORD sustained me. I will not be afraid of ten thousands of people that have set themselves against me round about. Arise, O LORD! Save me, O my God! For Thou hast smitten all mine enemies upon the cheek bone! Thou hast broken the teeth of the ungodly! Salvation belongeth unto the LORD! Thy blessing is upon Thy People! [<sup>1</sup>Selah].

*<sup>1</sup>an unknown musical term*

(To the chief Musician on <sup>1</sup>Neginoth, A Psalm of David)

Hear me when I call, O God of my righteousness! Thou hast enlarged me when I was in distress; have mercy upon me, and hear my prayer. O ye sons of men, how long will ye turn my glory into shame? How long will ye love vanity, and seek after leasing? [Selah]. But know that the LORD hath set apart him that is godly for Himself. The LORD will hear when I call unto Him. Stand in awe, and sin not! Commune with your own heart

upon your bed, and be still. [Selah]. Offer the sacrifices of righteousness, and put your trust in the LORD. There be many that say, "Who will shew us any good?" LORD, lift Thou up the light of Thy countenance upon us. Thou hast put gladness in my heart, more than in the time that their corn and their wine increased. I will both lay me down in peace, and sleep; for Thou, LORD, only makest me dwell in safety. <sup>1</sup>*a stringed instrument*

(To the chief Musician upon <sup>1</sup>Nehiloth, A Psalm of David)

GIVE ear to my words, O LORD, consider my meditation. Hearken unto the voice of my cry, my King, and my God; for unto Thee will I pray. My voice shalt Thou hear in the morning, O LORD; in the morning will I direct my prayer unto Thee, and will look up. For Thou art not a God that hath pleasure in wickedness, neither shall evil dwell with Thee. The foolish shall not stand in Thy sight; Thou hatest all workers of iniquity. Thou shalt destroy them that speak leasing; the LORD will abhor the bloody and deceitful man. But as for me, I will come into Thy House in the multitude of Thy mercy; and in Thy fear will I worship toward Thy Holy Temple. Lead me, O LORD, in Thy righteousness because of mine enemies; make Thy Way straight before my face. For there is no faithfulness in their mouth, their inward part is very wickedness; their throat is an open sepulcher, they flatter with their tongue. Destroy Thou them, O God, let them fall by their own counsels. Cast them out in the multitude of their transgressions, for they have rebelled against Thee. But let all those that put their trust in Thee rejoice! Let them ever shout for joy because thou defendest them. Let them also that love Thy name be joyful in Thee. For Thou, LORD, wilt bless the righteous; with favour wilt Thou compass him as with a shield. <sup>1</sup>*a type of flute*

(To the chief Musician on <sup>1</sup>Neginoth upon Sheminith, A Psalm of David)

O LORD, rebuke me not in Thine anger, neither chasten me in Thy hot displeasure. Have mercy upon me, O LORD, for I am weak; O LORD, heal me, for my bones are vexed. My soul is also sore vexed; but Thou, O LORD, how long? Return, O LORD, deliver my soul; oh save me for Thy mercies' sake! For in death there is no remembrance of Thee; in the grave who shall give Thee thanks? I am weary with my groaning; all the night make I my bed to swim - I water my couch with my tears. Mine eye is consumed because of grief; it waxeth old because of all mine enemies. Depart from me, all ye workers of iniquity, for the LORD hath heard the voice of my weeping! The LORD hath heard my supplication; the LORD will receive my prayer. Let all mine enemies be ashamed and sore vexed; let them return and be ashamed suddenly. <sup>1</sup>*an 8-stringed lyre*

(<sup>1</sup>Shiggaion of David, which he sang unto the LORD concerning the words of Cush the Benjamite)

O LORD my God, in Thee do I put my trust; save me from all them that persecute me and deliver me, lest he tear my soul like a lion, rending it in pieces, while there is none to deliver. O LORD my God, if I have done this, if there be iniquity in my hands, if I have rewarded evil unto him that was at peace with me - (yea, I have delivered him that without cause is mine enemy) - let the enemy persecute my soul and take it; yea, let him tread down my life upon the earth and lay mine honour in the dust. [Selah]. Arise, O LORD, in Thine anger, lift up thyself because of the rage of mine enemies; and awake for me to the judgment that Thou hast commanded. So shall the congregation of the people compass Thee about; for their sakes therefore return Thou on high! The LORD shall judge the people - judge me, O LORD, according to my righteousness and according to mine integrity that is in me. Oh let the wickedness of the wicked come to an end, but establish the just; for the righteous God trieth the hearts and reins. My defence is of God, which saveth the upright in heart. God judgeth the righteous, and God is angry with the wicked every day. If he turn not, He will whet His sword; He hath bent His bow and made it ready. He hath also prepared for Him the instruments of death; He ordaineth His arrows against the persecutors. Behold, he travaileth with iniquity, and hath conceived mischief, and brought forth falsehood. He made a pit, and digged it, and is fallen into the ditch which he made. His mischief shall return upon his own head, and his violent dealing shall come down upon his own <sup>2</sup>pate. I will praise the LORD according to his righteousness, and will sing praise to the name of the LORD most high. <sup>1</sup>*passionate and rapid song* <sup>2</sup>*crowns of the head*

(To the chief Musician upon <sup>1</sup>Gittith, A Psalm of David)

O LORD our Lord, how excellent is Thy name in all the earth, who hast set Thy glory above the heavens! Out of the mouth of babes and sucklings hast Thou <sup>2</sup>ordained strength because of Thine enemies, that Thou

mightest still the enemy and the avenger. When I consider Thy heavens, the work of Thy fingers - the moon and the stars which Thou hast ordained - what is man that Thou art mindful of him, and the son of man that Thou visitest him? For thou hast made him a little lower than the angels and hast crowned him with glory and honour. Thou madest him to have dominion over the works of Thy hands; Thou hast put all things under his feet - all sheep and oxen, yea, and the beasts of the field, the fowl of the air and the fish of the sea, and whatsoever passeth through the paths of the seas. O LORD our Lord, how excellent is Thy name in all the earth!

*<sup>1</sup>believed to be a Gittite harp <sup>2</sup>perfected praise*

(To the chief Musician upon <sup>1</sup>Muth-labben, A Psalm of David)

I will praise Thee, O LORD, with my whole heart; I will shew forth all Thy marvellous works. I will be glad and rejoice in Thee! I will sing praise to thy name, O thou most High. When mine enemies are turned back, they shall fall and perish at Thy presence. For Thou hast maintained my right and my cause; Thou <sup>2</sup>satest in the throne judging right. Thou hast rebuked the heathen, Thou hast destroyed the wicked, Thou hast put out their name for ever and ever. O thou enemy, destructions are come to a perpetual end! And thou hast destroyed cities; their memorial is perished with them. But the LORD shall endure for ever! He hath prepared His throne for judgment. And He shall judge the world in righteousness; He shall minister judgment to the people in uprightness. The LORD also will be a Refuge for the oppressed, a Refuge in times of trouble. And they that know Thy name will put their trust in Thee; for Thou, LORD, hast not forsaken them that seek Thee. Sing praises to the LORD which dwelleth in Zion! Declare among the people His doings! When He maketh inquisition for blood, He remembereth them – He forgetteth not the cry of the humble. Have mercy upon me, O LORD! Consider my trouble which I suffer of them that hate me, Thou that liftest me up from the gates of death, that I may shew forth all Thy praise in the gates of the daughter of Zion. I will rejoice in Thy salvation. The heathen are sunk down in the pit that they made; in the net which they hid is their own foot taken. The LORD is known by the judgment which He executeth; the wicked is snared in the work of his own hands. [Higgaion Selah]. The wicked shall be turned into hell, and all the nations that forget God. For the needy shall not alway be forgotten; the expectation of the poor shall not perish for ever. Arise, O LORD; let not man prevail; let the heathen be judged in Thy sight. Put them in fear, O LORD, that the nations may know themselves to be but men. [Selah].

*<sup>1</sup>“death for the son” <sup>2</sup>did sit/sat down*

Why standest Thou afar off, O LORD? Why hidest Thou Thyself in times of trouble? The wicked in his pride doth persecute the poor; let them be taken in the devices that they have imagined! For the wicked boasteth of his heart's desire and blesseth the covetous, whom the LORD abhorreth. The wicked, through the pride of his countenance, will not seek after God. God is not in all his thoughts; his ways are always grievous, Thy judgments are far above out of his sight. As for all his enemies, he puffeth at them. He hath said in his heart, “I shall not be moved, for I shall never be in adversity!” His mouth is full of cursing and deceit and fraud; under his tongue is mischief and vanity. He sitteth in the lurking places of the villages, in the secret places doth he murder the innocent. His eyes are <sup>1</sup>privily set against the poor, he lieth in wait secretly as a lion in his den. He lieth in wait to catch the poor, he doth catch the poor when he draweth him into his net. He croucheth and humbleth himself, that the poor may fall by his strong ones. He hath said in his heart, “God hath forgotten! He hideth His face; He will never see it!” Arise, O LORD! O God, lift up Thine hand! Forget not the humble! Wherefore doth the wicked contemn God? He hath said in his heart, “Thou wilt not <sup>2</sup>require it.” Thou *hast* seen it! For Thou beholdest mischief and spite, to <sup>2</sup>requite it with Thy hand. The poor committeth himself unto Thee; Thou art the Helper of the fatherless. Break Thou the arm of the wicked and the evil man! Seek out his wickedness till Thou find none. The LORD is King for ever and ever! The heathen are perished out of His land! LORD, Thou hast heard the desire of the humble, Thou wilt prepare their heart, Thou wilt cause Thine ear to hear, to judge the fatherless and the oppressed, that the man of the earth may no more oppress.

*<sup>1</sup>secretly/privately <sup>2</sup>judge & avenge*

(To the chief Musician, A Psalm of David)

In the LORD put I my trust! How say ye to my soul, “Flee as a bird to your mountain?” For, lo, the wicked bend their bow, they make ready their arrow upon the string, that they may privily shoot at the upright in heart. If the foundations be destroyed, what can the righteous do? The LORD is in His Holy Temple, the

LORD's throne is in heaven; His eyes behold, His eyelids <sup>1</sup>try, the children of men. The LORD trieth the righteous; but the wicked and him that loveth violence His soul hateth. Upon the wicked He shall rain snares, fire and brimstone, and an horrible tempest - this shall be the portion of their cup. For the righteous LORD loveth righteousness; His countenance doth behold the upright.

(To the chief Musician upon Sheminith, A Psalm of David)

Help, LORD!! For the godly man ceaseth; for the faithful fail from among the children of men! They speak vanity every one with his neighbor; with flattering lips and with a double heart do they speak. The LORD shall cut off all flattering lips, and the tongue that speaketh proud things, who have said, "*With our tongue will we prevail; our lips are our own; who is lord over us?!*" For the oppression of the poor, for the sighing of the needy, now will I arise, saith the LORD; I will set him in safety from him that puffeth at him!" The Words of the LORD are pure Words – as silver tried in a furnace of earth, purified seven times. Thou shalt keep them, O LORD, Thou shalt preserve them from this generation for ever. The wicked walk on every side when the vilest men are exalted.

(To the chief Musician, A Psalm of David)

How long wilt Thou forget me, O LORD? For ever? How long wilt Thou hide Thy face from me? How long shall I take counsel in my soul, having sorrow in my heart daily? How long shall mine enemy be exalted over me? Consider and hear me, O LORD my God! Lighten mine eyes, lest I sleep the sleep of death; lest mine enemy say, "*I have prevailed against him!*" and those that trouble me rejoice when I am moved. But I have trusted in Thy mercy; my heart shall rejoice in Thy salvation. I will sing unto the LORD because He hath dealt bountifully with me.

(To the chief Musician, A Psalm of David)

The fool hath said in his heart, "*There is no God.*" They are corrupt, they have done abominable works, there is none that doeth good. The LORD looked down from heaven upon the children of men, to see if there were any that did understand, and seek God. They are all gone aside, they are all together become filthy; there is none that doeth good, no, not one. Have all the workers of iniquity no knowledge, who eat up My people as they eat bread, and call not upon the LORD? There were they in great fear - for God is in the generation of the righteous. Ye have shamed the counsel of the poor, because the LORD is His Refuge. Oh that the Salvation of Israel were come out of Zion! When the LORD bringeth back the captivity of His people, Jacob shall rejoice and Israel shall be glad!

(A Psalm of David)

Lord, who shall abide in Thy Tabernacle? Who shall dwell in Thy holy hill? He that walketh uprightly and worketh righteousness and speaketh the truth in his heart. He that backbiteth not with his tongue, nor doeth evil to his neighbour, nor taketh up a reproach against his neighbour. In whose eyes a vile person is contemned; but he honoureth them that fear the LORD. He that sweareth to his own hurt, and changeth not. He that putteth not out his money to usury, nor taketh reward against the innocent. He that doeth these things shall never be moved.

(Michtam of David)

Preserve me, O God! For in Thee do I put my trust! O my soul, thou hast said unto the LORD, "Thou art my Lord!" My goodness extendeth not to Thee, but to the <sup>1</sup>saints that are in the earth and to the excellent, in whom is all My delight. Their sorrows shall be multiplied that hasten after another god. Their drink offerings of blood will I not offer, nor take up their names into My lips. The LORD is the portion of Mine inheritance and of My cup; Thou maintainest My lot. The <sup>2</sup>lines are fallen unto Me in pleasant places - yea, I have a goodly heritage. I will bless the LORD who hath given Me counsel; My <sup>3</sup>reins also instruct Me in the night seasons. I have set the LORD always before Me. Because He is at My right hand, I shall not be moved. Therefore My heart is glad and My glory rejoiceth, My flesh also shall rest in Hope, for Thou wilt not leave My soul in <sup>4</sup>hell; neither wilt Thou suffer Thine Holy One to see <sup>5</sup>corruption. Thou wilt shew Me the path of life; in Thy presence is fulness of joy; at Thy right hand there are pleasures for evermore.

*NOTE: This Psalm is a prophecy of the resurrection of Messiah. <sup>1</sup>believers <sup>2</sup>"lines" refer to the measuring of a territory's borders for ownership <sup>3</sup>literally "kidney" but is a figure of speech referring to the seat of conscience and the mind <sup>4</sup>the grave <sup>5</sup>bodily decay/decomposition in death*

(A Prayer of David)

Hear the right, O LORD! Attend unto my cry! Give ear unto my prayer that goeth not out of feigned lips. Let my sentence come forth from Thy presence. Let Thine eyes behold the things that are equal. Thou hast proved mine heart. Thou hast visited me in the night. Thou hast tried me, and shalt find nothing. I am purposed that my mouth shall not transgress. Concerning the works of men, by the Word of Thy lips I have kept me from the paths of the destroyer. Hold up my goings in Thy paths that my footsteps slip not. I have called upon Thee, for Thou wilt hear me, O God. Incline Thine ear unto me, and hear my speech. Shew Thy marvellous lovingkindness, O Thou that savest by Thy right hand them which put their trust in Thee from those that rise up against them. Keep me as the apple of the eye. Hide me under the shadow of Thy wings from the wicked that oppress me, from my deadly enemies who compass me about. They are inclosed in their own fat; with their mouth they speak proudly. They have now compassed us in our steps. They have set their eyes bowing down to the earth, like as a lion that is greedy of his prey, and as it were a young lion lurking in secret places. Arise, O LORD! Disappoint him! Cast him down! Deliver my soul from the wicked, which is Thy Sword; from men which are thy hand, O LORD, from men of the world, which have their portion in this life, and whose belly Thou fillest with Thy hid treasure. They are full of children, and leave the rest of their substance to their babes. As for me, I will behold Thy face in righteousness. I shall be satisfied, when I awake, with Thy likeness.

(To the chief Musician, A Psalm of David, the servant of the LORD, who spake unto the LORD the words of this song in the day that the LORD delivered him from the hand of all his enemies and from the hand of Saul.

And he said:)

I will love Thee, O LORD, my Strength. The LORD is my Rock and my Fortress and my Deliverer! My God, my Strength, in whom I will trust! My Buckler and the Horn of my Salvation and my High Tower! I will call upon the LORD, who is worthy to be praised! So shall I be saved from mine enemies. The sorrows of death compassed me, and the floods of ungodly men made me afraid. The sorrows of <sup>1</sup>hell compassed me about. The snares of death <sup>2</sup>prevented me. In my distress I called upon the LORD and cried unto my God. He heard my voice out of His Temple, and my cry came before Him, even into His ears. Then the earth shook and trembled. The foundations also of the hills moved and were shaken because He was wroth. There went up a smoke out of His nostrils, and fire out of His mouth devoured; coals were kindled by it. He bowed the heavens also and came down, and darkness was under His feet. And He rode upon a cherub, and did fly. Yea, He did fly upon the wings of the wind. He made darkness His secret place. His pavilion round about Him were dark waters and thick clouds of the skies. At the brightness that was before Him His thick clouds passed, hail stones and coals of fire. The LORD also thundered in the heavens, and the Highest gave His voice; hail stones and coals of fire. Yea, He sent out His arrows and scattered them; and He shot out lightnings and discomfited them. Then the channels of waters were seen, and the foundations of the world were discovered at Thy rebuke, O LORD, at the blast of the breath of Thy nostrils. He sent from above, He took me, He drew me out of many waters. He delivered me from my strong enemy and from them which hated me; for they were too strong for me. They <sup>2</sup>prevented me in the day of my calamity; but the LORD was my Stay. He brought me forth also into a large place; He delivered me, because He delighted in me. The LORD rewarded me according to my righteousness; according to the cleanness of my hands hath He recompensed me. For I have kept the Ways of the LORD, and have not wickedly departed from my God. For all His judgments were before me, and I did not put away His statutes from me. I was also upright before Him and I kept myself from mine iniquity. Therefore hath the LORD recompensed me according to my righteousness, according to the cleanness of my hands in His eyesight. With the merciful Thou wilt shew Thyself merciful. With an upright man Thou wilt shew Thyself upright. With the pure Thou wilt shew Thyself pure. And with the froward Thou wilt shew Thyself froward. For Thou wilt save the afflicted people, but wilt bring down high looks. For Thou wilt light my candle - the LORD my God will enlighten my darkness. For by Thee I have run through a troop; and by my God have I leaped over a wall. As for God, His Way is perfect.

The Word of the LORD is tried. He is a Buckler to all those that trust in Him. For who is God save the LORD? Or, who is a Rock save our God? It is God that girdeth me with strength and maketh my way perfect. He maketh my feet like hinds' feet, and setteth me upon my high places. He teacheth my hands to war so that a bow of steel is broken by mine arms. Thou hast also given me the Shield of Thy Salvation. And Thy right hand hath holden me up, and Thy gentleness hath made me great. Thou hast enlarged my steps under me, that my feet did not slip. I have pursued mine enemies and overtaken them, neither did I turn again till they were consumed. I have wounded them that they were not able to rise; they are fallen under my feet. For Thou hast girded me with strength unto the battle. Thou hast subdued under me those that rose up against me. Thou hast also given me the necks of mine enemies, that I might destroy them that hate me. They cried, but there was none to save them; even unto the LORD, but He answered them not. Then did I beat them small as the dust before the wind; I did cast them out as the dirt in the streets. Thou hast delivered Me from the strivings of the people, and Thou hast made Me the Head of the heathen - a people whom I have not known shall serve Me, As soon as they hear of Me, they shall obey Me. The strangers shall submit themselves unto Me. The strangers shall fade away, and be afraid out of their close places. The LORD liveth, and blessed be my Rock; and let the God of my Salvation be exalted. It is God that avengeth Me, and subdueth the people under Me. He delivereth Me from Mine enemies. Yea, Thou liftest Me up above those that rise up against Me. Thou hast delivered Me from the violent man. Therefore will I give thanks unto Thee, O LORD, among the heathen, and sing praises unto Thy name. Great deliverance giveth He to His King and sheweth mercy to His anointed - to David, and to his seed for evermore. <sup>1</sup>*the grave* <sup>2</sup>*confronted*

(To the chief Musician, A Psalm of David)

The heavens declare the glory of God, and the firmament sheweth His handywork. Day unto day uttereth speech, and night unto night sheweth knowledge. There is no speech nor language where their voice is not heard. Their <sup>1</sup>line is gone out through all the earth, and their words to the end of the world. In them hath He set a tabernacle for the sun, which is as a bridegroom coming out of his chamber, and rejoiceth as a strong man to run a race. His going forth is from the end of the heaven, and his circuit unto the ends of it; and there is nothing hid from the heat thereof. The Law of the LORD is perfect, converting the soul. The Testimony of the LORD is sure, making wise the simple. The Statutes of the LORD are right, rejoicing the heart. The Commandment of the LORD is pure, enlightening the eyes. The Fear of the LORD is clean, enduring for ever. The Judgments of the LORD are true and righteous altogether. More to be desired are they than gold, yea, than much fine gold. Sweeter also than honey and the honeycomb. Moreover, *by* them is Thy servant warned; and in keeping of them there is great reward. Who can understand his errors? Cleanse Thou me from secret faults. Keep back Thy servant also from presumptuous sins. Let them not have dominion over me. Then shall I be upright, and I shall be innocent from the great transgression. Let the words of my mouth and the meditation of my heart be acceptable in Thy sight, O LORD, my Strength, and my Redeemer. <sup>1</sup>*typically refers to a measuring tape/ruler, but can also refer to the string of a musical instrument*

(To the chief Musician, A Psalm of David)

The LORD hear thee in the day of trouble. The name of the God of Jacob defend thee, send thee help from the Sanctuary, and strengthen thee out of Zion, remember all thy offerings and accept thy burnt sacrifice. [Selah]. Grant thee according to thine own heart, and fulfil all thy counsel. We will rejoice in Thy salvation, and in the name of our God we will set up our banners. The LORD fulfil all thy petitions. Now know I that the LORD saveth His anointed. He will hear him from His holy heaven with the saving strength of His right hand. Some trust in chariots, and some in horses. But *we* will remember The Name of the LORD our God. They are brought down and fallen, but *we* are risen and stand upright. Save, LORD! Let the King hear us when we call.

(To the chief Musician, A Psalm of David)

The King shall joy in Thy strength, O LORD! And in Thy Salvation how greatly shall He rejoice! Thou hast given Him His heart's desire, and hast not withholden the request of His lips. [Selah]. For Thou <sup>1</sup>preventest Him with the blessings of goodness; Thou settest a crown of pure gold on His head. He asked life of Thee and Thou gavest it Him, even length of days for ever and ever. His glory is great in Thy Salvation; honour and

majesty hast Thou laid upon Him. For Thou hast made Him most blessed for ever. Thou hast made Him exceeding glad with Thy countenance. For the King trusteth in the LORD, and through the mercy of the Most High He shall not be moved. Thine hand shall find out all Thine enemies; Thy right hand shall find out those that hate Thee. Thou shalt make them as a fiery oven in the time of Thine anger. The LORD shall swallow them up in His wrath, and the fire shall devour them. Their fruit shalt Thou destroy from the earth, and their seed from among the children of men; for they intended evil against Thee. They imagined a mischievous device, which they are not able to perform. Therefore shalt Thou make them turn their back when Thou shalt make ready Thine arrows upon Thy strings against the face of them. Be Thou exalted, LORD, in Thine own strength. So will we sing and praise Thy power. <sup>1</sup>confronts

(To the chief Musician upon <sup>1</sup>Aijeleth Shahar, A Psalm of David)

My God, My God, why hast Thou forsaken Me? Why art Thou so far from helping Me, and from the words of My roaring? O my God, I cry in the daytime, but Thou hearest not; and in the night season, and am not silent. But Thou art holy, O Thou that inhabitest the praises of Israel. Our fathers trusted in Thee; they trusted and Thou didst deliver them. They cried unto Thee and were delivered. They trusted in Thee and were not confounded. But I am a worm, and no man; a reproach of men and despised of the people. All they that see Me laugh Me to scorn. They shoot out the lip, they shake the head, saying, "He trusted on the LORD that He would deliver Him; let Him deliver Him, seeing He delighted in Him. But Thou art He that took Me out of the womb. Thou didst make Me hope when I was upon My mother's breasts. I was cast upon Thee from the womb; Thou art my God from My mother's belly. Be not far from Me, for trouble is near; for there is none to help. Many bulls have compassed Me; strong bulls of Bashan have beset Me round. They gaped upon Me with their mouths, as a ravening and a roaring lion. I am poured out like water, and all My bones are out of joint. My heart is like wax; it is melted in the midst of My bowels. My strength is dried up like a potsherd, and My tongue cleaveth to My jaws, and thou hast brought Me into the dust of death. For dogs have compassed Me. The assembly of the wicked have inclosed Me. They pierced My hands and My feet. I may <sup>2</sup>tell all My bones. They look and stare upon Me. They part My garments among them, and cast lots upon My vesture. But be not Thou far from Me, O LORD! O My Strength, haste Thee to help Me. Deliver My soul from the sword; My darling from the power of the dog. Save Me from the lion's mouth. For Thou hast heard Me from the horns of the unicorns. I will declare Thy name unto My brethren. In the midst of the congregation will I praise Thee. Ye that fear the LORD, praise Him! All ye the seed of Jacob, glorify Him; and fear Him, all ye the seed of Israel. For he hath not despised nor abhorred the affliction of the afflicted. Neither hath He hid His face from him; but when he cried unto Him, He heard. My praise shall be of Thee in the great congregation. I will pay My vows before them that fear Him. The meek shall eat and be satisfied. They shall praise the LORD that seek Him; your heart shall live for ever. All the ends of the world shall remember and turn unto the LORD; and all the kindreds of the nations shall worship before Thee. For the kingdom is the LORD's, and He is the Governor among the nations. All they that be fat upon earth shall eat and worship. All they that go down to the dust shall bow before Him. And none can keep alive his own soul. A seed shall serve Him; it shall be accounted to the Lord for a generation. They shall come and shall declare His righteousness unto a people that shall be born, that He hath done this.

*<sup>1</sup>doe of the morning", possibly an instrument made from a deer <sup>2</sup>count/give an account for/give an accounting of*

(A Psalm of David)

The LORD is my shepherd; I shall not <sup>1</sup>want. He maketh me to lie down in green pastures. He leadeth me beside the still waters. He restoreth my soul. He leadeth me in the paths of righteousness for His name's sake. Yea, though I walk through the valley of the shadow of death, I will fear no evil. For Thou art with me; Thy rod and Thy staff, they comfort me. Thou preparest a table before me in the presence of mine enemies. Thou anointest my head with oil; my cup runneth over. Surely goodness and mercy shall follow me all the days of my life. And I will dwell in the House of the LORD for ever. <sup>1</sup>lack/need anything

(A Psalm of David)

The earth is the LORD's, and the fulness thereof – the world, and they that dwell therein. For He hath founded it upon the seas, and established it upon the floods. Who shall ascend into the Hill of the LORD? Or,

who shall stand in His Holy Place? He that hath clean hands and a pure heart, who hath not lifted up his soul unto vanity, nor sworn deceitfully. He shall receive the blessing from the LORD, and righteousness from the God of his Salvation. This is the generation of them that seek Him, that seek thy face, O Jacob. [Selah]. Lift up your heads, O ye gates! And be ye lift up, ye everlasting doors! And the King of Glory shall come in! Who is this King of Glory? The LORD strong and mighty, the LORD mighty in battle! Lift up your heads, O ye gates! Even lift them up, ye everlasting doors! And the King of Glory shall come in. Who is this King of Glory? The LORD of Hosts - *He* is the King of glory! [Selah].

(A Psalm of David)

Unto Thee, O LORD, do I lift up my soul. O my God, I trust in Thee! Let me not be ashamed, let not mine enemies triumph over me. Yea, let none that wait on Thee be ashamed. Let them be ashamed which transgress without cause. Shew me Thy Ways, O LORD; teach me Thy Paths. Lead me in Thy Truth, and teach me. For Thou art the God of my Salvation; on Thee do I wait all the day. Remember, O LORD, Thy tender mercies and Thy lovingkindnesses; for they have been ever of old. Remember not the sins of my youth, nor my transgressions. According to Thy mercy remember Thou me for Thy goodness' sake, O LORD. Good and upright is the LORD; therefore will he teach sinners in the Way. The meek will He guide in judgment, and the meek will He teach His Way. All the paths of the LORD are mercy and truth unto such as keep His covenant and His testimonies. For thy name's sake, O LORD, pardon mine iniquity; for it is great. What man is he that feareth the LORD? Him shall He teach in the Way that He shall choose. His soul shall dwell at ease; and his seed shall inherit the earth. The secret of the LORD is with them that fear Him; and He will shew them His covenant. Mine eyes are ever toward the LORD; for He shall pluck my feet out of the net. Turn Thee unto me, and have mercy upon me; for I am desolate and afflicted. The troubles of my heart are enlarged. O bring Thou me out of my distresses! Look upon mine affliction and my pain; and forgive all my sins. Consider mine enemies, for they are many; and they hate me with cruel hatred. O keep my soul, and deliver me; let me not be ashamed. For I put my trust in Thee. Let integrity and uprightness preserve me; for I wait on Thee. Redeem Israel, O God, out of all his troubles!

(A Psalm of David)

Judge me, O LORD; for I have walked in mine integrity. I have trusted also in the LORD; therefore I shall not slide. Examine me, O LORD, and prove me; try my reins and my heart. For Thy lovingkindness is before mine eyes, and I have walked in Thy Truth. I have not sat with vain persons, neither will I go in with dissemblers. I have hated the congregation of evil doers, and will not sit with the wicked. I will wash mine hands in innocency; so will I compass Thine Altar, O LORD, that I may publish with the voice of thanksgiving, and tell of all Thy wondrous works. LORD, I have loved the habitation of Thy House, and the place where Thine honour dwelleth. Gather not my soul with sinners, nor my life with bloody men - in whose hands is mischief and their right hand is full of bribes. But as for me, I will walk in mine integrity. Redeem me, and be merciful unto me. My foot standeth in an even place. In the congregations will I bless the LORD.

(A Psalm of David)

The LORD is my Light and my Salvation; whom shall I fear? The LORD is the Strength of my life; of whom shall I be afraid? When the wicked, even mine enemies and my foes, came upon me to eat up my flesh, they stumbled and fell. Though an host should encamp against me, my heart shall not fear. Though war should rise against me, in this will I be confident. One thing have I desired of the LORD, *that* will I seek after, that I may dwell in the House of the LORD all the days of my life, to behold the beauty of the LORD, and to inquire in His Temple. For in the time of trouble He shall hide me in His pavilion. In the secret of His Tabernacle shall He hide me. He shall set me up upon a Rock. And now shall mine head be lifted up above mine enemies round about me; therefore will I offer in His Tabernacle sacrifices of joy! I will sing, yea, I will sing praises unto the LORD! Hear, O LORD, when I cry with my voice! Have mercy also upon me, and answer me. When Thou saidst, '*Seek ye My face*', my heart said unto Thee, '*Thy face, LORD, will I seek!*' Hide not Thy face far from me. Put not Thy servant away in anger. Thou hast been my Help. Leave me not, neither forsake me, O God of my Salvation. When my father and my mother forsake me, then the LORD will take me up! Teach me Thy Way, O LORD, and lead me in a plain path, because of mine enemies. Deliver me not over unto the will of

mine enemies. For false witnesses are risen up against Me, and such as breathe out cruelty. I had fainted, unless I had believed to see the goodness of the LORD in the land of the living. Wait on the LORD! Be of good courage, and He shall strengthen thine heart! Wait, I say, on the LORD!

(A Psalm of David)

Unto Thee will I cry, O LORD my Rock. Be not silent to me! Lest, if Thou be silent to me, I become like them that go down into the pit! Hear the voice of my supplications when I cry unto Thee, when I lift up my hands toward Thy Holy Oracle. Draw me not away with the wicked, and with the workers of iniquity, which speak peace to their neighbours, but mischief is in their hearts. Give them according to their deeds, and according to the wickedness of their endeavours. Give them after the work of their hands; render to them their desert. Because they regard not the works of the LORD, nor the operation of His hands, He shall destroy them, and not build them up. Blessed be the LORD, because He hath heard the voice of my supplications. The LORD is my Strength and my Shield! My heart trusted in Him, and I am helped! Therefore my heart greatly rejoiceth; and with my song will I praise Him. The LORD is their strength, and He is the Saving Strength of His anointed. Save Thy People, and bless Thine inheritance! Feed them also, and lift them up for ever!

(A Psalm of David)

Give unto the LORD, O ye mighty! Give unto the LORD glory and strength! Give unto the LORD the glory due unto His name! Worship the LORD in the beauty of holiness! The voice of the LORD is upon the waters. The God of glory thundereth. The LORD is upon many waters. The voice of the LORD is powerful. The voice of the LORD is full of majesty. The voice of the LORD breaketh the cedars. Yea, the LORD breaketh the cedars of Lebanon. He maketh them also to skip like a calf - Lebanon and Sirion like a young unicorn. The voice of the LORD divideth the flames of fire. The voice of the LORD shaketh the wilderness. The LORD shaketh the wilderness of Kadesh. The voice of the LORD maketh the hinds to calve, and discovereth the forests; and in His Temple doth every one speak of His glory. The LORD sitteth upon the flood. Yea, the LORD sitteth King for ever! The LORD will give strength unto His People. The LORD will bless His People with peace!

(A Psalm and Song at the dedication of the House of David)

I will extol thee, O LORD! For Thou hast lifted me up, and hast not made my foes to rejoice over me. O LORD my God, I cried unto Thee, and Thou hast healed me. O LORD, Thou hast brought up my soul from the grave. Thou hast kept me alive, that I should not go down to the pit. Sing unto the LORD, O ye saints of his! And give thanks at the remembrance of His holiness! For His anger endureth but a moment. In His favour is life. Weeping may endure for a night, but joy cometh in the morning! And in my prosperity I said, I shall never be moved! LORD, by Thy favour Thou hast made my mountain to stand strong. Thou didst hide Thy face, and I was troubled. I cried to thee, O LORD! and unto the LORD I made supplication. What profit is there in my blood when I go down to the pit? Shall the dust praise Thee? Shall it declare Thy Truth? Hear, O LORD, and have mercy upon me! LORD, be Thou my Helper. Thou hast turned for me my mourning into dancing! Thou hast put off my sackcloth and girded me with gladness to the end that my glory may sing praise to Thee, and not be silent. O LORD my God, I will give thanks unto Thee for ever!

(To the chief Musician, A Psalm of David)

In Thee, O LORD, do I put my trust. Let me never be ashamed. Deliver me in Thy righteousness. Bow down Thine ear to me. Deliver me speedily. Be Thou my Strong Rock for an House of Defence to save me! For *Thou* art my Rock and my Fortress! Therefore, for Thy name's sake, lead me and guide me. Pull me out of the net that they have laid privily for me, for Thou art my strength! Into Thine hand I commit my spirit. Thou hast redeemed me, O LORD God of Truth. I have hated them that regard lying vanities, but I trust in the LORD. I will be glad and rejoice in Thy mercy; for Thou hast considered my trouble; Thou hast known my soul in adversities, and hast not shut me up into the hand of the enemy. Thou hast set my feet in a large room. Have mercy upon me, O LORD, for I am in trouble! Mine eye is consumed with grief, yea, my soul and my belly. For my life is spent with grief, and my years with sighing. My strength faileth because of mine iniquity, and my bones are consumed. I was a reproach among all mine enemies, but especially among my

neighbours, and a fear to mine acquaintance. They that did see me without fled from me. I am forgotten as a dead man out of mind. I am like a broken vessel. For I have heard the slander of many. Fear was on every side. While they took counsel together against Me, they devised to take away My life. But I trusted in Thee, O LORD! I said, *'Thou art my God!'* My times are in Thy hand. Deliver me from the hand of mine enemies, and from them that persecute me. Make Thy face to shine upon Thy servant! Save me for Thy mercies' sake! Let me not be ashamed, O LORD! For I have called upon Thee. Let the wicked be ashamed, and let them be silent in the grave. Let the lying lips be put to silence, which speak grievous things proudly and contemptuously against the righteous. Oh how great is Thy goodness which Thou hast laid up for them that fear Thee, which Thou hast wrought for them that trust in Thee before the sons of men! Thou shalt hide them in the secret of Thy presence from the pride of man. Thou shalt keep them secretly in a pavilion from the strife of tongues. Blessed be the LORD! For He hath shewed me His marvellous kindness in a strong city. For I said in my haste, *'I am cut off from before Thine eyes!'* Nevertheless Thou heardest the voice of my supplications when I cried unto Thee. O love the LORD, all ye His saints! For the LORD preserveth the faithful, and plentifully rewardeth the proud doer. Be of good courage, and He shall strengthen your heart, all ye that hope in the LORD!

(A Psalm of David, Maschil)

Blessed is he whose transgression is forgiven, whose sin is covered! Blessed is the man unto whom the LORD imputeth not iniquity, and in whose spirit there is no guile. When I kept silence, my bones waxed old through my roaring all the day long. For day and night Thy hand was heavy upon me. My moisture is turned into the drought of summer. [Selah]. I acknowledged my sin unto Thee, and mine iniquity have I not hid. I said, *'I will confess my transgressions unto the LORD!'* And Thou forgavest the iniquity of my sin. [Selah]. For *this* shall every one that is godly pray unto Thee in a time when Thou mayest be found. Surely in the floods of great waters they shall not come nigh unto him. Thou art my Hiding Place. Thou shalt preserve me from trouble. Thou shalt compass me about with songs of deliverance. [Selah]. I will instruct thee and teach thee in the way which thou shalt go. I will guide thee with mine eye. Be ye not as the horse, or as the mule, which have no understanding; whose mouth must be held in with bit and bridle, lest they come near unto thee. Many sorrows shall be to the wicked. But he that trusteth in the LORD, mercy shall compass him about. Be glad in the LORD, and rejoice, ye righteous! And shout for joy, all ye that are upright in heart!

Rejoice in the LORD, O ye righteous! For praise is comely for the upright. Praise the LORD with harp. Sing unto Him with the psaltery and an instrument of ten strings. Sing unto Him a new song; play skilfully with a loud noise. For the Word of the LORD is right; and all His works are done in Truth. He loveth righteousness and judgment. The earth is full of the goodness of the LORD. By the Word of the LORD were the heavens made; and all the host of them by the breath of His mouth. He gathereth the waters of the sea together as an heap. He layeth up the depth in storehouses. Let all the earth fear the LORD! Let all the inhabitants of the world stand in awe of Him. For He spake, and it was done. He commanded, and it stood fast. The LORD bringeth the counsel of the heathen to nought. He maketh the devices of the people of none effect. The counsel of the LORD standeth for ever, the thoughts of His heart to all generations. Blessed is the nation whose God is the LORD, and the people whom He hath chosen for His own inheritance. The LORD looketh from heaven; He beholdeth all the sons of men. From the place of His habitation He looketh upon all the inhabitants of the earth. He fashioneth their hearts alike; He considereth all their works. There is no king saved by the multitude of an host. A mighty man is not delivered by much strength. An horse is a vain thing for safety. Neither shall he deliver any by his great strength. Behold, the eye of the LORD is upon them that fear Him, upon them that hope in His mercy, to deliver their soul from death, and to keep them alive in famine. Our soul waiteth for the LORD - He is our Help and our Shield. For our heart shall rejoice in Him, because we have trusted in His holy name. Let Thy mercy, O LORD, be upon us, according as we hope in Thee.

(A Psalm of David, when he changed his behaviour before Abimelech who drove him away and he departed) I will bless the LORD at all times! His praise shall continually be in my mouth! My soul shall make her boast in the LORD. The humble shall hear thereof, and be glad. O magnify the LORD with me, and let us exalt His name together! I sought the LORD, and He heard me, and delivered me from all my fears. They looked unto Him

and were lightened, and their faces were not ashamed. This poor man cried, and the LORD heard Him, and saved him out of all his troubles. The angel of the LORD encampeth round about them that fear Him, and delivereth them. O taste and see that the LORD is good! Blessed is the man that trusteth in Him. O fear the LORD, ye His saints! For there is no want to them that fear Him. The young lions do lack, and suffer hunger; but they that seek the LORD shall not want any good thing. Come, ye children, hearken unto me! I will teach you the fear of the LORD. What man is he that desireth life, and loveth many days, that he may see good? Keep thy tongue from evil, and thy lips from speaking guile. Depart from evil, and do good; seek peace, and pursue it! The eyes of the LORD are upon the righteous, and His ears are open unto their cry. The face of the LORD is against them that do evil, to cut off the remembrance of them from the earth. The righteous cry and the LORD heareth, and delivereth them out of all their troubles. The LORD is nigh unto them that are of a broken heart; and saveth such as be of a contrite spirit. Many are the afflictions of the righteous; but the LORD delivereth him out of them all. He keepeth all His bones - not one of them is broken. Evil shall slay the wicked, and they that hate the righteous shall be desolate. The LORD redeemeth the soul of His servants, and none of them that trust in Him shall be desolate!

(A Psalm of David)

Plead my cause, O LORD, with them that strive with me! Fight against them that fight against me! Take hold of shield and buckler, and stand up for mine help! Draw out also the spear, and stop the way against them that persecute me! Say unto my soul, *'I AM thy Salvation!'* Let them be confounded and put to shame that seek after my soul. Let them be turned back and brought to confusion that devise my hurt. Let them be as chaff before the wind, and let the angel of the LORD chase them. Let their way be dark and slippery, and let the angel of the LORD persecute them. For without cause have they hid for Me their net in a pit, which without cause they have digged for My soul. Let destruction come upon him at unawares; and let his net that he hath hid catch himself. Into that very destruction let him fall. And my soul shall be joyful in the LORD; it shall rejoice in His Salvation. All my bones shall say, *'LORD, who is like unto thee, which deliverest the poor from him that is too strong for him, yea, the poor and the needy from him that spoileth him?'* False witnesses did rise up. They laid to My charge things that I knew not. They rewarded Me evil for good to the spoiling of My soul. But as for Me, when they were sick, My clothing was sackcloth. I humbled My soul with fasting, and My prayer returned into Mine own bosom. I behaved Myself as though he had been My friend or brother. I bowed down heavily, as one that mourneth for his mother. But in Mine adversity they rejoiced, and gathered themselves together. Yea, the abjects gathered themselves together against Me, and I knew it not. They did tear Me, and ceased not. With hypocritical mockers in feasts, they gnashed upon Me with their teeth. Lord, how long wilt Thou look on? Rescue My soul from their destructions, My darling from the lions. I will give Thee thanks in the great congregation. I will praise Thee among much people. Let not them that are Mine enemies wrongfully rejoice over Me; neither let them wink with the eye that hate Me without a cause. For they speak not peace, but they devise deceitful matters against them that are quiet in the land. Yea, they opened their mouth wide against Me, and said, *'Aha! Aha! Our eye hath seen it!'* This Thou hast seen, O LORD! Keep not silence; O Lord, be not far from Me. Stir up Thyself and awake to My judgment, even unto My cause, My God and My Lord. Judge me, O LORD my God, according to Thy righteousness; and let them not rejoice over me. Let them not say in their hearts, *'Ah, so would we have it!'* Let them not say, *'We have swallowed him up!'* Let them be ashamed and brought to confusion together that rejoice at mine hurt. Let them be clothed with shame and dishonor that magnify themselves against me. Let them shout for joy, and be glad, that favour my righteous cause! Yea, let them say continually, *'Let the LORD be magnified!'* which hath pleasure in the prosperity of His servant. And my tongue shall speak of Thy righteousness and of Thy praise all the day long.

(To the chief Musician, A Psalm of David the servant of the LORD)

The transgression of the wicked saith within my heart that there is no fear of God before his eyes. For he flattereth himself in his own eyes, until his iniquity be found to be hateful. The words of his mouth are iniquity and deceit. He hath left off to be wise, and to do good. He deviseth mischief upon his bed. He setteth himself in a way that is not good; he abhorreth not evil. Thy mercy, O LORD, is in the heavens; and

Thy faithfulness reacheth unto the clouds. Thy righteousness is like the great mountains. Thy judgments are a great deep. O LORD, Thou preservest man and beast. How excellent is Thy lovingkindness, O God! Therefore the children of men put their trust under the shadow of Thy wings. They shall be abundantly satisfied with the fatness of Thy House; and Thou shalt make them drink of the river of Thy pleasures. For with Thee is the Fountain of Life. In Thy Light shall we see Light. O continue Thy lovingkindness unto them that know Thee; and Thy righteousness to the upright in heart. Let not the foot of pride come against me, and let not the hand of the wicked remove me. There are the workers of iniquity fallen. They are cast down and shall not be able to rise.

(A Psalm of David)

Fret not thyself because of evildoers, neither be thou envious against the workers of iniquity. For they shall soon be cut down like the grass, and wither as the green herb. Trust in the LORD, and do good; so shalt thou dwell in the land, and verily thou shalt be fed. Delight thyself also in the LORD, and He shall give thee the desires of thine heart. Commit thy way unto the LORD; trust also in Him, and He shall bring it to pass. And He shall bring forth thy righteousness as the light, and thy <sup>1</sup>judgment as the noonday. Rest in the LORD and wait patiently for him. Fret not thyself because of him who prospereth in his way, because of the man who bringeth wicked devices to pass. Cease from anger, and forsake wrath. Fret not thyself in any wise to do evil. For evildoers shall be cut off. But those that wait upon the LORD, they shall inherit the earth. For yet a little while and the wicked shall not be. Yea, thou shalt diligently consider his place, and it shall not be. But the meek shall inherit the earth, and shall delight themselves in the abundance of peace. The wicked plotteth against the just, and gnasheth upon him with his teeth. The Lord shall laugh at him, for He seeth that his day is coming. The wicked have drawn out the sword, and have bent their bow, to cast down the poor and needy and to slay such as be of upright conversation. Their sword shall enter into their own heart, and their bows shall be broken. A little that a righteous man hath is better than the riches of many wicked. For the arms of the wicked shall be broken, but the LORD upholdeth the righteous. The LORD knoweth the days of the upright; and their inheritance shall be for ever. They shall not be ashamed in the evil time; and in the days of famine they shall be satisfied. But the wicked shall perish, and the enemies of the LORD shall be as the fat of lambs. They shall consume; into smoke shall they consume away. The wicked borroweth, and payeth not again. But the righteous sheweth mercy, and giveth. For such as be blessed of Him shall inherit the earth; and they that be cursed of Him shall be cut off. The steps of a good man are ordered by the LORD and he delighteth in His Way. Though he fall, he shall not be utterly cast down. For the LORD upholdeth him with His hand. I have been young, and now am old; yet have I not seen the righteous forsaken, nor his seed begging bread! He is ever merciful, and lendeth; and His seed is blessed. Depart from evil and do good, and dwell for evermore. For the LORD loveth <sup>1</sup>judgment, and forsaketh not His saints. They are preserved for ever. But the seed of the wicked shall be cut off. The righteous shall inherit the land and dwell therein for ever. The mouth of the righteous speaketh wisdom, and his tongue talketh of <sup>1</sup>judgment. The Law of his God is in his heart, none of his steps shall slide. The wicked watcheth the righteous and seeketh to slay him. The LORD will not leave him in his hand, nor condemn him when he is judged. Wait on the LORD and keep His Way, and He shall exalt thee to inherit the land. When the wicked are cut off, thou shalt see it. I have seen the wicked in great power, and spreading himself like a green bay tree. Yet he passed away, and, lo, he was not. Yea, I sought him, but he could not be found. Mark the perfect man and behold the upright - for the end of that man is peace. But the transgressors shall be destroyed together; the end of the wicked shall be cut off. But the salvation of the righteous is of the LORD. He is their Strength in the time of trouble. And the LORD shall help them and deliver them. He shall deliver them from the wicked and save them, because they trust in Him.

*<sup>1</sup>justice*

(A Psalm of David, to bring to remembrance)

O LORD, rebuke me not in Thy wrath! Neither chasten me in Thy hot displeasure! For Thine arrows stick fast in me and Thy hand presseth me sore! There is no soundness in my flesh because of Thine anger. Neither is there any rest in my bones because of my sin. For mine iniquities are gone over mine head; as an heavy burden they are too heavy for me. My wounds stink and are corrupt because of my foolishness. I am

troubled! I am bowed down greatly! I go mourning all the day long! For my loins are filled with a loathsome disease and there is no soundness in my flesh. I am feeble and sore broken. I have roared by reason of the disquietness of my heart. Lord, all my desire is before Thee, and my groaning is not hid from Thee. My heart <sup>1</sup>panteth, my strength faileth me. As for the light of mine eyes, it also is gone from me. My lovers and my friends stand aloof from my sore; and my kinsmen stand afar off. They also that seek after my life lay snares for me; and they that seek my hurt speak mischievous things, and imagine deceits all the day long. But I, as a deaf man, heard not. And I was as a <sup>2</sup>dumb man that openeth not his mouth. Thus I was as a man that heareth not, and in whose mouth are no reproofs. For in Thee, O LORD, do I hope! Thou wilt hear, O Lord my God! For I said, *'Hear me!'* lest otherwise they should rejoice over me; when my foot slippeth, they magnify themselves against me. For I am ready to <sup>3</sup>halt, and my sorrow is continually before me. For I will declare mine iniquity, I will be sorry for my sin. But mine enemies are lively and they are strong; and they that hate me wrongfully are multiplied. They also that render evil for good are mine adversaries; because I follow the thing that good is. Forsake me not, O LORD! O my God, be not far from me! Make haste to help me, O Lord my Salvation!

*<sup>1</sup>to gasp heavily (for air/water/God) <sup>2</sup>mute <sup>3</sup>lame/crippled*

(To the chief Musician, even to Jeduthun, A Psalm of David)

I said, *'I will take heed to my ways, that I sin not with my tongue; I will keep my mouth with a bridle, while the wicked is before me'*. I was dumb with silence, I held my peace, even from good; and my sorrow was stirred. My heart was hot within me; while I was musing, the fire burned. Then spake I with my tongue, *'LORD, make me to know mine end, and the measure of my days, what it is; that I may know how frail I am'*. Behold, Thou hast made my days as an handbreadth. And mine age is as nothing before Thee. Verily every man at his best state is altogether vanity. [Selah]. Surely every man walketh in a vain shew. Surely they are disquieted in vain. He heapeth up riches and knoweth not who shall gather them. And now, Lord, what wait I for? My hope is in Thee! Deliver me from all my transgressions. Make me not the reproach of the foolish. I was dumb, I opened not my mouth; because Thou didst it. Remove Thy stroke away from me! I am consumed by the blow of Thine hand! When Thou, with rebukes, dost correct man for iniquity, Thou makest his beauty to consume away like a moth! Surely every man is vanity! [Selah]. Hear my prayer, O LORD, and give ear unto my cry! Hold not Thy peace at my tears! For I am a stranger with Thee, and a sojourner, as all my fathers were. O spare me, that I may recover strength, before I go hence and be no more.

(To the chief Musician, A Psalm of David)

I waited patiently for the LORD, and He inclined unto me and heard my cry. He brought me up also out of an horrible pit, out of the miry clay, and set my feet upon a Rock, and established my goings. And He hath put a new song in my mouth, even praise unto our God! Many shall see it, and fear, and shall trust in the LORD. Blessed is that man that maketh the LORD his trust, and respecteth not the proud, nor such as turn aside to lies. Many, O LORD my God, are thy wonderful works which Thou hast done, and Thy thoughts which are to us-ward! They cannot be reckoned up in order unto Thee! If I would declare and speak of them, they are more than can be numbered. Sacrifice and offering Thou didst not desire. Mine ears hast Thou opened. Burnt offering and sin offering hast Thou not required. Then said I, *'Lo, I come! In the volume of the Book it is written of Me, I delight to do Thy will, O My Go - yea, Thy Law is within My heart. I have preached righteousness in the great congregation. Lo, I have not refrained My lips, O LORD, Thou knowest. I have not hid Thy righteousness within my heart; I have declared Thy faithfulness and Thy salvation. I have not concealed Thy lovingkindness and Thy Truth from the great congregation'*. Withhold not Thou Thy tender mercies from me, O LORD! Let Thy lovingkindness and Thy Truth continually preserve me. For innumerable evils have compassed me about! Mine iniquities have taken hold upon me, so that I am not able to look up! They are more than the hairs of mine head, therefore my heart faileth me. Be pleased, O LORD, to deliver me! O LORD, make haste to help me! Let them be ashamed and confounded together that seek after my soul to destroy it. Let them be driven backward and put to shame that wish me evil. Let them be desolate for a reward of their shame that say unto me, "Aha! Aha!" Let all those that seek Thee rejoice and be glad in Thee. Let such as love Thy Salvation say continually, *'The LORD be magnified!'* But I am poor and needy; yet the Lord thinketh upon me. Thou art my Help and my Deliverer! Make no tarrying, O my God!

(To the chief Musician, A Psalm of David)

Blessed is he that considereth the poor. The LORD will deliver him in time of trouble. The LORD will preserve him and keep him alive, and he shall be blessed upon the earth; and Thou wilt not deliver him unto the will of his enemies. The LORD will strengthen him upon the bed of languishing. Thou wilt make all his bed in his sickness. I said, *'LORD, be merciful unto me! Heal my soul, for I have sinned against Thee'*. Mine enemies speak evil of me, *'When shall he die and his name perish?'* And if he come to see me, he speaketh vanity. His heart gathereth iniquity to itself. When he goeth abroad, he telleth it. All that hate me whisper together against me. Against me do they devise my hurt. *'An evil disease, say they, cleaveth fast unto him; and now that he lieth he shall rise up no more'*. Yea, Mine own familiar friend in whom I trusted, which did eat of My bread, hath lifted up his heel against Me. But Thou, O LORD, be merciful unto Me and raise Me up, that I may requite them. By this I know that Thou favourest Me: because Mine enemy doth not triumph over Me. And as for Me, Thou upholdest Me in Mine integrity, and settest Me before Thy face for ever. Blessed be the LORD God of Israel, *from everlasting and to everlasting!* Amen, and Amen!

(To the chief Musician, Maschil, for the sons of Korah)

As the hart panteth after the water brooks, so panteth my soul after thee, O God. My soul thirsteth for God, for the living God. When shall I come and appear before God? My tears have been my meat day and night, while they continually say unto me, *'Where is thy God?'* When I remember these things, I pour out my soul in me; for I had gone with the multitude, I went with them to the House of God, with the voice of joy and praise, with a multitude that kept holyday. Why art thou cast down, O my soul? And why art thou disquieted in me? Hope thou in God! For I shall yet praise Him for the help of His countenance. O my God, my soul is cast down within me. Therefore will I remember Thee from the land of Jordan, and of the Hermonites, from the hill Mizar. Deep calleth unto deep at the noise of Thy waterspouts. All Thy waves and Thy billows are gone over me. Yet the LORD will command His lovingkindness in the daytime, and in the night His song shall be with me, and my prayer unto the God of my life. I will say unto God my Rock, *'Why hast thou forgotten me? Why go I mourning because of the oppression of the enemy?'* As with a sword in my bones mine enemies reproach me, while they say daily unto me, *'Where is thy God?'* Why art thou cast down, O my soul? And why art thou disquieted within me? Hope thou in God! For I shall yet praise Him who is the Health of my countenance, and my God.

Judge me, O God, and plead my cause against an ungodly nation. O deliver me from the deceitful and unjust man. For Thou art the God of my strength. Why dost thou cast me off? Why go I mourning because of the oppression of the enemy? O send out Thy Light and Thy Truth! Let them lead me! Let them bring me unto Thy Holy Hill, and to Thy Tabernacles. Then will I go unto the Altar of God, unto God my exceeding joy! Yea, upon the harp will I praise thee, O God my God. Why art thou cast down, O my soul? And why art thou disquieted within me? Hope in God! For I shall yet praise Him, who is the Health of my countenance, and my God.

(To the chief Musician for the sons of Korah, Maschil)

We have heard with our ears, O God, our fathers have told us, what work Thou didst in their days, in the times of old. How Thou didst drive out the heathen with Thy hand, and plantedst them. How thou didst afflict the people, and cast them out. For they got not the land in possession by their own sword, neither did their own arm save them. But Thy right hand, and Thine arm, and the Light of Thy countenance, because Thou hadst a favour unto them. Thou art my King, O God! Command deliverances for Jacob! Through Thee will we push down our enemies. Through Thy name will we tread them under that rise up against us. For I will not trust in my bow, neither shall my sword save me. But Thou hast saved us from our enemies, and hast put them to shame that hated us. In God we boast all the day long, and praise Thy name for ever. [Selah]. But thou hast cast off and put us to shame; and goest not forth with our armies. Thou makest us to turn back from the enemy; and they which hate us spoil for themselves. Thou hast given us like sheep appointed for meat; and hast scattered us among the heathen. Thou sellest Thy People for nought, and dost not increase Thy wealth by their price. Thou makest us a reproach to our neighbours, a scorn and a derision to them that are round about us. Thou makest us a byword among the heathen, a shaking of the head

among the people. My confusion is continually before me, and the shame of my face hath covered me. For the voice of him that reproacheth and blasphemeth, by reason of the enemy and avenger. All this is come upon us; yet have we not forgotten Thee, neither have we dealt falsely in Thy covenant. Our heart is not turned back, neither have our steps declined from Thy Way, though Thou hast sore broken us in the place of dragons, and covered us with the shadow of death. If we have forgotten the Name of our God, or stretched out our hands to a strange god; shall not God search this out? For He knoweth the secrets of the heart. Yea, for Thy sake are we killed all the day long; we are counted as sheep for the slaughter. Awake, why sleepest Thou, O Lord? Arise! Cast us not off for ever. Wherefore hidest Thou Thy face, and forgettest our affliction and our oppression? For our soul is bowed down to the dust. Our belly cleaveth unto the earth. Arise for our help, and redeem us for Thy mercies' sake!

(To the chief Musician upon <sup>1</sup>Shoshannim, for the sons of Korah, Maschil. A Song of Loves.)

My heart is inditing a good matter. I speak of the things which I have made touching the king. My tongue is the pen of a ready writer. Thou art fairer than the children of men. Grace is poured into thy lips. Therefore God hath blessed thee for ever. Gird thy sword upon Thy thigh, O Most Mighty, with Thy glory and Thy majesty. And in Thy Majesty ride prosperously because of Truth and Meekness and Righteousness; and Thy right hand shall teach thee terrible things. Thine arrows are sharp in the heart of the king's enemies; whereby the people fall under Thee. Thy throne, O God, is for ever and ever! The sceptre of Thy kingdom is a right scepter! Thou lovest righteousness, and hatest wickedness. Therefore God, Thy God, hath anointed Thee with the oil of gladness above Thy fellows. All Thy garments smell of myrrh, and aloes, and cassia, out of the ivory palaces, whereby they have made Thee glad. Kings' daughters were among Thy honourable women. Upon Thy right hand did stand the queen in gold of Ophir. Hearken, O daughter, and consider, and incline thine ear; forget also thine own people, and thy father's house - so shall the King greatly desire thy beauty. For He is thy Lord; and worship Thou Him! And the daughter of Tyre shall be there with a gift; even the rich among the people shall intreat Thy favour. The king's daughter is all glorious within - her clothing is of wrought gold. She shall be brought unto the King in raiment of needlework; the virgins, her companions that follow her, shall be brought unto Thee. With gladness and rejoicing shall they be brought; they shall enter into the King's palace. <sup>2</sup>Instead of thy fathers shall be thy children, whom thou mayest make princes in all the earth. I will make Thy name to be remembered in all generations. Therefore shall the people praise Thee for ever and ever.

*<sup>1</sup>literally, a lily <sup>2</sup>instead of/in place of*

(To the chief Musician for the sons of Korah, A Song upon Alamoth)

GOD is our Refuge and Strength, a very Present Help in trouble. Therefore will not we fear, though the earth be removed, and though the mountains be carried into the midst of the sea, though the waters thereof roar and be troubled, though the mountains shake with the swelling thereof. [Selah]. There is a River, the streams whereof shall make glad the City of God - the Holy Place of the Tabernacles of the Most High. God is in the midst of her; she shall not be moved. God shall help her - and *that*, right early! The heathen raged, the kingdoms were moved. He uttered his voice, the earth melted. The LORD of Hosts is with us - the God of Jacob is our Refuge. [Selah]. Come! Behold the works of the LORD! What desolations He hath made in the earth! He maketh wars to cease unto the end of the earth; He breaketh the bow, and cutteth the spear in sunder; He burneth the chariot in the fire. Be still, and know that I am God! I will be exalted among the heathen! I will be exalted in the earth! The LORD of Hosts is with us - the God of Jacob is our refuge. [Selah].

(To the chief Musician, A Psalm for the sons of Korah)

O clap your hands, all ye people; shout unto God with the voice of triumph! For the LORD Most High is terrible; He is a Great King over all the earth! He shall subdue the people under us, and the nations under our feet. He shall choose our inheritance for us, the excellency of Jacob whom He loved. [Selah]. God is gone up with a shout, the LORD with the sound of a trumpet. Sing praises to God, sing praises! Sing praises unto our King, sing praises! For God is the King of all the earth! Sing ye praises with understanding. God reigneth over the heathen. God sitteth upon the throne of His holiness. The princes of the people are gathered together, even the people of the God of Abraham. For the shields of the earth belong unto God. He is greatly exalted.

(A Song and Psalm for the sons of Korah)

Great is the LORD, and greatly to be praised in the city of our God, in the mountain of His holiness. Beautiful for situation, the joy of the whole earth, is Mount Zion, on the sides of the north, the City of the Great King. God is known in her palaces for a refuge. For, lo, the kings were assembled, they passed by together. They saw it, and so they marvelled; they were troubled, and hasted away. Fear took hold upon them there, and pain, as of a woman in travail. Thou breakest the ships of Tarshish with an east wind. As we have heard, so have we seen in the City of the LORD of Hosts, in the City of our God - God will establish it for ever. [Selah]. We have thought of Thy lovingkindness, O God, in the midst of Thy Temple. According to Thy name, O God, so is Thy praise unto the ends of the earth. Thy right hand is full of righteousness. Let Mount Zion rejoice! Let the daughters of Judah be glad, because of Thy judgments. Walk about Zion, and go round about her; tell the towers thereof. Mark ye well her bulwarks, consider her palaces; that ye may tell it to the generation following. For this God is our God for ever and ever. He will be our guide even unto death.

(To the chief Musician, A Psalm for the sons of Korah)

Hear this, all ye people! Give ear, all ye inhabitants of the world! Both low and high, rich and poor, together! My mouth shall speak of wisdom; and the meditation of my heart shall be of understanding. I will incline mine ear to a parable; I will open my dark saying upon the harp. Wherefore should I fear in the days of evil, when the iniquity of my heels shall compass me about? They that trust in their wealth, and boast themselves in the multitude of their riches – none of them can by any means redeem his brother, nor give to God a ransom for him... (for the redemption of their soul is precious, and it ceaseth for ever) ...that he should still live for ever and not see corruption. For he seeth that wise men die. Likewise the fool and the brutish person perish and leave their wealth to others. Their inward thought is that their houses shall continue for ever, and their dwelling places to all generations. They call their lands after their own names. Nevertheless man, being in honour, abideth not. He is like the beasts that perish. This their way is their folly. Yet their posterity approve their sayings. [Selah]. Like sheep they are laid in the grave. Death shall feed on them. And the upright shall have dominion over them in the morning. And their beauty shall consume in the grave from their dwelling. But God will redeem My soul from the power of the grave; for He shall receive Me. [Selah]. Be not thou afraid when one is made rich, when the glory of his house is increased; for when he dieth he shall carry nothing away! His glory shall not descend after him. Though while he lived he blessed his soul; and men will praise thee, when thou doest well to thyself! He shall go to the generation of his fathers; they shall never see light. Man that is in honour and understandeth not, is like the beasts that perish.

(A Psalm of Asaph)

The Mighty God, even the LORD, hath spoken, and called the earth from the rising of the sun unto the going down thereof. Out of Zion, the perfection of beauty, God hath shined. Our God shall come, and shall not keep silence. A fire shall devour before Him, and it shall be very tempestuous round about Him. He shall call to the heavens from above, and to the earth, that He may judge His People. *“Gather My saints together unto Me! Those that have made a covenant with Me by sacrifice!”* And the heavens shall declare His righteousness; for God is Judge Himself. [Selah]. *“Hear, O My People, and I will speak! O Israel, and I will testify against thee! I am God, even thy God! I will not reprove thee for thy sacrifices or thy burnt offerings, to have been continually before Me. I will take no bullock out of thy house, nor he goats out of thy folds. For every beast of the forest is Mine, and the cattle upon a thousand hills! I know all the fowls of the mountains, and the wild beasts of the field are Mine. If I were hungry, I would not tell thee. For the world is Mine and the fulness thereof! Will I eat the flesh of bulls, or drink the blood of goats? Offer unto God thanksgiving; and pay thy vows unto the Most High! And call upon Me in the Day of Trouble. I will deliver thee, and thou shalt glorify Me.”* But unto the wicked God saith, *“What hast thou to do to declare My statutes, or that thou shouldest take My covenant in thy mouth? Seeing thou hatest instruction and castest My Words behind thee! When thou sawest a thief, then thou consentedst with him, and hast been partaker with adulterers. Thou givest thy mouth to evil, and thy tongue frameth deceit. Thou sittest and speakest against thy brother; thou slanderest thine own mother’s son. These things hast thou done, and I kept silence. Thou thoughtest*

*that I was altogether such an one as thyself! But I will reprove thee, and set them in order before thine eyes. Now consider this, ye that forget God! Lest I tear you in pieces, and there be none to deliver! Whoso offereth praise glorifieth Me. And to him that ordereth his conversation aright will I shew the Salvation of God."*

(To the chief Musician, A Psalm of David,

when Nathan the prophet came unto him after he had gone in to Bath-sheba)

Have mercy upon me, O God, according to Thy lovingkindness! According unto the multitude of Thy tender mercies blot out my transgressions! Wash me thoroughly from mine iniquity, and cleanse me from my sin. For I acknowledge my transgressions; and my sin is ever before me. Against Thee - Thee only - have I sinned, and done this evil in Thy sight; that Thou mightest be justified when Thou speakest, and be clear when Thou judgest. Behold, I was shapen in iniquity; and in sin did my mother conceive me. Behold, Thou desirest truth in the inward parts; and in the hidden part Thou shalt make me to know wisdom. Purge me with hyssop, and I shall be clean. Wash me, and I shall be whiter than snow. Make me to hear joy and gladness; that the bones which Thou hast broken may rejoice. Hide thy face from my sins, and blot out all mine iniquities. Create in me a clean heart, O God; and renew a right spirit within me. Cast me not away from Thy presence; and take not Thy Holy Spirit from me. Restore unto me the joy of Thy Salvation; and uphold me with Thy Free Spirit. Then will I teach transgressors Thy Ways; and sinners shall be converted unto Thee. Deliver me from bloodguiltiness, O God, Thou God of my Salvation; and my tongue shall sing aloud of Thy righteousness. O Lord, open Thou my lips and my mouth shall shew forth Thy praise. For Thou desirest not sacrifice; else would I give it! Thou delightest not in burnt offering. The sacrifices of God are a broken spirit. A broken and a contrite heart, O God, Thou wilt not despise. Do good in Thy good pleasure unto Zion. Build thou the walls of Jerusalem. Then shalt Thou be pleased with the sacrifices of righteousness, with burnt offering and whole burnt offering. Then shall they offer bullocks upon Thine Altar.

(To the chief Musician, Maschil, A Psalm of David, when Doeg the Edomite came and told Saul, and said unto him, *David is come to the house of Ahimelech*)

Why boastest thou thyself in mischief, O mighty man? The goodness of God endureth continually. Thy tongue deviseth mischiefs; like a sharp razor, working deceitfully. Thou lovest evil more than good; and lying rather than to speak righteousness. [Selah]. Thou lovest all devouring words, O thou deceitful tongue. God shall likewise destroy thee for ever. He shall take thee away, and pluck thee out of thy dwelling place, and root thee out of the land of the living. [Selah]. The righteous also shall see, and fear, and shall laugh at him, *'Lo, this is the man that made not God his strength; but trusted in the abundance of his riches, and strengthened himself in his wickedness!'* But I am like a green olive tree in the House of God. I trust in the mercy of God for ever and ever. I will praise Thee for ever, because Thou hast done it. And I will wait on Thy Name; for it is good before Thy saints.

(To the chief Musician upon Mahalath, Maschil, A Psalm of David)

The fool hath said in his heart, *"There is no God."* Corrupt are they, and have done abominable iniquity. There is none that doeth good. God looked down from heaven upon the children of men; to see if there were any that did understand, *that* did seek God. Every one of them is gone back. They are altogether become filthy. There is none that doeth good - no, not one! Have the workers of iniquity no knowledge, who eat up my people as they eat bread? They have not called upon God. There were they in great fear where no fear was; for God hath scattered the bones of him that encampeth against thee. Thou hast put them to shame, because God hath despised them. Oh that the Salvation of Israel were come out of Zion! When God bringeth back the captivity of His people, Jacob shall rejoice, and Israel shall be glad.

PLEASE CONTINUE TO BOOK 2  
WHICH CONTAINS PSALMS TO REVELATION

